Workshop Manual
Audi A6 2005 ➢

General body repairs, interior

Edition 06.2012

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

List of Workshop Manual Repair Groups

Repair Group

00 - Technical data
68 - Interior equipment
69 - Passenger protection
70 - Trim, insulation
72 - Seat frames
74 - Seat - padding, covers

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Technical information should always be available to the foremen and mechanics, because their careful and constant adherence to the instructions is essential to ensure vehicle road-worthiness and safety. In addition, the normal basic safety precautions for working on motor vehicles must, as a matter of course, be observed.

All rights reserved.
No reproduction without prior agreement from publisher.

Copyright © 2015 Audi AG, Ingolstadt

Contents

00 - Technical data 1
1 Routing and attaching pipes and wiring 1
2 Contact corrosion 2

68 - Interior equipment 3
1 Shelves / trim panels 3
1.1 Dash panel cover (bottom) on driver side - exploded view 3
1.2 Removing and installing dash panel cover (bottom) on driver side 4
1.3 Knee bolster (driver side) - exploded view 5
1.4 Removing and installing bracket for knee bolster 6
1.5 Glove box - exploded view 10
1.6 Manually releasing the glove box lid 11
1.7 Removing and installing glove box 12
1.8 Removing and installing glove box lid 13
1.9 Removing and installing cushioning element for glove box lid 14
1.10 Removing and installing actuator motor for remote release of glove box lid 15
1.11 Adjusting cable for glove box lid 15
2 Centre console (rear) 16
2.1 Centre console (rear) - exploded view 16
2.2 Removing and installing centre console (rear) 17
2.3 Removing and installing vent on centre console (rear) 19
2.4 Removing and installing cup holder (rear) 20
2.5 Removing and installing mounting bracket for seat heating switch and cigarette lighter switch (rear) 20
3 Centre console (front) 21
3.1 Centre console (front) - exploded view 21
3.2 Removing and installing centre console (front) 22
3.3 Removing and installing multimedia system operating unit E380 24
3.4 Removing and installing trim cover 24
3.5 Removing and installing ashtray (front) 25
3.6 Removing and installing trim for ashtray (front) 25
3.7 Removing and installing cup holder (front) 26
3.8 Removing and installing trim for cup holder (front) 27
3.9 Removing and installing trim frame for multimedia system operating unit E380 29
4 Mounting frame for centre console 30
4.1 Mounting frame for centre console - exploded view 30
4.2 Removing and installing mounting frame for centre console 31
4.3 Removing and installing side trim for centre console 31
4.4 Removing and installing air duct 32
5 Centre armrest (front) 34
5.1 Exploded view of centre armrest (front) 34
5.2 Removing and installing centre armrest (front) 36
5.3 Removing and installing support for centre armrest (front) 36
5.4 Removing and installing storage compartment for centre armrest (front) 39
5.5 Removing and installing handle for centre armrest (front) 41
5.6 Removing and installing cover for centre armrest (front) 42
5.7 Removing and installing padding for centre armrest (front) 43
5.8 Removing and installing support bracket for centre armrest (front) 44
5.9 Removing and installing trim panels for base of centre armrest 44
5.10 Removing and installing mounting bracket for car telephone or lift mechanism for mobile phone 45
5.11 Removing and installing wiring harness for telephone or mobile phone 47
5.12 Retrofitting centre armrest (front) 48

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6 Interior mirror ... 50
6.1 Removing and installing interior mirror ... 50
6.2 Removing and installing rain and light sensor G397 ... 51
6.3 Safety regulations for interior mirror ... 52
6.4 General notes on interior mirror ... 52
6.5 Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off ... 53
6.6 Switching compass display on and off ... 53
6.7 Setting magnetic deflection zone ... 53
6.8 Calibrating digital compass ... 54
6.9 Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror Y7 for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles ... 55
6.10 Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map ... 55
6.11 Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror ... 61

69 - Passenger protection ... 63

1 Seat belts ... 63
1.1 Safety regulations for handling pyrotechnic belt tensioners ... 63
1.2 Disposal of pyrotechnic belt tensioners ... 64
1.3 Overview of seat belts and anchorage points ... 65
1.4 Removing and installing belt end fitting ... 67
1.5 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front) with pyrotechnic belt tensioner ... 68
1.6 Exploded view of three-point seat belt (front) with belt tensioner and switchable belt force limiter (country-specific) - vehicles from 08/06 onwards ... 71
1.7 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front) with pyrotechnic belt tensioner and switchable belt force limiter (country-specific) ... 72
1.8 Removing and installing anchorage point (belt buckle) ... 75
1.9 Removing and installing buckle for seat occupied recognition system controlling front passenger's airbag deactivation (country-specific version) ... 76
1.10 Removing and installing belt guide (front) ... 77
1.11 Removing and installing belt height adjuster ... 78
1.12 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belts (rear) ... 81
1.13 Removing and installing outer belt guide (rear) ... 84
1.14 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belt (rear) - Avant ... 85
1.15 Exploded view of rear outer belt guide II (Avant) ... 88
1.16 Removing and installing rear outer belt guide II (Avant) ... 89
1.17 Removing and installing three-point seat belt for rear centre seat - vehicles with fixed rear seat backrest ... 91
1.18 Removing and installing centre belt guide (rear) ... 94
1.19 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (rear) ... 95
1.20 Centre belt end fitting (rear) ... 96
1.21 Removing and installing three-point seat belt for rear centre seat - vehicles with folding rear seat backrest ... 99

2 ISOFIX retainers ... 102
2.1 Removing and installing ISOFIX retainers ... 102
2.2 Checking ISOFIX retainers following an accident ... 103

3 Child seat anchors (USA, Canada) ... 104
3.1 Removing and installing child seat anchors ... 104

4 Checking seat belts ... 105
4.1 Checking belt webbing ... 105
4.2 Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action) ... 106
4.3 Visual inspection of belt buckle ... 106
4.4 Functional check of belt buckle ... 107
4.5 Checking guide fittings and latch plate ... 107
4.6 Checking securing components and anchorage points ... 107
4.7 Checking locking function of retractor mechanism for securing child safety seats (does not apply to driver's seat belt) ... 108

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.8 Checking belt-fastened sensor for rear three-point seat belts with belt tensioner (only applies to USA) . . . 108
5 Safety regulations for airbags . . . 110
5.1 General safety regulations for working on the airbag system . . . 110
5.2 Additional safety regulations for side airbags . . . 111
5.3 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags . . . 112
5.4 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor for front passenger's airbag (country-specific version) . . . 112
5.5 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger's airbag (country-specific version) following a crash . . . 113
5.6 Renewing airbag units following an accident . . . 113
5.7 Checking mounting components following an accident . . . 115
5.8 Accident in which no airbag was triggered . . . 115
5.9 Disposal of pyrotechnic airbag units . . . 115
6 Servicing airbags . . . 117
6.1 Airbags - overview . . . 117
6.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit J234 . . . 118
6.3 Removing and installing battery cut-off relay J655 - vehicles up to approx. 06/2004 . . . 120
6.4 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter N253 - vehicles up to 05/2006 . . . 121
6.5 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter N253 - vehicles from 06/2006 onwards . . . 123
7 Servicing airbag (driver side) . . . 126
7.1 Exploded view of airbag unit (driver side) . . . 126
7.2 Removing and installing airbag igniter on driver side N95 and airbag igniter 2 on driver side N250 . . . 126
7.3 Renewing connector at airbag unit . . . 130
7.4 Removing and installing steering wheel . . . 131
7.5 Removing and installing airbag coil connector and return ring with slip ring F138 . . . 131
8 Servicing airbag (front passenger side) . . . 134
8.1 Airbag unit (front passenger side) - exploded view . . . 134
8.2 Removing and installing airbag igniter 1, front passenger side N131 and airbag igniter 2, front passenger side N132 . . . 135
8.3 Removing and installing key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side E224 . . . 138
8.4 Removing and installing warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side K145 . . . 139
9 Servicing side airbags . . . 141
9.1 Removing and installing side airbag igniters N199 and N200 , front (standard seats, seats with electric adjustment) - vehicles up to approx. 04.2007 . . . 141
9.2 Removing and installing side airbag igniters N199 and N200 , front (standard seats, seats with electric adjustment) - vehicles from approx. 05.2007 onwards . . . 144
9.3 Removing and installing rear side airbag igniter on driver side N201 and rear side airbag igniter on front passenger side N202 (fixed rear seat backrest) . . . 148
9.4 Removing and installing rear side airbag igniter on driver side N201 and rear side airbag igniter on front passenger side N202 (folding rear seat backrest) . . . 150
10 Deactivating side airbag (rear) . . . 152
10.1 Deactivating . . . 152
10.2 Activating . . . 153
11 Servicing curtain airbags - saloon . . . 156
11.1 Removing and installing driver side curtain airbag igniter N251 and front passenger side curtain airbag igniter N252 . . . 156
12 Servicing curtain airbags -Avant . . . 160
12.1 Removing and installing driver side curtain airbag igniter N251 and front passenger side curtain airbag igniter N252 . . . 160
13 Servicing curtain airbag - Audi A6 Security . . . 164
13.1 Removing and installing driver side curtain airbag igniter N251 and front passenger side curtain airbag igniter N252 . . . 164
14 Servicing crash sensors for airbags . . . 168

Copyright by AUDI AG. Reproduction or use for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

14.1 Precautions to take when handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbags (front) . . . 168
14.2 Overview of fitting locations . . . 168
14.3 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor for driver side G283 and front airbag crash sensor for front passenger side G284 . . . 169
14.4 Removing and installing side airbag crash sensor on driver side G179 and side airbag crash sensor on front passenger side G180 (front, pressure sensor) . . . 171
14.5 Removing and installing rear side airbag crash sensor on driver side G256 and rear side airbag crash sensor on front passenger side G257 (curtain airbag) . . . 173

15 Belt-fastened recognition . . . 176

16 Servicing seat occupancy recognition . . . 178
16.1 Removing and installing seat occupancy recognition (USA) . . . 178

70 - Trim, insulation . . . 183

1 Door trim (front) . . . 183
1.1 Overview of fitting locations . . . 183
1.2 Overview of wiring in door trim . . . 184
1.3 Removing and installing door trim (front) . . . 184
1.4 Removing and installing insulation . . . 187
1.5 Removing and installing armrest . . . 189
1.6 Removing and installing mirror adjustment switch . . . 190
1.7 Removing and installing window regulator switch . . . 191
1.8 Removing and installing interior door handle . . . 192
1.9 Removing and installing treble loudspeaker . . . 192
1.10 Removing and installing operating unit for seat memory . . . 193
1.11 Removing and installing switch for anti-theft alarm system . . . 193
1.12 Removing and installing rear lid release switch . . . 193
1.13 Removing and installing trim for exterior mirror . . . 193
1.14 Removing and installing trim panel . . . 194
1.15 Removing and installing light strip . . . 194
1.16 Removing and installing treble loudspeaker trim . . . 194
1.17 Removing and installing door warning light . . . 194
1.18 Removing and installing entry light . . . 195
1.19 Removing and installing rubber ring for vent . . . 195
1.20 Removing and installing frame for bass reflex duct . . . 195
1.21 Making opening for frame for bass reflex duct in door trim . . . 195
1.22 Removing and installing trim for bass loudspeaker . . . 196

2 Door trim (rear) . . . 197
2.1 Overview of fitting locations . . . 197
2.2 Overview of wiring in door trim . . . 198
2.3 Removing and installing door trim (rear) . . . 198
2.4 Removing and installing insulation . . . 200
2.5 Removing and installing armrest . . . 201
2.6 Removing and installing window regulator switch . . . 203
2.7 Removing and installing interior door handle . . . 203
2.8 Removing and installing treble loudspeaker . . . 204
2.9 Removing and installing cover . . . 204
2.10 Removing and installing trim panel . . . 204
2.11 Removing and installing light strip . . . 204
2.12 Removing and installing treble loudspeaker trim . . . 205
2.13 Removing and installing door warning light . . . 205
2.14 Removing and installing entry light . . . 205
2.15 Removing and installing side sun blind for door window . . . 205
2.16 Removing and installing hooks for side sun blind . . . 206

3 Dash panel . . . 207
3.1 Exploded view of dash panel . . . 207

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.2 Removing and installing dash panel end trim . . . 208
3.3 Removing and installing trim panel . . . 208
3.4 Removing and installing trim for indirect ventilation . . . 209
3.5 Removing and installing dash panel vent (driver side) . . . 210
3.6 Removing and installing dash panel vent (passenger side) . . . 211
3.7 Removing and installing dash panel vent (centre) . . . 212
3.8 Removing and installing dash panel . . . 214
4 Central tube for dash panel . . . 230
4.1 Exploded view of central tube for dash panel . . . 230
4.2 Removing and installing central tube for dash panel . . . 231
4.3 Fitting new retainer for bracket for glove box . . . 243
5 Trim panels . . . 246
5.1 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (top) . . . 246
5.2 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (top) - Audi A6 Security . . . 249
5.3 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (bottom) . . . 251
5.4 Removing and installing connecting piece . . . 253
5.5 Removing and installing foot rest cover and bracket . . . 255
5.6 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (top) . . . 257
5.7 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (top) - Audi A6 Security . . . 258
5.8 Removing and installing coat hook . . . 260
5.9 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (bottom) . . . 260
5.10 Removing and installing C-pillar trim . . . 261
5.11 Removing and installing sill/pillar trim . . . 264
5.12 Removing and installing D-pillar trim . . . 266
5.13 Removing and installing roof end trim . . . 268
5.14 Removing and installing rear shelf without sun blind (rear) . . . 269
5.15 Removing and installing rear shelf with sun blind (rear) . . . 273
5.16 Removing and installing electrical rear roller blind (sun blind) . . . 276
5.17 Removing and installing floor covering . . . 278
5.18 Rear lid trim - exploded view . . . 280
5.19 Removing and installing rear lid trim . . . 280
5.20 Removing and installing handle recess . . . 283
5.21 Exploded view of rear cross panel trim . . . 283
5.22 Removing and installing rear cross panel trim . . . 284
5.23 Luggage compartment side trim - exploded view . . . 285
5.24 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim . . . 286
5.25 Removing and installing fastening rings . . . 288
5.26 Removing and installing retaining hooks . . . 288
5.27 Back panel trim on vehicles with fixed rear seat backrests - exploded view . . . 288
5.28 Removing and installing back panel trim . . . 289
5.29 Luggage compartment floor covering - exploded view . . . 290
5.30 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor covering . . . 290
5.31 Removing and installing retainer for luggage compartment floor . . . 290
5.32 Removing and installing mounting frame for loading aid . . . 291
6 Trim panels - Avant . . . 293
6.1 C-pillar trim (top) - exploded view . . . 293
6.2 Removing and installing C-pillar trim (top) . . . 293
6.3 Exploded view of D-pillar trim . . . 295
6.4 Removing and installing D-pillar trim . . . 296
6.5 Exploded view of roof end trim . . . 297
6.6 Removing and installing roof end trim . . . 298
6.7 Rear lid trim - exploded view . . . 299
6.8 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) . . . 300
6.9 Making opening for button to close rear lid in luggage compartment E406 on replacement trim part (bottom) for rear lid . . . 302
6.10 Removing and installing rear lid trim (top) . . . 302

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.11 Removing and installing trim for rear lid lock . . . 304
6.12 Sun blind (rear) - exploded view . . . 304
6.13 Removing and installing sun blind (rear) . . . 305
6.14 Removing and installing trim for sun blind (rear) . . . 305
6.15 Exploded view of rear cross panel trim . . . 305
6.16 Removing and installing rear cross panel trim . . . 306
6.17 Luggage compartment side trim - exploded view . . . 307
6.18 Removing and installing hinged hook . . . 308
6.19 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim . . . 308
6.20 Removing and installing retaining rail for fastening rings . . . 310
6.21 Load guard - exploded view . . . 310
6.22 Removing and installing load guard at rear seat backrest . . . 312
6.23 Removing and installing bracket for load guard in luggage compartment . . . 312
6.24 Exploded view of cover for luggage compartment floor . . . 313
6.25 Removing and installing storage well liner . . . 315
6.26 Removing and installing handle for luggage compartment floor . . . 316
6.27 Removing and installing hinge for luggage compartment floor . . . 317

7 Roof trim . . . 318
7.1 Exploded view of moulded headliner . . . 318
7.2 Removing and installing moulded headliner . . . 320
7.3 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - saloon models without sunroof . . . 325
7.4 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - saloon models with sunroof . . . 325
7.5 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - Avant models without sunroof . . . 326
7.6 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - Avant models with sunroof . . . 327
7.7 Removing and installing sun visor . . . 328
7.8 Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor . . . 330
7.9 Removing and installing roof grab handle . . . 331

72 - Seat frames . . . 332

1 Front seat (standard seat) . . . 332
1.1 Removing and installing front seat (standard seat) . . . 332
1.2 Unplugging connectors . . . 335
1.3 Connecting airbag adapter VAS 6036 . . . 336
1.4 Connector assignment at connector point . . . 338
1.5 Exploded view of modular wire routing - vehicles from 07/06 onwards . . . 338
1.6 Modular wire routing versions . . . 339
1.7 Modular wire routing with corrugated tube on front seat . . . 340
1.8 Removing and installing seat rail covers . . . 343
1.9 Removing and installing backrests, front (standard seats) . . . 344
1.10 Removing and installing retaining plate for DVD player . . . 348
1.11 Removing and installing backrest adjuster . . . 348
1.12 Removing and installing seat height adjuster . . . 349
1.13 Removing and installing side trim (sill side) . . . 350
1.14 Removing and installing side trim (tunnel side) . . . 352
1.15 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit . . . 353
1.16 Removing and installing four-way lumbar support switch . . . 354
1.17 Removing and installing drawer - vehicles up to 06/2006 . . . 355
1.18 Exploded view of storage compartment (passenger side) . . . 358
1.19 Removing and installing storage compartment . . . 358
1.20 Exploded view of storage compartment components . . . 360
1.21 Dismantling and assembling storage compartment . . . 361
1.22 Removing and installing seat depth adjuster (sports seat) . . . 364
1.23 Renewing backrest . . . 365
1.24 Renewing seat pan . . . 366
1.25 Removing and installing backrest cover panel . . . 368
1.26 Removing and installing four-way lumbar support - old version . . . 369

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.27 Removing and installing control motors for lumbar support adjustment - old version 371
1.28 Removing and installing four-way lumber support (new version) - vehicles up to 11/2006 372
1.29 Removing and installing control motors for lumbar support adjustment - new version 375
1.30 Removing and installing head restraints with slide-in locking mechanism 376
1.31 Removing and installing rear footwell light 377
1.32 Exploded view of front seat (standard seat) without active head restraint system - vehicles from 11/2006 onwards 377
1.33 Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing head restraint . . 378
1.34 Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing backrest cover panel 378
1.35 Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing four-way lumbar support 378
1.36 Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing lumbar support adjustment motors 378
1.37 Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing head restraint guides 378
1.38 Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing cover with padding 378
1.39 Backrest without active head restraint system - detaching cover from padding 378
2 Front seat (memory seat, seat with electric adjustment) 379
2.1 Removing and installing front seat (seat with seat memory, seat with electric adjustment) 379
2.2 Removing front seat if control unit or seat longitudinal adjustment motor are defective . . 381
2.3 Unplugging connectors 384
2.4 Connecting airbag adapter VAS 6036 385
2.5 Connector assignment at connector point 387
2.6 Exploded view of modular wire routing - vehicles from 07/2006 onwards 387
2.7 Modular wire routing versions 387
2.8 Modular wire routing with corrugated tube on front seat 387
2.9 Removing and installing seat rail covers 387
2.10 Removing and installing front seat backrest 388
2.11 Removing and installing retaining plate for DVD player 392
2.12 Removing and installing side trim (sill side) 392
2.13 Removing and installing side trim (tunnel side) 395
2.14 Renewing backrest 397
2.15 Renewing seat pan 397
2.16 Removing and installing seat adjustment switch 398
2.17 Removing and installing four-way lumbar support switch 399
2.18 Removing and installing seat adjustment control unit with memory function 400
2.19 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment motor 402
2.20 Exploded view - seat height adjustment motor 403
2.21 Removing and installing seat height adjustment motor V245 / V246 403
2.22 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment motor 407
2.23 Removing and installing drawer - vehicles up to 06/2006 409
2.24 Exploded view of storage compartment (passenger side) 411
2.25 Removing and installing storage compartment 411
2.26 Exploded view of storage compartment components 411
2.27 Dismantling and assembling storage compartment 411
2.28 Removing and installing seat depth adjuster (sports seat) 411
2.29 Removing and installing backrest adjustment motor 412
2.30 Removing and installing backrest cover panel 417
2.31 Removing and installing four-way lumbar support - old version 418
2.32 Removing and installing lumbar support height adjustment motors - old version 420
2.33 Removing and installing four-way lumber support (new version) - vehicles up to 11/2006 422
2.34 Removing and installing control motors for lumbar support adjustment - new version 425
2.35 Removing and installing head restraint with slide-in locking mechanism 426

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.36 Removing and installing rear footwell light . . . 427
2.37 Exploded view of seat pan . . . 427
2.38 Dismantling and assembling seat pan . . . 429
2.39 Removing and installing spring mat with wiring harness for seat pan . . . 431
2.40 Wiring assignment for seat . . . 433
2.41 Wiring assignment for backrest . . . 434
2.42 Removing and installing wiring harness for backrest . . . 434
2.43 Exploded view - front seat (memory seat, seat with electric adjustment) without active head restraint system - vehicles from 11/2006 onwards . . . 436
2.44 Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing head restraint . . . 437
2.45 Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing backrest cover panel . . . 437
2.46 Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing four-way lumbar support . . . 437
2.47 Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing lumbar support adjustment motors . . . 440
2.48 Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing head restraint guides . . . 441
2.49 Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing cover with padding . . . 441
2.50 Backrest without active head restraint system - detaching cover from padding . . . 441
3 S6 front seat (memory seat, seat with electric adjustment) . . . 442
3.1 Moving front seat to service position . . . 442
3.2 Attaching front seat to seat repair stand VAS 6136 . . . 443
3.3 Exploded view - front seat . . . 444
3.4 Removing and installing front seat . . . 446
3.5 Removing front seat if control unit or seat longitudinal adjustment motor V288 are defective . . . 449
3.6 Unplugging and plugging in connectors . . . 452
3.7 Connecting airbag adapter . . . 455
3.8 Connector point connectors . . . 458
3.9 Exploded view of modular wire routing . . . 458
3.10 Modular wire routing versions . . . 458
3.11 Modular wire routing with corrugated tube on front seat . . . 458
3.12 Removing and installing spindle covers and seat rail covers . . . 458
3.13 Exploded view of trim (sill side and tunnel side) . . . 460
3.14 Removing and installing trim and assembly cover (sill side) . . . 462
3.15 Removing and installing trim (tunnel side) . . . 466
3.16 Exploded view of retaining brackets for trim (sill side) . . . 467
3.17 Removing and installing retaining bracket (front) . . . 469
3.18 Removing and installing retaining bracket (rear) . . . 470
3.19 Removing and installing retaining bracket (top) . . . 471
3.20 Exploded view of seat and backrest adjustment actuators . . . 472
3.21 Removing and installing seat adjustment actuator . . . 473
3.22 Removing and installing backrest adjustment actuator . . . 474
3.23 Exploded view of front seat backrest . . . 475
3.24 Removing and installing front seat backrest . . . 476
3.25 Exploded view of backrest cover panel . . . 477
3.26 Removing and installing backrest cover panel . . . 478
3.27 Exploded view of four-way lumbar support . . . 481
3.28 Removing and installing four-way lumbar support . . . 482
3.29 Exploded view of head restraints . . . 485
3.30 Removing and installing padding with head restraint with slide-in locking mechanism . . . 486
3.31 Removing and installing head restraint guides without and with release button . . . 487
3.32 Exploded view of seat pan . . . 488
3.33 Dismantling and assembling seat pan . . . 490
3.34 Removing and installing spring mat with wiring harness for seat pan . . . 493

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.35 Removing and installing wiring harness for backrest . . . 493
3.36 Exploded view - storage compartment / drawer . . . 493
3.37 Removing and installing storage compartment / drawer . . . 493
3.38 Removing and installing footwell light . . . 493
3.39 Exploded view of seat depth adjuster . . . 493
3.40 Removing and installing seat depth adjuster . . . 494
3.41 Removing and installing trim . . . 495
3.42 Removing and installing handle . . . 496
3.43 Overview of electrical and electronic components . . . 497
3.44 Exploded view - seat rake adjustment motor V243 / V244 . . . 499
3.45 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment motor V243 / V244 . . . 500
3.46 Exploded view of seat longitudinal adjustment motor V288 . . . 501
3.47 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment motor V288 . . . 502
3.48 Exploded view of backrest adjustment motor V45 / V46 . . . 504
3.49 Removing and installing backrest adjustment motor V45 / V46 . . . 504
3.50 Exploded view - lumbar support longitudinal and height adjustment motors . . . 507
3.51 Removing and installing lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor V125 / V126 . . . 508
3.52 Removing and installing lumbar support height adjustment motor V129 / V130 . . . 510
3.53 Exploded view - seat height adjustment motor . . . 512
3.54 Removing and installing seat height adjustment motor V245 / V246 . . . 513
3.55 Removing and installing toothed segment for seat height adjustment . . . 517
3.56 Exploded view of lumbar support adjustment switch E176 / E177 . . . 519
3.57 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch E176 / E177 . . . 521
3.58 Exploded view of seat longitudinal adjustment button E418 , rake adjustment button E421 , seat height adjustment button E424 and backrest adjustment button E425 . . . 521
3.59 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment button E418 rake adjustment button E421 , seat height adjustment button E424 and backrest adjustment button E425 . . . 523
3.60 Exploded view of seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory J136 / front passenger seat adjustment control unit with memory J521 . . . 523
3.61 Removing and installing seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory J136 / J521 . . . 524

4 Bucket seat . . . 527

4.1 Removing and installing seat . . . 527
4.2 Removing and installing seat rail cover . . . 528
4.3 Unplugging and plugging in connectors . . . 529
4.4 Exploded view of side trim panels . . . 529
4.5 Removing and installing outer side trim . . . 530
4.6 Removing and installing backrest adjuster knob . . . 530
4.7 Removing and installing seat height adjuster . . . 531
4.8 Removing and installing side trim (sill side) . . . 531
4.9 Removing and installing side trim (tunnel side) . . . 533
4.10 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch . . . 534
4.11 Removing and installing button for backrest bolster adjustment and button for seat bolster adjustment . . . 535
4.12 Removing and installing control unit . . . 536
4.13 Exploded view of backrest and seat pan . . . 537
4.14 Removing and installing seat pan . . . 538
4.15 Removing and installing backrest . . . 540
4.16 Removing and installing operating cable for seat longitudinal adjustment . . . 541
4.17 Exploded view - seat height adjustment unit . . . 543
4.18 Removing and installing seat height adjuster lever . . . 544
4.19 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit . . . 544
4.20 Removing and installing backrest cover panels . . . 546
4.21 Pneumatic block - allocation of components . . . 548

5 Rear seats . . . 551

5.1 Removing and installing seat bench . . . 551
5.2 Removing and installing 1/3 section of backrest (left-side) . . . 552

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.3 Removing and installing 2/3 section of backrest (right-side) . . . 554
5.4 Removing cover and clamp from centre bracket . . . 555
5.5 Removing and installing side padding for rear seat . . . 556
5.6 Items to be checked following complete assembly of backrest . . . 558
5.7 Removing and installing lock unit . . . 558
5.8 Removing and installing centre armrest (split backrest) . . . 558
5.9 Removing and installing hinge trim (inside) . . . 560
5.10 Removing and installing centre bracket . . . 560
5.11 Removing and installing outer fitting for rear seat backrest . . . 560
5.12 Removing head restraints . . . 560
5.13 Removing and installing head restraints with slide-in locking mechanism . . . 561
5.14 Removing and installing head restraints without slide-in locking mechanism . . . 562
5.15 Removing and installing fixed rear seat backrest . . . 562
5.16 Removing and installing centre armrest (fixed rear seat backrest) . . . 564
5.17 Removing and installing cup holder . . . 564
5.18 Removing and installing centre armrest trim panel (rear) . . . 565

74 - Seat - padding, covers . . . 566

1 Covers and padding for seat pan (front) . . . 566
1.1 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding (standard seat) . . . 566
1.2 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding (sports seat) . . . 568
1.3 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding . . . 573
1.4 Removing and installing seat heating element . . . 577
1.5 Removing and installing seat heating element (sports seat) . . . 577
1.6 Removing and installing backrest heating element . . . 578
1.7 Removing and installing cover and padding for head restraint with slide-in locking mechanism . . . 578

2 Covers and padding on front seats (seat with seat memory, seat with electric adjustment) . . . 580
2.1 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding (standard seat) . . . 580
2.2 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding (sports seat) . . . 582
2.3 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding (sports seat, standard seat) . . . 587
2.4 Removing and installing head restraint guides . . . 590
2.5 Removing and installing seat heating element (standard seat) . . . 592
2.6 Removing and installing seat heating element (sports seat) . . . 592
2.7 Removing and installing backrest heating element . . . 593
2.8 Removing and installing cover and padding for head restraint with slide-in locking mechanism . . . 593

3 Covers and padding on S6 front seats (seat with seat memory, seat with electric adjustment) . . . 594
3.1 Exploded view of seat pan cover and padding . . . 594
3.2 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding . . . 595
3.3 Detaching cover from padding and assembling (seat pan) . . . 597
3.4 Exploded view of cover and padding/head restraint for backrest . . . 598
3.5 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding . . . 599
3.6 Detaching seat cover from padding (backrest) . . . 603
3.7 Overview - seat heating element . . . 603
3.8 Removing and installing seat heating element . . . 604
3.9 Overview - backrest heating element . . . 605
3.10 Removing and installing backrest heating element . . . 606

4 Seat covers and padding for bucket seats . . . 608
4.1 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding . . . 608
4.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding . . . 609
4.3 Removing and installing seat heating element . . . 611
4.4 Removing and installing backrest heating element . . . 612

5 Covers and padding on rear seats . . . 613

Protected by copyright. Copies for private or internal purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.1 Removing and installing seat bench cover and padding 613
5.2 Removing and installing cover and padding - fixed rear seat backrest 614
5.3 Removing and installing cover and padding for split rear seat backrest 615
5.4 Removing and installing outer head restraint guides without slide-in locking mechanism . . 619
5.5 Removing and installing inner head restraint guides without slide-in locking mechanism . . 620
5.6 Removing and installing frame for load-through hatch (folding rear seat backrest) 621
5.7 Removing and installing load-through hatch (folding rear seat backrest) 622
5.8 Making cut-out for load-through hatch in seat cover (folding rear seat backrest) 622
5.9 Removing and installing load-through hatch and frame for load-through hatch (fixed rear seat backrest) 622
5.10 Retrofitting load-through hatch (fixed rear seat backrest) 623

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

00 – Technical data

1 Routing and attaching pipes and wiring

(ARL002952; Edition 06.2012)

Make sketches or take photographs when unfastening or removing and installing hydraulic and pneumatic pipes or electrical wires. This ensures re-installation at the original location.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Contact corrosion

Contact corrosion can occur if unsuitable fasteners (bolts, nuts, washers etc.) are used on the vehicle.

For this reason, only fasteners with a special surface coating are fitted.

In addition, all rubber and plastic parts and all adhesives are made of non-conductive materials.

Should you have any doubts whether certain parts can be re-used, use new parts ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Observe the following:

- We recommend using genuine replacement parts only, as these have been checked and are compatible with aluminium.
- We recommend using Audi Genuine Accessories.
- Damage caused by contact corrosion is not covered by the warranty.

68 – Interior equipment

1 Shelves / trim panels

⇒ “1.1 Dash panel cover (bottom) on driver side - exploded view”, page 3

⇒ “1.2 Removing and installing dash panel cover (bottom) on driver side”, page 4

⇒ “1.3 Knee bolster (driver side) - exploded view”, page 5

⇒ “1.4 Removing and installing bracket for knee bolster”, page 6

⇒ “1.5 Glove box - exploded view”, page 10

⇒ “1.6 Manually releasing the glove box lid”, page 11

⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing glove box”, page 12

⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing glove box lid”, page 13

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing cushioning element for glove box lid”, page 14

⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing actuator motor for remote release of glove box lid”, page 15

⇒ “1.11 Adjusting cable for glove box lid”, page 15

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.1 Dash panel cover (bottom) on driver side - exploded view

1 - 3 Nm

2 - Dash panel cover (bottom) on driver side

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 4

3 - 3 Nm

4 - Diagnostic connector -T16-

5 - Speed nut

6 - Cover

- ❑ On vehicles with automatic gearbox

7 - Mounting

- ❑ For dash panel cover (bottom) on driver side

8 - Cover

- ❑ On vehicles with electrically adjustable steering column

9 - 1 Nm

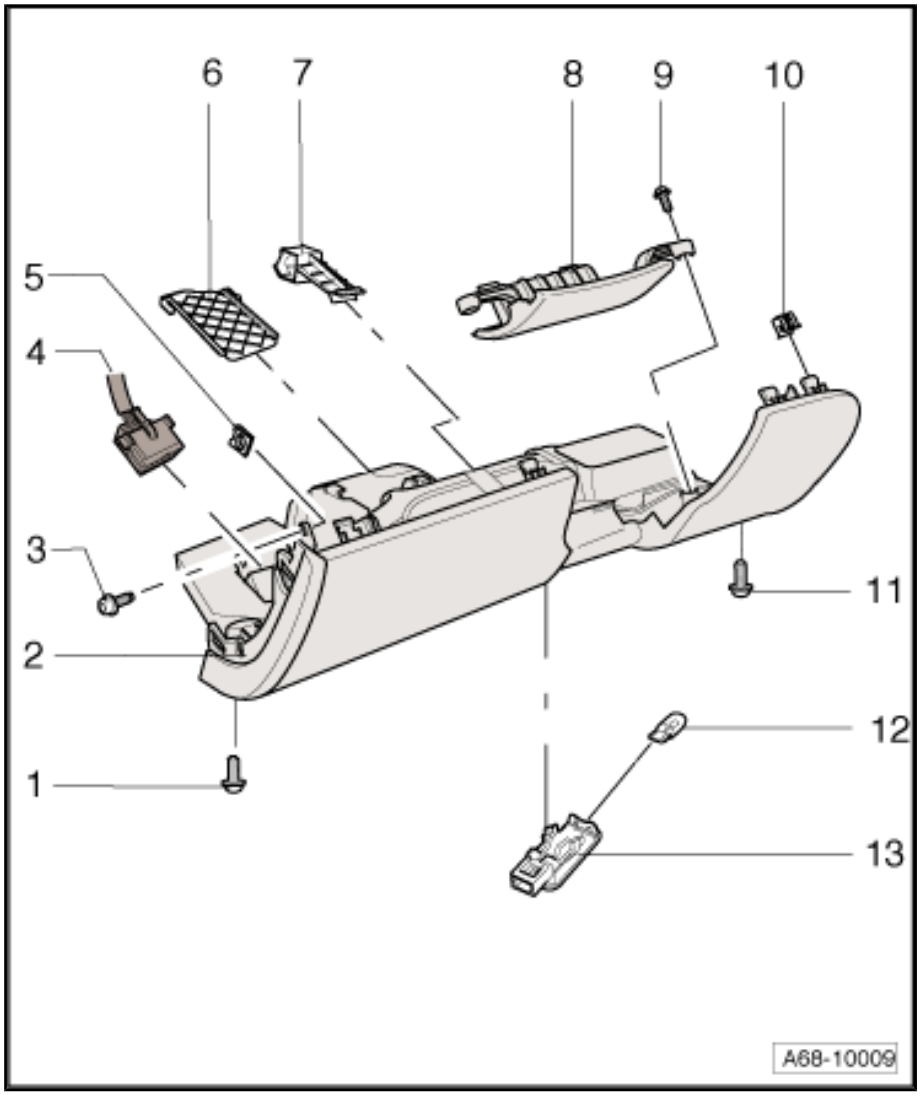
10 - Clip

11 - 3 Nm

12 - Glass base bulb

- ❑ 12 V, 5 W

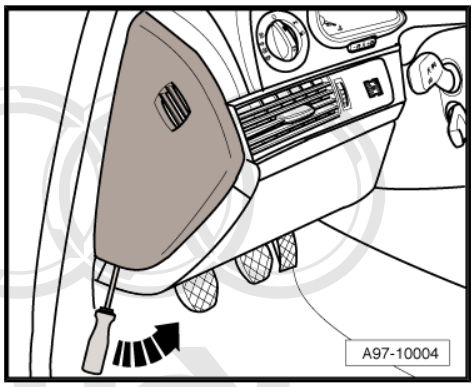
13 - Footwell light



1.2 Removing and installing dash panel cover (bottom) on driver side

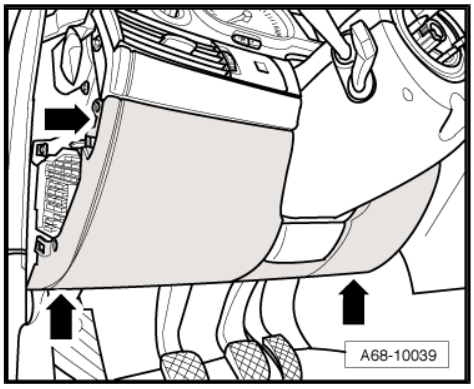
Removing

– Use screwdriver to prise off dash panel end trim on driver side -arrow-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unscrew bolts for dash panel cover (bottom) on driver side -arrows-.
– Take hold of upper edge of dash panel cover (bottom, driver side) and pull off towards rear.
– Unclip diagnostic connectors -T16- .
– Unplug electrical connectors.
– Detach dash panel cover (bottom) on driver side.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Dash panel cover (bottom, driver side) to dash panel	3

1.3 Knee bolster (driver side) - exploded view

1 - Bracket for knee bolster (left-side)

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 6

2 - 9 Nm

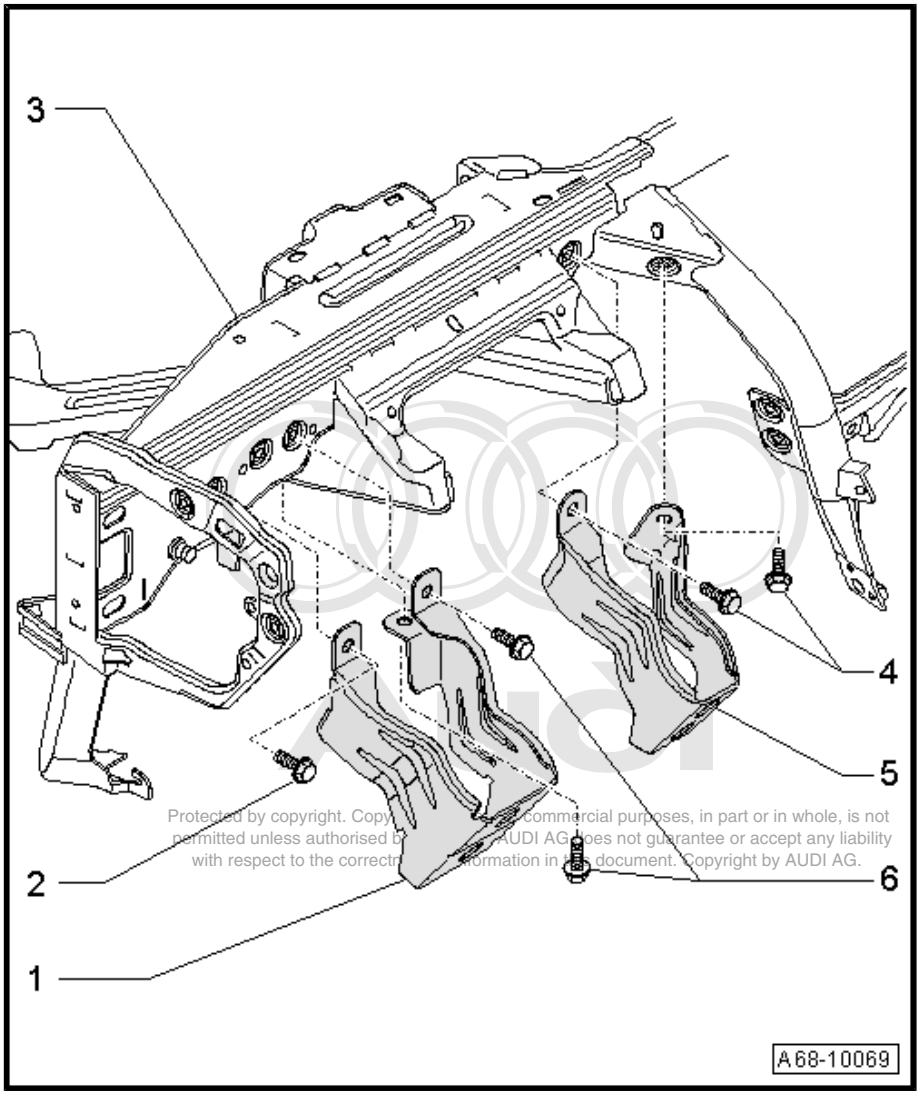
3 - Central tube

4 - 9 Nm

5 - Bracket for knee bolster (right-side)

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 6

6 - 9 Nm

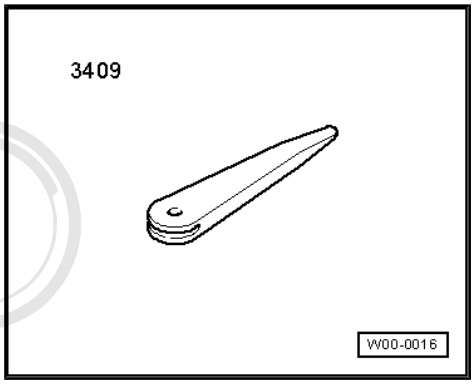


Protected by copyright. Copying for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4 Removing and installing bracket for knee bolster

Special tools and workshop equipment required

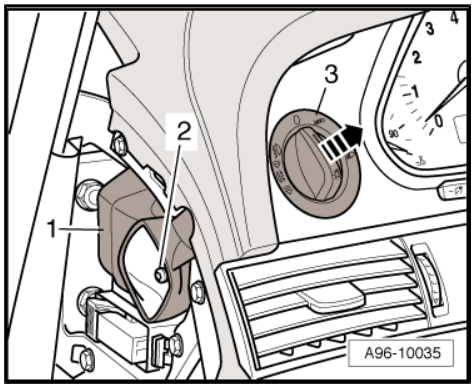
- Removal wedge -3409-



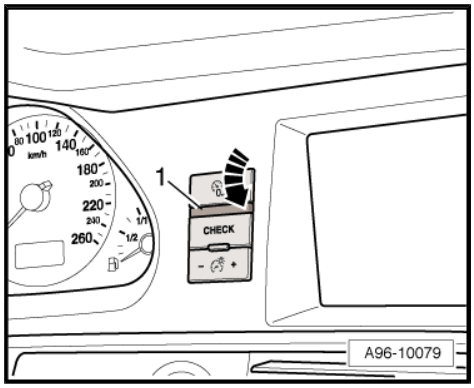
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

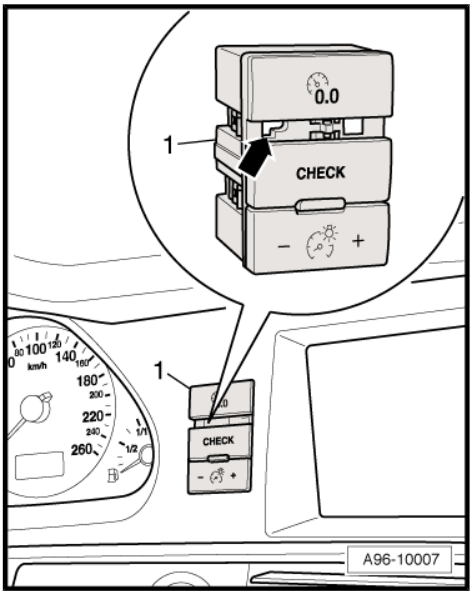
– Switch off ignition and remove ignition key.
– Remove dash panel cover (bottom, driver side) ⇒ page 4 .
– Remove dash panel vent (driver side) ⇒ page 210 .
– Remove dash panel vent (centre) ⇒ page 212 .
– Turn light switch -3- to position “0”.
– Remove spreader pin -2- at air duct -1- and remove air duct.
– Reach into the opening above the dash panel vent (side) and press the light switch out of the instrument cluster -arrow-.
– Unplug electrical connector.



– Push trim cover -1- on switch panel for instrument cluster in direction of -arrow-.
– Grasp hold of trim cover and detach from switch.

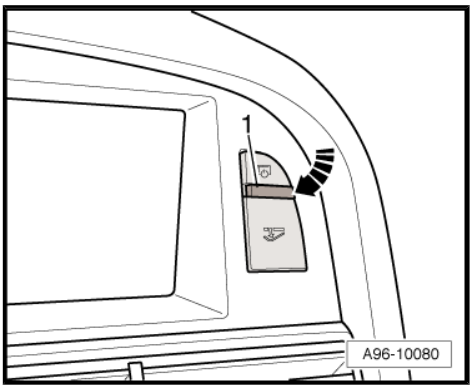


– Position hook -3438- in opening -arrow- on switch panel.
– Carefully pull switch panel -1- out of instrument cluster trim.
– Unplug electrical connector.

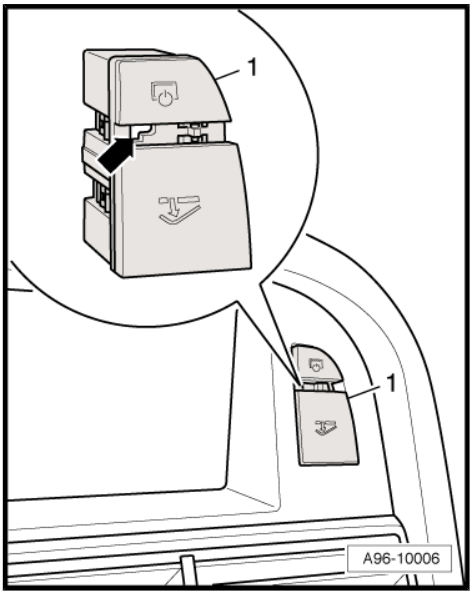


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Push trim cover -1- on switch for glove box release in direction of -arrow-.
– Grasp hold of trim cover and detach from switch.



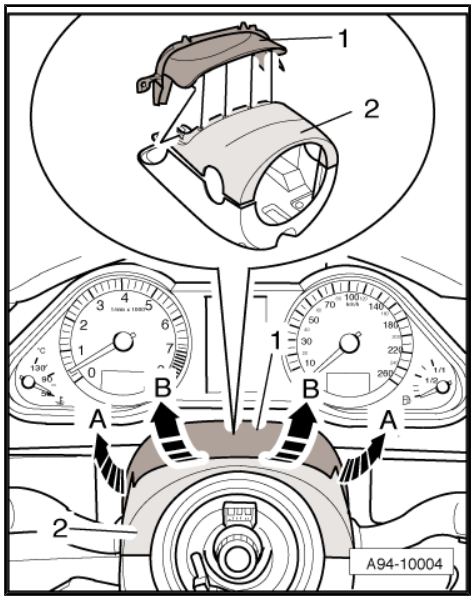
– Position hook -3438- in opening -arrow- on switch panel.
– Carefully pull switch panel -1- out of instrument cluster trim.
– Unplug electrical connector.



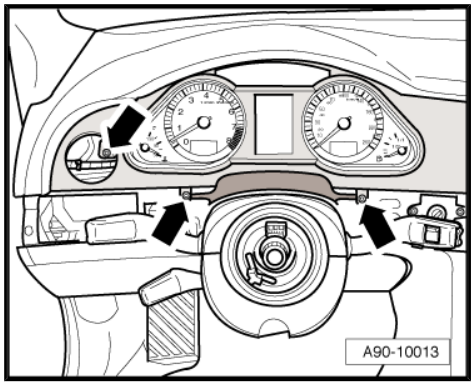
Note

For greater clarity, the steering wheel has been removed in the following illustrations.

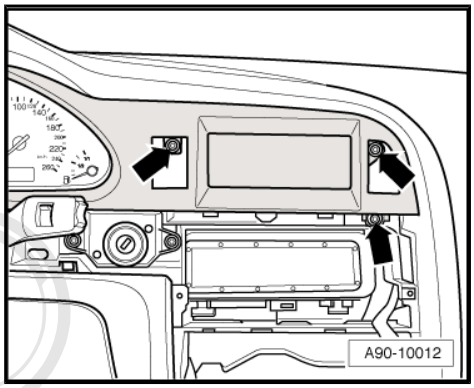
– Unclip trim cover -1- from trim (top) -2- for steering column switch first on side -arrow A- and then at top -arrow B-. To do so, use removal wedge -3409- .



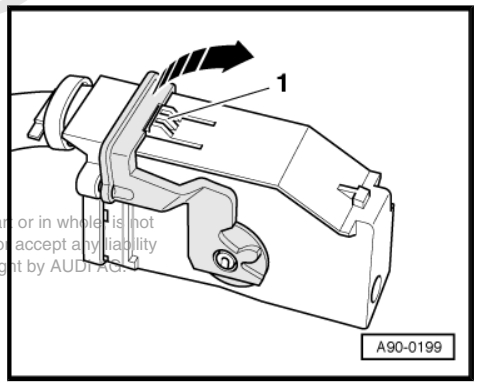
– Remove bolts -arrows-.



– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Pull instrument cluster trim slightly out of dash panel.

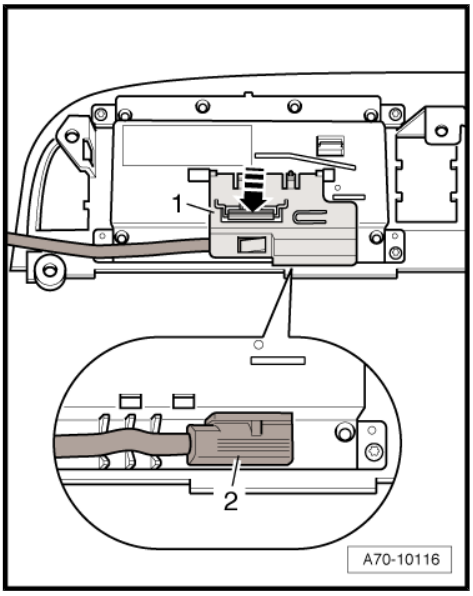


– Unplug electrical connector at instrument cluster. To do so, press catch -1-, turn retaining bracket in direction of -arrow- and detach connector.

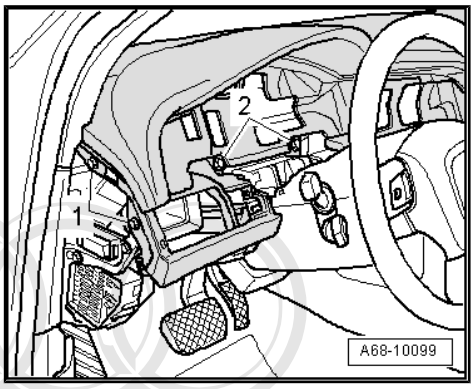


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Release connector locking element -1- at MMI display -arrow- and swivel upwards.
– Unplug electrical connector -2- at MMI display.
– Remove instrument cluster trim with instrument cluster and MMI display from between steering wheel and dash panel.



– Remove bolts -1- and -2-.

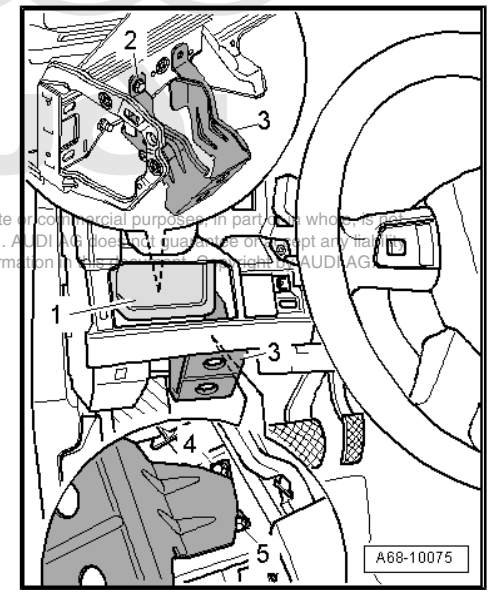


Bracket for knee bolster, left-side:

– Remove bolts -4- and -5-.

Unscrew bolt -2- behind air duct -1-. If necessary, lift dash panel up slightly off central tube.

Remove bracket for knee bolster (left-side) -3-.

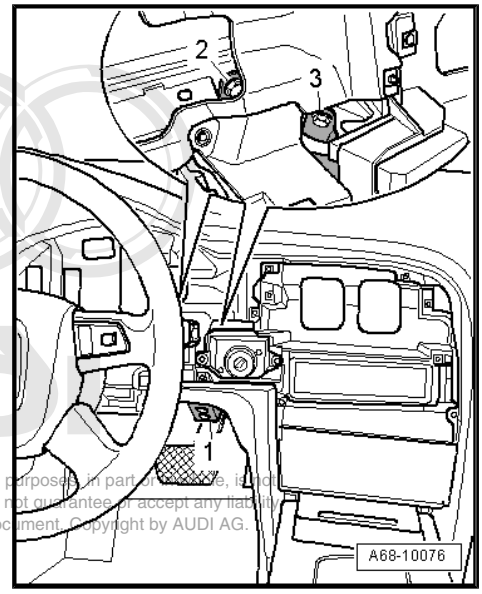


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Bracket for knee bolster (right-side):

– Unscrew bolts -2- and -3-. If necessary, lift dash panel up slightly off central tube.

Remove bracket for knee bolster (right-side) -1-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Install instrument cluster ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 .

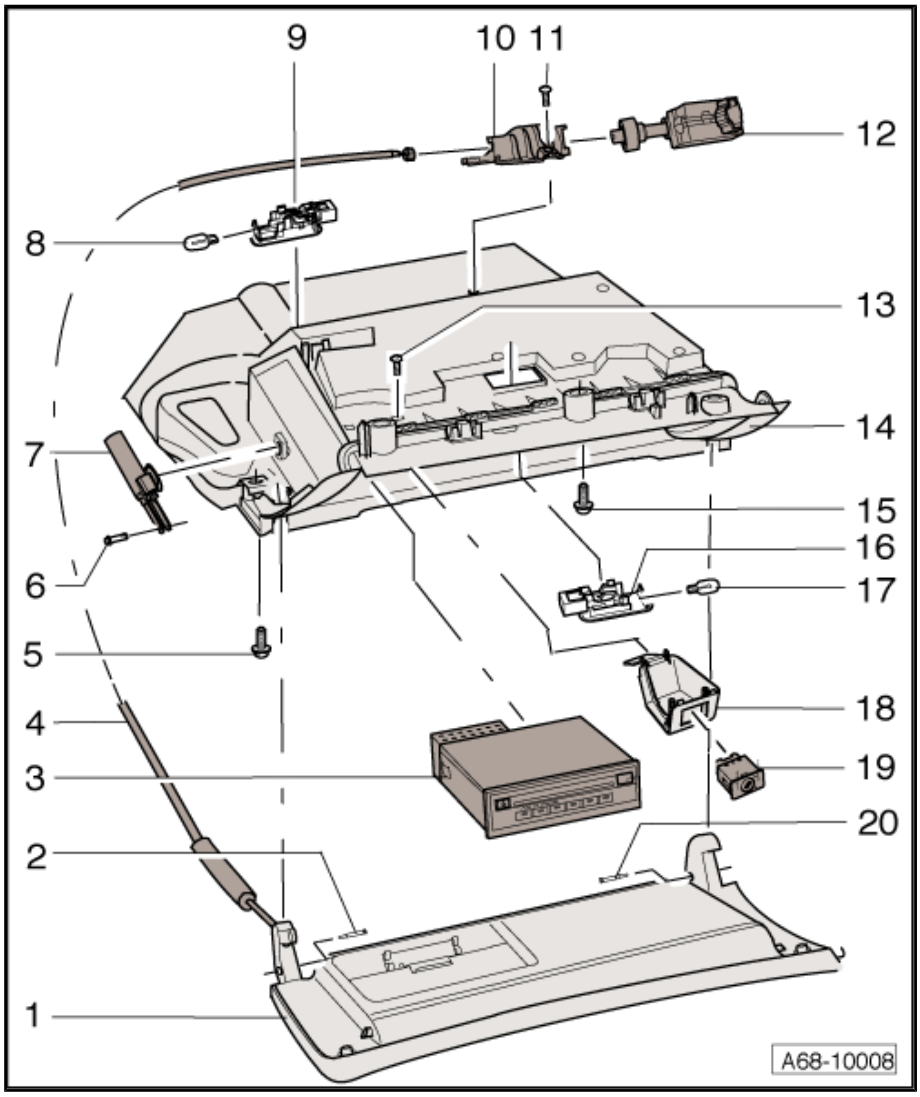
– Install dash panel cover (bottom; driver side) ⇒ page 4 .

Tightening torques

Component	Nm
Bracket for knee bolster to central tube	9
Dash panel to central tube	3.5

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.5 Glove box - exploded view



1 - Glove box lid

- ❑ Manually releasing the glove box lid ⇒ page 11
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 13

2 - Locking pin

- ❑ For securing glove box lid
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 13

3 - CD changer -R41-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91

4 - Cable for releasing glove box lid

- ❑ Cannot be renewed separately, to renew refer to ⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing glove box lid”, page 13
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 15

5 - 3 Nm

6 - Hinge pin

7 - Cushioning element

- ❑ With glove box light switch -E26-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 14

8 - Glass base bulb

- ❑ 12 V, 5 W

9 - Footwell light

10 - Cover of actuator motor for remote release of glove box lid

- ❑ With cable support bracket
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 15

11 - 1 Nm

12 - Actuator motor for remote release of glove box lid

- ❑ Manually releasing the glove box lid ⇒ page 11
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 15

13 - 1 Nm

14 - Glove box

- ❑ Manually releasing the glove box lid ⇒ page 11
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 12

15 - 3 Nm

16 - Glove box light

17 - Glass base bulb

- ❑ 12 V, 5 W

18 - Housing for key-operated switch

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 138

19 - Key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 138

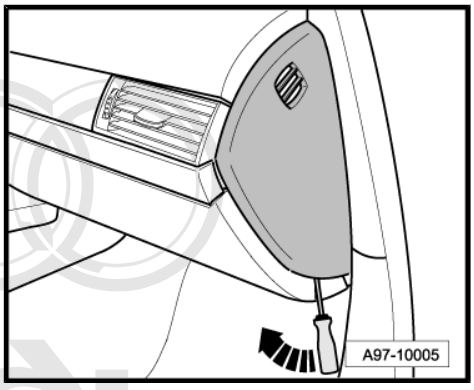
20 - Locking pin

- ❑ For securing glove box lid
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 13

1.6 Manually releasing the glove box lid

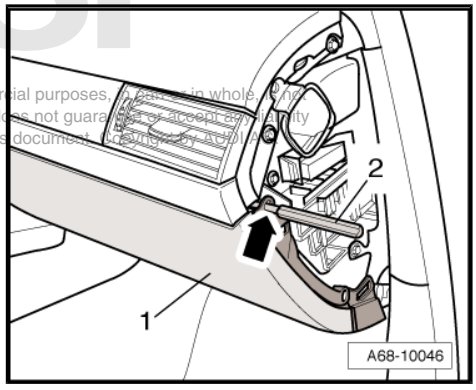
Procedure

– Use screwdriver to prise off dash panel end trim on front passenger side -arrow-.



– Insert a 6 mm ∅ punch -item 2- into the opening -arrow-.

– Push in the locking pin and open the glove box lid -1-.

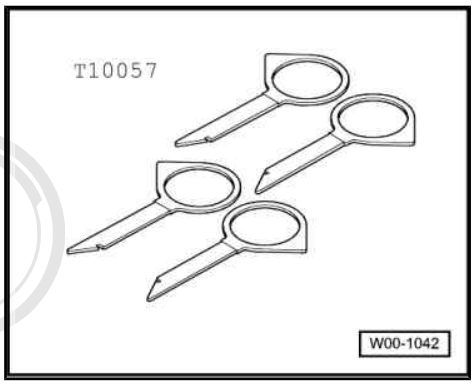


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.7 Removing and installing glove box

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Protective cap -VAS 6223/9-
- Radio release tool -T10057-



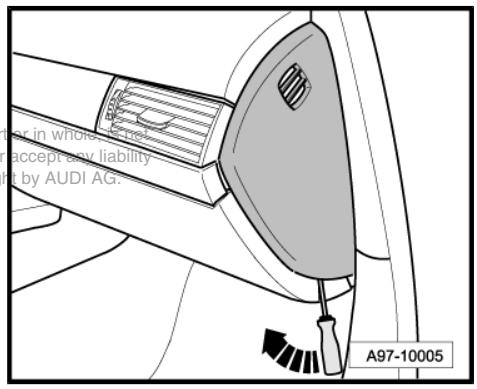
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

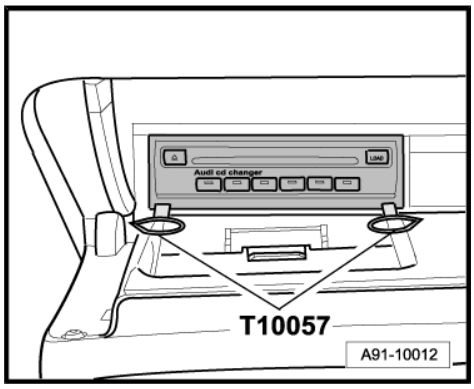
Note

If glove box lid does not open it can be manually released *⇒ page 11* *.*

– Use screwdriver to prise off dash panel end trim on front passenger side -arrow-.



– If vehicle is fitted with a CD changer -R41- remove it as follows:
– Insert 2 keys of radio release tool -T10057- into front of CD changer -R41- .
- Top L - top left
- Top R - top right
– Pull CD changer -R41- out of mounting frame.
– Unplug electrical connector.

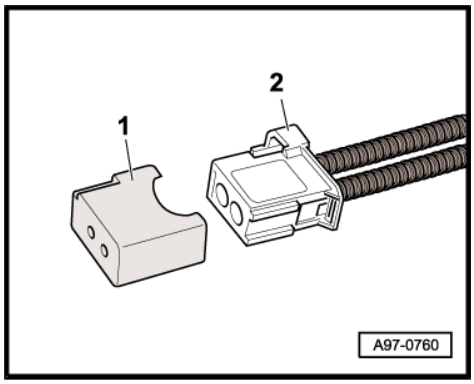


– Unplug connector -2- for fibre optic cable.
– Cover open wiring harness connector -2- of optical fibre cable with protective cap -VAS 6223/9- -Item 1-.

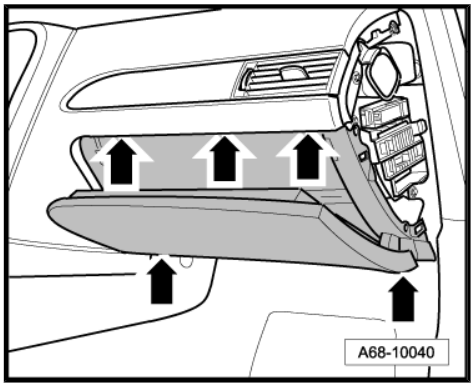
Note

The protective cap is designed to prevent the end face of the fibre optic from becoming soiled or damaged, as this would impair light transmission.

– Press catches on CD changer -R41- and pull release keys out of CD changer.



– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Unplug electrical connector at main connector.
– Detach glove box.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

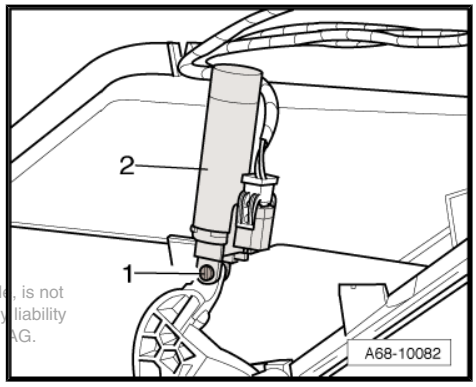
Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Glove box in dash panel	3

1.8 Removing and installing glove box lid

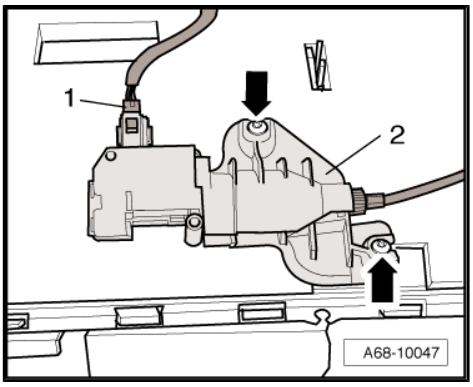
Removing

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 12 .
– Pull hinge pin -1- out of cushioning element -2-.

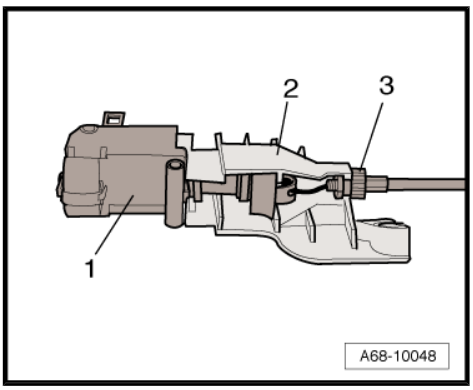


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

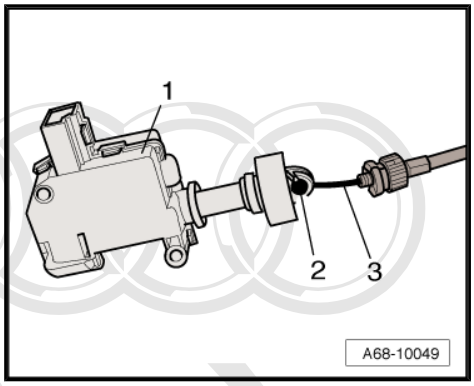
– Unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Remove bolts -arrows- and detach actuator motor -2-.



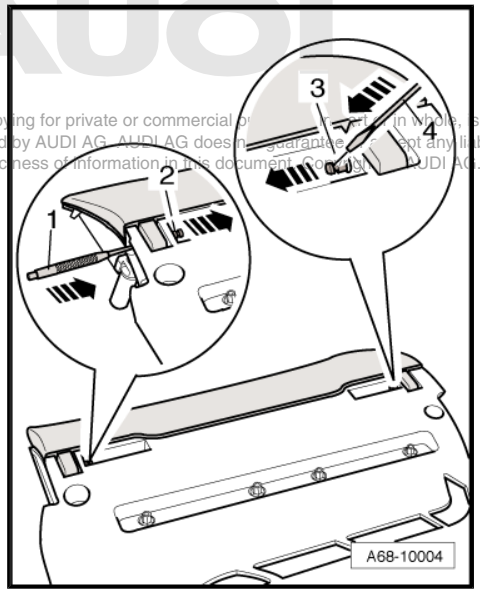
– Detach cable -3- with adjuster nut at cable support bracket.
– Slide protective cover -2- off actuator motor -1-.



– Swivel cable -3- to side and press retaining pin -2- out of actuating rod -1-.
– Detach cable.



– Put glove box down with the upper side facing downwards.
– Knock out locking pin -2- on the left side using a 4 mm ∅ punch -item 1-.
– Knock out locking pin -3- on the right side -arrow- using a screwdriver -4-.
– Open glove box lid by pulling cable.
– Remove glove box lid and guide cable out of glove box.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Adjust cable for glove box lid ⇒ page 15 .
– Install glove box ⇒ page 13 .

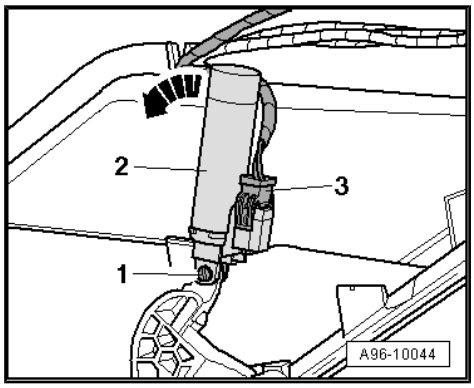
Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Actuator motor for glove box lid to glove box	1

1.9 Removing and installing cushioning element for glove box lid

Removing

– Switch off ignition and remove ignition key.
– Remove glove box ⇒ page 12 .
– Unplug electrical connector -3-.
– Pull out hinge pin -1-.
– Release cushioning element -2- anti-clockwise -arrow- and detach.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Install glove box ⇒ page 13 .

1.10 Removing and installing actuator motor for remote release of glove box lid

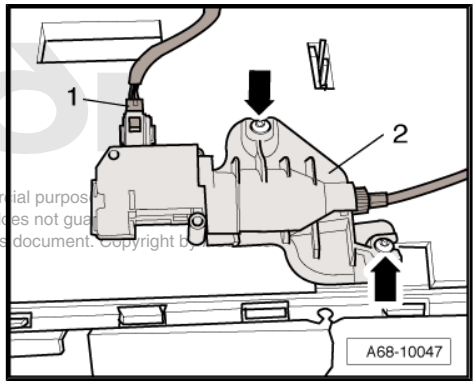
Removing

– Switch off ignition and remove ignition key.

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 12 .

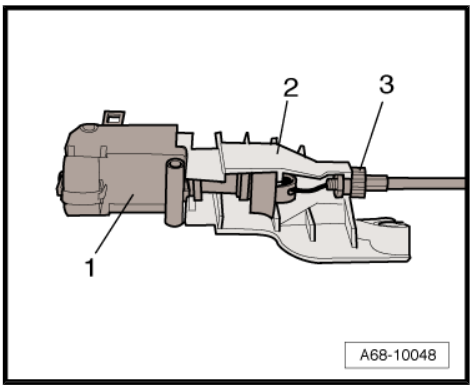
– Unplug electrical connector -1-.

– Remove bolts -arrows- and take out actuator motor for remote release of glove box lid -2- together with cover.



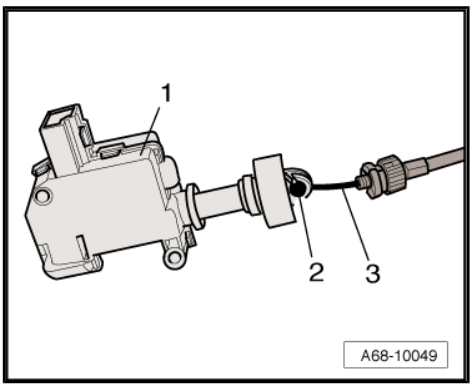
– Detach cable -3- with adjuster nut from cable support bracket in cover.

– Slide cover -2- off actuator motor for remote release of glove box lid -1-.



– Swivel cable -3- and press nipple on brake cable -2- out of actuating rod -1- of actuator motor for remote release of glove box lid.

– Detach cable.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Adjust cable for glove box lid ⇒ page 15 .

– Install glove box ⇒ page 13 .

Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Actuator motor for glove box lid to glove box	1

1.11 Adjusting cable for glove box lid

Procedure

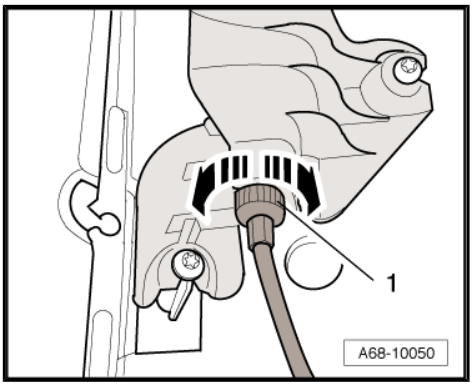
– Remove glove box ⇒ page 12 .

– Adjust cable for releasing glove box lid by turning adjuster nut -1- so that there is no play.

– Check whether glove box lid opens and closes properly.

– If necessary readjust.

– Install glove box ⇒ page 13 .



2 Centre console (rear)

⇒ “2.1 Centre console (rear) - exploded view”, page 16

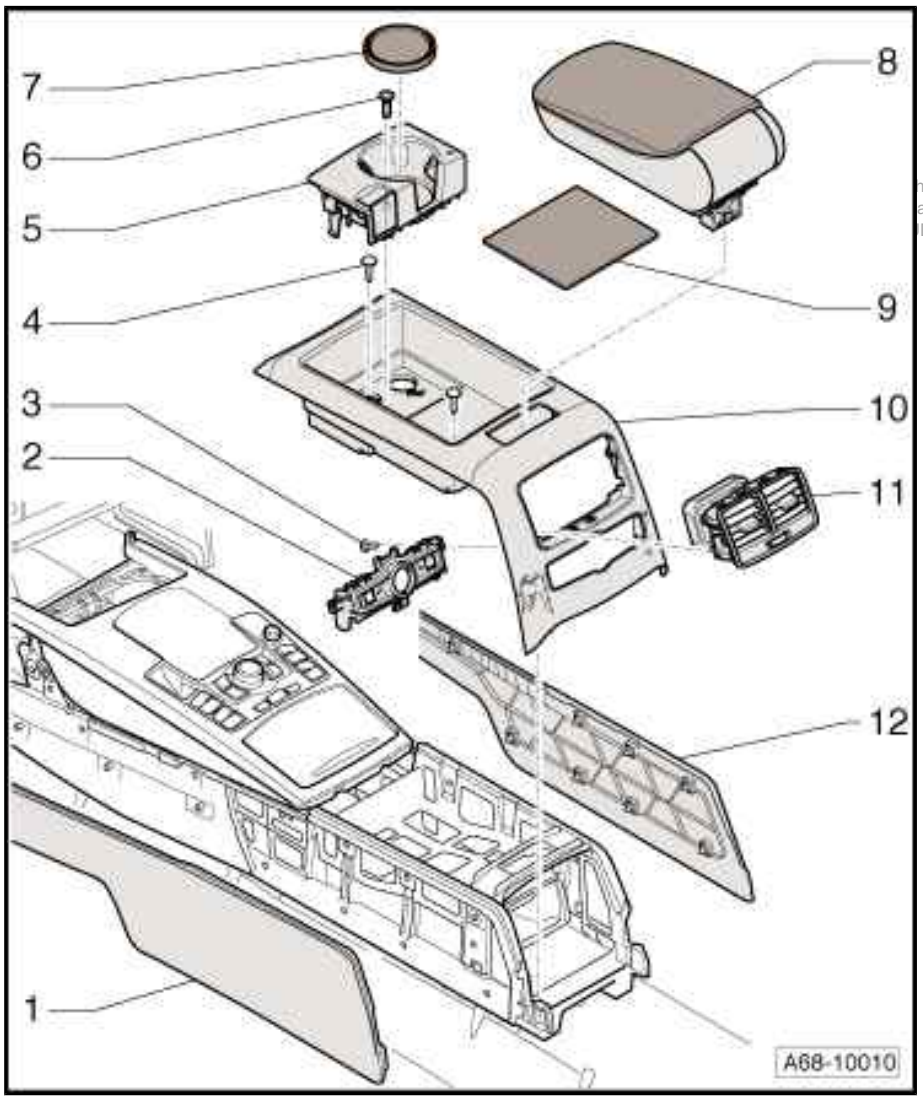
⇒ “2.2 Removing and installing centre console (rear)”, page 17

⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing vent on centre console (rear)”, page 19

⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing cup holder (rear)”, page 20

⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing mounting bracket for seat heating switch and cigarette lighter switch (rear)”, page 20

2.1 Centre console (rear) - exploded view



1 - Side trim (left-side) for centre console

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 31

2 - Mounting

- ❑ For cigarette lighter (rear)
- ❑ For seat heating switch (rear)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 20

3 - 2 Nm

4 - 3 Nm

5 - Cup holder (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 20

6 - 2 Nm

7 - Lining mat for cup holder (rear)

8 - Centre armrest (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 36
- ❑ Retrofitting centre armrest (front) ⇒ page 48

9 - Lining mat for for storage box (rear)

- ❑ Lift out of centre console (rear) with front-end hook -3370- .

10 - Centre console (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 17

11 - Vent in centre console (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 19

12 - Side trim (right-side) for centre console

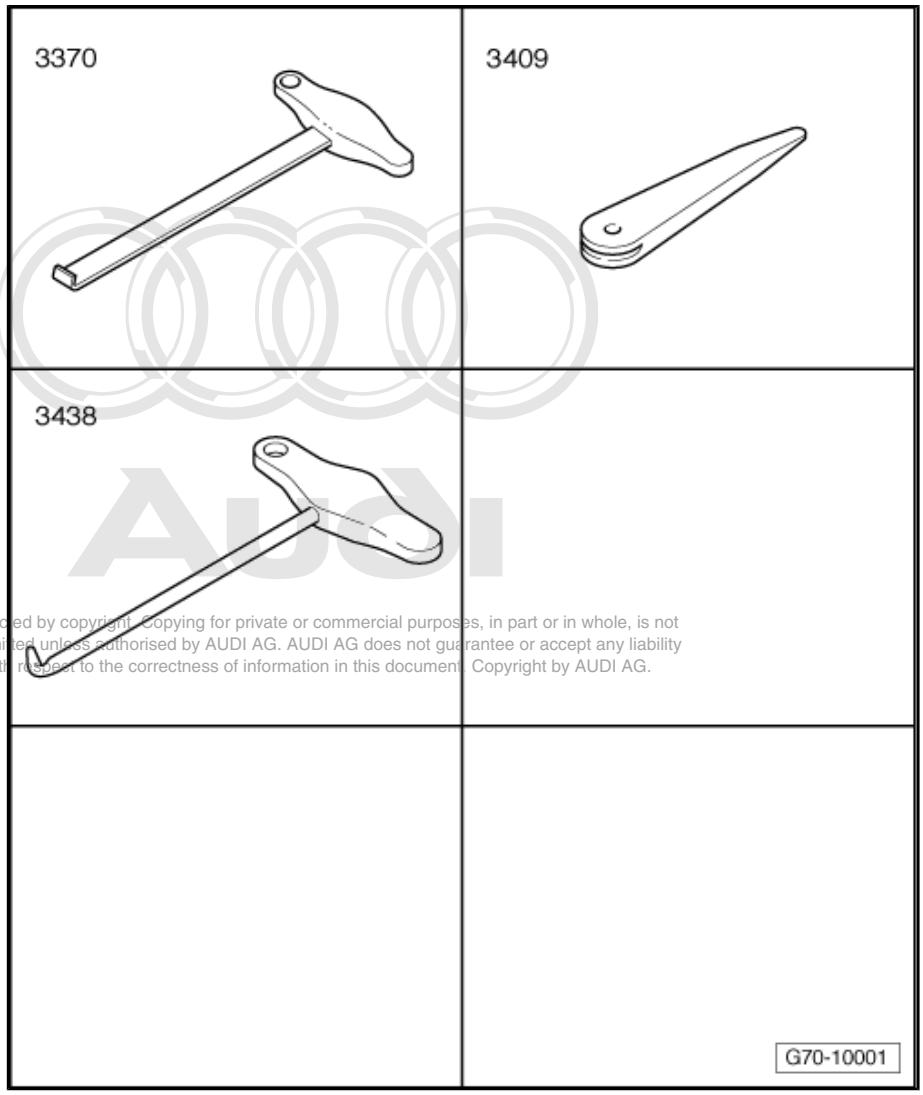
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 31

hole, is not any liability DI AG.

2.2 Removing and installing centre console (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Front-end hook -3370-
- Removal wedge -3409-
- Hook -3438-



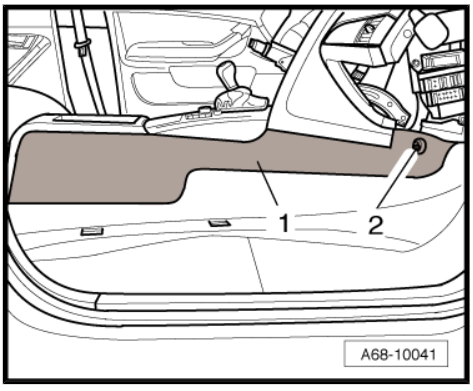
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

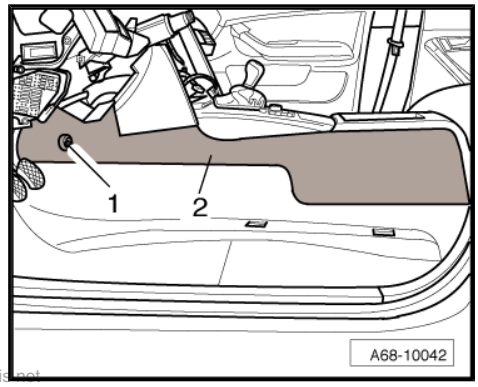
– Use screwdriver to prise cap off bolt -2-.

– Remove bolt.

– Unclip side trim for centre console -1- using removal wedge -3409- and lift out.

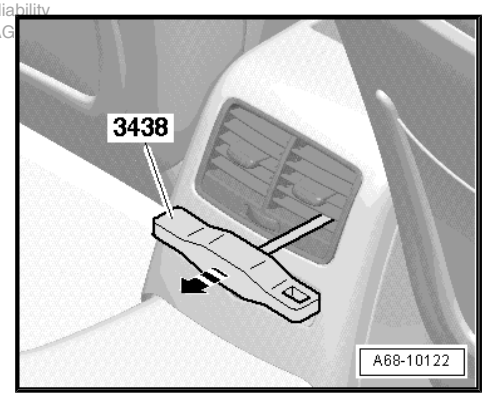


– Use screwdriver to prise cap off bolt -1-.
– Remove bolt.
– Unclip side trim (left-side) for centre console -2- using removal wedge -3409- and lift out.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Bring louvres in vent on centre console (rear) into a horizontal position.



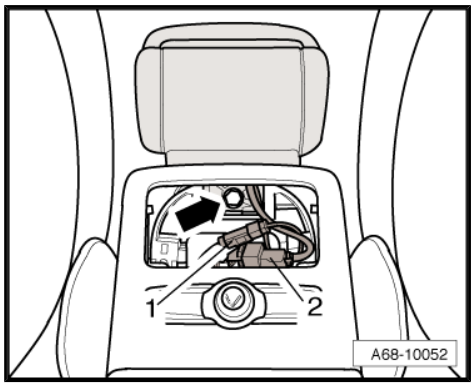
Note

The vent on the centre console (rear) has holes for inserting the hook -3438- .

– Use hook -3438- to pull vent on centre console (rear) out of centre console (rear) in direction of -arrow-.
– If applicable, unplug electrical connector at vent on centre console (rear).

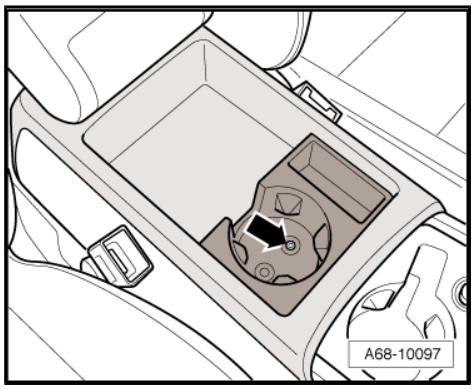
Vehicles with centre armrest (front):

– If fitted, unplug electrical connectors -1- and -2-.
– Remove bolt -arrow-.
– Lift out centre armrest (front).



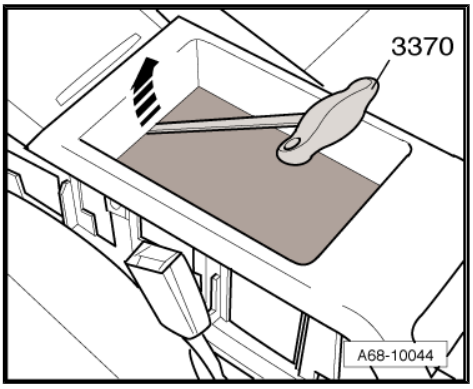
Vehicles with cup holder (rear):

– Take out lining mat.
– Remove bolt -arrow-.
– Pull cup holder (rear) out of centre console (rear).



All vehicles:

– Use front-end hook -3370- to lift lining mat for storage compartment (rear) out of centre console (rear) in direction of -arrow-.

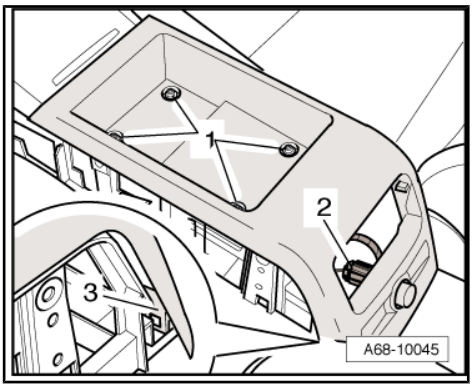


– Unplug electrical connector -2-.

– Unscrew bolts -1-.

– Release centre console (rear left and right) by pulling retaining hooks -3-. Then lift out centre console (rear).

– If fitted, unplug electrical connectors of rotary control for seat heating (rear).



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– When installing centre console (rear) make sure the two retainers (rear left and right) engage correctly.

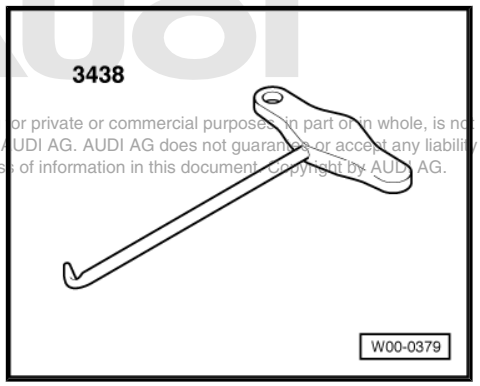
Tightening torques

Component	Nm
Centre console (rear) to mounting frame for centre console	3
Side trim to air conditioner unit	3
Cup holder (rear) in centre console (rear)	2
Centre armrest (front) to support bracket	25

2.3 Removing and installing vent on centre console (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

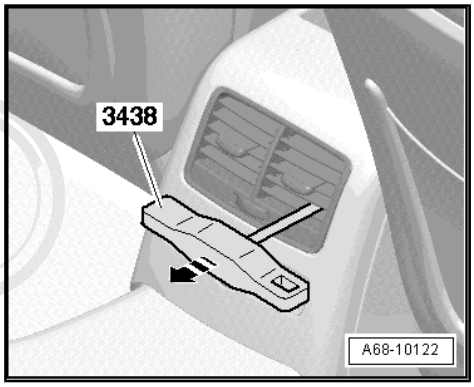
♦ Hook -3438-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Bring louvres in vent on centre console (rear) into a horizontal position.



Note

The vent on the centre console (rear) has holes for inserting the hook -3438- .

– Use hook -3438- to pull vent on centre console (rear) out of centre console (rear) in direction of -arrow-.
– If applicable, unplug electrical connector at vent on centre console (rear).

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

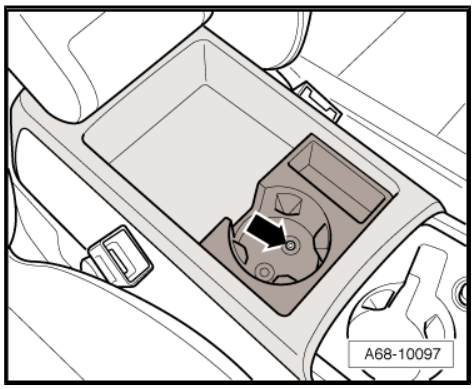
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Push vent on centre console (rear) into installation opening so that retainers engage correctly.

2.4 Removing and installing cup holder (rear)

Removing

– Take out lining mat.
– Remove bolt -arrow-.
– Pull cup holder (rear) out of centre console (rear).



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

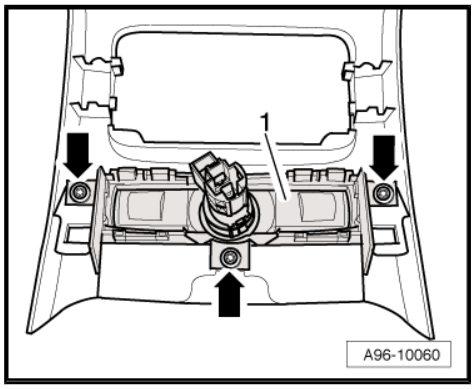
Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Cup holder (rear) in centre console (rear)	2

2.5 Removing and installing mounting bracket for seat heating switch and cigarette lighter switch (rear)

Removing

– Remove centre console (rear) ⇒ page 17 .
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Detach mounting bracket -1- with cigarette lighter from centre console (rear).



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Install centre console (rear) ⇒ page 17 .

Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Mounting bracket with cigarette lighter to centre console (rear)	2

3 Centre console (front)

⇒ “3.1 Centre console (front) - exploded view”, page 21

⇒ “3.2 Removing and installing centre console (front)”, page 22

⇒ “3.3 Removing and installing multimedia system operating unit E380 ”, page 24

⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing trim cover”, page 24

⇒ “3.5 Removing and installing ashtray (front)”, page 25

⇒ “3.6 Removing and installing trim for ashtray (front)”, page 25

⇒ “3.7 Removing and installing cup holder (front)”, page 26

⇒ “3.8 Removing and installing trim for cup holder (front)”, page 27

⇒ “3.9 Removing and installing trim frame for multimedia system operating unit E380 ”, page 29

3.1 Centre console (front) - exploded view

1 - 3 Nm

2 - Trim cover

- ❑ Above ashtray
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 24

3 - Ashtray (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 25

4 - Insert for ashtray (front)

5 - Trim panel for ashtray (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 25

6 - 3 Nm

7 - Gear lever or selector lever

- ❑ Removing and installing gear lever ⇒ Manual gearbox; Rep. gr. 34
- ❑ Removing and installing selector lever ⇒ Automatic gearbox; Rep. gr. 37

8 - Trim frame

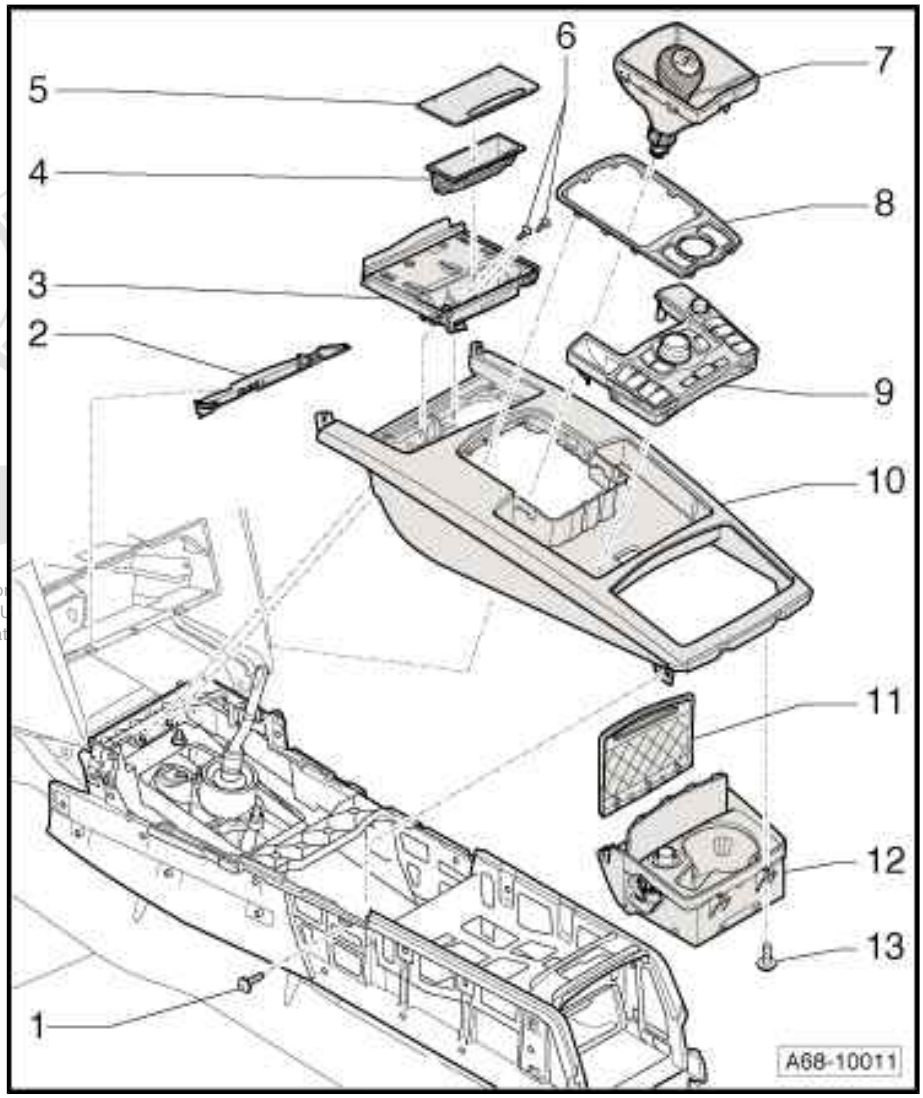
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 29

9 - Multimedia system operating unit -E380-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 24

10 - Centre console (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 22



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

11 - Trim for cup holder (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 27

12 - Cup holder (front)

- ❑ With cigarette lighter (front)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 26

13 - 2 Nm

3.2 Removing and installing centre console (front)

Removing

– On vehicles with automatic gearbox move selector lever to position “S”.

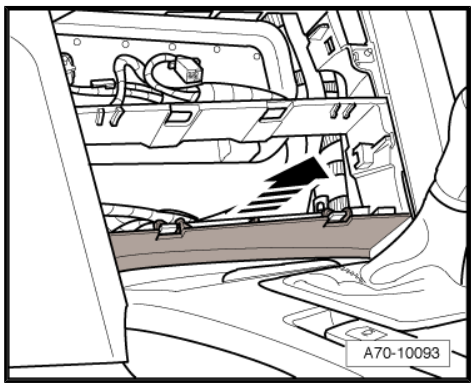
– Switch off ignition.

– Remove centre console (rear) ⇒ page 17 .

– Remove Climatronic control unit -J255- ⇒ Air conditioner; Rep. gr. 87 .

– Detach trim cover -arrow- from above ashtray.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



– Open ashtray (front).

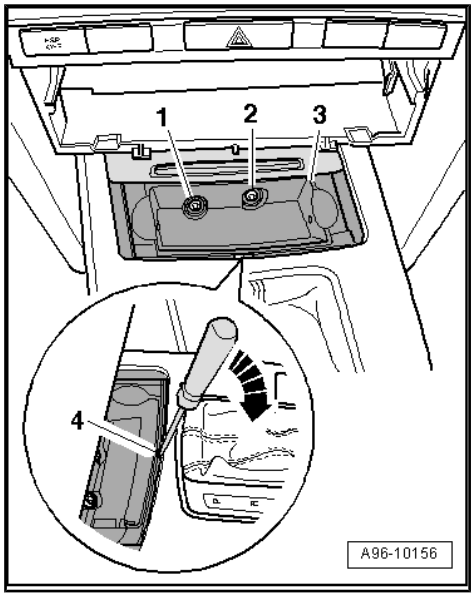
– Take insert out of ashtray (front).

– Remove bolts -1- and -2-.

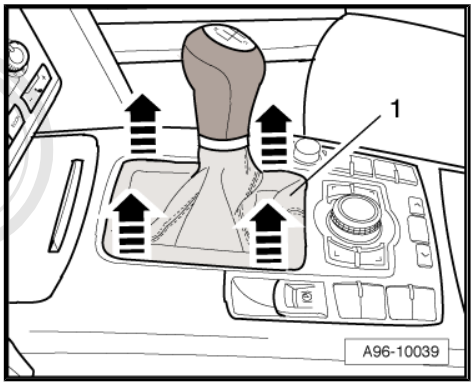
– Use a screwdriver -arrow- to release ashtray -3-. To do so, apply screwdriver in opening -4-.

– Remove housing for ashtray (front).

– If fitted, unplug electrical connector.



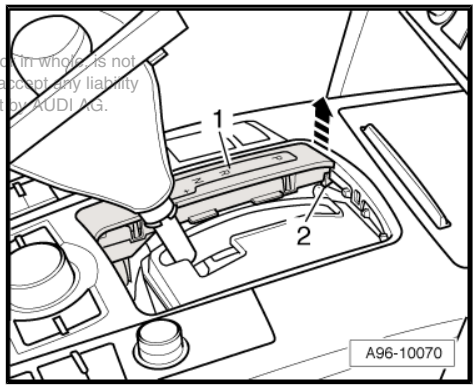
– Unclip boot -1- for gear lever or selector lever on both sides and lift it off -arrows-.



Vehicles with automatic gearbox:

– Release retaining spring -2- and detach selector lever indicator -1- -arrow-.

– Unplug electrical connector.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

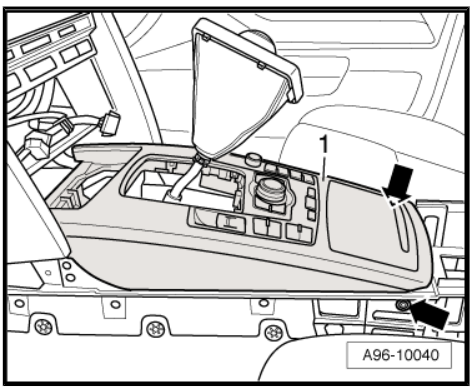
All vehicles:

– It may be necessary to move the front seats into a position that allows access to the bolts -arrows-.

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Lift centre console (front) slightly at rear edge and then pull centre console off dash panel towards the rear.

– Unplug electrical connectors.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Install centre console (rear) ⇒ page 17 .

If electrical connector at electromechanical parking brake button is unplugged, a fault is entered in control unit for electromechanical parking brake.

– Switch on ignition.

– Apply and release electromechanical parking brake.

– Erase fault in control unit for electromechanical parking brake.

Tightening torques

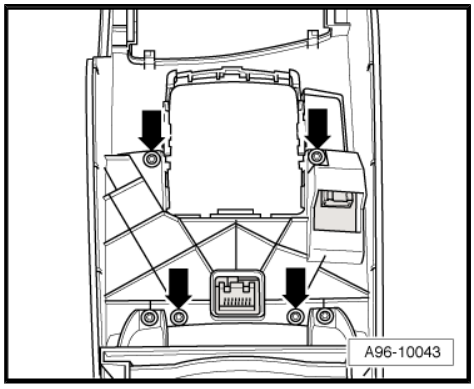
Component	Nm
Centre console (front) to mounting frame for centre console	3
Housing for ashtray (front) to mounting frame for centre console	3

3.3 Removing and installing multimedia system operating unit -E380-

Removing

– Remove centre console (front) ⇒ page 22 .

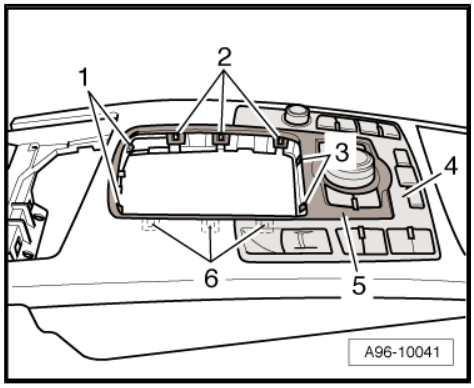
– Remove bolts -arrows-.



– Carefully release retaining clips -1 ... 3- and -6- on trim frame -5- using a narrow-bladed screwdriver.

– Lift off trim frame for multimedia system operating unit -E380- .

– Detach multimedia system operating unit -E380- -item 4-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Install centre console (front) ⇒ page 22 .

Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Multimedia system operating unit -E380- to centre console (front)	3

3.4 Removing and installing trim cover

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– On vehicles with automatic gearbox move selector lever to position “S”.

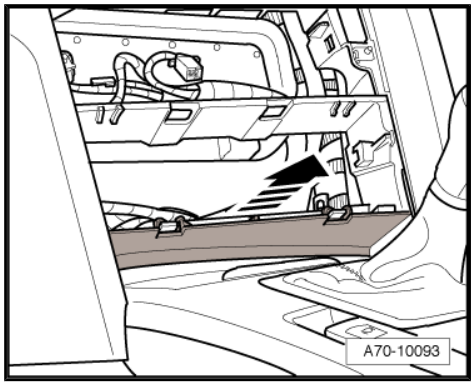
– Switch off ignition.

– Remove Climatronic control unit -J255- ⇒ Air conditioner; Rep. gr. 87 .

Note

Electrical connectors do not have to be unplugged.

– Detach trim cover -arrow- from above ashtray.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

3.5 Removing and installing ashtray (front)

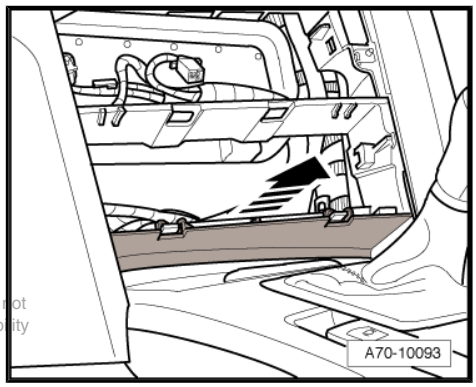
Removing

– On vehicles with automatic gearbox move selector lever to position “S”.

– Switch off ignition.

– Remove Climatronic control unit -J255- ⇒ Air conditioner; Rep. gr. 87 .

– Detach trim cover -arrow- from above ashtray.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Open ashtray (front).

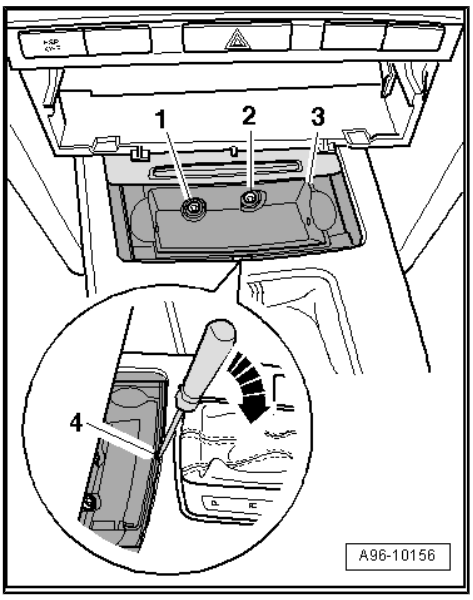
– Take insert out of ashtray (front).

– Remove bolts -1- and -2-.

– Use a screwdriver -arrow- to release ashtray -3-. To do so, apply screwdriver in opening -4-.

– Remove housing for ashtray (front).

– If fitted, unplug electrical connector.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Housing for ashtray (front) to mounting frame for centre console	3

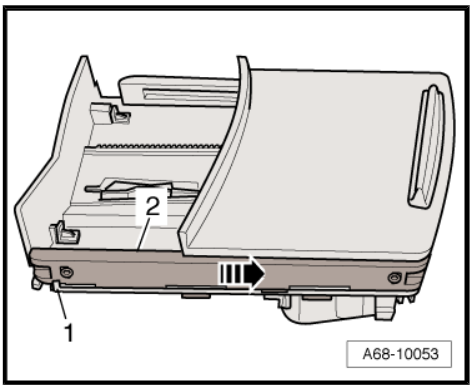
3.6 Removing and installing trim for ashtray (front)

Removing

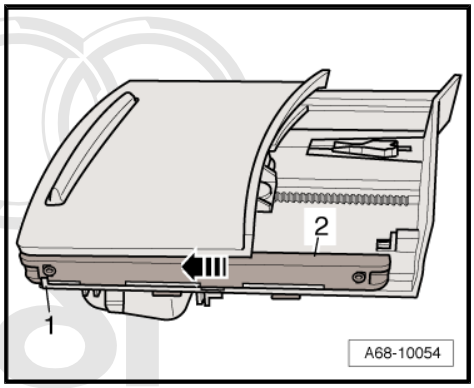
– Remove ashtray (front) ⇒ page 25 .

– Use a small screwdriver to release lug -1-.

– Push side guide panel (left-side) -2- in direction of -arrow- and remove.

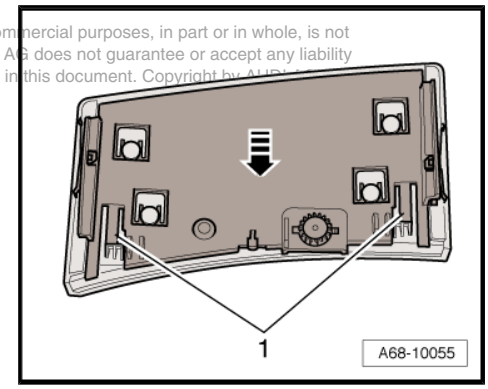


– Use a small screwdriver to release lug -1-.
– Push side guide panel (right-side) -2- in direction of -arrow- and remove.
– Detach ashtray cover with trim panel.



– Use a small screwdriver to release the lugs -1- and push the ashtray cover off the trim panel -arrow-.

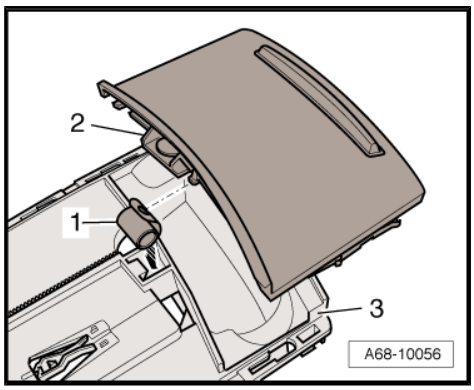
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

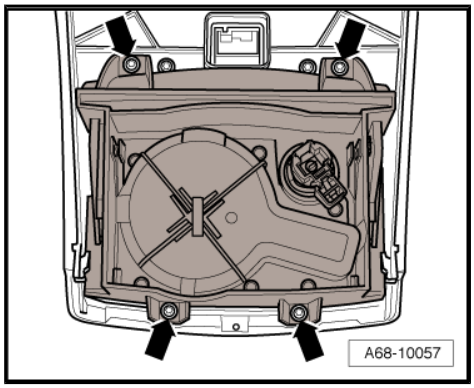
– First hook »spring« -1- into ashtray lid -2-.
– Install coil spring in housing for ashtray (front) -3- -arrow-.
– Install side guide panels.
– Install ashtray (front) ⇒ page 25 .



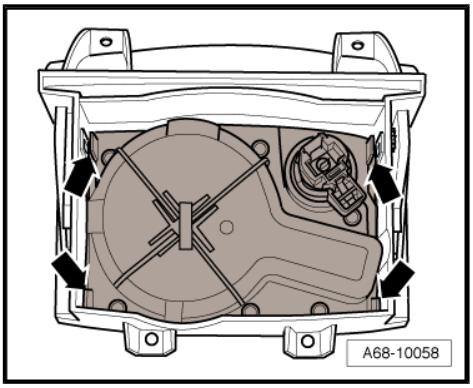
3.7 Removing and installing cup holder (front)

Removing

– Remove centre console (front) ⇒ page 22 .
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Remove cup holder (front).



– Open cup holder (front).
– Release cup holder insert using a small screwdriver -arrows- and remove cup holder insert.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Push cup holder insert downwards into retainers until it engages.
– Install centre console (front) ⇒ page 22 .

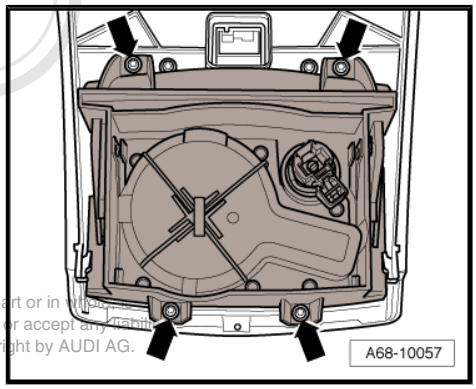
Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Cup holder (front) to centre console (front)	2

3.8 Removing and installing trim for cup holder (front)

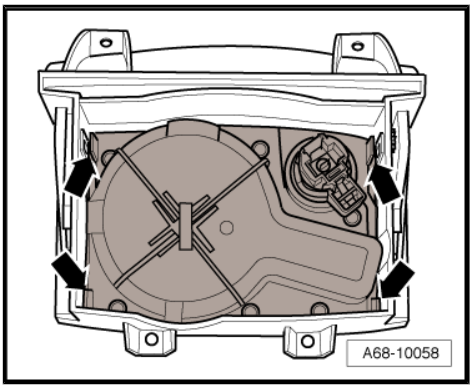
Removing

– Remove centre console (front) ⇒ page 22 .
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Remove cup holder (front).

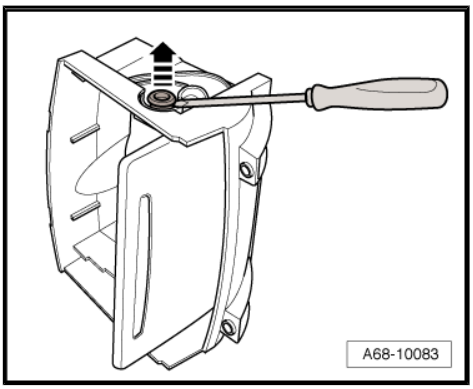


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

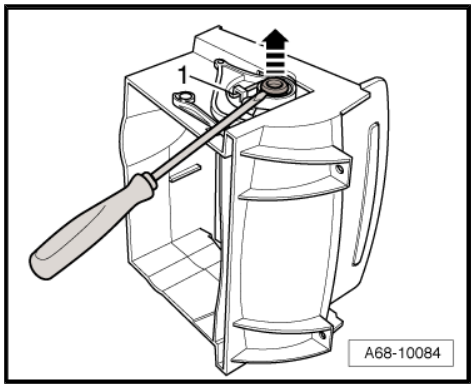
– Open cup holder (front).
– Release cup holder insert using a small screwdriver -arrows- and remove cup holder insert.



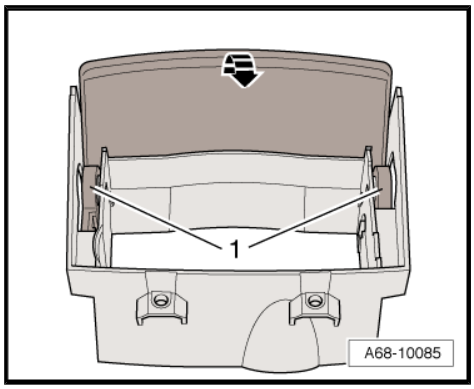
– Use screwdriver to prise out hinge pin (right-side) -arrow-.



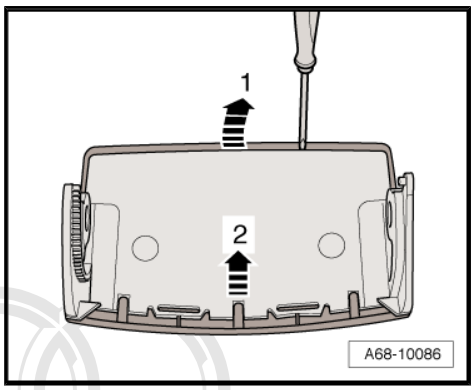
– Use screwdriver to prise out hinge pin (left-side) -arrow- and unhook tensioning spring -1-.



– Unhook clips -1- and remove cup holder cover with trim panel -arrow-.



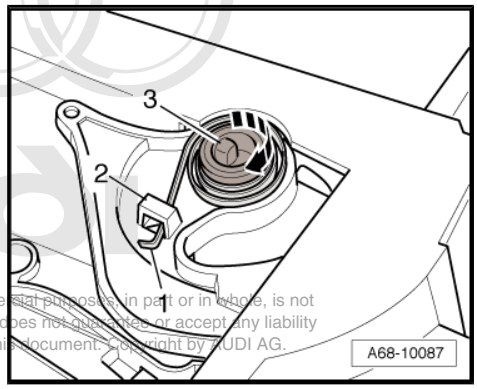
– Use a narrow-bladed screwdriver to carefully prise cup holder cover out at front of trim panel -arrow 1-.
– Push cup holder cover out of trim panel -arrow 2-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– First hook tensioning spring -1- with hinge pin into cup holder cover -2-.
– Position hinge pin and turn in direction of -arrow- (approx. 90°).
• Marking -3- on hinge pin must point upwards.
– Fit hinge pin in this position.
– Install centre console (front) ⇒ page 22.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Tightening torque

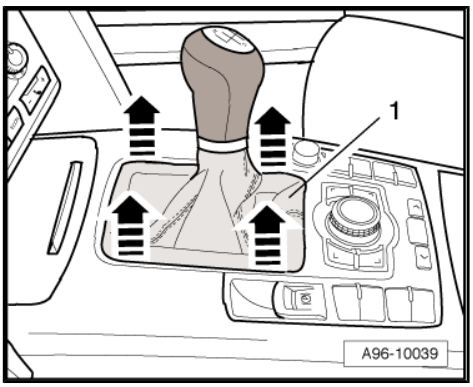
Component	Nm
Cup holder (front) to centre console (front)	2

3.9 Removing and installing trim frame for multimedia system operating unit - E380-

Removing

– Unclip boot -1- for gear lever or selector lever on both sides and lift it off -arrows-.

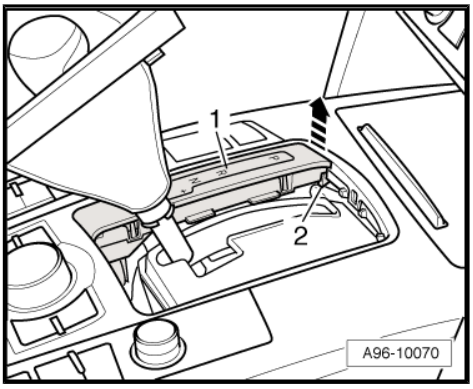
– Lift off boot for gear lever or selector lever.



Vehicles with automatic gearbox:

– Release retaining spring -2- and detach selector lever indicator -1- -arrow-.

– Unplug electrical connector.



All vehicles:

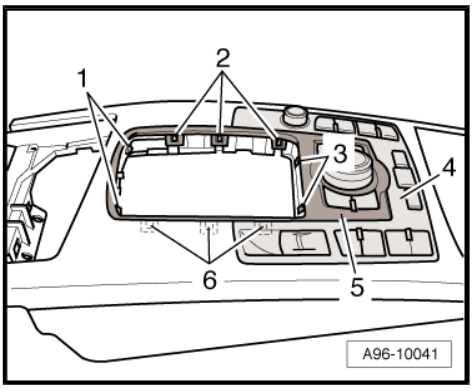
– Carefully release retaining clips -1 ... 3- and -6- on trim frame for multimedia system operating unit -E380- -5- using a narrow-bladed screwdriver.

– Lift trim frame off centre console and multimedia system operating unit -E380- -item 4-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Push trim frame into retainers until it engages.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 Mounting frame for centre console

⇒ “4.1 Mounting frame for centre console - exploded view”, page 30

⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing mounting frame for centre console”, page 31

⇒ “4.3 Removing and installing side trim for centre console”, page 31

⇒ “4.4 Removing and installing air duct”, page 32

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.1 Mounting frame for centre console - exploded view

1 - 3 Nm

2 - Mounting bracket

3 - Side trim (left-side) for centre console

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 31

4 - 3 Nm

5 - Mounting frame for centre console

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 31

6 - Cap

7 - 3 Nm

8 - 3 Nm

9 - Side trim (right-side) for centre console

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 31

10 - 4 Nm

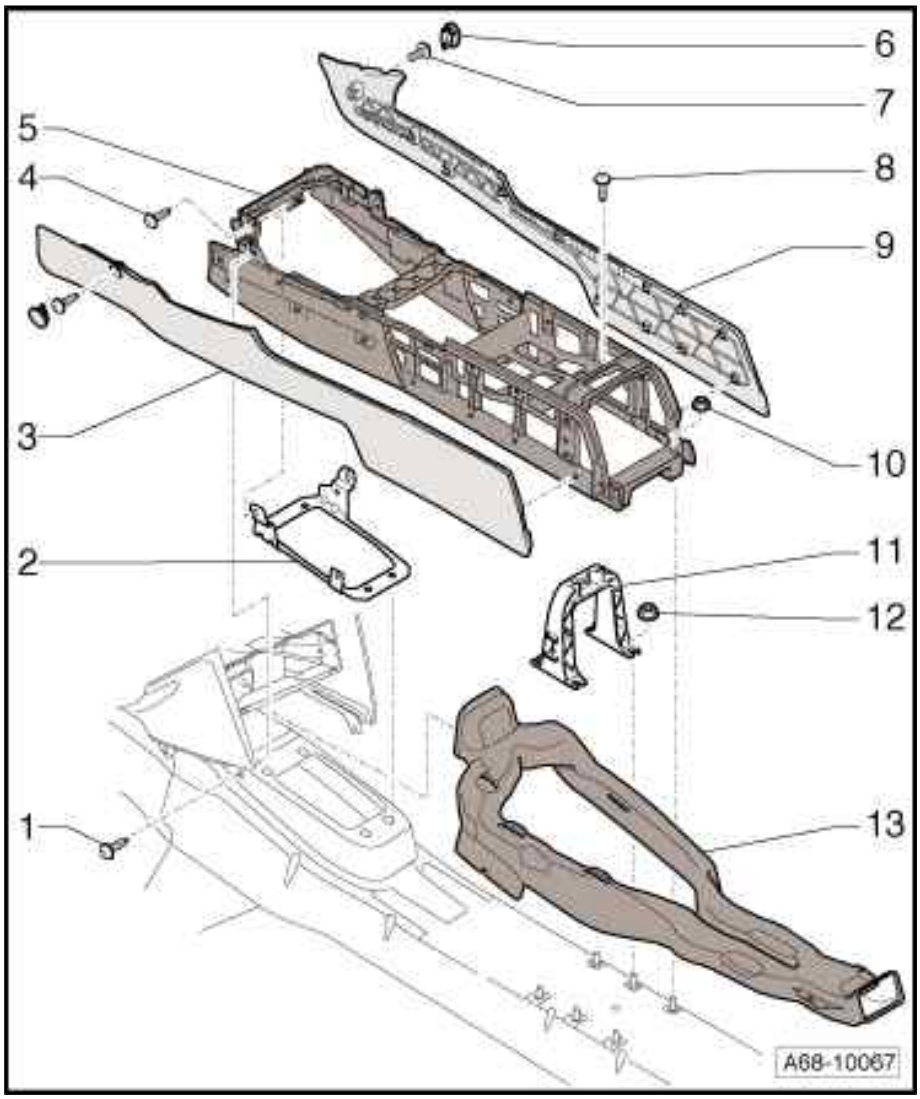
11 - Support bracket for centre armrest (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 44

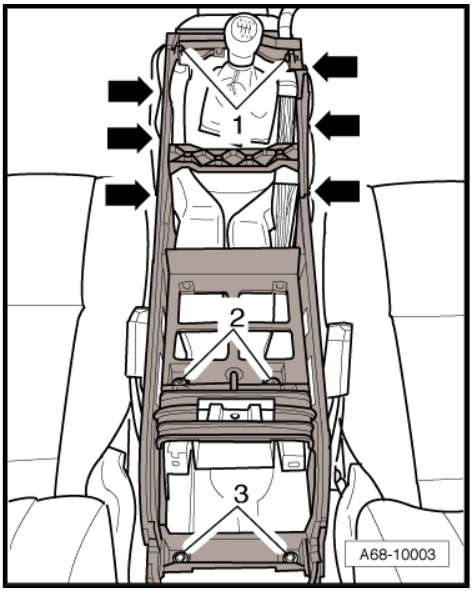
12 - 25 Nm

13 - Air duct

- ❑ In centre console
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 32



4.2 Removing and installing mounting frame for centre console



Removing

– Remove centre console (rear) ⇒ page 17 .
– Remove centre console (front) ⇒ page 22 .
– Unscrew bolts -1- and -2- and nuts -3-.
– Unhook floor covering on sides of mounting frame for centre console -arrows-.
– Lift mounting frame for centre console out of studs and pull off towards the rear.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Install centre console (front) ⇒ page 22 .
– Install centre console (rear) ⇒ page 17 .

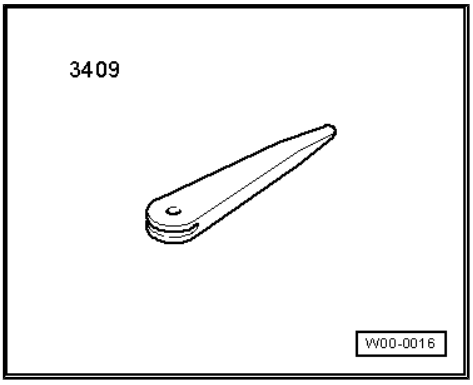
Tightening torques

Component	Nm
Mounting frame for centre console to air duct	3
Mounting frame for centre console to mounting bracket	3
Mounting frame for centre console to dash panel	3
Mounting frame for centre console to body (nut)	4

4.3 Removing and installing side trim for centre console

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge -3409-



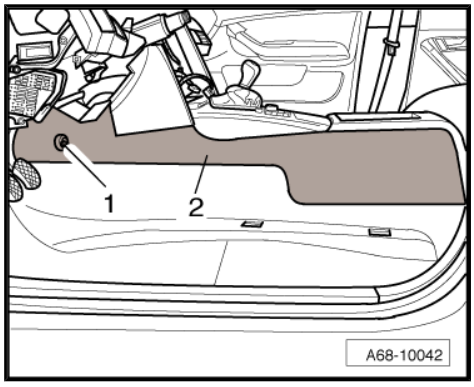
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Use screwdriver to prise cap off bolt -1-.

– Remove bolt.

– Unclip side trim -2- for centre console using removal wedge -3409- and lift out.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

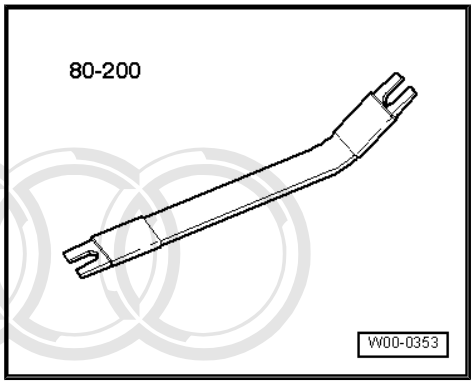
Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Side trim to air conditioner unit	3

4.4 Removing and installing air duct

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever -80-200-

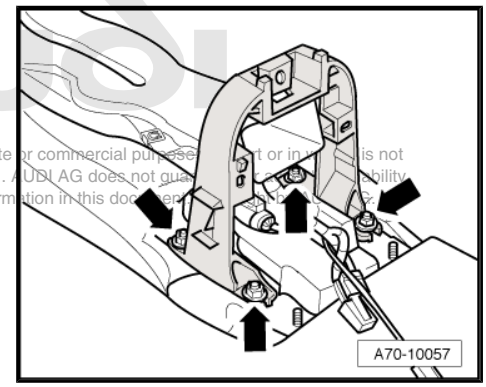


Removing

– Remove centre console (rear) ⇒ page 17 .

– Remove centre console (front) ⇒ page 22 .

– Remove mounting frame for centre console ⇒ page 31 .



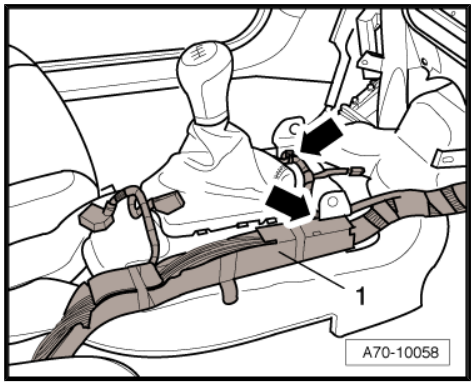
Vehicles with centre armrest (front):

– Unscrew nuts -arrows- and detach support bracket for centre armrest (front).

All vehicles:

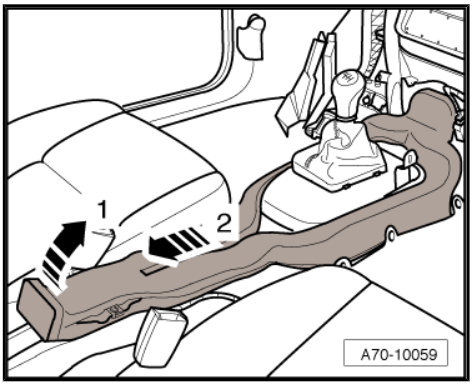
– Detach cable guide -1- from air duct.

– Use removal lever -80-200- to push electrical wires off brackets at points marked with -arrows- in illustration.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Lift air duct at rear -arrow 1- and detach from air conditioner unit -arrow 2-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Install mounting frame for centre console ⇒ page 31 .

– Install centre console (front) ⇒ page 22 .

– Install centre console (rear) ⇒ page 17 .

Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Support bracket for centre armrest (front) to body	25

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 Centre armrest (front)

⇒ “5.1 Exploded view of centre armrest (front)”, page 34

⇒ “5.2 Removing and installing centre armrest (front)”, page 36

⇒ “5.3 Removing and installing support for centre armrest (front)”, page 36

⇒ “5.4 Removing and installing storage compartment for centre armrest (front)”, page 39

⇒ “5.5 Removing and installing handle for centre armrest (front)”, page 41

⇒ “5.6 Removing and installing cover for centre armrest (front)”, page 42

⇒ “5.7 Removing and installing padding for centre armrest (front)”, page 43

⇒ “5.8 Removing and installing support bracket for centre armrest (front)”, page 44

⇒ “5.9 Removing and installing trim panels for base of centre armrest”, page 44

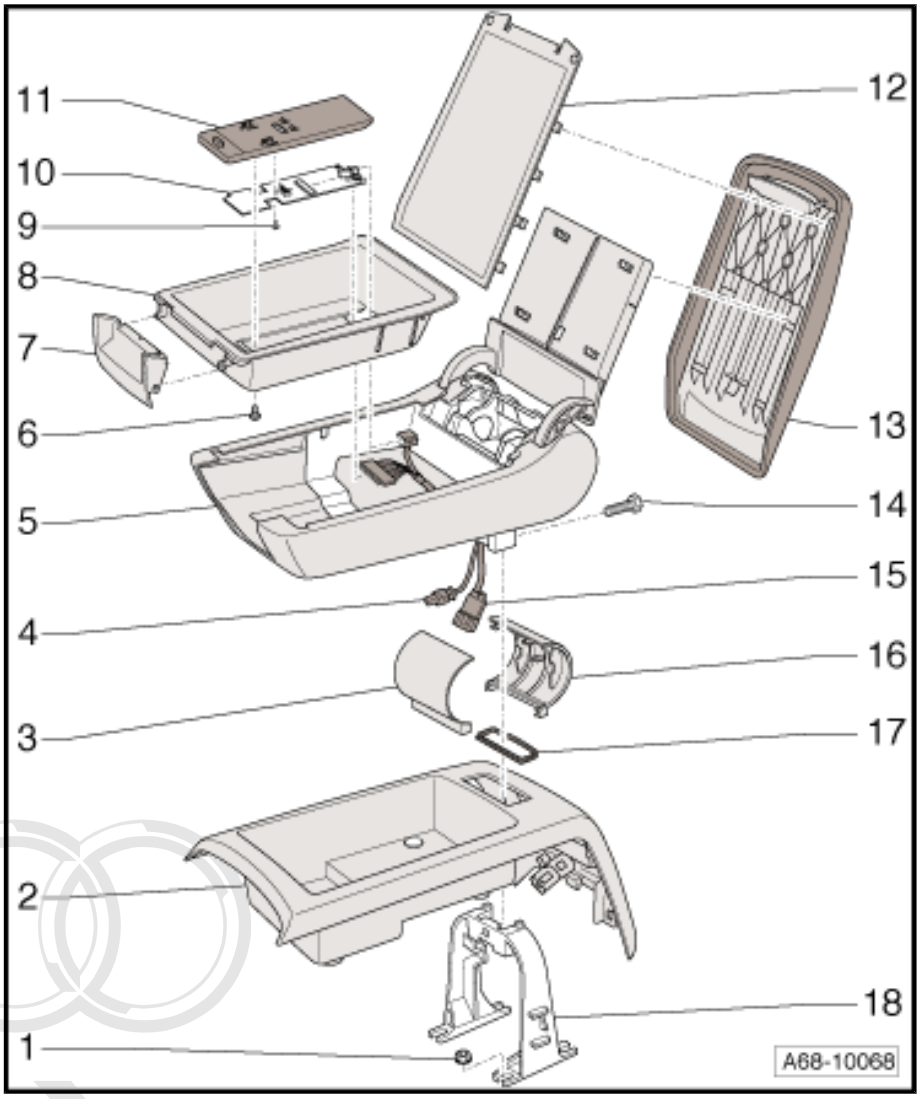
⇒ “5.10 Removing and installing mounting bracket for car telephone or lift mechanism for mobile phone”, page 45

⇒ “5.11 Removing and installing wiring harness for telephone or mobile phone”, page 47

⇒ “5.12 Retrofitting centre armrest (front)”, page 48

5.1 Exploded view of centre armrest (front)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - 25 Nm

2 - Centre console (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 17

3 - Trim (front) for base of centre armrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 44
- ❑ Clipped in

4 - Electrical connector for telephone aerial

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 47

5 - Support for centre armrest (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 36

6 - 1 Nm

7 - Handle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 41

8 - Storage compartment

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 39

9 - 0.5 Nm

10 - Printed circuit board for telephone

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 45

11 - Mounting bracket for car telephone or lift mechanism for mobile phone

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 45

12 - Cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 42

13 - Padding

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 43

14 - 25 Nm

15 - Electrical connector for car telephone / mobile phone

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 47

16 - Trim (rear) for base of centre armrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 44
- ❑ Clipped in

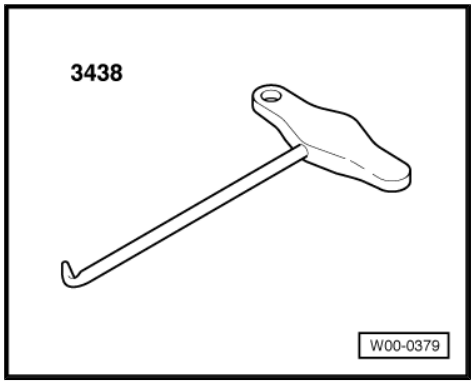
17 - Seal

18 - Support bracket for centre armrest (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 44

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.2 Removing and installing centre armrest (front)

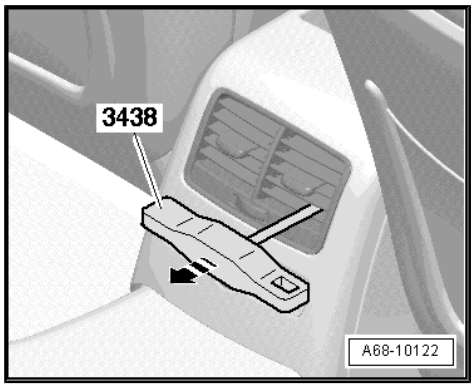


Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Hook -3438-

Removing

– Bring louvres in vent on centre console (rear) into a horizontal position.

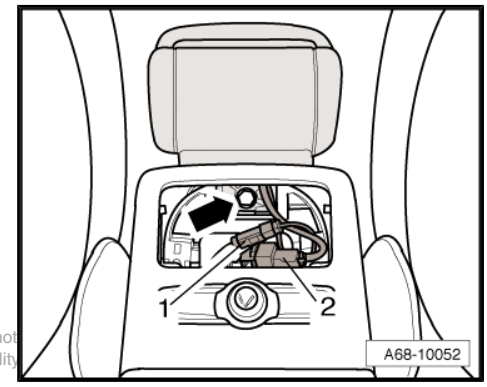


Note

The vent on the centre console (rear) has holes for inserting the hook -3438- .

– Use hook -3438- to pull vent on centre console (rear) out of centre console (rear) in direction of -arrow-.

– If applicable, unplug electrical connector at vent on centre console (rear).



– If fitted, unplug electrical connectors -1- and -2-.

– Remove bolt -arrow-.

– Lift out centre armrest (front).

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Push vent on centre console (rear) into installation opening so that retainers engage correctly.

Tightening torque

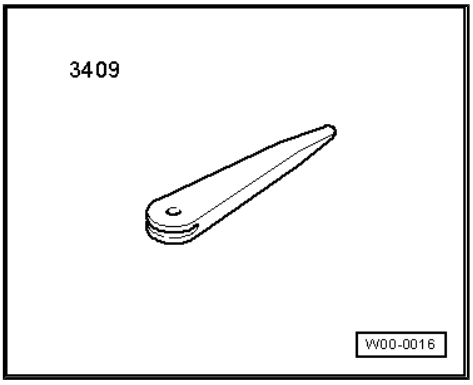
Component	Nm
Centre armrest (front) to support bracket	25

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.3 Removing and installing support for centre armrest (front)

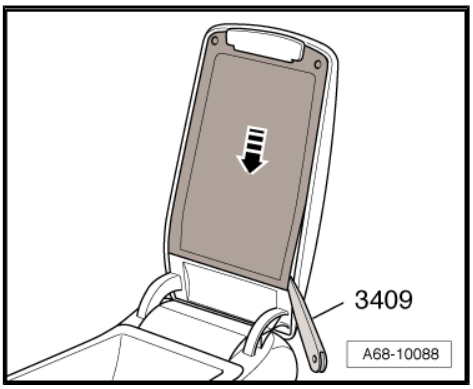
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge -3409-

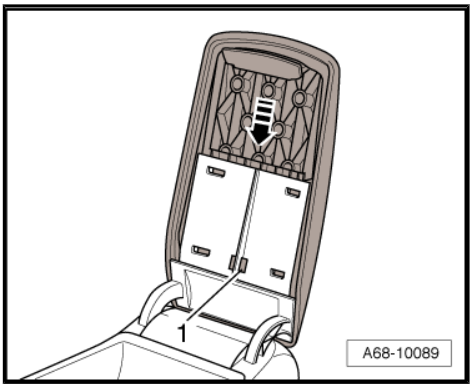


Removing

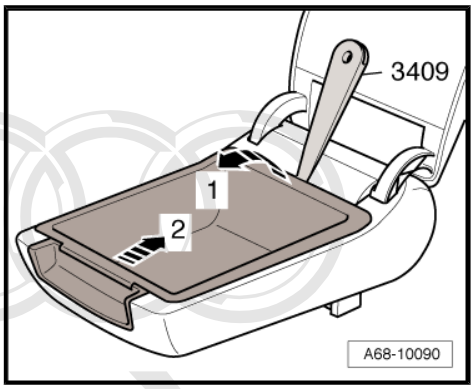
– Remove centre armrest (front) ⇒ page 36 .
– Open centre armrest (front).
– Use removal wedge -3409- to carefully prise cover off padding, starting at bottom of cover.
– Pull cover downwards out of armrest padding -arrow-.



– Press retaining tab -1- and simultaneously push armrest padding downwards -arrow- until lugs on armrest padding disengage out of openings on support for centre armrest (front).



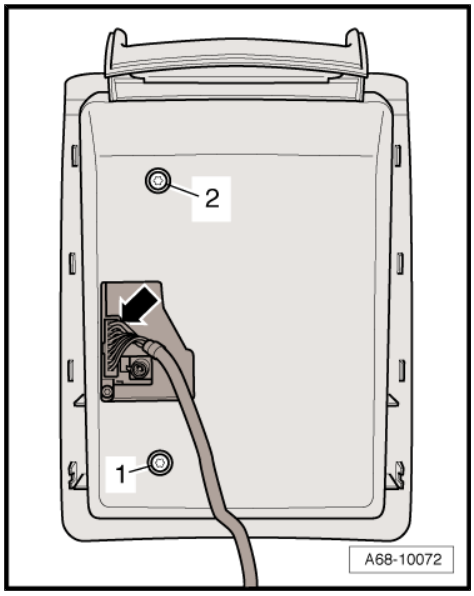
– Use removal wedge -3409- to prise rear edge of storage compartment off support for centre armrest (front) -arrow 1-.
– Lift storage compartment including handle off support for centre armrest (front) in direction of -arrow 2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Vehicles with lift mechanism for mobile phone:

– Unplug electrical connector on underside of storage compartment -arrow-.



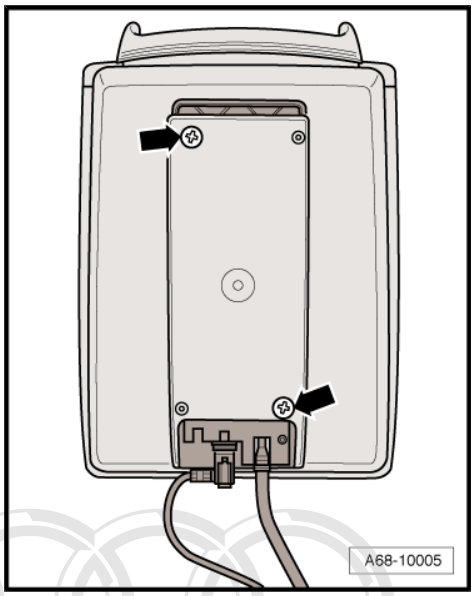
Note

Disregard items -1- and -2-.

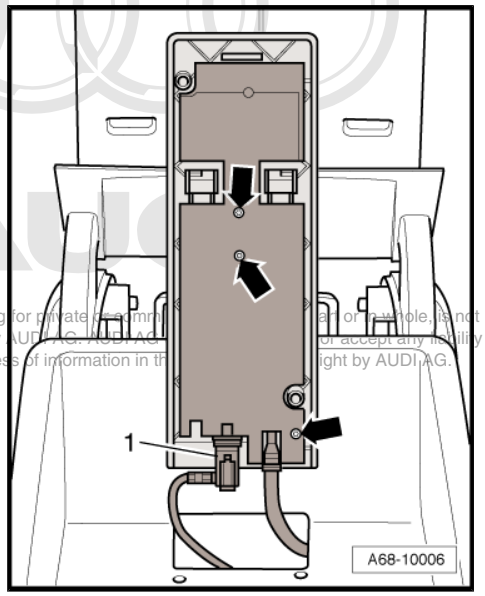
– Remove storage compartment.

Vehicles with mounting bracket for car telephone:

– Unscrew bolts on underside of storage compartment -arrows-.



– Unplug electrical connector -1- for telephone aerial.
– Unscrew printed circuit board for telephone -arrows-.
– Unplug electrical connector.
– Remove storage compartment.

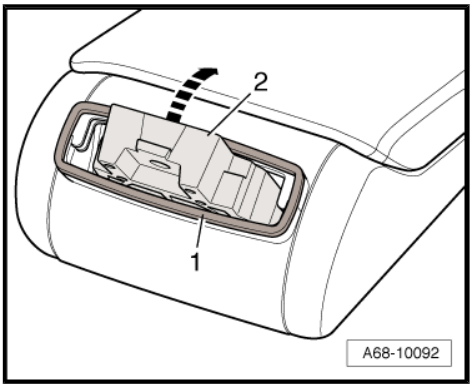


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

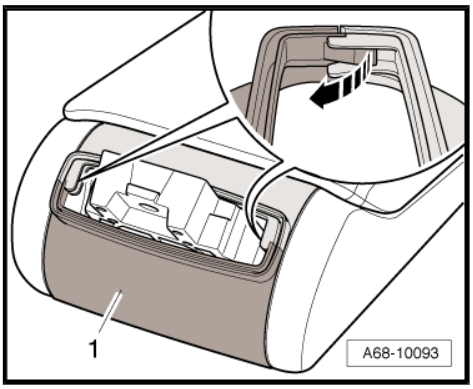
All vehicles:

– Fold base of centre armrest -2- upwards as far as it will go -arrow-.

– Lever out gasket -1- using a small screwdriver.



– Unclip front trim for base of centre armrest -1- using a small screwdriver -arrow- and then remove trim.

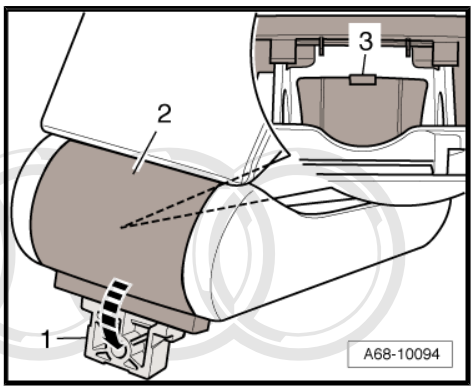


– Fold base of centre armrest -1- downwards as far as it will go -arrow-.

– Open centre armrest (front).

– Unhook retaining tab -3- of rear trim for base of centre armrest -2- at support for centre armrest (front).

– Remove rear trim for base of centre armrest.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Ensure that the armrest padding engages correctly with the support for the centre armrest (front).

– Ensure that the cover engages correctly with the padding.

– Install centre armrest (front) ⇒ page 36 .

Tightening torques

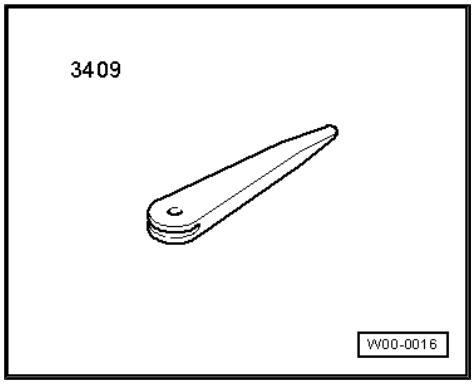
Component	Nm
Printed circuit board for telephone to mounting bracket	0.5
Mounting bracket to storage compartment	1

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.4 Removing and installing storage compartment for centre armrest (front)

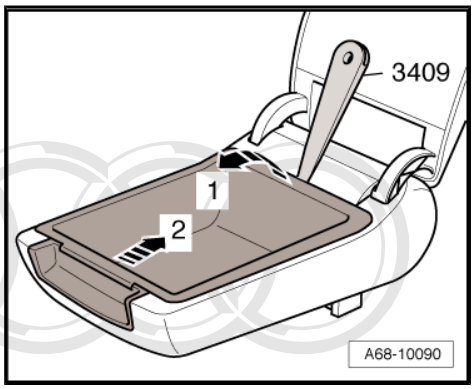
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge -3409-



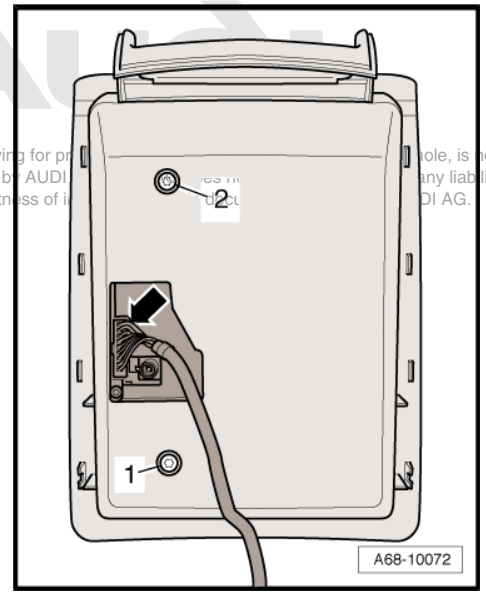
Removing

– Open centre armrest (front).
– Use removal wedge -3409- to prise rear edge of storage compartment off support for centre armrest (front) -arrow 1-.
– Lift storage compartment including handle off support for centre armrest (front) in direction of -arrow 2-.



Vehicles with lift mechanism for mobile phone:

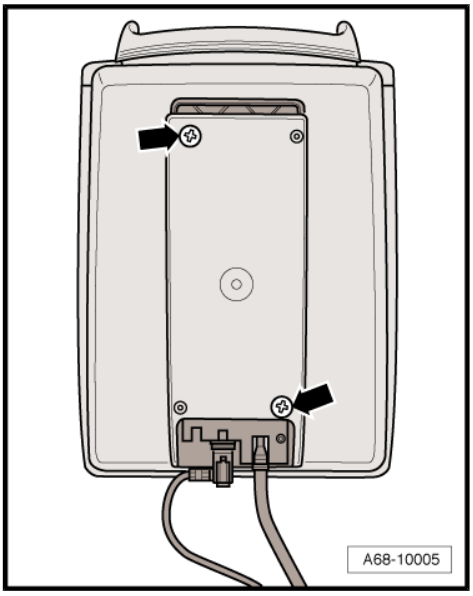
– Unplug electrical connector on underside of storage compartment -arrow-.
– Unscrew bolts -1- and -2- on underside of storage compartment.
– Remove storage compartment and lift mechanism for mobile phone.



Protected by copyright. Copying for pr ole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI es n any liability with respect to the correctness of i uct DI AG.

Vehicles with mounting bracket for car telephone:

– Unscrew bolts on underside of storage compartment -arrows-.



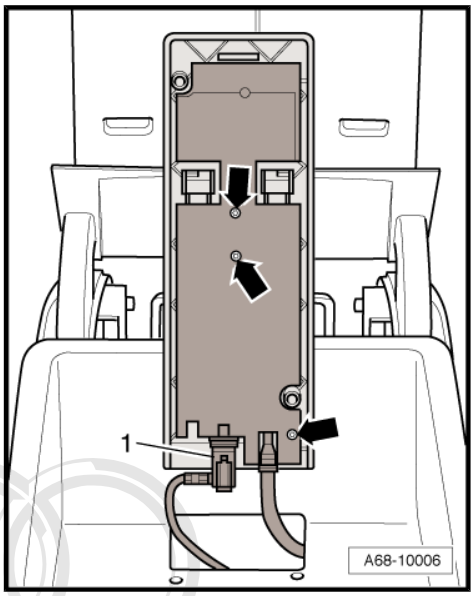
– Unplug electrical connector -1- for telephone aerial.
– Unscrew printed circuit board for telephone -arrows-.
– Unplug electrical connector.
– Remove storage compartment.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

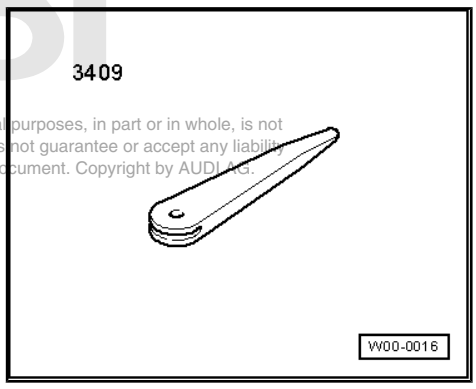
Component	Nm
Printed circuit board for telephone to mounting bracket	0.5
Mounting bracket to storage compartment	1



5.5 Removing and installing handle for centre armrest (front)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge -3409-



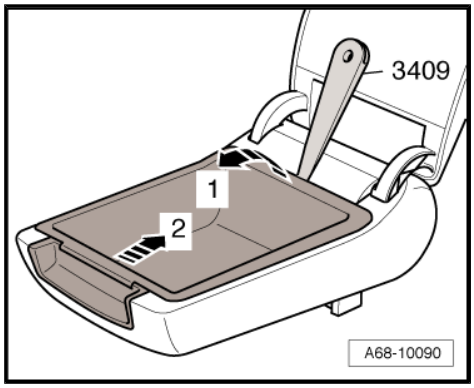
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

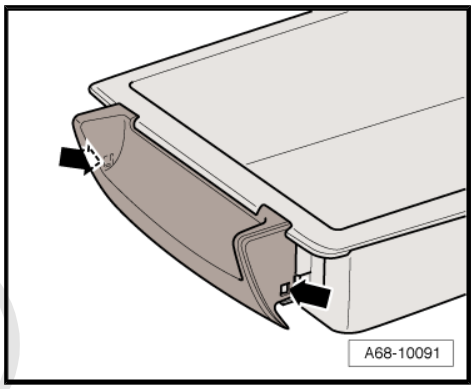
– Open centre armrest (front).

– Use removal wedge -3409- to prise rear edge of storage compartment off support for centre armrest (front) -arrow 1-.

– Lift storage compartment including handle off support for centre armrest (front) in direction of -arrow 2-.



– Detach handle for centre armrest (front) from storage compartment by pressing retaining tabs -arrows-.



Installing

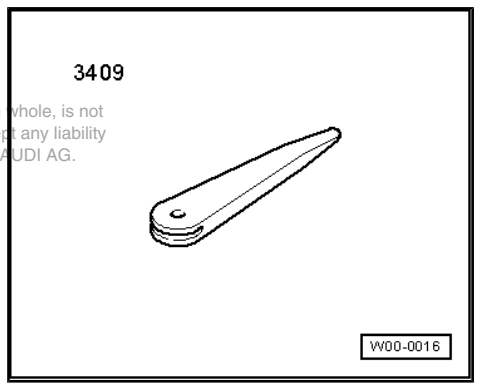
Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Make sure that the handle engages correctly with the storage compartment.

5.6 Removing and installing cover for centre armrest (front)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge -3409-



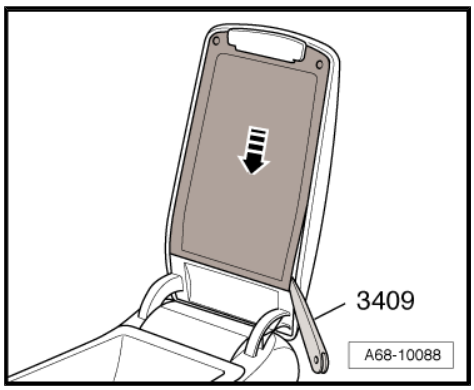
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Open centre armrest (front).

– Use removal wedge -3409- to carefully prise cover off padding, starting at bottom of cover.

– Pull cover downwards out of armrest padding -arrow-.



Installing

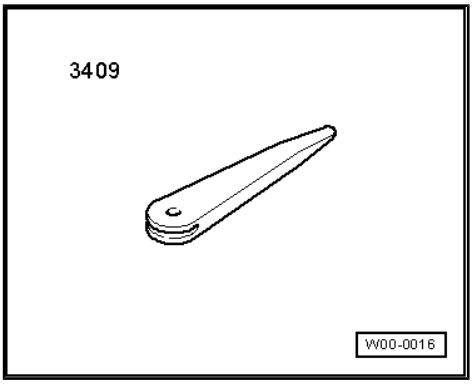
Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Ensure that the cover engages correctly with the padding.

5.7 Removing and installing padding for centre armrest (front)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge -3409-

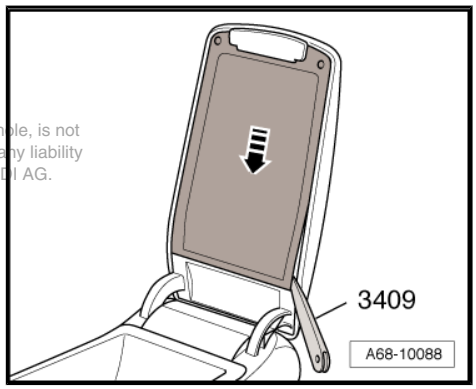


Removing

– Open centre armrest (front).

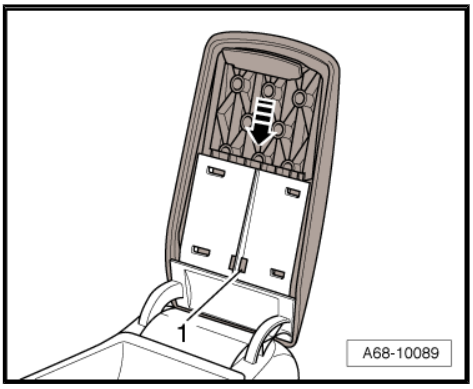
– Use removal wedge -3409- to carefully prise cover off padding, starting at bottom of cover.

– Pull cover downwards out of armrest padding -arrow-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Press retaining tab -1- and simultaneously push armrest padding downwards -arrow- until lugs on armrest padding disengage out of openings on support for centre armrest (front).



Installing

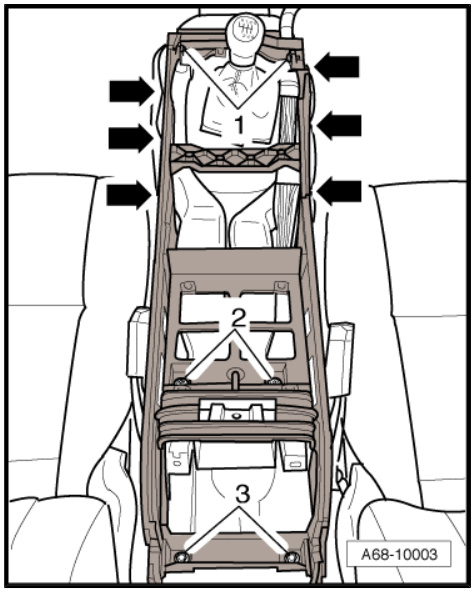
Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Ensure that the armrest padding engages correctly with the support for the centre armrest (front).

– Ensure that the cover engages correctly with the padding.

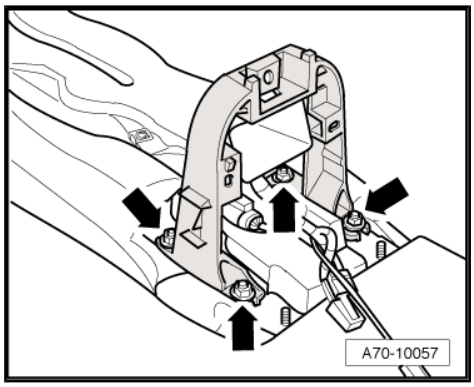
5.8 Removing and installing support bracket for centre armrest (front)

Removing



- Remove centre armrest (front) ⇒ page 36 .
- Remove centre console (rear) ⇒ page 17 .
- Remove centre console (front) ⇒ page 22 .
- Unscrew bolts -1- and -2- and nuts -3-.
- Unhook floor covering on sides of mounting frame for centre console -arrows-.
- Lift mounting frame for centre console out of studs and pull off towards the rear.

Copyright by AUDI AG. Reproduction, copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Unscrew nuts -arrows- and detach support bracket for centre armrest (front).

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

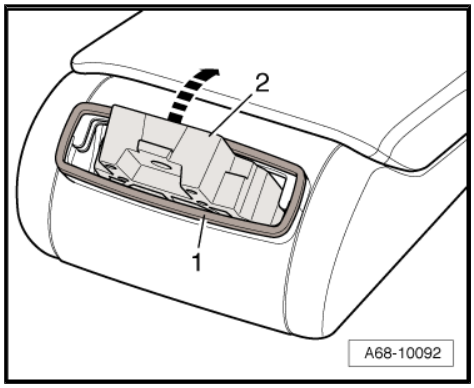
- Install mounting frame for centre console ⇒ page 31 .
- Install centre console (front) ⇒ page 22 .
- Install centre console (rear) ⇒ page 17 .
- Install centre armrest (front) ⇒ page 36 .

Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Support bracket for centre armrest (front) to body	25

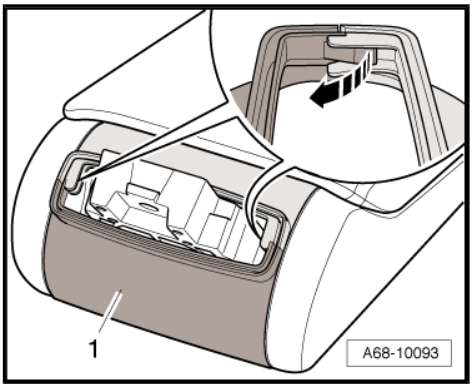
5.9 Removing and installing trim panels for base of centre armrest

Removing

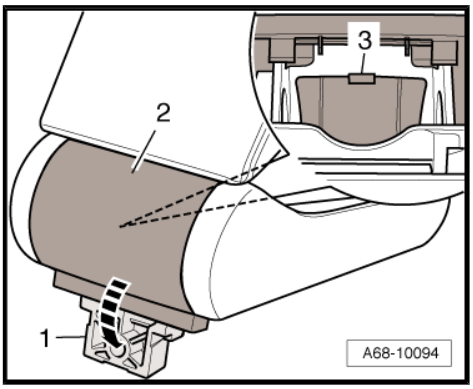


- Remove centre armrest (front) ⇒ page 36 .
- Remove storage compartment for centre armrest (front) ⇒ page 39 .
- Fold base of centre armrest -2- upwards as far as it will go -arrow-.
- Lever out gasket -1- using a small screwdriver.

– Unclip front trim for base of centre armrest -1- using a small screwdriver -arrow- and then remove trim.



– Fold base of centre armrest -1- downwards as far as it will go -arrow-.
– Open centre armrest (front).
– Unhook retaining tab -3- of rear trim for base of centre armrest -2- at support for centre armrest (front).
– Remove rear trim for base of centre armrest.



Installing

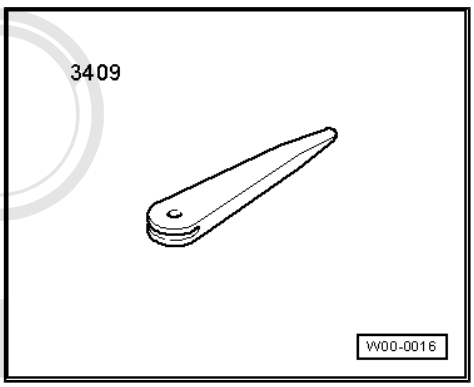
Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Ensure that the trim engages correctly.
– Install centre armrest (front) ⇒ page 36 .
– Install storage compartment for centre armrest (front) ⇒ page 39 .

5.10 Removing and installing mounting bracket for car telephone or lift mechanism for mobile phone

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge -3409-



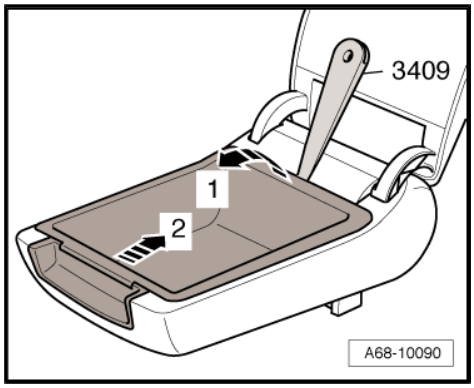
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Open centre armrest (front).

– Use removal wedge -3409- to prise rear edge of storage compartment off support for centre armrest (front) -arrow 1-.

– Lift storage compartment including handle off support for centre armrest (front) in direction of -arrow 2-.

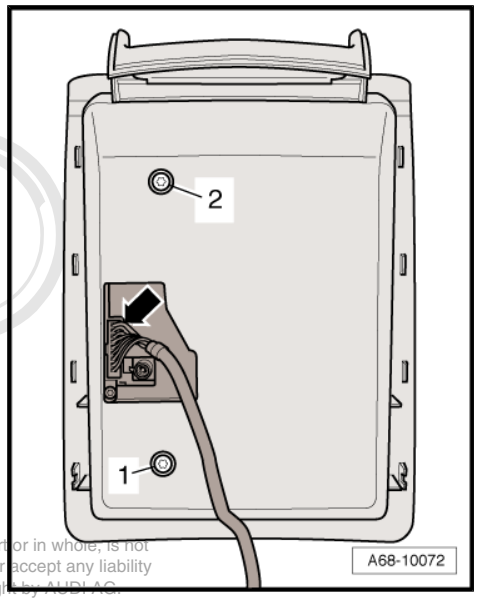


Vehicles with lift mechanism for mobile phone:

– Unplug electrical connector on underside of storage compartment -arrow-.

– Unscrew bolts -1- and -2- on underside of storage compartment.

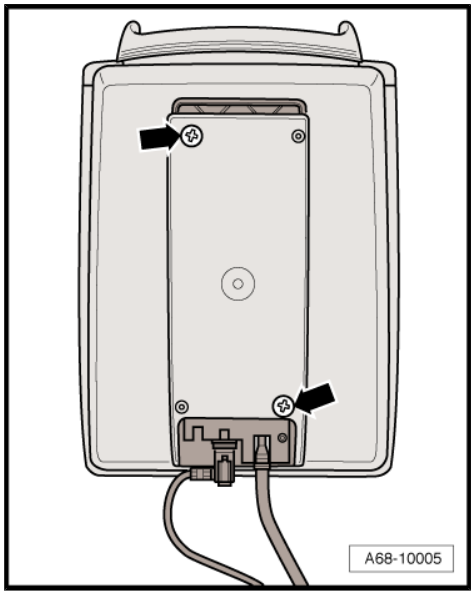
– Remove storage compartment and lift mechanism for mobile phone.



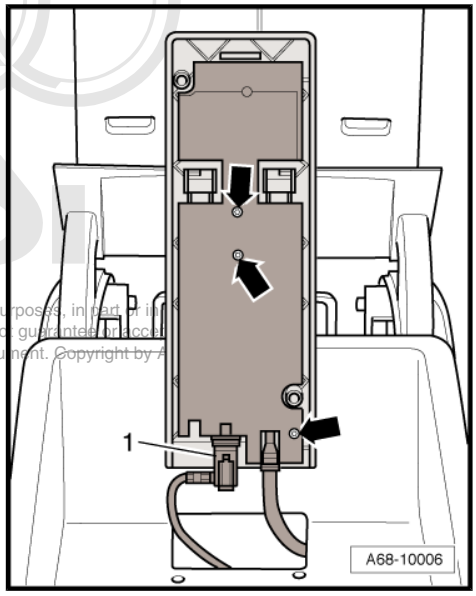
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Vehicles with mounting bracket for car telephone:

– Unscrew bolts on underside of storage compartment -arrows-.



– Unplug electrical connector -1- for telephone aerial.
– Unscrew printed circuit board for telephone -arrows-.
– Unplug electrical connector and detach mounting bracket for car telephone.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

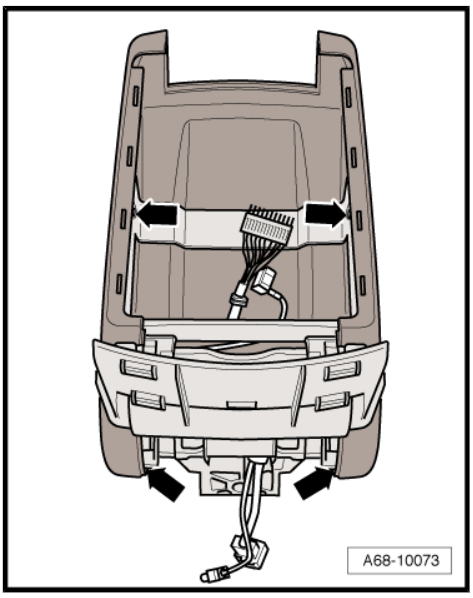
Component	Nm
Printed circuit board for telephone to mounting bracket	0.5
Mounting bracket to storage compartment	1

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by A

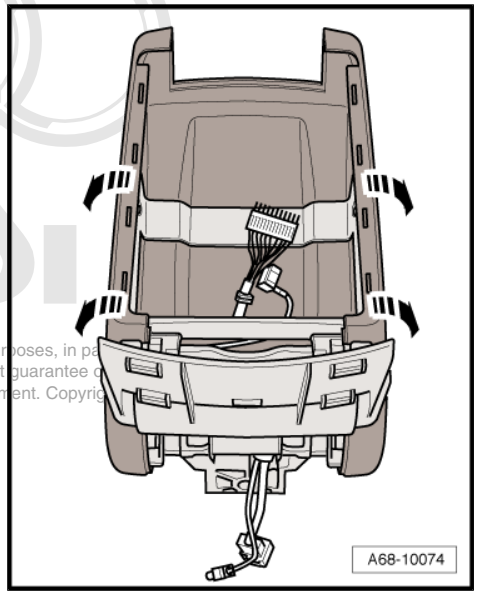
5.11 Removing and installing wiring harness for telephone or mobile phone

Removing

– Remove support for centre armrest (front) ⇒ page 36 .
– Remove bolts -arrows-.

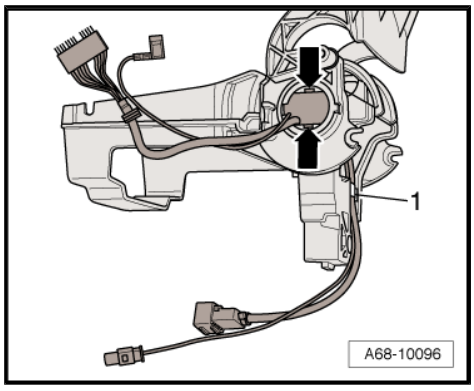


– Detach trim from sides of support for centre armrest (front) -arrows-.
– Remove support for centre armrest (front).



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in pa
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee c
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrig

– Unhook cable retainer -1- at support for centre armrest (front).
– Use a small screwdriver to release retaining tabs -arrows- and pull electrical wiring out of support for centre armrest (front).



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Install support for centre armrest (front) ⇒ page 36 .

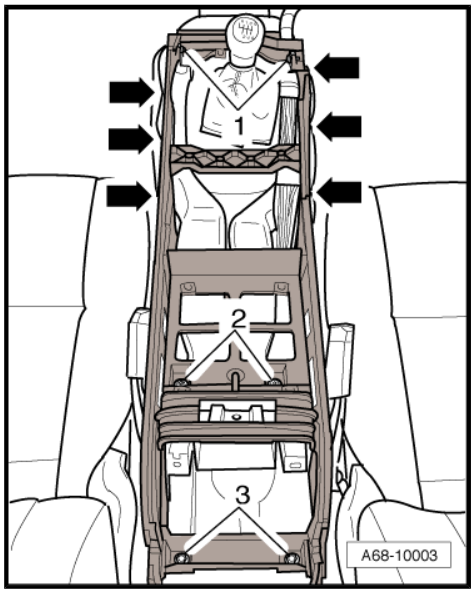
Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Trim to support for centre armrest (front)	2

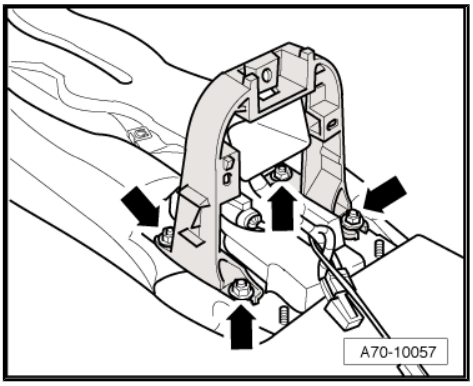
5.12 Retrofitting centre armrest (front)

Procedure:

– Remove centre console (rear) ⇒ page 17 .
– Remove centre console (front) ⇒ page 22 .
– Unscrew bolts -1- and -2- and nuts -3-.
– Unhook floor covering on sides of mounting frame for centre console -arrows-.
– Lift mounting frame for centre console out of studs and pull off towards the rear.

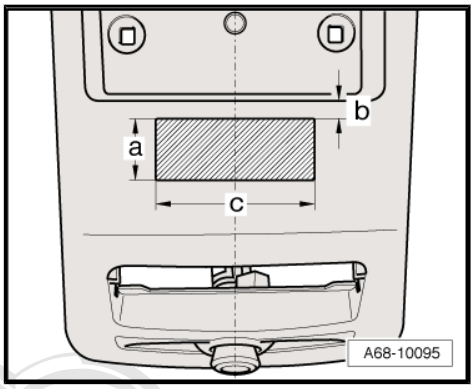


– Use nuts to secure support bracket for centre armrest (front) to the studs provided on the body -arrows-.
– Install mounting frame for centre console ⇒ page 31 .
– Install centre console (front) ⇒ page 22 .

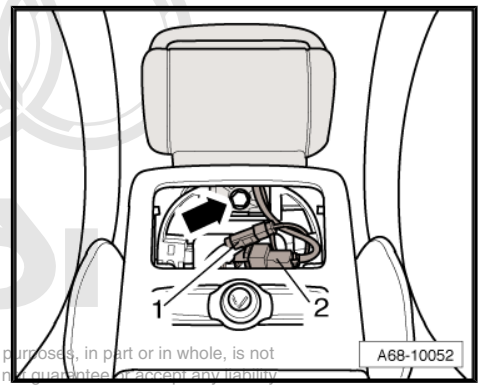


If the cut-out for base of centre armrest is not stamped into underside of centre console (rear), proceed as follows:

– Mark dimensions of cut-out for base of centre armrest in centre of upper side of centre console (rear) as shown in illustration.
- Dimension -a- = 32 mm
- Dimension -b- = 10 mm
- Dimension -c- = 83 mm
– Cut out section on centre console (rear) for base of centre armrest according to markings.
– Install centre console (rear) ⇒ page 17 .



– Insert centre armrest through opening you have cut-out on centre console (rear).
– Secure centre armrest (front) to support bracket -arrow-.
– Plug in electrical connectors -1- and -2-.
– Push vent on centre console (rear) into installation opening so that retainers engage correctly.



Tightening torques

Component	Nm
Support bracket for centre armrest (front) to body	25
Centre armrest (front) to support bracket	25

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6 Interior mirror

⇒ “6.1 Removing and installing interior mirror”, page 50

⇒ “6.2 Removing and installing rain and light sensor G397 ”, page 51

⇒ “6.3 Safety regulations for interior mirror”, page 52

⇒ “6.4 General notes on interior mirror”, page 52

⇒ “6.5 Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off”, page 53

⇒ “6.6 Switching compass display on and off”, page 53

⇒ “6.7 Setting magnetic deflection zone”, page 53

⇒ “6.8 Calibrating digital compass”, page 54

⇒ “6.9 Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror Y7 for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles”, page 55

⇒ “6.10 Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map”, page 55

⇒ “6.11 Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror”, page 61

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.1 Removing and installing interior mirror

When removing and installing the mirror observe the safety regulations ⇒ page 52 and the general notes ⇒ page 52 .

Note

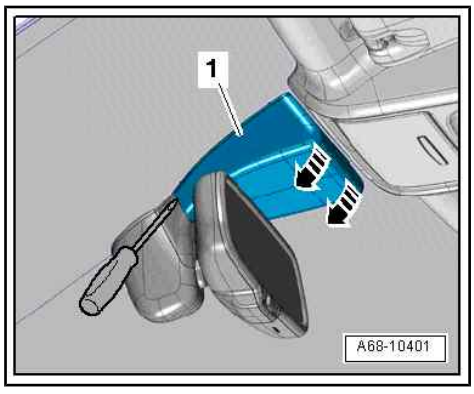
The following procedure for installing and removing refers to the automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror -Y7- . Removal and installation are similar for the other versions.

Removing

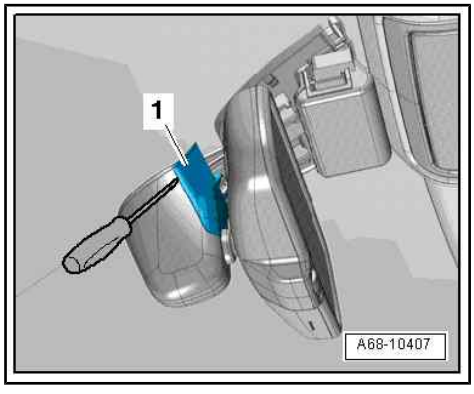
Equipment version with lane departure warning:

– Unclip cover (bottom) -1- -arrows-.

– Disengage cover (bottom) using a screwdriver and detach.

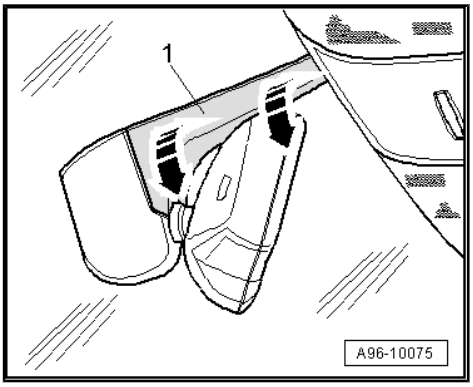


– Unclip cover -1- at mirror base and detach.



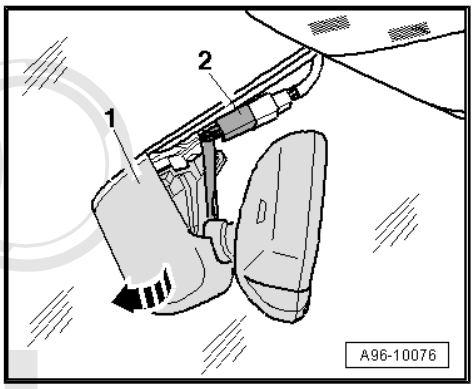
Equipment version without lane departure warning:

– Prise off cover -1- at bottom of mirror base -arrows-.



All vehicles (continued):

– Take electrical connector out of its retainer.
– Unplug electrical connector -2-.
– Turn interior mirror at mirror base -1- as far as it will go in anti-clockwise direction -arrow-.
– Detach interior mirror from retainer.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

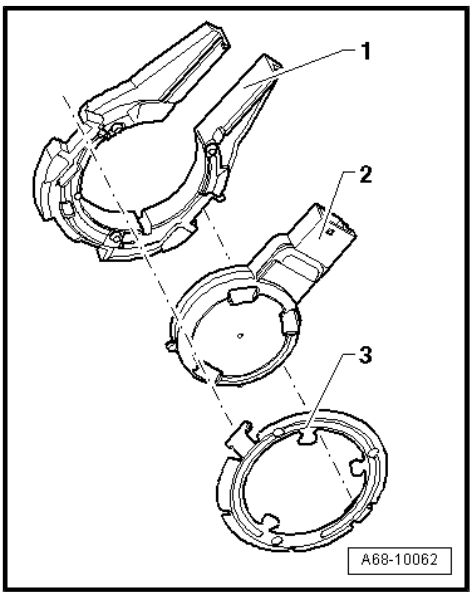
– Position interior mirror at 30° angle to final position.
– Then turn interior mirror clockwise as as far as it will go.

Audi
Reproduction prohibited. Copyright is retained for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.2 Removing and installing rain and light sensor -G397-

Removing

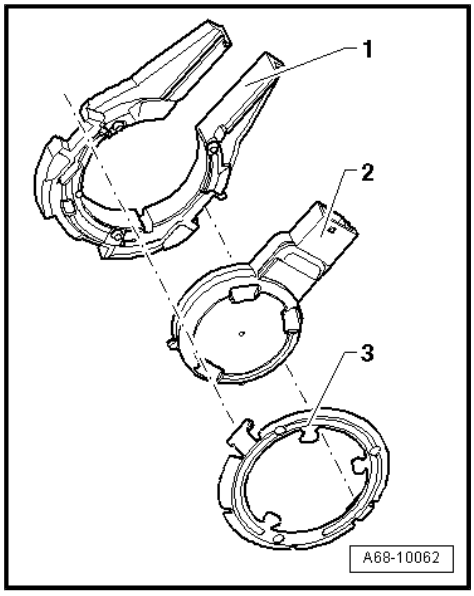
– Remove interior mirror ⇒ page 50 .
– Unclip retaining spring -3- from retaining plate -1-.
– Detach rain and light sensor -G397- -2- from retaining plate -1-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

– Make sure that retaining spring -3- engages correctly on retaining plate -1-.



6.3 Safety regulations for interior mirror

WARNING

- *The interior mirror glass consists of several layers and contains an electrolyte which gives the mirror its properties. Beware of liquid electrolyte escaping from a broken mirror.*
- *Liquid electrolyte can cause irritation to skin, eyes and respiratory organs.*
- *Should liquid electrolyte make contact with your skin or eyes rinse it off immediately with lots of water. If the irritation does not go away visit a doctor without delay.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Caution

If liquid electrolyte escapes from the mirror glass it will damage all plastic surfaces with which it comes into contact. Make sure you clean away any leaked electrolyte immediately using clean water and a sponge.

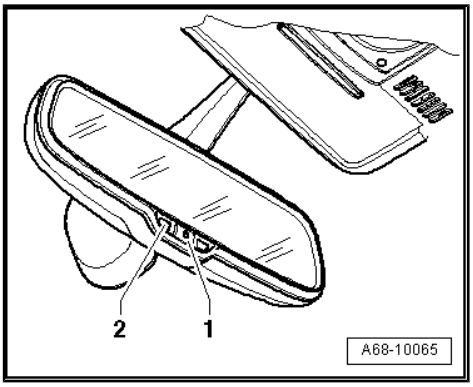
6.4 General notes on interior mirror

There are different types of interior mirrors with different functions:

- Manual anti-dazzle interior mirror
- Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror -Y7-
- Interior mirror with digital compass
- Interior mirror with rain/light sensor
- Interior mirror with rain and light sensor -G397-
- Interior mirror with humidity sender -G355-

6.5 Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off

Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off:



– Press button -1- briefly (up to 3 seconds) to switch automatic anti-dazzle function on or off.

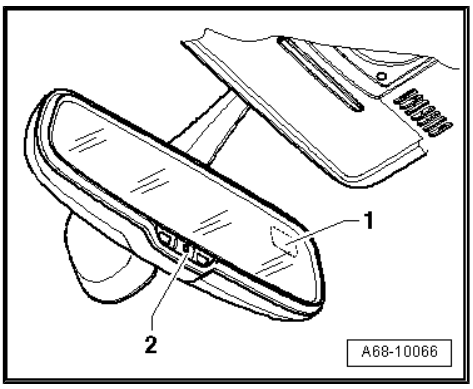
  Automatic anti-dazzle function “On”: Indicator lamp -2- lights up.

  Automatic anti-dazzle function “Off”: Indicator lamp -2- goes out.

- The automatic anti-dazzle function is activated every time the ignition is switched on.
- If you deactivate the automatic anti-dazzle function for the interior mirror this will also deactivate the anti-dazzle function for the exterior mirrors.
- When in anti-dazzle mode, the mirror will become lighter as soon as the interior light is switched on or reverse gear is engaged.
- Please note that the automatic anti-dazzle function for the interior mirror can only function correctly if the rear sun blind is retracted.

6.6 Switching compass display on and off

Switching compass display on and off:



– Press button -2- for 3 to 6 seconds. The compass display will be switched “on” or “off”.

  Compass display -1- “on” - direction is indicated.

  Compass display -1- “off” - direction is not indicated.

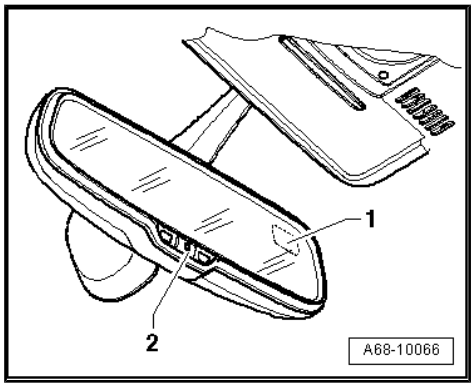
6.7 Setting magnetic deflection zone

It is necessary to set the magnetic deflection zone if:

- A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror -Y7- is installed.
- You should set a different magnetic deflection zone if you have reached a distance more than two zones away from the preset reference zone after travelling long distances.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Setting magnetic deflection zone:



– Press and hold button -2- for 6 to 9 seconds until compass display shows “Z” and a number for the magnetic deflection zone.
– Press button -2- repeatedly until the number of the desired magnetic deflection zone appears.
– Refer to the maps to select the applicable deflection zone:

♦ Europe ⇒ page 55
♦ North America ⇒ page 56
♦ South America ⇒ page 57
♦ Asia ⇒ page 58
♦ Africa ⇒ page 59
♦ Australia ⇒ page 60

After a few seconds the compass display will switch from the magnetic deflection zone to the current direction/point of the compass.

Copyright by AUDI AG. Reproduction, duplication or publication, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Make sure you switch the anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror back on ⇒ page 53 after setting the magnetic deflection zone.

6.8 Calibrating digital compass

It is necessary to calibrate the digital compass if:

♦ The directions the digital compass shows are inaccurate.
♦ The compass display shows a “C” instead of a point of the compass, or if the display remains blank.
♦ A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror -Y7- is installed.

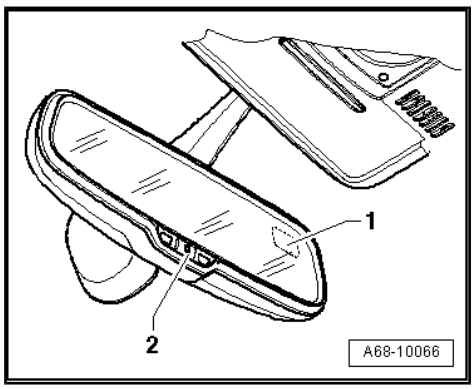
In exceptional circumstances, the digital compass may also have to be calibrated, for example if:

♦ The vehicle battery is reconnected after being disconnected for a long period,
♦ A new audio system or audio system components has/have been fitted.

Calibrating digital compass:

– Switch on ignition.

Compass display -1- should show “C”.

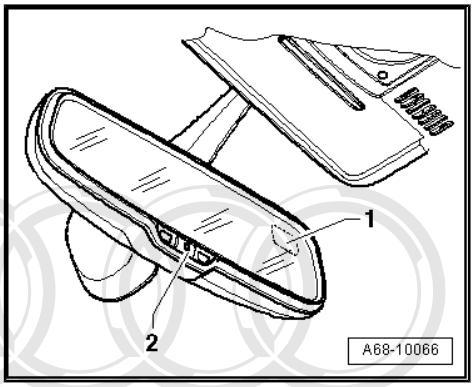


– If display does not show “C”, press and hold button -2- for 9 to 12 seconds until letter “C” appears in compass display -1-.
– Drive the vehicle in a circle two or three times at a speed of approx. 5 mph (10 km/h) until a direction is indicated on the compass display -1-.
– Make sure you switch the anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror back on ⇒ page 53 after completing the calibration process.

6.9 Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror -Y7- for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles

It is necessary to adjust the mirror to right-hand or left-hand drive if:

- A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror -Y7- is installed.



Note

- *On recently manufactured automatic anti-dazzle interior mirrors -Y7- , the sensor for the magnetic deflection zone is no longer fitted in the mirror base, but in the mirror housing. Only these mirrors can and MUST be adjusted to right-hand or left-hand drive.*
- *Recently manufactured automatic anti-dazzle interior mirrors -Y7- can be identified by pressing and holding button -2- for longer than 12 seconds; "L" or "A" will appear on the display of these mirrors.*

– Press and hold button -2- for 12 to 15 seconds until display shows "L" (for left-hand drive vehicles) or "A" (for right-hand drive vehicles).

– Press button -2- again briefly to change the setting for right-hand or left-hand drive.

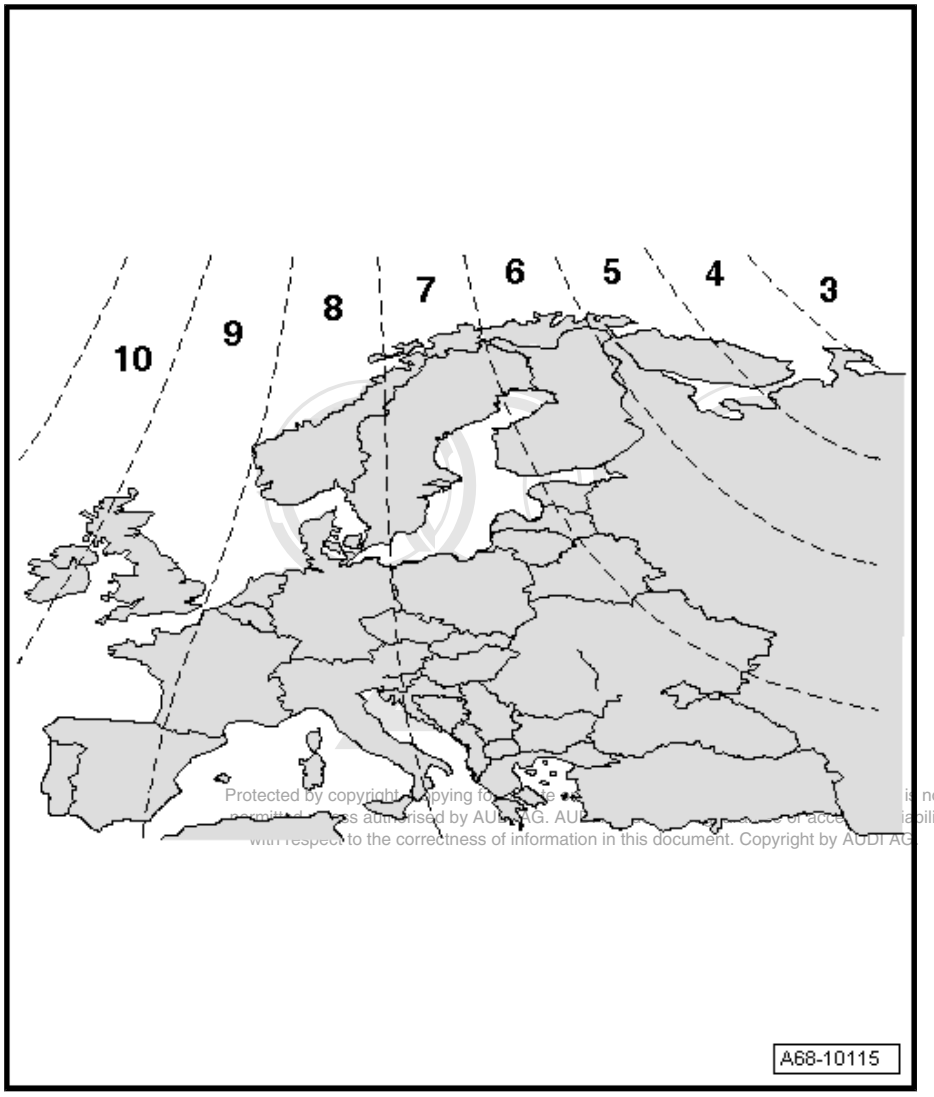
– After a short while, the display will automatically show "C" (for calibration). The digital compass must now be calibrated ⇒ page 54 .

– Make sure you switch the anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror back on ⇒ page 53 after adjusting the mirror for right-hand or left-hand drive.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

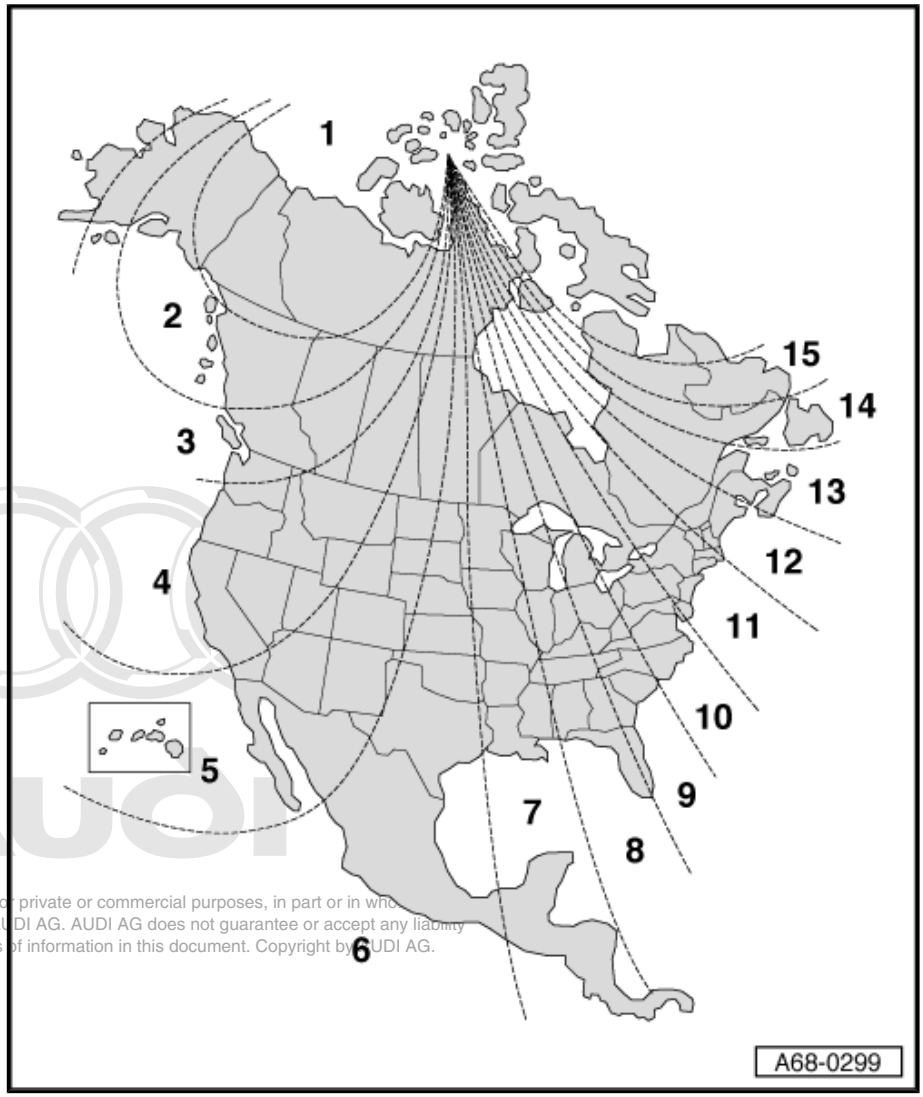
6.10 Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map

Europe



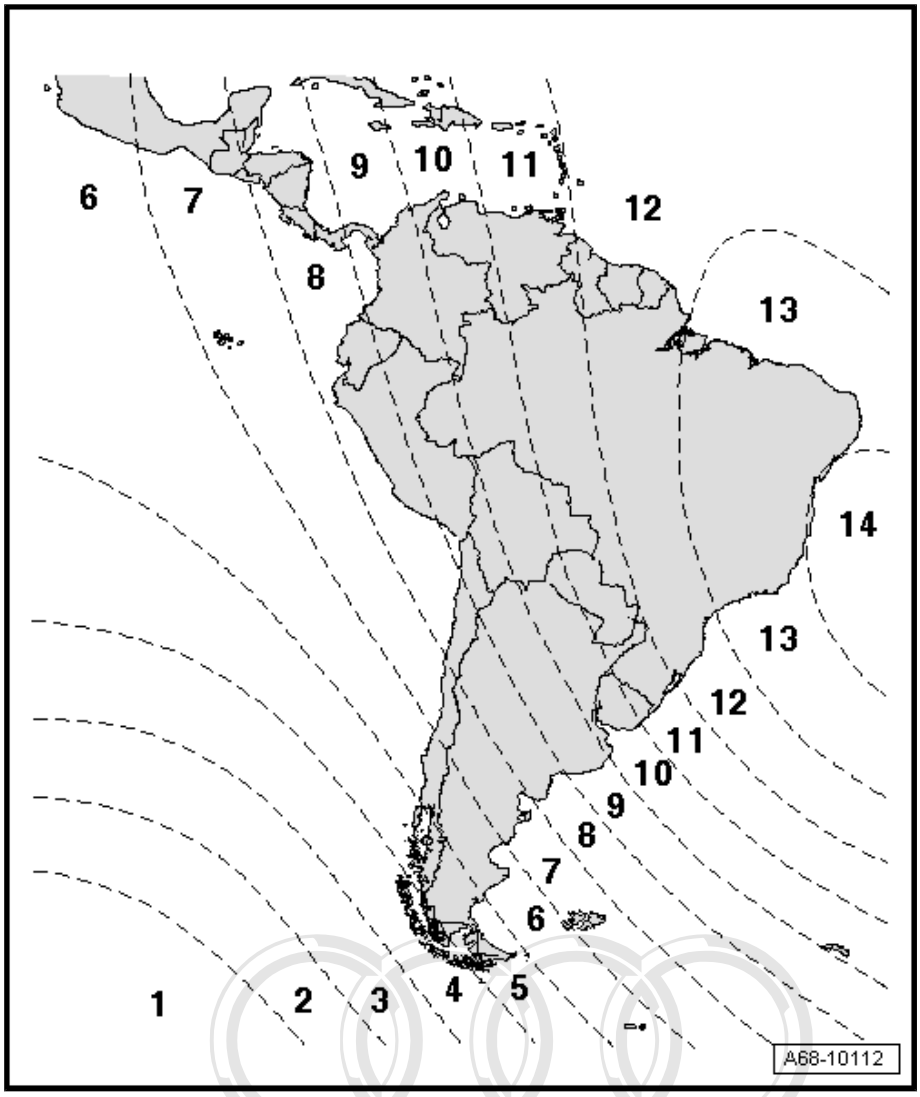
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not make any representation or warranty regarding the accuracy or completeness of the information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

North America



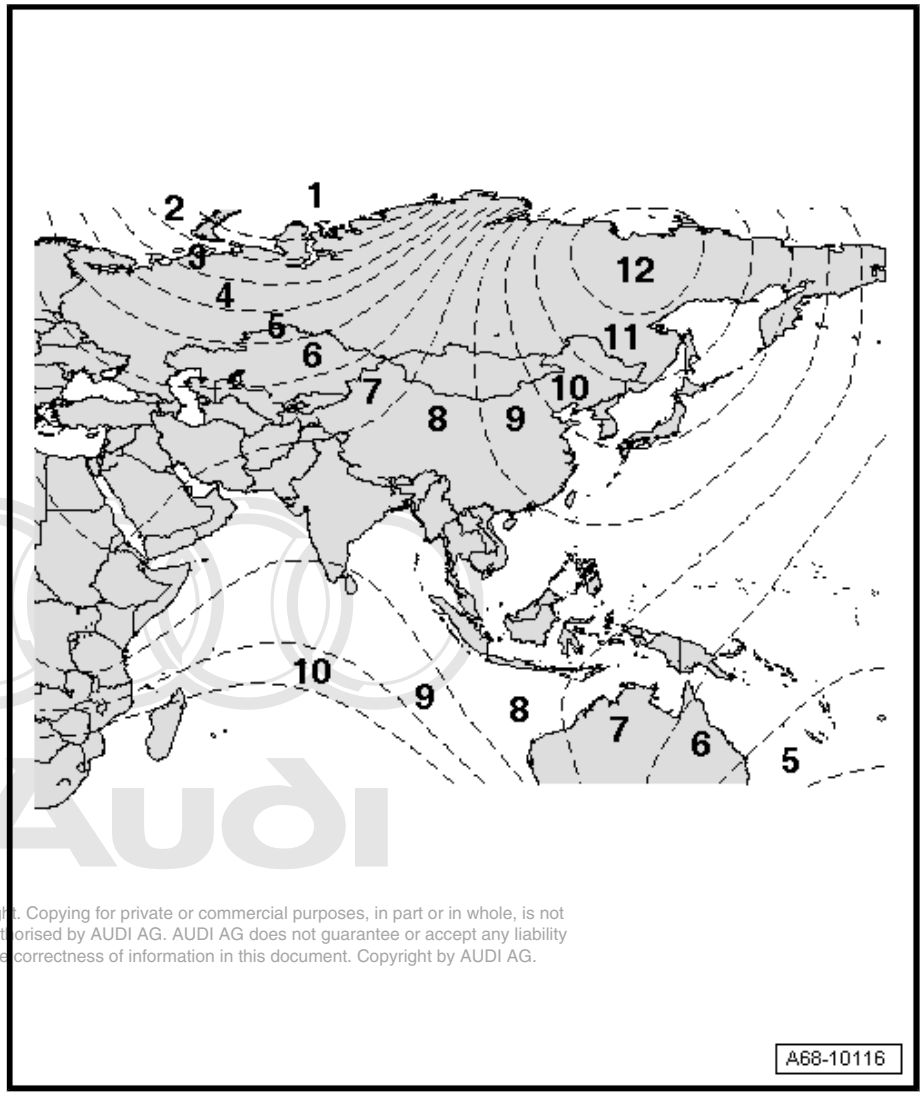
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

South America



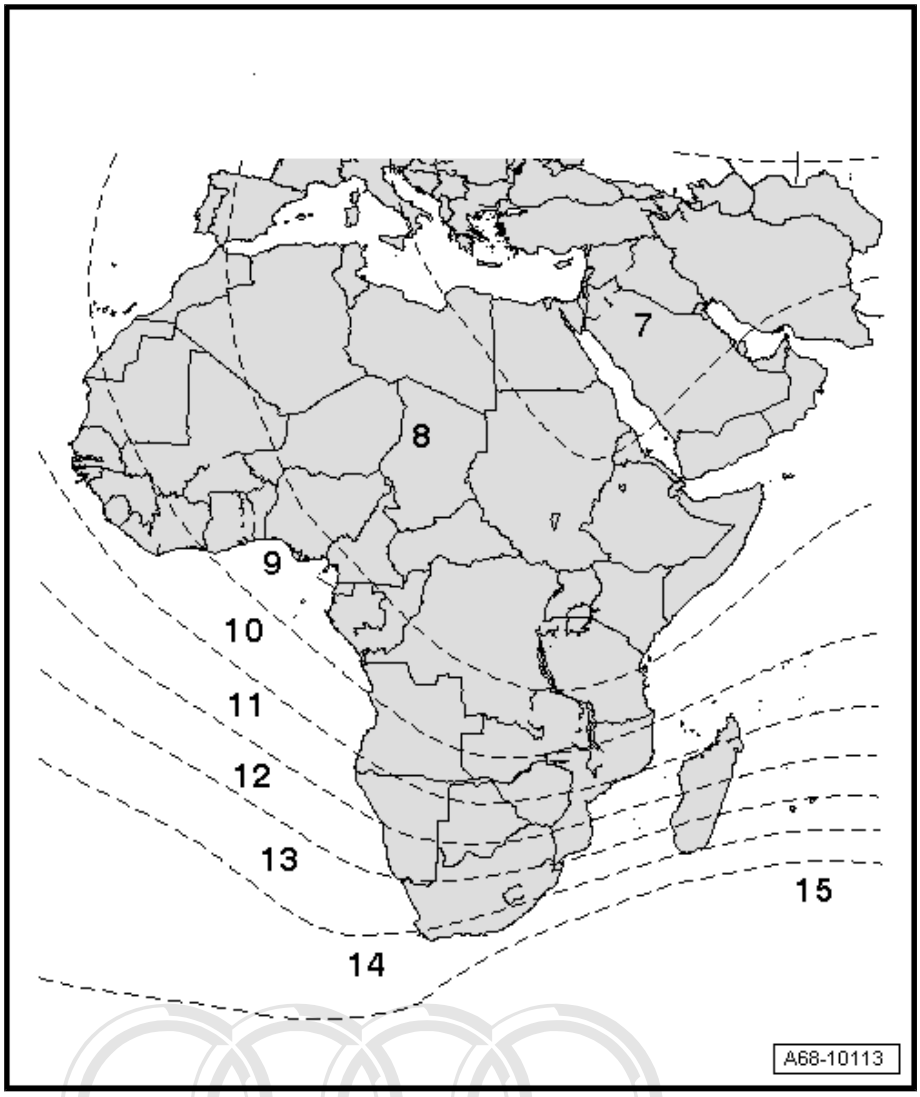
Asia

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



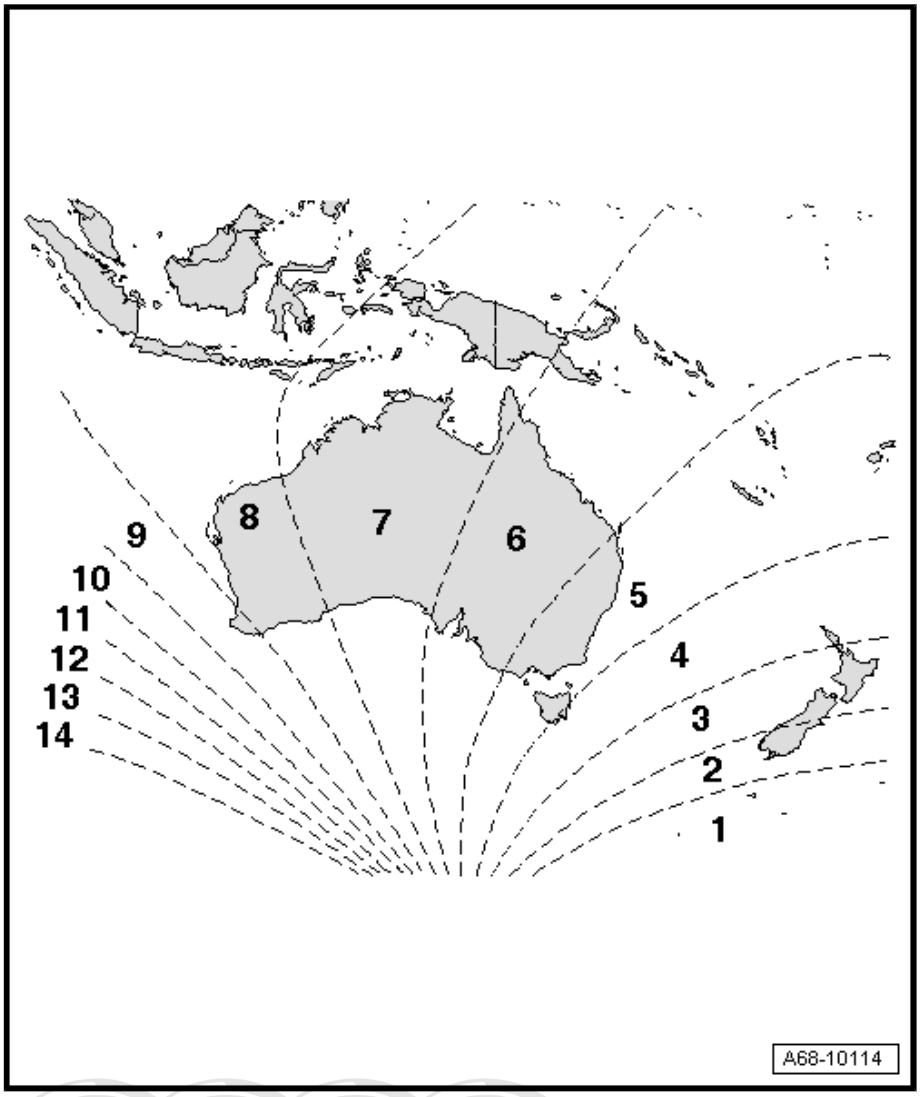
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Africa



Australia

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



6.11 Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror

The test can only be carried out if the following conditions are met:

- Interior mirror is fitted.
- Ignition is switched on.
- Reverse gear is not engaged.
- Automatic anti-dazzle function is switched on, indicator lamp must be lit.

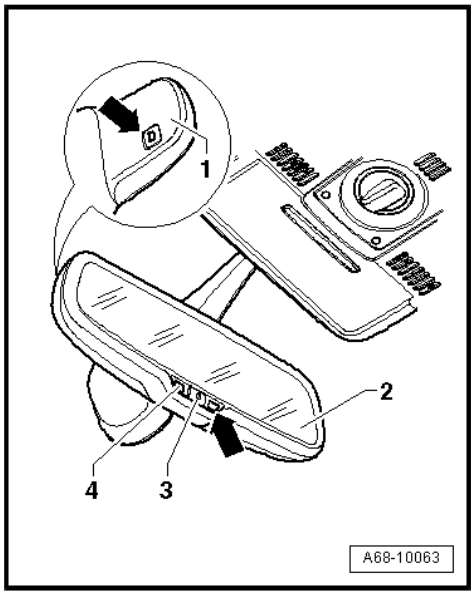
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Test sequence

– Cover or mask photosensor -arrow- on housing side -1-.

– Aim beam of a torch (or similar) at photosensor -arrow- on mirror side -2-.

Interior mirror should darken quickly.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

69 – Passenger protection

1 Seat belts

⇒ “1.1 Safety regulations for handling pyrotechnic belt tensioners”, page 63

⇒ “1.2 Disposal of pyrotechnic belt tensioners”, page 64

⇒ “1.3 Overview of seat belts and anchorage points”, page 65

⇒ “1.4 Removing and installing belt end fitting”, page 67

⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front) with pyrotechnic belt tensioner”, page 68

⇒ “1.6 Exploded view of three-point seat belt (front) with belt tensioner and switchable belt force limiter (country-specific) - vehicles from 08/06 onwards”, page 71

⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front) with pyrotechnic belt tensioner and switchable belt force limiter (country-specific)”, page 72

⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing anchorage point (belt buckle)”, page 75

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing buckle for seat occupied recognition system controlling front passenger's airbag deactivation (country-specific version)”, page 76

⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing belt guide (front)”, page 77

⇒ “1.11 Removing and installing belt height adjuster”, page 78

⇒ “1.12 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belts (rear)”, page 81

⇒ “1.13 Removing and installing outer belt guide (rear)”, page 84

⇒ “1.14 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belt (rear) - Avant”, page 85

⇒ “1.15 Exploded view of rear outer belt guide II (Avant)”, page 88

⇒ “1.16 Removing and installing rear outer belt guide II (Avant)”, page 89

⇒ “1.17 Removing and installing three-point seat belt for rear centre seat - vehicles with fixed rear seat backrest”, page 91

⇒ “1.18 Removing and installing centre belt guide (rear)”, page 94

⇒ “1.19 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (rear)”, page 95

1.1 Safety regulations for handling pyrotechnic belt tensioners

- Testing, removing, installing and repair work may only be performed by qualified personnel.
- Never perform tests using a test lamp, voltmeter or ohmmeter.
- Only check belt tensioner units that are installed and use suitable vehicle diagnostic, testing and information systems (for example vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system - VAS 5051B-) .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Before handling the belt tensioner units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.
- Always disconnect voltage supply when working on belt tensioners.
- Observe the measures to be taken when disconnecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- Detach battery earth strap/wire, cover negative terminal. There is no waiting time after disconnecting the battery.
- The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.
- Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- When connecting the belt tensioner unit, all mechanical components (including those of the three-point seat belt) must be secured properly.
- Other than the person performing the work, there should be no-one in the vehicle.
- Belt tensioner components must not be opened or repaired; always use new parts.
- Belt tensioner units which have been dropped onto a hard surface or which show signs of damage must not be used.
- Belt tensioner units which are mechanically damaged (dents, fractures) must always be renewed.
- Belt tensioner units must be installed immediately following removal from their packaging.
- If the work is interrupted, the belt tensioner unit should again be placed in its packaging.
- Never point the open end of a belt tensioner at another person.
- Always wash hands after handling belt tensioners which have been triggered.
- Storage and transport must be in accordance with the statutory regulations of the countries in question.
- The belt tensioner unit must not be left lying unattended.
- Belt tensioner units must never be treated with grease, cleaning agents etc.
- Belt tensioner units are not to be exposed to temperatures in excess of 100 °C even for brief periods.

1.2 Disposal of pyrotechnic belt tensioners

- Non-ignited pyrotechnic components (such as airbags, seat belts, pyrotechnic battery circuit breakers) must be disposed of in original packaging and in accordance with national regulations. In cases of doubt, contact the appropriate Regional Sales Centre or importer.

Note

Depending on the accident, the belt tensioner might have been triggered without the belt force limiter being triggered. These components must be handled as described above ⇒ page 64 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

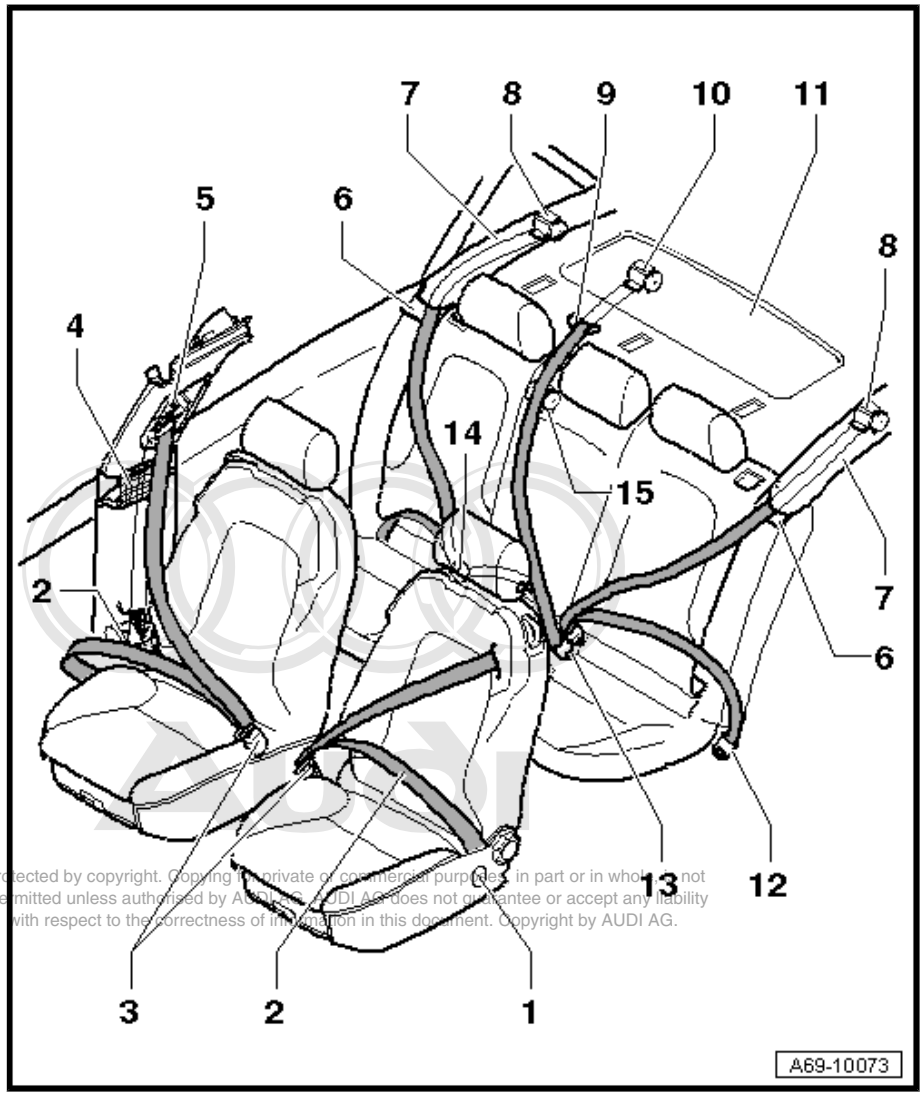
- Pyrotechnic components ignited in an accident can be disposed of together with commercial refuse.

WARNING

This does not apply to belt tensioners which are Wankel-powered. These must be treated in the same manner as non-ignited pyrotechnic components (for example airbags, seat belts, pyrotechnic battery isolators).

Reason: The workshop does not have the means to check whether the Wankel-type belt tensioners have ignited fully (in all ignition stages).

1.3 Overview of seat belts and anchorage points



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Outer belt end fitting

- ❑ On front seat
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 67

2 - Three-point seat belt (front)

- ❑ Belt reel with pyrotechnic belt tensioner
- ♦ Removing and installing ⇒ page 68
- ❑ Belt reel with pyrotechnic belt tensioner and switchable belt force limiter
- ♦ Country-specific version (from 08/06 onwards)
- ♦ Only on driver side
- ♦ Exploded view ⇒ page 71
- ♦ Removing and installing ⇒ page 72

3 - Anchorage point (belt buckle)

- ❑ On front seat
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 75

4 - Belt guide (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 77

5 - Belt height adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 78

6 - Outer belt guide (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 84

7 - Belt guide

- ❑ Part of C-pillar trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 261

8 - Three-point seat belt (rear outer)

- ❑ Without pyrotechnic belt tensioner
- ❑ With pyrotechnic belt tensioner

Saloon

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 81

Avant

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 85

9 - Belt guide (rear centre)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 94

10 - Three-point seat belt (rear centre)

- ❑ For vehicles with fixed rear seat backrest
- ❑ Installed beneath rear shelf
- ❑ Without pyrotechnic belt tensioner
- ❑ With pyrotechnic belt tensioner
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 91

11 - Rear shelf

- ❑ Without sun blind (rear)

  Removing and installing ⇒ page 269
- ❑ With sun blind (rear)

  Removing and installing ⇒ page 273

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

12 - Outer belt end fitting (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 95

13 - Centre belt end fitting (rear)

- ❑ Belt buckles with buckle bracket (left-side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 97

14 - Centre belt end fitting (rear)

- ❑ Belt buckle with buckle bracket (right-side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 98

15 - Three-point seat belt (rear centre)

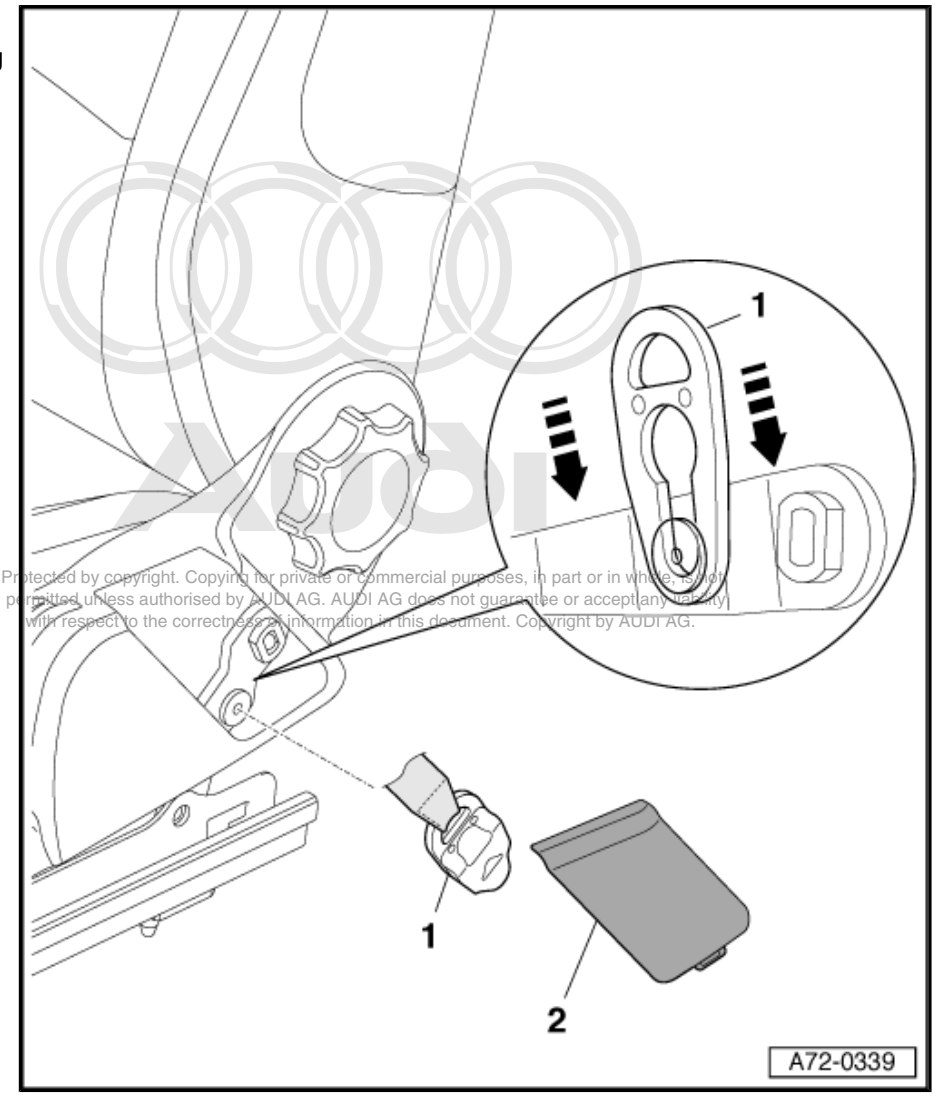
- ❑ For vehicles with folding rear seat backrest
- ❑ Installed in rear seat backrest
- ❑ Without pyrotechnic belt tensioner
- ❑ With pyrotechnic belt tensioner
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 99

1.4 Removing and installing belt end fitting

1 - Belt end fitting

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 67

2 - Assembly cover



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.

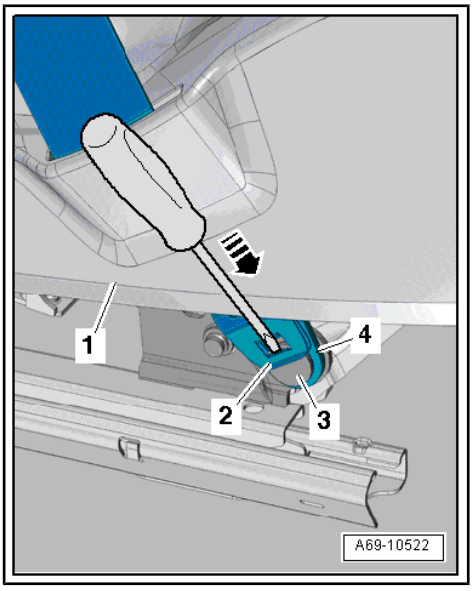
– Pull up and detach assembly cover ⇒ Item 2 (page 67) .

Caution

- *Spring -2- could be bent if it is not removed correctly. The three-point seat belt must be renewed if the spring is bent.*
- *Only move spring -2- to the extent required to release the retaining tab on the spring.*

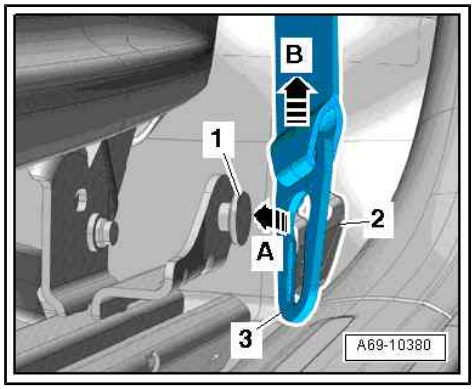
– Insert small screwdriver into opening on spring -arrow- and release retaining tab on spring -2-.

– Slide belt end fitting -4- downwards and disengage at stud -3-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



Caution

- *Spring -2- could be bent if it is not removed correctly. The three-point seat belt must be renewed if the spring is bent.*
- *Only move spring -2- to the extent required to release the retaining tab on the spring.*

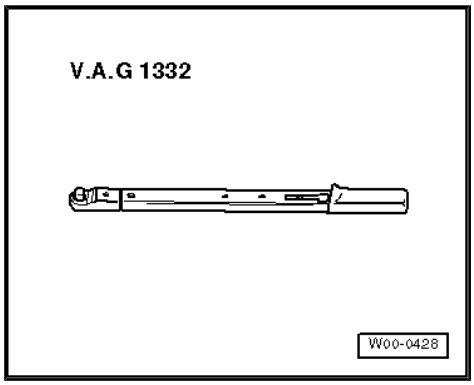
– Engage belt end fitting -3- at stud -1- -arrow A- and pull upwards -arrow B- until retaining tab on spring -2- engages audibly at stud head.

– Install assembly cover ⇒ Item 2 (page 67) .

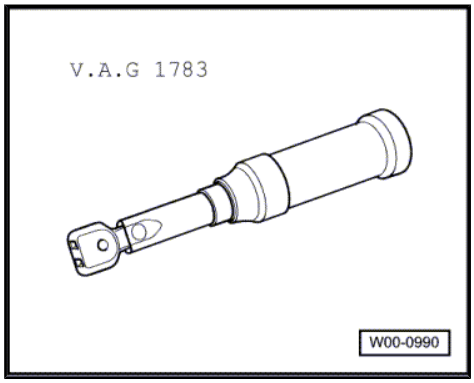
1.5 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front) with pyrotechnic belt tensioner

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench -V.A.G 1332-



- Torque wrench -V.A.G 1783-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for handling pyrotechnic belt tensioners ⇒ page 63 .

Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic belt tensioners ⇒ page 64 .

1 - Belt reel/belt tensioner

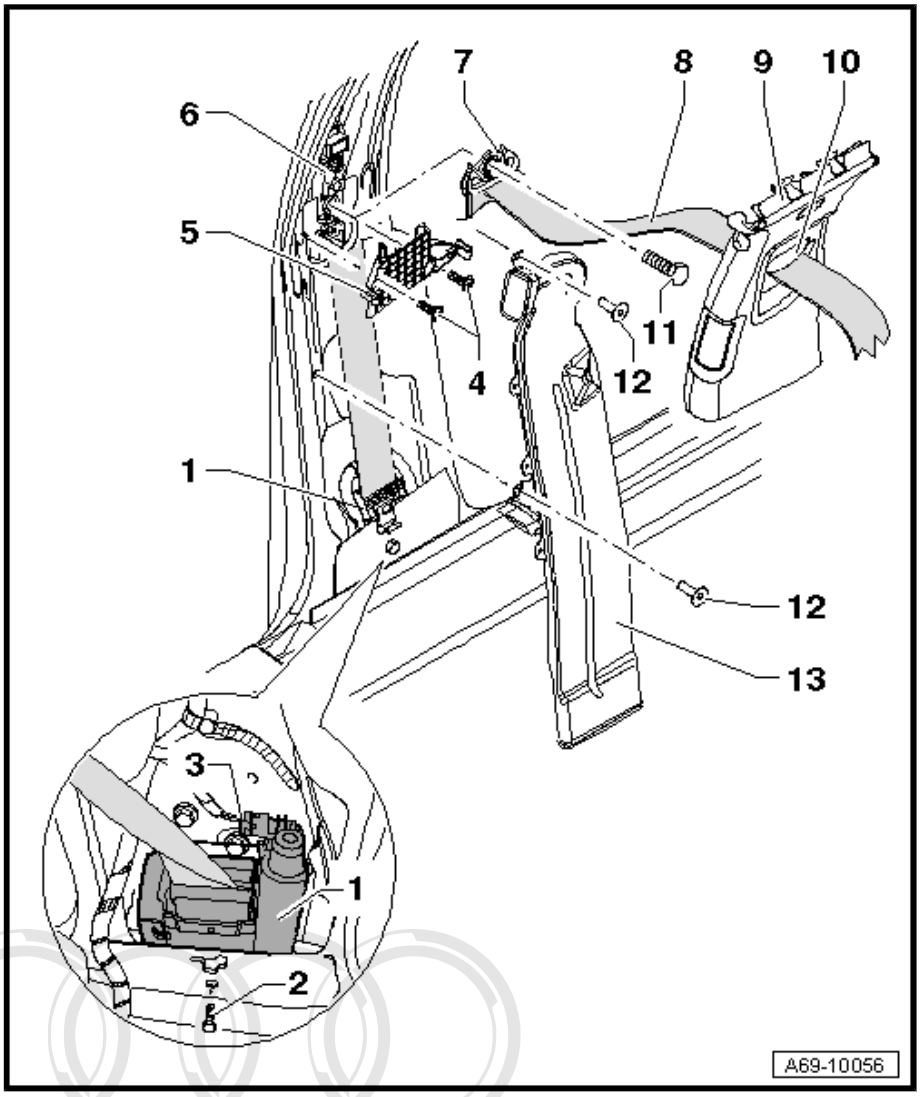
- ♦ Removing
  - – Remove outer belt end fitting on front seat ⇒ page 67 .
  - – Remove B-pillar trim (top).
- ♦ Audi A6 ⇒ page 257
- ♦ Audi A6 Security ⇒ page 258
  - – Remove B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 260 .
  - – Guide belt -8- out of B-pillar trim (top) -9-.

Vehicles with air duct in B-pillar

- – Remove spreader rivets -12- (2x).
- – Remove air duct -13-.

All vehicles (continued)

- – Unscrew bolts -4- (2x).
- – Remove belt guide -5-.
- – Remove bolt -11-.
- – Detach guide fitting -7- from belt height adjuster -6-.
- – Release connector -3- ⇒ page 70 .
- – Unplug connector -3-.
- – Remove bolt -2-.
- – Disengage hook of belt reel/belt tensioner -1- from side panel.
- – Remove belt reel/belt tensioner -1-.
- ♦ Installing
  - – Engage hook of belt reel/belt tensioner -1- in slot in side panel ⇒ page 71 .
  - – Screw in bolt -2- and tighten to specified torque.



Renew bolt if three-point seat belt was removed as part of servicing work following an accident.

- – Fit connector -3- onto belt tensioner -1-.
- – Lock connector -3- in place ⇒ page 70 .

Note

- ♦ *Make sure connector -3- is correctly fitted and locked in place.*
- ♦ *Make sure that the igniter cable is not routed near the belt webbing.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- – Install guide fitting -7-.
- ♦ Renew bolt -11- if guide fitting was removed as part of servicing work following an accident.
- ♦ After tightening bolt -11- the guide fitting -7- should automatically settle into the correct position.
  - – Install belt guide -5- ⇒ page 77 .

Remaining installation is carried out in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- – Make sure that the three-point seat belt -1- is not impeded by wires or insulation etc.
- – Perform functional test of belt height adjuster ⇒ page 80 .
- – Check seat belt ⇒ page 105 .

2 - Bolt, 55 Nm

- ❑ Renew bolt if three-point seat belt was removed as part of servicing work following an accident.

3 - Connector for belt tensioner

- ❑ Unplugging and plugging in ⇒ page 70

4 - Bolts (2x)

- ❑ Tightening torque: 5 Nm

5 - Belt guide (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 77

6 - Belt height adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 78
- ❑ Function test ⇒ page 80

7 - Guide fitting

- ❑ After tightening the bolt the guide fitting must automatically settle into the correct position

otected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8 - Belt

9 - B-pillar trim (top)

10 - Slide for belt height adjuster

11 - Bolt, 55 Nm

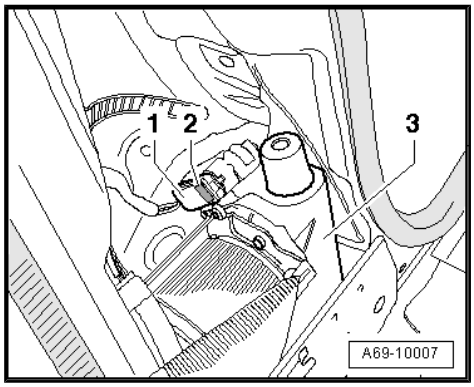
- ❑ Renew bolt if guide fitting was removed as part of servicing work following an accident
- ❑ After tightening the bolt the guide fitting must automatically settle into the correct position

12 - Spreader rivets (2x)

13 - Air duct

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Unplugging and plugging in connector for belt tensioner



♦ Unplugging:

– Use small screwdriver to release connector locking element -2-.

– Unplug connector -1- from belt tensioner -3-.

♦ Plugging in:

– Plug connector -1- into belt tensioner -3-.

– Lock connector -1- in place with connector locking element -2-.

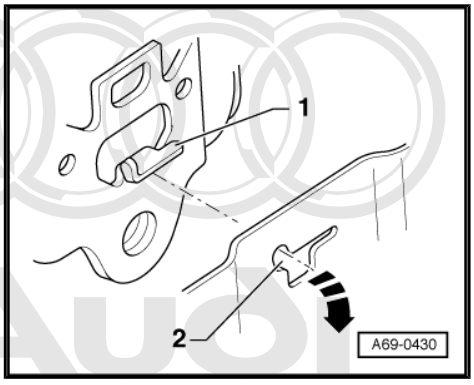
Note

If the connector was not locked in place correctly with the connector locking element an event memory entry will be stored in the airbag control unit.

Engaging the belt reel/belt tensioner

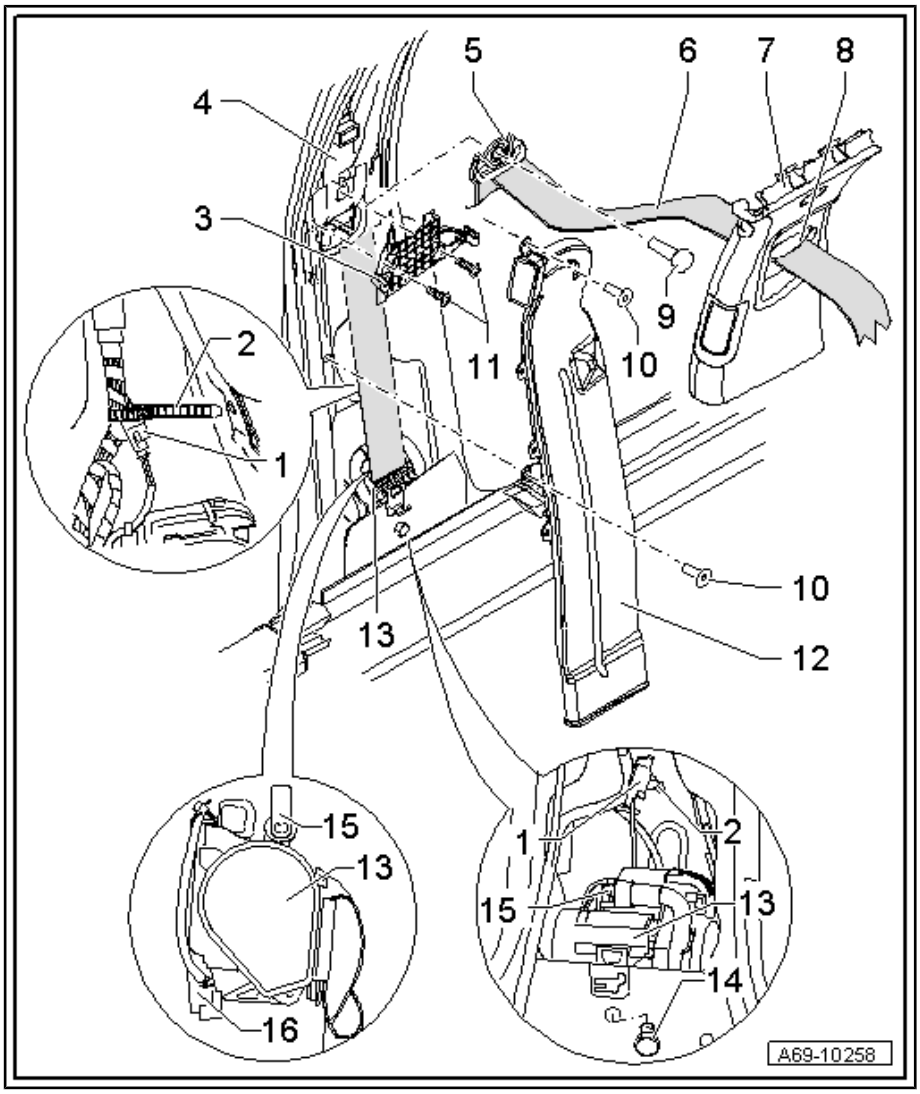
1 - Hook on belt reel/belt tensioner

2 - Side panel (body shell)



1.6 Exploded view of three-point seat belt (front) with belt tensioner and switchable belt force limiter (country-specific) - vehicles from 08/06 onwards

Reproduction of this extract from the electronic media, or reproduction of the printed version, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness and completeness of this extract supplied by AUDI AG.



1 - Connector

- ❑ For switchable belt force limiter
- ❑ Unplugging and plugging in ⇒ page 73

2 - Cable tie

3 - Belt guide (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 77

4 - Belt height adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 78
- ❑ Function test ⇒ page 80

5 - Guide fitting

- ❑ Must settle automatically in usage direction after tightening bolt

6 - Belt

7 - B-pillar trim (top)

8 - Slide for belt height adjuster

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 55 Nm
- ❑ Renew bolt if guide fitting was removed as part of servicing work following an accident
- ❑ Guide fitting must settle automatically in usage direction after tightening bolt

10 - Spreader rivet

- ❑ 2x

11 - Bolt

- ❑ 5 Nm
- ❑ 2x

12 - Air duct

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

13 - Belt reel with pyrotechnic belt tensioner and switchable belt force limiter

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 72

14 - Bolt

- ❑ 55 Nm
- ❑ Renew bolt if three-point seat belt was removed as part of servicing work following an accident.

15 - Connector for belt tensioner

- ❑ Unplugging and plugging in ⇒ page 73

16 - Connector for switchable belt force limiter

1.7 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front) with pyrotechnic belt tensioner and switchable belt force limiter (country-specific)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

The three-point seat belt with pyrotechnic belt tensioner and switchable belt force limiter is a country-specific feature which is only fitted on the driver side.

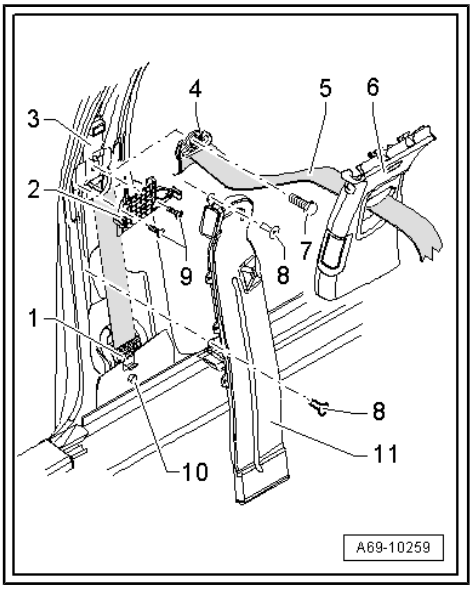
Removing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for handling pyrotechnic belt tensioners ⇒ page 63 .***
- ***Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic belt tensioners ⇒ page 64 .***

– Remove outer belt end fitting on front seat ⇒ page 67 .

– Remove B-pillar trim (top) -6- ⇒ page 257 .
– Remove B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 260 .



Note

For greater clarity, B-pillar trim (bottom) is not shown in illustration.

– Guide belt -5- out of B-pillar trim (top) -6-.

Vehicles with air duct in B-pillar

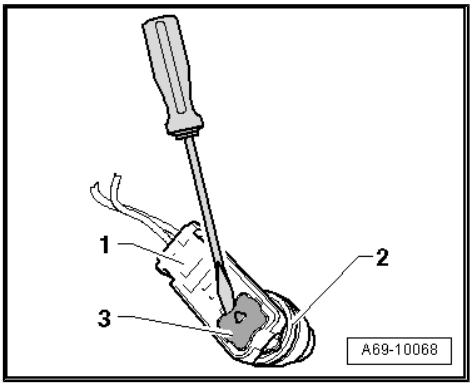
– Remove spreader rivets -8- (2x).
– Remove air duct -11-.

All vehicles (continued)

– Remove bolts -9- (2x).
– Remove belt guide -2-.
– Remove bolt -7-.
– Detach guide fitting -4- from belt height adjuster -3-.

Unplugging connector from pyrotechnic belt tensioner

– Unplug connector -1- from detonator -2- of pyrotechnic belt tensioner.
– To do so, use a small screwdriver to release connector locking element -3-.



Note

For greater clarity, belt reel/belt tensioner is not shown in illustration.

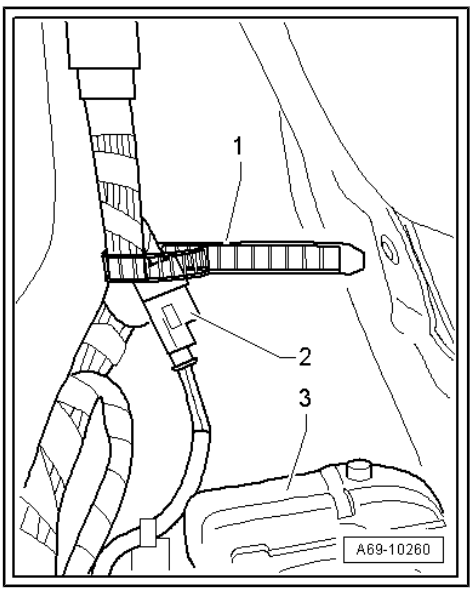
Unplugging connector for switchable belt force limiter

– Unfasten cable tie -1-.

3 - Belt reel/belt tensioner with switchable belt force limiter

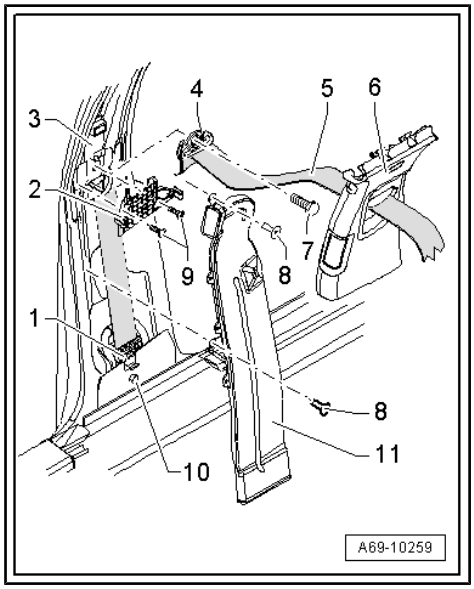
– Unplug connector for switchable belt force limiter -2-.

Removing belt reel/belt tensioner

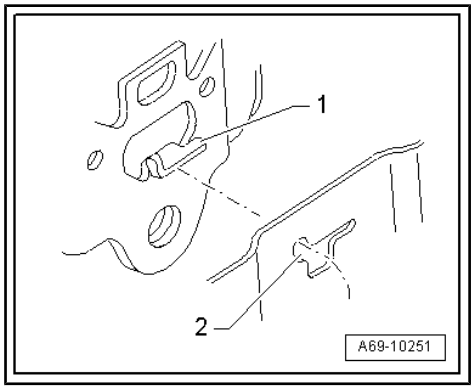


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove bolt -10-.



– Disengage belt reel/belt tensioner with switchable belt force limiter with hook -1- from keyhole opening -2- in side panel.



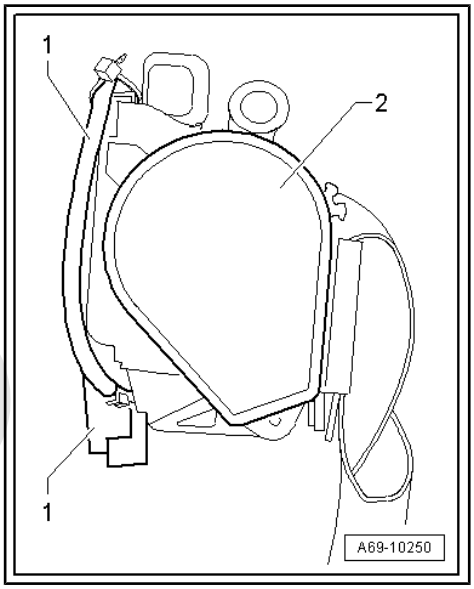
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– When doing so, pay attention to connection of switchable belt force limiter -3- and wire -1-.

Caution

When removing seat belt, take care not to damage connection -3- for switchable belt force limiter and wire -1-.

– Take out belt reel/belt tensioner with switchable belt force limiter -2-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for handling pyrotechnic belt tensioners ⇒ page 63 .***
- ***Before handling the belt tensioner units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***
- ***When fitting seat belt, take care not to damage connection for switchable belt force limiter and wire.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

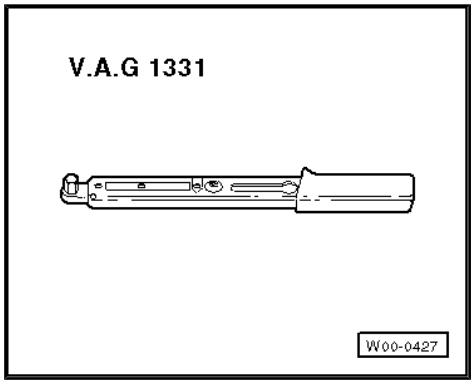
– Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .
– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Tightening torques ⇒ page 71

1.8 Removing and installing anchorage point (belt buckle)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1331-



Removing

– Remove seat: for standard seat ⇒ page 332 , for seat with electric adjustment ⇒ page 379 .

– Remove bolt -4- for belt buckle -1-.

– On vehicles with belt buckle sensor: Press in tabs on connector -2- and unplug connector.

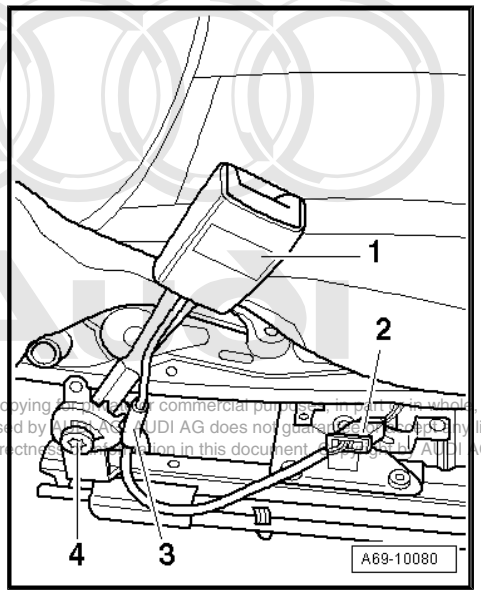
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

– Renew bolt for belt buckle.

– On vehicles with belt buckle sensor: make sure that wire is secured at position -3-.

Tightening torque for item -4-: 34 Nm

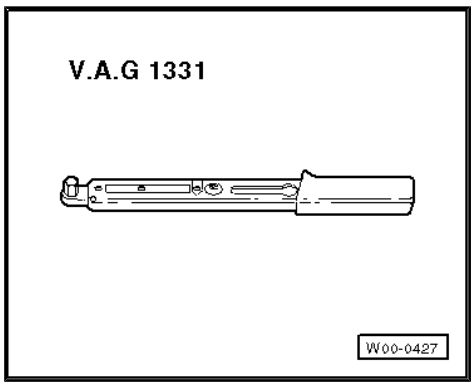


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.9 Removing and installing buckle for seat occupied recognition system controlling front passenger's airbag deactivation (country-specific version)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1331-



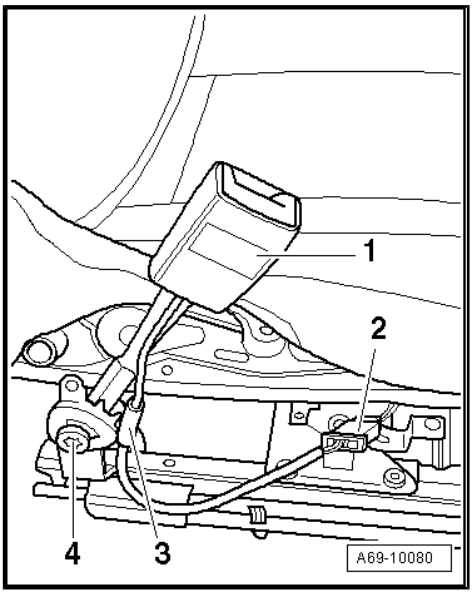
Note

The belt buckle for the seat occupied recognition system controlling the deactivation of the front passenger airbag is only fitted on the front passenger's seat.

WARNING

- *The belt buckle for the seat occupied recognition system controlling the deactivation of the front passenger's airbag must ALWAYS be renewed when the front passenger's belt tensioner has been triggered.*
- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*

Removing



– Remove seat: for standard seat ⇒ page 332 , for seat with electric adjustment ⇒ page 379 .
– Remove bolt -4- for belt buckle -1-.
– Disconnect wiring harness at connector -2- leading to wiring harness of seat occupied recognition control unit -J706- .

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

WARNING

Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

– Renew bolt for belt buckle.
– Make sure that cable is attached at location -3-.

Note

If the belt buckle for the seat occupied recognition system controlling the deactivation of the front passenger's airbag is renewed, you must complete the form for the seat occupied recognition system stating the serial number and including the bar code sticker of the new belt buckle, and then send the form to the importer.

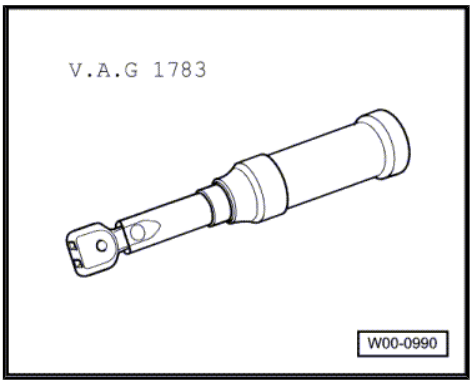
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Tightening torque for item -4-: 34 Nm

1.10 Removing and installing belt guide (front)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench -V.A.G 1783-



1 - Belt guide

- ♦ Removing
  - – Remove B-pillar trim (top).
- ♦ Audi A6 ⇒ page 257
- ♦ Audi A6 Security ⇒ page 258
  - – Remove B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 260 .

Vehicles with air duct in B-pillar

- – Remove spreader rivets (2x).
- – Remove air duct.

All vehicles (continued)

- – Unscrew bolts -3-.
- – Disengage spring element -arrow A-.

To do so, carefully pull retaining tab of spring element towards vehicle interior.

- – Slide belt guide -1- down as far as it will go.
- – Disengage retaining hooks -arrow B- out of key-hole opening.
- – Detach belt guide -1-.

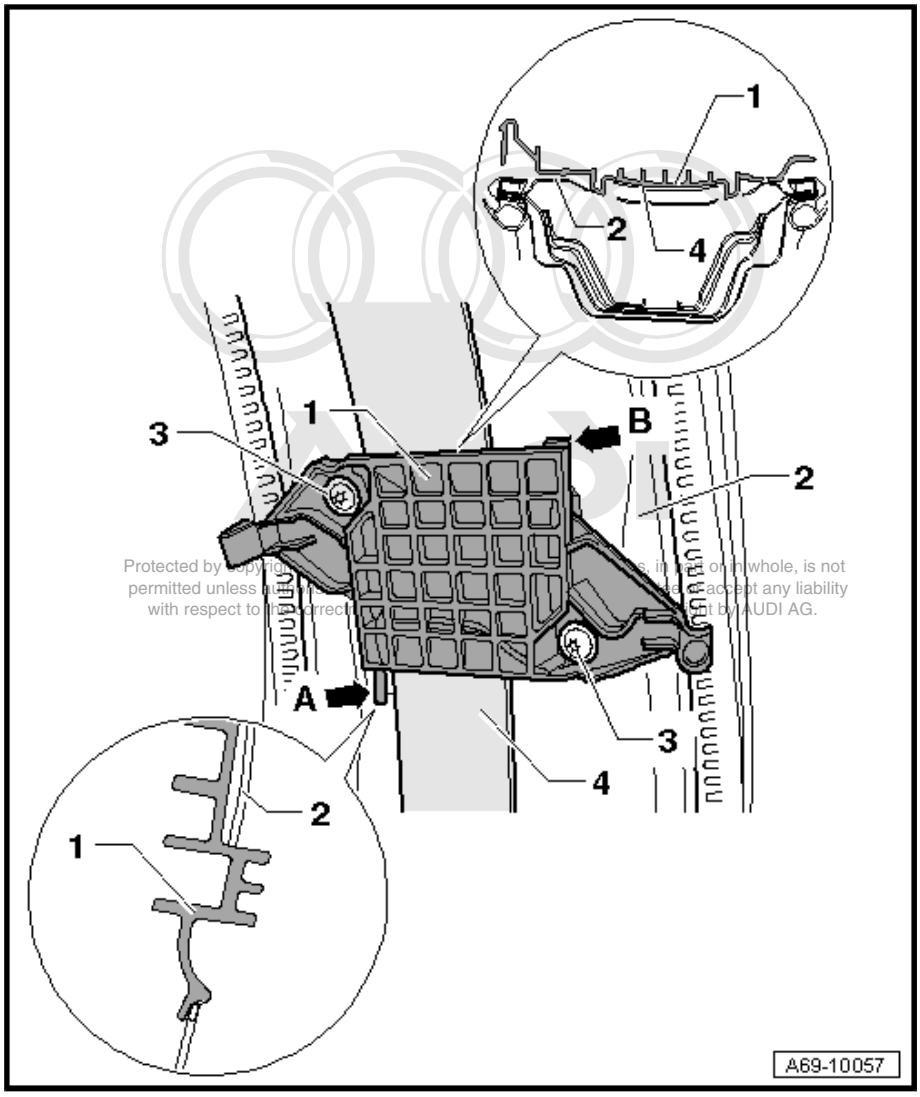
- ♦ Installing

When installing note markings for left side and right side.

L = left-side

R = right-side

- – Engage retaining hooks -arrow B- in key-hole opening.



Protected by copyright. Copying, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

- – Slide belt guide -1- up as far as it will go.

The spring element -arrow A- should be fitted into the opening in the body shell support -2-. This holds the belt guide -1- in the top position.

- – Screw in bolts -3- (2x) and tighten to specified torque.
- – Make sure that the belt -4- can move freely.

Remaining installation is carried out in reverse order of removal.

2 - Body shell support

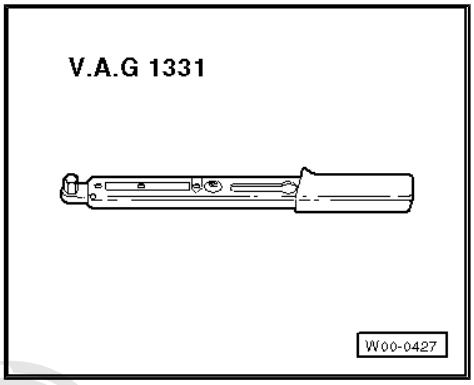
3 - Bolts (2x), 5 Nm

4 - Belt

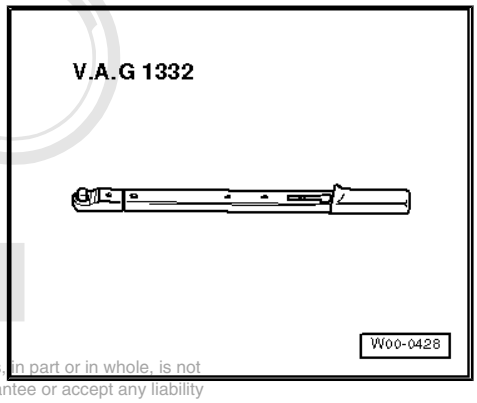
1.11 Removing and installing belt height adjuster

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench -V.A.G 1331-

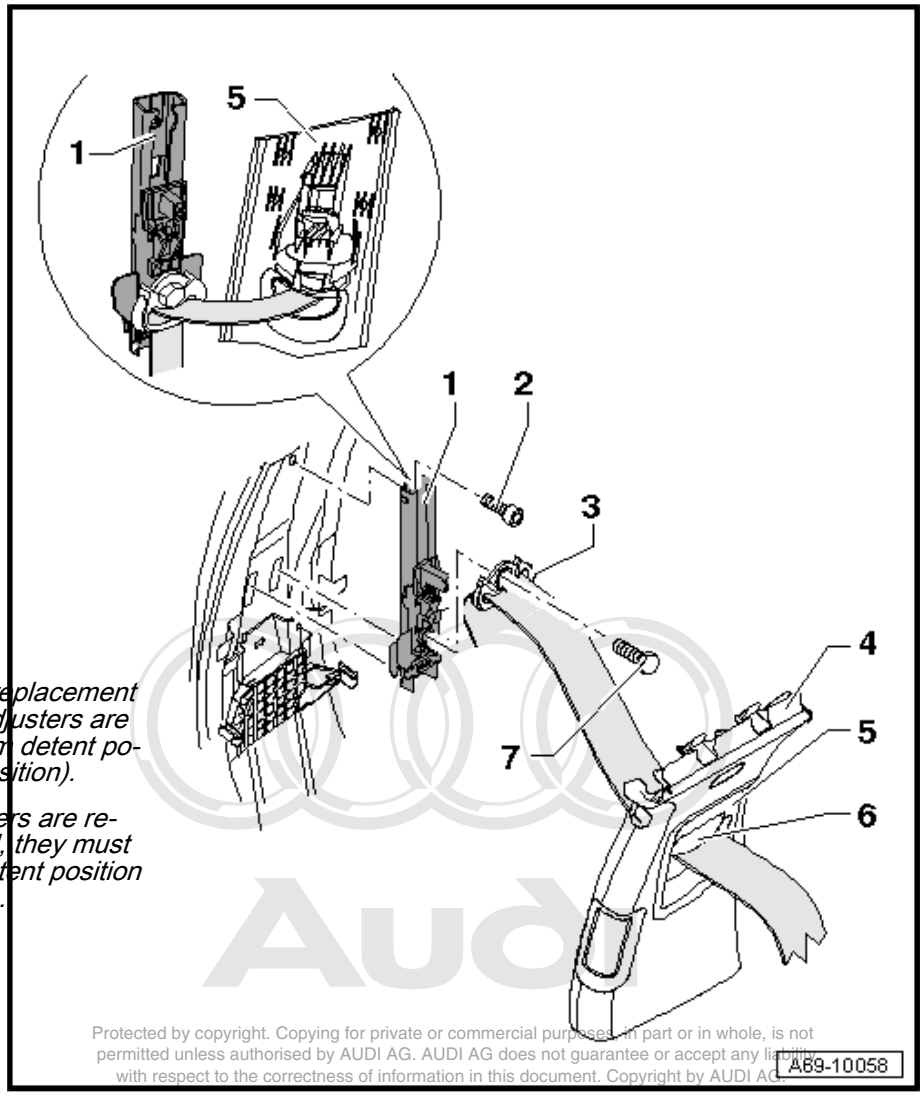


- Torque wrench -V.A.G 1332-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Belt height adjuster



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Removing
  - Press button -6- and move slide -5- to bottom position.
  - Remove B-pillar trim (top) -4-.
- Audi A6 ⇒ page 257
- Audi A6 Security ⇒ page 258
  - Move B-pillar trim (top) -4- aside with belt inserted.
  - Remove bolt -7-.
  - Detach guide fitting -3-.
  - Remove bolt -2-.
  - Lift belt height adjuster -1- off B-pillar.
- Installing

Note

- *When supplied as replacement parts, belt height adjusters are always set to bottom detent position (assembly position).*
- *If belt height adjusters are removed and re-fitted, they must be set to bottom detent position (assembly position).*

  - Engage belt height adjuster -1- in B-pillar.
  - Screw in bolt -2- and tighten to specified torque.
  - Install guide fitting -3- and tighten bolt -7- to specified torque.

Note

- *Button -6- must not be pressed when fitting B-pillar trim (top) -4- with slide -5-.*
- *Make sure that belt height adjuster -1- is in bottom position.*

  - Guide slide -5- into grooves provided on belt height adjuster -1-.
  - Install B-pillar trim (top) -4-.
- Audi A6 ⇒ page 257
- Audi A6 Security ⇒ page 258

Belt height adjuster as replacement part

  - After installing B-pillar trim (top) -4- push slide -5- up with some force (approx. 60 Nm).

This will release belt height adjuster from assembly position.

All belt height adjusters (continued)

  - Check operation.

The following functions must be tested successfully:

- Belt height adjuster must engage audibly in each of the five possible positions (including top position).
- Button -6- must always automatically return to raised position when it has been pressed.
- After tightening bolt, guide fitting -3- must settle automatically in vertical position or in correct position when belt is fastened.

If any of the listed functions is not OK, check installation of belt height adjuster and renew adjuster if necessary.

2 - Bolt, 23 Nm

- ❑ Renew bolt if belt height adjuster was removed as part of servicing work following an accident

3 - Guide fitting

4 - B-pillar trim (top)

5 - Slide

6 - Button

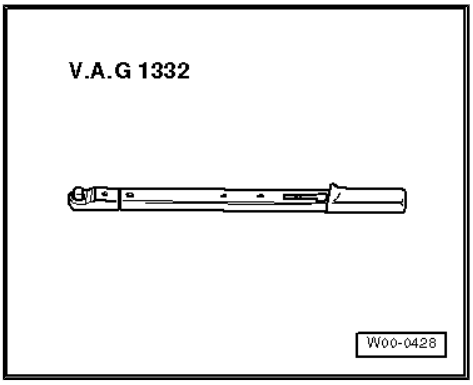
7 - Bolt, 55 Nm

- ❑ Renew bolt if guide fitting and belt height adjuster were removed as part of servicing work following an accident

1.12 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belts (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1332-

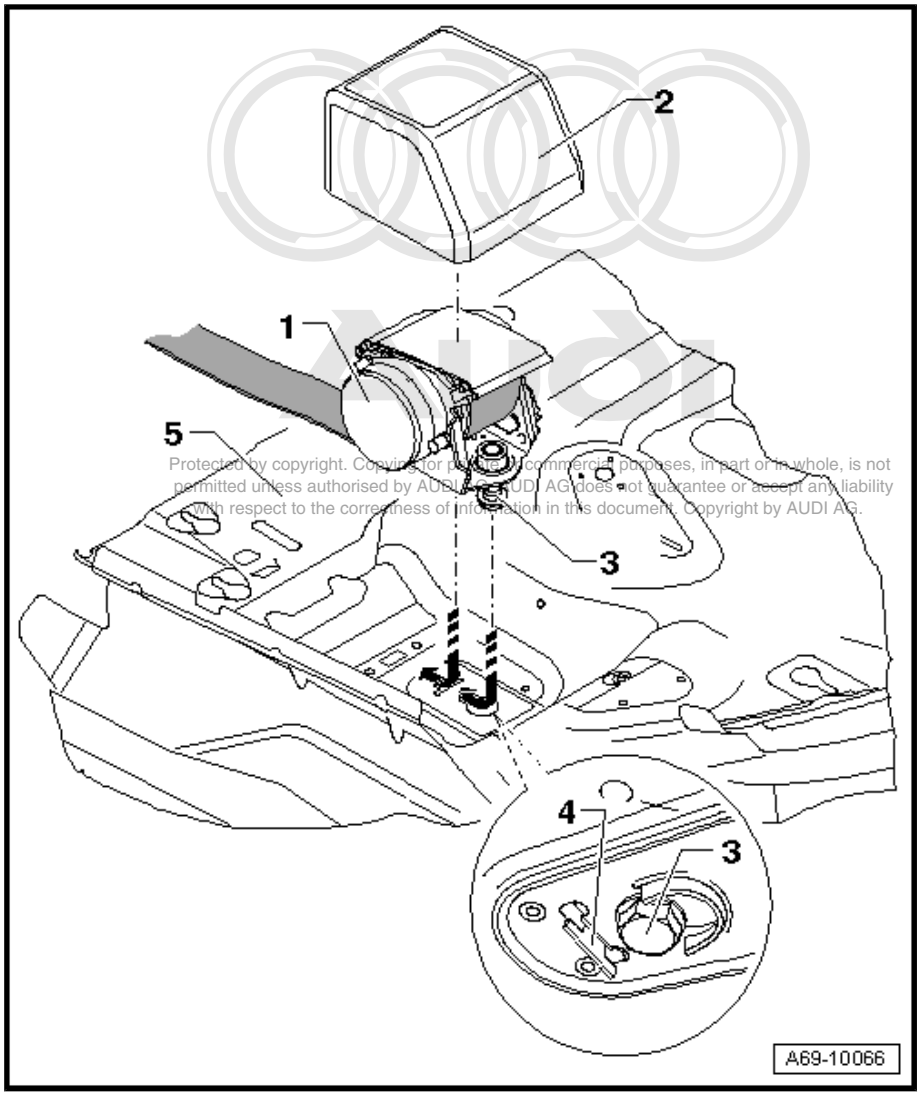


WARNING

Observe safety regulations for handling pyrotechnic belt tensioners ⇒ page 63 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Belt reel/belt tensioner



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removing

– Remove roof end trim ⇒ page 268 .
– Remove D-pillar trim ⇒ page 266 .
– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .

Vehicles with fixed rear seat backrest

– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 562 .

Vehicles with folding rear seat backrest

– Fold down rear seat backrest.
– Remove side padding ⇒ page 556 .

All vehicles (continued)

– Remove rear shelf:
Rear shelf without sun blind ⇒ page 269
Rear shelf with sun blind ⇒ page 273
– Remove C-pillar trim ⇒ page 261 .
– Remove outer belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ page 95 .
– Remove belt from belt guide.

Vehicles with pyrotechnic belt tensioners

– Release connector for pyrotechnic belt tensioner ⇒ page 83 .
– Unplug connector from detonator of pyrotechnic belt tensioner ⇒ page 83 .
– Unclip wire at belt tensioner.

All vehicles (continued)

– Release luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 286 .
– Fold back top section of side trim in luggage compartment slightly.
– Loosen bolt -3-.
– Push belt reel/belt tensioner -1- towards rear (in opposite direction to that of travel) until bolt -3- is located within large diameter section of key-hole opening.
– Remove belt reel/belt tensioner -1- with noise insulation cap -2-.

Note

♦ *Noise insulation cap -2- is glued onto belt reel/belt tensioner -1-.*

♦ *The noise insulation cap -2- is damaged when it is removed from belt reel/belt tensioner -1-.*

♦ Installing

– Engage belt reel/belt tensioner -1- (including noise insulation cap -2-) with bolt -3- and locating element -4- in key-hole openings on rear shelf cross member -5-.
– Push belt reel/belt tensioner -1- forwards onto the stop in direction of travel.
– Tighten bolt -3- to specified torque.
– Secure luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 286 .

Vehicles with pyrotechnic belt tensioners

– Clip wire into mounting bracket at belt tensioner.

– Plug connector into detonator of pyrotechnic belt tensioner and lock connector into place ⇒ page 83 .

All vehicles (continued)

– Install outer belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ page 95 .

– Make sure that the belt reel/belt tensioner -1- is not obstructed by wires or insulation etc.

Remaining installation is carried out in reverse order of removal.

Vehicles with pyrotechnic belt tensioners

– Check belt-fastened sensor ⇒ page 108 .

2 - Noise insulation cap

❑ Glued onto belt reel/belt tensioner

3 - Bolt, 55 Nm

❑ Supplied with replacement part

❑ Renew bolt if three-point seat belt (rear outer) was removed as part of servicing work following an accident.

4 - Locating element

❑ On base part of belt reel/belt tensioner

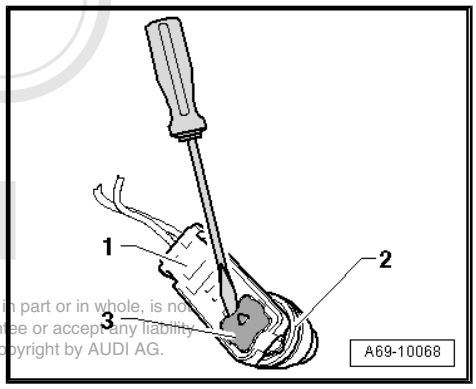
5 - Cross member for rear shelf

Unplugging and plugging in connector for detonator of pyrotechnic belt tensioner

♦ Unplugging:

– Use small screwdriver to release connector locking element -3-.

– Unplug connector -1- from detonator -2- of pyrotechnic belt tensioner.



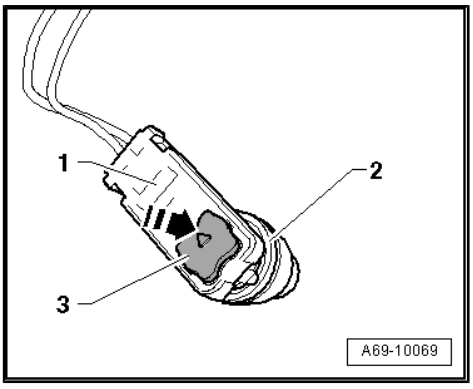
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Plugging in:

– Plug connector -1- into detonator -2- of pyrotechnic belt tensioner.

– Press connector locking element -3- into connector -1- in direction of -arrow-.

This will push the connector into the detonator as far as it will go and lock it into place.

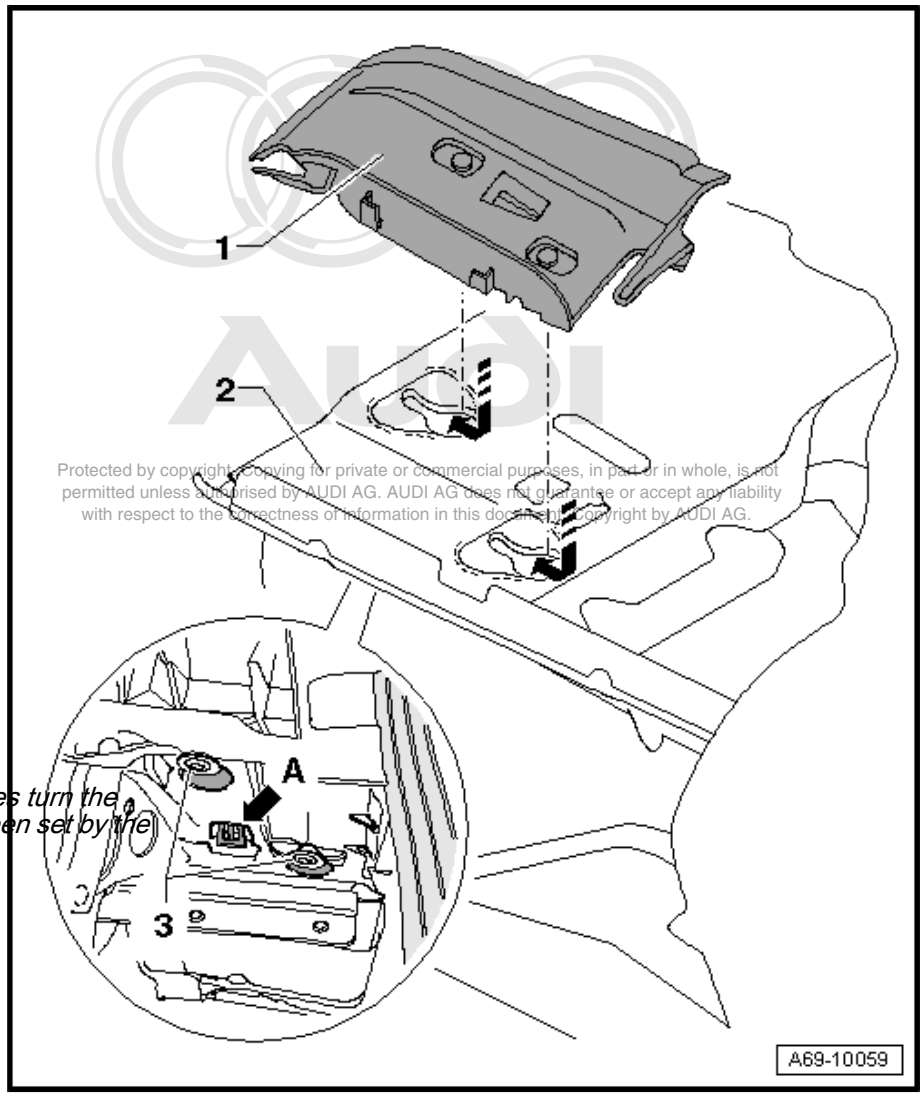


Note

If the connector was not locked in place correctly with the connector locking element an event memory entry will be stored in the airbag control unit.

1.13 Removing and installing outer belt guide (rear)

1 - Outer belt guide (rear)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removing

– Remove roof end trim ⇒ page 268 .
– Remove D-pillar trim ⇒ page 266 .

Vehicles with fixed rear seat backrest

– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 562 .

Vehicles with folding rear seat backrest

– Fold rear seat backrest forwards.
– Remove side padding ⇒ page 556 .

All vehicles (continued)

– Remove C-pillar trim ⇒ page 261 .
– Detach rear shelf on the side in question:
Rear shelf without sun blind ⇒ page 269
Rear shelf with sun blind ⇒ page 273

Note

Under no circumstances turn the bolts -3-. They have been set by the manufacturer.

– Release catch -arrow A-.

To do so, push retaining tab upwards.

– Push belt guide (outer rear seats) -1- towards rear (in opposite direction to that of travel) until bolts -3- are located within large diameter section of key-hole openings.
– Remove belt from belt guide.
– Lift out belt guide (outer rear seats) -1-.

♦ Installing

Note

Under no circumstances turn the bolts -3-. They have been set by the manufacturer.

– Engage bolts -3- on belt guide (outer rear seats) -1- into key-hole openings in cross member for rear shelf -2-.
– Pull belt guide (outer rear seats) -1- in direction of travel as far as the stop.

Note

The washers on the bolts -3- should be located below the cross member for the rear shelf -2-.

– Make sure that you hear retaining tab -arrow A- click into place.

Remaining installation is carried out in reverse order of removal.

2 - Cross member for rear shelf

3 - Bolt

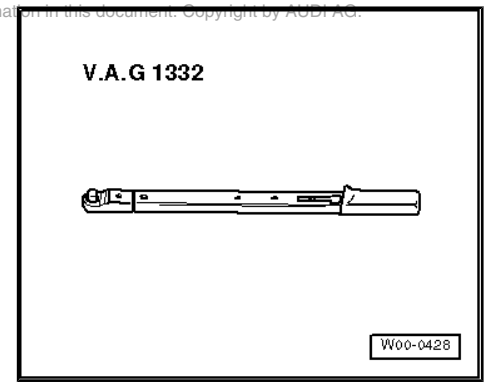
- ❑ Do not turn, bolt has been adjusted by the manufacturer.

1.14 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belt (rear) - Avant

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1332-



WARNING

Observe safety regulations for handling pyrotechnic belt tensioners ⇒ page 63 .

1 - Belt reel/belt tensioner

❑ Bonded to noise insulation cap

♦ Removing

– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 308 .
– Remove outer belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ page 95 .
– Remove belt from belt guide.

Vehicles with pyrotechnic belt tensioners

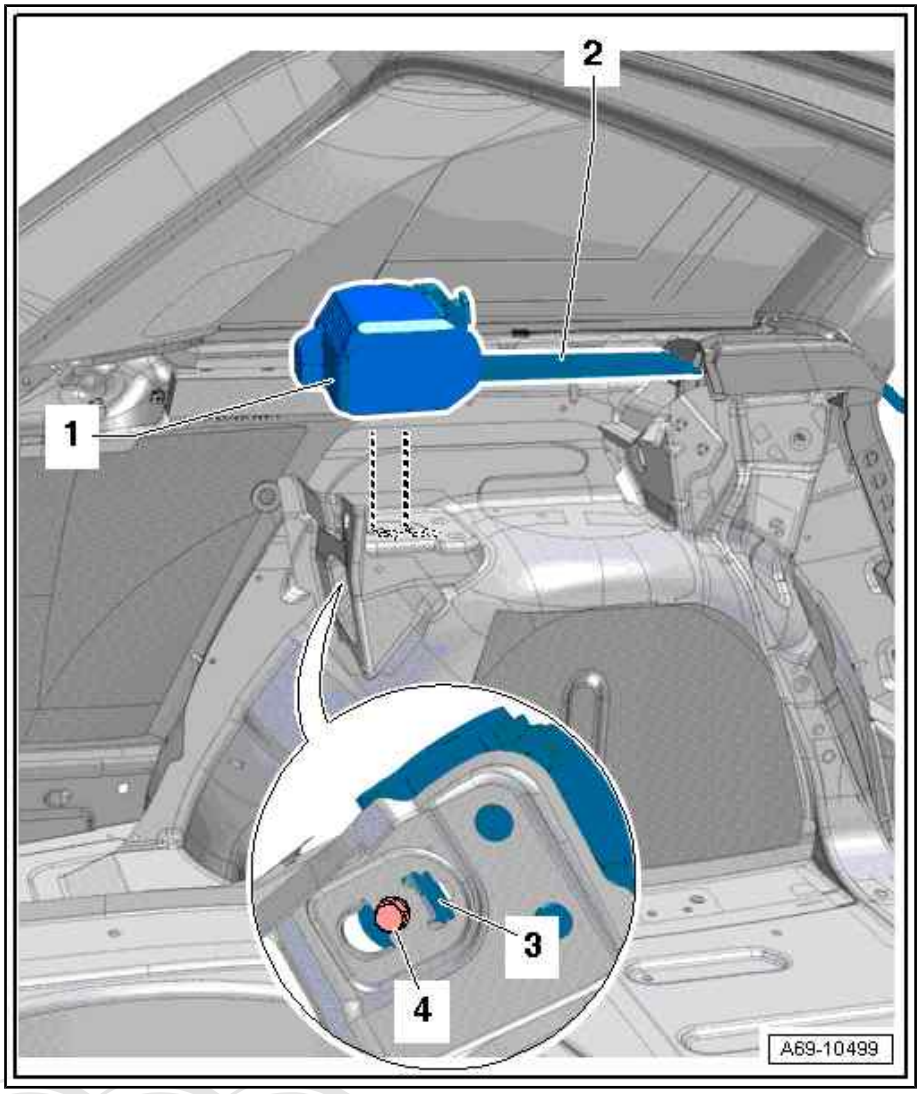
– Unplug electrical connector for pyrotechnic belt tensioner ⇒ page 87 .
– Unclip wire at belt tensioner.

All vehicles (continued)

– Loosen bolt -3-.
– Push belt reel/belt tensioner -1- towards rear (in opposite direction to that of travel) until bolt -3- is located within large diameter section of key-hole opening.
– Remove belt reel/belt tensioner -1-.

♦ Installing

– Engage belt reel/belt tensioner -1- with bolt -3- and locating element -4- in key-hole openings on mounting bracket on wheel housing.



– Push belt reel/belt tensioner -1- forwards onto the stop in direction of travel.
– Tighten bolt -3- to specified torque.

Vehicles with pyrotechnic belt tensioners

– Clip wire into mounting bracket at belt tensioner.
– Plug in electrical connector for pyrotechnic belt tensioner ⇒ page 87 .

All vehicles (continued)

– Install outer belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ page 95 .
– Make sure that belt reel/belt tensioner -1- is not obstructed by wires or insulation etc.
– Install luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 308 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Vehicles with pyrotechnic belt tensioners

– Check belt-fastened sensor ⇒ page 108 .

2 - Belt

❑ Remove outer belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ “1.19 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (rear)”, page 95 .

3 - Locating element

- ❑ On base part of belt reel/belt tensioner

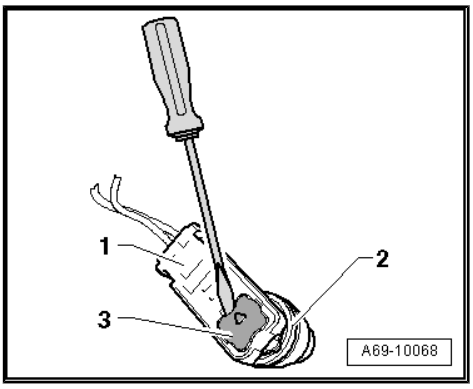
4 - Bolt, 55 Nm

- ❑ Supplied with replacement part
- ❑ Renew bolt if three-point seat belt (rear outer) was removed as part of servicing work following an accident.

Unplugging electrical connector for pyrotechnic belt tensioner

– Use small screwdriver to release connector locking element -3-.

– Unplug connector -1- from detonator -2- of pyrotechnic belt tensioner.

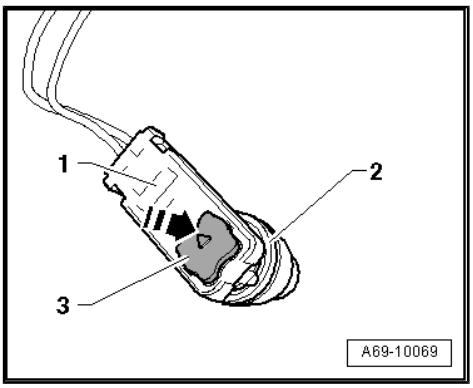


Plugging in electrical connector for pyrotechnic belt tensioner

– Plug connector -1- into detonator -2- of pyrotechnic belt tensioner.

– Press connector locking element -3- into connector -1- in direction of -arrow-.

This will push the connector into the detonator as far as it will go and lock it into place.



Note

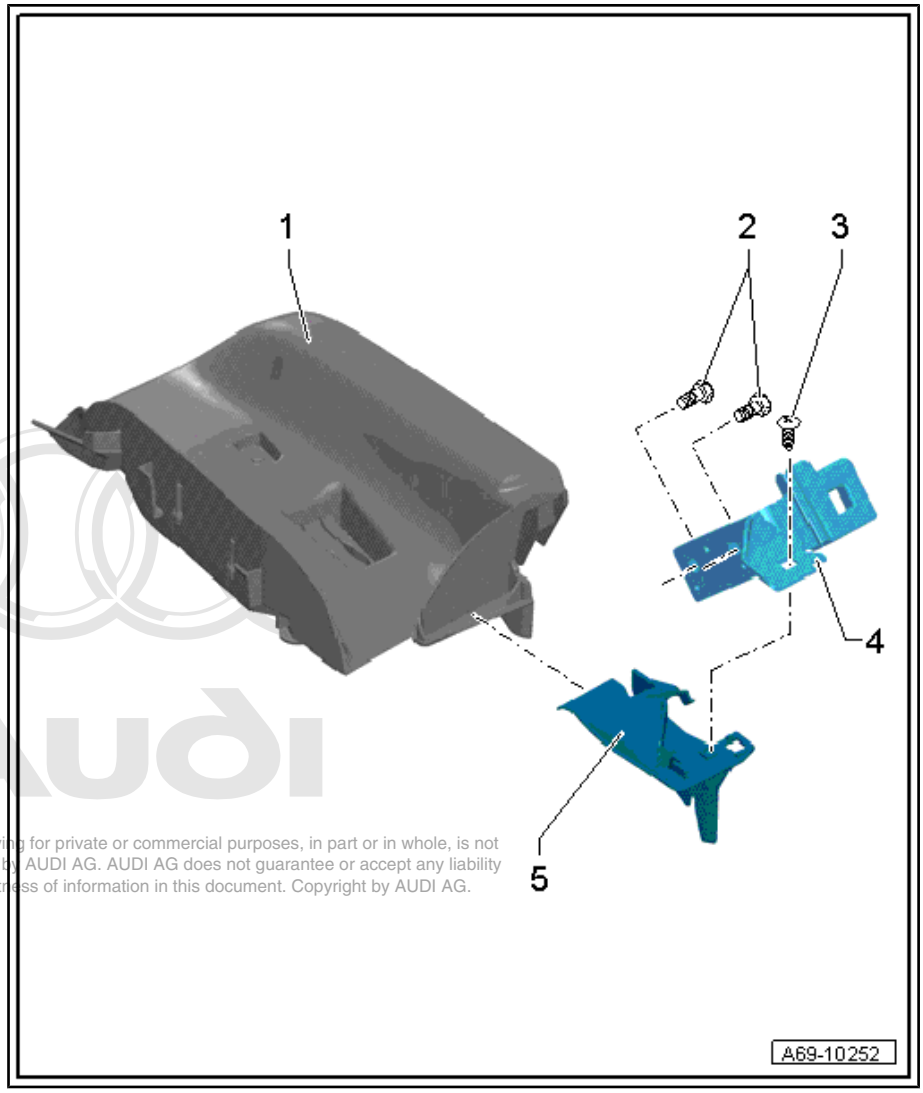
If the connector was not locked in place correctly with the connector locking element an event memory entry will be stored in the airbag control unit.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.15 Exploded view of rear outer belt guide II (Avant)

Note

For greater clarity, the surrounding area is not shown.



1 - Outer belt guide (rear)

- ❑ Need not be removed for removing and installing belt guide II ⇒ Item 5 (page 88) with retainer ⇒ Item 4 (page 88)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 84

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 310
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ For retainer ⇒ Item 4 (page 88)

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 307
- ❑ For connecting luggage compartment side trim to retainer and rear outer belt guide II

4 - Bracket

- ❑ For load guard
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 312
- ❑ Must be taken out with outer belt guide II (rear) ⇒ Item 5 (page 88) when removing
- ❑ Must be pre-assembled with outer belt guide II (rear) ⇒ Item 5 (page 88) for installation

5 - Outer belt guide II (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 89
- ❑ Must be removed together with retainer ⇒ Item 4 (page 88)
- ❑ Must be pre-assembled with retainer ⇒ Item 4 (page 88) for installation

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.16 Removing and installing rear outer belt guide II (Avant)

Note

- *The rear outer belt guide II can only be removed together with the bracket for the load guard.*
- *The belt guide II and the bracket for the load guard can only be separated following removal.*

Removing

WARNING

Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

– Disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .

– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .

WARNING

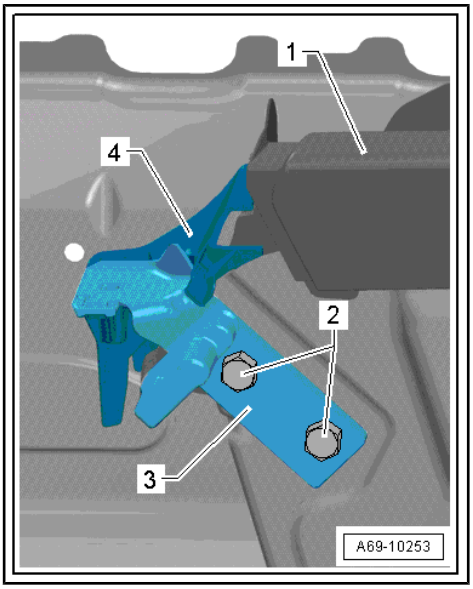
Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove side airbag ⇒ page 556 .

– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 308 .

– Remove bolts -2- (2x).

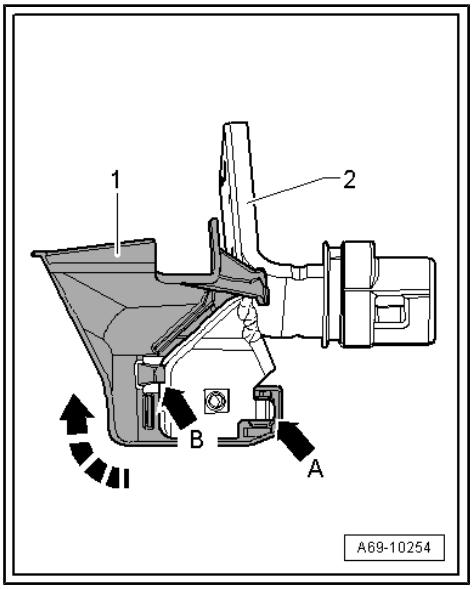


Note

For greater clarity the seat belt is not shown.

– Detach retainer -3- with belt guide II -4- from belt guide -1-.

– Unclip retaining tab -arrow A- on retainer -2-.
– Swivel out belt guide II -1- in direction of -arrow-.
– At the same time, unclip fastener -arrow B-.
– Detach retainer -2- from belt guide II -1-.

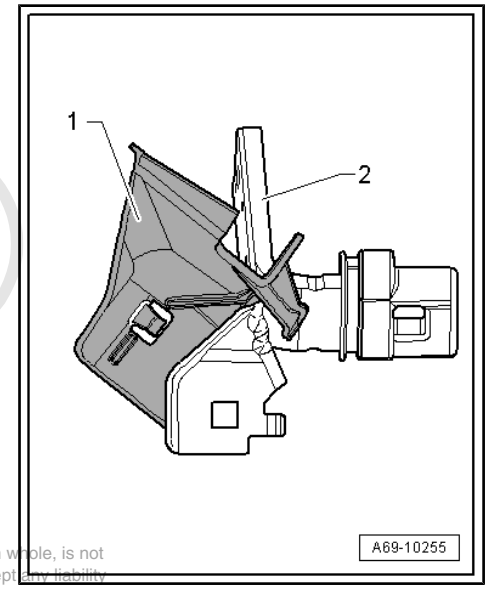


Installing

Note

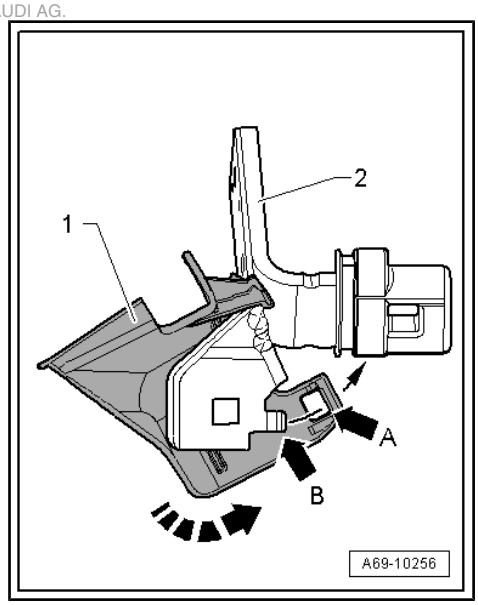
Belt guide II and bracket for load guard must be pre-assembled for installation. Assembly in the vehicle is not possible.

– As shown in illustration, position belt guide II -1- at retainer -2-.

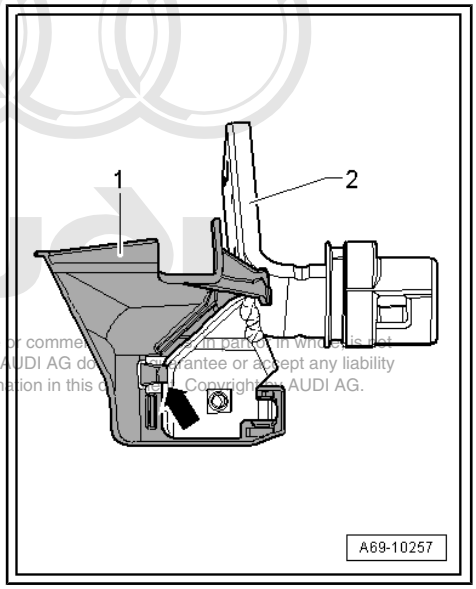


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Swivel belt guide II -1- in direction of -arrow- and insert fastener -arrow B- on retainer -2- in recess -arrow A- of belt guide II -1-.



– Press belt guide II -1- against bracket -2- until retaining tab -arrow- on belt guide II engages.



Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

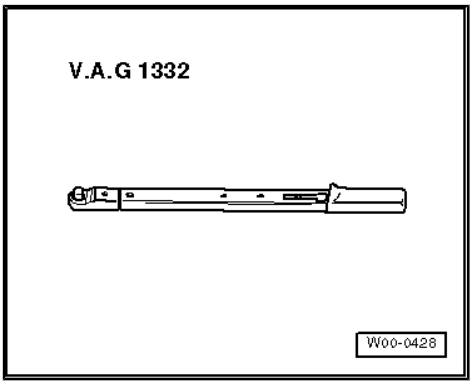
– Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .
– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Tightening torques ⇒ page 88

1.17 Removing and installing three-point seat belt for rear centre seat - vehicles with fixed rear seat backrest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

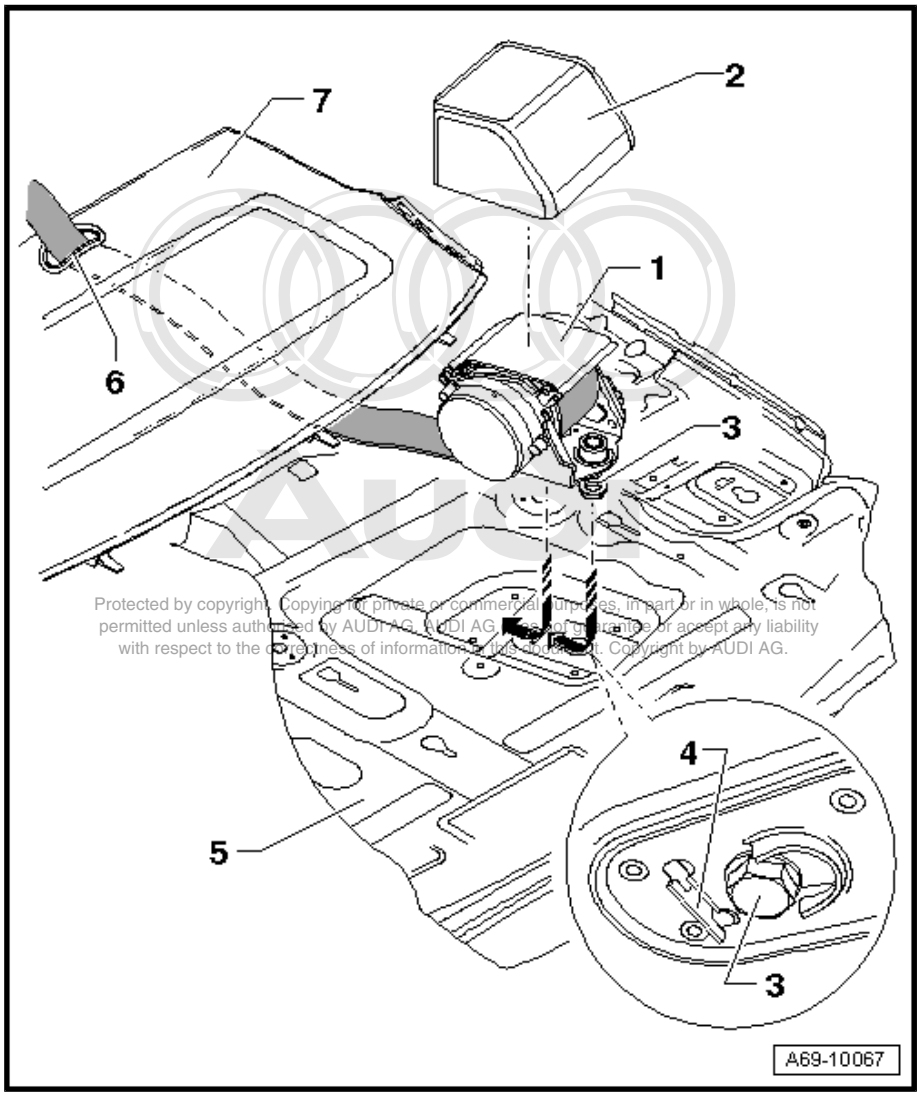
- Torque wrench -V.A.G 1332-



WARNING

Observe safety regulations for handling pyrotechnic belt tensioners ⇒ page 63 .

1 - Belt reel/belt tensioner



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Removing
  - Remove roof end trim ⇒ page 268 .
  - Remove D-pillar trim ⇒ page 266 .
  - Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .
  - Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 562 .
  - Remove C-pillar trim ⇒ page 261 .
  - Remove rear centre belt end fitting (belt buckle with buckle bracket, right-side) ⇒ page 98 .
  - Unclip belt guide (rear centre) -6- from rear shelf -7- ⇒ page 94 .
  - Remove rear shelf:
    Rear shelf without sun blind ⇒ page 269
    Rear shelf with sun blind ⇒ page 273
  - Remove belt from belt guide (rear centre) -6- and rear shelf -7-.

Vehicles with pyrotechnic belt tensioners

  - Release connector for pyrotechnic belt tensioner ⇒ page 94 .
  - Unplug connector from detonator of pyrotechnic belt tensioner ⇒ page 94 .
  - Unclip wire at belt tensioner.

All vehicles (continued)

  - Release luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 286 .
  - Fold back top section of side trim in luggage compartment slightly.
  - Loosen bolt -3-.
  - Push belt reel/belt tensioner -1- towards rear (in opposite direction to that of travel) until bolt -3- is located within large diameter section of key-hole opening.
  - Remove belt reel/belt tensioner -1- with noise insulation cap -2-.

Note

- *Noise insulation cap -2- is glued onto belt reel/belt tensioner -1-.*
- *The noise insulation cap -2- is damaged when it is removed from belt reel/belt tensioner -1-.*

- Installing
  - Engage belt reel/belt tensioner -1- (including noise insulation cap -2-) with bolt -3- and locating element -4- in key-hole openings on rear shelf cross member -5-.

– Push belt reel/belt tensioner -1- forwards onto the stop in direction of travel.
– Tighten bolt -3- to specified torque.
– Secure luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 286 .

Vehicles with pyrotechnic belt tensioners

– Clip wire into mounting bracket at belt tensioner.
– Plug connector into detonator of pyrotechnic belt tensioner and lock connector into place ⇒ page 94 .

All vehicles (continued)

– Insert belt into belt guide (rear centre) -6-.
– Insert belt guide (rear centre) -6- with belt through cut-out in rear shelf -7-.
– Clip belt guide (rear centre) -6- into rear shelf -7-.
– Install rear shelf:

  Rear shelf without sun blind ⇒ page 269

  Rear shelf with sun blind ⇒ page 273

Copyright by AUDI AG. Reproduction for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Install rear centre belt end fitting (belt buckle with buckle bracket, right-side) ⇒ page 98 .

Note

- *Make sure that the belt reel/belt tensioner -1- is not obstructed by wires or insulation etc.*
- *Make sure that belt is not twisted.*

Remaining installation is carried out in reverse order of removal.

Vehicles with pyrotechnic belt tensioners

– Check belt-fastened sensor ⇒ page 108 .

2 - Noise insulation cap

❑ Glued onto belt reel/belt tensioner

3 - Bolt, 55 Nm

❑ Supplied with replacement part
❑ Renew bolt if three-point seat belt (rear centre) was removed as part of servicing work following an accident.

4 - Locating element

❑ On base part of belt reel/belt tensioner

5 - Cross member for rear shelf

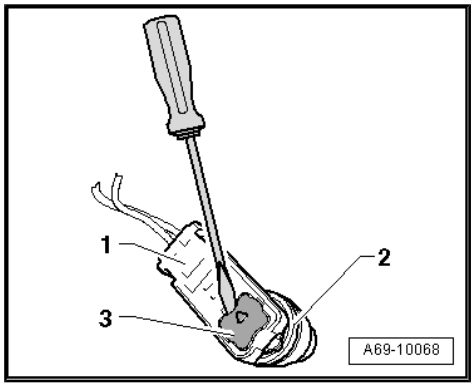
6 - Belt guide (rear centre)

❑ Only for vehicles with fixed rear seat backrest

7 - Rear shelf

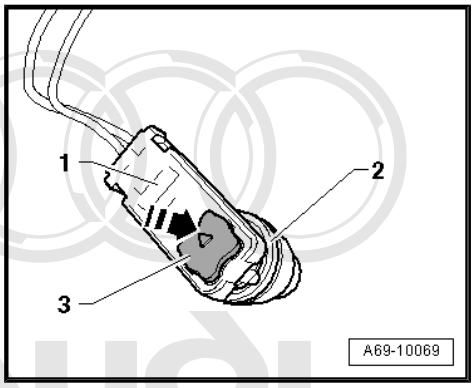
Unplugging and plugging in connector for detonator of pyrotechnic belt tensioner

- ♦ Unplugging:
- – Use small screwdriver to release connector locking element -3-.
- – Unplug connector -1- from detonator -2- of pyrotechnic belt tensioner.



- ♦ Plugging in:
- – Plug connector -1- into detonator -2- of pyrotechnic belt tensioner.
- – Press connector locking element -3- into connector -1- in direction of -arrow-.

This will push the connector into the detonator as far as it will go and lock it into place.



Note

If the connector was not locked in place correctly with the connector locking element an event memory entry will be stored in the airbag control unit.

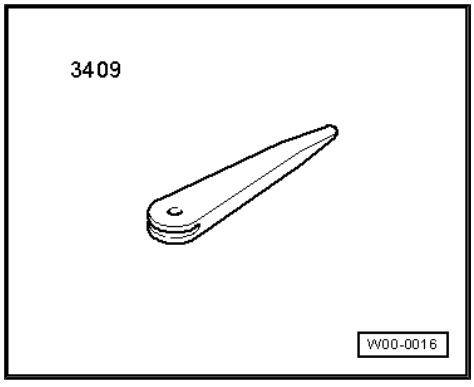
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.18 Removing and installing centre belt guide (rear)

The belt guide (rear centre) is only fitted on vehicles with fixed rear seat backrest.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Removal wedge -3409-

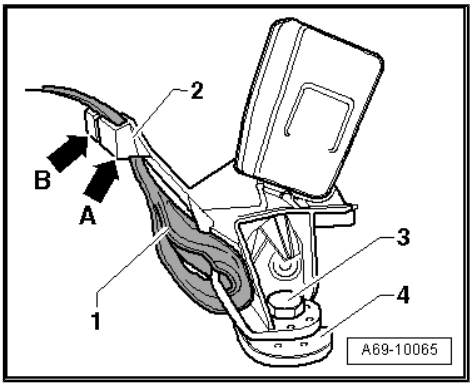


Removing

– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .

– Remove rear centre belt end fitting (belt buckle with buckle bracket, right-side) ⇒ page 98 .

– Remove belt -1- from clamp guide -2- at rear centre belt end fitting (belt buckle with buckle bracket, right-side).



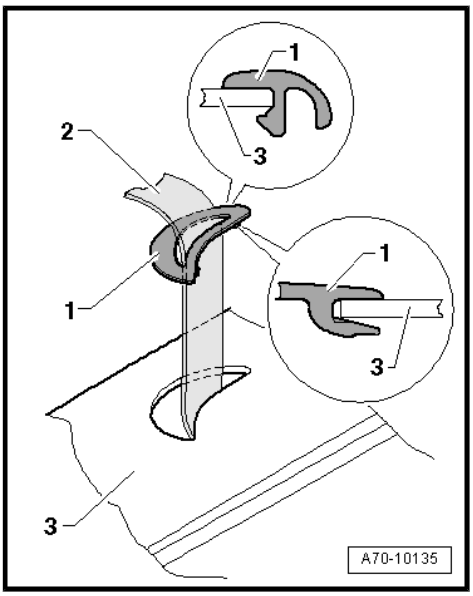
– Unclip front retaining hooks of belt guide -1-.

– To do so, insert removal wedge -3409- in between rear shelf -3- and belt guide -1-.

– Swivel belt guide -1- upwards approx. 45°.

– Detach belt guide -1- from rear shelf -3-.

– Remove belt -2- from belt guide -1-.



Installing

– Insert belt -2- into belt guide -1-.

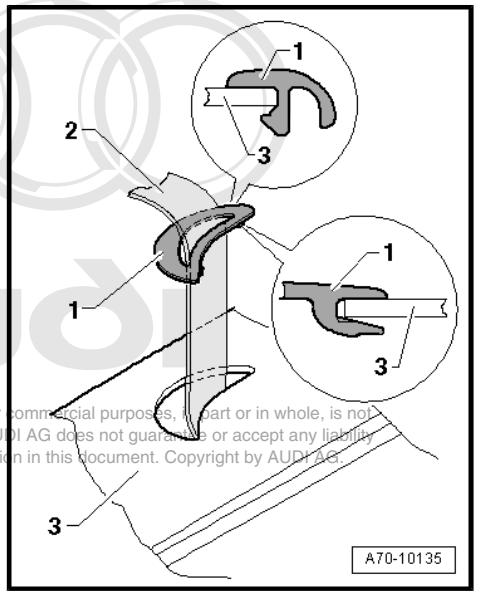
Make sure that belt is not twisted.

– First clip rear part of belt guide -1- into rear shelf -3-.

– Clip retaining hooks for belt guide -1- into rear shelf -3-.

– Install rear centre belt end fitting (belt buckle with buckle bracket, right-side) ⇒ page 98 .

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

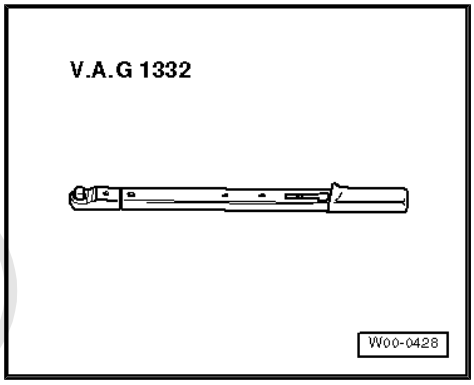


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.19 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1332-



1 - Bolt, 55 Nm

- ❑ Supplied with seat belt
- ❑ Renew bolt -1- if outer belt end fitting (rear) was removed as part of an accident repair.

2 - Seat belt with fitting

♦ Removing

- – Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .
- – Remove bolt -1-.
- – Detach seat belt with fitting -2-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

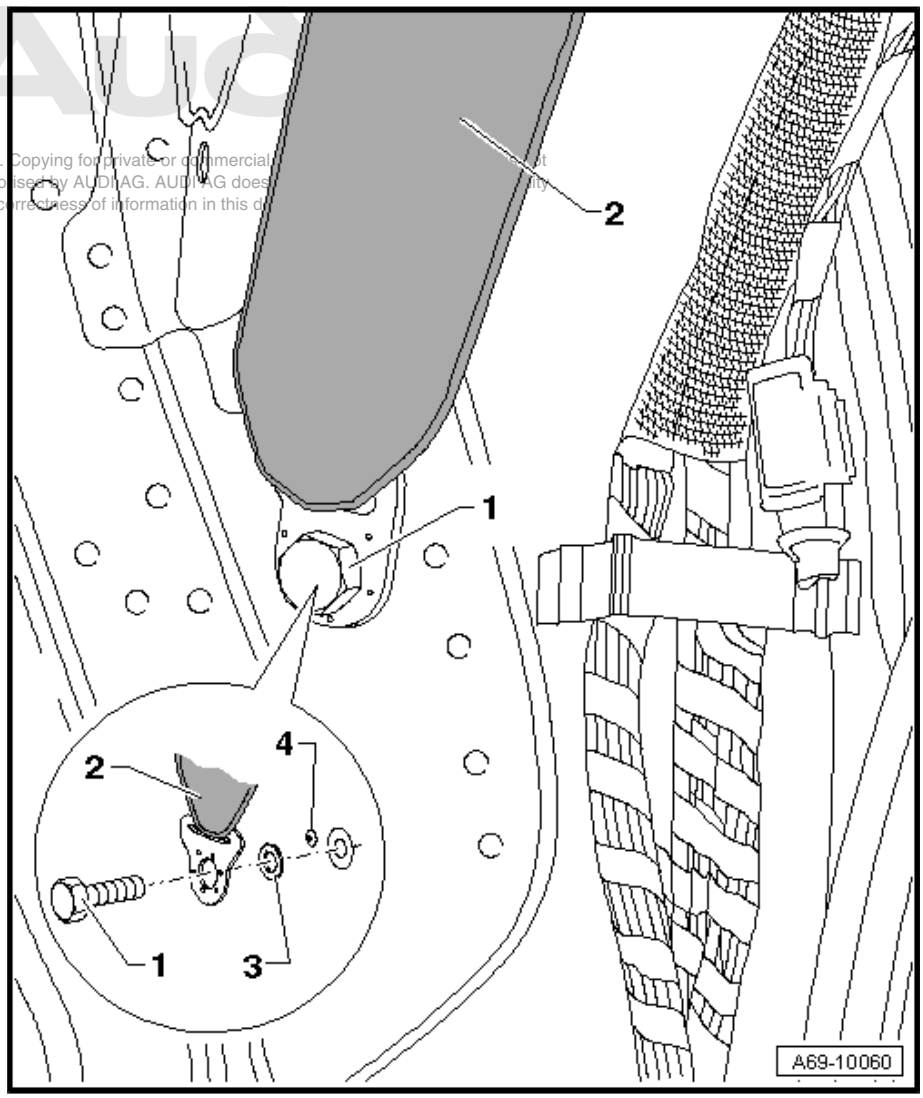
- – Make sure that belt with fitting -2- is secured on floor with locating element -4-.

3 - Washer

- ❑ Supplied with three-point seat belt

4 - Locating element

- ❑ In floor panel



1.20 Centre belt end fitting (rear)

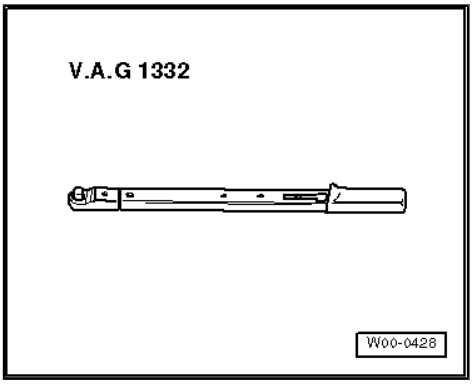
⇒ “1.20.1 Removing and installing belt buckles with buckle bracket (left-side)”, page 97

⇒ “1.20.2 Removing and installing belt buckle with buckle bracket (right-side)”, page 98

1.20.1 Removing and installing belt buckles with buckle bracket (left-side)

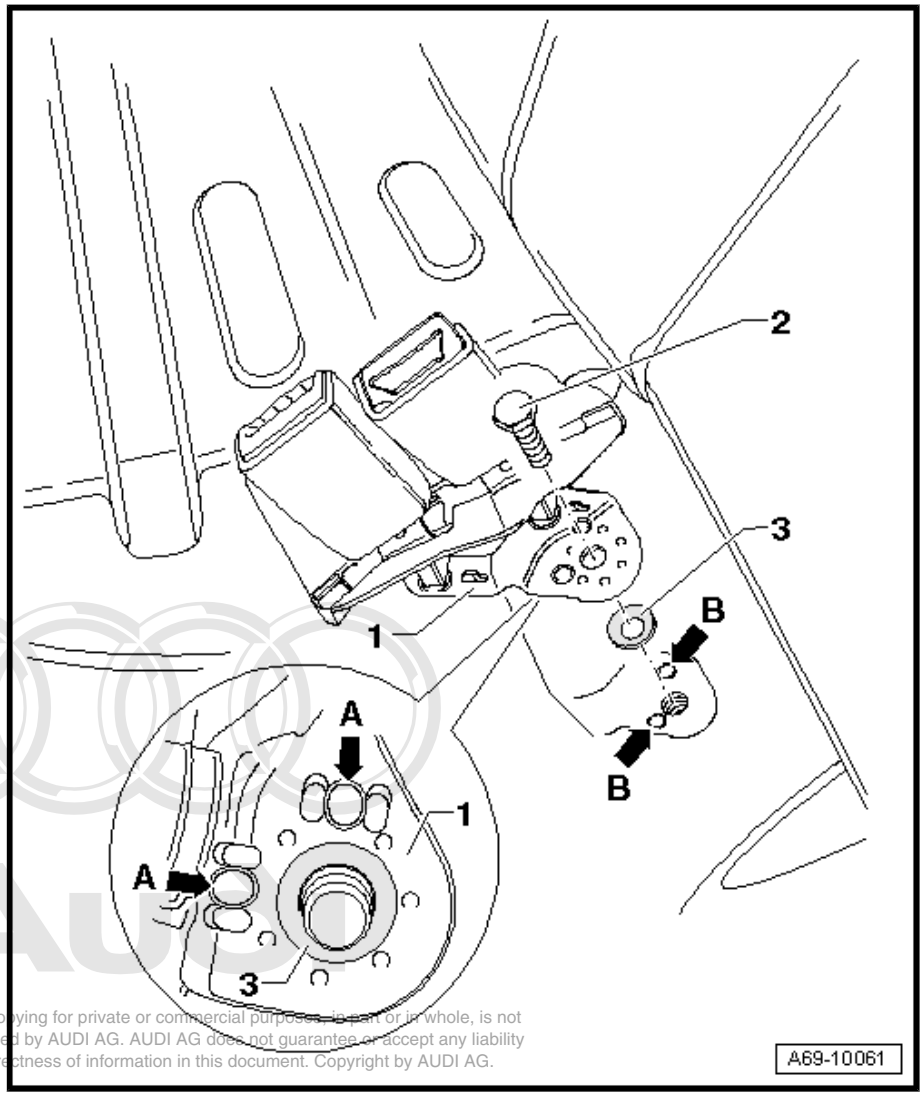
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench -V.A.G 1332-



1 - Belt buckles with buckle bracket (left-side)

- Removing
  - Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .
  - Remove bolt -2-.
  - Take out belt buckles with buckle bracket (left-side) -1-.
- Installing
  - Insert bolt -2- in hole in buckle bracket.
  - Push seal -3- onto shank of bolt as far as it will go.
  - Insert bolt -2- into nut on vehicle floor.
  - Press buckle bracket against vehicle floor.
  - Align recesses in buckle bracket -arrows A- with locating elements on vehicle floor -arrows B-.
  - Tighten bolt -2- to specified torque.
  - Install rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .



2 - Bolt, 55 Nm

- ❑ Supplied with replacement part
- ❑ Renew bolt -2- if belt buckles with buckle bracket (left-side) were removed as part of servicing work following an accident.

3 - Washer

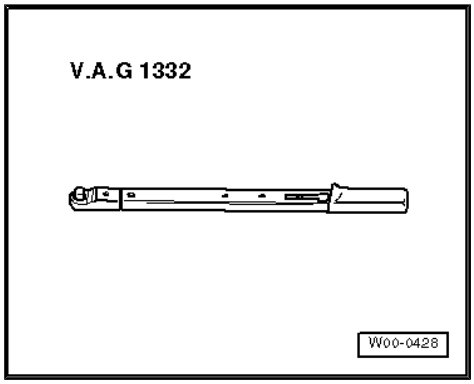
- ❑ Supplied with replacement part

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.20.2 Removing and installing belt buckle with buckle bracket (right-side)

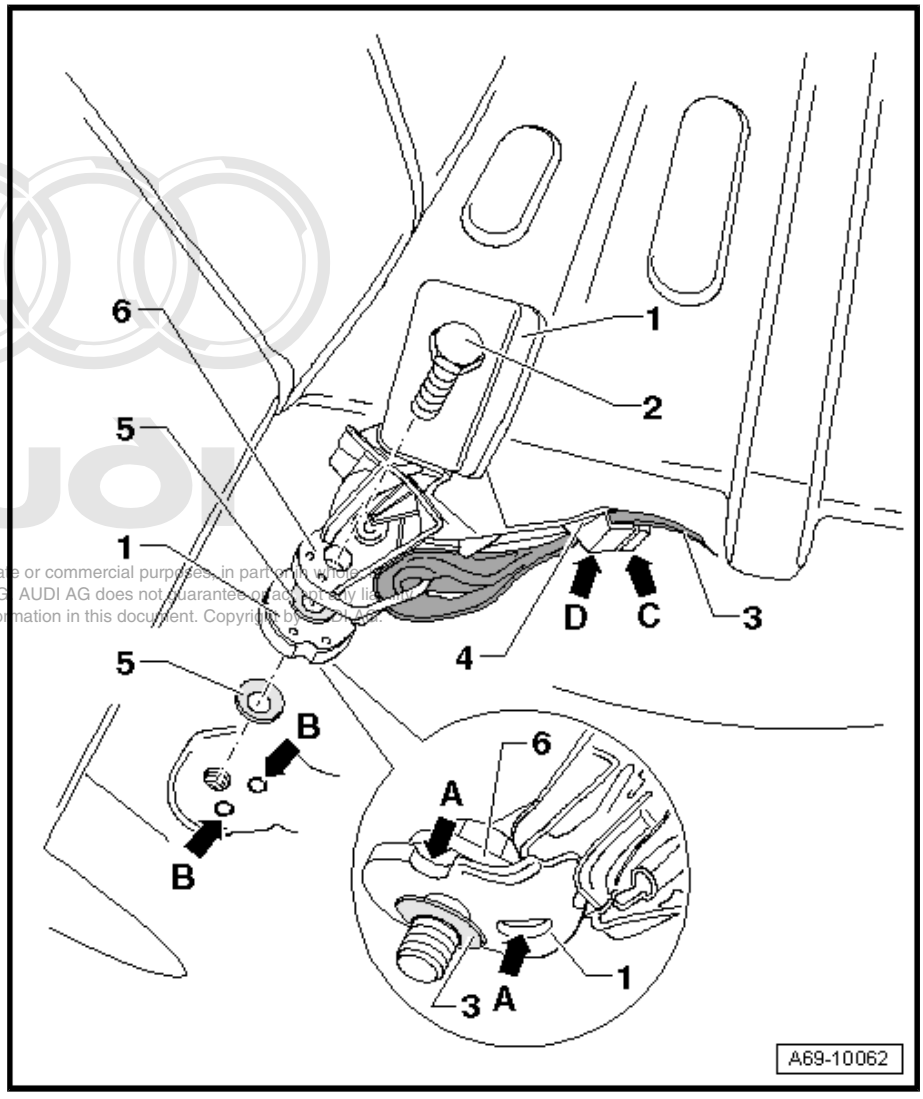
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench -V.A.G 1332-



1 - Belt buckle with buckle bracket (right-side)

- Removing
  - Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .
  - Remove bolt -2-.
  - Remove belt -3- from clamp guide -4-.
  - First disengage belt -3- from short clamp -arrow C- and then from long clamp -arrow D-.
  - Take out belt buckle with buckle bracket (right-side) -1-.
- Installing
  - Preassemble belt buckle with buckle bracket (right-side) -1- and belt with fitting -3- and -6- ⇒ page 99 .
  - Insert bolt -2- into nut on vehicle floor.
  - Press buckle bracket -1- against vehicle floor.
  - Align elongated recesses in buckle bracket -arrows A- with locating element on vehicle floor -arrows B-.
  - Tighten bolt -2- to specified torque.
  - Install rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 - Bolt, 55 Nm

- ❑ Supplied with replacement part
- ❑ Renew bolt -2- if belt buckle with buckle bracket (right-side) was removed as part of servicing work following an accident.

3 - Belt

4 - Clamp guide

5 - Seal

- ❑ Supplied with replacement part

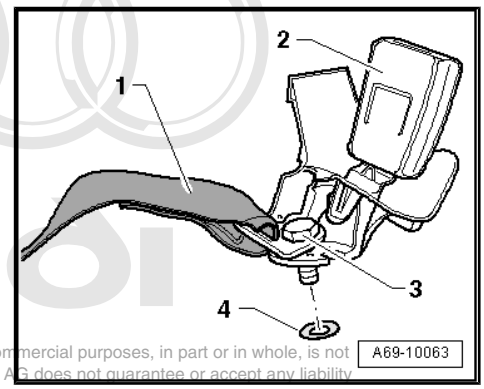
6 - Fitting for belt

Preassembling belt buckle/buckle bracket with belt/fitting

– Position fitting with belt -1- on buckle bracket with belt buckle -2-.

– Guide bolt -3- through holes on belt fitting and bracket for belt buckle.

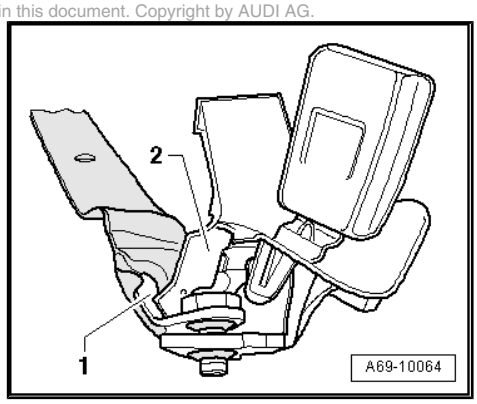
– Push seal -4- onto shank of bolt as far as it will go.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Turn fitting -1- onto bottom of plastic lug -2- in clockwise direction as far as it will go.

– Press plastic lug with trim -2- downwards.

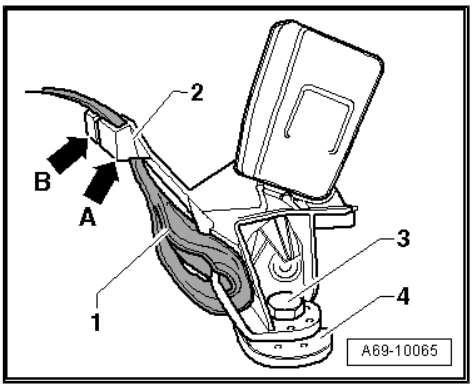


– Place belt -1- into clamp guide -2-.

– First insert belt -1- into long clamp -arrow A- and then into short clamp -arrow B-.

– Press bolt -3- against buckle bracket -4-.

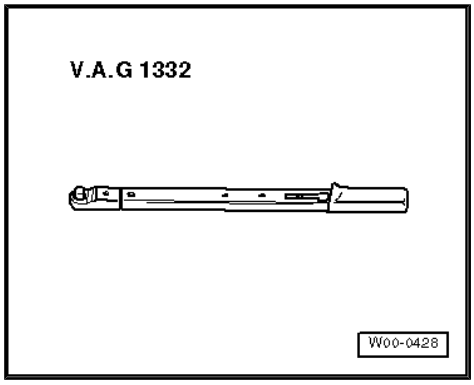
– Pull belt -1- to tighten it.



1.21 Removing and installing three-point seat belt for rear centre seat - vehicles with folding rear seat backrest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1332-



1 - Belt end fitting

2 - Belt

3 - Guide fitting

4 - Bolt

❑ Tightening torque: 55 Nm

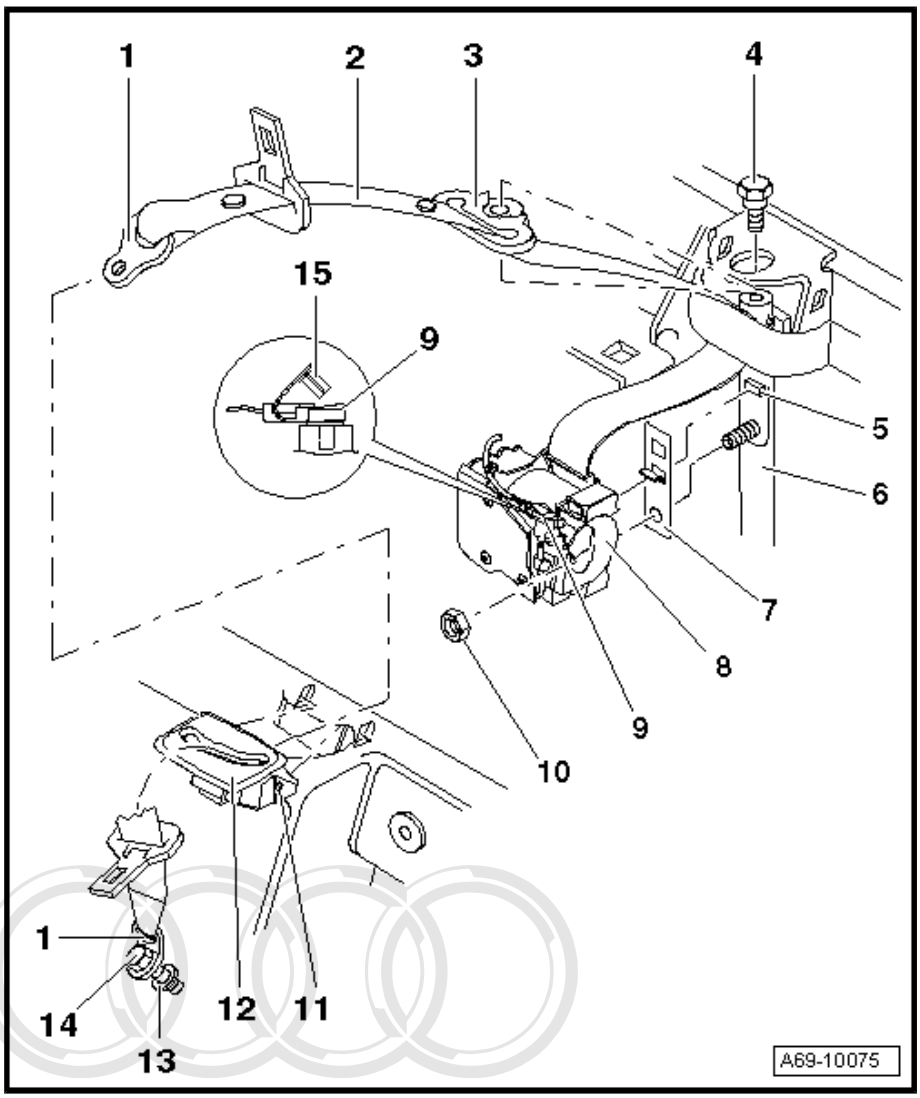
5 - Locating element

❑ If required ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

6 - Pipe

7 - Adapter plate

8 - Third three-point seat belt (rear)



♦ Removing

– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .
– Remove belt end fitting -1- ⇒ page 101 .
– Remove 2/3 section of rear seat backrest ⇒ page 554 .
– Detach cover and padding from 2/3 section of rear seat backrest ⇒ page 617 .
– Unscrew bolt -4-.
– On vehicles with belt tensioner: use a screwdriver to open retaining clip -15- and unplug electrical connector -9-.
– Remove nut -10-.
– Remove seat belt -8-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

– If necessary, install adapter plate -7- in locating element -5-.
– Install seat belt -8-.
– Make sure that seat belt makes correct contact with locating element -5-/adapter plate -7-.
– Fit nut -10- and tighten it slightly by hand.
– Align seat belt -8-: vertical edges of frame must be parallel with pipe -6-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Tighten nut -10-. When doing so, make sure seat belt remains in its aligned position by counter-holding with a screwdriver.

– On vehicles with belt tensioners: make sure that connector -9- engages and close retaining clip -15-.

– Clip in belt guide -12- by knocking it lightly by hand.

– Make sure retaining tabs -11- (2x) engage in body.

– On vehicles with belt tensioners: check belt-fastened sensor ⇒ page 108

Note

- *Guide fitting -3- and belt -2- must not make contact with or rub on foam and fabric parts.*
- *Guide fitting -3- must follow all movements of the belt.*
- *Belt -2- must move freely in all directions.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9 - Connector for belt tensioner

10 - Nut

❑ Tightening torque: 55 Nm

11 - Retaining tabs (2x)

12 - Belt guide

13 - Seal

❑ Always renew

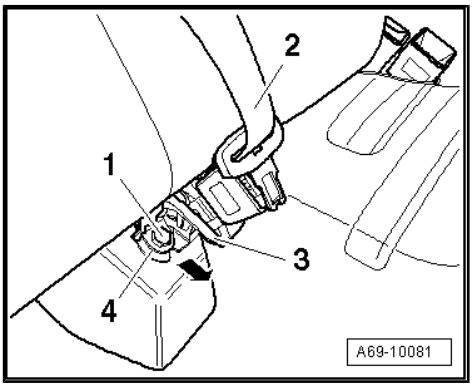
14 - Bolt

❑ Tightening torque: 55 Nm

❑ Only use genuine bolts (as used in original equipment)

15 - Retaining clip

Removing belt end fitting



♦ Removing

– Unscrew bolt -1-.

– Push belt end fitting -4- out in direction of arrow.

– Remove belt -2- from belt guide -3-.

– To detach belt end fitting, remove seal from bolt on underside of belt end fitting and then unscrew bolt.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

♦ Tightening torque for bolt -1-: 55 Nm

2 ISOFIX retainers

⇒ “2.1 Removing and installing ISOFIX retainers”, page 102

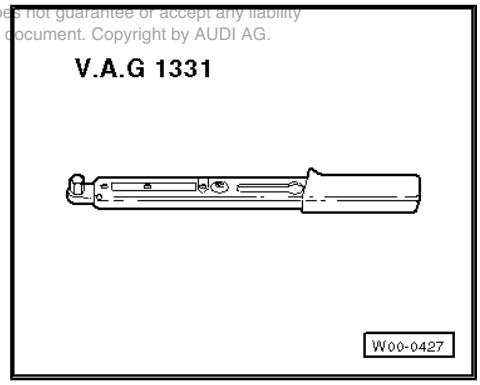
⇒ “2.2 Checking ISOFIX retainers following an accident”, page 103

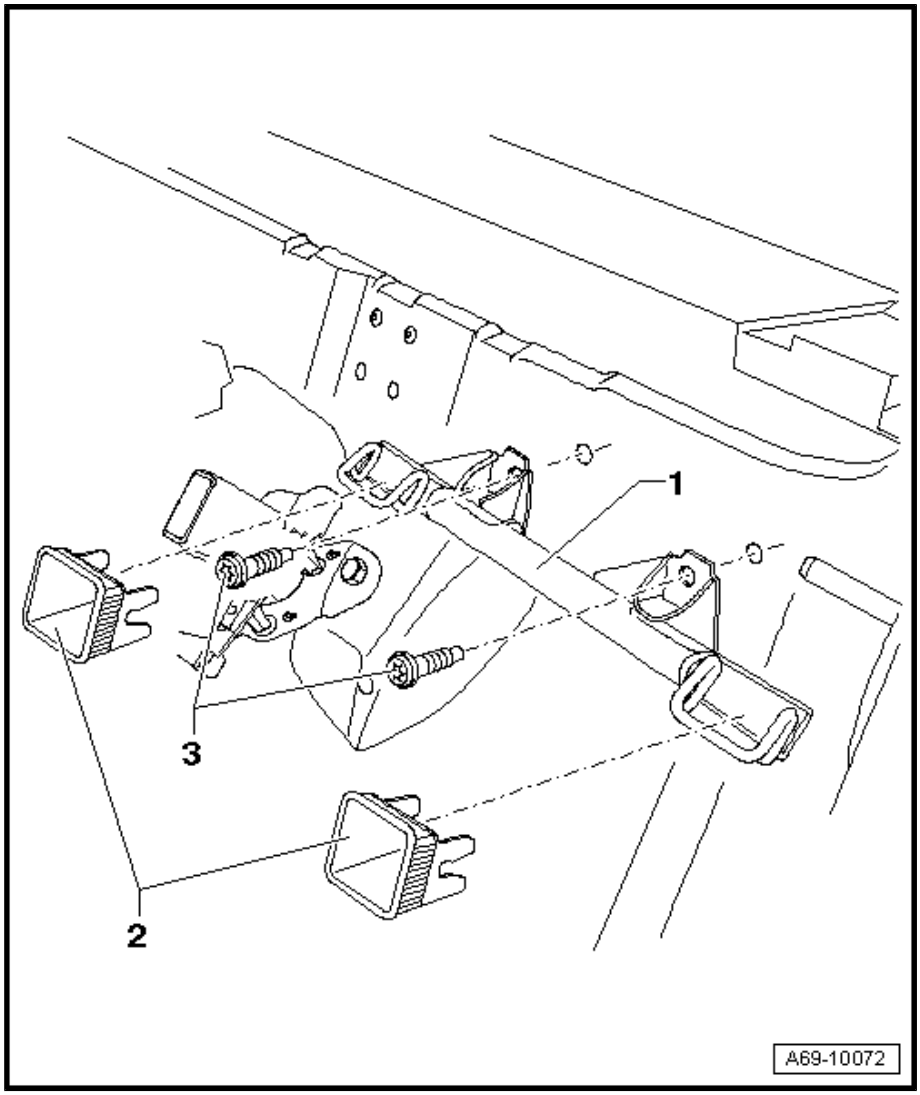
2.1 Removing and installing ISOFIX retainers

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Torque wrench -V.A.G 1331-





1 - ISOFIX retainer (2x)

- ❑ Checks to carry out following an accident ⇒ page 103

- Removing
  - Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .
  - Unscrew bolts -3-.
  - Take out ISOFIX retainer -1-.
- Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Observe the following:

Renew bolts if ISOFIX retainer was removed as part of servicing work following an accident.

2 - Guides (4x)

- ❑ Clipped into ISOFIX retainers
- ❑ Must be ordered via VOTEX or after-sales service and then fitted before child seat can be installed.

3 - Bolts (4x)

- ❑ Tightening torque: 30 Nm
- ❑ Must be renewed in the case of service work fol-

lowing an accident

2.2 Checking ISOFIX retainers following an accident

Points to check:

- The ISOFIX retainers (child seat anchorages) must be checked for damage or deformation after an accident.
- ISOFIX retainers secured to body must be renewed if they are damaged or deformed.
- If retainer is damaged, bolts for securing ISOFIX retainer also have to be renewed.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

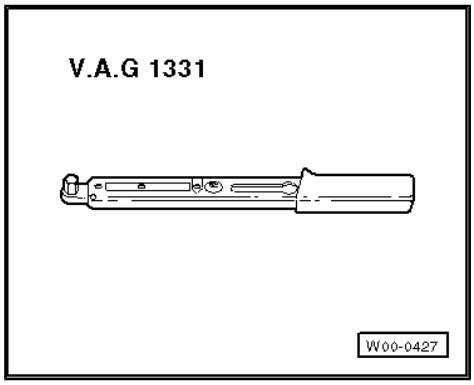
3 Child seat anchors (USA, Canada)

⇒ “3.1 Removing and installing child seat anchors”, page 104

3.1 Removing and installing child seat anchors

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench -V.A.G 1331-



1 - Rear shelf

2 - Spacer sleeve

3 - Anchorage fitting

- Removing
  - Remove bolt -4-.
  - Remove anchorage fitting -3-.
- Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

4 - Bolt, 25 Nm

5 - Trim cover

- ❑ Pull out of rear shelf
- ❑ To install, place in position at rear and press downwards at front

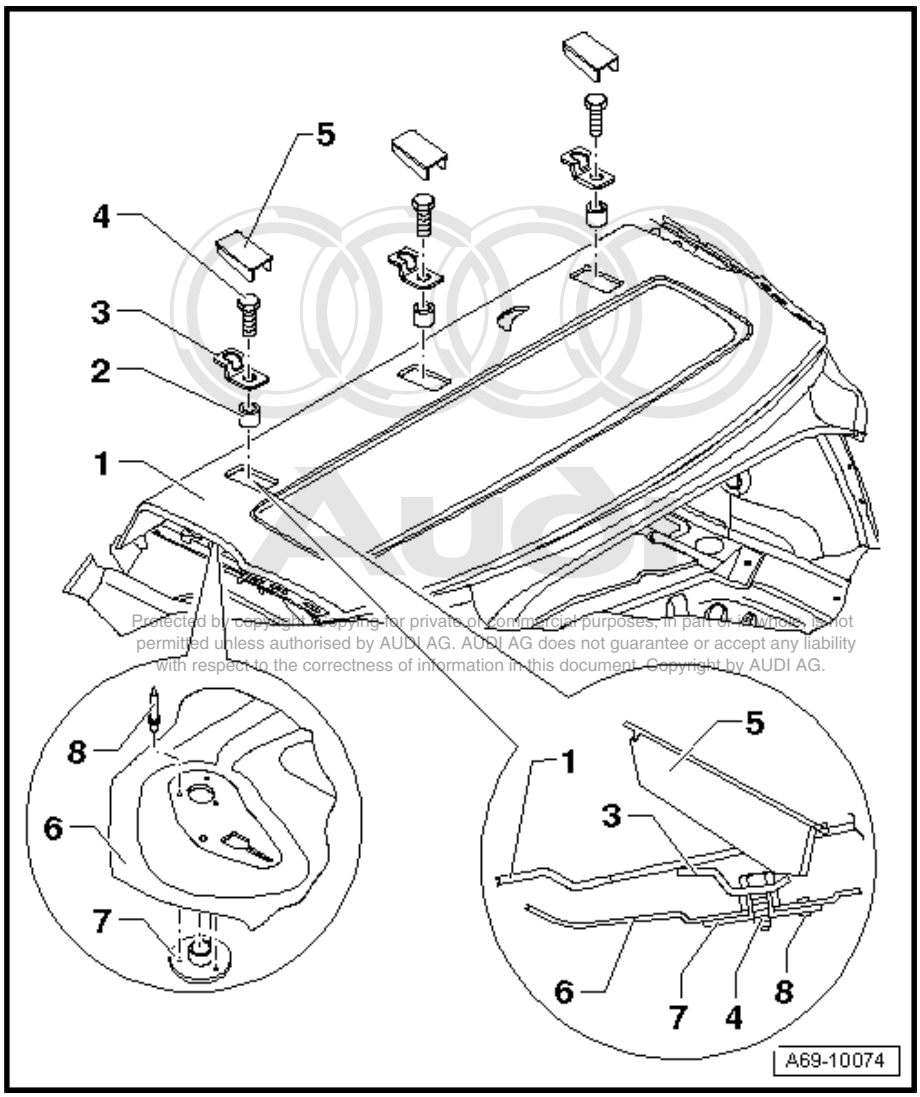
6 - Cross member for rear shelf

7 - Threaded plate

- ❑ Riveted to cross member for rear shelf

8 - Pop rivet

- ❑ ⇒ Item 7 (page 104)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 Checking seat belts

WARNING

A systematic check of the seat belt system must be carried out after every accident. If any damage is identified (see section on points to check), the customer must be informed that one or more of the seat belts have to be renewed.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Points to check:

- ⇒ “4.1 Checking belt webbing”, page 105
- ⇒ “4.2 Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action)”, page 106
- ⇒ “4.3 Visual inspection of belt buckle”, page 106
- ⇒ “4.4 Functional check of belt buckle”, page 107
- ⇒ “4.5 Checking guide fittings and latch plate”, page 107
- ⇒ “4.6 Checking securing components and anchorage points”, page 107
- ⇒ “4.7 Checking locking function of retractor mechanism for securing child safety seats (does not apply to driver's seat belt)”, page 108
- ⇒ “4.8 Checking belt-fastened sensor for rear three-point seat belts with belt tensioner (only applies to USA)”, page 108

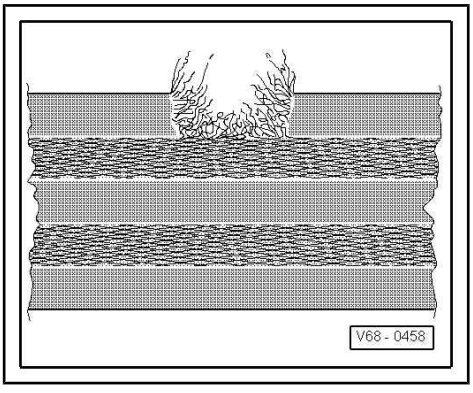
Note

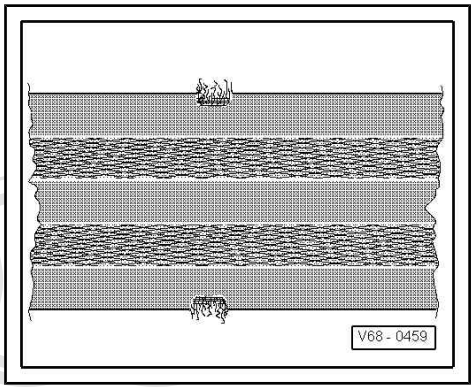
If customers decide not to have damaged seat belts renewed, this must be noted accordingly in the Service Schedule.

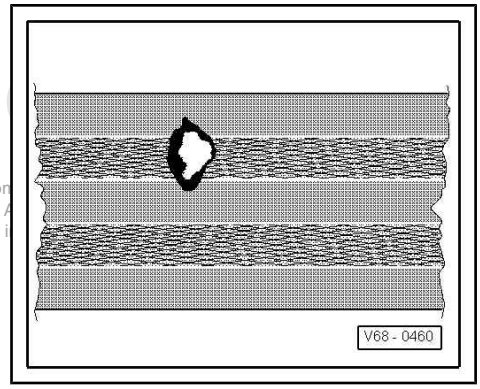
4.1 Checking belt webbing

– Pull belt as far as it will go out of belt retractor or lap belt adjuster.

– Inspect belt for dirt and, if necessary, wash it with mild soap solution ⇒ Owner's Manual .







- If the following type of damage (shown in illustrations 1 and 2) is identified on a vehicle following an accident you must renew the complete seat belt including the belt buckle.
- If damage as shown in illustrations 1, 2 or 3 is identified on a vehicle which has not been involved in an accident, it is sufficient to only renew the damaged belt.
- 1 – Belt is cut, torn or chafed
- 2 – Frayed fabric at edge of belt
- 3 - Burn marks caused by cigarettes or similar

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A
with respect to the correctness of information i

4.2 Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action)

The automatic belt retractor has two locking functions.

◆ The first locking function is triggered by pulling the belt quickly out of the belt retractor.

Checking

– Pull belt out of belt retractor in a sharp quick movement.

- No locking effect - renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.
- If you encounter difficulties when pulling belt out or retracting it, first check whether position of belt retractor has changed.
- The second locking function is triggered if vehicle motion changes (vehicle-dependent locking function).

Checking

– Fasten seat belt.

– Accelerate vehicle to 20 km/h and then press foot brake firmly (emergency braking).

- If braking does not activate seat belt locking mechanism, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

WARNING

For safety reasons, test drive must be performed on a road with no traffic to avoid putting other road users at risk.

4.3 Visual inspection of belt buckle

– Inspect belt buckle for cracks and fracturing.

- If you identify any damage, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

4.4 Functional check of belt buckle

Checking belt buckle

– Push latch plate into belt buckle until you hear it engage. Pull belt firmly to check whether locking mechanism has engaged.

- Carry out test at least 5 times. If latch plate does not engage properly in belt buckle in one or more of the tests, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

Checking release function

– Release seat belt by pressing button on belt buckle. Latch plate must be automatically ejected from belt buckle when belt is slack.

- Carry out test at least 5 times. If latch plate is not ejected in one or more of these tests, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

WARNING

Under no circumstances apply lubricant to belt buckle to eliminate noises or to stop buttons sticking.

4.5 Checking guide fittings and latch plate

When a seat belt has been under strain in an accident the plastic-covered guides will show fine parallel scoring. (By contrast, a guide fitting which is worn because of frequent use will have a smoothly worn surface, but no scoring).

– Inspect for deformation, fracturing and cracks in the plastic.

- If you identify any scoring and/or damage, renew the complete seat belt including the belt buckle.

4.6 Checking securing components and anchorage points

- ♦ Latch plate deformed (strained)
- ♦ Height adjustment not functioning
- ♦ Anchorage points (seat, pillar, vehicle floor) are distorted or the threads are damaged

- If you identify any damage on these parts, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.
- Renew anchorage points.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

In the case of damage which has not occurred due to an accident, but is, for example, a result of wear, only the part which is actually damaged has to be renewed.

4.7 Checking locking function of retractor mechanism for securing child safety seats (does not apply to driver's seat belt)

To check this function fit the complete belt assembly (including side panel trim).

Activating locking function of retractor mechanism:

- Pull out belt as far as it will go.

Correct function

- The belt should retract with an audible clicking sound.
- Once you stop the belt retracting any further, it should no longer be possible to pull the belt out.

Deactivating

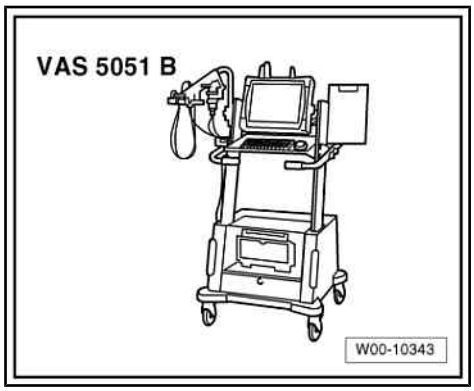
- Allow the belt to retract as far as the last 100 mm (approx.).
- The locking function of the retractor mechanism should be deactivated at the latest by the time the belt has been retracted as far as the last 100 mm. The belt then functions as "normal" again.

Copyright by AUDI AG. Any unauthorised use, duplication or distribution, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.8 Checking belt-fastened sensor for rear three-point seat belts with belt tensioner (only applies to USA)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B-

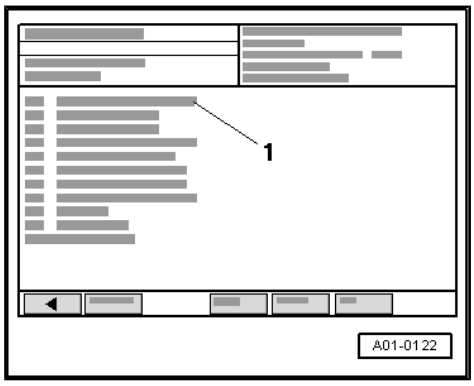


Procedure

– Connect vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- and select vehicle system “15 - Airbag” from list. Ignition must be switched on.

Display on -VAS 5051B- :

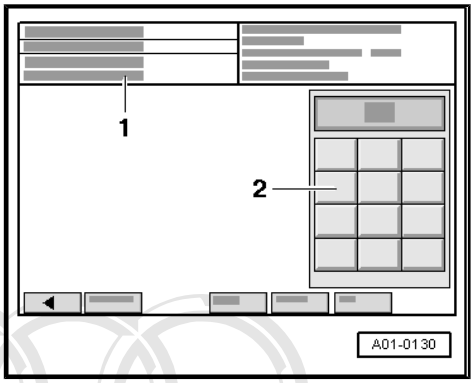
– From list -1- select diagnostic function “08 - Read measured value block”.



Display on -VAS 5051B- :

– Use keypad -2- to enter “display group number 004” and confirm by pressing 0.

• Belt is fully retracted.

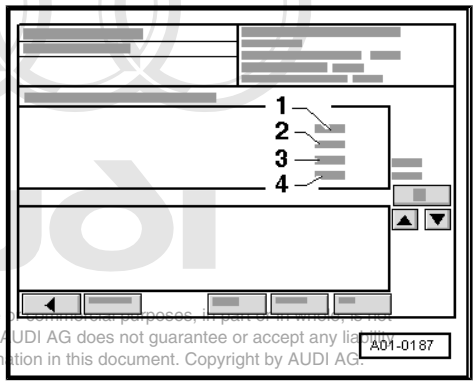


Display on -VAS 5051B- :

• -Item 1- Belt (left-side) = “no”

• -Item 2- Belt (right-side) = “no”

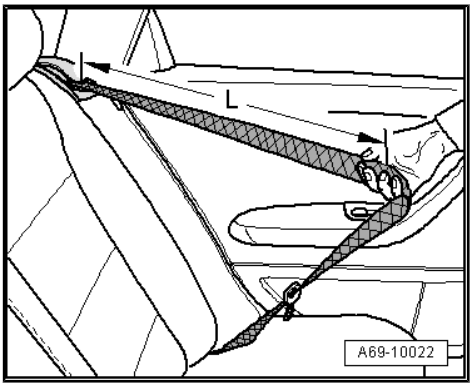
• -Item 3- Belt (centre) = “no”



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Pull belt out to attain dimension -L-.

• Dimension -L- = approx. 550 mm



Display on -VAS 5051B- :

• -Item 1- Belt (left-side) = “yes”

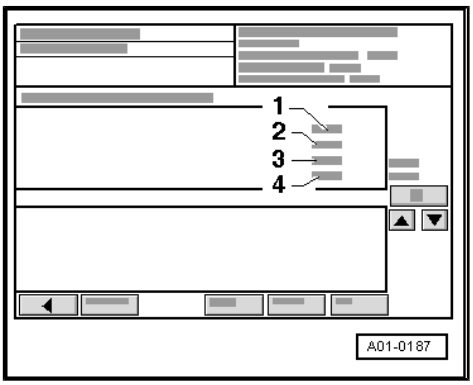
• -Item 2- Belt (right-side) = “yes”

• -Item 3- Belt (centre) = “yes”

– Pull out belt as far as it will go. Display must continue to show “yes” until belt is pulled out as far as it will go.

– Slowly retract the belt. The display should change from “yes” to “no” at the latest when belt length is approx. 450 mm.

When belt reaches end position display should continue to show “no”.



5 Safety regulations for airbags

⇒ “5.1 General safety regulations for working on the airbag system”, page 110

⇒ “5.2 Additional safety regulations for side airbags”, page 111

⇒ “5.3 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags”, page 112

⇒ “5.4 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor for front passenger's airbag (country-specific version)”, page 112

⇒ “5.5 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger's airbag (country-specific version) following a crash”, page 113

⇒ “5.6 Renewing airbag units following an accident”, page 113

⇒ “5.7 Checking mounting components following an accident”, page 115

⇒ “5.8 Accident in which no airbag was triggered”, page 115

⇒ “5.9 Disposal of pyrotechnic airbag units”, page 115

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.1 General safety regulations for working on the airbag system

- Testing, removing, installing and repair work may only be performed by qualified personnel.
- Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.
- Always disconnect the battery when working on pyrotechnic components of the restraint system and/or on the airbag control unit -J234- .
- Never perform tests using a test lamp, voltmeter or ohmmeter.
- Only check the airbag system when it is installed in the vehicle and use suitable vehicle diagnostic, testing and information systems (for example vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B-).
- Always disconnect voltage supply when working on airbag systems.
- Observe the measures to be taken when disconnecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- Detach battery earth strap/wire, cover negative terminal. There is no waiting time after disconnecting the battery.
- The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.
- Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- The airbag units should be installed immediately after removing them from their packaging.
- If the work is interrupted, the airbag unit should again be placed in its packaging.
- The airbag unit must not be left lying unattended.

- Following removal, airbag units must be stored with cushioned side facing upwards.
- Airbag components are not to be opened or repaired. Always use new components.
- Airbag units which are dropped on a hard surface or are damaged must not be used.
- Always wash hands after handling airbag units which have been triggered.
- Storage and transport must be in accordance with the statutory regulations of the countries in question.
- Renewing airbag units

Always keep to the following sequence when renewing airbag units:

1 - Remove old airbag units and set them down with cushioned side facing upwards. Note differences for curtain airbags ⇒ page 112 .

2 - Take new airbag unit out of packaging and set it down with cushioned side facing upwards. Note differences for curtain airbags ⇒ page 112 .

3 - Immediately place old airbag unit in packaging.

4 - Install new airbag unit in vehicle.

- There is no specified interval for renewing airbag units.
- Do not use grease, cleaning agents or similar on the airbag units.
- Airbag units must not to be exposed to temperatures higher than 100 °C even for brief periods of time.
- Always renew unit if fabric is contaminated by oil, grease, paint, solvent or similar.

5.2 Additional safety regulations for side airbags

- We recommend using genuine seat covers (same as original equipment).
- It is NOT permissible to use seat covers or protective covers which have not been approved for use on Audi seats with side airbags.
- Foam padding in backrest must not be cut in vicinity of side airbag.
- When installing, make sure seam for side airbag is straight.
- All upholstery clips (metal and plastic clips) must be renewed.
- We recommend using only genuine upholstery clips (same as original equipment).
- When installing, all new upholstery clips must be fitted in the same positions as the original ones.
- For safety reasons, the cover should always be renewed if it is damaged (tears, burn marks, etc.) in the area of the side airbag, as otherwise the side airbag will not inflate properly.
- Repairs to backrest cover in vicinity of side airbag are not permitted (due to special thread and precisely defined seam).
- Always renew backrest padding after side airbag has been triggered.

Copyright by AUDI AG. Duplication for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- All damaged components must be renewed after an accident. The original airbag unit can still be used if no signs of damage are found.
- If side airbag units are renewed, remove sticker with airbag number from new side airbag units and stick it over old sticker on seat pan.
- Never pierce the seat cover fabric with upholstery needles or any other sharp objects in the vicinity of the airbag or the seat occupied sensor.

5.3 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags

- Before carrying out any installation work always visually inspect trim for damage.
- Trim repairs (A-pillar trim (top), B-pillar trim, C-pillar trim and D-pillar trim) are not permitted.
- When installing, make sure that trim panels are fitted securely.
- The curtain airbag unit may only be bent at the intended location (transition from roof to A-pillar).
- When carrying out repairs behind the curtain airbag always remove the complete unit.
- After removal, store old curtain airbag unit in transport container or on a clean, level surface (place on blanket or in luggage compartment).
- After performing body repairs in area of curtain airbag, check body for welding spatter, deformation and abrasion by comparing with opposite side.
- Always hold curtain airbag unit securely.
- Always fold up removed curtain airbag units and hold at gas generator (thumb pointing towards electrical connection).
- Always keep one hand on gas generator.
- Never twist, turn, knot, throw, pull, hang, pinch, press or clamp curtain airbag unit.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.4 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor for front passenger's airbag (country-specific version)

- Following any repair work on the front passenger's seat during which the seat and/or backrest cover are/is disengaged, the seat occupied recognition control unit must always be "re-zeroed" ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.
- The mat for the seat occupied sensor must not be bent or kinked.
- The mat must be renewed if it is damaged (service kit).
- The pressure hose for the seat occupied sensor must not be bent or kinked.
- Make sure that the components of the seat occupied recognition (service kit) do not fall onto hard surfaces, do not come into contact with grease and cannot be damaged by sharp objects.
- Make sure that the mat, the fabric layer and all covers are not creased when they are installed.

- Make sure that the seat padding and seat cover are in the correct installation position.
- Renew all staples/clips and make sure they are positioned correctly on the seat.
- The basic setting of the system can only be performed at a temperature between 0 °C and +40 °C.
- Make sure there are no objects lying on the seat before or while you are performing the basic setting.
- The use of loose seat covers - such as cushions - impairs the operation of the seat occupied sensor and the function of the airbag system.

5.5 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger's airbag (country-specific version) following a crash

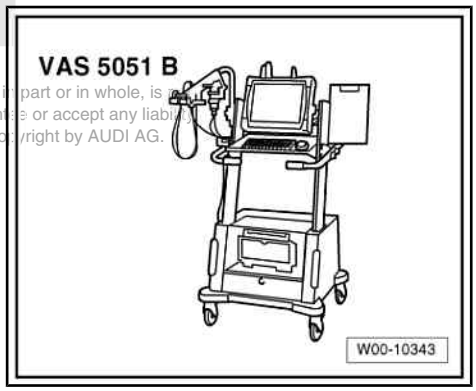
- The seat occupied recognition control unit must be "re-zeroed" whenever the airbag and/or front passenger's belt tensioner have/has been triggered ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.
- If seat rail and/or seat pan have to be renewed after a crash due to deformation, seat occupied sensor must be renewed with seat occupied recognition service kit. The control unit for seat occupied recognition must then be "re-zeroed" and the "Basic setting" must be performed ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

5.6 Renewing airbag units following an accident

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Use a suitable vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system such as the vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Note

- *The airbag control unit can be used with airbag generation 8.* »not 8.R« for up to two side/curtain airbag and/or belt tensioner triggering operations.*
- *The airbag control unit can be used with airbag generation 9.* and 8.R for up to two side/curtain airbag (driver and front passenger side) and/or belt tensioner triggering operations.*
- *After the third activation the fault display will show "Control unit defective".*

Airbag control unit must be renewed:

- If the driver's/passenger's airbag has been triggered, (not with airbag generation 9.* and 8.R) ⇒ page 113

- After three side/curtain/driver's/front passenger's airbag / belt tensioner triggering operations
- If housing is damaged
- In the event of a tunnel deformation within 200 mm radius of control unit

Always renew the following:

- All triggered airbag units
- The battery cut-off relay -J655- or the battery isolation igniter -N253- (equipment version)

If front passenger's airbag has been triggered, also renew:

- Dash panel
- Supports for passenger's airbag unit which have become deformed (must not be bent back into shape)
- All front airbag sensors at front end
- Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

If driver's airbag has been triggered, also renew:

- Return ring with slip ring
- All front airbag sensors at front end
- Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

If side airbag(s) has/have been triggered, also renew:

- Pressure sensors on the side on which the airbag was triggered
- Lateral acceleration sensors on the side on which airbag was triggered
- Seat cover
- Padding
- Folding rear seat backrest: side padding (if fitted)
- Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

If curtain airbag has been triggered, also renew:

- Lateral acceleration sensors on the side on which airbag was triggered
- Trim for A, B, C and D-pillars
- Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

Additionally:

- All automatic belt retractors with belt tensioners which have been triggered
- All automatic belt retractors with belt force limiters (depending on equipment version) which have been triggered

– If you suspect that belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s) has/have been triggered, connect a suitable vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system such as the vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– In “15 - Airbag” of the »Guided Fault Finding« function, check whether there is an entry recording a crash in the airbag control unit.
– Check whether at the same time the fault “Resistance too high” is entered for belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s). Belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s) which have been triggered must fulfil both conditions. Condition: The airbag control unit has not yet been renewed.

Note

- *The fault “Resistance too high” can also be entered if there is an open circuit. In this case, there should usually be no crash entry.*
- *Depending on the accident, the belt tensioner might have been triggered WITHOUT the belt force limiter being triggered. In this case, observe the disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components* ⇒ page 64.
- *Also observe the notes on checking seat belts* ⇒ page 105 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

In addition, the following must also be renewed if necessary (visual check): all damaged components

After renewing airbag units or the control unit, affix stickers (only tear-off strips) to the registration card and return the registration card to the appropriate Sales Centre or to the importer for registration.

5.7 Checking mounting components following an accident

It is essential to always renew all damaged mounting components - it is not permissible to »reshape« or rework damaged components.

The following components must be checked after an airbag has been triggered.

If front passenger's airbag has been triggered:

- Central tube for dash panel; it must be possible to install front passenger's airbag supports and front passenger's airbag unit so that they are free of stress. Otherwise central tube should also be renewed.
- Check glove box for damage. Renew glove box if it is damaged.

If driver's airbag has been triggered:

- Steering wheel: Remove steering wheel and place it on a level surface (resting on rim). The full area of the rim must lie flat. If it does not, the steering wheel has to be renewed.
- Check steering wheel for smoke marks. Renew steering wheel if such marks are found.

5.8 Accident in which no airbag was triggered

- Airbag components do not have to be renewed if airbag warning lamp -K75- does not indicate a fault. The seat belts must be checked separately.

5.9 Disposal of pyrotechnic airbag units

- Non-ignited pyrotechnic components (such as airbags, seat belts, pyrotechnic battery circuit breakers) must be disposed

of in original packaging and in accordance with national regulations. In cases of doubt, contact the appropriate Regional Sales Centre or importer.

- Pyrotechnic components ignited in an accident can be disposed of together with commercial refuse.

WARNING

This does not apply to belt tensioners which are Wankel-powered. These must be treated in the same manner as non-ignited pyrotechnic components (for example airbags, seat belts, pyrotechnic battery isolators). Reason: The workshop does not have the means to check whether the Wankel-type belt tensioners have ignited fully (in all ignition stages).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6 Servicing airbags

⇒ “6.1 Airbags - overview”, page 117

⇒ “6.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit J234 ”, page 118

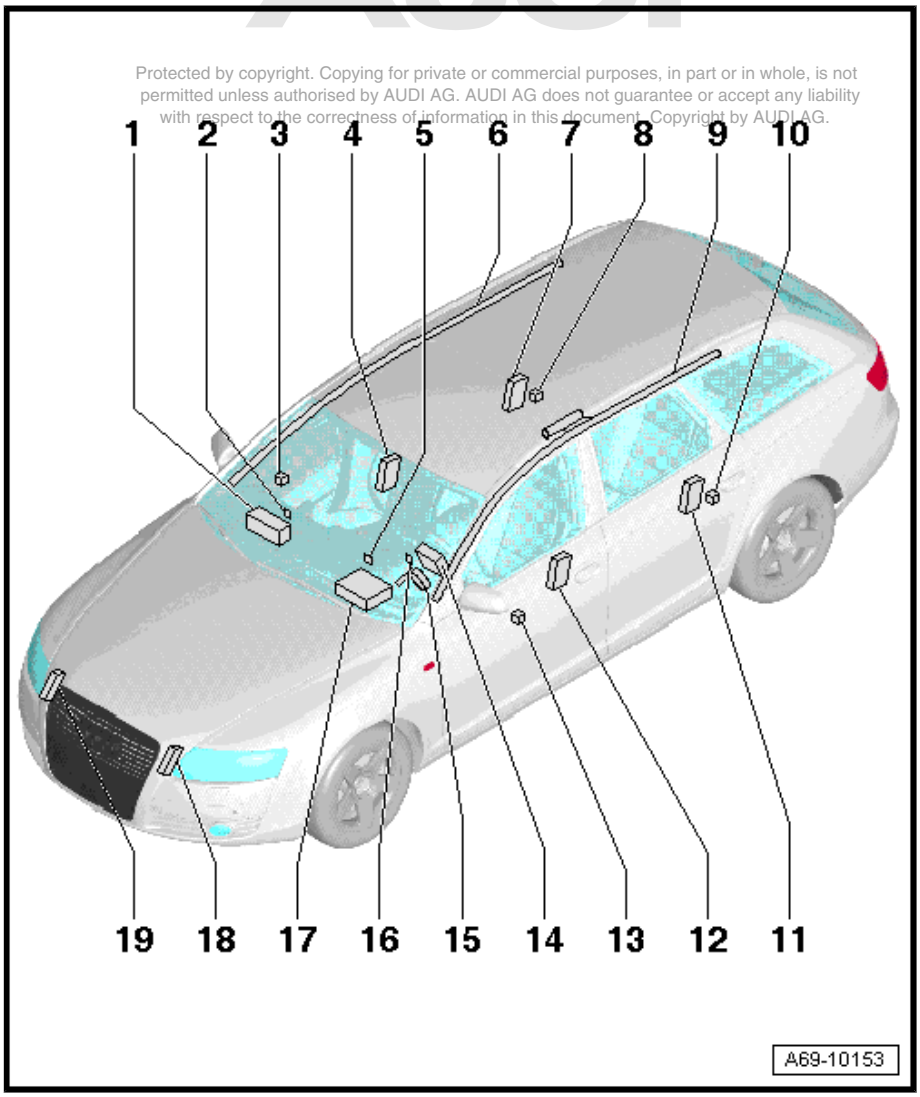
⇒ “6.3 Removing and installing battery cut-off relay J655 - vehicles up to approx. 06/2004”, page 120

⇒ “6.4 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter N253 - vehicles up to 05/2006”, page 121

⇒ “6.5 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter N253 - vehicles from 06/2006 onwards”, page 123

6.1 Airbags - overview

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Airbag unit (front passenger side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 135
- ❑ Can be disabled / activated via key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224- .

2 - Key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 138

3 - Side airbag crash sensor on front passenger side -G180-

- ❑ Fitting location: in door (front)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 171

4 - Side airbag, front (passenger side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 141

5 - Front passenger side airbag deactivated warning lamp - K145-

- ❑ Fitting location: In dash panel vent (centre)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 139

6 - Curtain airbag (front passenger side)

- ❑ Removing and installing: Saloon ⇒ page 156 ; Avant ⇒ page 160 ; Audi A6 Security ⇒ page 164

7 - Side airbag, rear (passenger side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 148

8 - Rear side airbag crash sensor on front passenger side -G257-

- ❑ Fitting location: On C-pillar
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 173

9 - Curtain airbag (driver side)

- ❑ Removing and installing: Saloon ⇒ page 156 ; Avant ⇒ page 160 ; Audi A6 Security ⇒ page 164

10 - Rear side airbag crash sensor on driver side -G256-

- ❑ Fitting location: On C-pillar
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 173

11 - Side airbag, rear (driver side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 148

12 - Side airbag, front (driver side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 141

13 - Side airbag crash sensor on driver side -G179-

- ❑ Fitting location: in door (front)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 171

14 - Airbag unit (driver side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 126

15 - Airbag coil connector and return ring with slip ring -F138-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 131

16 - Airbag warning lamp -K75-

- ❑ Fitting location: in instrument cluster ⇒ Rep. gr. 90

17 - Airbag control unit

- ❑ Fitting location: on centre tunnel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 118

18 - Front airbag crash sensor for driver side -G283-

- ❑ Fitting location: next to headlights
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 169

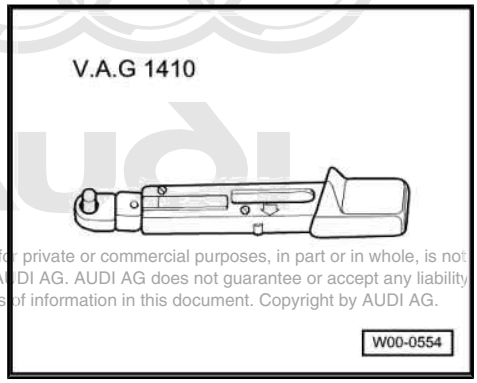
19 - Front airbag crash sensor for front passenger side -G284-

- ❑ Fitting location: next to headlights
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 169

6.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit -J234-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1410-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

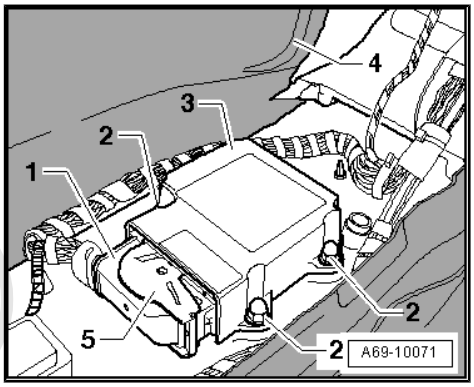
Observe safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

– Switch on ignition.

Note

Contrary to the description in "Disconnecting and connecting the battery" (⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27) the battery must, when removing the airbag, be disconnected with the ignition switched on.

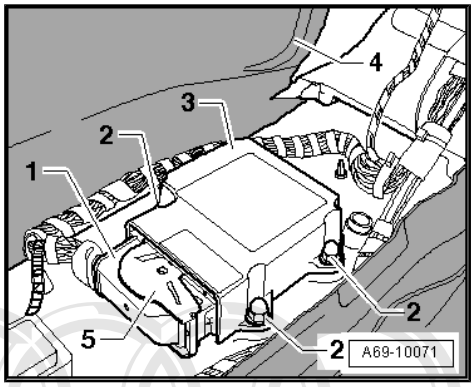
– Disconnect battery earth strap ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
– Remove centre console ⇒ page 31 .
– Remove mounting frame for centre console ⇒ page 31 .
– Remove centre console air duct ⇒ page 32 .
– Fold back insulation -4-.
– Open retaining clip -5- at connector -1-.
– Unplug connector -1-.
– Remove nuts -2- (3x).
– Detach control unit -3-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

– Install control unit -3- in reverse order of removal.



WARNING

Make sure nobody is in the vehicle when the battery is being connected.

– Connect battery earth strap.

– Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

Note

- *If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, use vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- to interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate event memory.*
- *Control unit must be encoded after renewal ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- *Earth connection for airbag control unit -J234- is provided by securing housing to body.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Tightening torque

Tightening torque	Nm
Airbag control unit -J234- to body	9

6.3 Removing and installing battery cut-off relay -J655- - vehicles up to approx. 06/2004

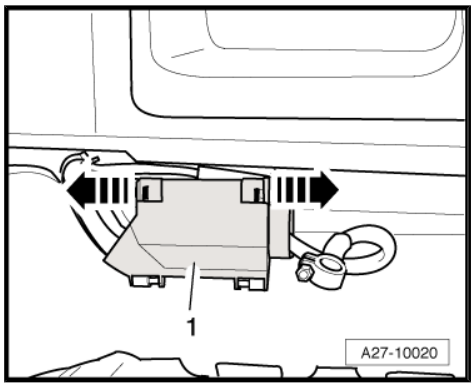
Note

The battery cut-off relay -J655- interrupts the circuit electrically. The battery cut-off relay -J655- always has to be renewed once an airbag has been triggered.

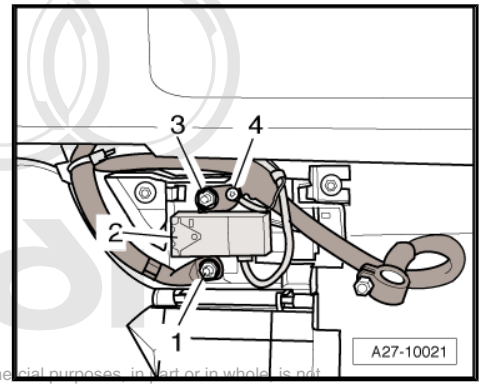
Removing

– Remove battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

– Release clasps -arrows- and open flap -1- covering battery cut-off relay .

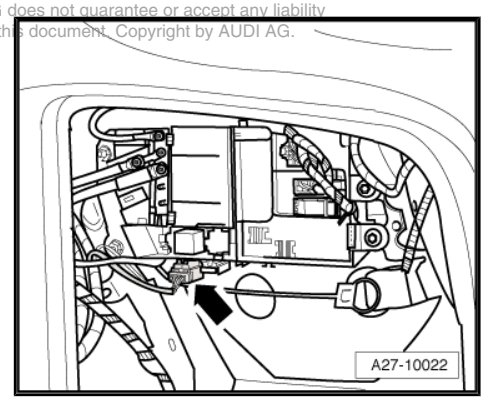


– Unscrew nuts -1- and -3- and bolt -4- at positive wires.
– Take battery cut-off relay -J655- -item 2- out of its holder.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove cover of luggage compartment side trim (right-side).
– Release electrical connector -arrow- at relay and fuse holder in luggage compartment (right-side).
– Unplug electrical connector.
– Move clear electrical wire leading to battery cut-off relay -J655- .



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Connect battery earth strap.
– Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
– Finally read out event memory for airbag control unit using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester and rectify faults as necessary.

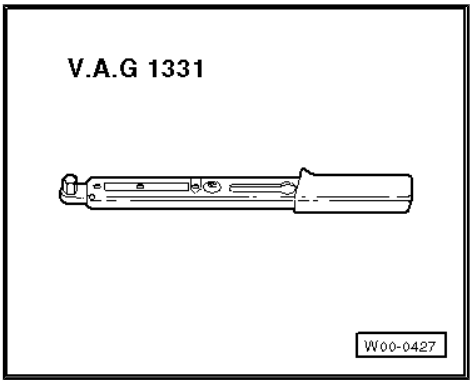
Tightening torques

Component	Nm
Positive wires to battery cut-off relay	20
Electrical wire to positive wire	4

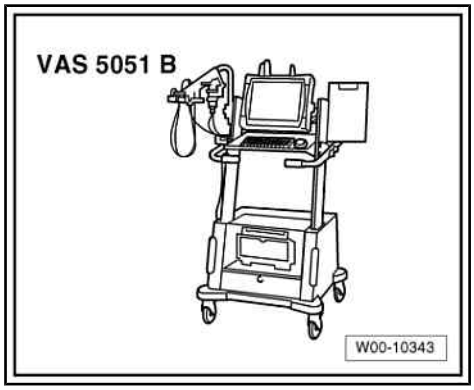
6.4 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter -N253- - vehicles up to 05/2006

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1331-



- Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B-



WARNING

Battery isolation igniters -N253- are pyrotechnic components. The same safety regulations apply as for airbags. Observe safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

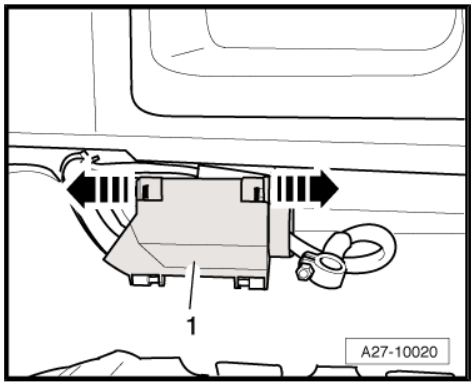
Note

- *If airbag warning lamp -K75- is illuminated after an accident, use ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester to check whether crash data have been stored. If this is the case, check whether the fault »001 Resistance too high« is stored in the event memory for the battery isolation igniter -N253- . If this fault is stored in the memory, the battery isolation igniter -N253- must be renewed.*
- *Each time the airbag is triggered, the battery isolation igniter -N253- electrically isolates the circuit. Battery isolation igniter -N253- must always be renewed after triggering.*

Removing

Note

Contrary to the description in "Disconnecting and connecting the battery" (⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27) the battery must, when removing the airbag, be disconnected with the ignition switched on.



– Switch on ignition.
– Disconnect battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
– Remove battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
– Release clasps -arrows- and open flap -1- covering battery isolation igniter -N253- .

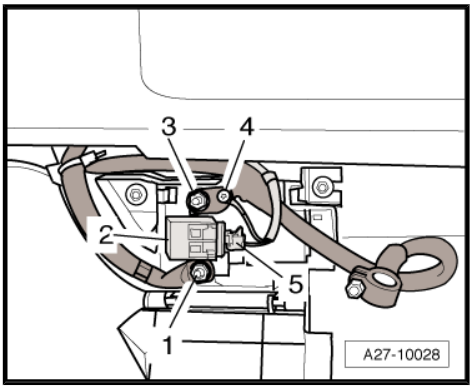
– Unscrew nuts -1- and -3- and bolt -4- at positive wires.

– Take battery isolation igniter -N253- -item 2- out of its retainer.

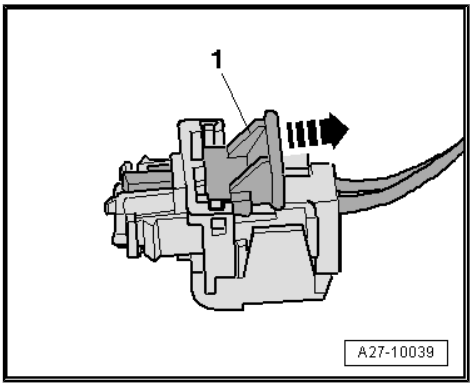
WARNING

The mechanic must discharge static electricity before unplugging the electrical connector; to do so, briefly touch door striker plate, or similar.

– Unplug electrical connector -5-.



– To do so, pull connector locking element -1- as far as the stop -arrow-. This will release the electrical connector -2- which can then be unplugged.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

Observe the disposal procedure for pyrotechnic airbag units ⇒ page 115 .

Installing

WARNING

Battery isolation igniters -N253- are pyrotechnic components. The same safety regulations apply as for airbags. Observe safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Observe specified tightening torque ⇒ page 123 .

– When plugging in connector make sure it is properly engaged and locked in place.

WARNING

Make sure nobody is in the vehicle when the battery is being connected.

– Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

– Finally read out event memory for airbag control unit using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester and rectify faults as necessary.

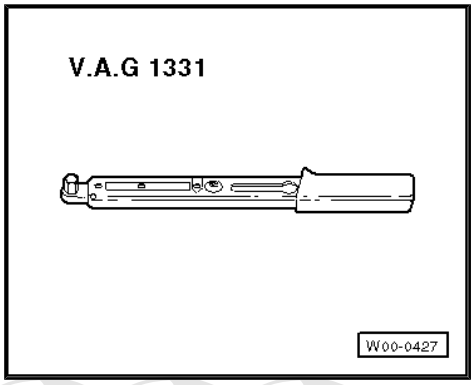
Tightening torques

Component	Nm
Positive wires to battery cut-off relay	20
Electrical wire to positive wire	4

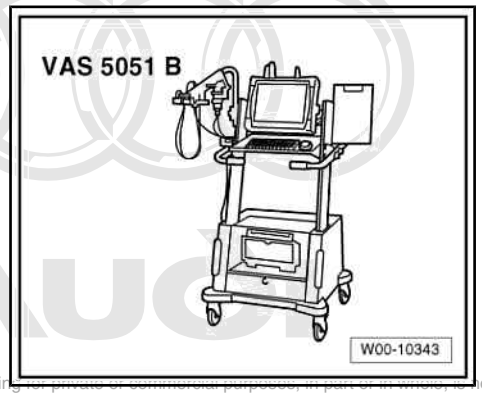
6.5 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter -N253- - vehicles from 06/2006 onwards

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench -V.A.G 1331-



- Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Battery isolation igniters -N253- are pyrotechnic components. The same safety regulations apply as for airbags. Observe safety regulations for working on airbags ***⇒ page 110*** ***.***

Note

- *If airbag warning lamp -K75- is illuminated after an accident, use ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester to check whether crash data have been stored. If this is the case, check whether the fault »001 Resistance too high« is stored in the event memory for the battery isolation igniter -N253- . If this fault is stored in the memory, the battery isolation igniter -N253- must be renewed.*
- *Each time the airbag is triggered, the battery isolation igniter -N253- electrically isolates the circuit. Battery isolation igniter -N253- must always be renewed after triggering.*

Removing

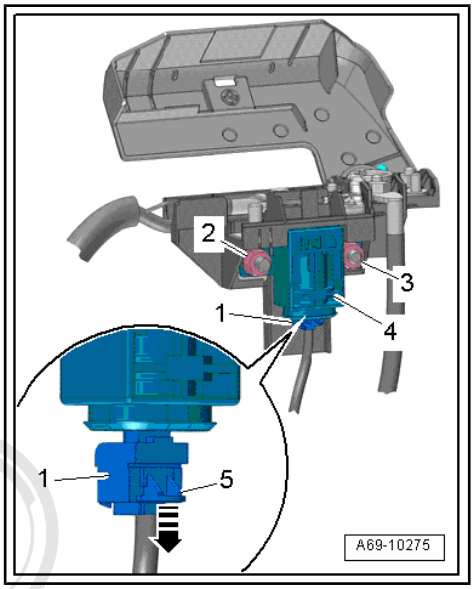
Note

Contrary to the description in "Removing and installing battery", the battery must be disconnected with the ignition switched on.

– Switch on ignition.

– Remove battery ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .

– Remove bolts -2- and -3-.



WARNING

The mechanic must discharge static electricity before unplugging the electrical connector; to do so, briefly touch door striker plate, or similar.

– Detach battery isolation igniter -4-.

– Pull out catch -5- downwards -arrow-, press on catch and unplug electrical connector -1-.

Installing

WARNING

Battery isolation igniters -N253- are pyrotechnic components. The same safety regulations apply as for airbags. Observe safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Observe specified tightening torque ⇒ page 125 .

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Make sure nobody is in the vehicle when the battery is being connected.

– Install battery and connect battery with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .

– As a final step, interrogate event memory of airbag control unit and deal with entries if necessary ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Battery isolation igniter -N253- to fuse holder A -SA-	15

7 Servicing airbag (driver side)

⇒ “7.1 Exploded view of airbag unit (driver side)”, page 126

⇒ “7.2 Removing and installing airbag igniter on driver side N95 and airbag igniter 2 on driver side N250 ”, page 126

⇒ “7.3 Renewing connector at airbag unit”, page 130

⇒ “7.4 Removing and installing steering wheel”, page 131

⇒ “7.5 Removing and installing airbag coil connector and return ring with slip ring F138 ”, page 131

7.1 Exploded view of airbag unit (driver side)

1 - Return ring with slip ring

2 - Steering wheel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 131

3 - Multi-point socket head bolt, 50 Nm

- ❑ Renew

4 - Connector

- ❑ For return ring with slip ring
- ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 130

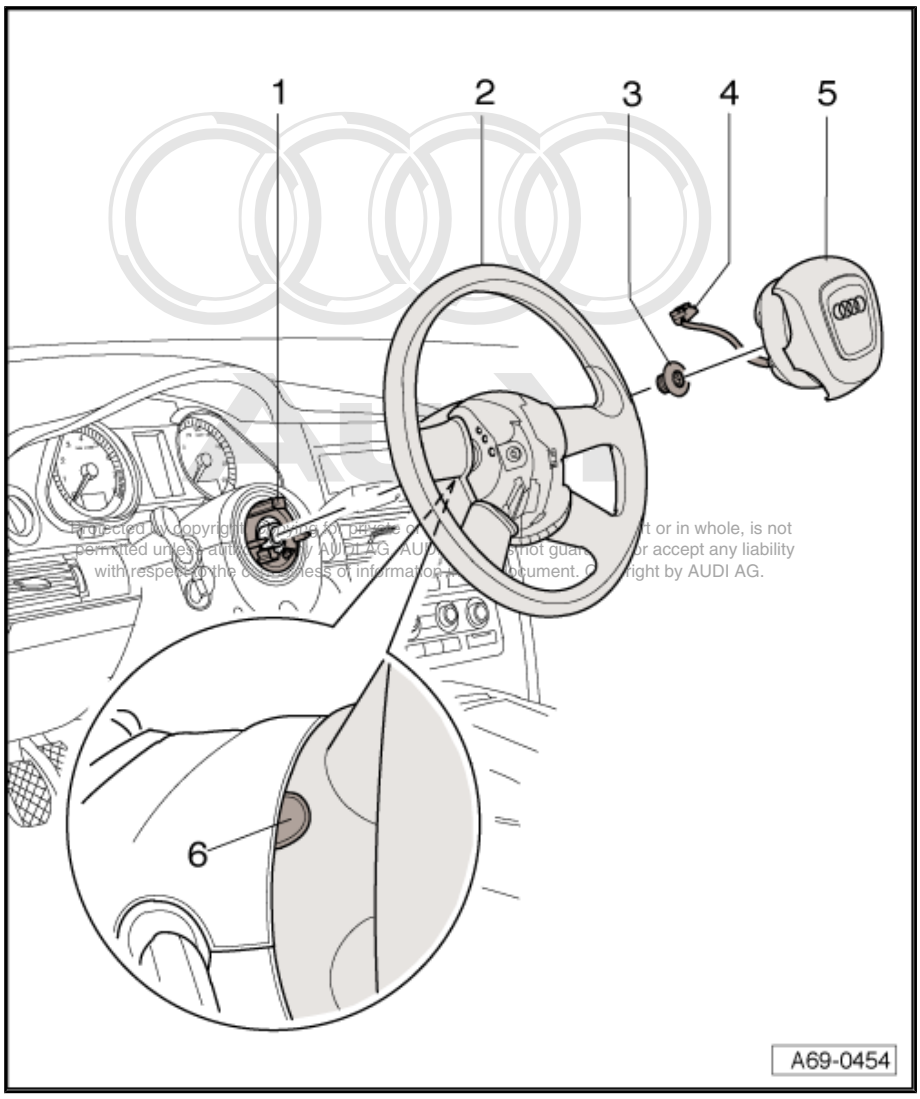
5 - Airbag unit

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 126

6 - Cap

- ❑ For securing bolt for airbag unit



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7.2 Removing and installing airbag igniter on driver side -N95- and airbag igniter 2 on driver side -N250-

Removing

– Move steering wheel up and to rear as far as it will go, using full range of steering column adjuster.

WARNING

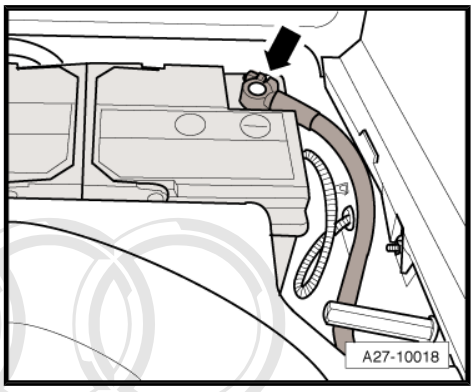
Observe safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

– Switch on ignition.

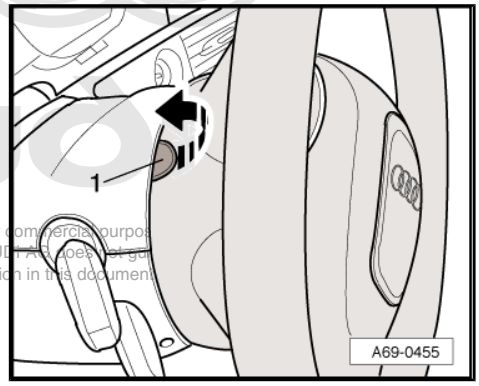
Note

Contrary to the description in "Disconnecting and connecting the battery" (⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27) the battery must, when removing the airbag, be disconnected with the ignition switched on.

– Remove luggage compartment floor trim.
– Disconnect earth wire -arrow- at battery.

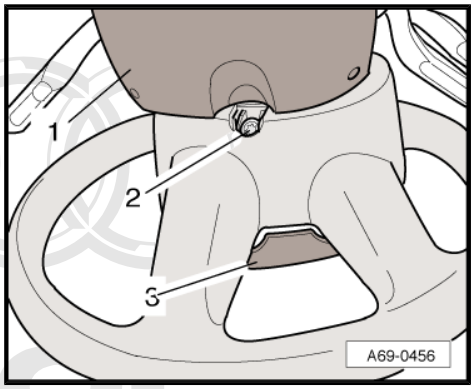


– Prise off caps -1- (left and right) on reverse side of steering wheel -arrow-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Turn steering wheel out of centre position approx. 80° towards the right.



Note

The bolt for securing the airbag unit -3- must be opposite the opening (bottom) in the steering column trim -1-.

– Remove bolt -2-.
– Turn steering wheel approx. 160° towards left and remove left bolt for airbag unit.
– Turn steering wheel to centre position (wheels in straight-ahead position).

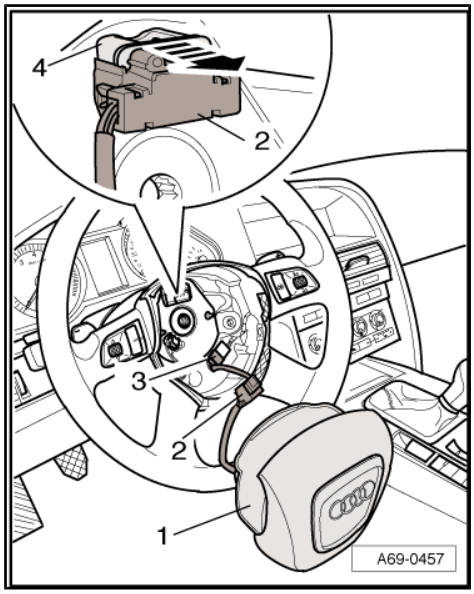
WARNING

The mechanic must discharge static electricity before unplugging connectors; to do so, briefly touch door striker plate, or similar.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Move airbag unit (driver side) slightly away from steering wheel.

– Pull connector locking element -4- as far as the stop -arrow-. This will release the electrical connector -2- which can then be unplugged.
– Detach airbag unit -1- from steering wheel.
– If fitted, unplug electrical connector -3-.
– Set down airbag unit with impact cushion facing upwards.



Installing

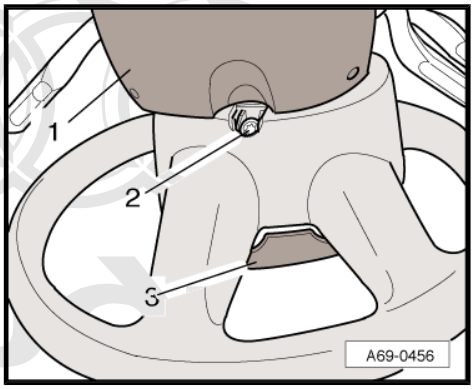
Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

WARNING

- ***Make sure electrical connectors are correctly fitted and engage with a click.***
- ***Make sure that wiring is not trapped.***

– Attach electrical connector for coil connector to coupling for airbag unit at return ring with slip ring.

– Position airbag unit -3- in steering wheel.
– Turn steering wheel out of centre position approx. 80° towards the right.



Note

The bolt for securing the airbag unit must be opposite the opening in the steering column trim -1-.

– Screw in right bolt -2- for securing airbag unit by approx. 2 turns.
– Turn steering wheel approx. 160° to the left.
– Screw in bolt (left-side) for securing airbag unit approx. 2 turns.
– Operate horn three times to ensure an even gap width.
– Avoid further contact with airbag unit.
– Tighten bolts.
– Press caps into openings in steering wheel.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Make sure there is no-one in the vehicle when you connect the battery.

– Connect battery earth strap.
– Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

After installing the airbag unit, the following step must be carried out:

– Interrogate and erase the event memory of the airbag control unit because unplugging the electrical connectors may have caused faults to be stored ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Tightening torque

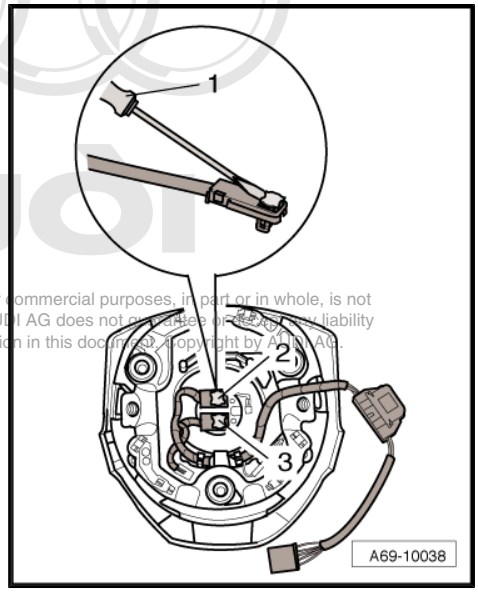
Component	Nm
Airbag unit (driver side) to steering wheel	7

7.3 Renewing connector at airbag unit

Removing

– Remove airbag unit (driver side) ⇒ page 126 .

– Use a screwdriver -1- to release electrical connectors -2- and -3- at airbag.



Installing

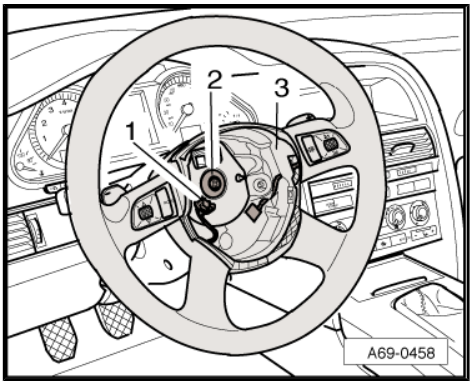
Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Install airbag unit (driver side) ⇒ page 128 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7.4 Removing and installing steering wheel

Removing



– Remove airbag unit (driver side) ⇒ page 126 .

Note

Only remove and install the steering wheel in centre position (wheels in straight-ahead position).

– If fitted, unplug electrical connector -3-.
– Remove bolt -2-.
– Mark relative position of steering wheel to steering column with a felt-tip pen.
– Detach steering wheel -3- from steering column.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– When re-installing the "old" steering wheel make sure marks on steering column and steering wheel are aligned.
– A new steering wheel (without marking) must be fitted in centre position (the steering wheel spoke must be horizontal and the wheels must be in straight-ahead position).
– Perform test drive.
– If steering wheel is not straight, remove it again and adjust it on steering column splines.
– Always use a new bolt to secure the steering wheel.
– Install airbag unit (driver side) ⇒ page 128 .

Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Steering wheel to steering column	50 1)

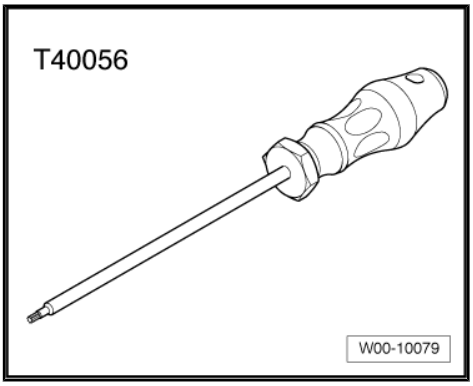
1) Renew bolt.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7.5 Removing and installing airbag coil connector and return ring with slip ring - F138-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Special screwdriver T8 -T40056 A-



Removing

Note

The airbag coil connector and return ring with slip ring -F138- must only be removed and installed in centre position (wheels in straight-ahead position).

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

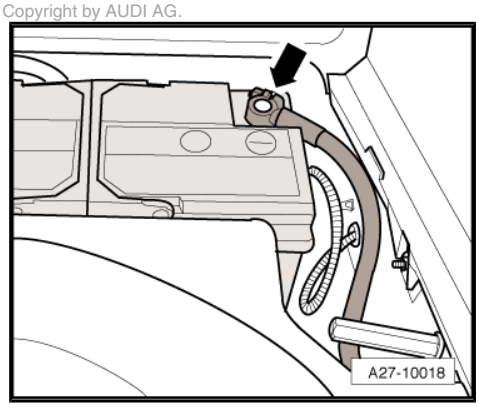
– Switch on ignition.

Note

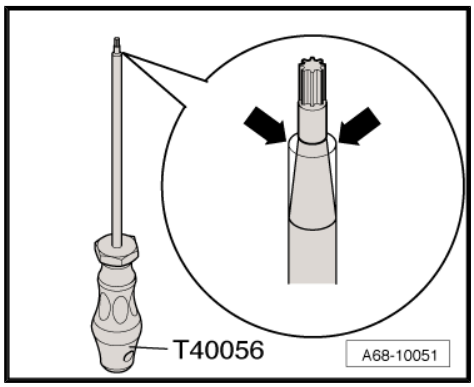
Contrary to the description in "Disconnecting and connecting the battery" (⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27) the battery must, when removing the airbag, be disconnected with the ignition switched on.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

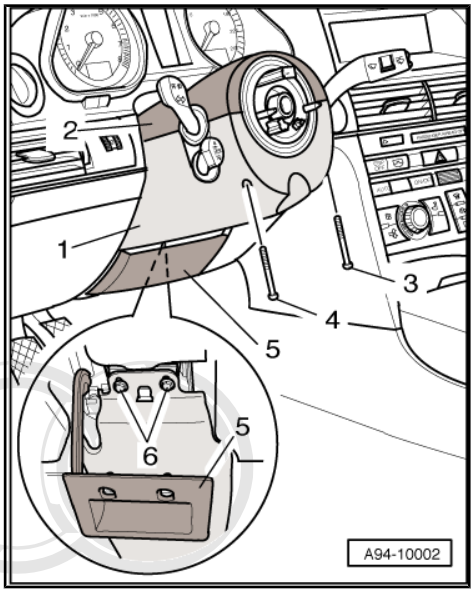
– Remove luggage compartment floor trim.
– Disconnect earth wire -arrow- at battery.
– Remove airbag unit (driver side) ⇒ page 126 .
– Remove steering wheel ⇒ page 131 .
– Remove dash panel cover (bottom; driver side) on vehicles with electrically adjustable steering column ⇒ page 4 .



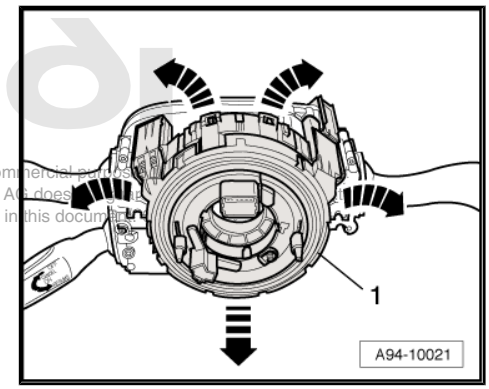
– If you still have the old special screwdriver T8 -T40056- , sand it down all round at the locations marked with -arrows-.



– Unscrew bolts -3- and -4- using special screwdriver T8 - T40056 A- .
– If fitted, open mechanical steering column adjustment at handle -5-.
– Remove TORX bolts -6-.
– Detach trim (top) -2- for steering column switch from trim (bottom) -1- and remove both trim sections.
– If fitted, unplug electrical connector at trim (bottom).



– Unplug electrical connector at top of return ring with slip ring.
– Carefully release retaining hooks -arrows- and detach return ring with slip ring -1- from steering column switch module.



Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

In illustration steering column switch module has been removed.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Make sure that all retaining hooks and connectors are properly engaged.
– Insert trim for steering column switch (top) in hooks on trim (bottom), press both sections together and secure with bolts.
– Install dash panel cover (bottom; driver side) ⇒ page 4 .
– Install steering wheel ⇒ page 131
– Install airbag unit (driver side) ⇒ page 128 .

Tightening torques

Component	Nm
Steering column switch module	3
Trim for steering column switch	0.6
Trim (bottom) to steering column	3.5

8 Servicing airbag (front passenger side)

⇒ “8.1 Airbag unit (front passenger side) - exploded view”, page 134

⇒ “8.2 Removing and installing airbag igniter 1, front passenger side N131 and airbag igniter 2, front passenger side N132 ”, page 135

⇒ “8.3 Removing and installing key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side E224 ”, page 138

⇒ “8.4 Removing and installing warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side K145 ”, page 139

8.1 Airbag unit (front passenger side) - exploded view

1 - 9 Nm
- ❑ Renew

2 - 6 Nm
- ❑ Renew

3 - Bracket (left-side) for airbag unit

4 - 9 Nm
- ❑ Renew

5 - Dash panel

6 - Guide for airbag unit
- ❑ Attached to dash panel
- ❑ Cannot be renewed as a separate unit

7 - Airbag unit

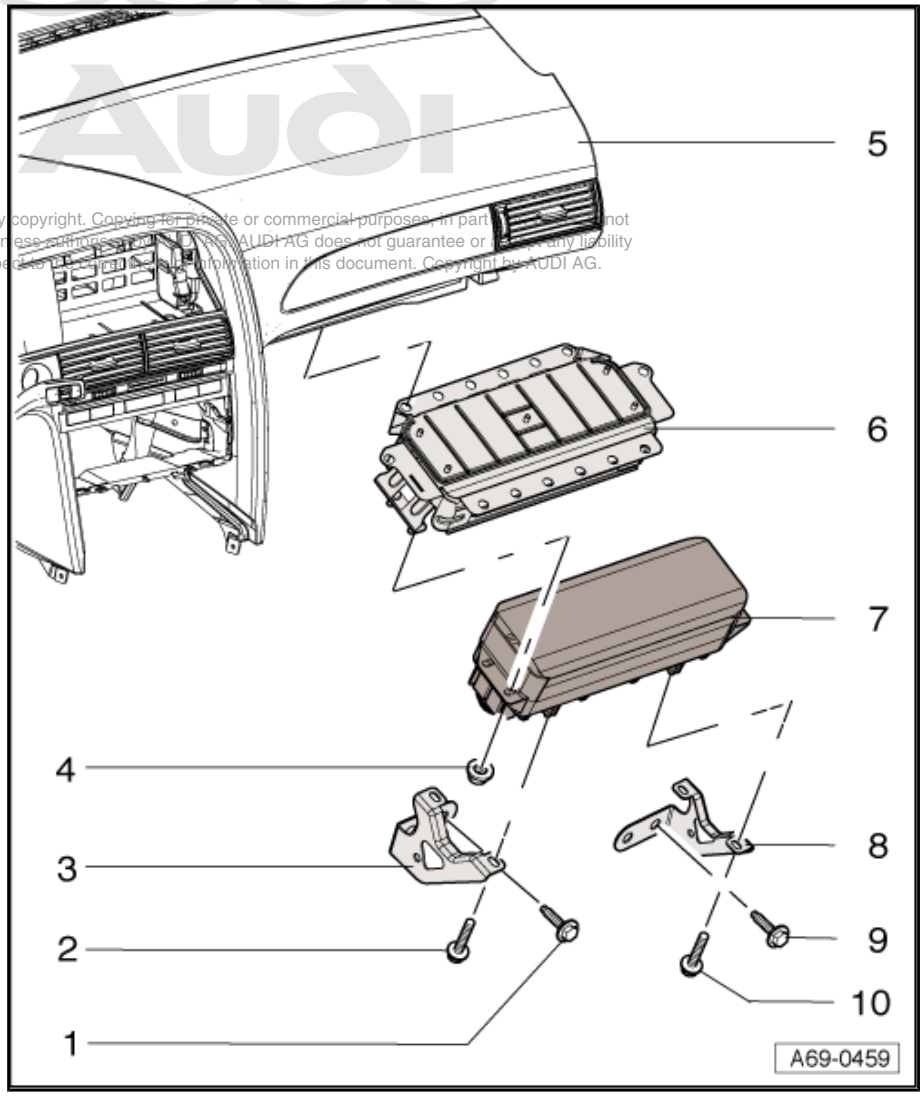
> **WARNING**
>
> *Observe safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
>
> *For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 135

8 - Bracket (right-side) for airbag unit

9 - 9 Nm
- ❑ Renew

10 - 6 Nm
- ❑ Renew



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8.2 Removing and installing airbag igniter 1, front passenger side -N131- and airbag igniter 2, front passenger side -N132-

Removing

WARNING

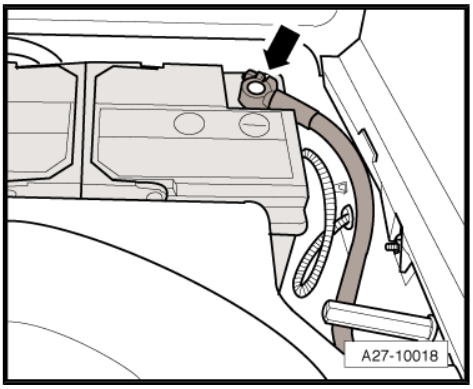
- *Observe safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

– Switch on ignition.

Note

Contrary to the description in "Disconnecting and connecting the battery" (⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27) the battery must, when removing the airbag, be disconnected with the ignition switched on.

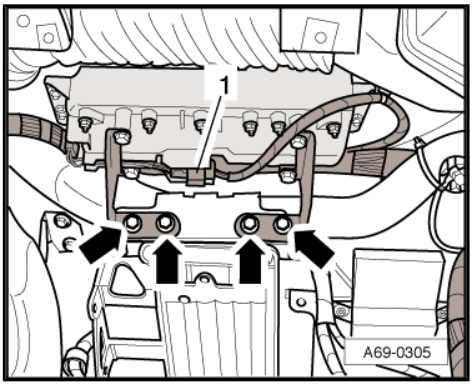
– Remove luggage compartment floor trim.
– Disconnect earth wire -arrow- at battery.
– Remove glove box ⇒ page 12 .



– Unscrew bolts -arrows- on central tube for dash panel.

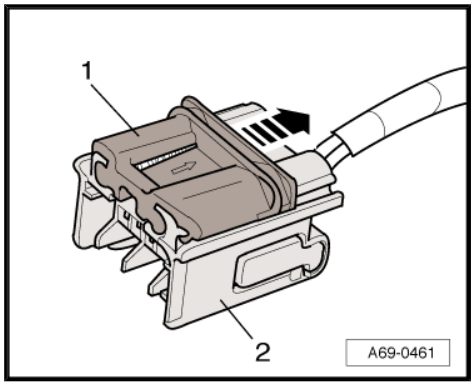
WARNING

The mechanic must discharge static electricity before unplugging the electrical connector; to do so, briefly touch door striker plate, or similar.



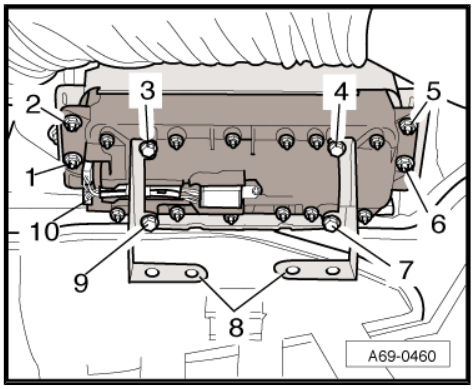
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Press catch -1- in direction of -arrow- until connector disengages.
– Unplug electrical connector -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unscrew bolts -3-, -4-, -7- and -9- and remove bracket for airbag unit -8-.
– Unscrew nuts -1-, -2-, -5- and -6-.



WARNING

Under no circumstances unplug electrical connectors -10- at front passenger's airbag unit.

– Take out airbag unit downwards.
– Set down airbag unit with impact cushion facing upwards.

Installing

WARNING

- *Make sure electrical connectors are correctly fitted and engage with a click.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*
- *Make sure there is no-one in the vehicle when you connect the battery.*
- *For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Once an airbag has been triggered the airbag securing components must be renewed.
– Install glove box ⇒ page 13 .
– Connect battery earth strap.
– Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

After installing the airbag unit, the following step must be carried out:

– Interrogate and erase the event memory of the airbag control unit because unplugging the electrical connectors may have caused faults to be stored ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Tightening torques

Component		Nm
Airbag unit to guide for airbag unit		9 2)
Bracket for:	Airbag unit	6 2)
Airbag unit to:	Central tube for dash panel	9 2)

2) Always renew bolts and nuts.

Online Version AUDI. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8.3 Removing and installing key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224-

Removing

WARNING

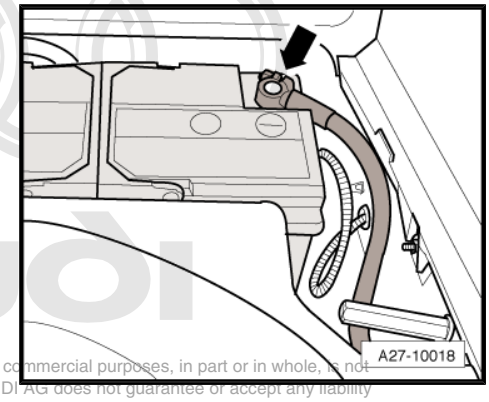
Observe safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

– Switch on ignition.

Note

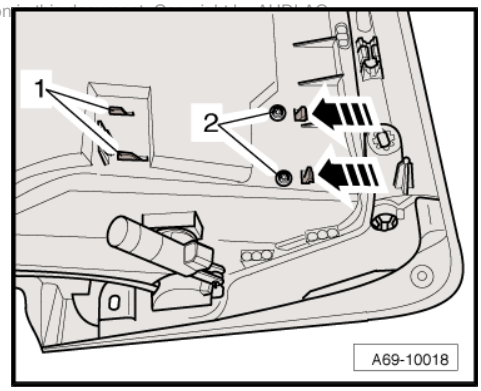
Contrary to the description in "Disconnecting and connecting the battery" (⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27) the battery must, when removing the airbag, be disconnected with the ignition switched on.

– Remove luggage compartment floor trim.
– Disconnect earth wire -arrow- at battery.
– Remove glove box ⇒ page 12 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information

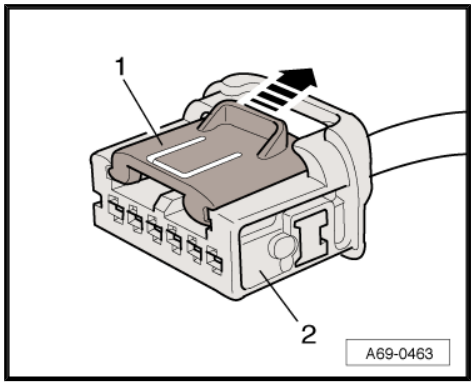
– Unscrew bolts -2-.
– Release retaining tabs in direction of -arrows- and pull housing for key-operated switch out of glove box.



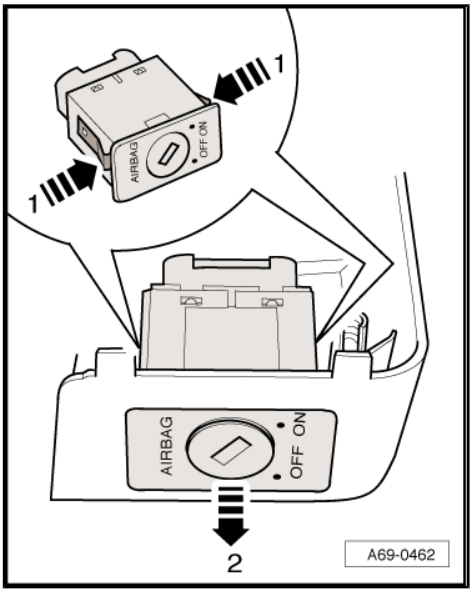
WARNING

The mechanic must discharge static electricity before unplugging the electrical connector; to do so, briefly touch door striker plate, or similar.

– Press catch -1- in direction of -arrow- until connector disengages.
– Unplug electrical connector -2-.



– Release retaining springs (left and right) -arrow 1- and push key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224- -item 1- out of housing for key-operated switch -arrow 2-.



Installing

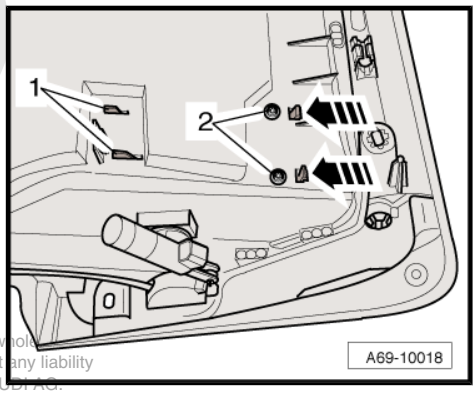
Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Make sure key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224- audibly clicks into place in housing.

– Insert retaining tabs on housing (rear) -1- in glove box and clip in retaining tabs (front) -arrows-.

– Tighten bolts -2-.

– Install glove box ⇒ page 13 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Make sure there is no-one in the vehicle when you connect the battery.

– Connect battery earth strap.

– Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

After installing the key operated switch to deactivate front passenger side airbag -E224- , the following step must be carried out:

– Interrogate and erase the event memory of the airbag control unit because unplugging the electrical connector may have caused faults to be stored ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

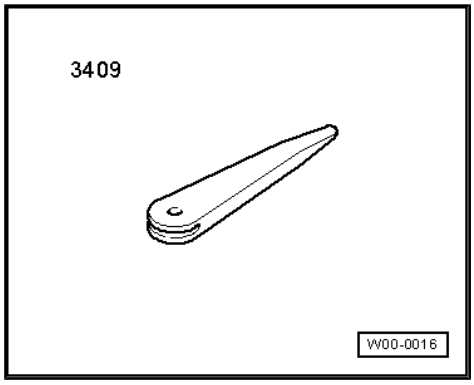
Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Housing for key-operated switch to glove box	2

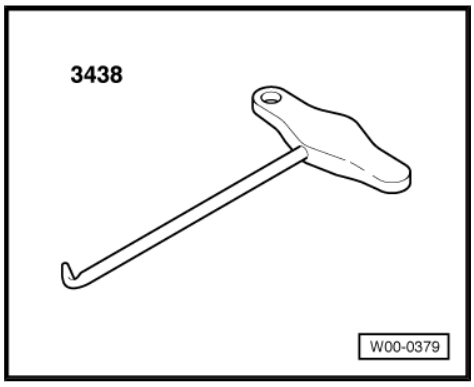
8.4 Removing and installing warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side -K145-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge -3409-

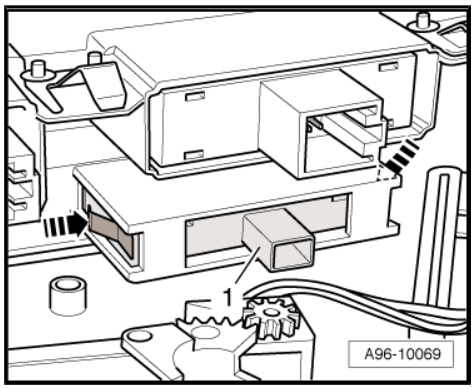


♦ Hook -3438-



– Remove dash panel vent (centre) ⇒ page 212 .

– Release retaining clips (left and right) -arrows- and detach front passenger side airbag deactivated warning lamp -K145- -item 1- from trim panel with dash panel vent.



Note

If LED is defective, light housing for front passenger side airbag deactivated warning lamp -K145- must be renewed as a complete unit.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9 Servicing side airbags

⇒ “9.1 Removing and installing side airbag igniters N199 and N200 , front (standard seats, seats with electric adjustment) - vehicles up to approx. 04.2007”, page 141

⇒ “9.2 Removing and installing side airbag igniters N199 and N200 , front (standard seats, seats with electric adjustment) - vehicles from approx. 05.2007 onwards”, page 144

⇒ “9.3 Removing and installing rear side airbag igniter on driver side N201 and rear side airbag igniter on front passenger side N202 (fixed rear seat backrest)”, page 148

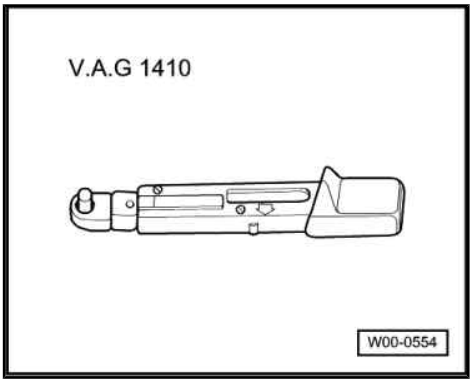
⇒ “9.4 Removing and installing rear side airbag igniter on driver side N201 and rear side airbag igniter on front passenger side N202 (folding rear seat backrest)”, page 150

9.1 Removing and installing side airbag igniters -N199- and -N200- , front (standard seats, seats with electric adjustment) - vehicles up to approx. 04.2007

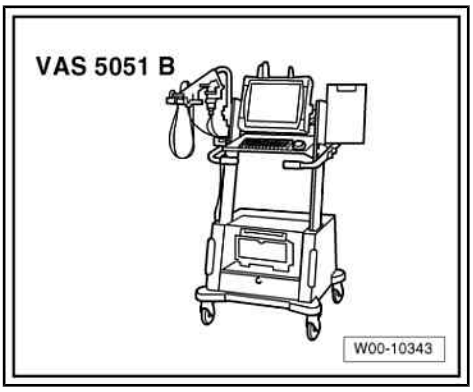
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

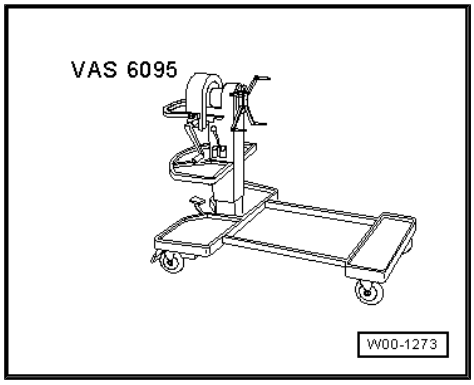
- Torque wrench -V.A.G 1410-



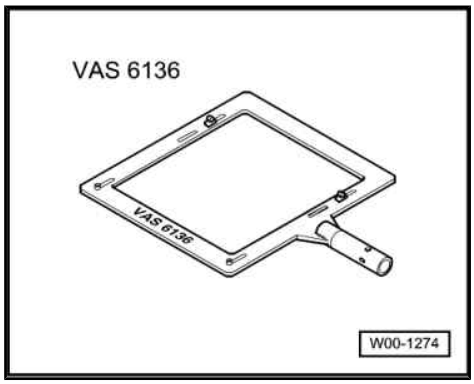
- Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B-



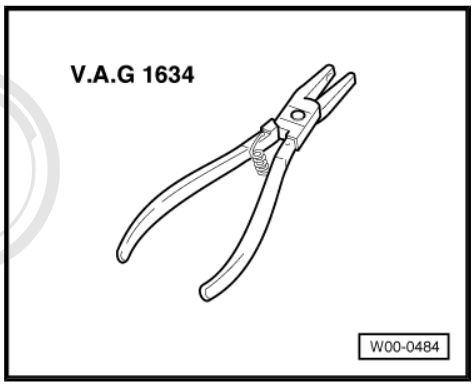
- Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



- Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



- Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-



WARNING

Observe safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 and side airbags ⇒ page 111 .

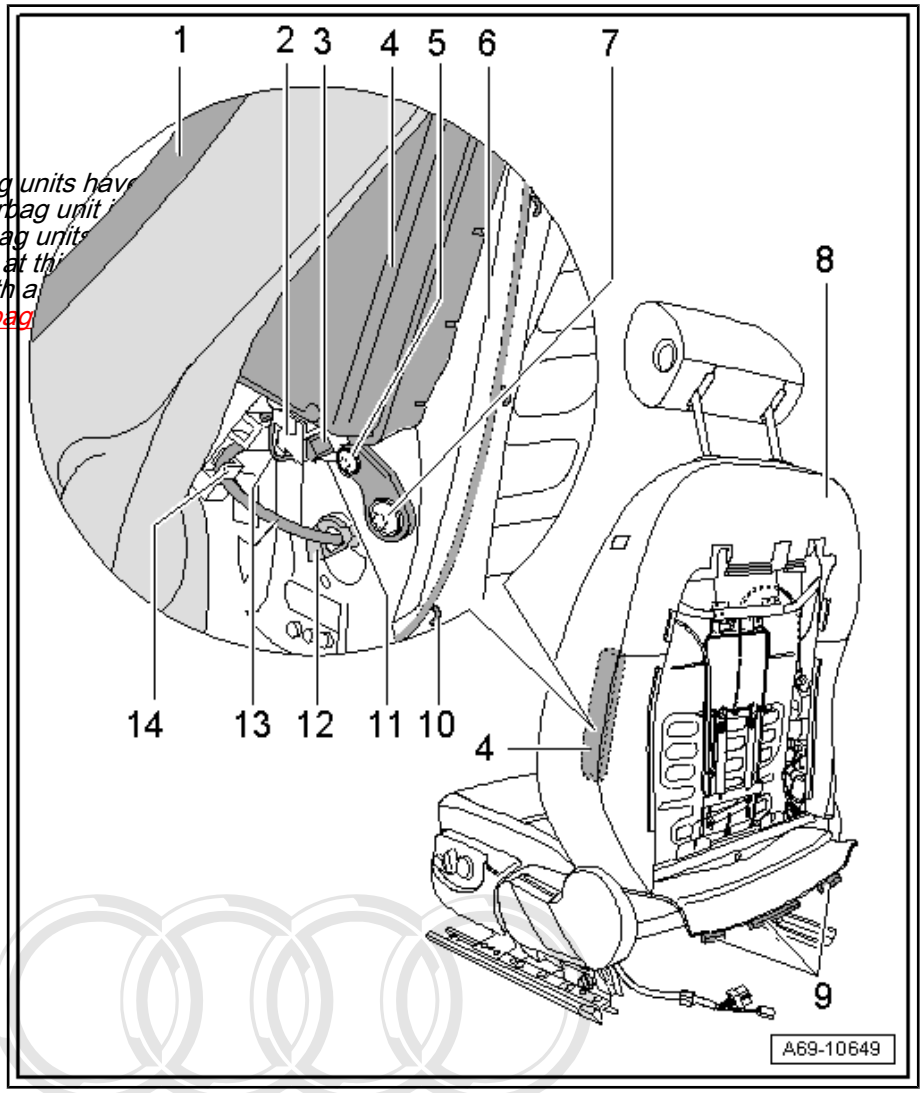
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Fastening strip (side)

2 - Connector for side airbag

Note

Only the old side airbag units have an connector on the airbag unit itself. The new side airbag units not have an connector at this tion. They are fitted with a ous wiring harness ⇒ page



3 - Latch

4 - Side airbag (driver side/ front passenger side)

♦ Removing

– Disconnect battery earth strap ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
– Remove seat ⇒ page 379 .
– Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 417 .
– Use screwdriver to prise out fastening strips (bottom) -9- (3x).
– Use screwdriver to prise out fastening strip on side -1- and fold cover forwards.
– Cut through upholstery clips -10- (4x) at protective cover for side airbag -6-.
– If fitted, push latch -3- downwards and unplug connector for side airbag -2-. If not fitted, remove side airbag together with wiring harness.
– Unscrew bolt -7-.
– Drill out rivet -5-.
– Push side airbag -4- upwards and take out side airbag.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Engage side airbag -4- in outer backrest frame.
– Push side airbag -4- down as far as it will go.
– Position lug of earth wire -11- between outer backrest frame and side airbag -4-.
– Secure earth wire -11- with a rivet.
– Renew bolt -7-.
– Secure side airbag -4- with bolt -7-.
– Make sure airbag cable -13- runs through cable guide -14- and is attached to outer backrest frame using clip -12-.
– Use upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- to install new upholstery clips on protective cover for side airbag.
– Switch on ignition.

Caution

Make sure nobody is in the vehicle when the battery is being connected.

– Connect battery earth strap.

– Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, use vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- to interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate event memory.

5 - Rivet

6 - Protective cover for side airbag

7 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque: 10 Nm
- ❑ Always renew after removing

8 - Front seat

9 - Fastening strips (bottom; 3x)

10 - Upholstery clips (4x)

11 - Earth wire

12 - Clip

13 - Airbag cable

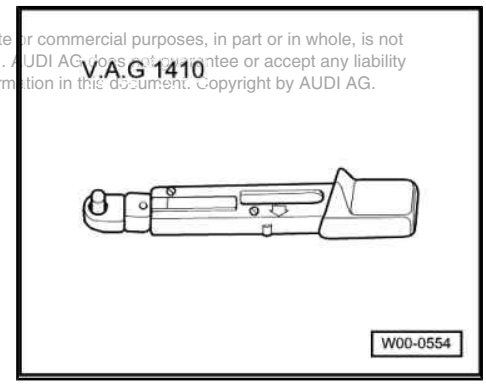
14 - Cable guide

9.2 Removing and installing side airbag igniters -N199- and -N200- , front (standard seats, seats with electric adjustment) - vehicles from approx. 05.2007 onwards

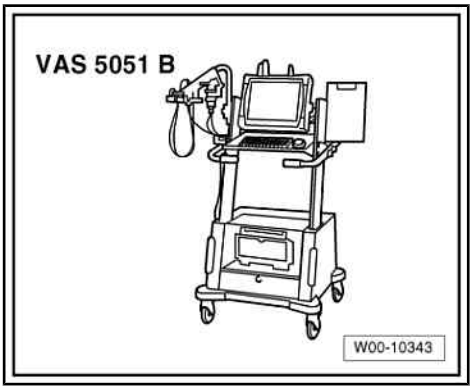
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1410-

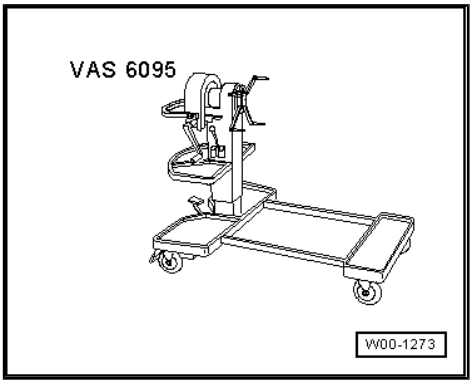
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



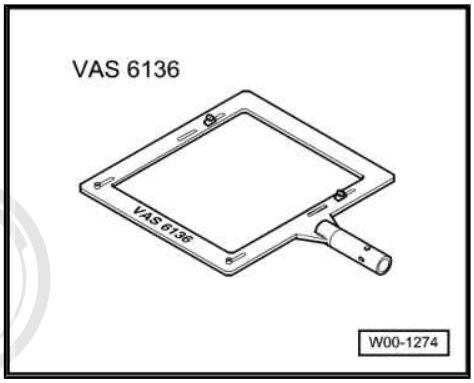
- Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B-



- Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



- Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



WARNING

Observe safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 and side airbags ⇒ page 111 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Clip

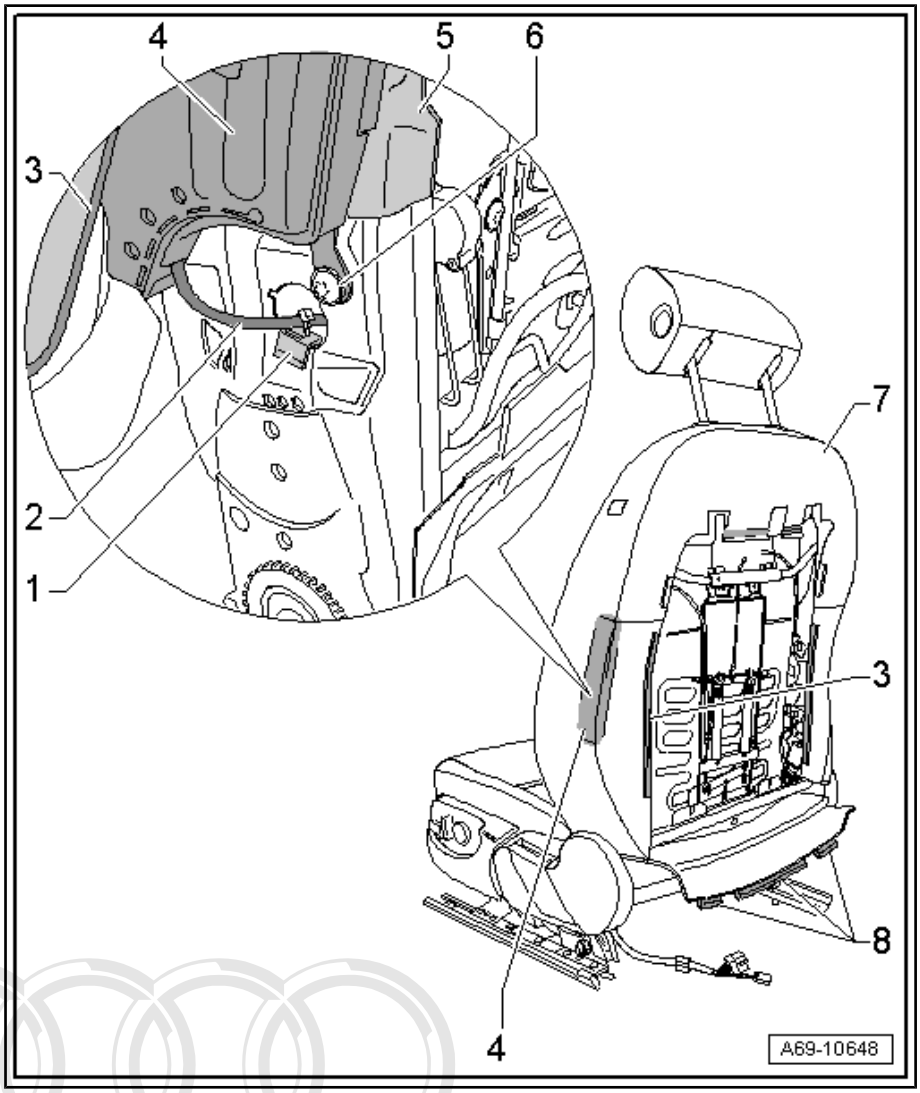
- ❑ For electrical wiring to side airbag

2 - Electrical wiring

- ❑ To side airbag

3 - Fastening strip (side)

4 - Side airbag (driver side/ front passenger side)



♦ Removing

- Disconnect battery earth strap ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- Remove seat ⇒ page 379 .
- Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
- Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 417 .
- Use screwdriver to prise out fastening strips (bottom) -8- (3x).
- Use screwdriver to prise out fastening strip on side -3- (on airbag side) and fold cover forwards.
- Move clear electrical wiring to side airbag from corrugated tube.
- Unscrew bolt -6-.
- Push side airbag -4- upwards and take out side airbag.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Pull fabric strip through towards rear ⇒ page 147 .
- Align slits in fabric strip with outer backrest frame ⇒ page 148 .
- Hook side airbag -4- into outer backrest frame ⇒ page 148 and engage both hooks downwards.
- Secure fabric strip with fastening strip -5- on backrest frame.

The data is protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Renew bolt -6-.
- Secure side airbag -4- with bolt -6-.
- Make sure airbag cable -2- runs through hole in outer backrest frame and is secured with clip -1-, as illustrated.
- Switch on ignition.

Caution

Make sure nobody is in the vehicle when the battery is being connected.

– Connect battery earth strap.

– Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, use vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- to interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate event memory.

5 - Fabric strip

- ❑ For side airbag
- ❑ With fastening strip

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the accuracy of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6 - Bolt

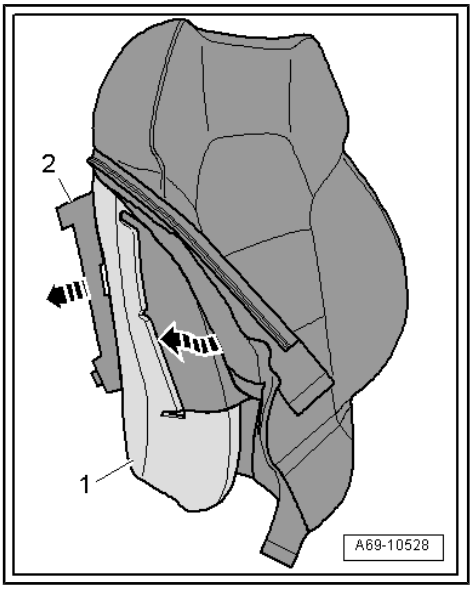
- ❑ Tightening torque: 10 Nm
- ❑ Always renew after removing

7 - Front seat

8 - Fastening strips (bottom; 3x)

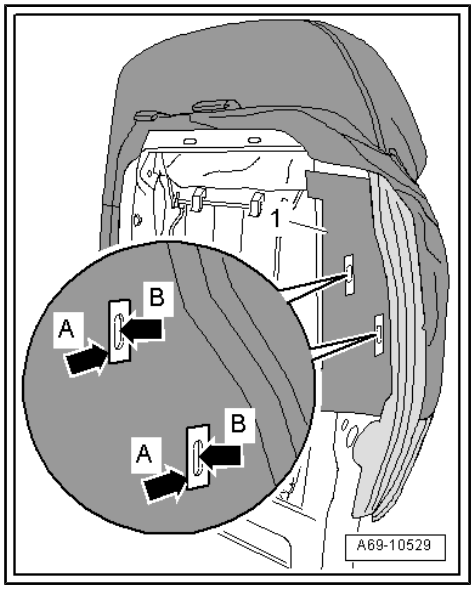
Pulling through fabric strip for side airbag

– Pull fabric strip -2- for side airbag through opening in side section of padding -1- towards rear -arrows-.



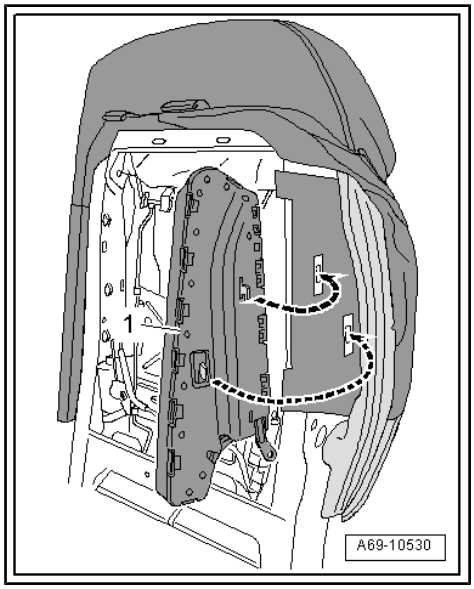
Aligning slits in fabric strip with outer backrest frame

– Align slits -arrows A- in fabric strip -1- with elongated holes -arrows B- in outer backrest frame.



Engaging side airbag in outer backrest frame

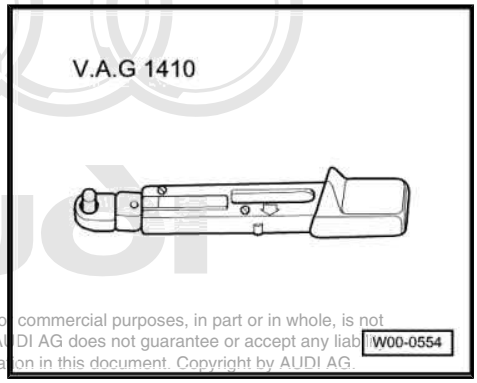
– Engage side airbag -1- in elongated holes in outer backrest frame through slits in fabric strip -arrows-.



9.3 Removing and installing rear side airbag igniter on driver side -N201- and rear side airbag igniter on front passenger side -N202- (fixed rear seat backrest)

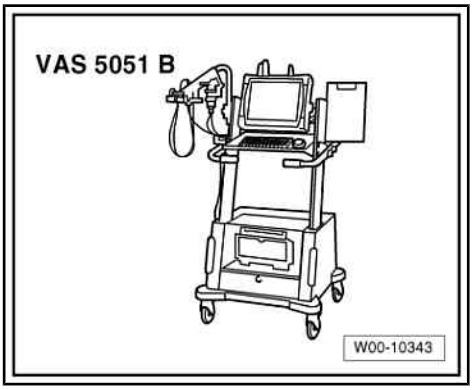
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1410-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B-



WARNING

Observe safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 and side airbags ⇒ page 111 .

1 - Fixed rear seat backrest

2 - Protective cover for side airbag

3 - Side airbag (rear; driver/passenger side)

♦ Removing

– Disconnect battery earth strap ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .
– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 562 .
– Remove bolts -4- (2x).
– Pull side airbag -3- downwards out of protective cover -2-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

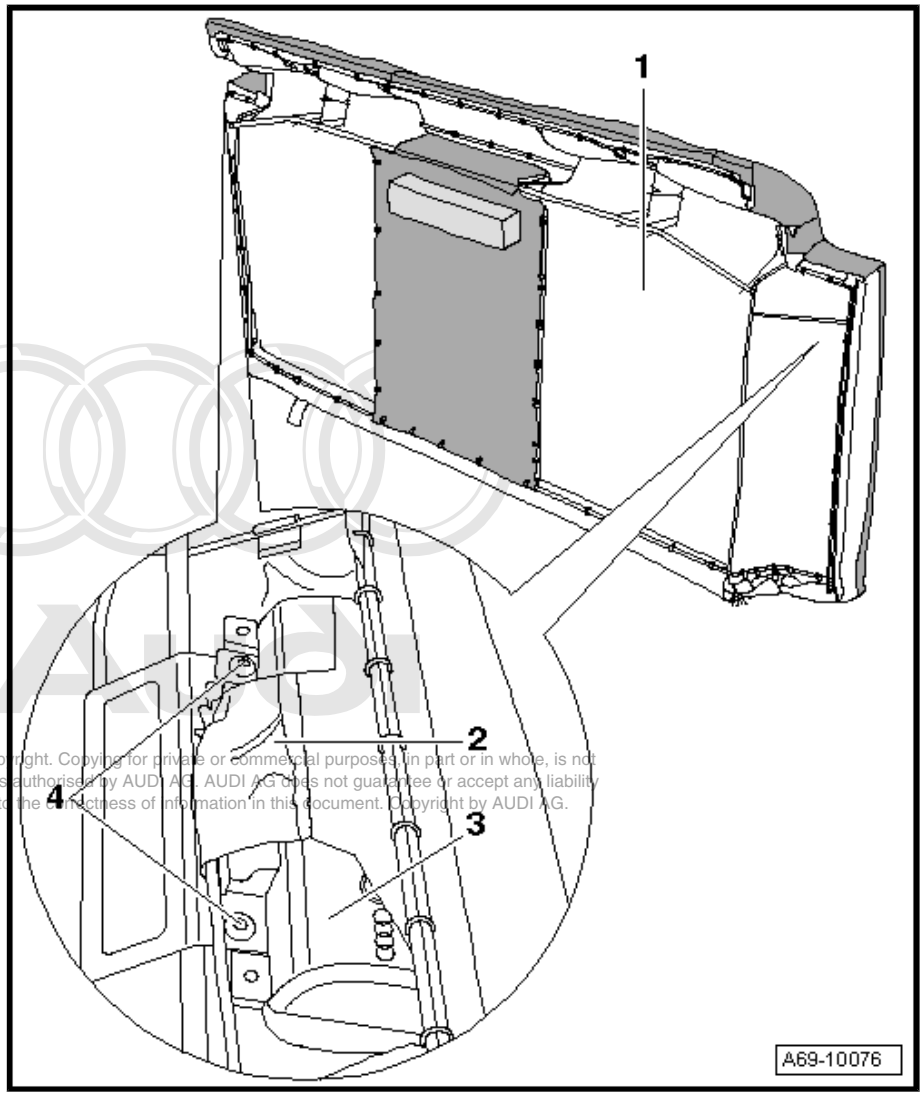
– Switch on ignition.

Caution

Make sure nobody is in the vehicle when the battery is being connected.

– Connect battery earth strap.

– Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, use vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- to interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate event memory.

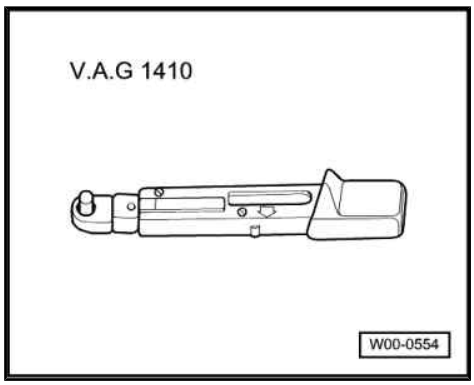
4 - Bolts (2x)

- ❑ Tightening torque: 8 Nm

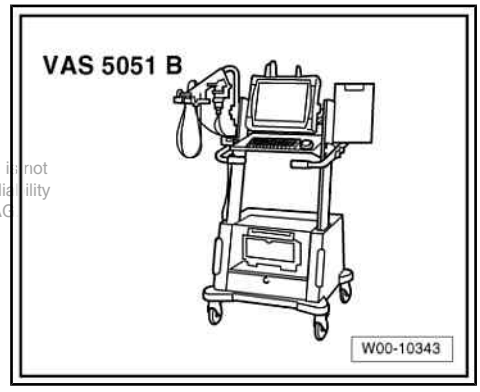
9.4 Removing and installing rear side airbag igniter on driver side -N201- and rear side airbag igniter on front passenger side -N202- (folding rear seat backrest)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1410-



- ♦ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 and side airbags ⇒ page 111 .

1 - Side padding

2 - Protective cover for side airbag

3 - Side airbag (rear; driver/ passenger side)

- ♦ Removing
  - – Disconnect battery earth strap ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
  - – Remove seat bench ⇒ page 551 .
  - – Remove side padding -1- (rear left / rear right) ⇒ page 556 .
  - – Remove bolts -4- (2x).
  - – Pull side airbag -3- downwards out of protective cover -2-.
- ♦ Installing

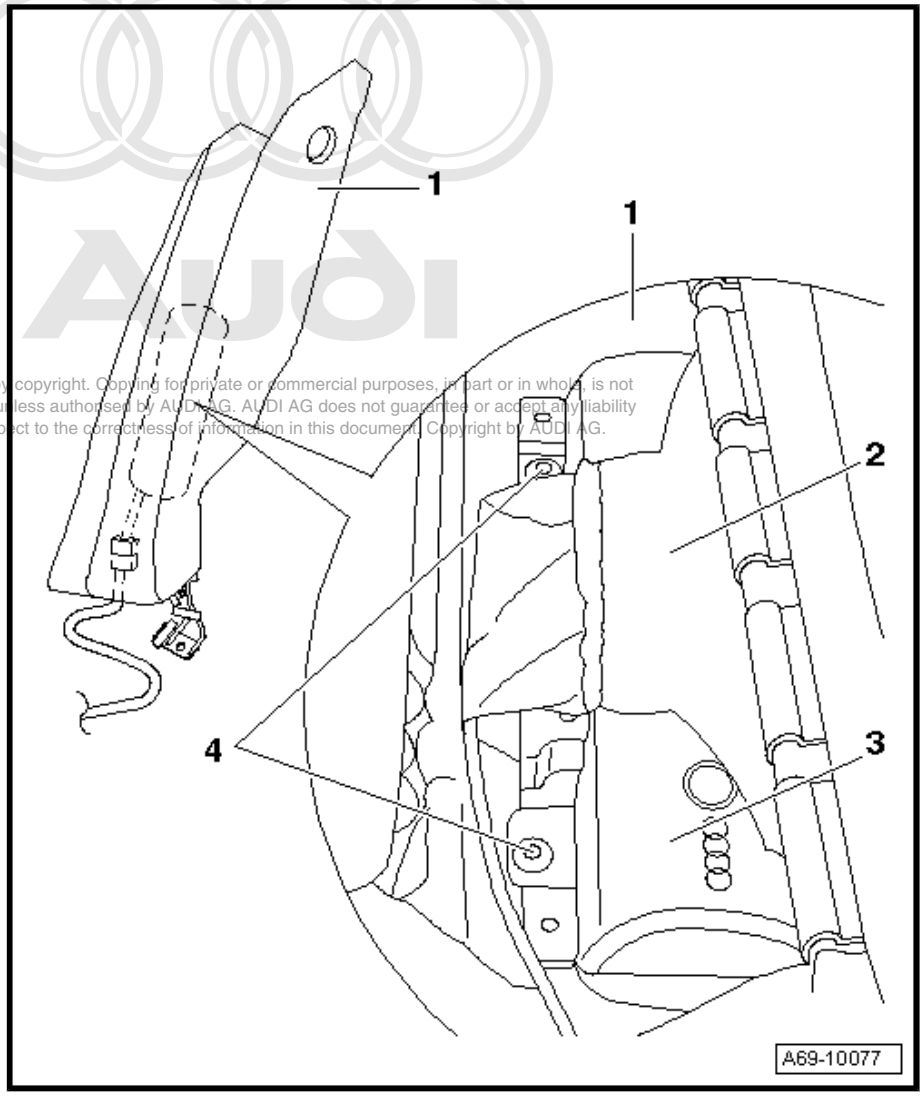
Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- – Switch on ignition.

Caution

Make sure nobody is in the vehicle when the battery is being connected.

- – Connect battery earth strap.
- – Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, use vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- to interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate event memory.

4 - Bolts (2x)

- ❑ Tightening torque: 8 Nm

10 Deactivating side airbag (rear)

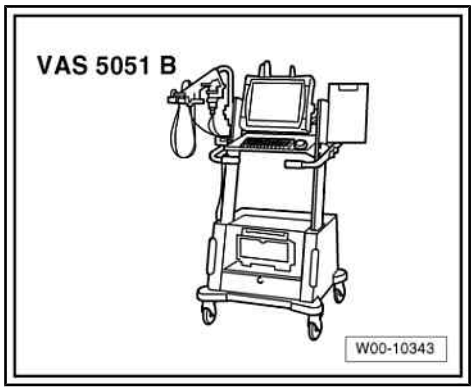
⇒ “10.1 Deactivating”, page 152

⇒ “10.1.1 Sticker for deactivated side airbag (rear)”, page 153

10.1 Deactivating

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

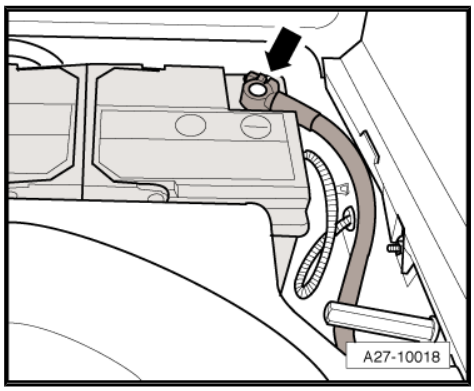
Observe safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 and side airbags ⇒ page 111 .

– Switch on ignition.

Note

Contrary to the description in “Disconnecting and connecting the battery” (⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27) the battery must, when removing the airbag, be disconnected with the ignition switched on.

– Remove luggage compartment floor trim.
– Disconnect earth wire -arrow- at battery.
– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .



Note

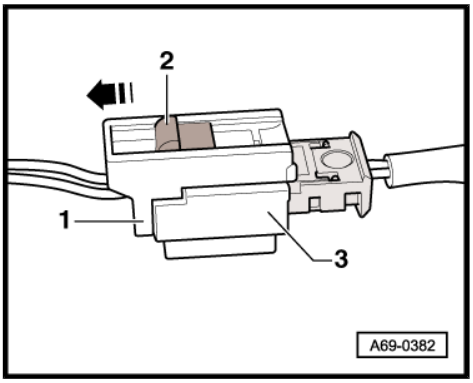
The side airbags (left and right) can be deactivated individually.

There is one electrical connector on each side at the C-pillar (left and right).

WARNING

The mechanic must discharge static electricity before unplugging connectors; to do so, briefly touch door striker plate, or similar.

– Press retaining tab -2- and unplug connector -1- in direction of -arrow-.
– Secure loose connectors with cable ties.
– Install rear seat bench.



WARNING

Make sure there is no-one in the vehicle when you connect the battery.

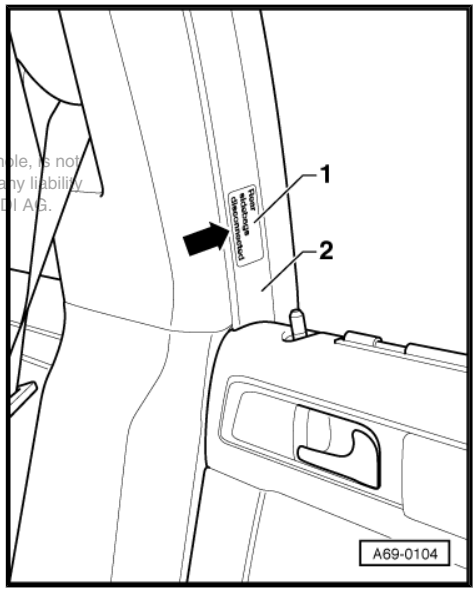
– Connect battery earth strap.
– Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
– Carry out programmes for deactivating side airbag (rear) in “Guided Fault Finding” ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester. The appropriate adaption program has to be carried out.
– Fill in the registration card and return the card to the importer or regional sales centre for registration. Place page 3 of the registration card in vehicle wallet.

10.1.1 Sticker for deactivated side airbag (rear)

– Attach stickers -1- indicating that side airbag has been deactivated to rear door frame (left and right) -2- -arrow-.
– Any additional stickers required in accordance with national regulations should be attached above the sticker shown in the illustration.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

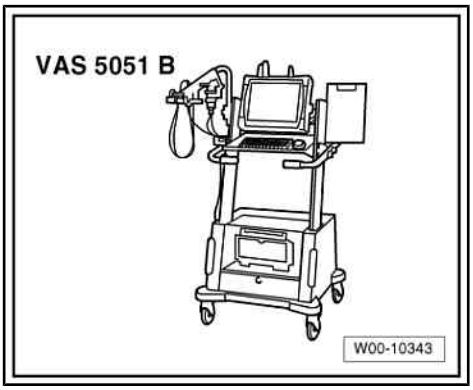
– Carry out programmes for deactivating side airbag (rear) in “Guided Fault Finding” ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester. The appropriate adaption program has to be carried out.
– Fill in the registration card and return the card to the importer or regional sales centre for registration. Place page 3 of the registration card in vehicle wallet.



10.2 Activating

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B-



WARNING

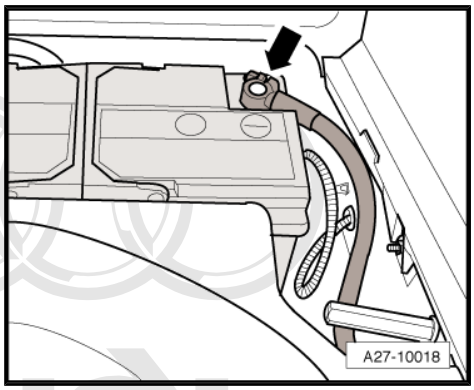
Observe safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 and side airbags ⇒ page 111 .

– Switch on ignition.

Note

Contrary to the description in "Disconnecting and connecting the battery" (⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27) the battery must, when removing the airbag, be disconnected with the ignition switched on.

– Remove luggage compartment floor trim.
– Disconnect earth wire -arrow- at battery.
– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .



Note

The side airbags (left and right) can be activated individually.

There is one electrical connector on each side at the "C-pillar" (left and right).

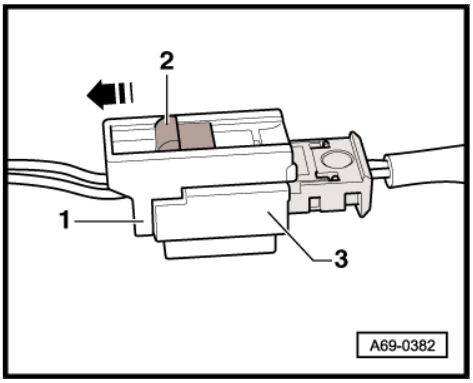
WARNING

The mechanic must discharge static electricity before unplugging connectors; to do so, briefly touch door striker plate, or similar.

Reproduction or duplication for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Cut through cable ties securing connectors.

– Plug in connector -1- for side airbag.
– Insert electrical connectors in cut-out in padding of rear seat bench.
– Install rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .
– Remove sticker from rear door frame indicating that side airbags have been deactivated.
– Remove any adhesive left on door frame with a suitable cleaning fluid.



WARNING

Make sure there is no-one in the vehicle when you connect the battery.

– Connect battery earth strap.
– Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
– Carry out programmes for activating side airbag (rear) in “Guided Fault Finding” ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester. The appropriate adaption program has to be carried out.
– Fill in the registration card and return the card to the importer or regional sales centre for registration. Remove page 3 of the registration card from vehicle wallet.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

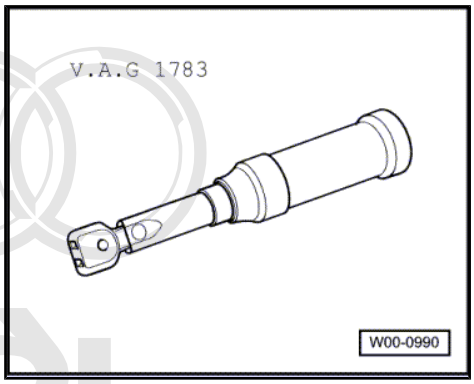
11 Servicing curtain airbags - saloon

⇒ “11.1 Removing and installing driver side curtain airbag igniter N251 and front passenger side curtain airbag igniter N252 ”, page 156

11.1 Removing and installing driver side curtain airbag igniter -N251- and front passenger side curtain airbag igniter -N252-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench -V.A.G 1783-



WARNING

Observe safety precautions for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 and curtain airbags ⇒ page 112 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Curtain airbag

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

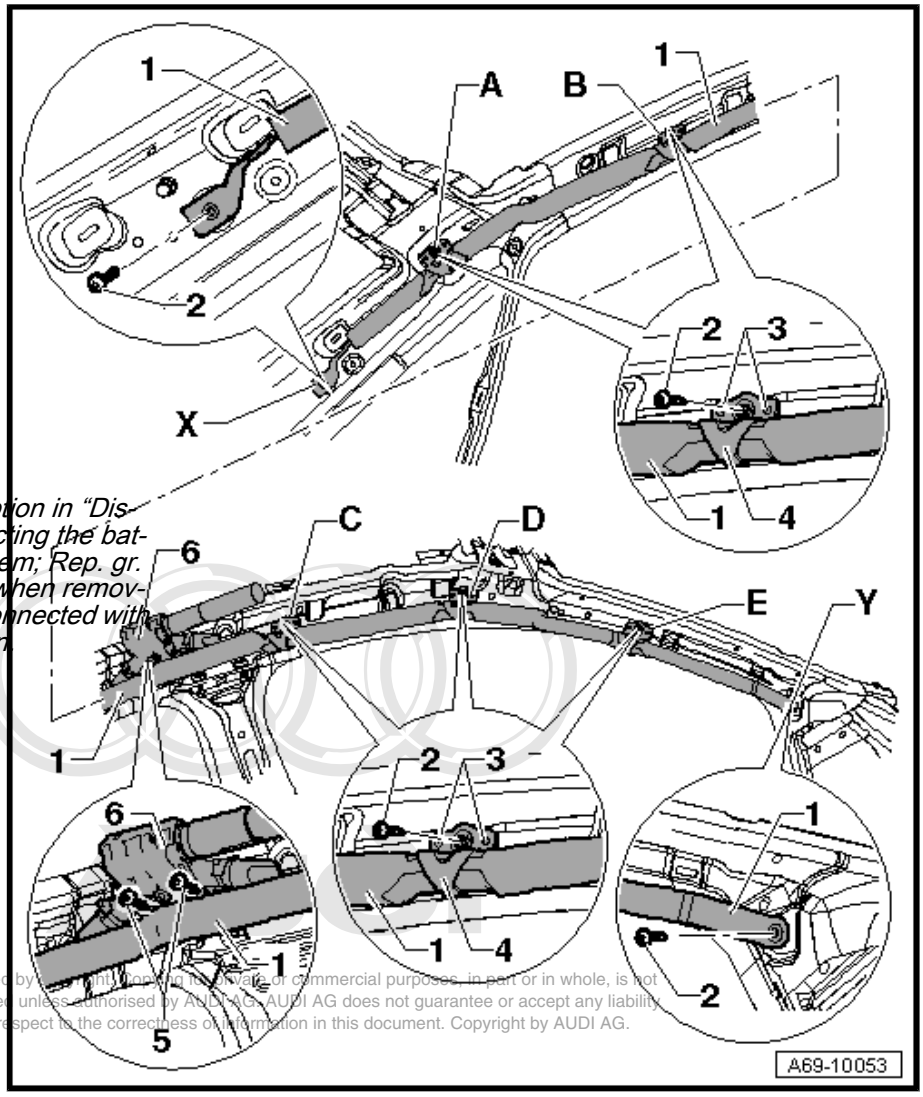
❑ Removing:

– Move backrests (front) into reclining position.

– Switch on ignition.

Note

Contrary to the description in "Disconnecting and connecting the battery" (⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27) the battery must, when removing the airbag, be disconnected with the ignition switched on.



– Disconnect battery earth strap ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ page 320 .

– Lay moulded headliner down on seats.

– Unplug electrical connector at gas generator -6- ⇒ page 159 .

– Remove bolts -2-, starting at curtain airbag -1- (rear).

– Remove bolts -5- at gas generator -6-.

– Unclip locating pins -3- of retaining tabs -4- from body ⇒ page 159 .

– Disengage hooks of gas generator -6- from body ⇒ page 159 .

– Take curtain airbag -1- out of vehicle.

❑ Installing:

WARNING

Always observe correct sequence for installing curtain airbag.

Note

♦ *Renew self-locking nuts and bolts when performing assembly work.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ *Threaded holes for bolts must always be cleaned (e.g. with a thread tap).*

– Engage hooks of gas generator -6- on body ⇒ page 159 .

– Secure bolts -5- on gas generator -6-.

– Press locating pins -3- of retaining tabs -4- into body ⇒ page 159 .

– Tighten bolts -2- in sequence -A-, -B-, -X- and -C ... E-, -Y-.

– When plugging in connector at gas generator -6- make sure you hear it click into place on the gas generator ⇒ page 159 .

– Install moulded headliner ⇒ page 320 .

WARNING

Make sure nobody is in the vehicle when the battery is being connected.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Connect battery earth strap.

– Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

2 - Bolt, 4 Nm

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 7x
- ❑ Threaded holes for bolts must always be cleaned (e.g. with a thread tap).

3 - Locating pin

- ❑ For locating retaining tab
- ❑ 10x

4 - Retaining tab with locating pin

- ❑ For securing curtain airbag to body

5 - Bolts, 6 Nm

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Threaded holes for bolts must always be cleaned (e.g. with a thread tap).

6 - Gas generator

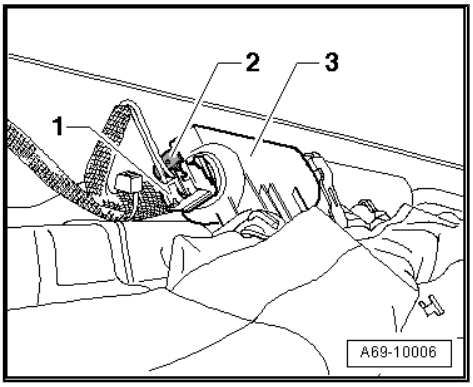
- ❑ With hook for engaging in body

Unplugging and plugging in connector on gas generator

Procedure

– Unplug electrical connector.

– To do so, pull connector locking element -2- as far as the stop. This will release the electrical connector -1- which can then be unplugged.



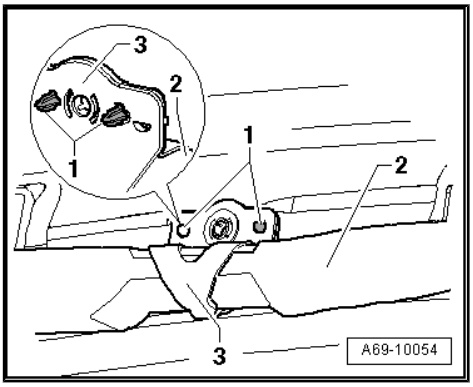
Note

When plugging in the connector, make sure you hear it click into place on the gas generator.

Unclipping and pressing in airbag retaining tab with locating pin

Procedure

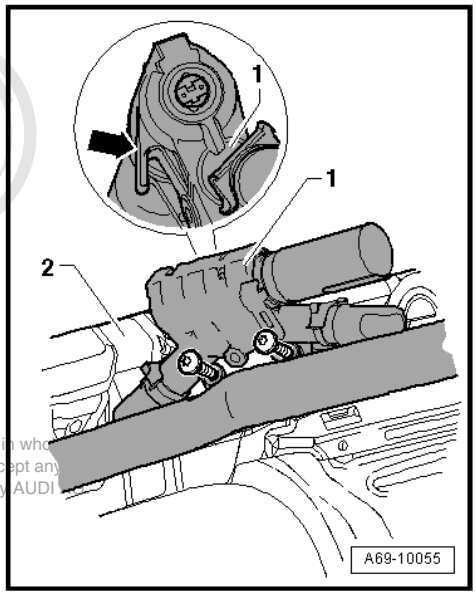
– Press locating pins -1- of retaining tabs -3- for airbag -2- into body.



Disengaging and engaging gas generator

Procedure

– When installing make sure hook -arrow- on gas generator -1- engages correctly on body -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

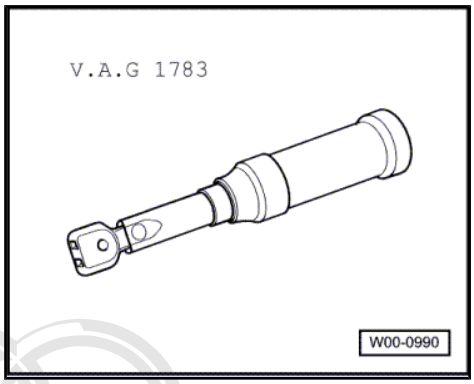
12 Servicing curtain airbags -Avant

⇒ “12.1 Removing and installing driver side curtain airbag igniter N251 and front passenger side curtain airbag igniter N252 ”, page 160

12.1 Removing and installing driver side curtain airbag igniter -N251- and front passenger side curtain airbag igniter -N252-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench -V.A.G 1783-



WARNING

Observe safety precautions for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 and curtain airbags ⇒ page 112 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For curtain airbag

2 - Bolts, 4 Nm

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Threaded holes for bolts must always be cleaned (e.g. with a thread tap).

3 - Curtain airbag

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

- ❑ Removing:

– Move backrests (front) into reclining position.

– Switch on ignition.

Note

Contrary to the description in "Disconnecting and connecting the battery" (⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27) the battery must, when removing the airbag, be disconnected with the ignition switched on.

– Disconnect battery earth strap ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ page 320 .

– Lay moulded headliner down on seats.

– Unplug electrical connector -1- on gas generator -8- ⇒ page 163 .

– Unscrew bolts on curtain airbag in sequence: -2-, -4- and -6- .

– Remove bolts -7- on gas generator.

– Unclip locating pins -5- from body.

– Disengage hook of gas generator -8- from body.

– Take curtain airbag -3- out of vehicle.

- ❑ Installing:

WARNING

Always observe correct sequence for installing curtain airbag.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

- *Renew self-locking nuts and bolts when performing assembly work.*
- *Threaded holes for bolts must always be cleaned (e.g. with a thread tap).*

– Engage hooks of gas generator -8- on body ⇒ page 163 .

– Secure bolts -7- on gas generator -8-.

– Press locating pins -5- of retaining tabs into body ⇒ page 163 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Tighten bolts -2-, -4- and -6- in the sequence -A ... G-.

– When plugging in connector at gas generator -8- make sure you hear it click into place on the gas generator ⇒ page 159 .

– Install moulded headliner ⇒ page 320 .

WARNING

Make sure nobody is in the vehicle when the battery is being connected.

– Connect battery earth strap.

– Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

4 - Bolts, 4 Nm

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Threaded holes for bolts must always be cleaned (e.g. with a thread tap).

5 - Retaining tab with locating pin

- ❑ For securing curtain airbag to body

6 - Bolts, 4 Nm

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Threaded holes for bolts must always be cleaned (e.g. with a thread tap).

7 - Bolts, 6 Nm

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Threaded holes for bolts must always be cleaned (e.g. with a thread tap).

8 - Gas generator

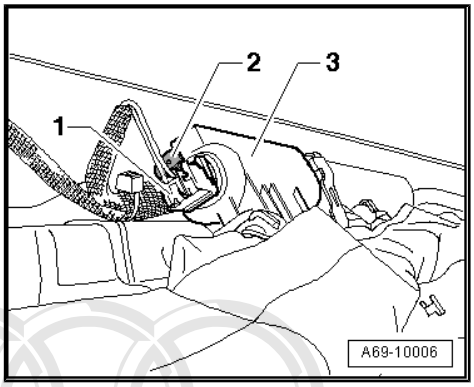
- ❑ With hook for engaging in body

Unplugging and plugging in connector on gas generator

Procedure

– Unplug electrical connector.

– To do so, pull connector locking element -2- as far as the stop. This will release the electrical connector -1- which can then be unplugged.



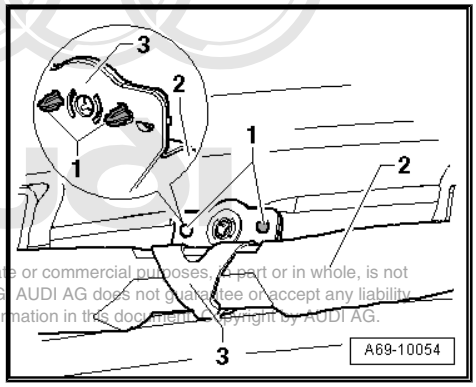
Note

When plugging in the connector, make sure you hear it click into place on the gas generator.

Unclipping and pressing in airbag retaining tab with locating pin

Procedure

– Press locating pins -1- of retaining tabs -3- for airbag -2- into body.

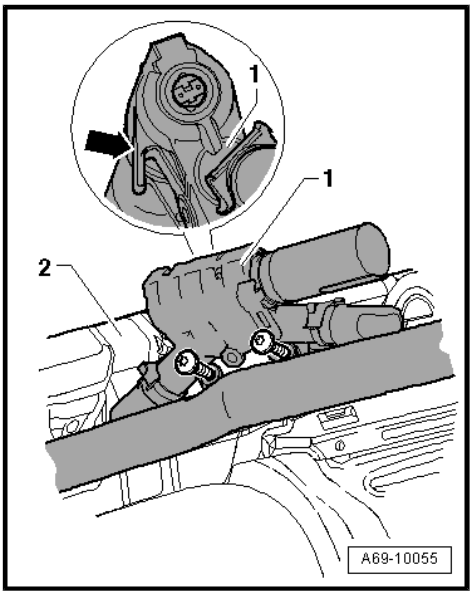


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Disengaging and engaging gas generator

Procedure

– When installing make sure hook -arrow- on gas generator -1- engages correctly on body -2-.



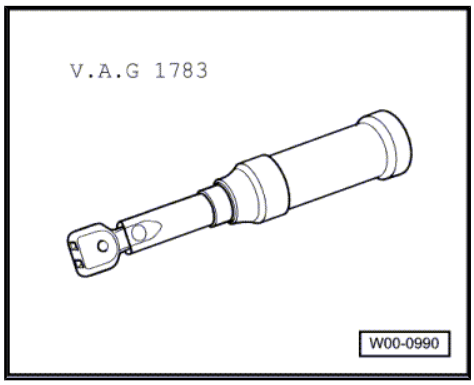
13 Servicing curtain airbag - Audi A6 Security

⇒ “13.1 Removing and installing driver side curtain airbag igniter N251 and front passenger side curtain airbag igniter N252 ”, page 164

13.1 Removing and installing driver side curtain airbag igniter -N251- and front passenger side curtain airbag igniter -N252-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench -V.A.G 1783-



WARNING

Observe safety precautions for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 and curtain airbags ⇒ page 112 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Curtain airbag

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

❑ Removing:

– Move backrests (front) into reclining position.

– Switch on ignition.

Note

Contrary to the description in "Disconnecting and connecting the battery" (⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27) the battery must, when removing the airbag, be disconnected with the ignition switched on.

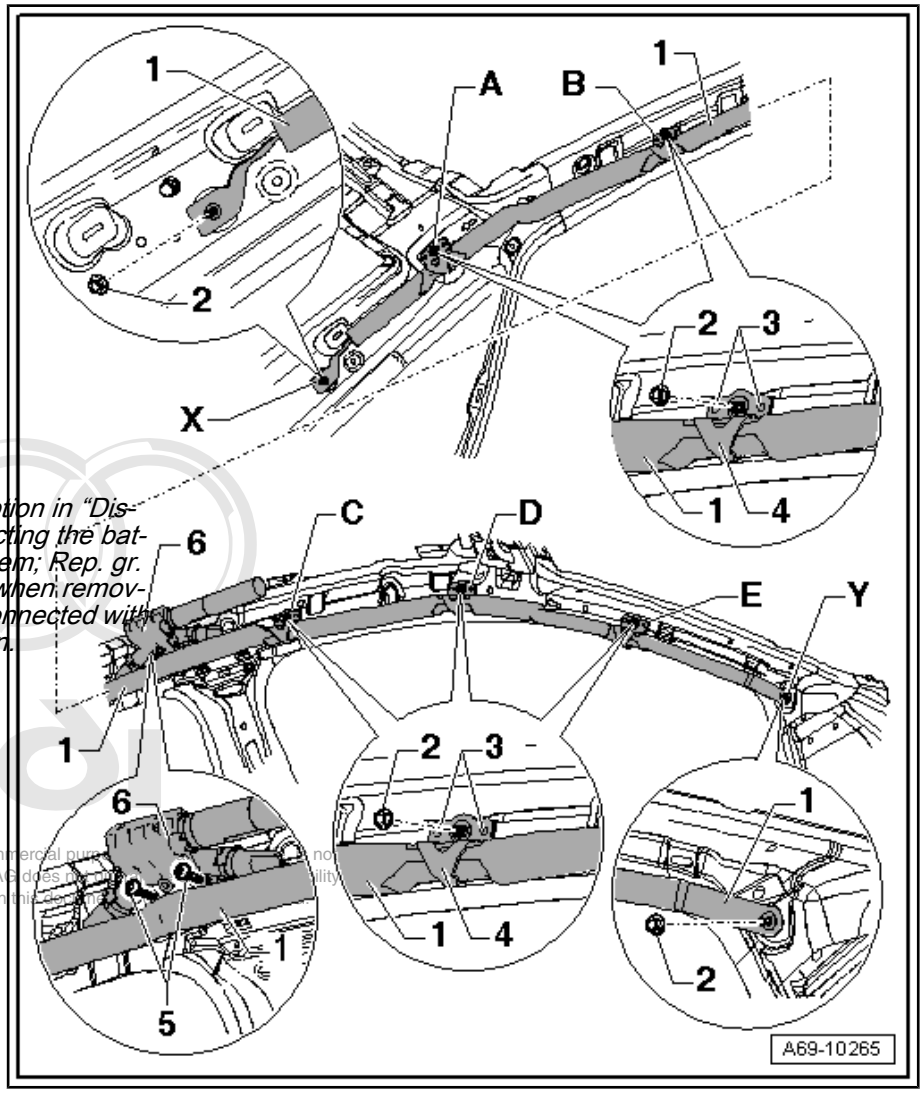
– Disconnect battery earth strap ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ page 320 .

– Lay moulded headliner down on seats.

– Unplug electrical connector at gas generator -6- ⇒ page 167 .

– Unscrew nuts -2-, starting at rear of curtain airbag -1-.



– Remove bolts -5- at gas generator -6-.

– Unclip locating pins -3- of retaining tabs -4- from body ⇒ page 167 .

– Disengage hooks of gas generator -6- from body ⇒ page 167 .

– Take curtain airbag -1- out of vehicle.

❑ Installing:

WARNING

Always observe correct sequence for installing curtain airbag.

Note

♦ *Renew self-locking nuts and bolts when performing assembly work.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

♦ *Threaded holes for bolts must always be cleaned (e.g. with a thread tap).*

– Engage hooks of gas generator -6- on body ⇒ page 159 .

– Secure bolts -5- on gas generator -6-.

– Press locating pins -3- of retaining tabs -4- into body ⇒ page 159 .

– Tighten nuts -2- in sequence -A-, -B-, -X- and -C ... E-, -Y-.

– When plugging in connector at gas generator -6- make sure you hear it click into place on the gas generator ⇒ page 159 .

– Install moulded headliner ⇒ page 320 .

WARNING

Make sure nobody is in the vehicle when the battery is being connected.

– Connect battery earth strap.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the accuracy, completeness, timeliness, reliability or suitability of the information.

– Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

2 - Nut: 3 Nm

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 7x

3 - Locating pin

- ❑ For locating retaining tab
- ❑ 10x

4 - Retaining tab with locating pin

- ❑ For securing curtain airbag to body

5 - Bolts, 6 Nm

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Threaded holes for bolts must always be cleaned (e.g. with a thread tap).

6 - Gas generator

- ❑ With hook for engaging in body

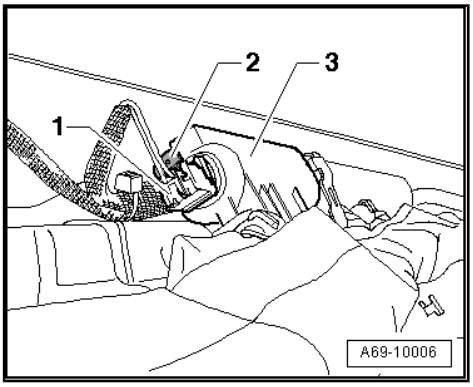
Unplugging and plugging in connector on gas generator

Procedure

– Unplug electrical connector.

– To do so, pull connector locking element -2- as far as the stop. This will release the electrical connector -1- which can then be unplugged.

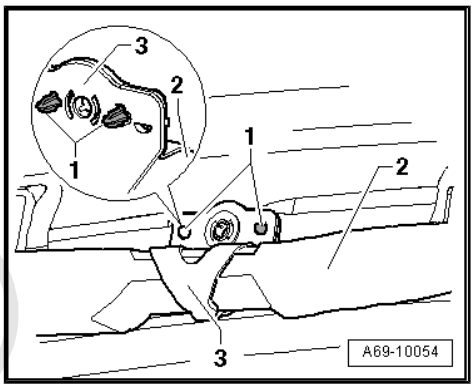
– When plugging in electrical connector -1-, make sure it engages audibly at gas generator -3-.



Unclipping and pressing in airbag retaining tab with locating pin

Procedure

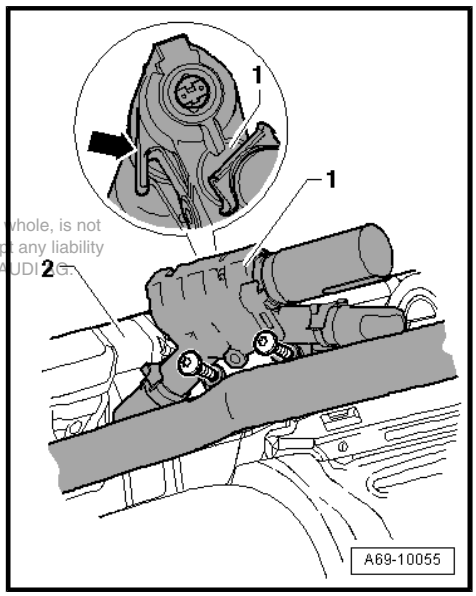
– Press locating pins -1- of retaining tabs -3- for airbag -2- into body.



Disengaging and engaging gas generator

Procedure

– When installing make sure hook -arrow- on gas generator -1- engages correctly on body -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

14 Servicing crash sensors for airbags

⇒ “14.1 Precautions to take when handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbags (front)”, page 168

⇒ “14.2 Overview of fitting locations”, page 168

⇒ “14.3 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor for driver side G283 and front airbag crash sensor for front passenger side G284 ”, page 169

⇒ “14.4 Removing and installing side airbag crash sensor on driver side G179 and side airbag crash sensor on front passenger side G180 (front, pressure sensor)”, page 171

⇒ “14.5 Removing and installing rear side airbag crash sensor on driver side G256 and rear side airbag crash sensor on front passenger side G257 (curtain airbag)”, page 173

14.1 Precautions to take when handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbags (front)

The crash sensors for side airbags are very sensitive to pressure changes and must therefore be handled with great care. Please note the following:

- Always observe correct installation position: ONLY install in correct fitting location in door. The installation position is predetermined by the locating pin on the crash sensor. If the crash sensor is installed in an incorrect position, water could ingress and the sensor may be wrongly directed.
- Protect crash sensor from jolts and knocks. Crash sensors which have been dropped must NOT be used. When working on the body in the area of the doors ALWAYS remove crash sensors.
- The crash sensor is adapted to the air volume inside the door: If the door is deformed, causing the air volume in the door to be reduced, the function of the crash sensor will be impaired.
- Make sure the crash sensor is not badly soiled: Do not use compressed air near the crash sensor. Protect the crash sensors against shavings when filing or drilling (e.g. when retrofitting loudspeakers in the doors). Do NOT use cavity sealant or spray oil in the area of the crash sensors.
- Protect against heat and cold: Protect crash sensor against heat, e.g. when painting or carrying out other body work. The crash sensors must NOT be subjected to temperatures lower than -40 °C (e.g. must NOT be transported in non-climatised aeroplane hold).
- The crash sensor must be protected against moisture, both during storage and when installing.

Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor may not function correctly. Please note the following:

- Soundproofing mat, cover, loudspeaker and door trim must be correctly installed.
- Renew insulating mat if adhesive bead is damaged or soiled.
- Renew retaining clips and/or expanding nuts if these are damaged and cannot ensure that door trim is correctly seated.

14.2 Overview of fitting locations

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Front airbag crash sensor for driver side -G283- and front airbag crash sensor for front passenger side -G284-

- ❑ Fitting location: on left/ right between headlight and radiator
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 169

2 - Side airbag crash sensor on driver side -G179- and side airbag crash sensor on front passenger side -G180- (front)

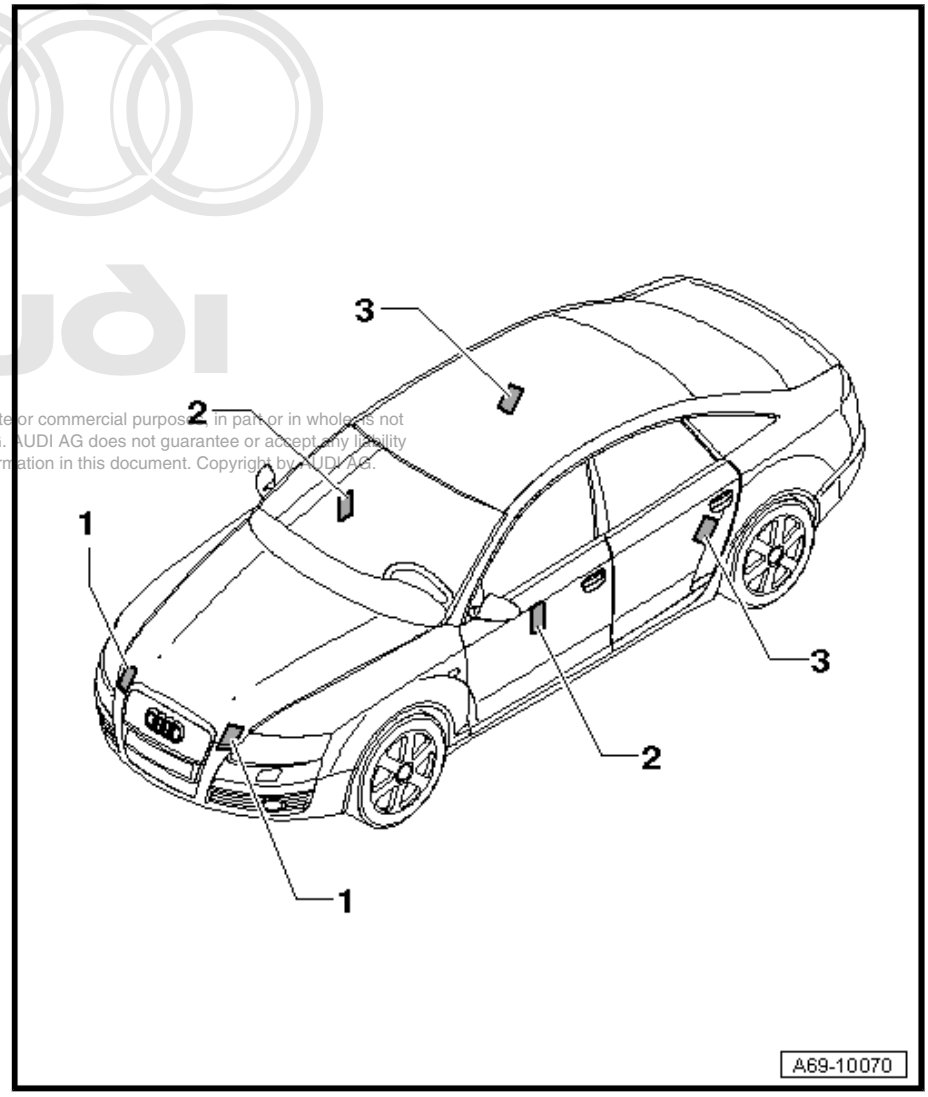
WARNING

Observe precautions for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbags (front) ⇒ page 168 .

- ❑ Fitting location: in doors (front), approx. 25 cm below window ledge
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 171

3 - Rear side airbag crash sensor on driver side -G256- and rear side airbag crash sensor on front passenger side -G257- (rear, curtain airbag)

- ❑ Fitting location: on rear wheel housing below sill/pillar trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 173

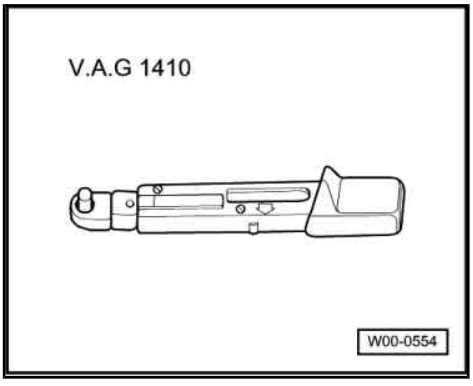


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

14.3 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor for driver side -G283- and front airbag crash sensor for front passenger side -G284-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1410-



WARNING

Observe safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

– Switch on ignition.

Note

Contrary to the description in "Disconnecting and connecting the battery" (⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27) the battery must, when removing the airbag, be disconnected with the ignition switched on.

– Disconnect battery earth strap ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

– Open bonnet.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Crash sensor for front airbag (left-side)

– Press wiring harness to the side.

Crash sensor for front airbag (right-side)

– Remove air duct.

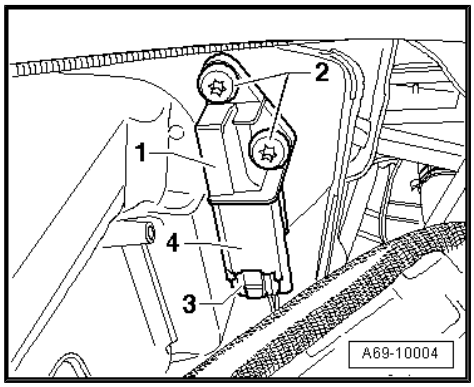
Continuation for both crash sensors:

– Press part -3- (brown colour) of connector -4- towards crash sensor and release connector.

– Unplug connector -4- (yellow colour) from crash sensor -1-.

– Unscrew bolts -2- (2x).

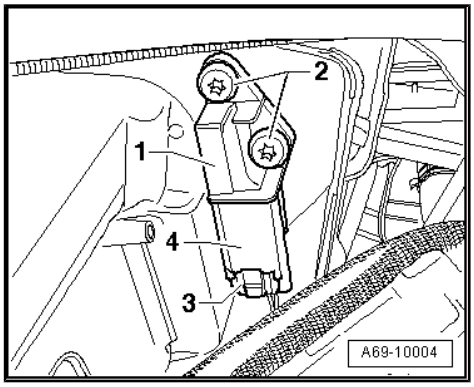
– Detach crash sensor for front airbag -1-.



Installing

– Install crash sensor -1- in reverse order of removal.

– When plugging in connector -4-, make sure it is properly engaged with crash sensor -1-.



WARNING

Make sure nobody is in the vehicle when the battery is being connected.

– Connect battery earth strap.

– Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, use vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- to interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate event memory.

Tightening torque

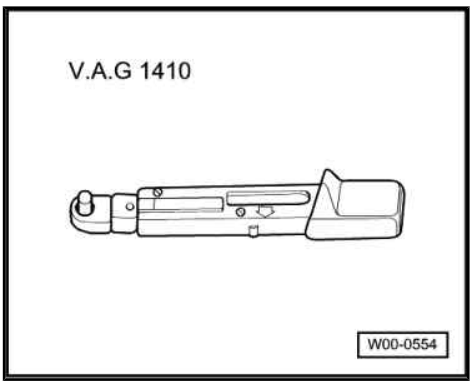
Tightening torque	Nm
Crash sensor to front end	9

14.4 Removing and installing side airbag crash sensor on driver side -G179- and side airbag crash sensor on front passenger side -G180- (front, pressure sensor)

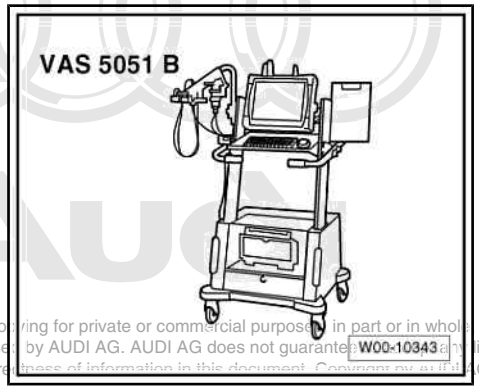
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1410-



♦ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Connector

Version I

❑ Unplugging connector: Press locking element -3- in direction of -arrow- and detach crash sensor -2-.

Version II

❑ Unplugging connector ⇒ page 173

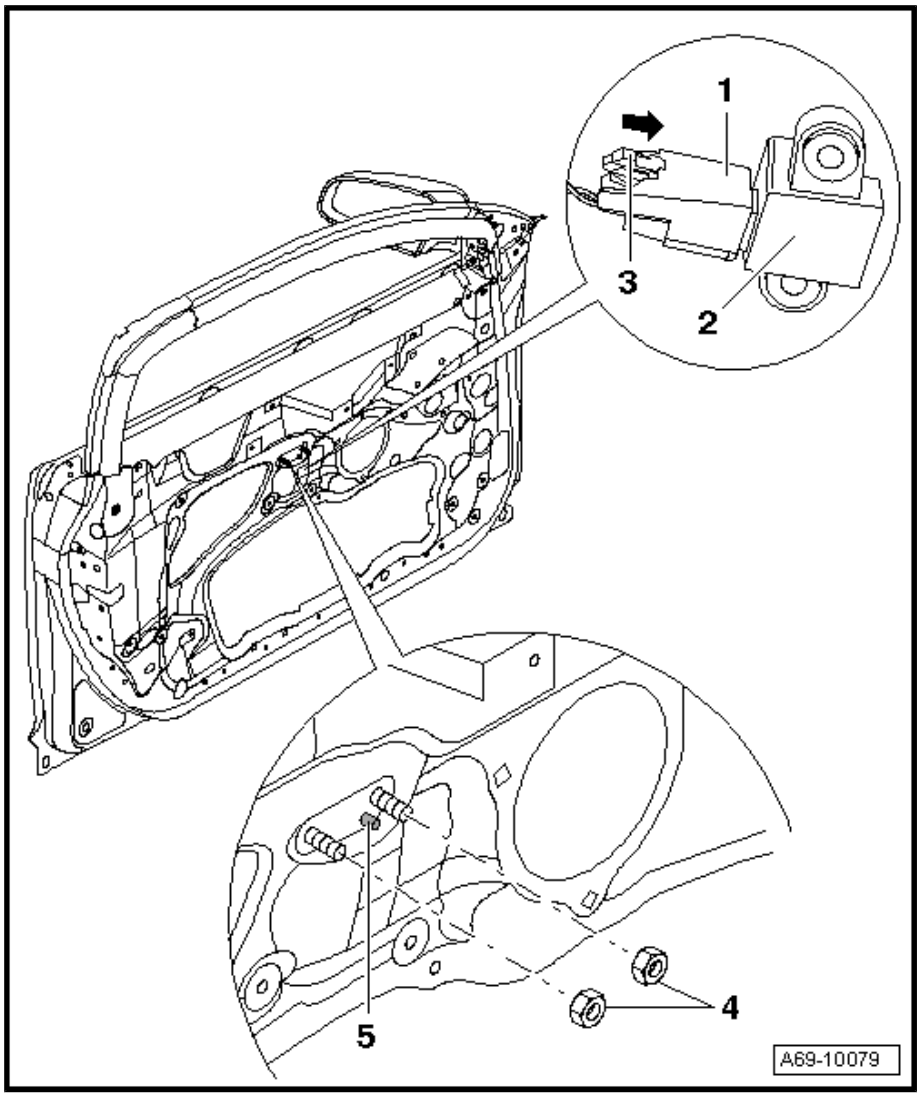
2 - Crash sensor (pressure sensor) for side airbag (front)

♦ Removing

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .
– Remove door trim ⇒ page 184 .
– Remove loudspeaker in door ⇒ Rep. gr. 91 .
– Reach through opening for loudspeaker, feel for crash sensor -2- and unplug electrical connector ⇒ Item 1 (page 172) .
– Carefully pull off insulation until nuts -4- can be accessed.
– Unscrew nuts and detach crash sensor.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



– Make sure that locating element -5- engages properly in door shell.

– Press insulation onto door shell.

Note

- *Ensure insulation is properly sealed when it is installed, otherwise crash sensor (pressure sensor) may not function correctly.*
- *Renew insulation if adhesive bead is damaged or soiled.*

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

Make sure nobody is in the vehicle when the battery is being connected.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Connect battery earth strap.

– Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, use vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- to interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate event memory.

3 - Locking element

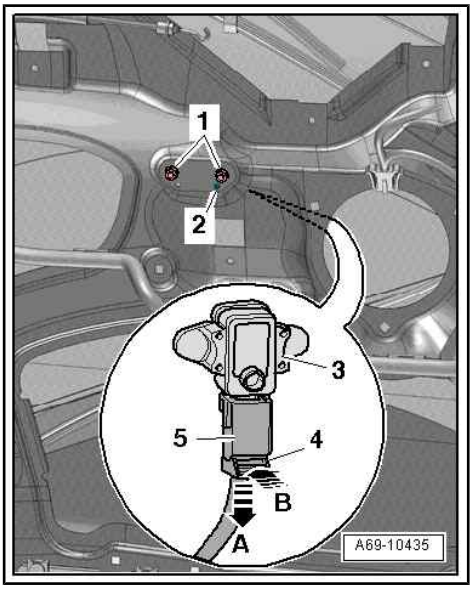
4 - Nuts (2x)

❑ Tightening torque: 4 Nm

5 - Locating element

Unplugging connector at crash sensor - version II

– Pull out catch -4- downwards -arrow A-, press down catch -arrow B- and unplug electrical connector -5- at crash sensor -3-.



Note

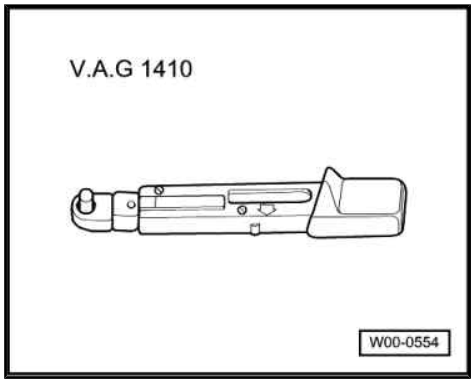
Ignore -items 1 and 2-.

14.5 Removing and installing rear side airbag crash sensor on driver side -G256- and

rear side airbag crash sensor on front passenger side -G257- (curtain airbag)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench -V.A.G 1410-



Removing

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

– Switch on ignition.

Note

Contrary to the description in "Disconnecting and connecting the battery" (⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27) the battery must, when removing the airbag, be disconnected with the ignition switched on.

– Disconnect battery earth strap ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

Vehicles with fixed backrest:

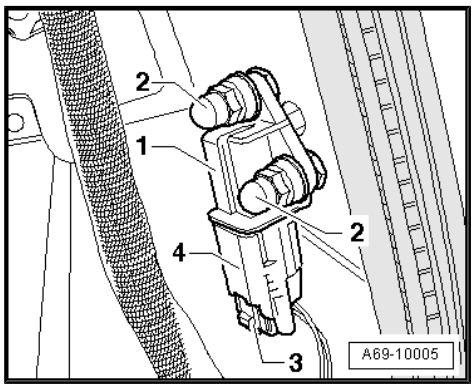
– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .
– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 562 .

Vehicles with split backrest:

– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .
– Remove side airbag (rear) ⇒ page 150 .

Continuation for all vehicles - version I:

– Press part -3- (green colour) of connector -4- towards crash sensor and release connector.
– Unplug connector -4- (yellow colour) from crash sensor -1-.
– Remove cap nuts -2- (2x).
– Detach crash sensor for rear side airbag (curtain airbag) -1- from studs.

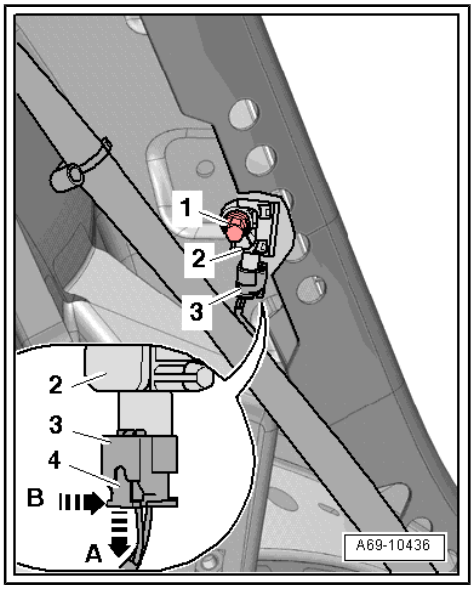


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Continuation for all vehicles - version II:

– Pull out catch -4- downwards -arrow A-, press down catch -arrow B- and unplug electrical connector -3- at crash sensor.

– Unscrew nut -1- and detach crash sensor -2- for side airbag (rear) from studs.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

Make sure nobody is in the vehicle when the battery is being connected.

– Connect battery earth strap.

– Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, use vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- to interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate event memory.

Tightening torque

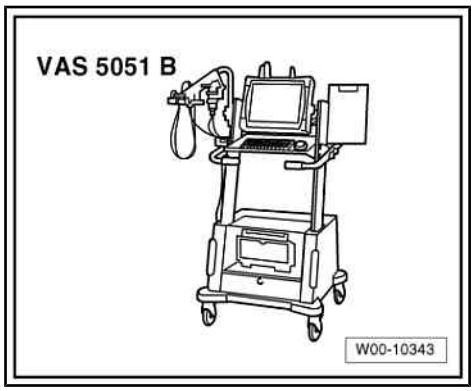
Tightening torque	Nm
Crash sensor to body	9

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

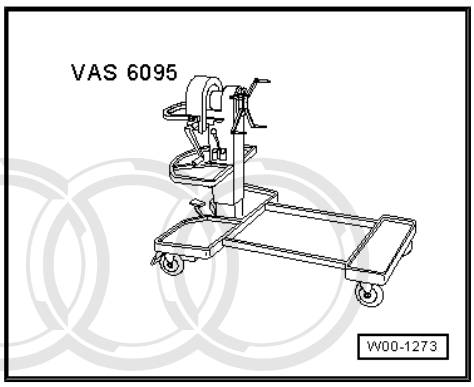
15 Belt-fastened recognition

Special tools and workshop equipment required

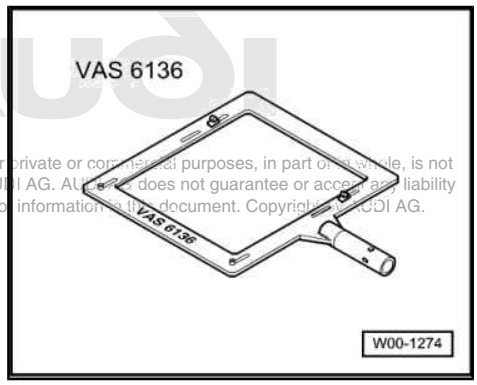
- Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B-



- Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



- Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © AUDI AG.

Removing

Note

Seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) -G128- is only fitted on passenger side.

WARNING

Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ***⇒ page 110*** ***.***

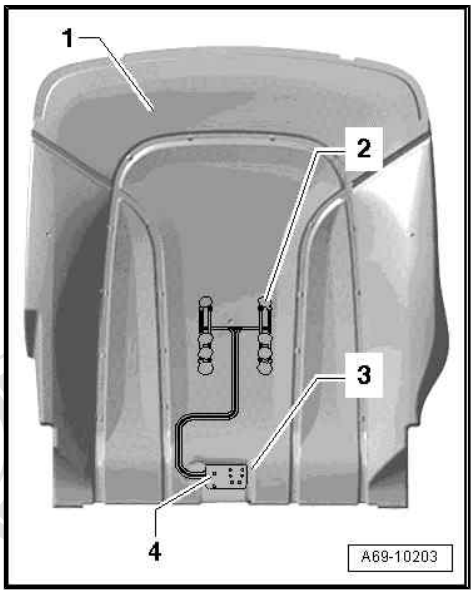
– Remove front passenger seat
⇒ “1.1 Removing and installing front seat (standard seat)”, page 332 or

⇒ “2.1 Removing and installing front seat (seat with seat memory, seat with electric adjustment)”, page 379 .

Note

Detach padding from backrest just far enough to gain access to the seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) -G128- -2-.

– Remove seat pan cover and padding
⇒ “1.1 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding (standard seat)”, page 566 or
⇒ “2.1 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding (standard seat)”, page 580
– Unplug connector of seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) -G128- -2-.
– Carefully disconnect seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) -G128- -2- from seat padding -1-.



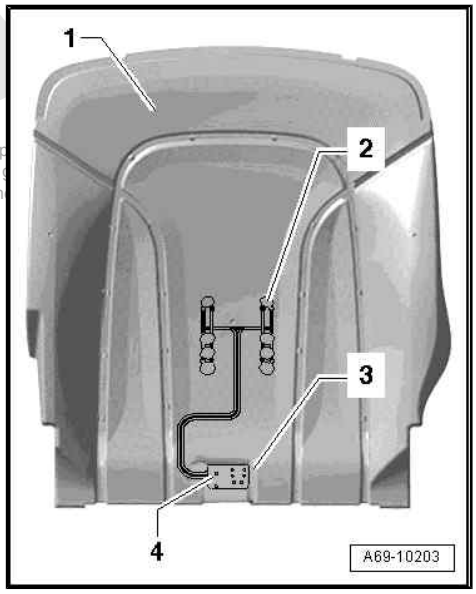
Installing

WARNING

Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

– Position printed circuit -4- of seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) -G128- -2- in cut-out -3- in seat padding -1-.
– Align seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) -G128- -2- on seat padding -1- as shown in illustration.
– Peel off protective film and stick seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) -G128- -2- onto seat padding -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purp
does not
information in this docum

16 Servicing seat occupancy recognition

⇒ “16.1 Removing and installing seat occupancy recognition (USA)”, page 178

16.1 Removing and installing seat occupancy recognition (USA)

Caution

Observe safety precautions for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 , side airbags ⇒ page 111 and seat occupancy recognition ⇒ page 112 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

The replacement part (service kit) for seat occupied recognition (USA) is already pre-calibrated and the components must NOT be disconnected. The service kit consists of:

Note

The seat occupied recognition system is only fitted on the front passenger's seat.

1 - Seat occupied recognition control unit -J706-

Removing

– Disconnect battery earth strap ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
– Remove front passenger's seat:

♦ Removing and installing front seat (standard seat) ⇒ page 332

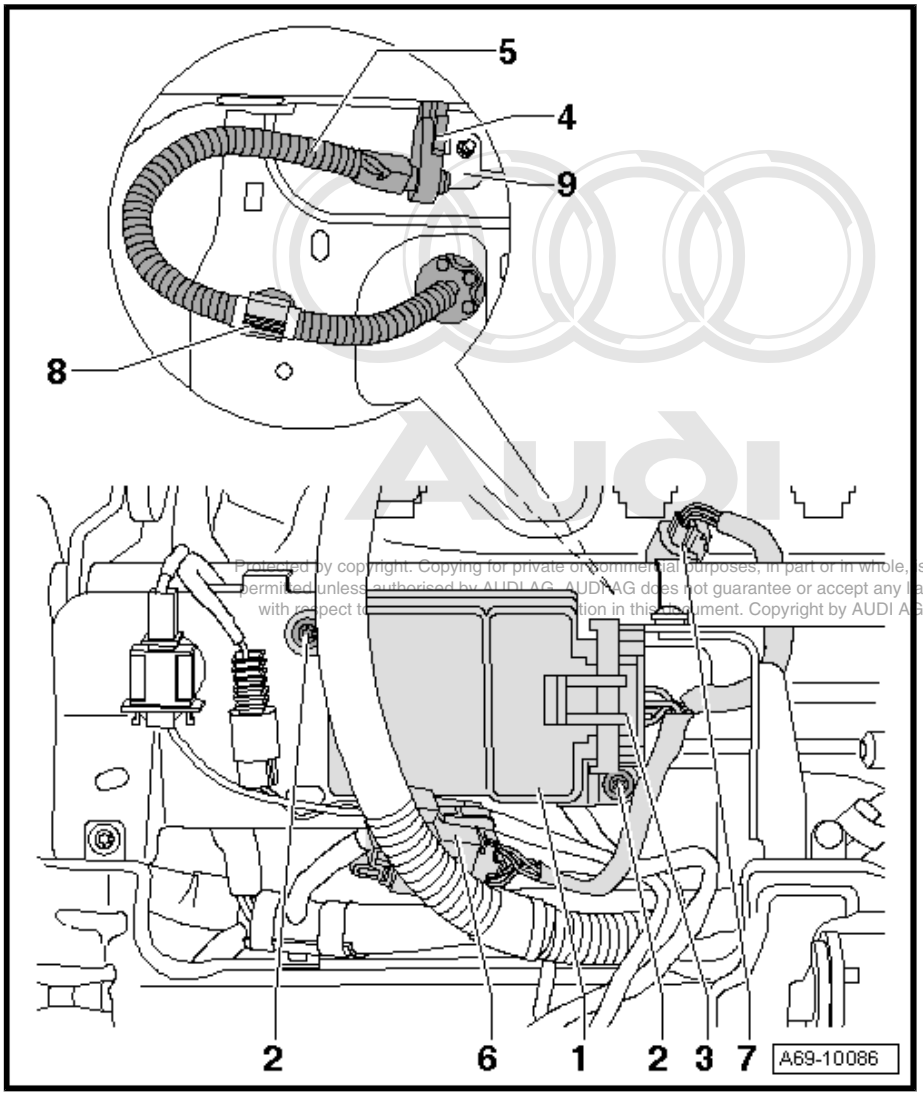
♦ Removing and installing front seat (seat with seat memory, seat with electric adjustment - standard seat/ sports seat) ⇒ page 379

♦ Removing and installing front seat (S6 - seat with seat memory, seat with electric adjustment) ⇒ page 446

– Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
– Remove backrest:

♦ Removing and installing front seat backrest (standard seat) ⇒ page 344

♦ Removing and installing front seat backrest (seat with seat memory, seat with electric adjustment - standard seat/sports seat) ⇒ page 388



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removing and installing front seat backrest (S6 - seat with seat memory, seat with electric adjustment) ⇒ page 476

– Unplug connector -6-.
– Remove bolts -2- (2x).
– Remove seat cover and padding:

♦ Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding (standard seat) ⇒ page 566

♦ Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding (seat with seat memory, seat with electric adjustment - standard seat) ⇒ page 580

♦ Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding (seat with seat memory, seat with electric adjustment - sports seat) ⇒ page 582

♦ Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding (S6 - seat with seat memory, seat with electric adjustment) ⇒ page 595

– Unfasten guide clip -8-.

Caution

Do NOT unplug connectors -3- and -7-.

– Push pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition -G452- -4- to side off retaining bracket -9-.

2 - Bolts

- 2.5 Nm

3 - Connector at seat occupied recognition control unit -J706-

- Do NOT unplug under any circumstances.

4 - Pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition -G452-

5 - Pressure hose

6 - Connector between service kit and seat wiring harness

7 - Connector at pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition -G452-

- Do NOT unplug under any circumstances.

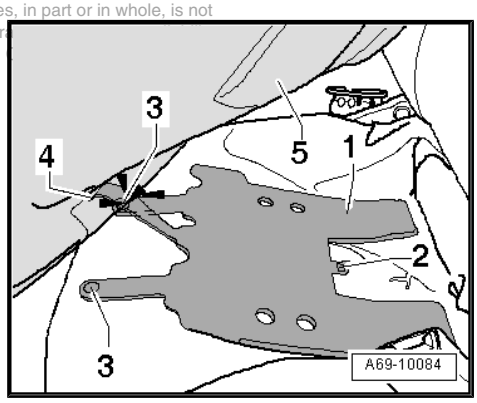
8 - Guide clip

9 - Retaining bracket

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guar with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Removing service kit

– Fold up padding -5-.



Note

- *The padding is part of the service kit.*
- *Clip -4- must not be disengaged.*
- *The solid foam insert in the fleece is not part of the scope of delivery of the service kit.*

– Remove clips -2- and -3- (2x).

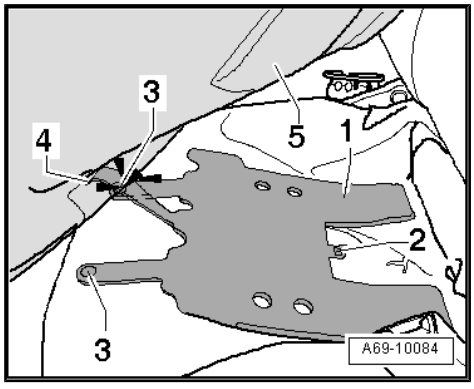
– Carefully pull up seat occupied sensor mat -1- with padding -5-. In doing so, guide pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition -G452- and seat occupied recognition control unit -J706- through seat pan without unplugging connectors.

– Detach complete service kit.

WARNING

It is important that you do not bend or kink the pressure hose or the seat occupied sensor mat -1- while you are working.

Installing service kit



Note

The solid foam insert in the fleece is not part of the scope of delivery of the service kit. For this reason, please use the "old" solid foam insert from the fabric layer you have removed.

– Working from above, guide pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition -G452- and seat occupied recognition control unit -J706- through seat pan without unplugging connectors.

– Pull fabric layer between seat pan and seat occupied sensor mat -1- straight so there are no creases.

– Secure seat occupied sensor mat -1- using clips -2- and -3- (2x).

1 - Seat occupied recognition control unit -J706-

Installing

– Attach pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition -G452- -4- to retaining bracket -9-.
– Secure seat occupied recognition control unit -J706- with bolts -2- (2x, 2.5 Nm).
– Plug in connector -6-.
– Install cover for seat pan, making sure that all upholstery clips are engaged / installed in their pre-removal positions:

- Seats with manual adjustment: standard seat ⇒ page 566 , sports seat ⇒ page 568 .
- Seats with electric adjustment: standard seat ⇒ page 580 , sports seat ⇒ page 582 .

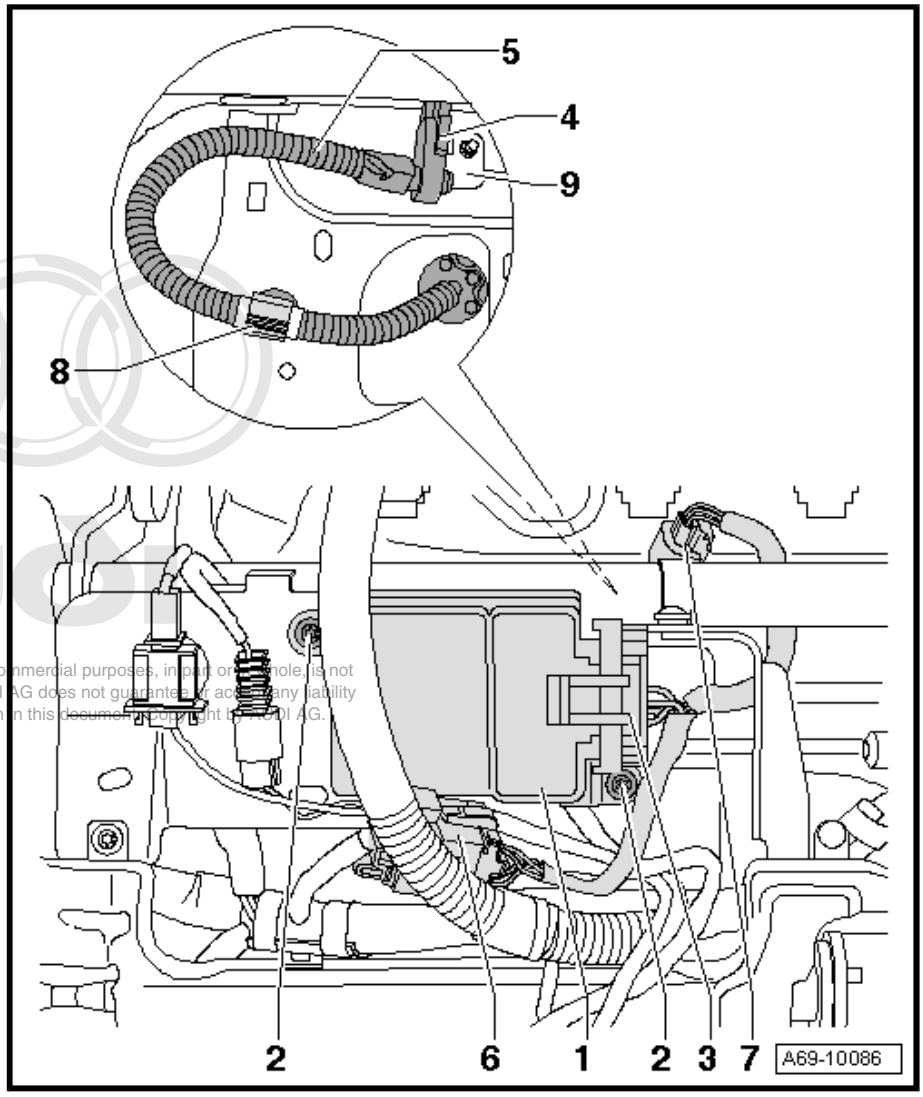
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

– After installing front passenger seat, select function “Airbag” in “Guided Fault Finding” ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

After installing a new service kit and after carrying out any repairs on the front passenger seat:

♦ Basic setting for seat occupied recognition control unit -J706-



2 - Bolts

♦ 2.5 Nm

3 - Connector at seat occupied recognition control unit -J706-

♦ Do NOT unplug under any circumstances.

4 - Pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition -G452-

5 - Pressure hose

WARNING

It is important that you do not bend or kink the pressure hose -5- or the seat occupied sensor mat during installation.

– Secure pressure hose to guide clip -8- at marking provided.

6 - Connector between service kit and seat wiring harness

7 - Connector at pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition -G452-

♦ Do NOT unplug under any circumstances.

8 - Guide clip

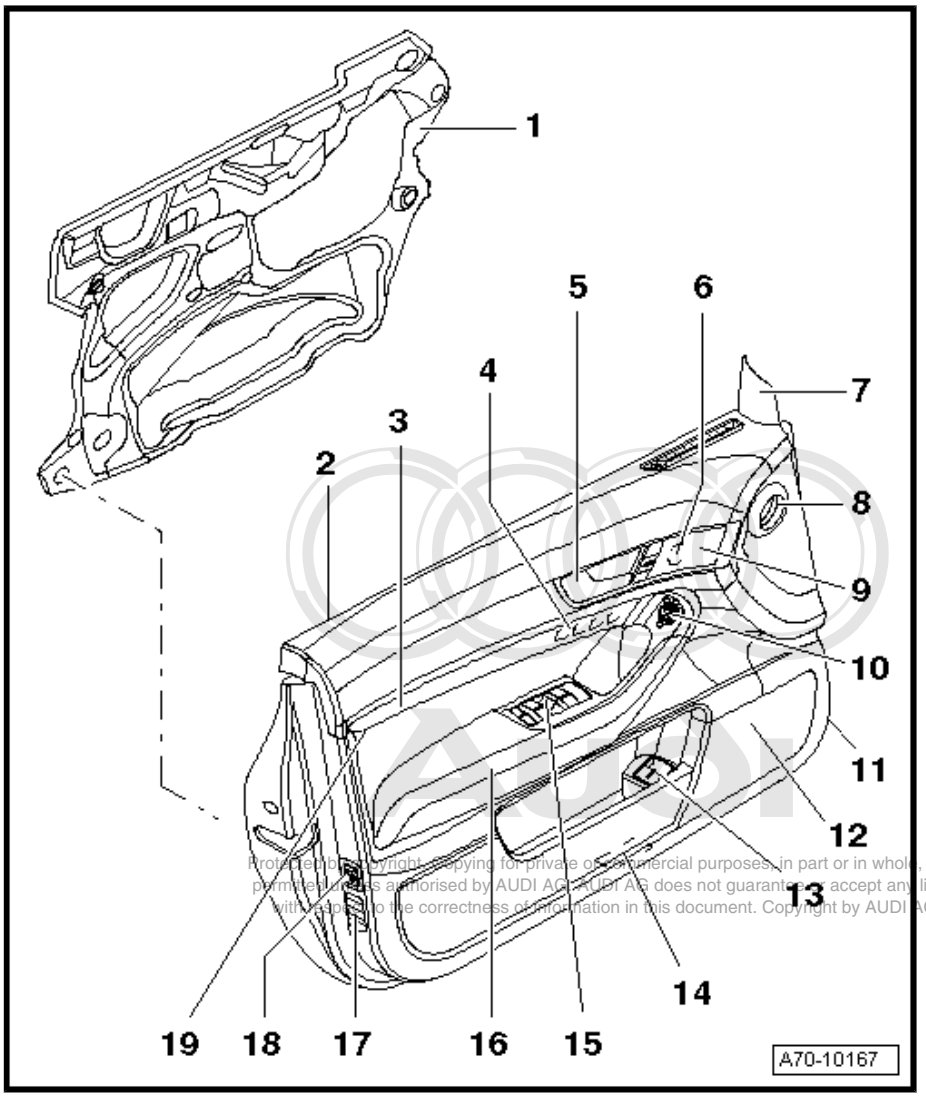
9 - Retaining bracket

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

70 – Trim, insulation

1 Door trim (front)

1.1 Overview of fitting locations



1 - Removing and installing insulation ⇒ page 187

2 - Removing and installing door trim ⇒ page 184

3 - Removing and installing trim panel ⇒ page 194

4 - Removing and installing operating unit for seat memory ⇒ page 193

5 - Removing and installing interior door handle ⇒ page 192

6 - Removing and installing treble loudspeaker ⇒ page 192

7 - Removing and installing trim for exterior mirror ⇒ page 193

8 - Removing and installing rubber ring for vent ⇒ page 195

9 - Removing and installing treble loudspeaker trim ⇒ page 194

10 - Removing and installing mirror adjustment switch ⇒ page 190

11 - Removing and installing frame for bass reflex duct ⇒ page 195

12 - Removing and installing trim for bass loudspeaker ⇒ page 196

13 - Removing and installing rear lid release switch and tank flap release switch ⇒ page 193

14 - Removing and installing entry light ⇒ page 195

15 - Removing and installing window regulator switch ⇒ page 191

16 - Removing and installing armrest ⇒ page 189

17 - Removing and installing door warning light ⇒ page 194

18 - Removing and installing switch for anti-theft alarm ⇒ page 193

19 - Removing and installing light strip ⇒ page 194

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.2 Overview of wiring in door trim

1 - Wiring to door control unit

2 - Wiring to light strip

3 - Wiring to anti-theft alarm light

4 - Wiring to central locking switch (driver side only)

5 - Wiring to door handle light

6 - Wiring to operating unit for seat memory

7 - Wiring to window regulator switch

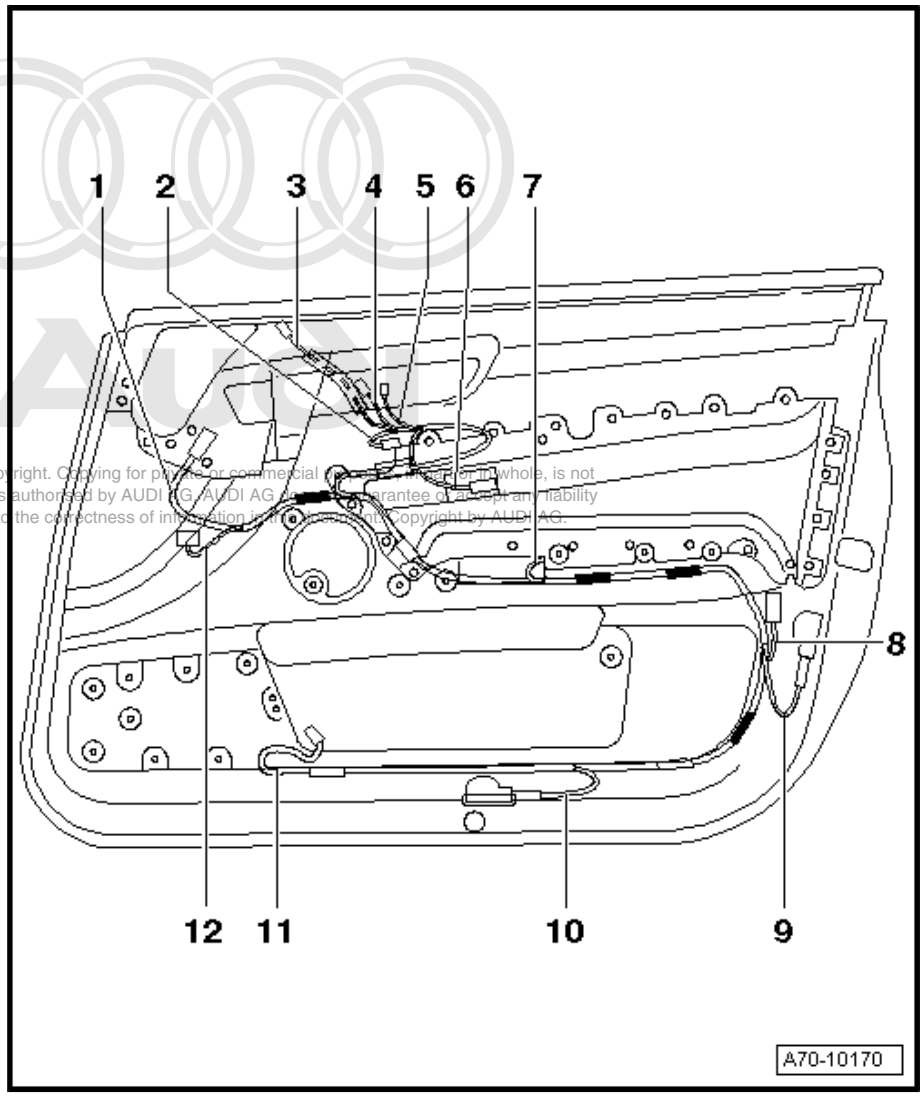
8 - Wiring to door warning light

9 - Wiring to switch for anti-theft alarm system

10 - Wiring to footwell light

11 - Wiring to rear lid release switch

12 - Wiring to mirror adjustment switch

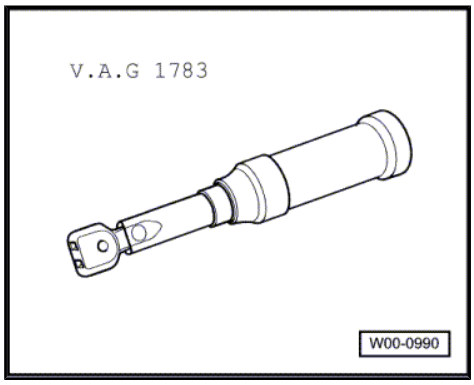


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.3 Removing and installing door trim (front)

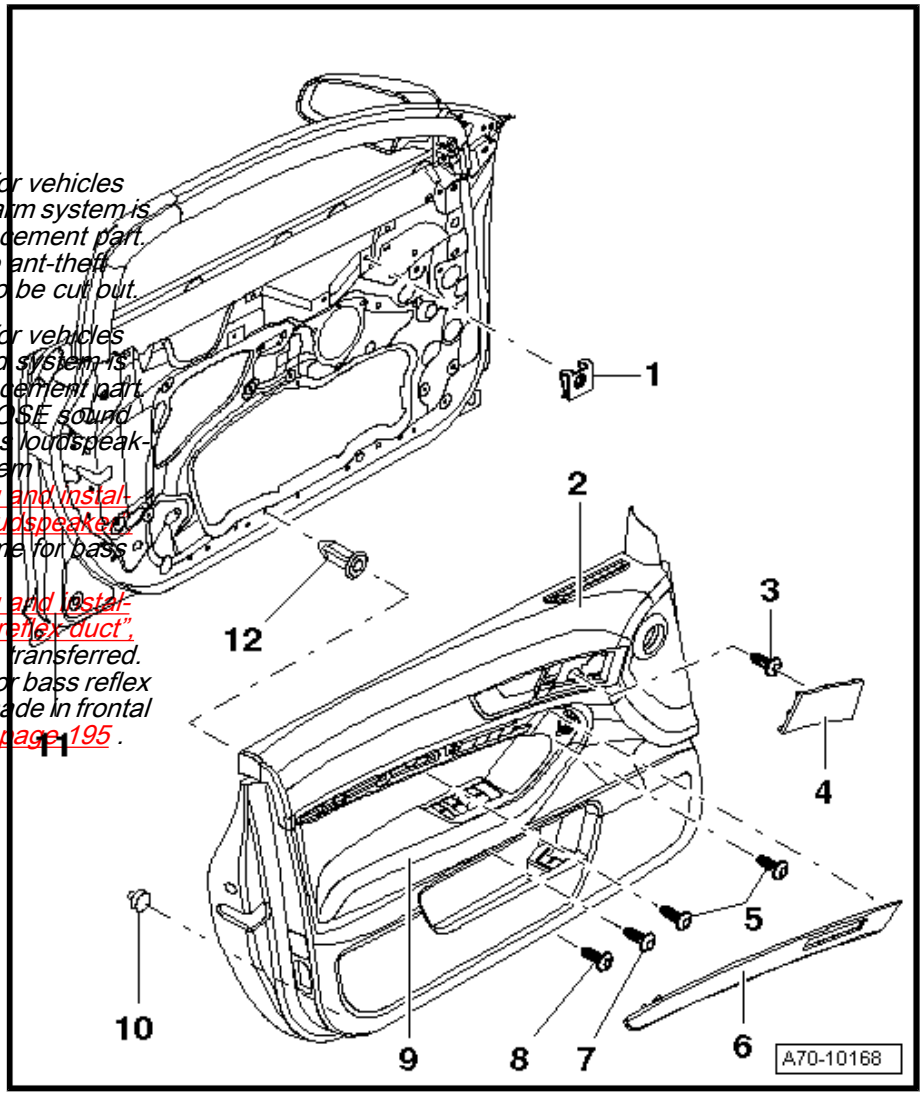
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench -V.A.G 1783-



1 - Speed nuts (4x)

2 - Door trim



Note

- *Only the door trim for vehicles without anti-theft alarm system is available as a replacement part. The opening for the ant-theft alarm system has to be cut out.*
- *Only the door trim for vehicles with standard sound system is available as a replacement part. For vehicles with BOSE sound system, trim for bass loudspeaker with BOSE emblem (⇒ "1.22 Removing and installing trim for bass loudspeaker", page 196) and frame for bass reflex duct (⇒ "1.20 Removing and installing frame for bass reflex duct", page 195) must be transferred. Opening for frame for bass reflex duct must also be made in frontal area of door trim ⇒ page 195 .*

♦ Removing

– Unclip trim for treble loudspeaker -4-.
– Remove trim panel -6- ⇒ page 194 .
– Remove bolts -3- and -5- (2x).
– Use a long screwdriver to remove bolt -7- on underside of armrest -9-.
– Unscrew bolt -8- on underside of door trim -2-.
– Unclip door trim -2- at bottom, starting from the outer side.
– Lift door trim -2- approx. 20 cm out of door shell -11-.
– Unplug connector to treble loudspeaker.
– Detach Bowden cable for interior door handle ⇒ page 186 .
– Unplug connector at door control unit ⇒ page 187 .

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

– Make sure the speed nuts -1- (4x) and expanding nuts -12- (4x) are clipped in securely.

– Make sure that retaining clips -10- (8x) are clipped into door trim. Renew any damaged clips ⇒ page 187

– If renewing door trim for vehicle with anti-theft alarm system: cut out an opening along inner marking. Distance to outer marking: approx. 4 mm.

– For vehicles with BOSE sound system and requiring renewal of door trim: If necessary, make opening for frame for bass reflex duct ⇒ page 195 install new bass loudspeaker trim with BOSE emblem ⇒ "1.22 Removing and installing trim for bass loudspeaker", page 196 and transfer frame for bass reflex duct ⇒ "1.20 Removing and installing frame for bass reflex duct", page 195 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Caution

On the Audi A6 Security, the door window will be damaged if the bolt -item 7- used is too long.

Always fit bolt -N 090 179 4- (16 mm).

– Secure door trim with bolts -3, 5, 7, 8-.

3 - Bolt

❑ Tightening torque: 2 Nm

4 - Trim for treble loudspeaker

5 - Bolts (2x)

❑ Tightening torque: 2 Nm

6 - Trim panel

7 - Bolt

❑ Tightening torque: 2 Nm

Caution

On the Audi A6 Security, there is a risk of damaging the door window if the bolt used is too long.

Always fit bolt -N 090 179 4- (16 mm).

8 - Bolt

❑ Tightening torque: 2 Nm

9 - Armrest

10 - Retaining clips (8x)

11 - Door shell

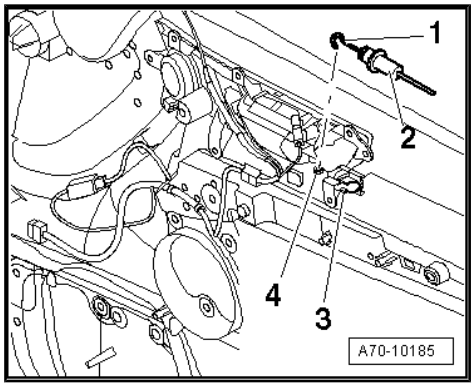
12 - Expanding nuts (4x)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Disengaging Bowden cable

– Pull Bowden cable -2- out of guide -3-.

– Disengage hook -1- on Bowden cable from eye -4-.

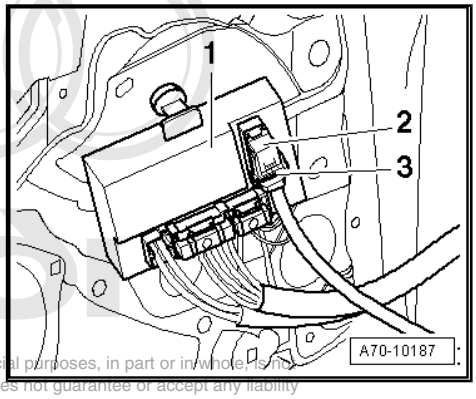


Note

When installing, make sure hook -4- is facing downwards.

Unplugging connector at door control unit

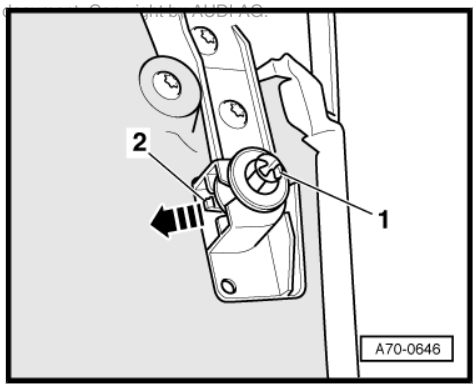
– Unfasten retaining clip -3- and unplug connector -2- from door control unit -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing retaining clips in door trim

– Press retaining tab -2- and pull out fastener -1- in direction of arrow.



1.4 Removing and installing insulation

1 - Door shell

2 - Insulation

Note

When detaching insulation -2- make sure it is not damaged.

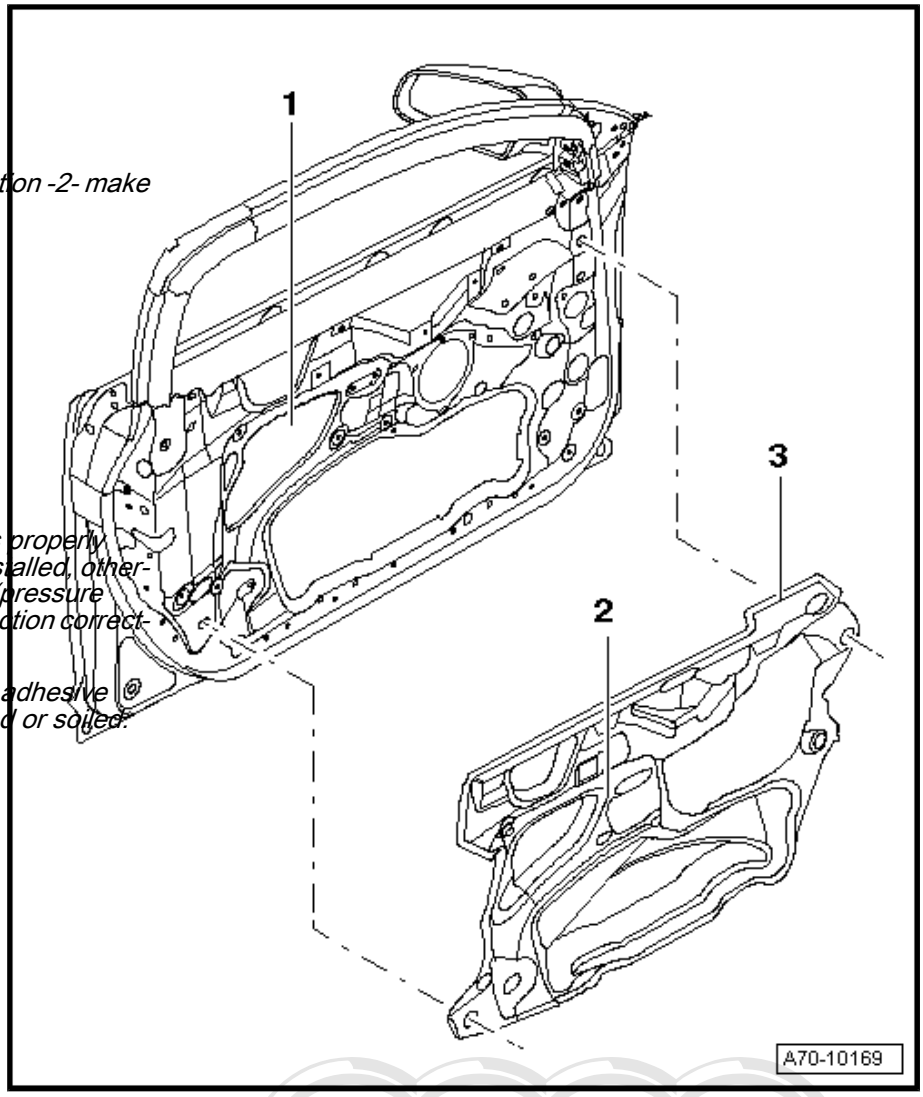
- Removing
  - Remove door trim ⇒ page 184 .
  - Carefully pull insulation -2- off door shell -1-.
- Installing

Note

- *Ensure insulation is properly sealed when it is installed, otherwise crash sensor (pressure sensor) may not function correctly.*
- *Renew insulation if adhesive bead -3- is damaged or soiled.*

  - Press insulation -2- onto door shell -1-.

3 - Adhesive bead (all round)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.5 Removing and installing armrest

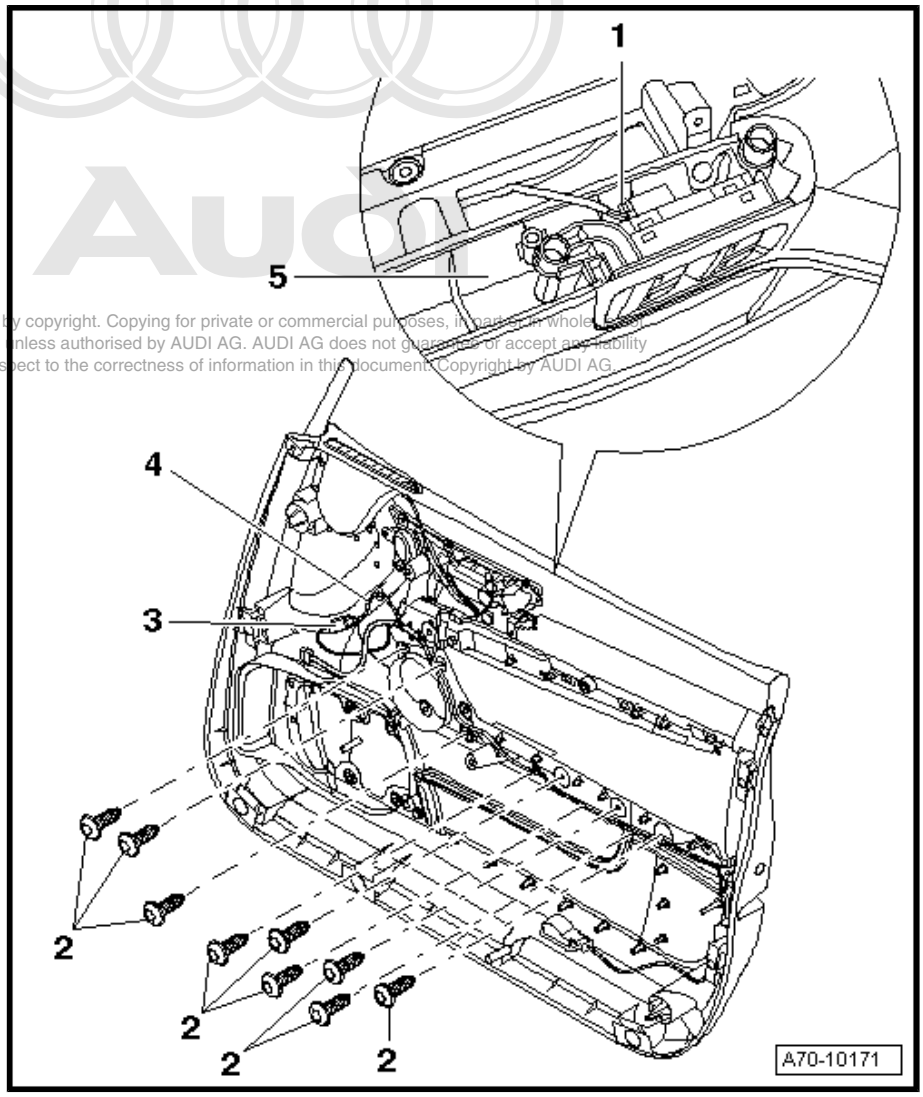
1 - Connector for window regulator switch

2 - Bolts (9x)

3 - Connector for mirror adjustment switch

4 - Wiring for mirror adjustment switch

5 - Armrest



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removing

- Remove door trim ⇒ page 184 .
- Slide electrical connector -3- to the side, out of holder.
- Unplug connector -3-.
- Unscrew bolts -2- (9x).
- Tilt armrest -5- downwards.
- Unplug connector -1-.
- Remove armrest and remove wire -4- through opening in door trim.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

1.6 Removing and installing mirror adjustment switch

1 - Cover

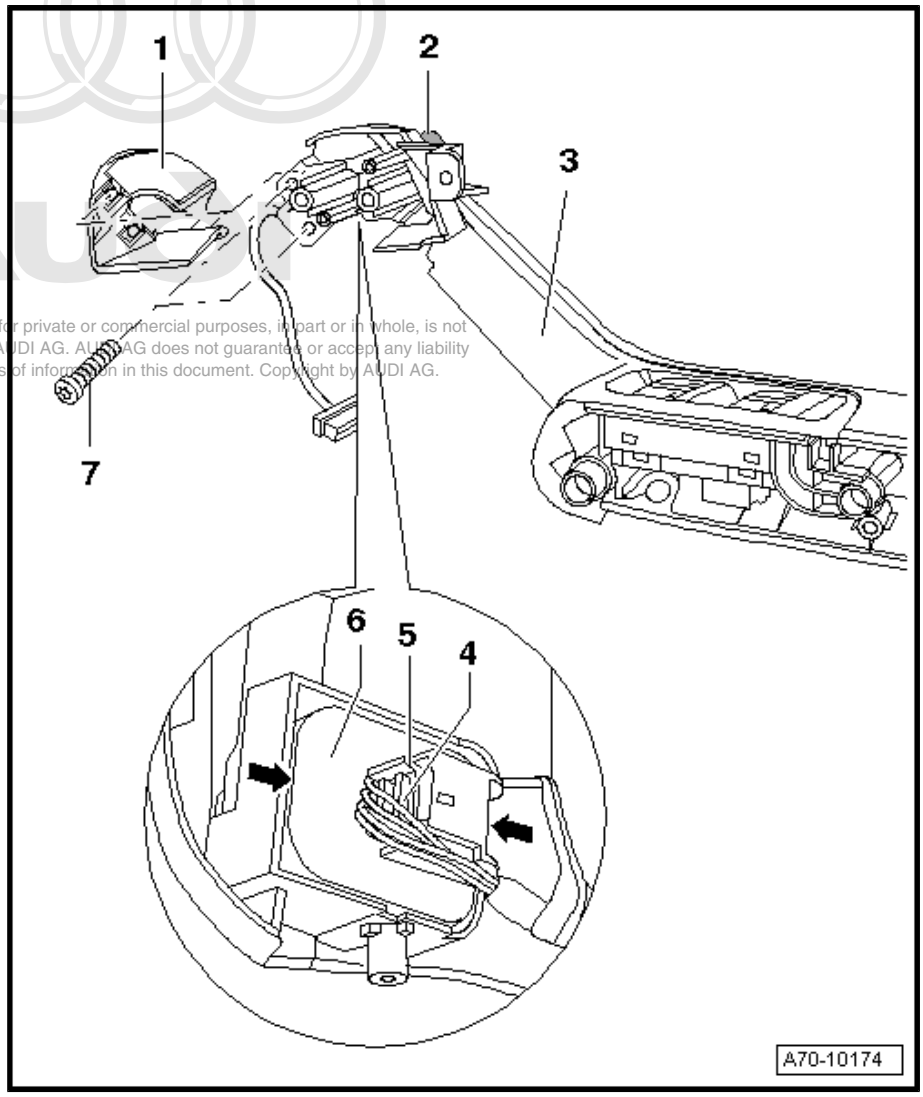
2 - Switch

3 - Armrest

4 - Lug

5 - Connector

6 - Mirror adjustment switch



- ♦ Removing
  - – Remove door trim ⇒ page 184 .
  - – Remove armrest -3- ⇒ page 189 .
  - – Remove bolts -7- (2x).
  - – Detach cover -1-.
  - – Press lug -4- and unplug connector -5-.
  - – Detach switch -2- on outer side of armrest.
  - – Use screwdriver to prise out switch -6- at positions marked with an arrow.
- ♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

7 - Bolts (2x)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.7 Removing and installing window regulator switch

1 - Armrest (lower section)

2 - Retaining tabs (4x)

3 - Window regulator switch

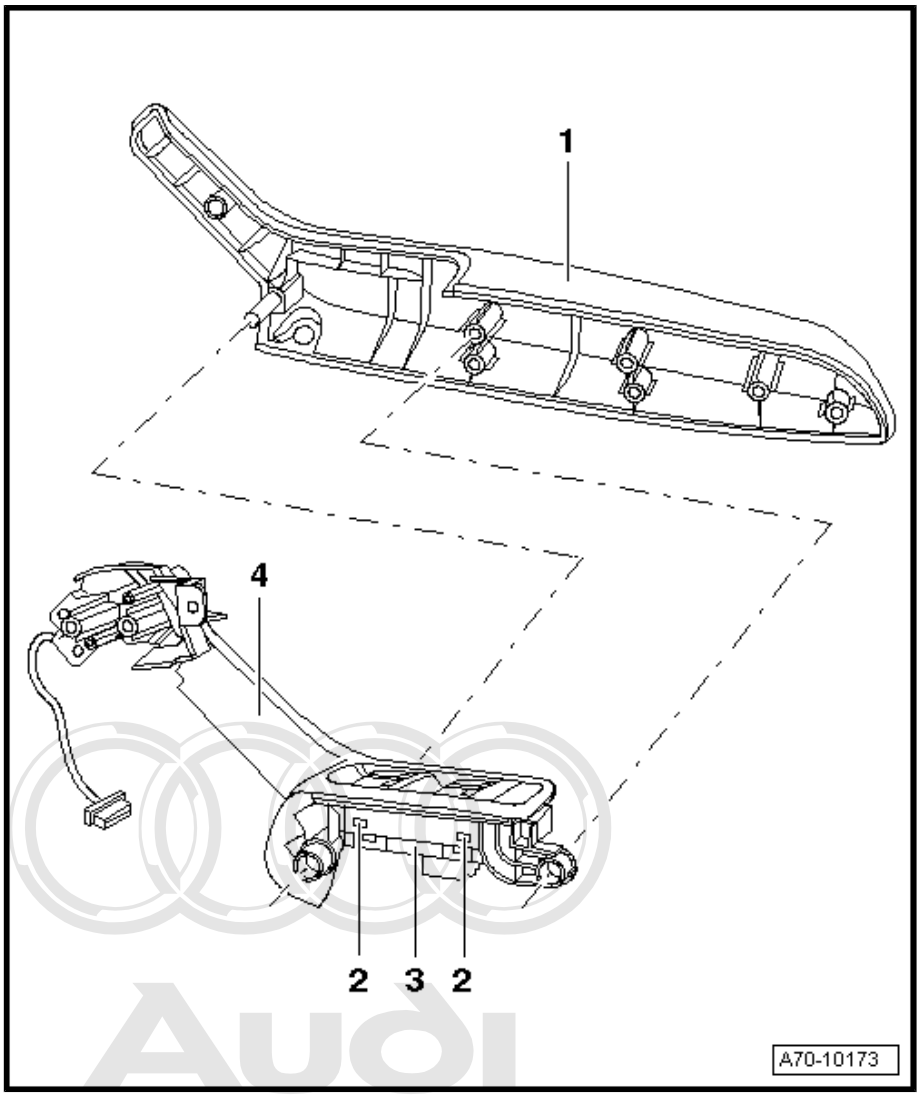
♦ Removing

– Remove door trim ⇒ page 184 .
– Remove armrest ⇒ page 189 .
– Detach upper section -4- from lower section -1-, keeping it as straight as possible.
– Use screwdriver to prise out window regulator switch -3- at front and rear at retaining tabs -2- (4x).

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

4 - Armrest (upper section)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.8 Removing and installing interior door handle

1 - Interior door handle

- ♦ Removing
  - – Remove door trim ⇒ page 184 .
  - – Unplug connector for door handle light -3-.
  - – Press lug on connector for central locking -2- and unplug connector.
  - – Unscrew bolts -4- (6x).
  - – Take out interior door handle -1- towards the inside.
- ♦ Installing

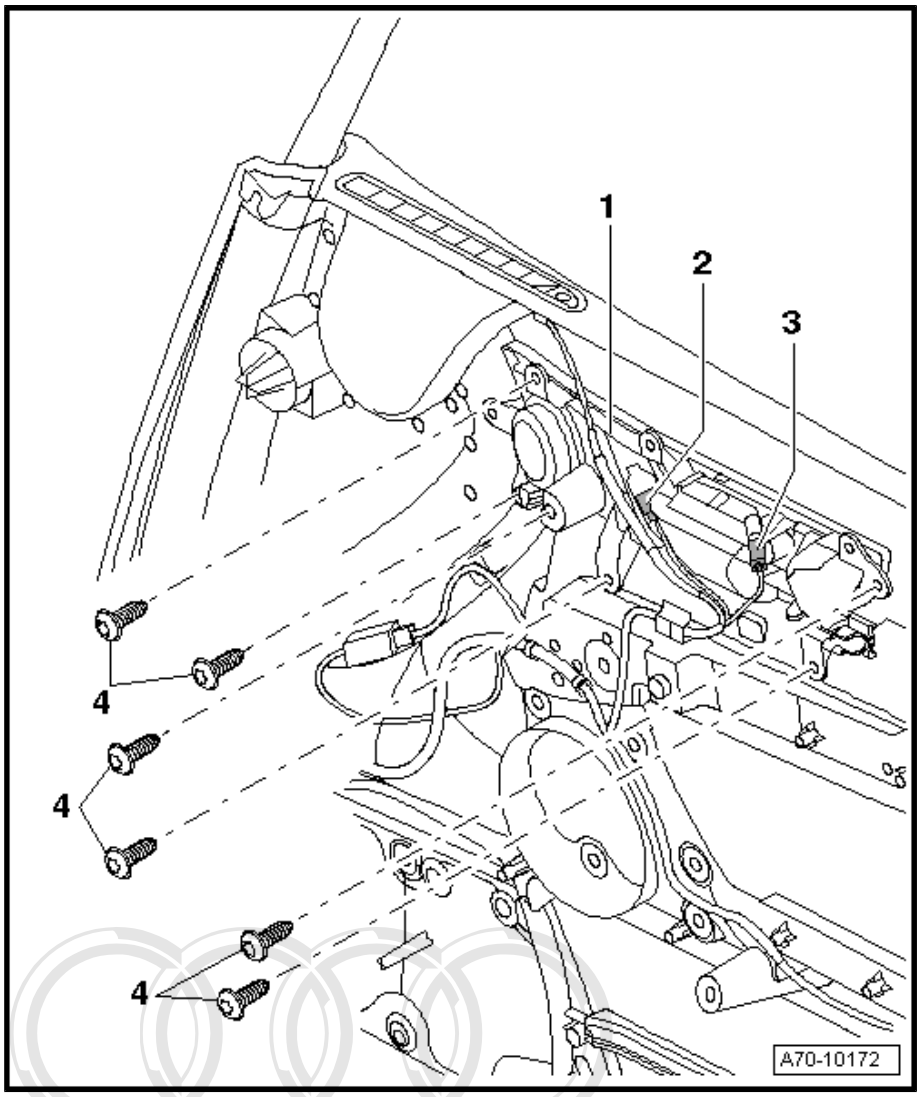
Install in reverse order of removal.

2 - Electrical connector for central locking

3 - Electrical connector for door handle light

4 - Bolts (6x)

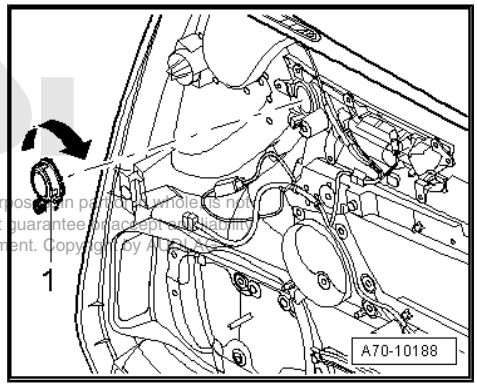
- ❑ Tightening torque: 1 Nm



1.9 Removing and installing treble loudspeaker

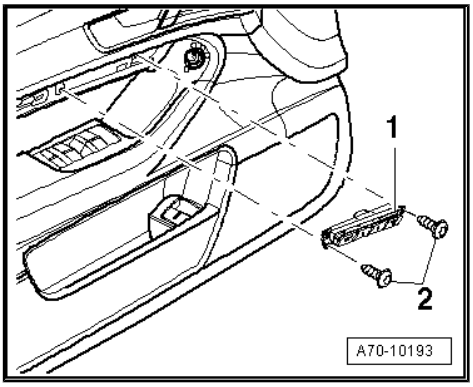
- ♦ Removing
- – Remove door trim ⇒ page 184 .
- – Turn treble loudspeaker -1- out of quick-release fastener in direction of arrow and remove treble loudspeaker.
- ♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.10 Removing and installing operating unit for seat memory



♦ Removing

– Remove bolts -2- (2x).

– Remove operating unit -1-.

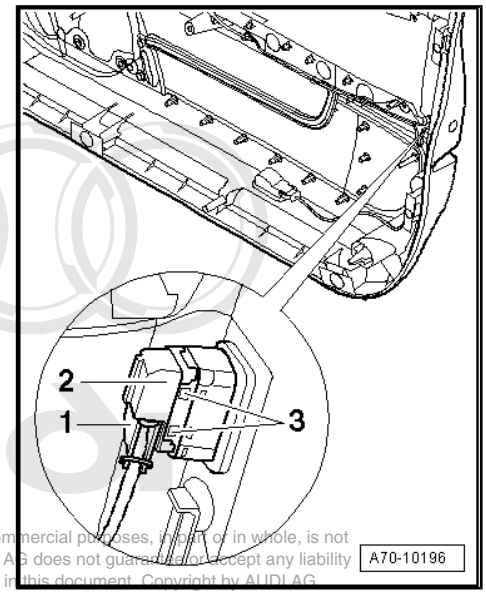
– Unplug electrical connector.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

♦ Tightening torque for bolts -2-: 1 Nm

1.11 Removing and installing switch for anti-theft alarm system



♦ Removing

– Remove door trim ⇒ page 184 .

– Unplug connector -1-.

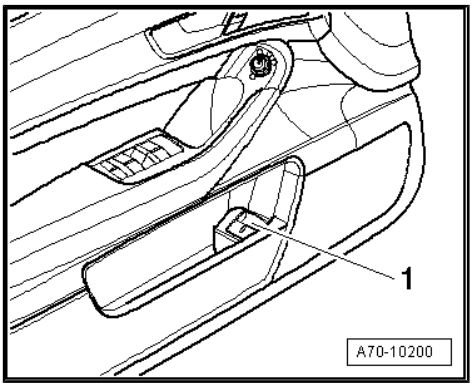
– Use screwdriver to prise out switch -2- at front and rear at lugs -3- (4x).

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.12 Removing and installing rear lid release switch



♦ Removing

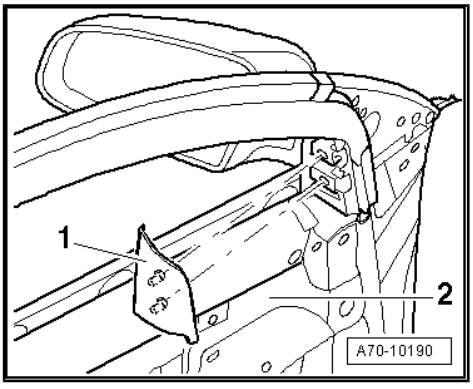
– Unclip rear lid release switch -1- from door trim.

– Pull rear lid release switch outwards with wiring and then unplug connector.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

1.13 Removing and installing trim for exterior mirror



♦ Removing

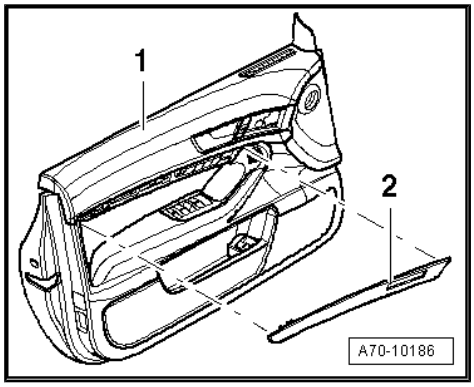
– Remove door trim ⇒ page 184 .

– Unclip cover -1- from door shell -2-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

1.14 Removing and installing trim panel



♦ Removing

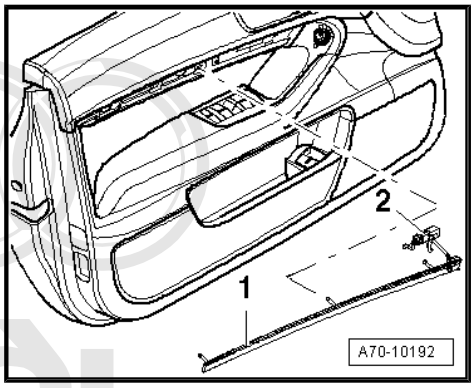
– Starting from front, unclip trim panel -2- at three points from door trim -1-.

– Pull trim strip as far towards rear as possible and unclip remaining clip on trim panel -2-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

1.15 Removing and installing light strip



♦ Removing

– Remove trim panel ⇒ page 194 .

– Unclip light strip -1-.

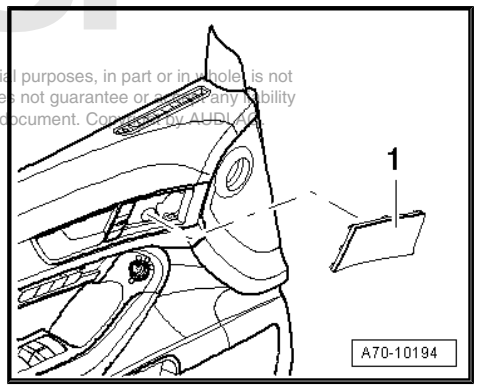
– Unplug connector -2-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

1.16 Removing and installing treble loudspeaker trim

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



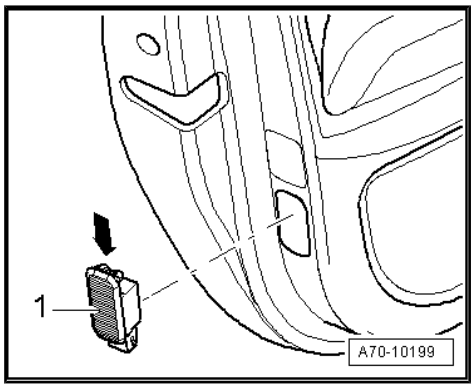
♦ Removing

– Carefully lever out trim panel -1- using a screwdriver.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

1.17 Removing and installing door warning light



♦ Removing

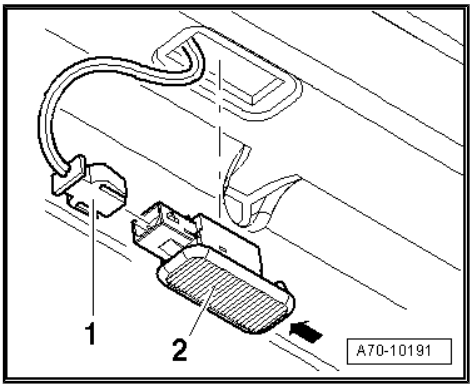
– Apply screwdriver in direction of arrow and prise out door warning light -1-.

– In the case of active door warning light: pull door warning light outwards with wiring and then unplug connector.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

1.18 Removing and installing entry light



♦ Removing

– Apply screwdriver in direction of arrow and prise out entry light -2-.

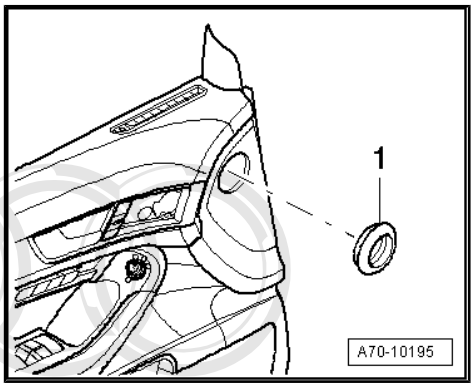
– Pull entry light outwards with the wire.

– Unplug connector -1-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

1.19 Removing and installing rubber ring for vent



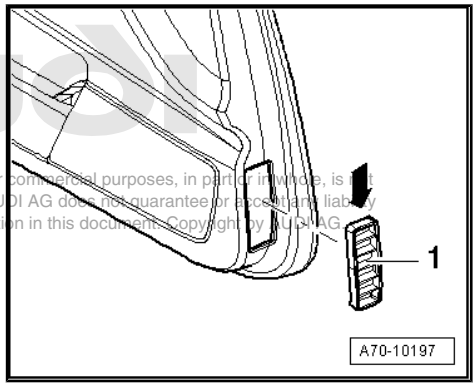
♦ Removing

– Detach rubber ring for vent -1-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

1.20 Removing and installing frame for bass reflex duct



♦ Removing

– Apply screwdriver in direction of arrow and prise out frame for bass reflex duct -1-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.21 Making opening for frame for bass reflex duct in door trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

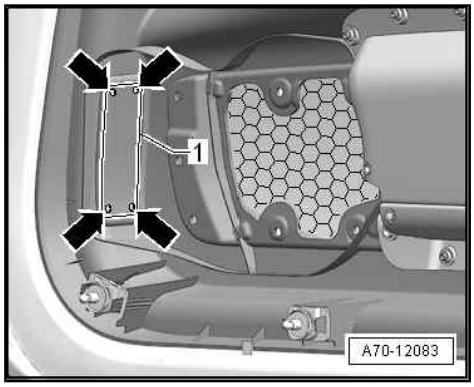
♦ e.g. Electric cutter -V.A.G 1561A- or pneumatic jig-saw -VAS 5108- with corresponding blade attachments

Note

Only the door trim for vehicles with standard sound system is available as a replacement part. Opening must be made for frame for bass reflex duct using workshop equipment on vehicles with BOSE sound system.

- Door trim removed ⇒ page 184

– Make a hole ∅ 8 mm -arrows- at each corner inside marking -1- on rear side of door trim.
– Use e.g. electric cutter -V.A.G 1561A- or pneumatic sabre saw -VAS 5108- to make cuts on rear side of door trim along marking shown.
– Fit frame for bass reflex duct in opening and check that it fits correctly.
– If necessary, use carpet knife to rework edges of opening for frame for bass reflex duct.
– Install frame for bass reflex duct ⇒ page 195 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

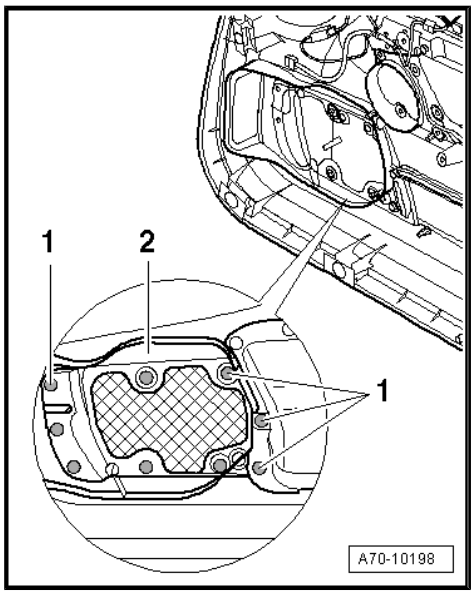
1.22 Removing and installing trim for bass loudspeaker

♦ Removing

– Remove door trim ⇒ page 184 .
– Drill out rivets -1- (9x).
– Remove grille -2-.

♦ Installing

– Use a soldering iron to "weld" on grille -2- at points -1- (9x).



2 Door trim (rear)

2.1 Overview of fitting locations

1 - Removing and installing insulation ⇒ page 200

2 - Removing and installing cover ⇒ page 204

3 - Removing and installing side sun blind for door window ⇒ page 205

4 - Removing and installing trim panel ⇒ page 204

5 - Removing and installing interior door handle ⇒ page 203

6 - Removing and installing treble loudspeaker ⇒ page 204

7 - Removing and installing treble loudspeaker trim ⇒ page 205

8 - Removing and installing window regulator switch ⇒ page 203

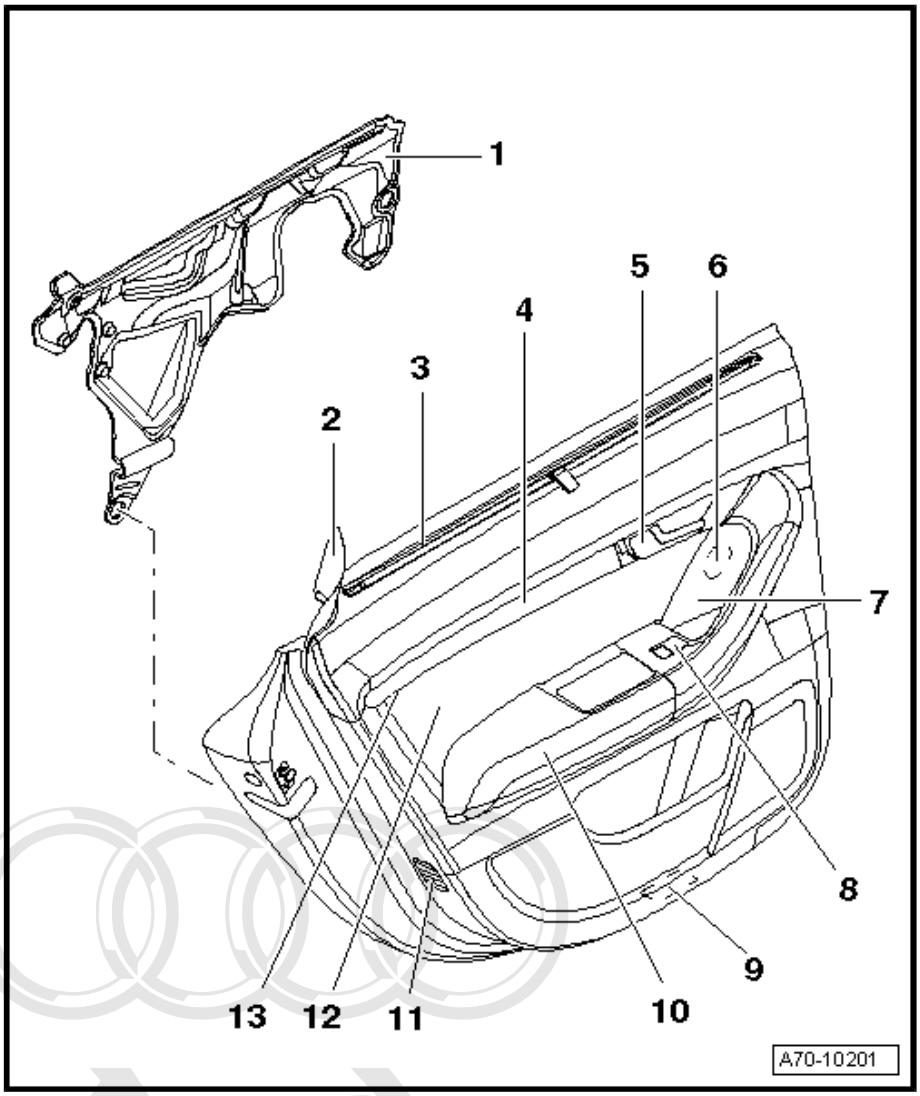
9 - Removing and installing entry light ⇒ page 205

10 - Removing and installing armrest ⇒ page 201

11 - Removing and installing door warning light ⇒ page 205

12 - Removing and installing door trim ⇒ page 198

13 - Removing and installing light strip ⇒ page 204



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2 Overview of wiring in door trim

1 - LED holder

2 - Wiring to interior door handle light

3 - Wiring to light strip

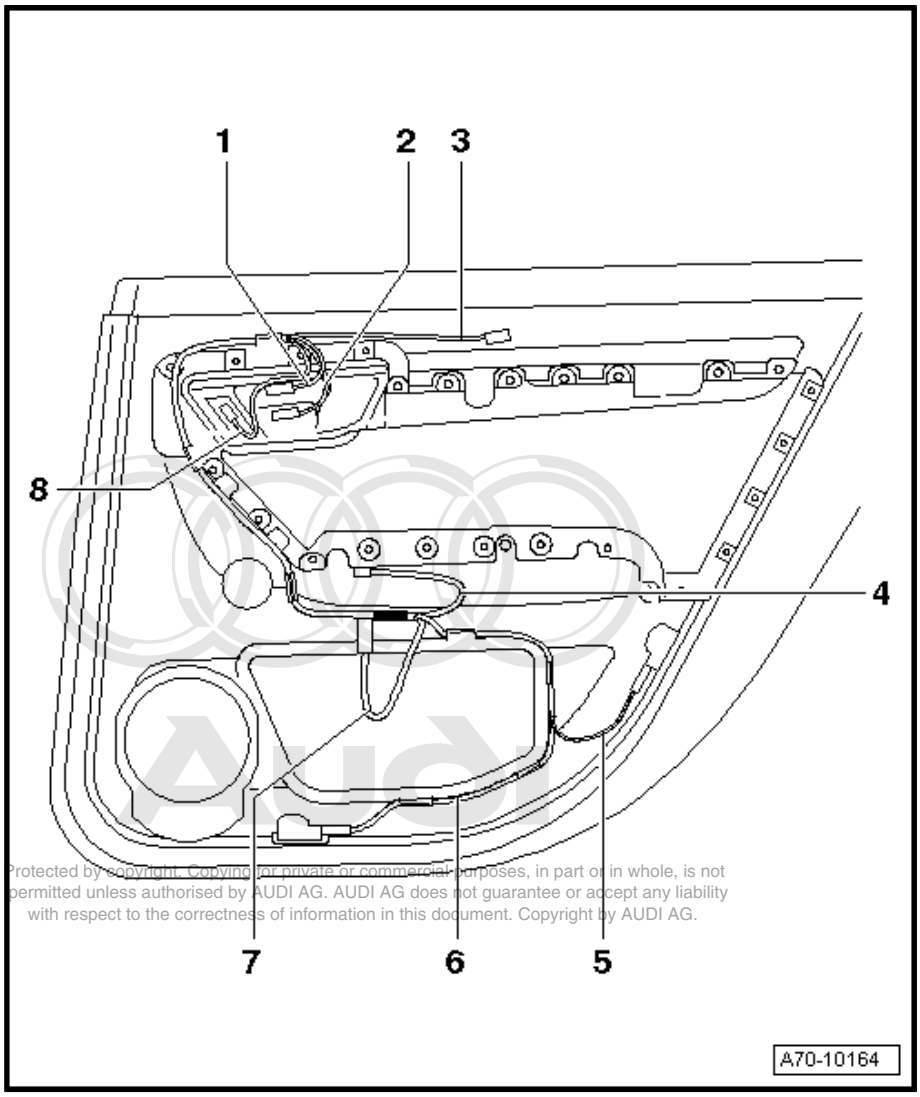
4 - Wiring to window regulator switch

5 - Wiring to door warning light

6 - Wiring to entry light

7 - Wiring to door control unit

8 - Wiring to central locking switch

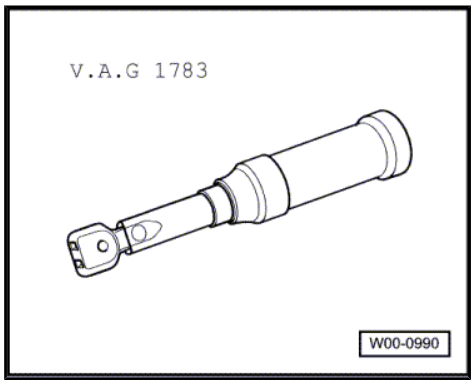


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3 Removing and installing door trim (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench -V.A.G 1783-



1 - Speed nuts (4x)

2 - Door trim

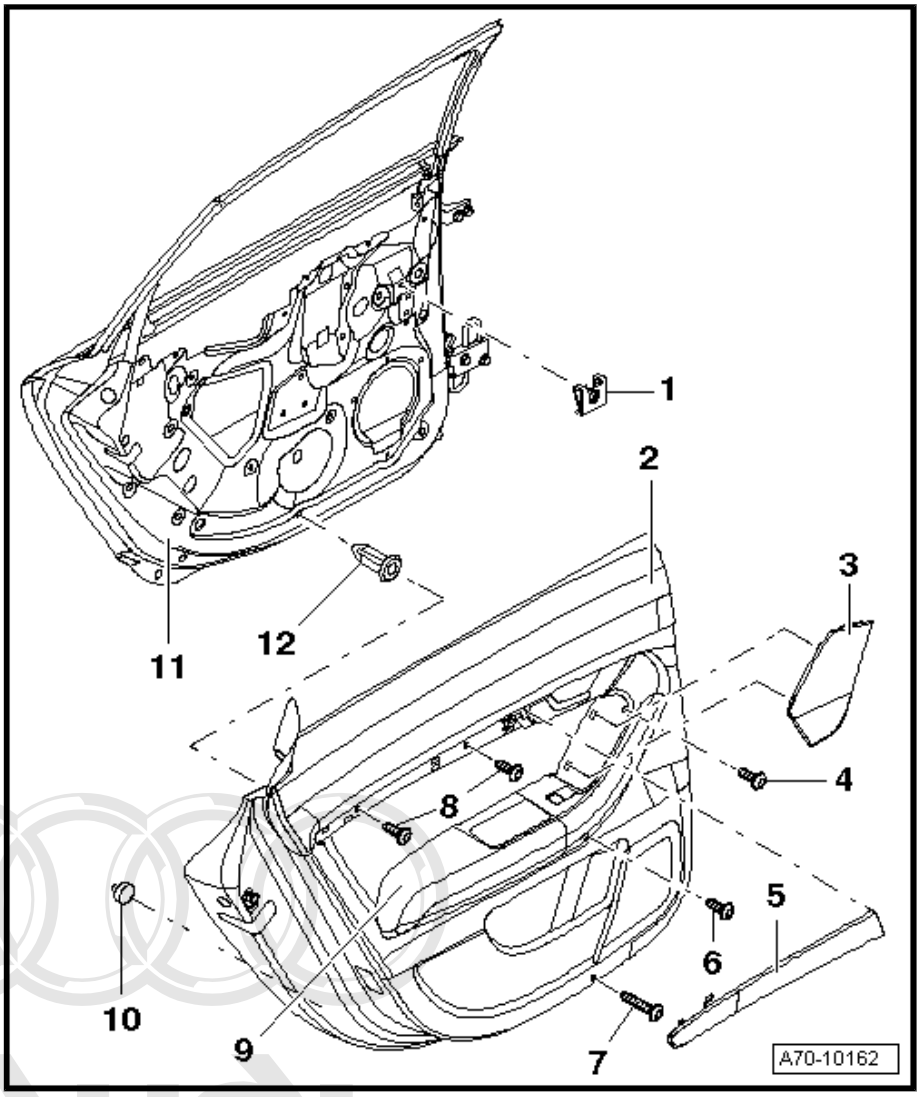
♦ Removing

- Unclip trim for treble loudspeaker -3-.
- Remove trim panel -5- ⇒ page 204 .
- Remove bolts -4- and -8- (2x).
- Use a long screwdriver to remove bolt -6- on underside of armrest -9-.
- Unscrew bolt -7- on underside of door trim -2-.
- Unclip door trim -2- at bottom, starting from the outer side.
- Lift door trim -2- approx. 20 cm out of door shell -11-.
- Unplug connector on treble loudspeaker.
- Detach Bowden cable for interior door handle ⇒ page 200 .
- Unplug connector at door control unit ⇒ page 200 .

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Make sure the speed nuts -1- (4x) and expanding nuts -12- (4x) are clipped in securely.
- Make sure that retaining clips -10- (8x) are clipped into door trim. Renew any damaged fasteners ⇒ page 200



3 - Trim for treble loudspeaker

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 - Bolt

❑ Tightening torque: 2 Nm

5 - Trim panel

6 - Bolt

❑ Tightening torque: 2 Nm

7 - Bolt

❑ Tightening torque: 2 Nm

8 - Bolts (2x)

❑ Tightening torque: 2 Nm

9 - Armrest

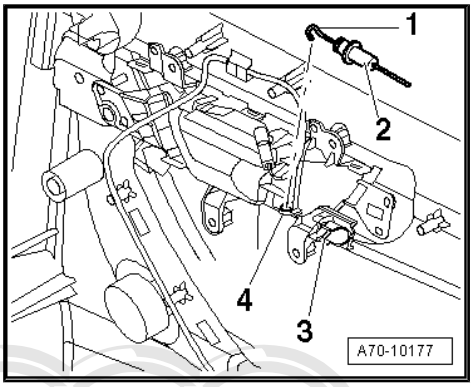
10 - Retaining clips (8x)

11 - Door shell

12 - Expanding nuts (4x)

Disengaging Bowden cable

– Pull Bowden cable -2- out of guide -3-.
– Disengage hook -1- on Bowden cable from eye -4-.
– Unplug connector to treble loudspeaker.

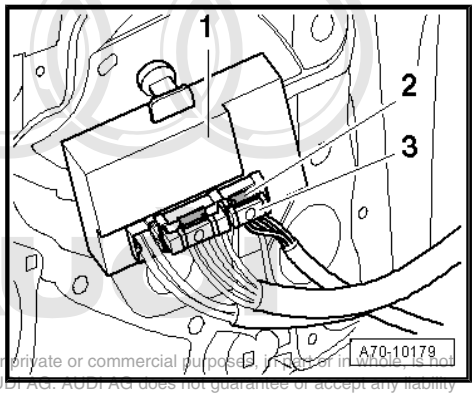


Note

When installing, make sure hook -4- is facing downwards.

Unplugging connector at door control unit

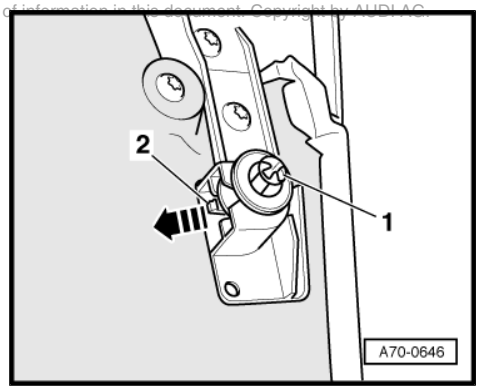
– Detach locking element -2- and unplug electrical connector -3- from control unit -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing retaining clip in door trim

– Press retaining tab -2- and pull out fastener -1- in direction of arrow.



2.4 Removing and installing insulation

1 - Door shell

2 - Adhesive bead (circumferential)

3 - Insulation

Note

When detaching insulation, make sure it is not damaged.

♦ Removing

– Remove door trim ⇒ page 198 .
– Carefully pull insulation -3- off door shell -1-.

♦ Installing

Note

Renew insulation if adhesive bead is damaged or soiled.

– Press insulation -3- onto door shell.

4 - Insulation for bass loudspeaker

Note

When detaching insulation, make sure it is not damaged.

♦ Removing

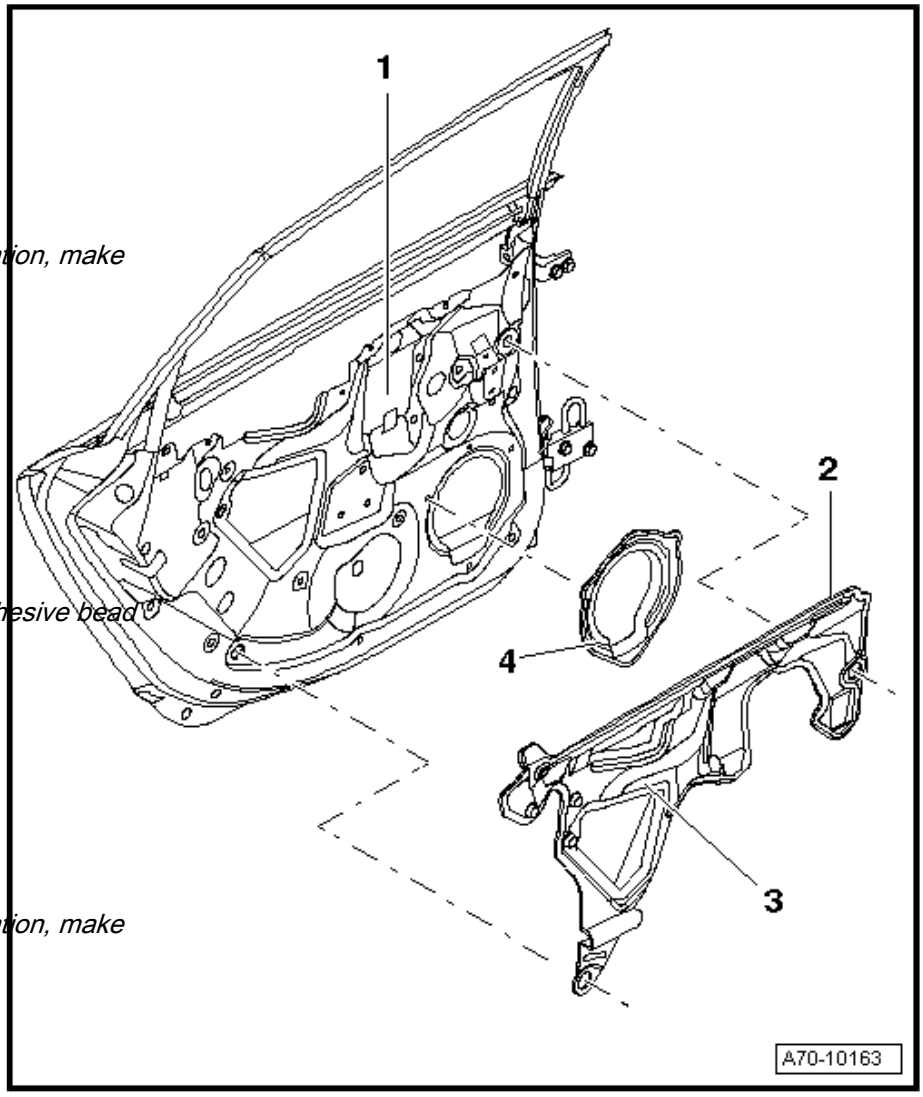
– Remove bass loudspeaker ⇒ Rep. gr. 91 .
– Carefully pull insulation -4- off door shell -1-.

♦ Installing

Note

Renew insulation if adhesive bead is damaged or soiled.

– Press insulation -4- onto door shell.

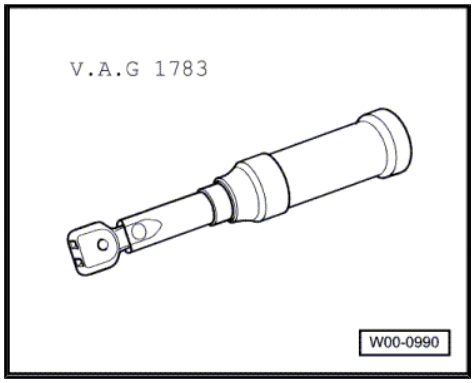


2.5 Removing and installing armrest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1783-



1 - Armrest

♦ Removing

– Remove door trim ⇒ page 198 .
– Remove bolts -4- (6x) and -5- (2x).
– Tilt armrest -1- downwards.
– Unplug connectors -2- and -3-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2 - Connector for ashtray light

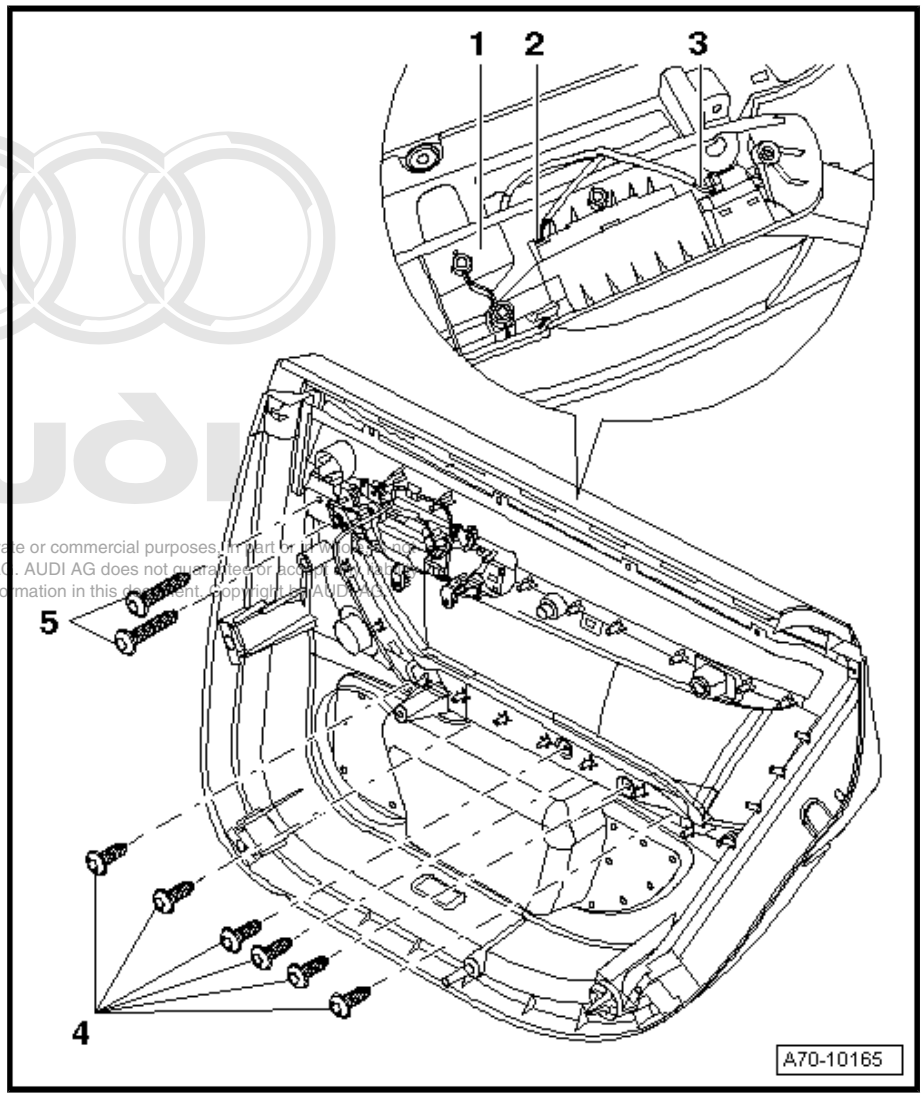
3 - Connector for window regulator switch

4 - Bolts (6x)

❑ Tightening torque: 1 Nm

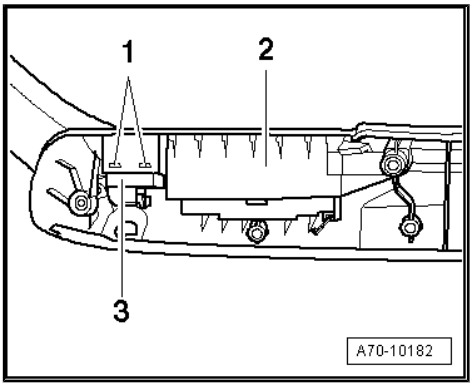
5 - Bolts (2x)

❑ Tightening torque: 2.5 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.6 Removing and installing window regulator switch



♦ Removing

– Remove door trim ⇒ page 198 .

– Remove armrest -2- ⇒ page 201 .

– Use screwdriver to prise out window regulator switch -3- at front and rear at lugs -1- (4x).

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2.7 Removing and installing interior door handle

1 - Interior door handle

♦ Removing

– Remove door trim ⇒ page 198 .
– Unplug connector for door handle light -2-.
– Unscrew bolts -3- (4x) and -4-.
– Take out interior door handle -1- towards the inside.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

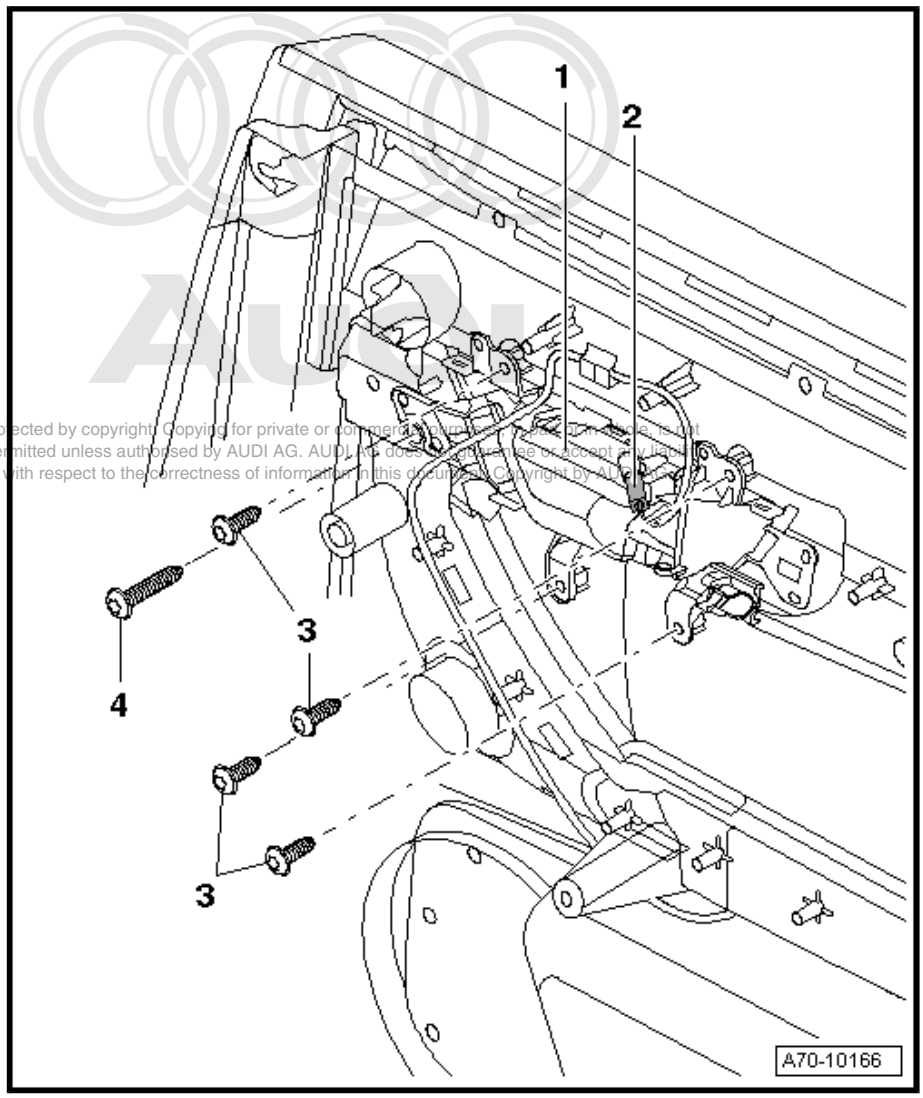
2 - Electrical connector for door handle light

3 - Bolts (4x)

❑ Tightening torque: 1 Nm

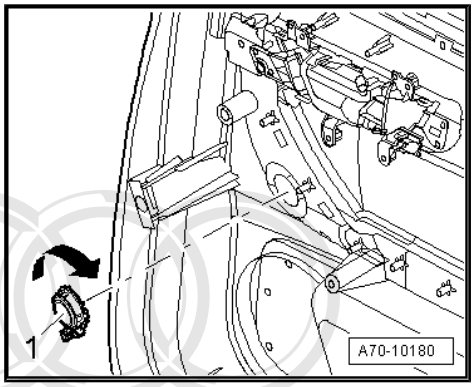
4 - Bolt

❑ Tightening torque: 2.5 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.8 Removing and installing treble loudspeaker



♦ Removing

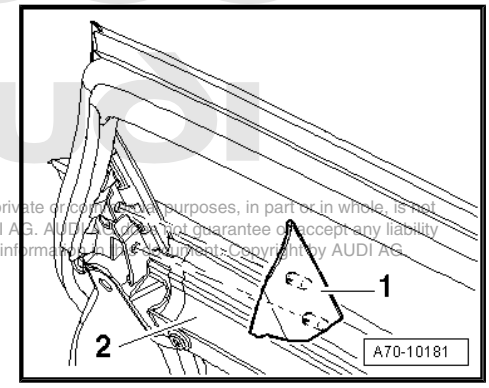
– Remove door trim ⇒ page 198 .

– Turn treble loudspeaker -1- out of quick-release fastener in direction of arrow and remove treble loudspeaker.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2.9 Removing and installing cover



♦ Removing

– Remove door trim ⇒ page 198 .

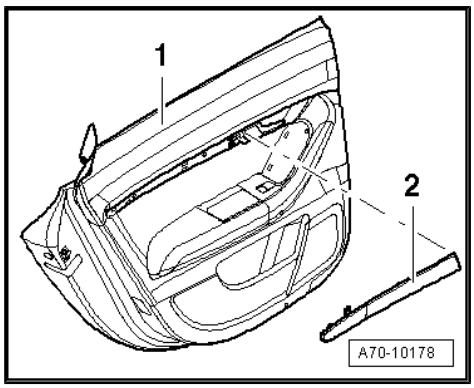
– Unclip cover -1- from door shell -2-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.10 Removing and installing trim panel



♦ Removing

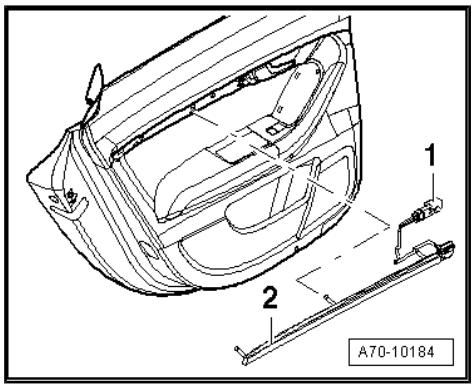
– Carefully prise out front end of trim panel -2-.

– Unclip trim panel all the way to the rear.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2.11 Removing and installing light strip



♦ Removing

– Remove trim panel ⇒ page 194 .

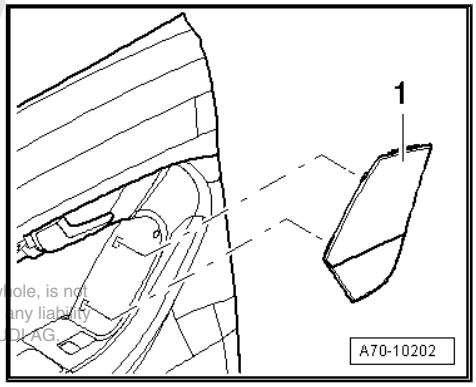
– Unclip light strip -2-.

– Unplug connector -1-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2.12 Removing and installing treble loudspeaker trim



♦ Removing

Caution

Trim panel must be unclipped at front and in direction of travel. Otherwise there is a risk of damaging the trim panel.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

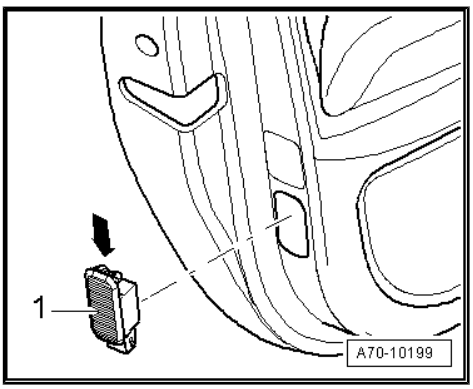
– Carefully lever out trim panel -1- in direction of travel using a screwdriver.

– Pull out trim panel towards front and in direction of travel.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2.13 Removing and installing door warning light



♦ Removing

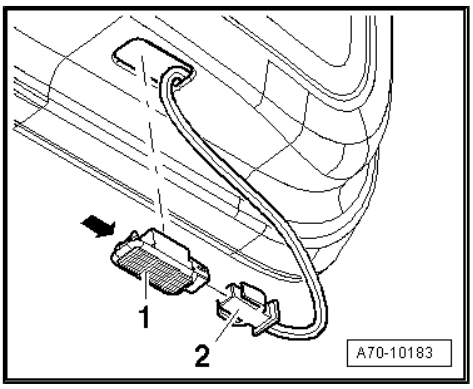
– Apply screwdriver in direction of arrow and prise out door warning light -1-.

– In the case of active door warning light: pull door warning light outwards with wiring and then unplug connector.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2.14 Removing and installing entry light



♦ Removing

– Apply screwdriver in direction of arrow and prise out entry light -1-.

– Pull entry light outwards with the wire.

– Unplug connector -2-.

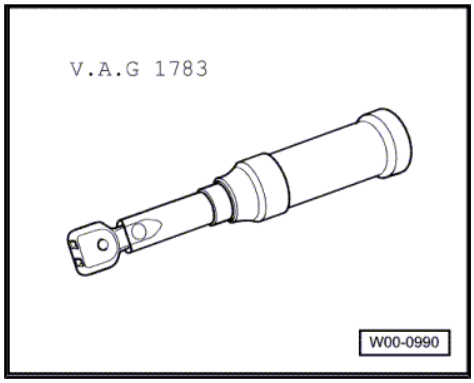
♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2.15 Removing and installing side sun blind for door window

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1783-



♦ Removing

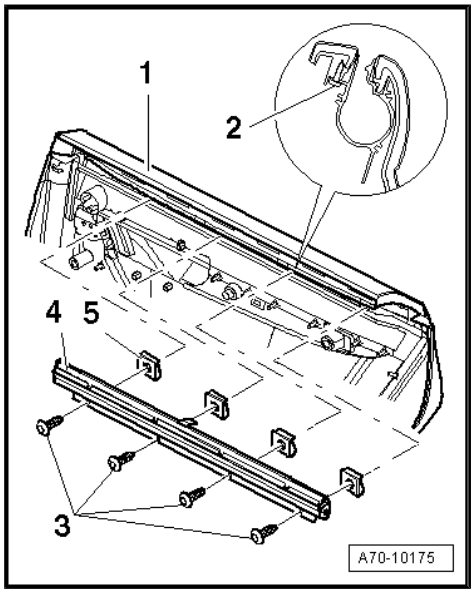
– Remove door trim ⇒ page 198 .
– Remove bolts -3- (4x).
– Remove bolts -2- (4x).
– Detach side sun blind -4-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

– Make sure that speed nuts -5- (4x) are clipped securely into door trim -1-.

♦ Tightening torque for bolts -3-: 2.5 Nm
♦ Tightening torque for bolts -2-: 1 Nm



2.16 Removing and installing hooks for side sun blind

♦ Removing

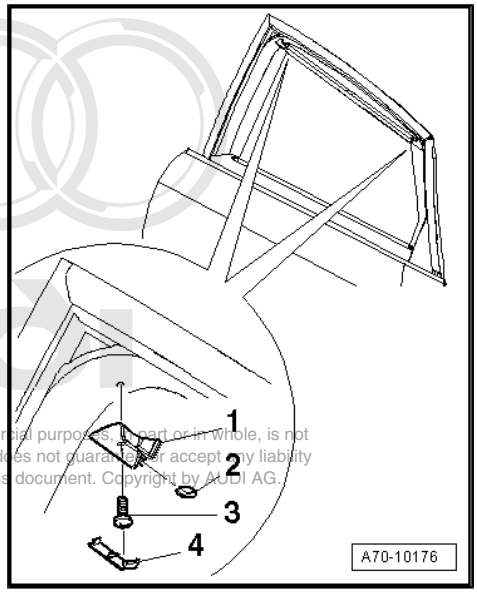
– Prise off cover -4-.
– Unscrew bolt -3-.
– Remove hook -1-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

The adjuster element -2- is intended for tolerance compensation; its position in the hook -1- can be adjusted as required.

♦ Tightening torque for bolt -3-: 1 Nm

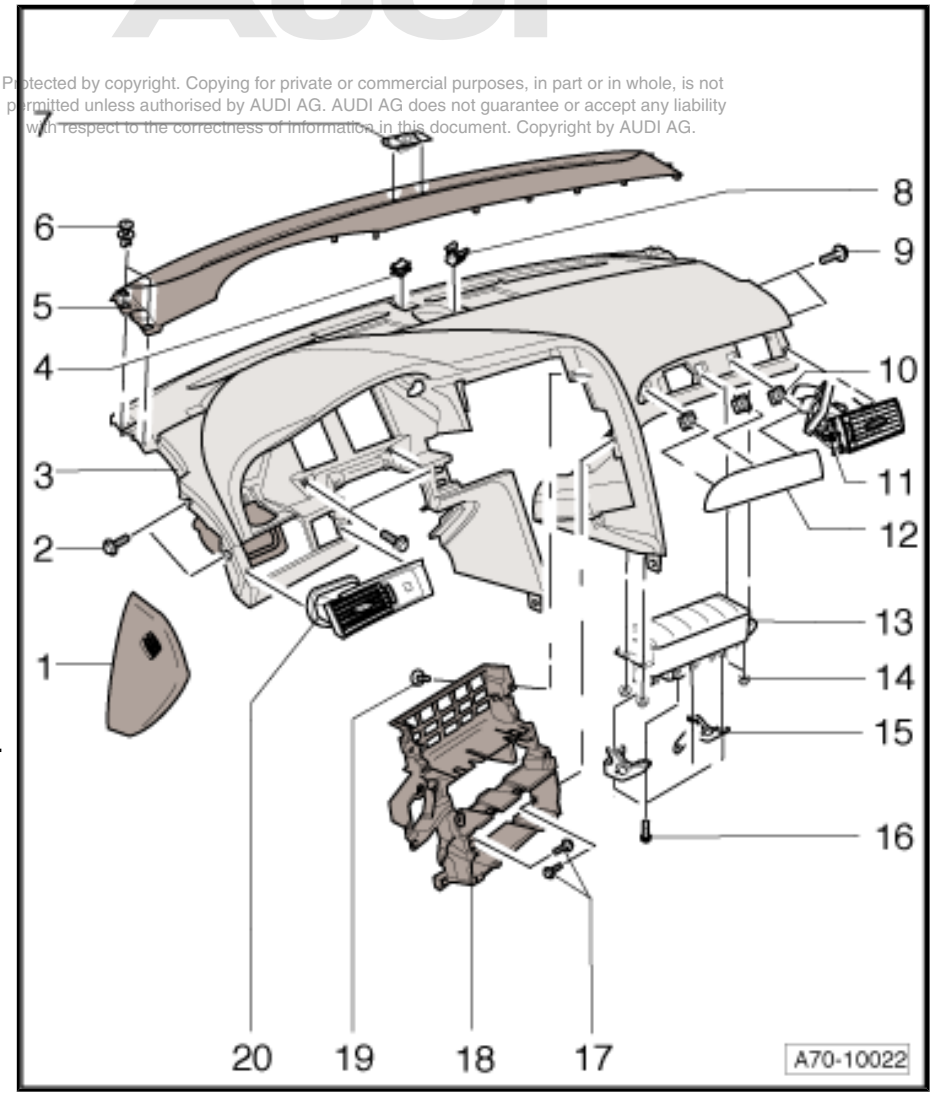


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Dash panel

3.1 Exploded view of dash panel

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Dash panel end trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 208

2 - 3.5 Nm

3 - Dash panel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 214

> **WARNING**
> *For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

4 - Clip

5 - Trim for indirect ventilation

- ❑ With defroster vent
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 209

6 - Spreader pin

7 - Sunlight penetration photo-sensor -G107-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Air conditioner; Rep. gr. 87

8 - Clip

9 - 3.5 Nm

10 - Clip

11 - Dash panel vent on passenger side

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 211

12 - Trim panel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 208

13 - Airbag unit (front passenger side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 135
- ❑ Can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch

14 - 9 Nm

15 - Bracket for airbag unit (front passenger side)

16 - 6 Nm

17 - 3.5 Nm

18 - Mounting frame

- ❑ For display of multimedia system operating unit -E380-
- ❑ For Climatronic control unit -J255- (operating and display unit)

- ❑ For entry and start authorisation switch -E415-
- ❑ Removing ⇒ page 208

19 - 3 Nm

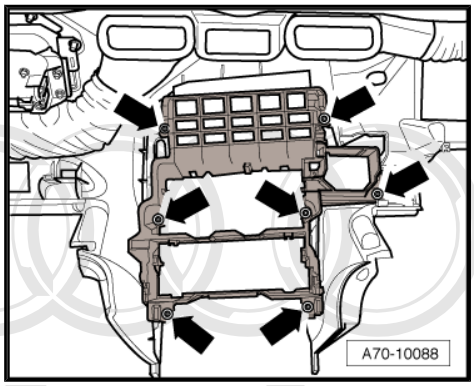
20 - Dash panel vent on driver side

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 210

Removing mounting frame

- Dash panel removed

– Remove bolts -arrows-.



3.2 Removing and installing dash panel end trim

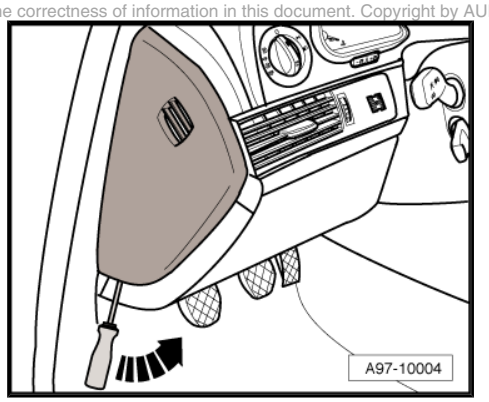
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Screwdriver

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Use screwdriver to prise off dash panel end trim -arrow-.



Installing

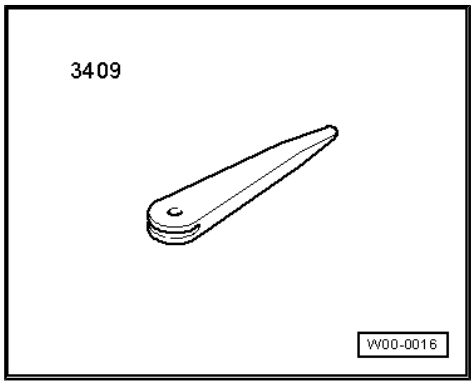
Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Ensure that the trim engages correctly in dash panel.

3.3 Removing and installing trim panel

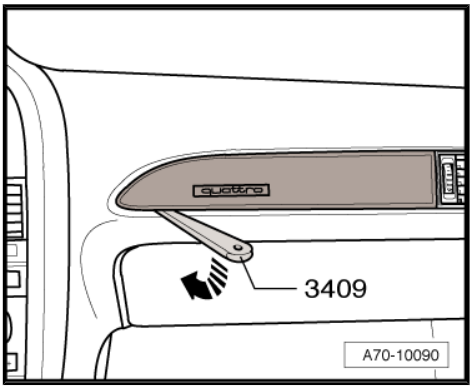
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge -3409-



Removing

– Carefully unclip trim panel from dash panel using removal wedge -3409- -arrow-.



Note

If it is not possible to remove the trim panel as described, remove the glove box and disengage the retaining clips of the trim panel from the rear.

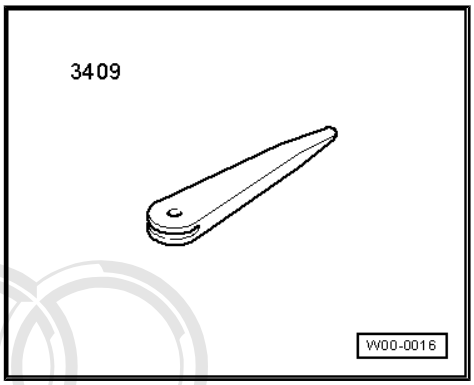
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

3.4 Removing and installing trim for indirect ventilation

Special tools and workshop equipment required

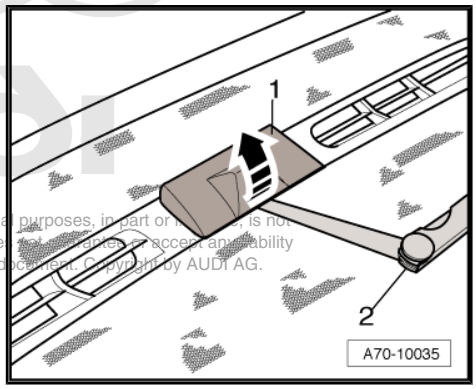
♦ Removal wedge -3409-



♦ Feeler gauge

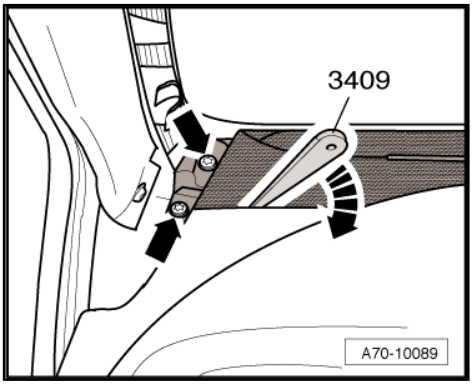
Removing

– Use feeler gauge (0.35 mm) -2- to prise out photosensor for sunlight penetration -G107- -item 1- and unplug electrical connector.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove trim from A-pillar on driver and front passenger sides ⇒ page 246 .
– Unscrew spreader pins -arrows- (left and right).
– Use removal wedge -3409- to prise trim panel for indirect ventilation out of dash panel.
– Detach trim panel towards the rear.



Installing

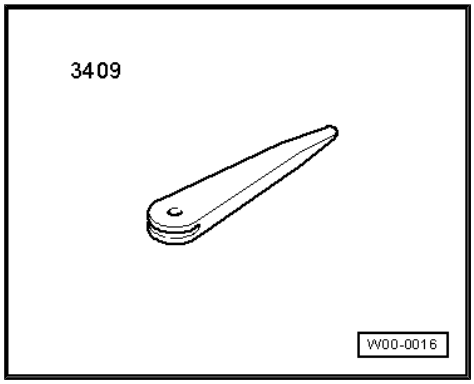
Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Install A-pillar trim on driver and front passenger sides ⇒ page 246 .

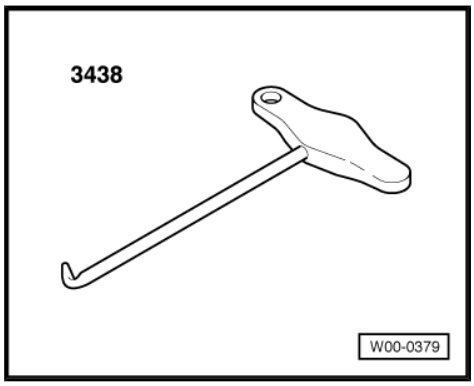
3.5 Removing and installing dash panel vent (driver side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge -3409-



- Hook -3438-



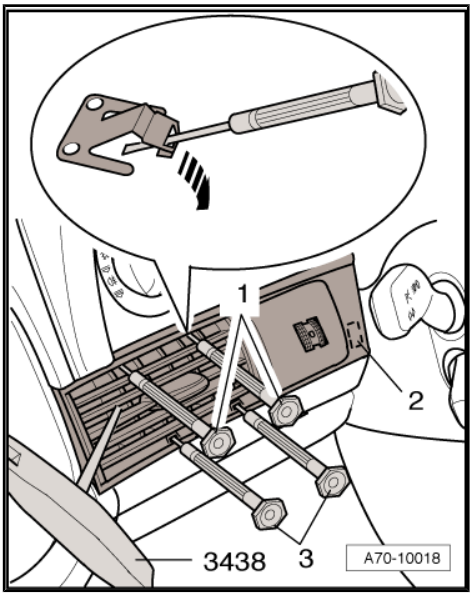
- Jeweller screwdrivers

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Move steering wheel down and towards rear as far as it will go, using full range of steering column adjuster.

– Carefully release spring pins -2- on trim panel from dash panel using removal wedge -3409- .



Note

The dash panel vent has holes on both sides for inserting the hook -3438- .

– Carefully pull dash panel vent out of opening on both sides using the hook -3438- .

If dash panel vent cannot be pulled out in this way, proceed as follows:

– Bring louvres in dash panel vent into a horizontal position.

– Release all retaining clips -arrow- by inserting jeweller screwdrivers -1- and -3-.

– Pull dash panel vent out of opening on both sides using the hook -3438- and leaving the jeweller screwdrivers inserted.

– If fitted, unplug electrical connectors at dash panel vent and at rotary control for headlight range control.

Installing

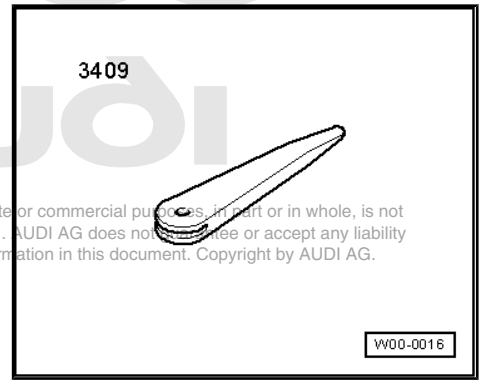
Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Push dash panel vent into installation opening so that retainers engage correctly.

3.6 Removing and installing dash panel vent (passenger side)

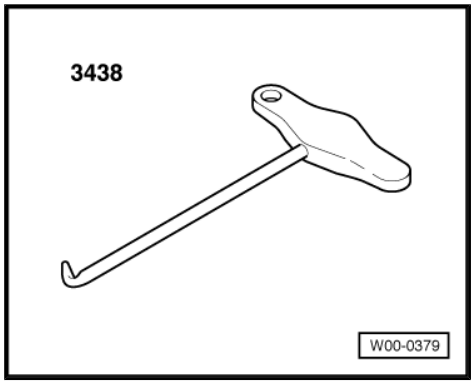
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge -3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

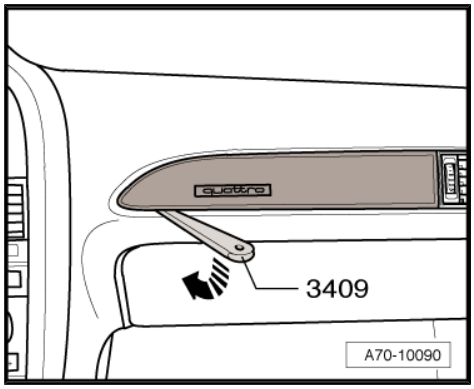
♦ Hook -3438-



♦ Jeweller screwdrivers

Removing

– Carefully unclip trim panel from dash panel using removal wedge -3409- -arrow-.



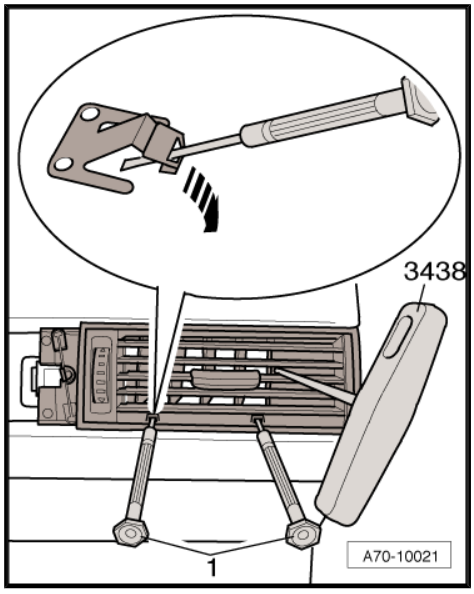
Note

If it is not possible to remove the trim panel as described, remove the glove box and disengage the retaining clips of the trim panel from the rear.

Note

The dash panel vent has holes on both sides for inserting the hook -3438- .

– Carefully pull dash panel vent out of opening on both sides using the hook -3438-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

If dash panel vent cannot be pulled out in this way, proceed as follows:

– Bring louvres in dash panel vent into a horizontal position.
– Release the 2 retaining clips -detailed view- by inserting jeweller screwdrivers -1-.
– Pull dash panel vent out of opening on both sides using the hook -3438- and leaving the jeweller screwdrivers inserted.
– If fitted, unplug electrical connector at dash panel vent.

Installing

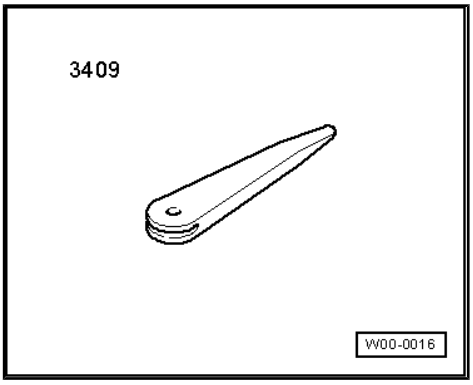
Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Push dash panel vent into installation opening so that retainers engage correctly.

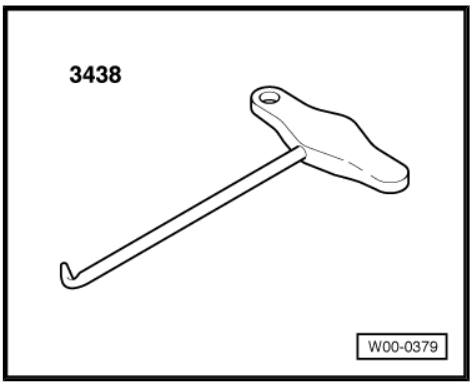
3.7 Removing and installing dash panel vent (centre)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge -3409-



- Hook -3438-



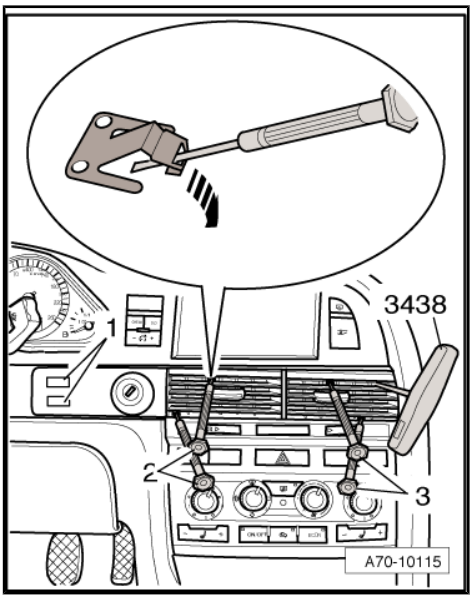
Note

There are 2 different versions of the dash panel vent (centre). The procedures for removing the different versions of the dash panel vent (centre) differ. The procedure for removing version 1 (for older vehicles) is described first, then the procedure for removing version 2 (installed in majority of vehicles) is described. Check which version is installed in the vehicle and remove the dash panel vent (centre) as described.

Removing (version 1)

– Move steering wheel down and towards rear as far as it will go, using full range of steering column adjuster.
– Carefully release spring pins -1- on trim panel from dash panel using removal wedge -3409- .

Copyright AUDI AG. Reproduction of this publication, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Note

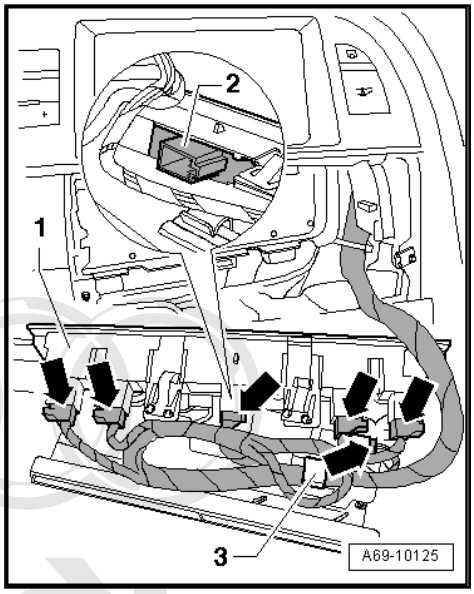
The dash panel vent has holes on both sides for inserting the hook -3438- .

– Carefully pull dash panel vent out of opening on both sides using the hook -3438- .

If dash panel vent cannot be pulled out in this way, proceed as follows:

– Bring louvres in dash panel vent into a horizontal position.
– Release all retaining clips -arrow- by inserting jeweller screwdrivers -2- and -3-.
– Pull dash panel vent out of opening on both sides using the hook -3438- and leaving the jeweller screwdrivers inserted.

– Disengage wiring harness from clip -3-.
– Unplug all electrical connectors -arrows-.



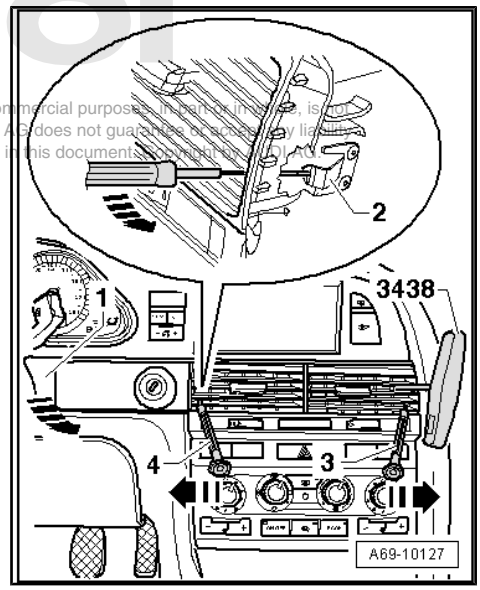
Note

The illustration shows a centre vent trim panel with the full number of switches. Depending on equipment version there may also be dummy covers fitted.

Removing (version 2)

– Move steering wheel down and towards rear as far as it will go, using full range of steering column adjuster.

– Detach »trim strip« of centre vent trim panel -1- (left-side) in direction of -arrow-. Unclip using removal wedge -3409- if necessary.
– Set louvres of centre vent trim panel -1- to horizontal position.
– Use a small, commercially available screwdriver -3- and -4- to release metal clips -2- in direction of -arrow-.



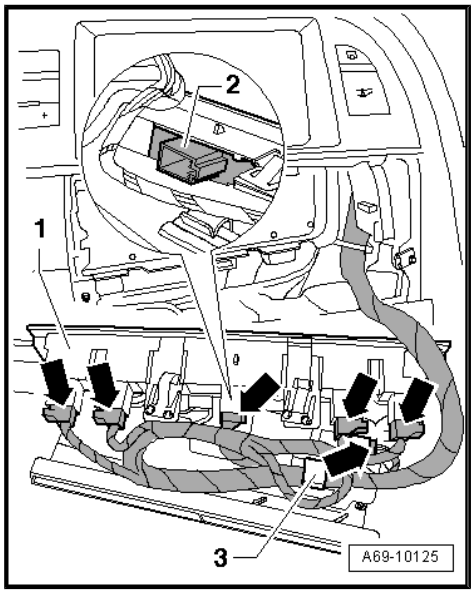
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

Note

A hole is provided on both sides of the centre vent trim panel for engaging the hook -3438- .

– Pull centre vent trim panel -1- (both sides) out of dash panel installation opening using hook -3438- and leaving screwdrivers -3- and -4- inserted.

– Disengage wiring harness from clip -3-.
– Unplug all electrical connectors -arrows-.



Note

The illustration shows a centre vent trim panel with full switch assignment. Depending on equipment version there may also be dummy covers fitted.

Installing

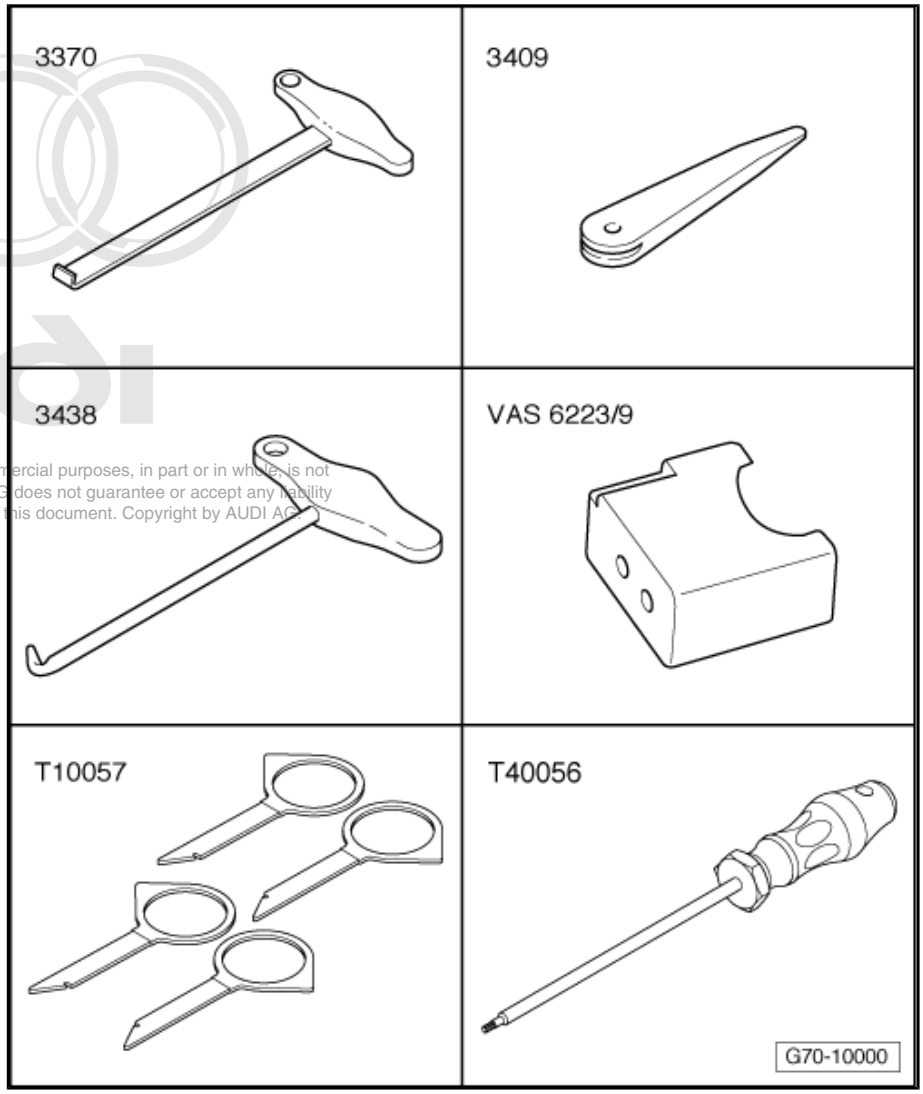
Install in reverse order of removal.

3.8 Removing and installing dash panel

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Front-end hook -3370-
- Removal wedge -3409-
- Hook -3438-
- Protective cap - VAS 6223/9-
- Radio release tool - T10057-
- Special screwdriver T8 - T40056 A-
- Feeler gauge

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Removing

Note

All cable ties unfastened or cut open during removal must be re-attached at the same location during installation.

– Position steering wheel as far down and towards the rear as possible, making use of the full range of the steering column adjuster.

– Move front seats to rearmost position and set backrests to 45° position.

– On vehicles with automatic gearbox move selector lever to position “S”.

– Release glove box lid.

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

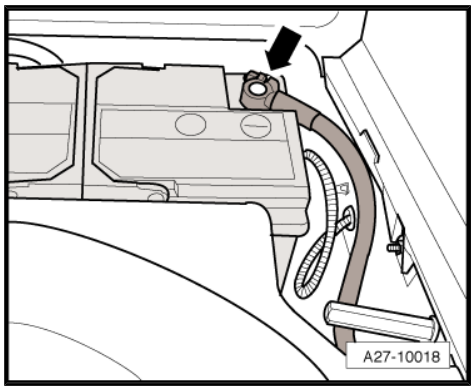
– Switch on ignition.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

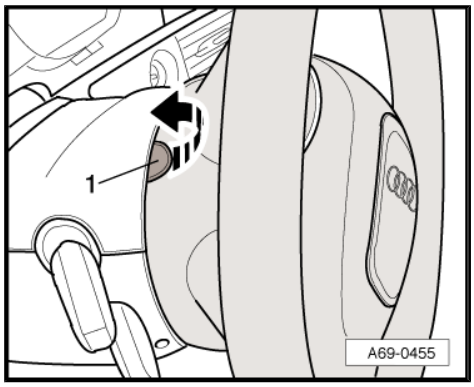
Note

Contrary to the description in "Disconnecting and connecting the battery" (⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27) the battery must, when removing the airbag, be disconnected with the ignition switched on.

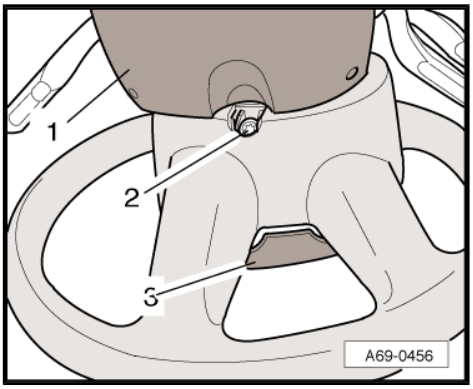
– Remove luggage compartment floor trim.
– Disconnect earth wire -arrow- at battery.



– Prise off caps -1- (left and right) on reverse side of steering wheel -arrow-.



– Turn steering wheel out of centre position approx. 80° towards the right.



Note

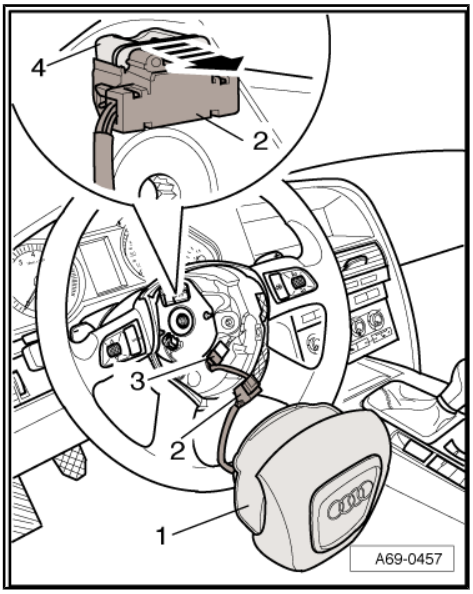
The bolt for securing the airbag unit -3- must be opposite the opening (bottom) in the steering column trim -1-.

– Remove bolt -2-.
– Turn steering wheel approx. 160° towards left and remove left bolt for airbag unit.
– Turn steering wheel to centre position (wheels in straight-ahead position).

WARNING

The mechanic must discharge static electricity before unplugging connectors; to do so, briefly touch door striker plate, or similar.

– Move airbag unit (driver side) slightly away from steering wheel.
– Pull connector locking element -4- as far as the stop -arrow-. This will release the electrical connector -2- which can then be unplugged.
– Detach airbag unit -1- from steering wheel.
– If fitted, unplug electrical connector -3-.
– Set down airbag unit with impact cushion facing upwards.

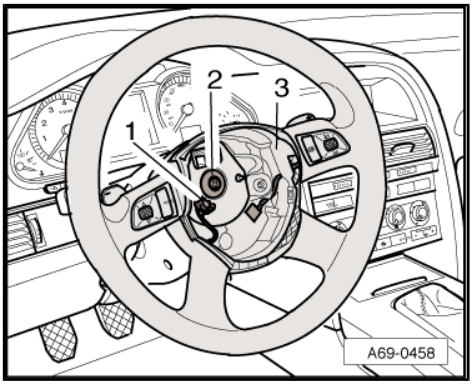


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

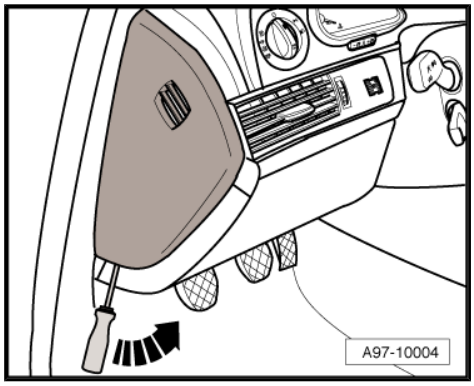
Note

Only remove and install the steering wheel in centre position (wheels in straight-ahead position).

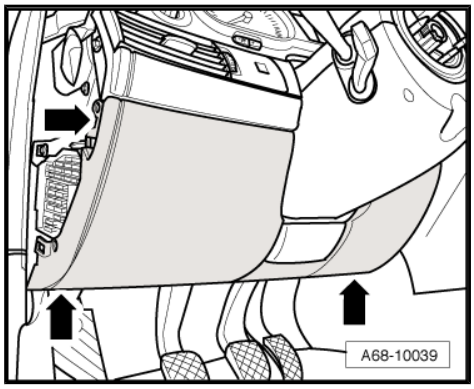
– Remove bolt -1-.
– Mark relative position of steering wheel to steering column with a felt-tip pen.
– Detach steering wheel -2- from steering column.



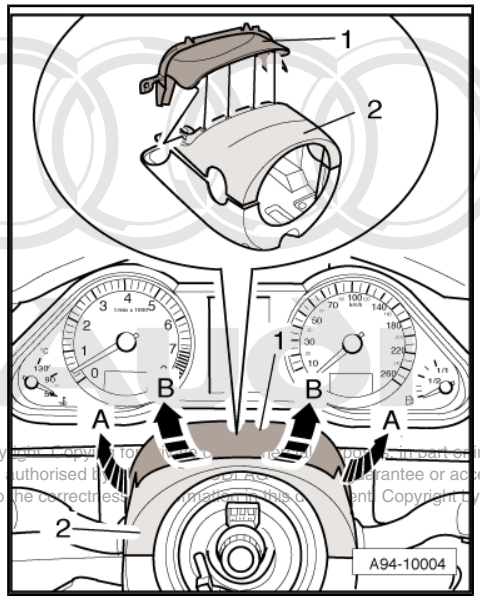
– Use screwdriver to prise off dash panel end trim on driver side -arrow-.



– Unscrew bolts for dash panel trim (bottom) on driver side -arrows-.
– Take hold of upper edge of dash panel trim (bottom, driver side) and pull off towards rear.
– Unclip diagnostic connectors -T16- .
– Unplug electrical connectors.

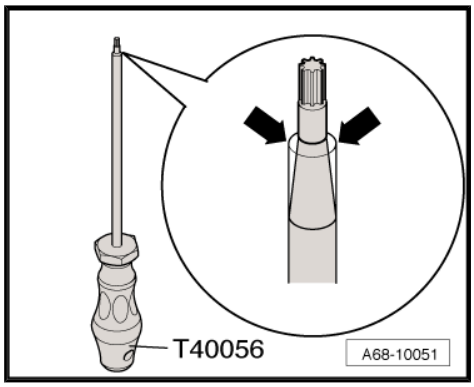


– Unclip trim cover -1- from trim (top) -2- for steering column switch first on side -arrow A- and then at top -arrow B-. To do so, use removal wedge -3409- .

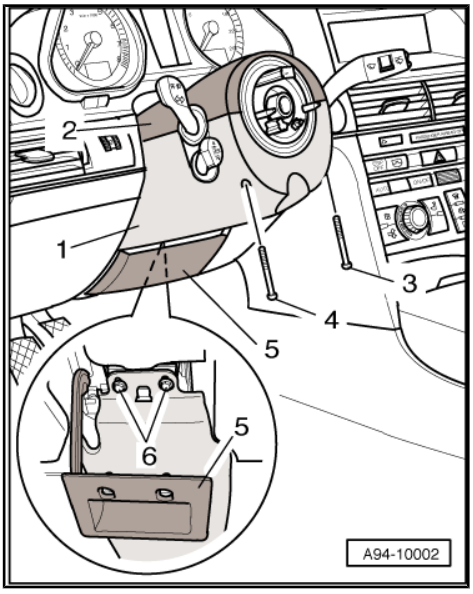


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

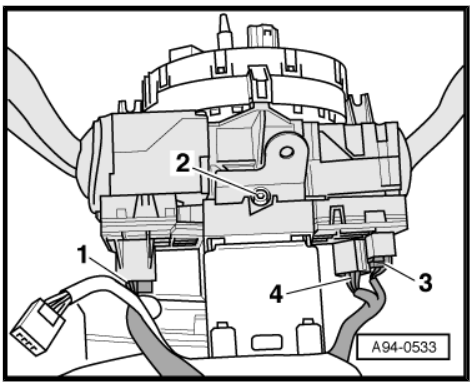
– If you still have the old special screwdriver T8 -T40056- , sand it down to taper form at the locations marked with -arrows-.



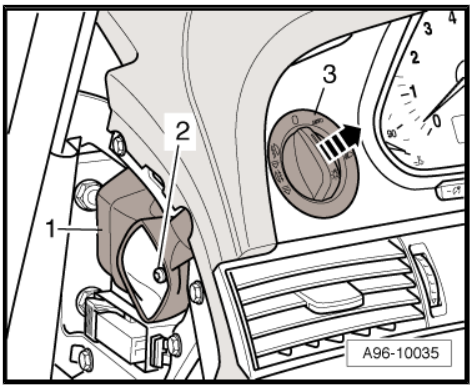
– Unscrew bolts -3- and -4- using special screwdriver T8 - T40056 A- .
– If fitted, fold down handle -5- for mechanical steering column adjustment.
– Unscrew bolts -6-.
– Detach trim (top) -2- for steering column switch from trim (bottom) -1- for steering column switch and remove both trim sections.
– If fitted, unplug electrical connectors at switch for electric steering column adjustment.



– Unscrew bolt -2- by a few turns.
– Unplug electrical connectors -1-, -3- and -4-.
– Carefully detach steering column switch with steering column electronics control unit -J527- .
– Remove dash panel vent (driver side) ⇒ page 210 .
– Remove dash panel vent (centre) ⇒ page 212 .

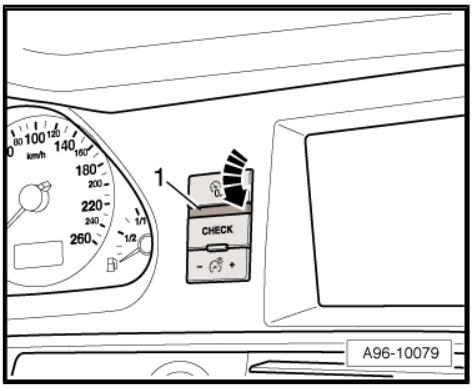


– Turn light switch -3- to position “0”.
– Remove spreader pin -2- at air duct -1- and remove air duct.
– Reach into the opening above the dash panel vent (side) and press the light switch out of the instrument cluster -arrow-.
– Unplug electrical connector.

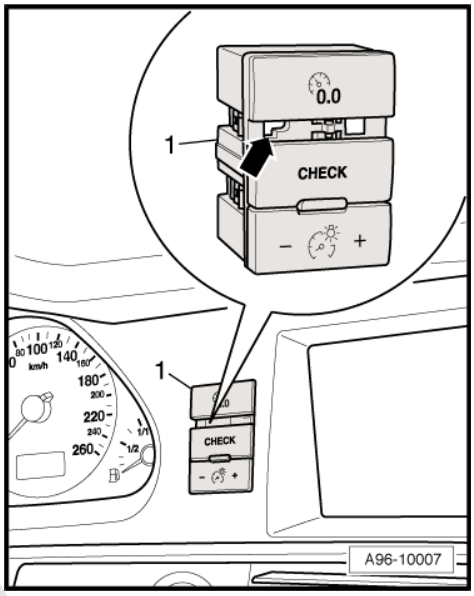


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

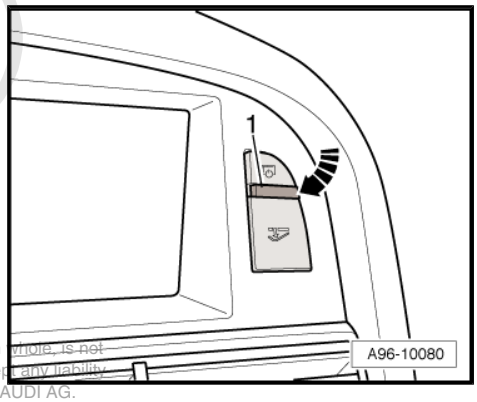
– Push trim cover -1- on switch panel for instrument cluster in direction of -arrow-.
– Grasp hold of trim cover and detach from switch.



– Position hook -3438- in opening -arrow- on switch panel.
– Carefully pull switch panel -1- out of instrument cluster trim.
– Unplug electrical connector.

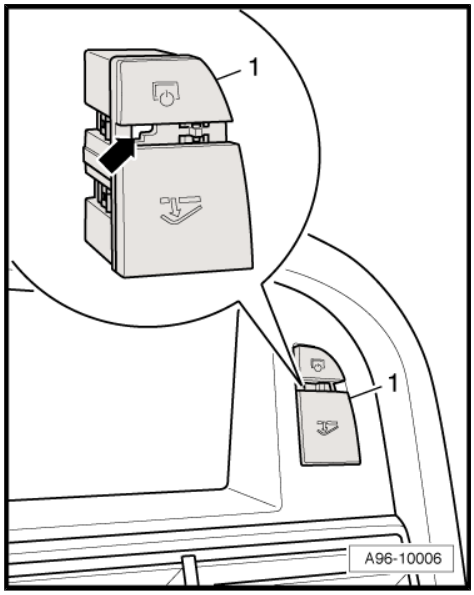


– Push trim cover -1- on switch for glove box release in direction of -arrow-.
– Grasp hold of trim cover and detach from switch.

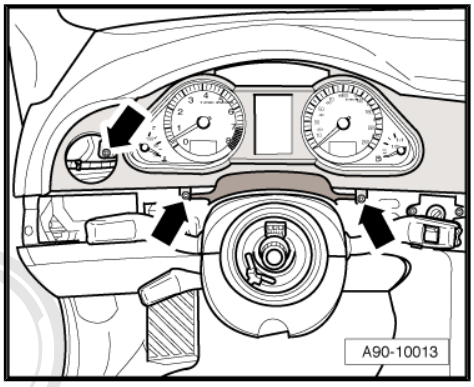


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

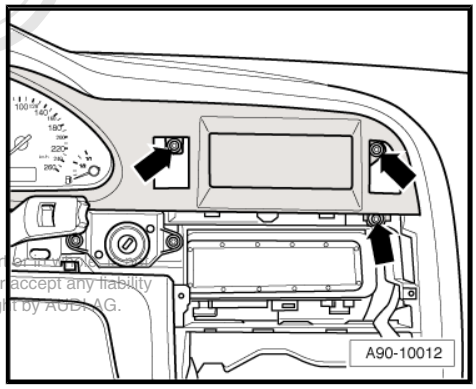
– Position hook -3438- in opening -arrow- on switch panel.
– Carefully pull switch panel -1- out of instrument cluster trim.
– Unplug electrical connector.



– Remove bolts -arrows-.

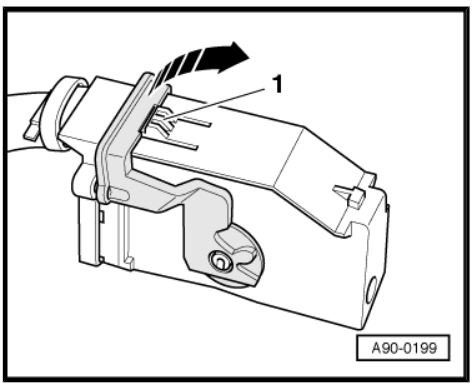


– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Pull instrument cluster trim slightly out of dash panel.

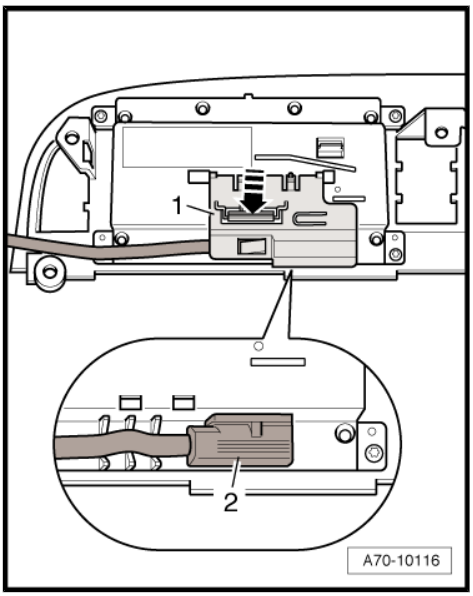


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

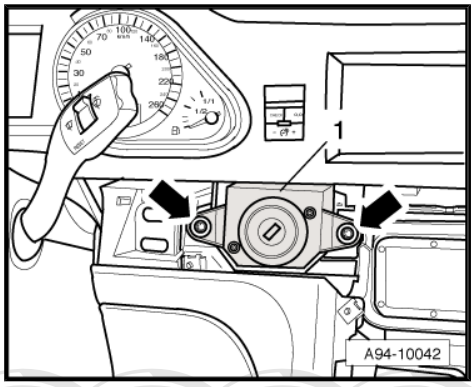
– Unplug electrical connector at instrument cluster. To do so, press catch -1-, turn retaining bracket in direction of -arrow- and detach connector.



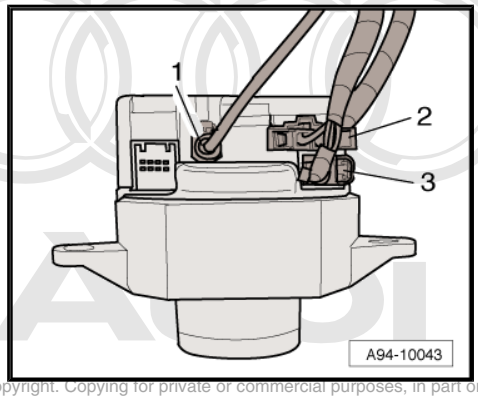
– Release connector locking element -1- at MMI display -arrow- and swivel upwards.
– Unplug electrical connector -2- at MMI display.
– Detach instrument cluster trim with instrument cluster and MMI display.
– Remove Climatronic control unit -J255- ⇒ Air conditioner; Rep. gr. 87 .



– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Remove entry and start authorisation switch -E415- from dash panel.

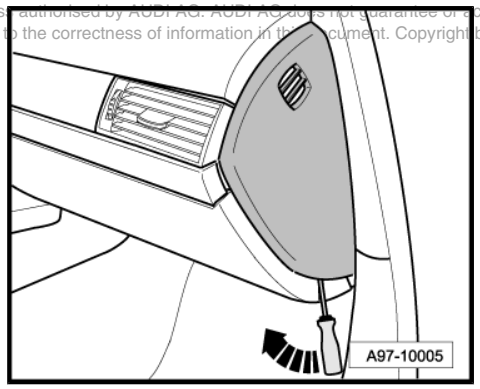


– Unplug electrical connectors -1 ... 3-.



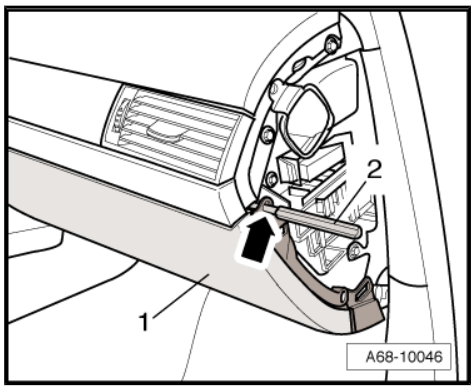
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Use screwdriver to prise off dash panel end trim on passenger side -arrow-.

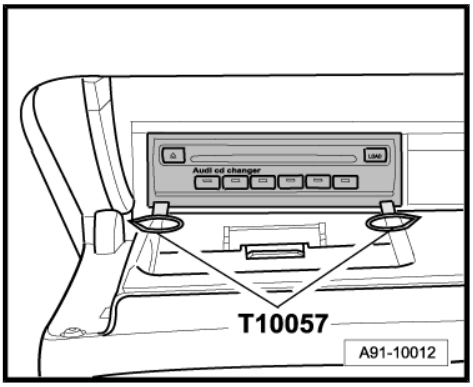


Note

- *If the glove box lid does not open it can be manually released.*
- *Insert 6 mm ∅ punch -item 2- into opening -arrow-, press in locking pin and open glove box lid -1-.*



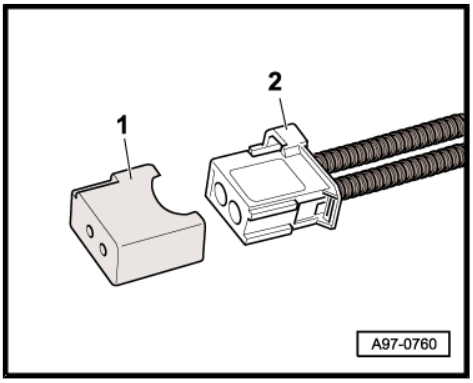
– If vehicle is fitted with a CD changer -R41- remove it as follows:
– Insert 2 keys of radio release tool -T10057- into front of CD changer -R41- .
♦ Top L - top left
♦ Top R - top right
– Pull CD changer -R41- out of mounting frame.
– Unplug electrical connector.



– Unplug connector -2- for fibre optic cable.
– Cover open wiring harness connector -2- of optical fibre cable with protective cap -VAS 6223/9- -Item 1-.

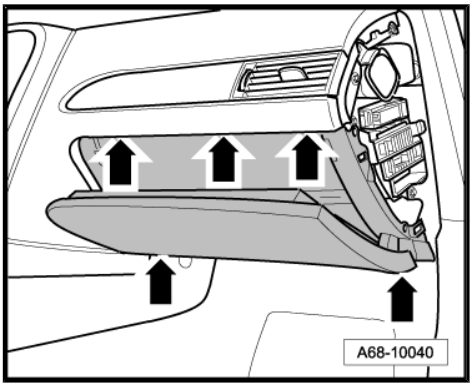
Note

The protective cap is designed to prevent the end face of the fibre optic from becoming soiled or damaged, as this would impair light transmission.



– Press catches on CD changer -R41- and pull release keys out of CD changer.

– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Unplug electrical connector at main connector.
– Detach glove box.



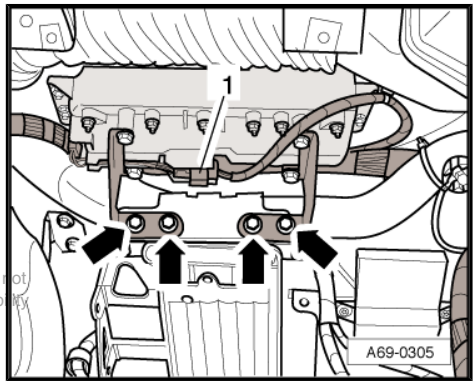
WARNING

Observe safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- on central tube for dash panel.

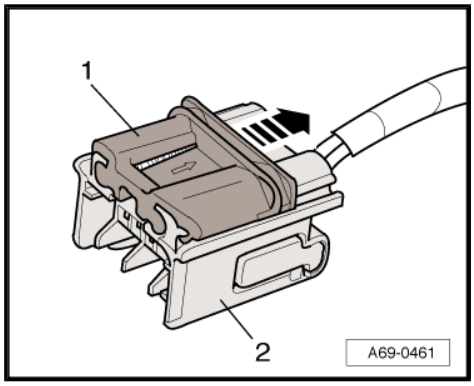
WARNING

The mechanic must discharge static electricity before unplugging the electrical connector; to do so, briefly touch door striker plate, or similar.

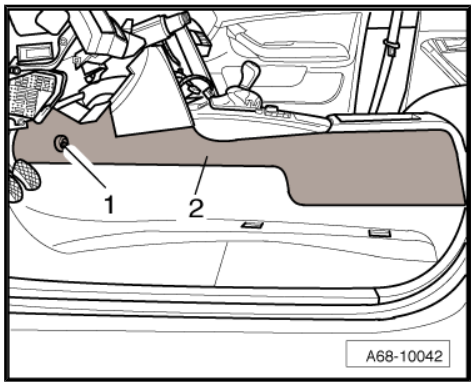


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

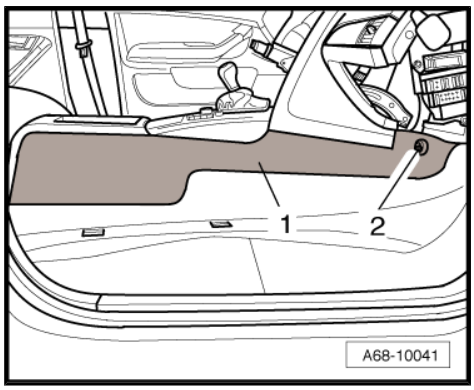
– Press catch -1- in direction of -arrow- until connector disengages.
– Unplug electrical connector -2-.



– Use screwdriver to prise cap off bolt -1-.
– Remove bolt.
– Unclip side trim (left-side) for centre console -2- using removal wedge -3409- and lift out.



– Use screwdriver to prise cap off bolt -2-.
– Remove bolt.
– Unclip side trim for centre console -1- using removal wedge -3409- and lift out.

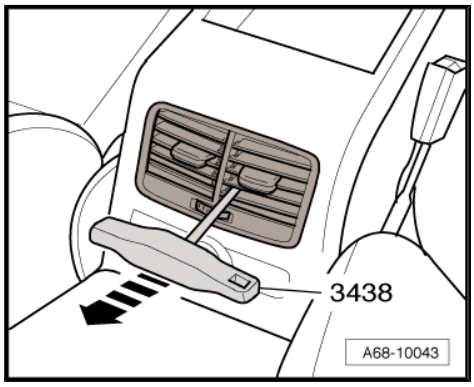


– Bring louvres in vent on centre console (rear) into a horizontal position.

Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

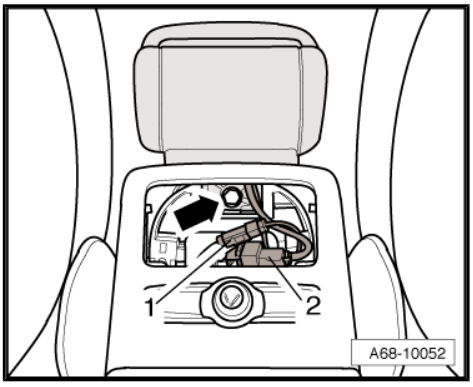
The vent on the centre console (rear) has holes for inserting the hook -3438- .



– Use hook -3438- to pull vent on centre console (rear) out of centre console (rear) in direction of -arrow-.
– If applicable, unplug electrical connector at vent on centre console (rear).

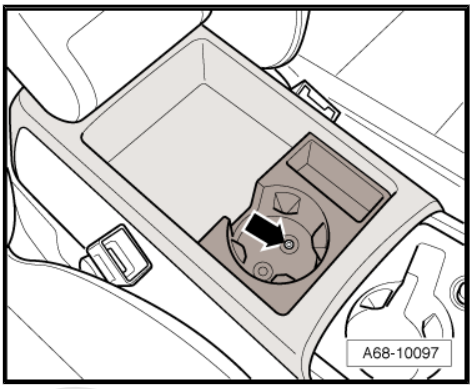
Vehicles with centre armrest (front):

– If fitted, unplug electrical connectors -1- and -2-.
– Remove bolt -arrow-.
– Lift out centre armrest (front).



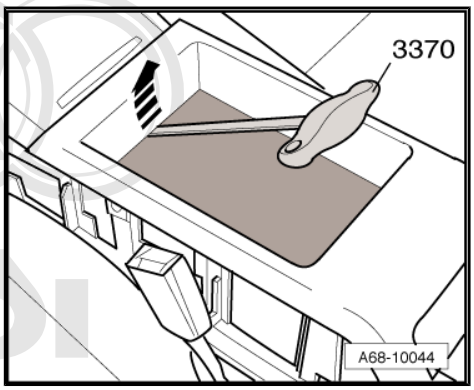
Vehicles with cup holder (rear):

– Take out lining mat.
– Remove bolt -arrow-.
– Pull cup holder (rear) out of centre console (rear).



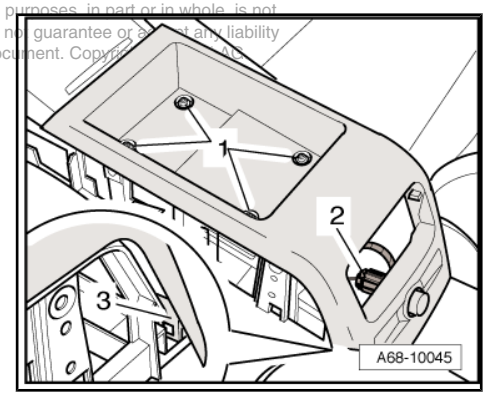
All vehicles:

– Use front-end hook -3370- to lift lining mat for storage compartment (rear) out of centre console (rear) in direction of -arrow-.

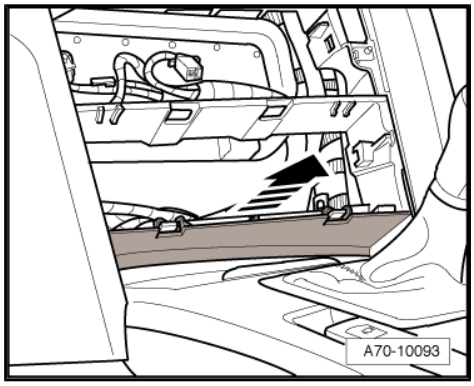


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

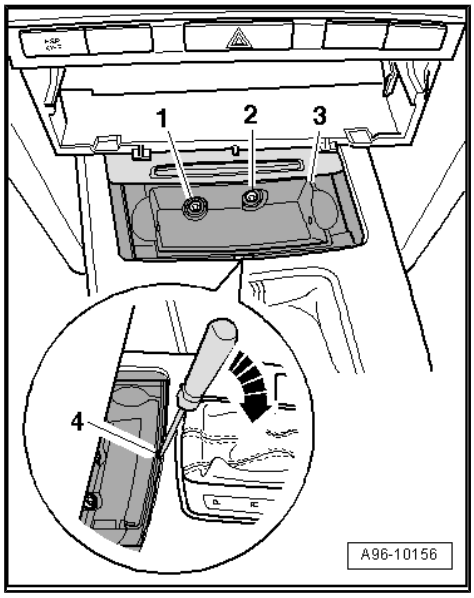
– Unplug electrical connector -2-.
– Unscrew bolts -1-.
– Release centre console (rear left and right) by pulling retaining hooks -3-. Then lift out centre console (rear).
– If fitted, unplug electrical connectors of rotary control for seat heating (rear).



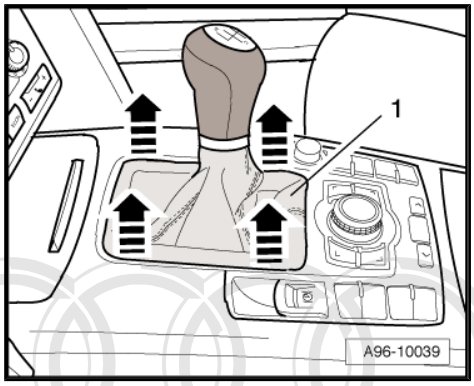
– Detach trim cover -arrow- from above ashtray.



– Open ashtray (front).
– Take insert out of ashtray (front).
– Remove bolts -1- and -2-.
– Use a screwdriver -arrow- to release ashtray -3-. To do so, apply screwdriver in opening -4-.
– Remove housing for ashtray (front).
– If fitted, unplug electrical connector.

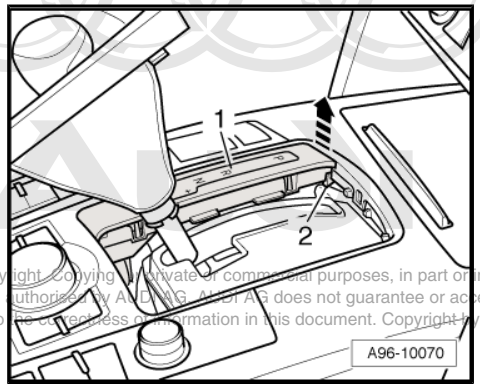


– Unclip boot -1- for gear lever or selector lever on both sides and lift it off -arrows-.



Vehicles with automatic gearbox:

– Release retaining spring -2- and lift out selector lever indicator -1-.
– Unplug electrical connector.



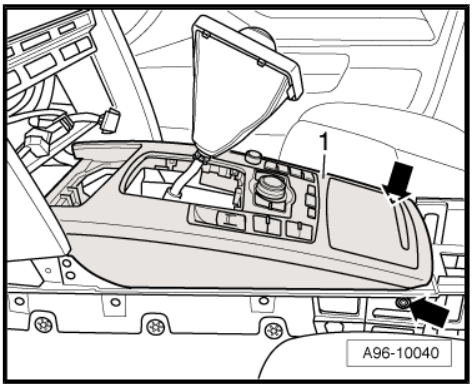
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

All vehicles:

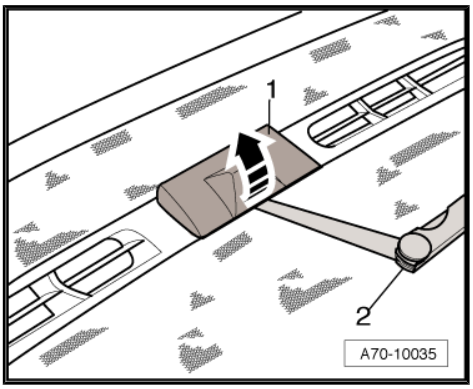
– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Lift centre console (front) slightly at rear edge and then pull centre console off dash panel towards the rear.

– Unplug electrical connectors.



– Use feeler gauge (0.35 mm) -2- to prise out photosensor for sunlight penetration -G107- -item 1- and unplug electrical connector.

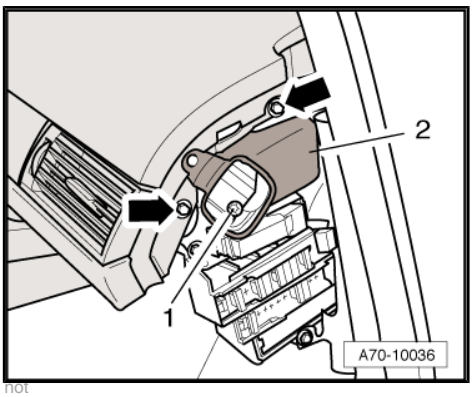


– Remove A-pillar trim (front passenger side) ⇒ page 246 .

– Remove spreader pin -1- at air duct -2- and remove air duct.

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- on dash panel (front passenger side).

– If fitted, unplug electrical connector for dash panel vent (front passenger side).

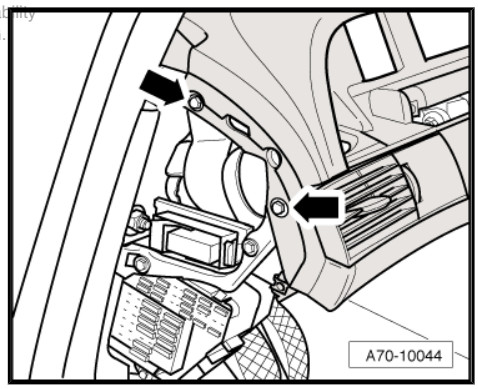


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

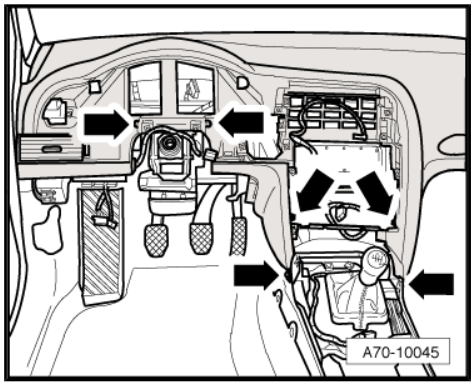
– Remove A-pillar trim (driver side) ⇒ page 246 .

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- on dash panel (driver side).

– Unplug electrical connectors for dash panel vent (driver side) and for rotary control for headlight range control.



– Unscrew bolts -arrows- on dash panel (centre).



Note

A second mechanic is required for detaching the dash panel.

– Take dash panel out of vehicle interior.
– Set down dash panel with upper side resting on a soft surface.

Installing

WARNING

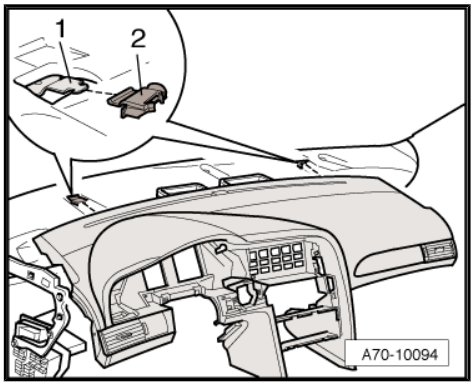
For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

Note

Re-attach all cable ties at the same locations when re-installing.

Online Version by http://www.Audi-Tech.info - Use subject to terms and conditions.
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Check that a rubber buffer -2- is fitted on each clip -1- at bottom of windscreen frame (left and right).
- Position dash panel and guide connector for photosensor through the opening.
- Insert front part of dash panel into clip, pressing it down slightly at the same time.
- Align dash panel and tighten bolts.
- Install centre console (front) ⇒ page 22 .
- Install centre console (rear) ⇒ page 17 .
- Install glove box ⇒ page 13 .
- Install steering wheel ⇒ Running gear, front-wheel drive and four-wheel drive; Rep. gr. 48 .
- Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

Tightening torques

Component		Nm
Dash panel to central tube for dash panel		3.5
Dash panel cover (bottom) on driver side	Central tube for dash panel	3
to	Bracket	3
Trim (bottom)	Steering column	3.5
for steering column switch to	Trim (top) for steering column switch	0.6
Bracket for airbag unit (passenger side) to central tube for dash panel		9
Instrument cluster trim to dash panel		2.5
Steering column switch to steering column		4
Side trim to air conditioner unit		3
Entry and start authorisation switch -E415- to dash panel		3

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 Central tube for dash panel

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view of central tube for dash panel”, page 230

⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing central tube for dash panel”, page 231

⇒ “4.3 Fitting new retainer for bracket for glove box”, page 243

4.1 Exploded view of central tube for dash panel

1 - Retaining bracket (driver side)

2 - 25 Nm

3 - Central tube for dash panel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 231
- ❑ If the retainer for securing bracket for glove box ⇒ Item 19 (page 231) is damaged, a new retainer must be fitted ⇒ page 243

4 - Seal

5 - 9 Nm

6 - 12 Nm

7 - 25 Nm

8 - Mounting bracket

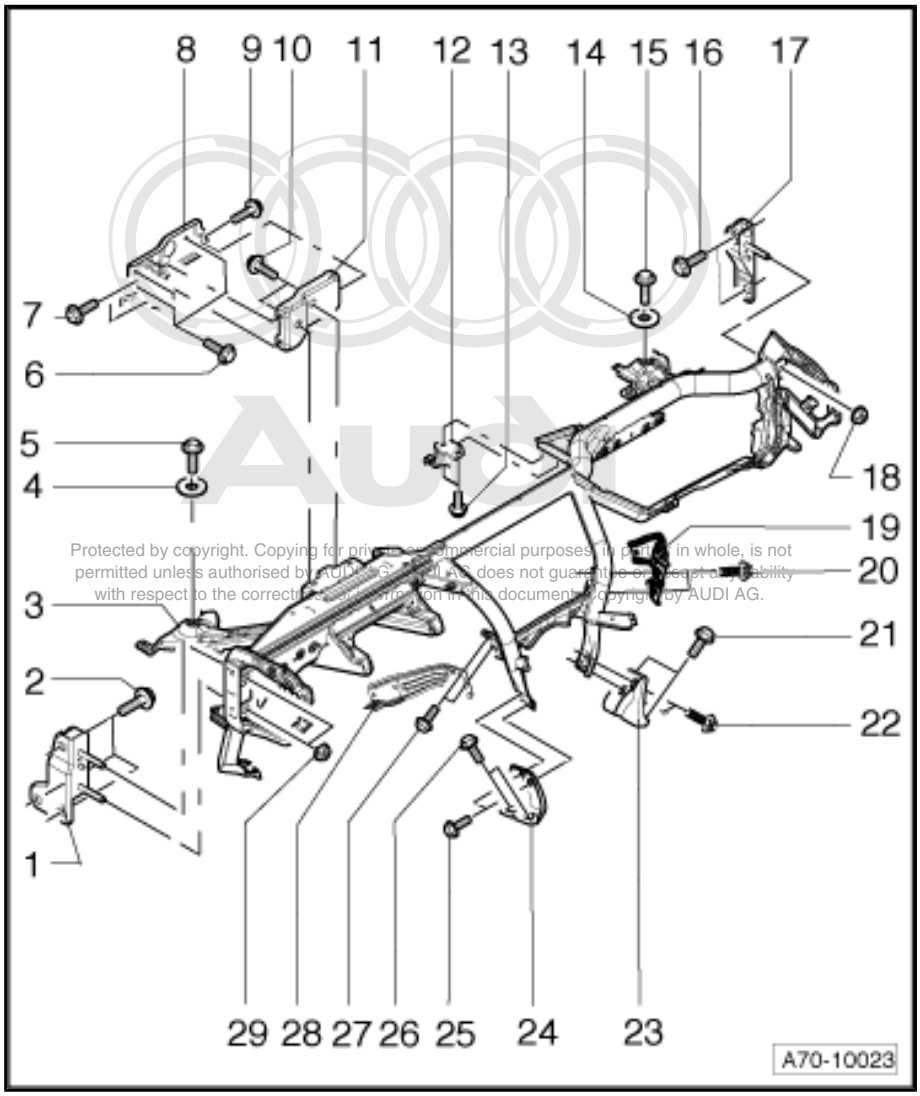
9 - 25 Nm

10 - 25 Nm

11 - Compensating mounting

12 - Bracket

- ❑ For air conditioning unit



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness and completeness of information in this document. © Copyright by AUDI AG.

13 - 9 Nm

14 - Seal

15 - 9 Nm

16 - 25 Nm

17 - Retaining bracket (passenger side)

18 - 25 Nm

19 - Bracket for glove box

20 - 9 Nm

21 - 25 Nm

22 - 25 Nm

23 - Support (passenger side)

24 - Support (driver side)

25 - 25 Nm

26 - 25 Nm

27 - 9 Nm

28 - Bracket

- ❑ For dash panel cover (bottom) on driver side

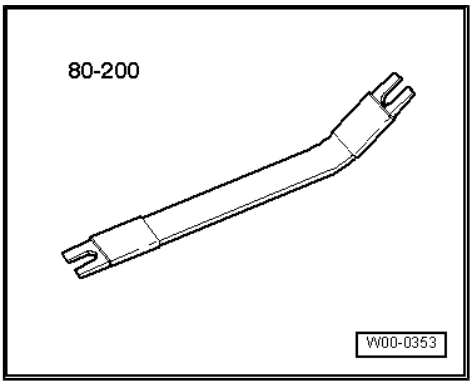
29 - 25 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

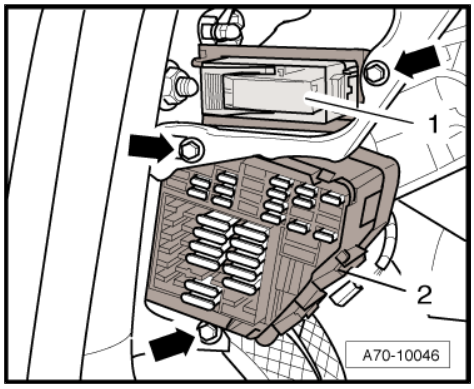
4.2 Removing and installing central tube for dash panel

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Removal lever -80-200-



Removing

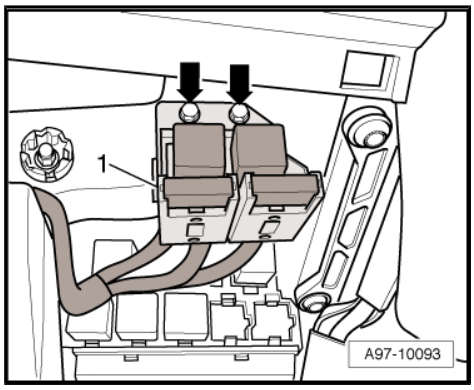


Note

All cable ties unfastened or cut open during removal must be re-attached at the same location during installation.

- Remove dash panel ⇒ page 214 .
- Unscrew bolts -arrows- for fuse holder and CAN connector (driver side).
- Detach CAN connector -T46a- -item 1- with bracket from central tube for dash panel, pulling it towards the vehicle interior.
- Detach fuse holder -2- from central tube for dash panel; the electrical wires remain attached.

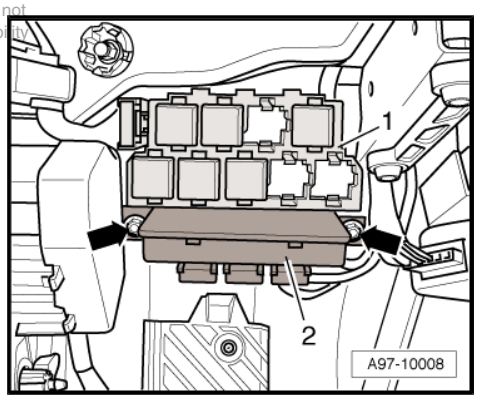
Vehicles with automatic gearbox:



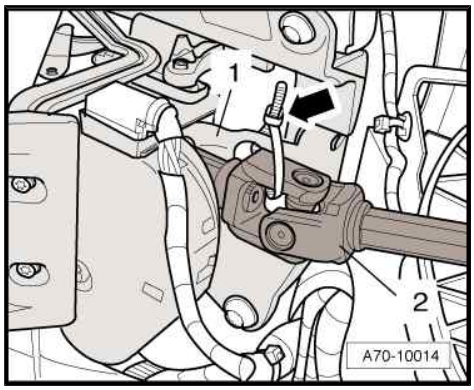
- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Detach relay and fuse holder -1- and set it down in footwell with wires connected.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

All vehicles:



- Unscrew nuts -arrows- and detach onboard supply control unit -J519- -item 2- with wiring connected.



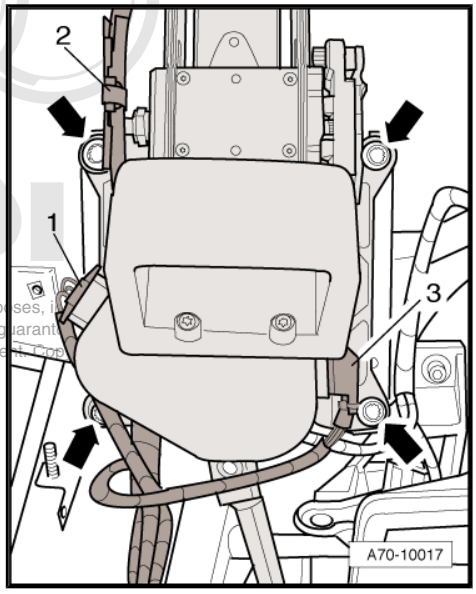
- Detach relay and fuse holder -1- and set it down in footwell with wires connected.
- Secure steering column with cable tie -arrow-, to make sure upper section of steering column -1- is not inadvertently detached from lower section -2- during removal.

Note

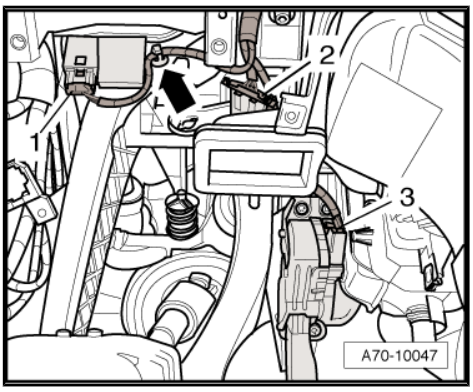
Rattling noise may be encountered whilst driving if splines are no longer engaged in original installation position.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

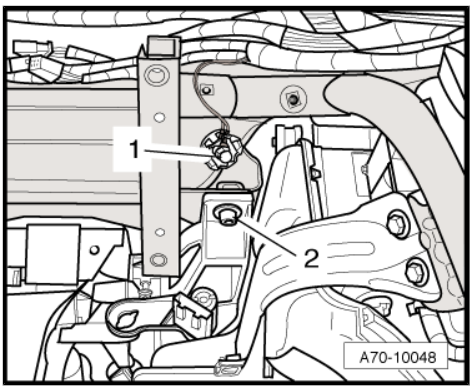
– Unplug electrical connectors -1- and -3-.
– Disengage cable guide -2- at steering column.
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and set down steering column in foot-well.



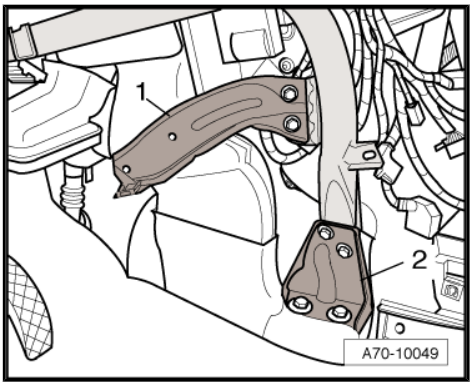
– Unplug electrical connectors -1-, -2- and -3-.
– Disengage electrical wire -arrow-.



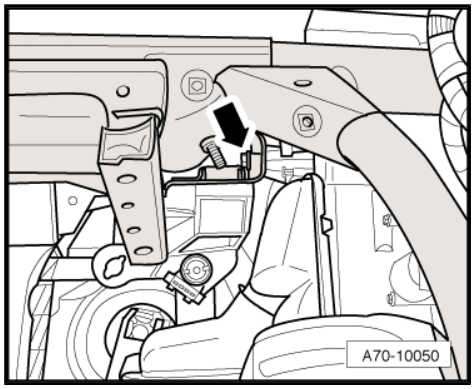
– Unscrew earth wires at earth point -1-.
– Remove bolt -2- for pedal bracket.



– Unscrew bracket -1- for dash panel cover (bottom; driver side) at central tube for dash panel.
– Remove support (driver side) -2- of central tube for dash panel.

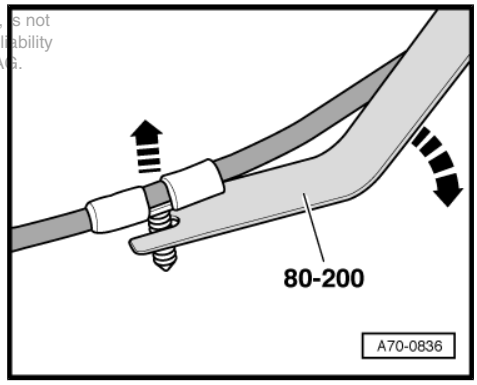


– Remove bolt -arrow- (left-side) for air conditioner unit.

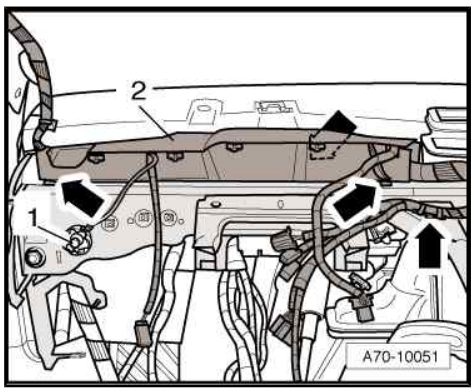


– Use removal lever -80-200- to unseat wiring harness and cable duct -arrows-.

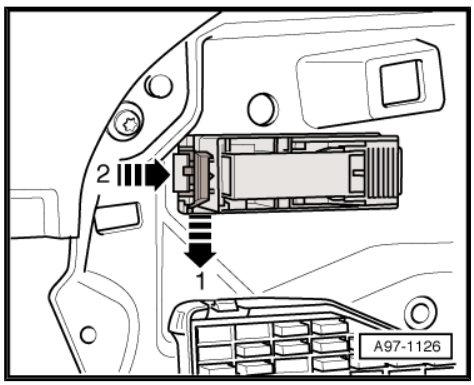
Copyright by AUDI AG. This document, or any part thereof, may not be reproduced or transmitted in any form, in whole, or in part, by any means, electronic or mechanical, for any purpose, unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



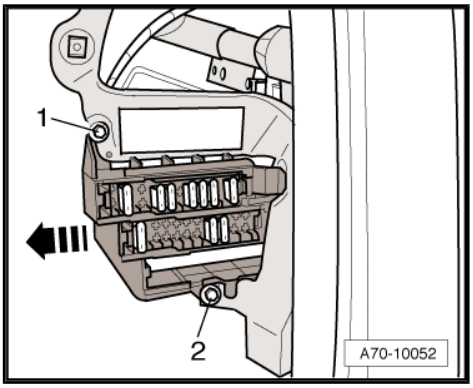
– Unscrew earth wire at earth point -1-.
– Lever cable duct -2- off central tube for dash panel.
– Push retainer clips of wiring harness off central tube for dash panel.



– Push retaining clip on CAN connector -T46b- (passenger side) in direction of -arrow 1-.
– Press retaining tab -arrow 2- to release CAN connector -T46b- , then detach CAN connector by pulling it towards vehicle interior.



– Remove bolts -1- and -2-.
– Detach fuse holder IV (passenger side) from central tube for dash panel in direction of -arrow-.

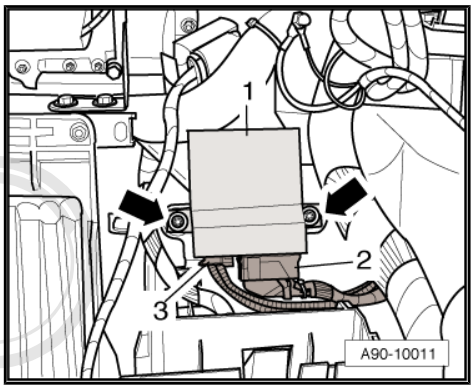


– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Detach data bus diagnostic interface -J533- -item 1-.

Note

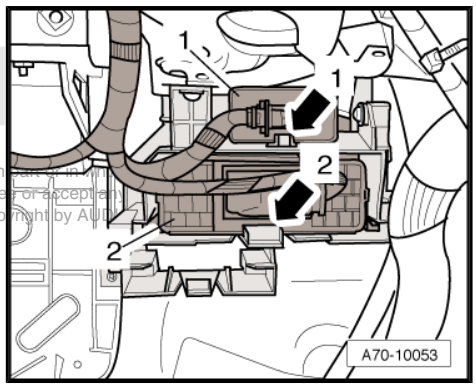
Leave connectors -2- and -3- plugged in.

– Set down data bus diagnostic interface -J533- in footwell.

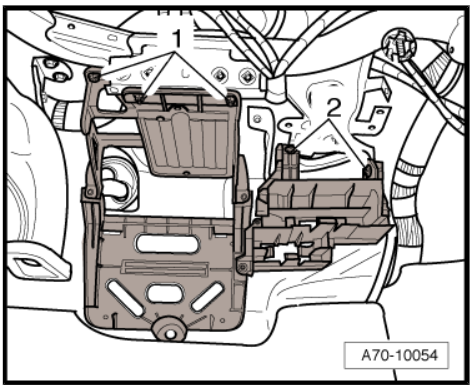


– Press retaining clip downwards -arrow 2-.
– Pull onboard power supply control unit 2 -J520- -item 2- out of mounting frame.
– Press retaining clip downwards -arrow 1-.
– Pull control unit for headlight range control -J431- -item 1- out of mounting frame.

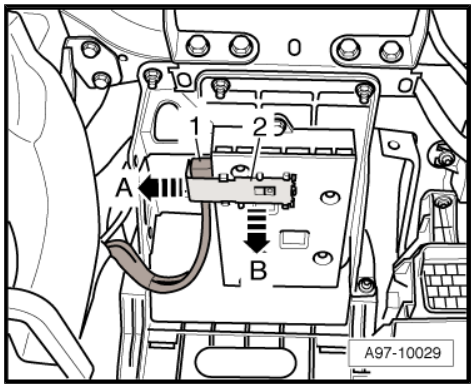
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



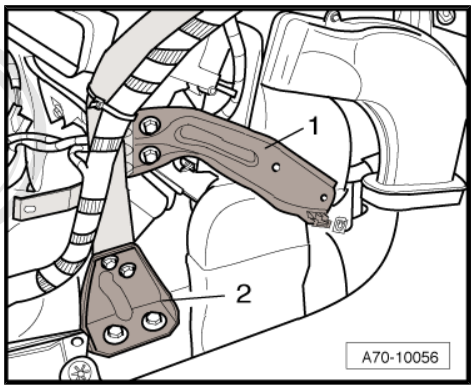
– Unscrew bolts -2- and nuts -1-.
– Detach bracket for control units.



– If fitted, pull retaining clip -2- to left -arrow A- and pivot downwards -arrow B-.
– Unplug electrical connector -1- at front information control unit -J523- .

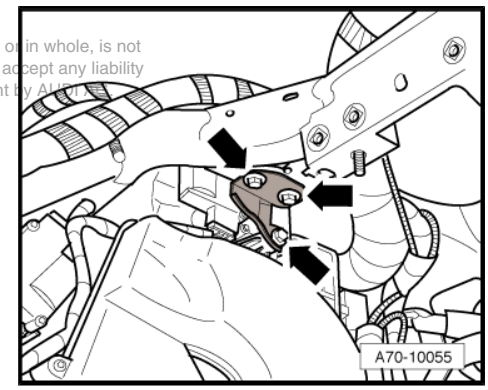


– Unscrew bracket for glove box -1- from central tube for dash panel.
– Unscrew support (passenger side) -2-.

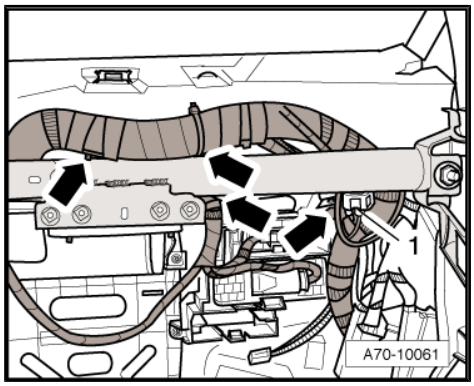


– Remove bolts -arrows- and take out bracket for air conditioner unit.

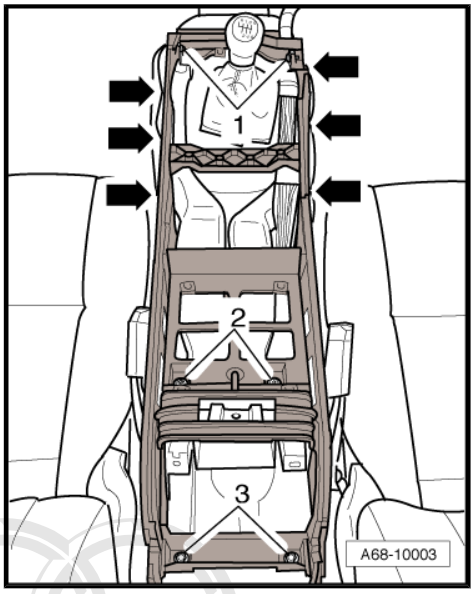
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI



– Unscrew earth wire at earth point -1-.
– Use removal lever -80-200- to unseat electrical wiring harness off central tube for dash panel -arrows-.

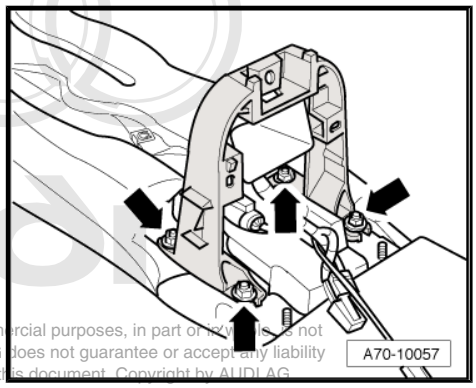


– Unscrew bolts -1- and -2- and nuts -3-.
– Unhook floor covering on sides of mounting frame for centre console -arrows-.
– Lift mounting frame for centre console out of studs and pull off towards the rear.



Vehicles with centre armrest (front):

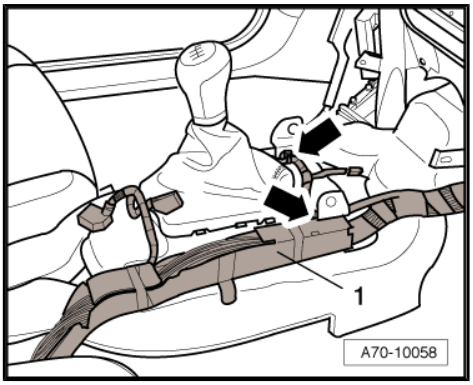
– Unscrew nuts -arrows- and detach support bracket for centre armrest (front).



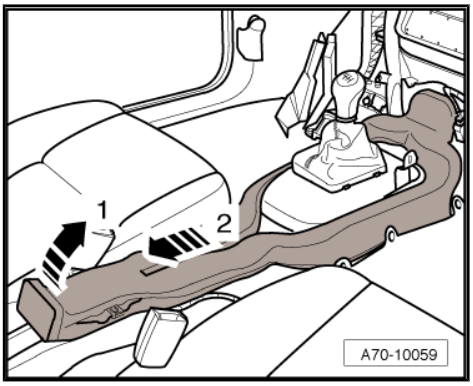
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

All vehicles:

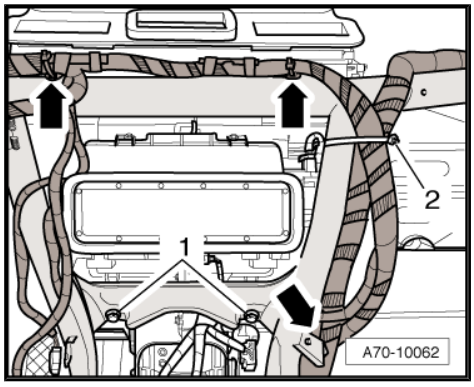
– Detach cable guide -1- from air duct.
– Use removal lever -80-200- to unseat electrical wires off retainers -arrows-.



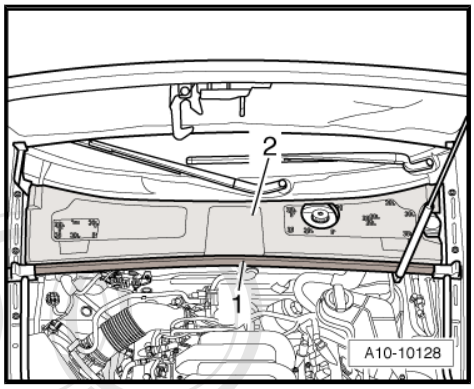
– Lift air duct at rear -arrow 1- and detach from air conditioner unit -arrow 2-.



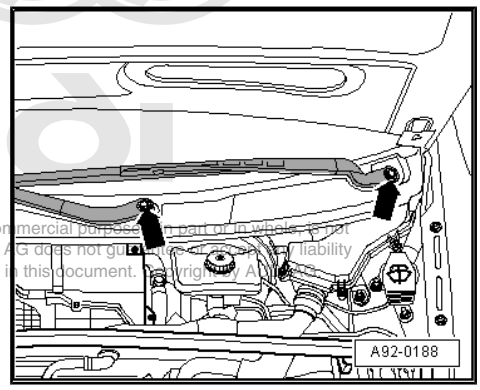
– Unscrew bolts -1-.
– Open cable tie -2-.
– Use removal lever -80-200- to unseat electrical wiring harness off central tube for dash panel -arrows-.



– Pull rubber seal -1- off plenum chamber cover.
– Remove plenum chamber cover -2-.

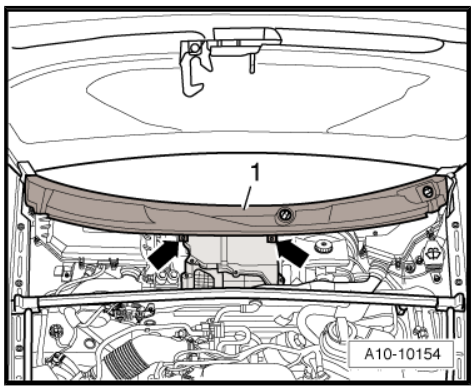


– Use screwdriver to prise cover caps off wiper arms.
– Slacken off hexagon nuts -arrows- several turns.
– Detach wiper arms from wiper shafts by tilting arms slightly. Then remove hexagon nuts and take off wiper arms.

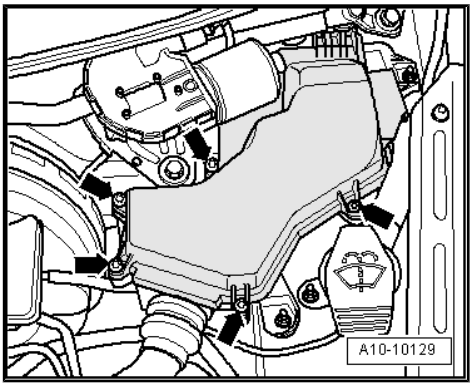


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

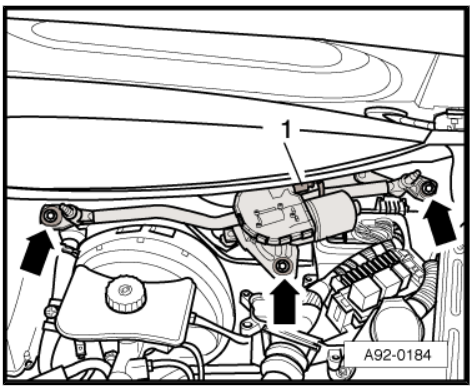
– Remove bolts -arrows- for cowl panel trim -1- on left and right.
– Carefully pull cowl panel trim off retainer at windscreen.



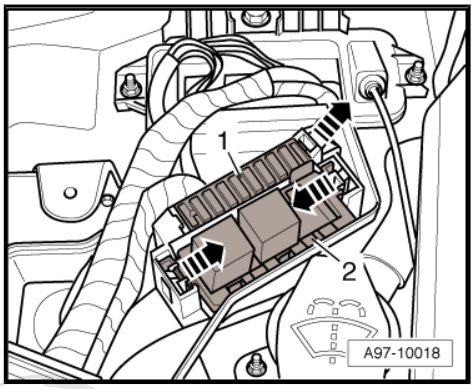
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Take cover off plenum chamber electronics box (driver side).



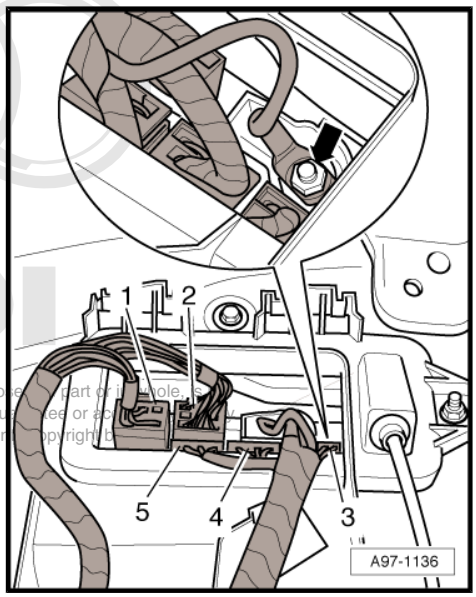
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and completely remove wiper frame.
– Unplug electrical connector -1-.



– Release retainers -arrows- and lift fuse holder -1- and additional relay carrier -2- out of electronics box.

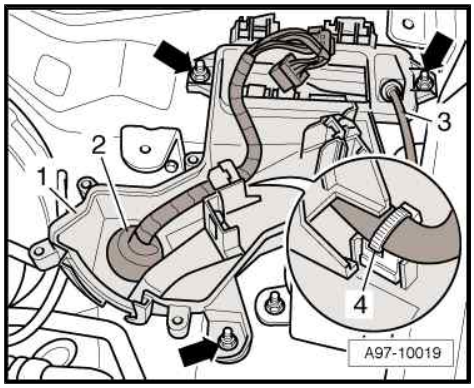


– Unplug electrical multi-pin connectors -1 ... 5-.
– Unscrew nut -arrow- at positive wire.

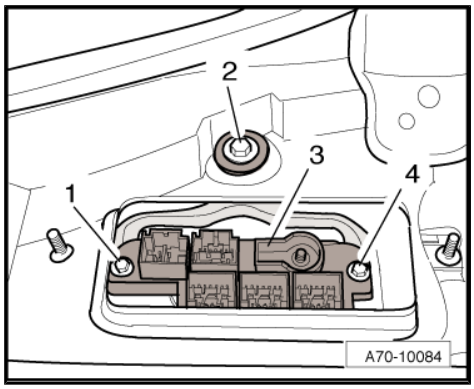


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpo[illegible] part of this [illegible] permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu[illegible]ee or ac[illegible] with respect to the correctness of information in this documen[illegible]

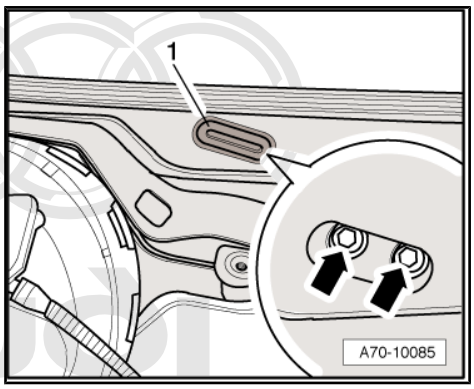
– Detach bonnet release cable at release lever ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 .
– Disengage engine wiring harness -4- at electronics box -1-.
– Press sealing collar -2- out of electronics box and guide engine wiring harness out through the opening.
– Remove nuts -arrows- and lift off electronics box.
– Guide bonnet cable out of electronics box.



– Unscrew bolts -1- and -4- for connector console and detach connector console -3- at central tube for dash panel.
– Remove bolt -2- of central tube for dash panel on driver side.



– Remove plug -1- at plenum chamber partition panel on driver side.
– Remove bolts -arrows- for central tube for dash panel through opening in plenum chamber partition panel.

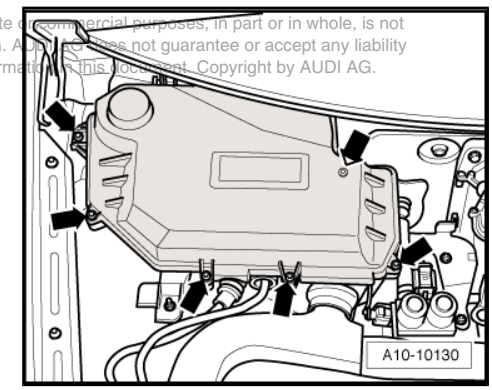


– Remove bolts -arrows- and lift off cover of plenum chamber electronics box (passenger side).

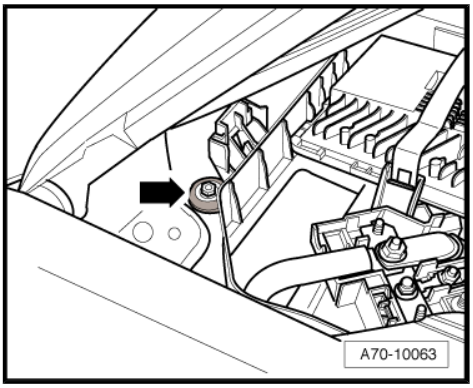
Translated by Google Translate for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

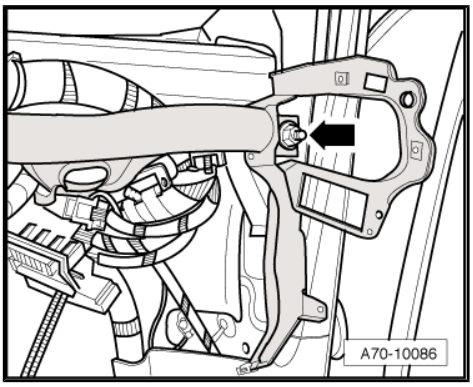
The pump/valve unit of the heating system (on left, in front of electronics box) becomes very hot during operation - risk of burns!



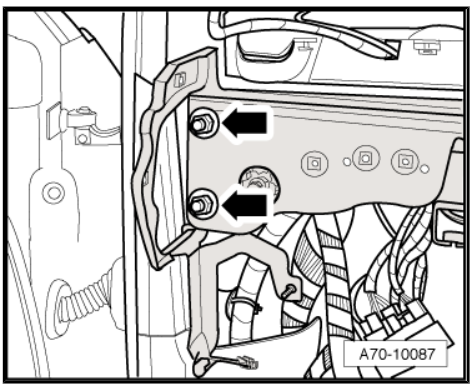
– Remove bolt -arrow- of central tube for dash panel on passenger side.



– Unscrew nut -arrow- (passenger side) at central tube for dash panel.



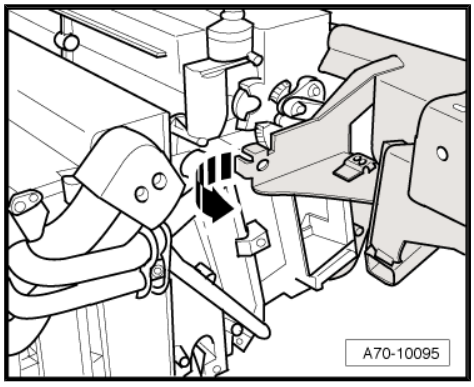
– Unscrew nuts -arrows- (driver side) at central tube for dash panel.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

For better clarity, the illustration shows the central tube for dash panel and the air conditioner unit from the front when removed.



– Use a screwdriver to pivot left bracket for air conditioner unit at central tube for dash panel about 90° forwards in direction of -arrow-.

Note

A second mechanic is required to detach central tube for dash panel.

– Take central tube for dash panel out of vehicle interior.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

Note

- *Renew self-locking nuts and bolts when performing assembly work.*
- *Re-attach all cable ties at the same locations when re-installing.*

– Secure steering column to central tube for dash panel ⇒ Running gear, front-wheel drive and four-wheel drive; Rep. gr. 48 .
– Install plenum chamber electronics box (left-side) ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 .
– Install dash panel ⇒ page 214 .
– Install mounting frame for centre console ⇒ page 31 .
– Install steering wheel ⇒ page 131
– Install airbag unit (driver side) ⇒ page 128 .
– Install airbag unit (front passenger side) ⇒ page 135 .
– Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Tightening torques

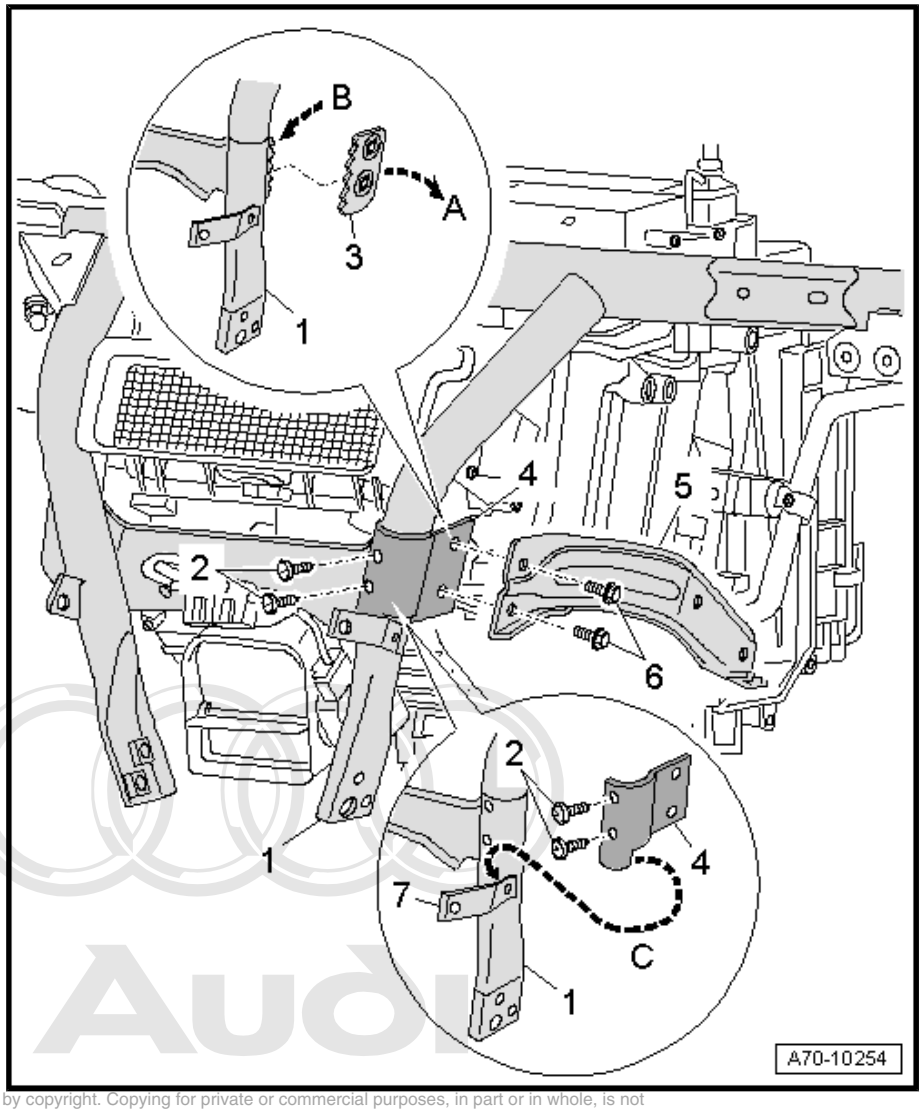
Component		Nm
Central tube for dash panel to body		25
Central tube for dash panel to plenum chamber		9
Support (driver side) and	Central tube for dash panel	8
(passenger side) to	Body	25
Fuse holder to central tube for dash panel		3
Relay and fuse holder to central tube for dash panel		3
Support bracket for centre armrest (front) to body		25
Data bus diagnostic interface -J533- to central tube for dash panel		3
Retaining bracket for glove box to central tube for dash panel		9
Retaining bracket for dash panel cover (bottom, driver side) to central tube for dash panel		9
Bracket for air conditioner unit to central tube for dash panel		9
Earth wires to central tube for dash panel		9
Pedal bracket to central tube for dash panel		23
Air conditioner unit	Bracket	8
to	Central tube for dash panel	8
Bracket for control units to central tube for dash panel		3

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.3 Fitting new retainer for bracket for glove box

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Repair kit ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Angle grinder, small
- Electric drill
- Safety goggles
- Drill bit ∅ 3.6 mm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Procedure

Note

- *If the new bracket for the glove box on the right strut of the central tube for dash panel has broken off, it can be replaced by a new retainer from the repair kit. For repair kit refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*
- *For greater clarity, the dash panel has been removed in the illustration.*

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 12 .

– Remove dash panel vent (centre) ⇒ page 212 .

– Remove Climatronic control unit -J255- (operating and display unit) ⇒ Air conditioner; Rep. gr. 87 .

– Detach remains of damaged retainer -3- from strut -1- of central tube -arrow A-.

– File down cutting location -arrow B- on strut of central tube.

– Locate new retainer -4- on strut of central tube -arrow-.

– Hold new retainer in this position and drill two holes (∅ 3.6 mm) in strut of central tube.

– Remove new retainer and use abrasive paper to roughen the contact surfaces on the new retainer and on the strut.
– Clean new retainer and strut.
– Coat complete contact surface of new retainer with adhesive from repair kit.
– Use bolts -2- from repair kit to secure new retainer to strut of central tube (tightening torque: 4 Nm).
– Use the previously fitted bolts -6- to secure bracket for glove box -5- to new retainer (tightening torque: 9 Nm).
– Mask any sharp edges on new retainer and on cutting location with felt strips from repair kit.
– Make sure all electrical wires are routed correctly.
– Re-attach cable ties at the same locations when re-installing.

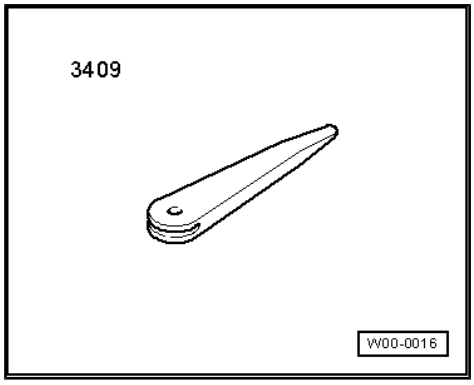
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 Trim panels

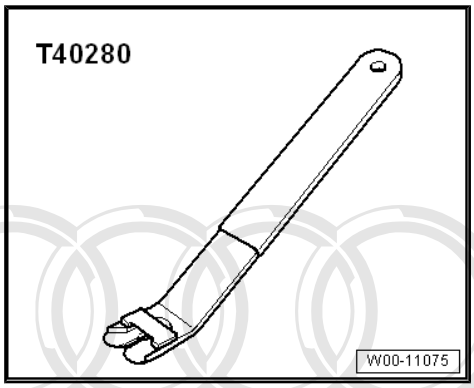
5.1 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (top)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge -3409-



- Removal wedge -T40280- is needed to remove any clips left in body mounting points



WARNING

Note safety precautions for working on curtain airbags *⇒ page 112* *.*

There are two different methods for securing the A-pillar trim (top).

The first method described applies approximately up to the introduction of the Avant.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - A-pillar trim (top)

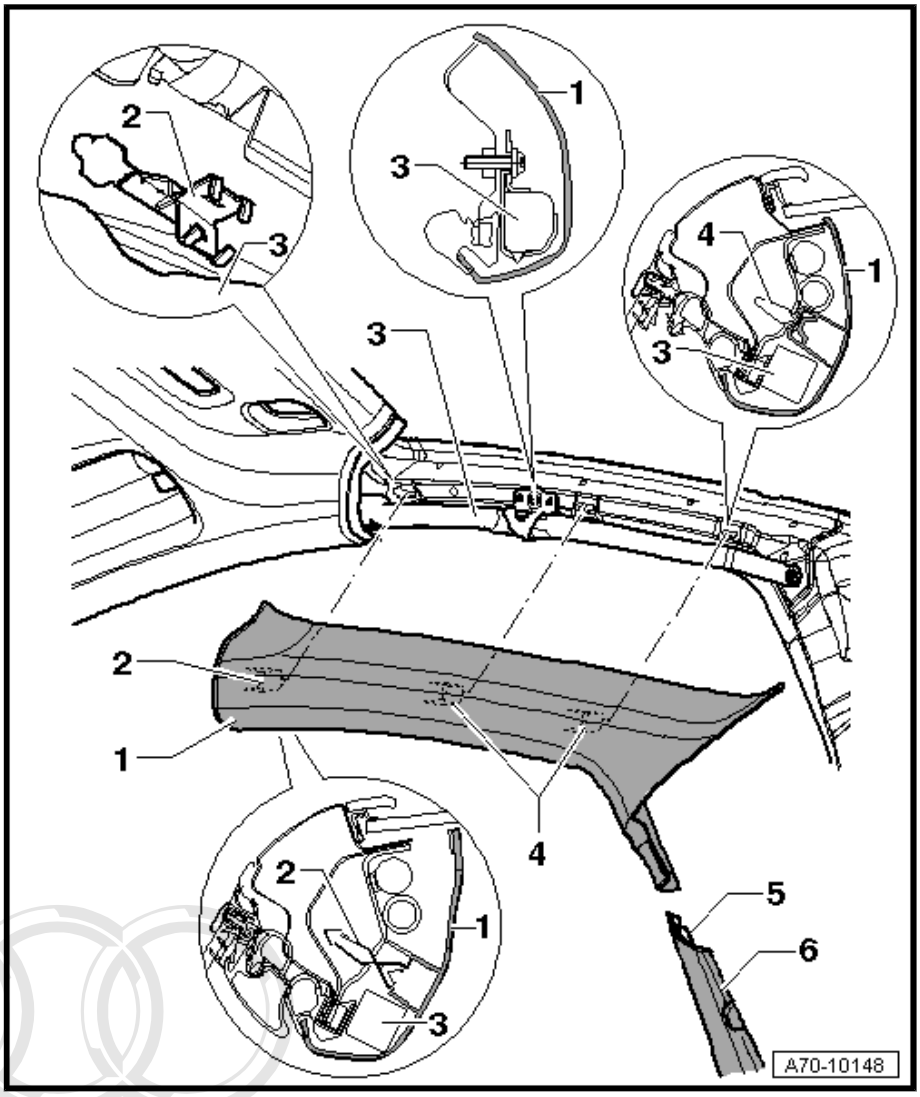
- ♦ Removing
  - – Using removal wedge -3409- , carefully prise off A-pillar trim (top) -1- as far as it will go at clip for curtain airbag -2- (»clip with catch«).
  - – In centre and lower areas, prise out clips -4- at A-pillar trim (top) -1- using removal wedge -3409- .
  - – Carefully slide A-pillar trim (top) -1- upwards (moving clip for curtain airbag -2- in keyhole-shaped opening) and take A-pillar trim (top) -1- out of connecting piece -6- and retaining spring -5-.
- ♦ Installing
  - – Check clip for curtain airbag -2- for damage or deformation.

A-pillar trim (top) must be re-newed if curtain airbag clip -2- is damaged or deformed.

  - – Check clips -4- (2x) for damage or deformation.

Any damaged or deformed clips -4- must be renewed.

  - – Before fitting A-pillar trim (top) -1-, make sure that curtain airbag clip -2- and clips -4- are positioned correctly.



Always adhere to correct sequence for installing A-pillar trim (top) -1-:

WARNING

Make sure you do not trap curtain airbag -3- when installing A-pillar trim (top) -1-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

  - – Slide A-pillar trim (top) -1- in between connecting piece -6- and retaining spring -5- ⇒ page 253 .
  - – Secure A-pillar trim (top) -1- with clips -4- (2x) and curtain airbag clip -2-, starting at bottom.

Make sure A-pillar trim (top) -1- is securely engaged.

  - – Fit lip of door seal over A-pillar trim (top) -1-.

2 - Curtain airbag clip

- ❑ If damaged or deformed, renew A-pillar trim

3 - Curtain airbag

4 - Clips (2x)

- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280-

5 - Retaining spring

❑ ⇒ Item 6 (page 248)

❑ Is fixed component of connecting piece

6 - Connecting piece

WARNING

Note safety precautions for working on curtain airbags ⇒ page 112 .

There are two different methods for securing the A-pillar trim (top).

In the following the second method is described (approx. from introduction of the Avant onwards).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - A-pillar trim (top)

♦ Removing

– In lower area, prise out clip -4- on A-pillar trim (top) -1- using removal wedge -3409- .
– Using removal wedge -3409- , carefully prise off A-pillar trim (top) -1- as far as it will go at clips -2- (2x) (»clips with catch«).
– Carefully slide A-pillar trim (top) -1- upwards (moving clips -2- (2x) in keyhole-shaped opening) and take A-pillar trim (top) -1- out of connecting piece -6- and retaining spring -5-.

♦ Installing: Install in reverse order, paying attention to the following:

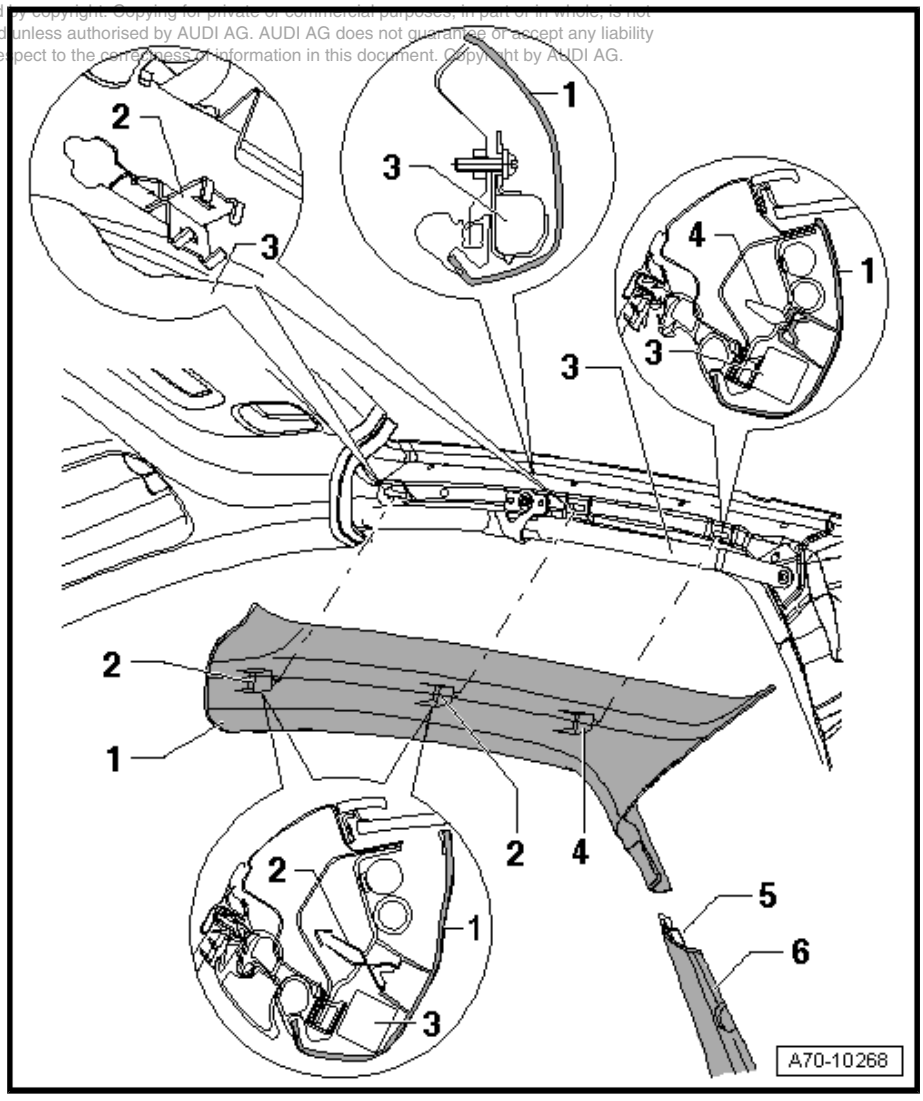
– Check clips -2- (2x) for damage or deformation.

Renew A-pillar trim (top) if clips -2- are damaged or deformed.

– Check that clip -4- is not damaged or deformed.

If damaged or deformed, renew clip -4-.

– Before fitting A-pillar trim (top) -1-, observe correct positioning of clips -2- and -4-.



WARNING

Take care not to trap curtain airbag when installing A-pillar trim (top) -1-.

Make sure A-pillar trim (top) -1- is securely engaged.

– Fit lip of door seal over A-pillar trim (top) -1-.

2 - Clips (2x)

❑ If damaged or deformed, renew D-pillar trim

Data stored and provided by Audi for information purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 - Curtain airbag

4 - Clip

❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280-

5 - Retaining spring

❑ ⇒ Item 6 (page 249)

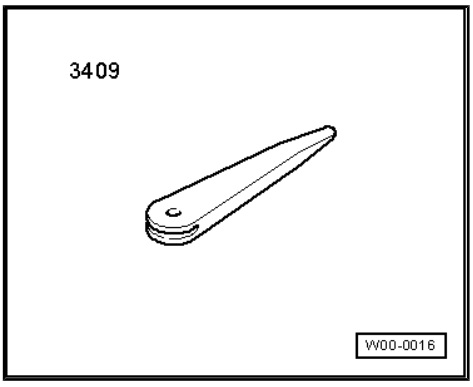
❑ Is fixed component of connecting piece

6 - Connecting piece

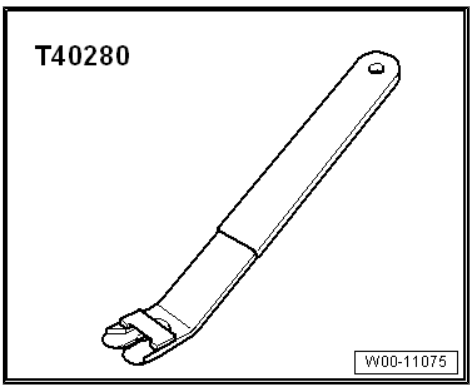
5.2 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (top) - Audi A6 Security

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge -3409-



♦ Removal wedge -T40280- is needed to remove any clips left in body mounting points



WARNING

Note safety precautions for working on curtain airbags ⇒ page 112 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - A-pillar trim (top)

- ♦ Removing
  - – Unclip “airbag” sign -3- at top edge.
  - – Remove bolt -4-.
  - – Unclip A-pillar trim (centre and bottom).
  - – Lift A-pillar trim out of connecting piece -7-.
- ♦ Installing
  - – Check clips -2- (2x) for damage or deformation.

Any damaged or deformed clips -2- must be renewed.

- – Before installing A-pillar trim, make sure clips -2- are correctly positioned.

Always keep to fitting sequence for A-pillar trim:

WARNING

Take care not to trap curtain airbag -5- when installing A-pillar trim.

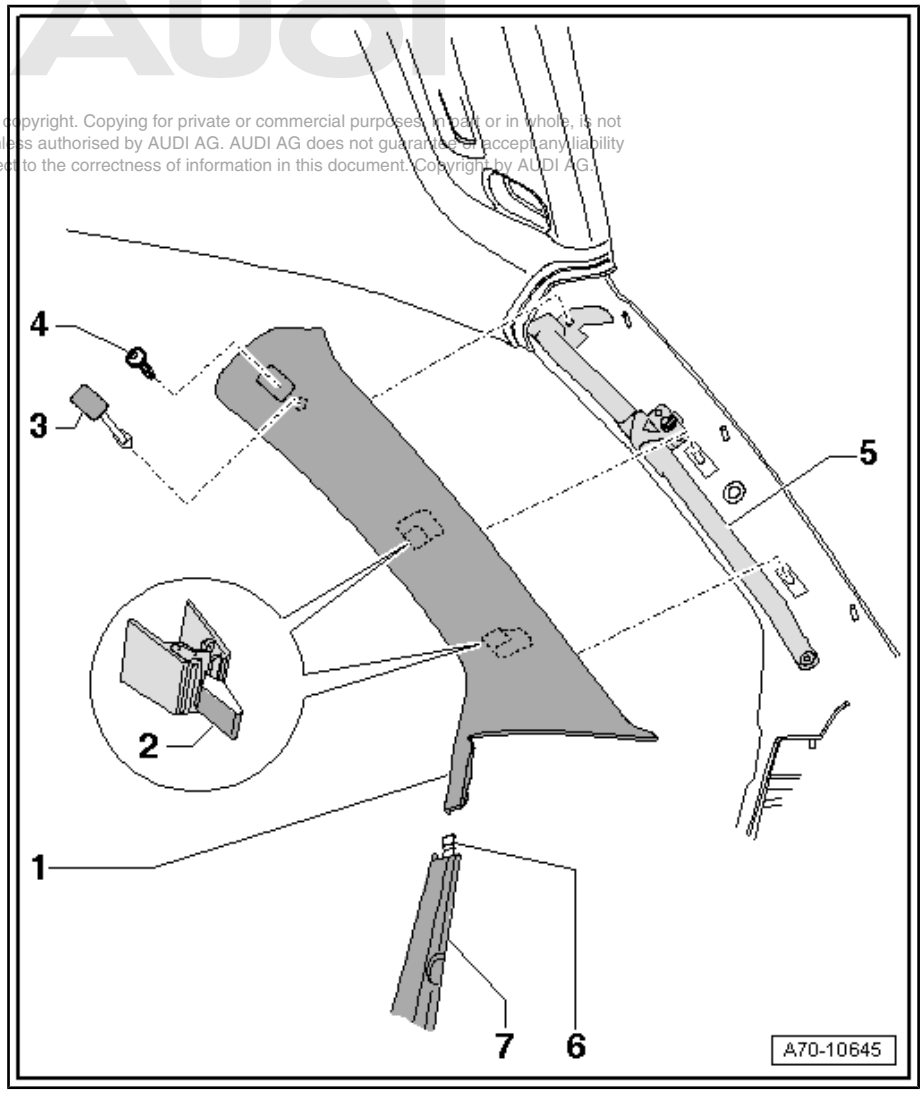
- – Slide in A-pillar trim between connecting piece -7- and retaining spring -6- ⇒ page 253 .
- – Starting at bottom, secure A-pillar trim with clips -2- (2x).
- – Tighten bolt -4-.
- – Clip “airbag” sign -3- into A-pillar trim.

Make sure A-pillar trim is firmly in position.

- – Fold lip of door seal over A-pillar trim.

2 - Retaining clips (2x)

- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280-



3 - “Airbag” sign

4 - Bolts, 3.5 Nm

5 - Curtain airbag

6 - Connecting piece

7 - Retaining spring

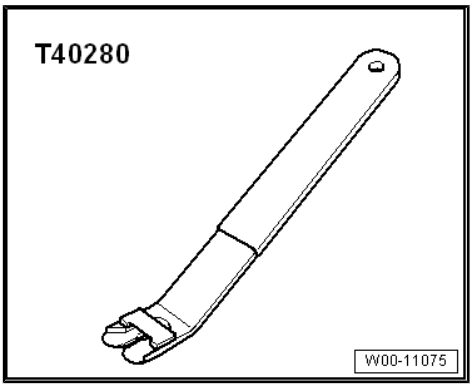
- ❑ Is fixed component of connecting piece -item 6-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

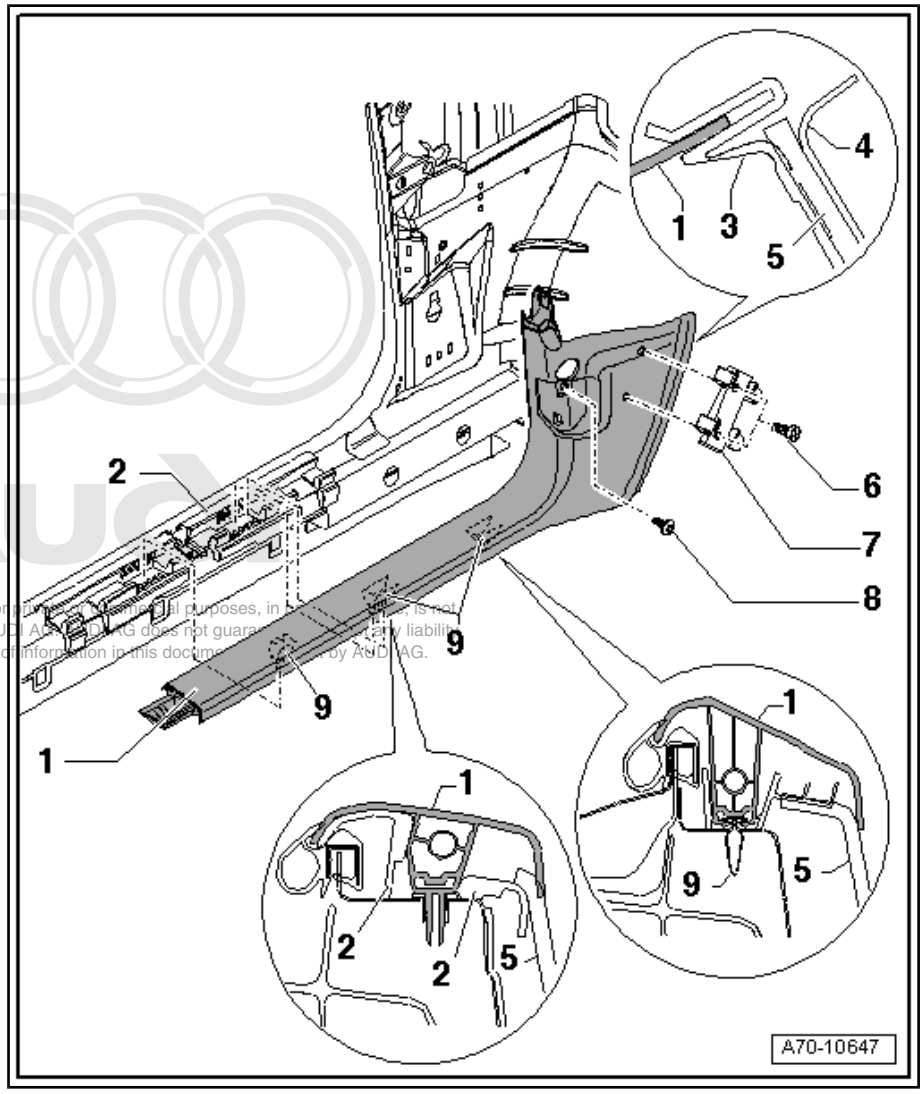
5.3 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (bottom)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Removal wedge -T40280- is needed to remove any clips left in body mounting points



1 - A-pillar trim (bottom)



- ♦ Removing
  - – Remove dash panel end trim ⇒ page 255 .
  - – Remove connecting piece ⇒ page 253 .
  - – Remove operating lever for bonnet cable ⇒ page 253 .
  - – Remove bolt -8-.

Vehicles with holder for signal flare (Japan)

- – Unscrew bolts -6-.
- – Detach holder for signal flare -7-.

All vehicles (continued)

- – Remove B-pillar trim (top).
- ♦ Audi A6 ⇒ page 257
- ♦ Audi A6 Security ⇒ page 258
- – Remove B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 260 .
- – Starting at rear, unclip A-pillar trim (bottom).
- – Detach A-pillar trim (bottom) from foot rest cover -3- to rear.
- – Take out A-pillar trim (bottom).
- ♦ Installing
- – Check that clips -9- (3x) are not damaged or deformed.

If clips are damaged or deformed they must be renewed.

- – Before installing A-pillar trim (bottom), make sure clips -9- are correctly positioned.
- – Slide A-pillar trim (bottom) into slot on foot rest cover -3-.
- – Secure A-pillar trim (bottom) -1- with clips -9- (3x).
- – Tighten bolt -8-.

Make sure A-pillar trim (bottom) -1- is securely engaged.

- – Install B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 260 .
- – Install B-pillar trim (top).
- ♦ Audi A6 ⇒ page 257
- ♦ Audi A6 Security ⇒ page 258

Vehicles with holder for signal flare (Japan)

- – Install holder for signal flare -7-.
- – Tighten bolts -6-.

All vehicles (continued)

- – Install operating lever for bonnet cable ⇒ page 253 .
- – Install connecting piece ⇒ page 253 .
- – Install dash panel end trim ⇒ page 255 .
- – Fold lip of door seal over A-pillar trim (bottom).

Audi
Copyright by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 - Support piece

3 - Foot rest cover

4 - Foot rest

5 - Floor covering

6 - Bolts (2x)

- ❑ Tightening torque: 1.8 Nm
- ❑ For holder for signal flare ⇒ Item 7 (page 253)

7 - Holder for signal flare

- ❑ Only for Japan

8 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque: 2.5 Nm

9 - Clips (3x)

- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280-

Removing and installing operating lever for bonnet cable

Removing:

– Pull operating lever -1- and release bonnet.

– Insert a small screwdriver -2- in the gap -arrow- between operating lever -1- and clip -3-.

– Lever clip -3- out of operating lever -1- and detach operating lever.

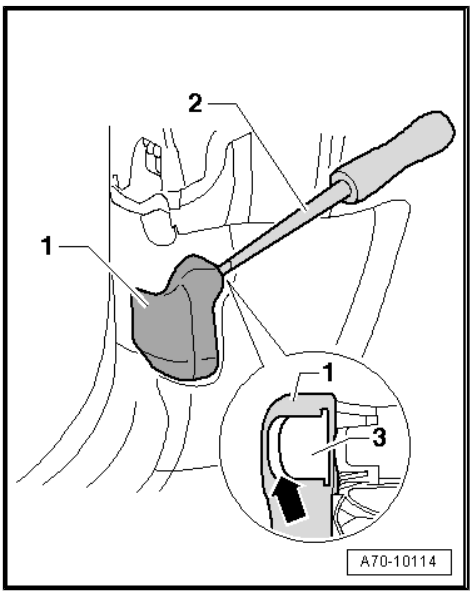
Installing:

– Push clip -3- into operating lever -1- as far as it will go.

– Press operating lever -1- onto mounting in bracket and make sure it engages.

Make sure you hear the clip -3- click into place.

– Before closing the bonnet check that the operating lever and Bowden cable are functioning correctly.

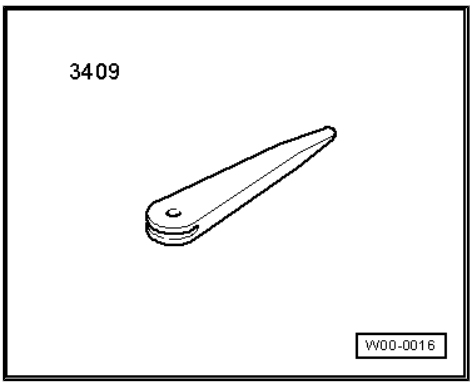


5.4 Removing and installing connecting piece

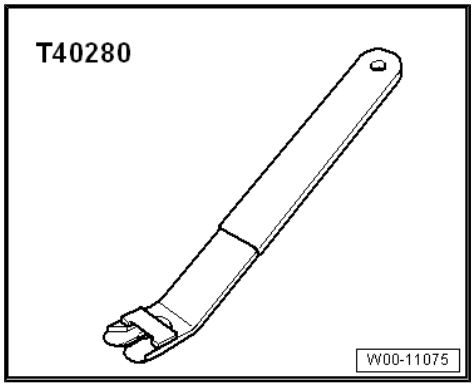
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge -3409-



- Removal wedge -T40280- is needed to remove any clips left in body mounting points



1 - Connecting piece

- Removing
  - Remove dash panel end trim ⇒ page 255 .
  - Use removal wedge -3409- to lever out connecting piece -1- at bottom.
  - Detach connecting piece -1- downwards in diagonal direction.
- Installing
  - Check that clip -7- is not damaged or deformed.

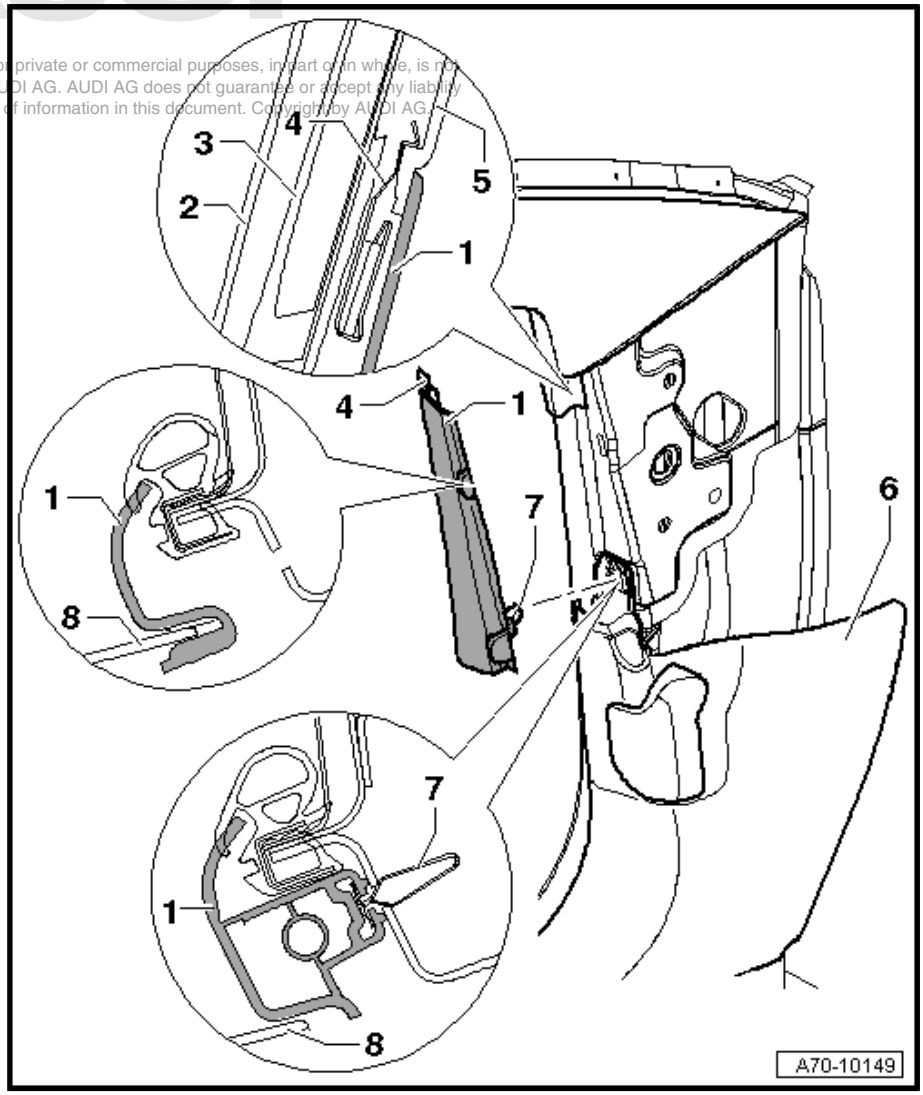
If clips are damaged or deformed they must be renewed.

  - Before fitting connecting piece -1- make sure that clip -7- is correctly positioned.
  - Push connecting piece -1- onto A-pillar trim (top) -5- from below in diagonal direction.

Make sure that A-pillar trim (top) -5- is held in position between retaining spring -4- and connecting piece -1-.

  - Secure bottom of connecting piece -1- with clip -7-.

Make sure connecting piece -1- is securely engaged.



  - Fit lip of door seal -3- over connecting piece -1-.
  - Install dash panel end trim ⇒ page 255 .

Make sure dash panel end trim -8- is correctly inserted in lugs of connecting piece -1-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 - Reinforcement for A-pillar (bottom)

3 - Door seal

4 - Retaining spring

- ❑ ⇒ Item 1 (page 254)
- ❑ Is fixed component of connecting piece

5 - A-pillar trim (top)

6 - A-pillar trim (bottom)

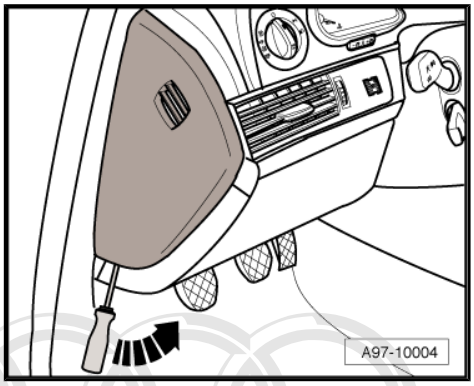
7 - Clip

- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280-

8 - Dash panel end trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 255

Removing and installing dash panel end trim



Removing:

– Use screwdriver to lever off dash panel end trim (left / right).

– Pull dash panel end trim (left / right) out of lugs on connecting piece.

Installing:

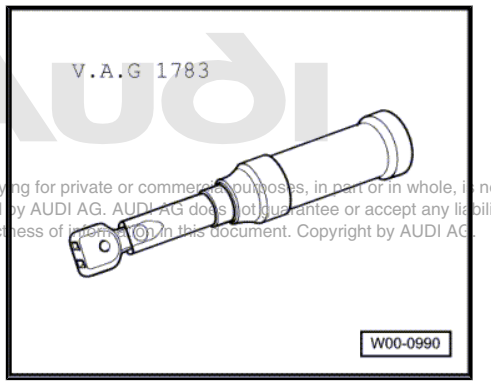
– Push dash panel end trim (left / right) into lugs on connecting piece.

– Clip dash panel end trim (left / right) into dash panel.

5.5 Removing and installing foot rest cover and bracket

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1783-



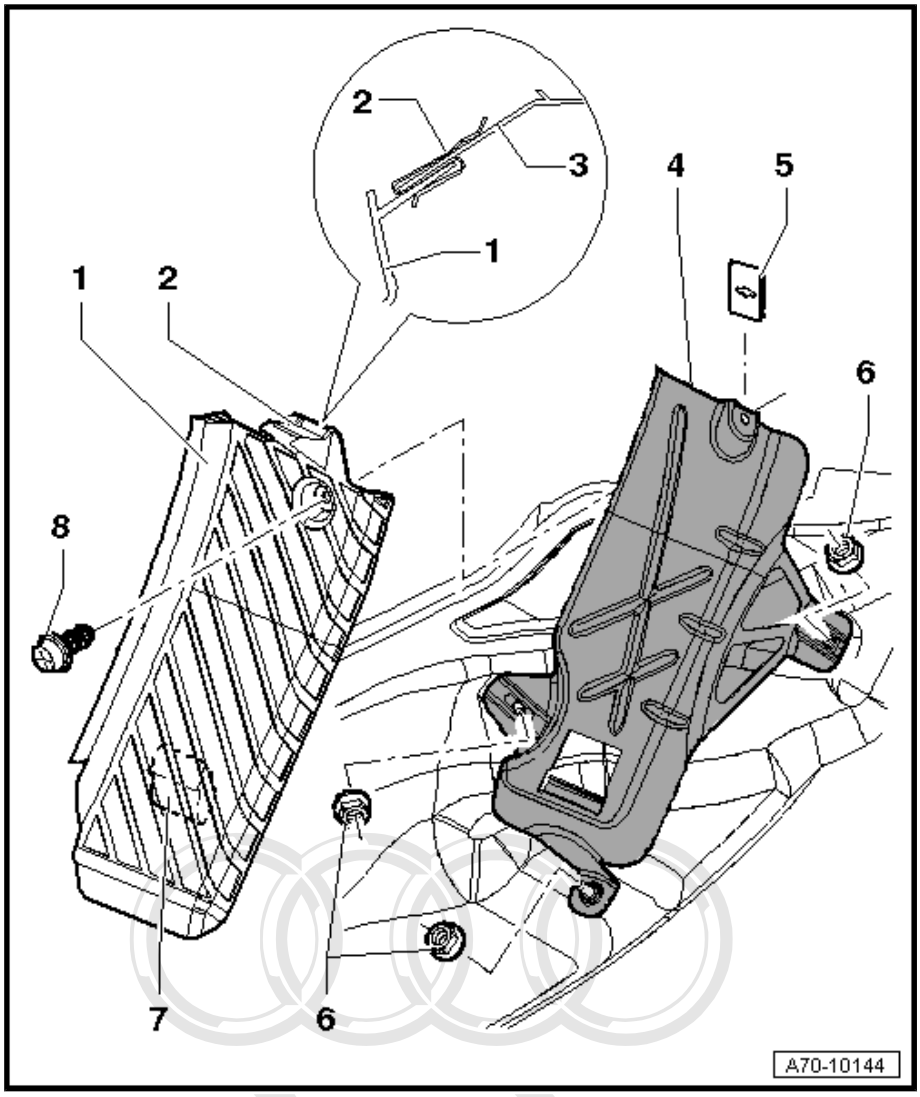
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Foot rest cover

- ♦ Removing
  - – Remove dash panel cover (bottom, driver side) ⇒ page 4 .
  - – Remove dash panel end trim ⇒ page 255 .
  - – Remove connecting piece ⇒ page 253 .
  - – Remove operating lever for bonnet cable ⇒ page 253 .
  - – Remove B-pillar trim (top).
- ♦ Audi A6 ⇒ page 257
- ♦ Audi A6 Security ⇒ page 258
  - – Remove B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 260 .
  - – Remove A-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 251 .
  - – Remove bolt -8-.
  - – Slide foot rest cover -1- upwards until lug -7- is disengaged from opening in foot rest bracket -4-.
  - – Take out foot rest cover -1-.
- ♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- – Make sure lug -7- engages properly in opening in foot rest bracket -4-.



2 - Spring clip

3 - Storage compartment (driver side)

4 - Foot rest bracket

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ♦ Removing
  - – Remove foot rest cover -1- ⇒ Item 1 (page 256) .
  - – Fold back floor covering in area of foot rest.
  - – Unscrew nuts -6- (3x).
  - – Take out foot rest bracket -4-.
- ♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

5 - Speed nut

6 - Nuts (3x)

- ❑ Tightening torque: 3 Nm

7 - Lug

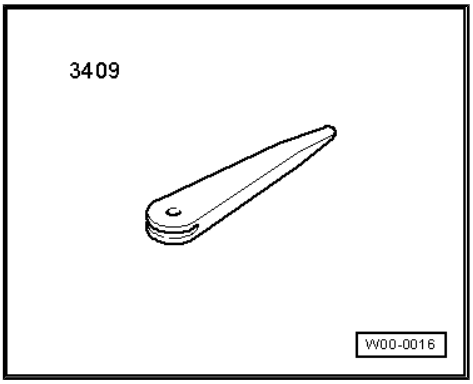
- ❑ Fixed component of foot rest cover

8 - Bolt, 3 Nm

5.6 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (top)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge -3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Note safety precautions for working on curtain airbags ⇒ page 112 .

1 - B-pillar trim (top)

- Removing

Vehicles with vent in B-pillar trim (top)

- Unclip top of vent -8- from B-pillar trim (top) -1-.
- Pull vent -8- out of B-pillar trim (top) -1- upwards in diagonal direction.
- Unplug electrical connector.

All vehicles (continued)

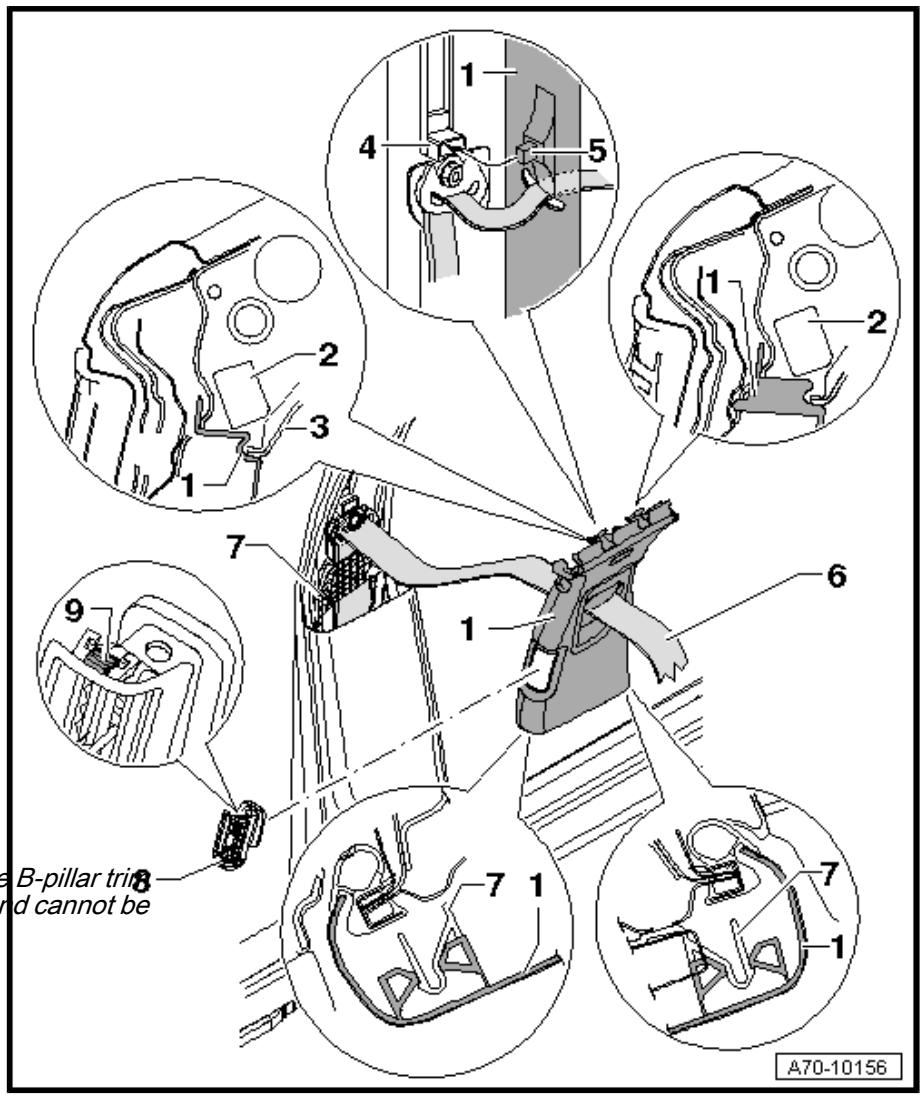
- Use removal wedge -3409- to unclip B-pillar trim (top) -1-.

To do so, apply removal wedge -3409- to lower edge of B-pillar trim (top).

- Swivel B-pillar trim (top) -1- inwards and, at the same time, pull trim off downwards.
- Remove outer seat belt anchorage point (on front seat) ⇒ page 67 .
- Guide belt -6- out of B-pillar trim (top) -1-.

Note

The "airbag" sign on the B-pillar trim (top) -1- is welded on and cannot be removed.



- Installing

Adhere to correct sequence for installing B-pillar trim (top) -1-:

– Guide belt -6- into B-pillar trim (top) -1-.

– Install outer seat belt anchorage point (on front seat) ⇒ page 67 .

Make sure that belt is not twisted.

WARNING

Make sure you do not trap curtain airbag -2- when installing B-pillar trim (top) -1-.

– Engage lugs of B-pillar trim (top) -1- into windscreen frame.

– Locate B-pillar trim (top) -1- in position with pins (2x).

– Make sure that retaining pin -5- engages in mounting -4- at belt height adjuster.

– Clip bottom of B-pillar trim (top) -1- into belt guide -7-.

Vehicles with vent in B-pillar trim (top)

– Plug in electrical connector.

– Hook underside of vent -8- into B-pillar trim (top) -1-.

– Clip upper side of vent -8- into B-pillar trim (top) -1-.

All vehicles (continued)

Make sure B-pillar trim (top) -1- is securely engaged.

– Fit lip of door seal over B-pillar trim (top) -1-.

– Check that belt height adjuster functions properly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- The belt height adjuster must engage with a click in all available positions.
- Each time the button on belt height adjuster is pressed it should automatically return to the up position.

2 - Curtain airbag

3 - Moulded headliner

4 - Mounting on belt height adjuster

5 - Retaining pin on sliding element of B-pillar trim (top)

6 - Belt

7 - Belt guide (front)

8 - Vent

❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

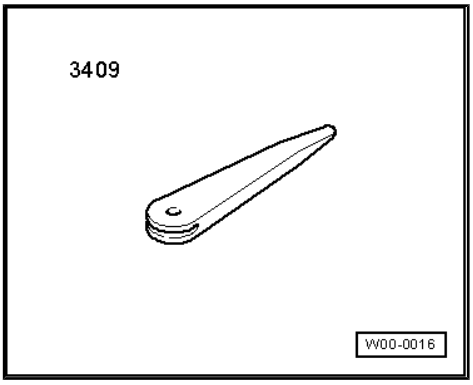
9 - Spring clip

❑ For vent ⇒ Item 8 (page 258)

5.7 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (top) - Audi A6 Security

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge -3409-



WARNING

Note safety precautions for working on curtain airbags ⇒ page 112 .

1 - B-pillar trim (top)

♦ Removing

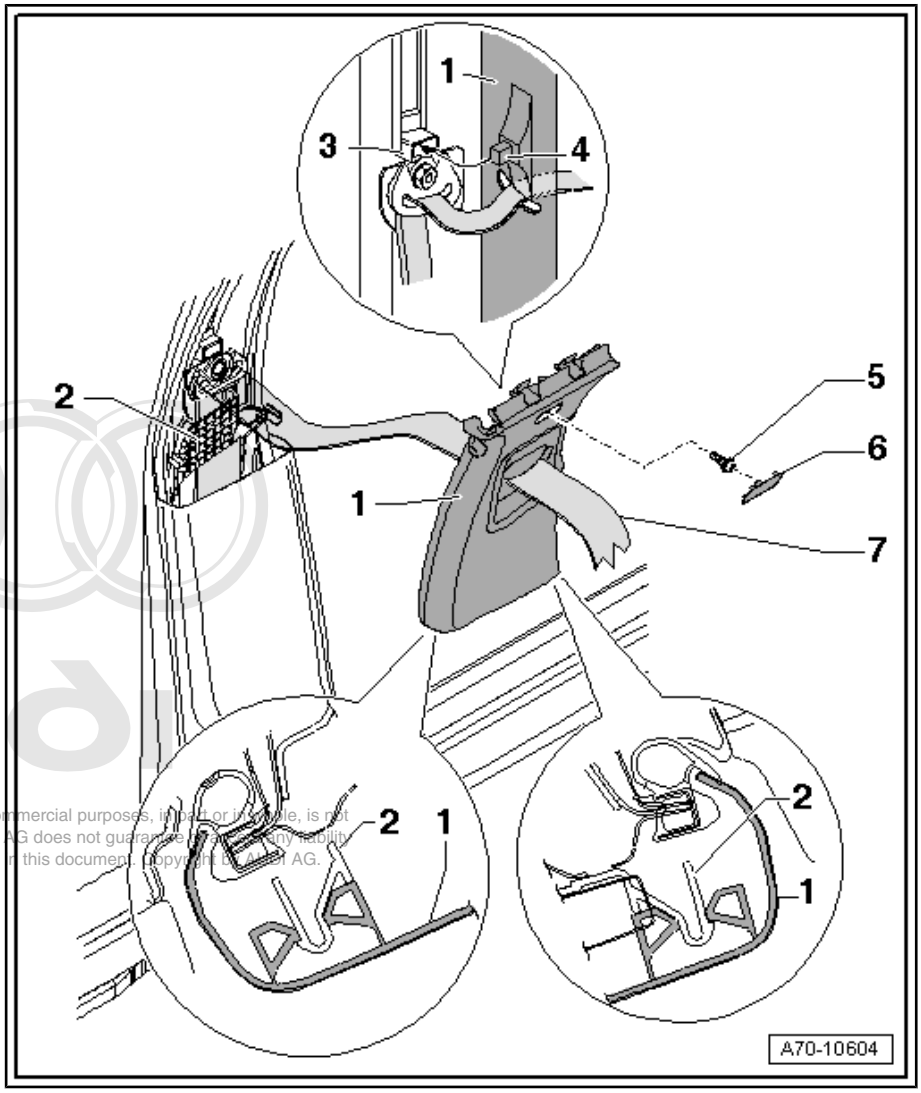
– Unclip “airbag” sign -6-.
– Remove bolt -5-.
– Unclip B-pillar trim using removal wedge -3409- (apply removal wedge -3409- at bottom edge of B-pillar trim).
– Swivel B-pillar trim inwards and at the same time detach it downwards.
– Remove outer seat belt anchorage point (on front seat) ⇒ page 67 .
– Thread belt -7- out of B-pillar trim.

♦ Installing

Keep to fitting sequence for B-pillar trim:

– Thread belt -7- into B-pillar trim.
– Install outer seat belt anchorage point (on front seat) ⇒ page 67 .

Make sure that belt is not twisted.



WARNING

Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting B-pillar trim.

– Engage lugs of B-pillar trim in windscreen frame.
– Make sure that retaining pin -4- engages in mounting -3- at belt height adjuster.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © AUDI AG.

– Clip B-pillar trim into belt guide -2- (bottom).
– Tighten bolt -5-.
– Clip “airbag” sign -6- into B-pillar trim.

Make sure B-pillar trim is firmly in position.

– Fold lip of door seal over B-pillar trim.
– Check that seat belt operates properly and runs smoothly.
– Check that belt height adjuster functions properly.

- The belt height adjuster must engage with a click in all available positions.
- Following actuation, the button must return automatically to the top position.

2 - Belt guide

3 - Mounting on belt height adjuster

4 - Retaining pin on sliding element of B-pillar trim (top)

5 - Bolts, 3.5 Nm

6 - “Airbag” sign

7 - Belt

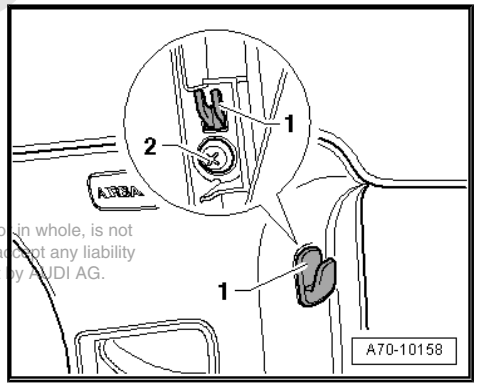
5.8 Removing and installing coat hook

Removing

– Remove B-pillar trim (top).
♦ Audi A6 ⇒ page 257
♦ Audi A6 Security ⇒ page 258
– Remove bolt -2-.
– Disengage coat hook -1- from B-pillar trim (top).

Installing

– Install coat hook -1- in reverse order of removal.

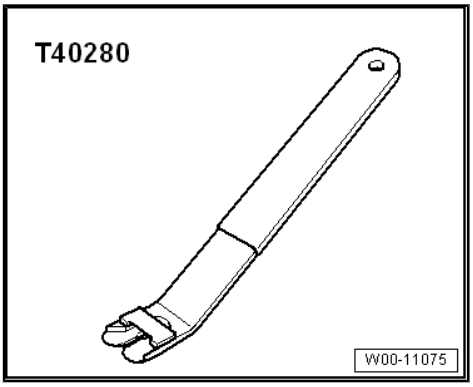


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.9 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (bottom)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge -T40280- is needed to remove any clips left in body mounting points

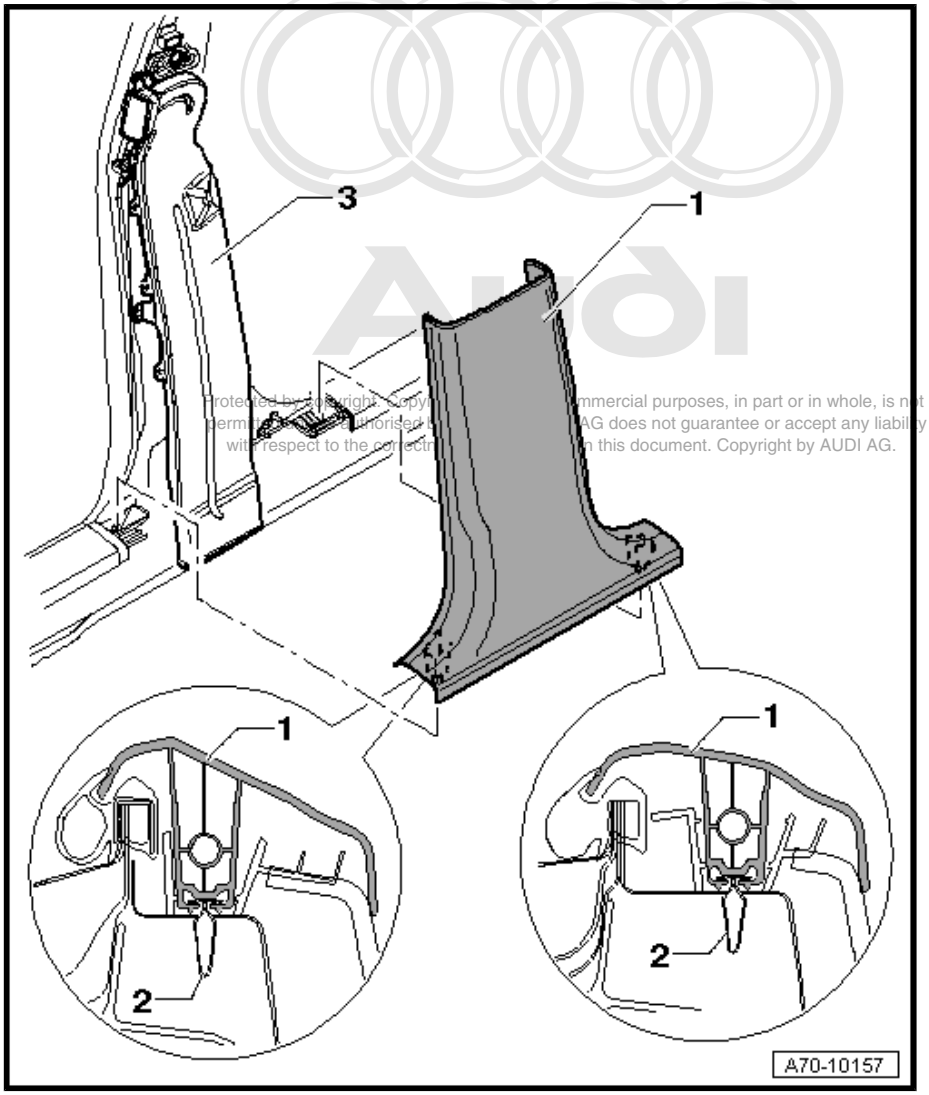


1 - B-pillar trim (bottom)

- Removing
  - Remove B-pillar trim (top).
- Audi A6 ⇒ page 257
- Audi A6 Security ⇒ page 258
  - Lift off B-pillar trim (bottom) -1-.
- Installing
  - Check that clips -2- (2x) are not damaged or deformed.

If clips are damaged or deformed they must be renewed.

  - Before fitting B-pillar trim (bottom) -1- make sure that clips -2- (2x) are correctly positioned.
  - Secure B-pillar trim (bottom) -1- with clips -2- (2x).
  - Install B-pillar trim (top).
- Audi A6 ⇒ page 257
- Audi A6 Security ⇒ page 258
  - Fit lip of door seal over B-pillar trim (bottom) -1- and over B-pillar trim (top).



2 - Clips (2x)

- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280-

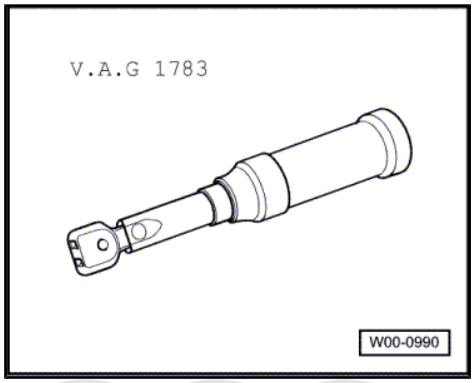
3 - Air duct

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

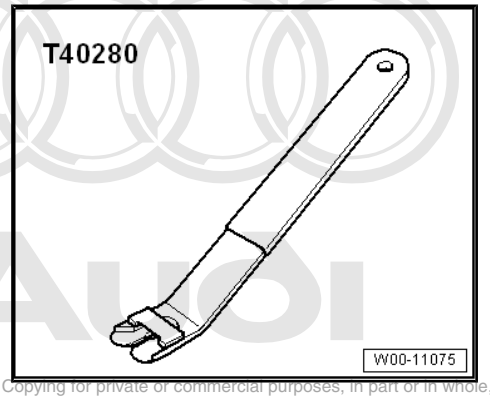
5.10 Removing and installing C-pillar trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench -V.A.G 1783-



- Removal wedge -T40280- is needed to remove any clips left in body mounting points

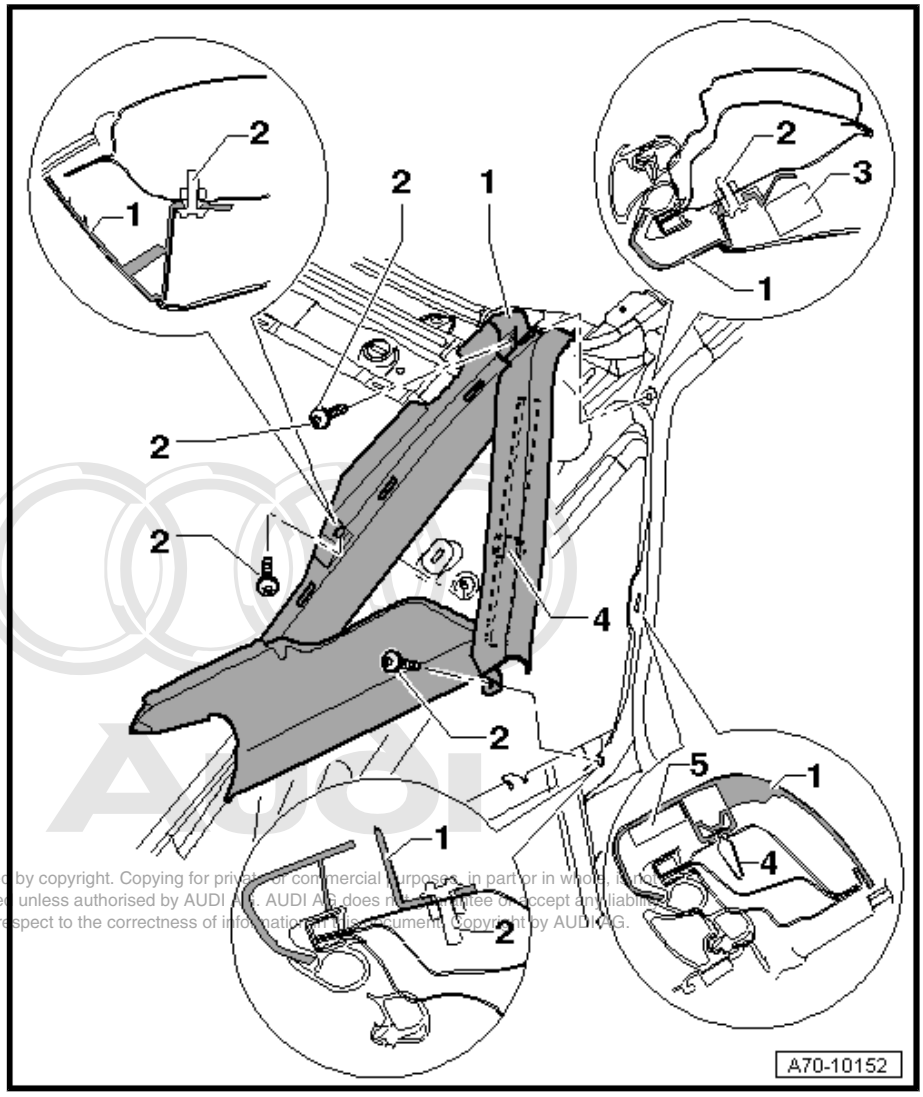


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Note safety precautions for working on curtain airbags *⇒ page 112* *.*

1 - C-pillar trim



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removing

– Remove roof end trim ⇒ page 268 .
– Remove D-pillar trim ⇒ page 266 .

Vehicles with fixed rear seat backrest

– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 562 .

Vehicles with folding rear seat backrest

– Remove side padding ⇒ page 556 .

All vehicles (continued)

– Detach rear shelf on the side in question.
Rear shelf without sun blind ⇒ page 269
Rear shelf with sun blind ⇒ page 273
– Unscrew bolts -2- (3x).
– Unclip C-pillar trim -1- with clip -4-.
– Carefully pull C-pillar trim -1- out from underneath curtain airbag -3-.
– Release belt guide and slide it towards the rear as far as it will go ⇒ page 264 .
– Pull C-pillar trim -1- out over seat belt.
– Detach C-pillar trim -1-.
– Remove any residue of locking fluid from threaded holes for bolts -2- (3x). To do so, you can use a thread tap.

If the threaded holes are not cleaned, there is a danger of the new bolts seizing when being screwed in and then shearing off the next time you try to remove them.

♦ Installing

– Check that clip -4- is not damaged or deformed.

If clip is damaged or deformed it must be renewed.

– Before fitting C-pillar trim -1- make sure that clip -4- is correctly positioned.

Note

Make sure that curtain airbag is not trapped or damaged when installing C-pillar trim -1-.

Adhere to correct sequence for installing C-pillar trim -1-:

– Carefully push upper section of C-pillar trim -1- under curtain airbag -3-.
– Secure C-pillar trim -1- with clip -4-.
– Screw in new bolts -2- and tighten to specified torque.
– Pull belt guide forwards as far as it will go and make sure it engages ⇒ page 264 .

You should hear the retaining tab engage.

Make sure C-pillar trim -1- is securely engaged.

– Install rear shelf:

Rear shelf without sun blind ⇒ page 269

Rear shelf with sun blind ⇒ page 273

Vehicles with folding rear seat backrest

– Install side padding ⇒ page 556 .

Vehicles with fixed rear seat backrest

– Install rear seat backrest ⇒ page 562 .

– Install D-pillar trim ⇒ page 266 .

– Install roof end trim ⇒ page 268 .

– Fit lip of door seal over C-pillar trim -1-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 - Bolts, self-locking (3x)

- ❑ Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Threaded holes for bolts must always be cleaned (e.g. with a thread tap).

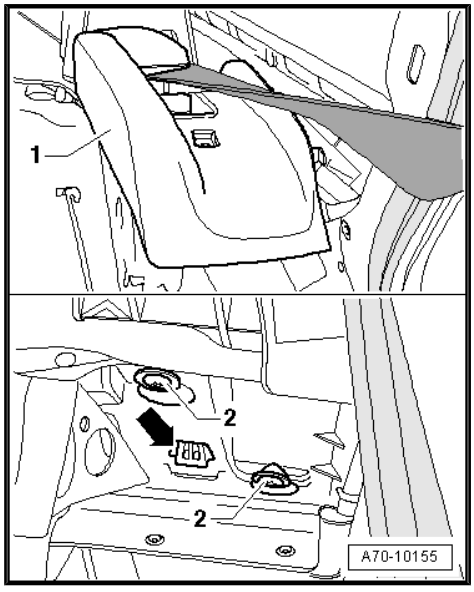
3 - Curtain airbag

4 - Clip

- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280-

5 - Insulation

Disengaging and engaging belt guide



Note

Under no circumstances turn the bolts -2-. They have been set by the manufacturer.

Disengaging:

– Disengage belt guide -1-.

– To do so, push retaining tab upwards -arrow-.

– Slide belt guide -1- to rear as far as it will go.

Engaging:

– Pull belt guide -1- to the front as far as it will go.

– Make sure you hear retaining tab -arrow- click into place.

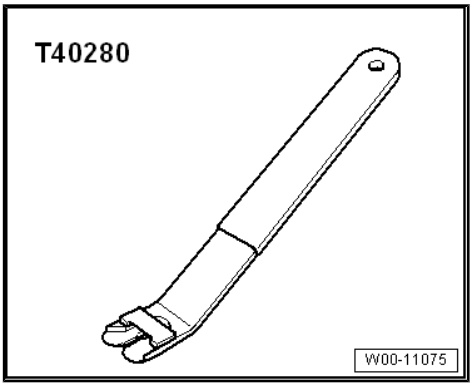
Note

The washers of bolts -2- should be located below the metal plate.

5.11 Removing and installing sill/pillar trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge -T40280- is needed to remove any clips left in body mounting points



1 - Sill/pillar trim

- Removing
  - Remove B-pillar trim (top).
- Audi A6 ⇒ page 257
- Audi A6 Security ⇒ page 258
  - Remove B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 260 .
  - Detach rear seat bench at the side you want to remove ⇒ page 551 .

Vehicles with fixed rear seat backrest

- Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 562 .

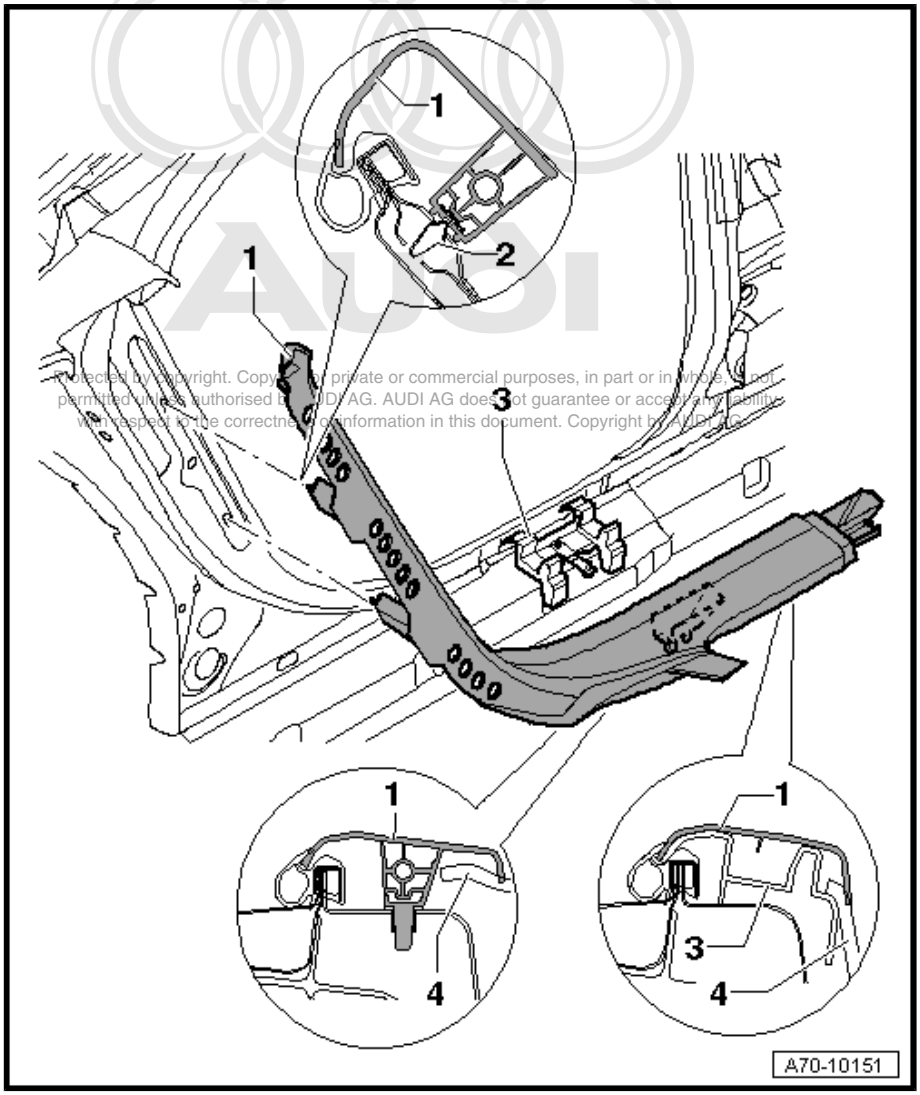
Vehicles with folding rear seat backrest

- Remove side padding ⇒ page 556 .

All vehicles (continued)

- Unclip sill/pillar trim -1-.
- To do so, press door pillar section of sill/pillar trim -1- in direction of vehicle interior.
- Detach sill section of sill/pillar trim -1- by lifting it up.
- Take out sill/pillar trim -1- to front.
- Installing
  - Check that clips -2- (3x) are not damaged or deformed.

If clips are damaged or deformed they must be renewed.



- Before fitting sill/pillar trim -1- make sure that clips -2- (3x) are correctly positioned.
- Secure sill/pillar trim -1- with clips -2- (3x), starting at the bottom.

Make sure sill/pillar trim -1- is securely engaged.

Vehicles with folding rear seat backrest

- Install side padding ⇒ page 556 .

Vehicles with fixed rear seat backrest

- Install rear seat backrest ⇒ page 562 .

All vehicles (continued)

- Engage rear seat bench at the side you had removed ⇒ page 551 .
- Install B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 260 .
- Install B-pillar trim (top).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Audi A6 ⇒ page 257
- Audi A6 Security ⇒ page 258
  - Fit lip of door seal over sill/pillar trim -1-.

2 - Clips (3x)

- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280-

3 - Support piece

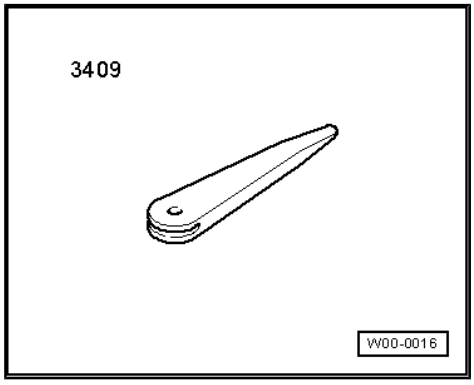
4 - Floor covering

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

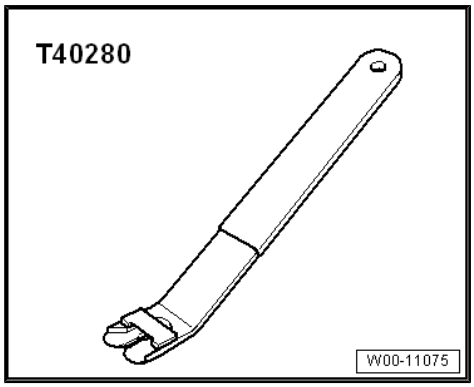
5.12 Removing and installing D-pillar trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

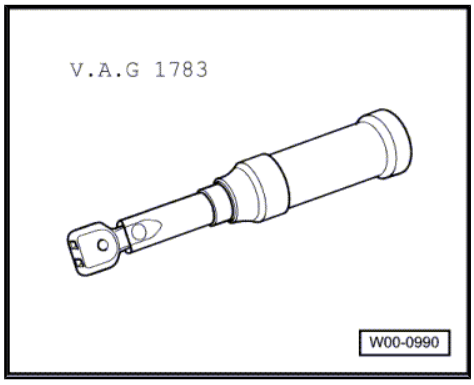
- Removal wedge -3409-



- Removal wedge -T40280- is needed to remove any clips left in body mounting points



- Torque wrench -V.A.G 1783-



D-pillar trim

1 - D-pillar trim with bag tether (bolted on)

- ♦ Removing
  - – Remove roof end trim ⇒ page 268 .
  - – Remove bolt -2-.
  - – Using removal wedge -3409- , carefully prise out D-pillar trim -1- at clip -6-, clips -9- (2x) and fasteners -5-.

Ensure that retaining hooks -5- are not damaged.

Note

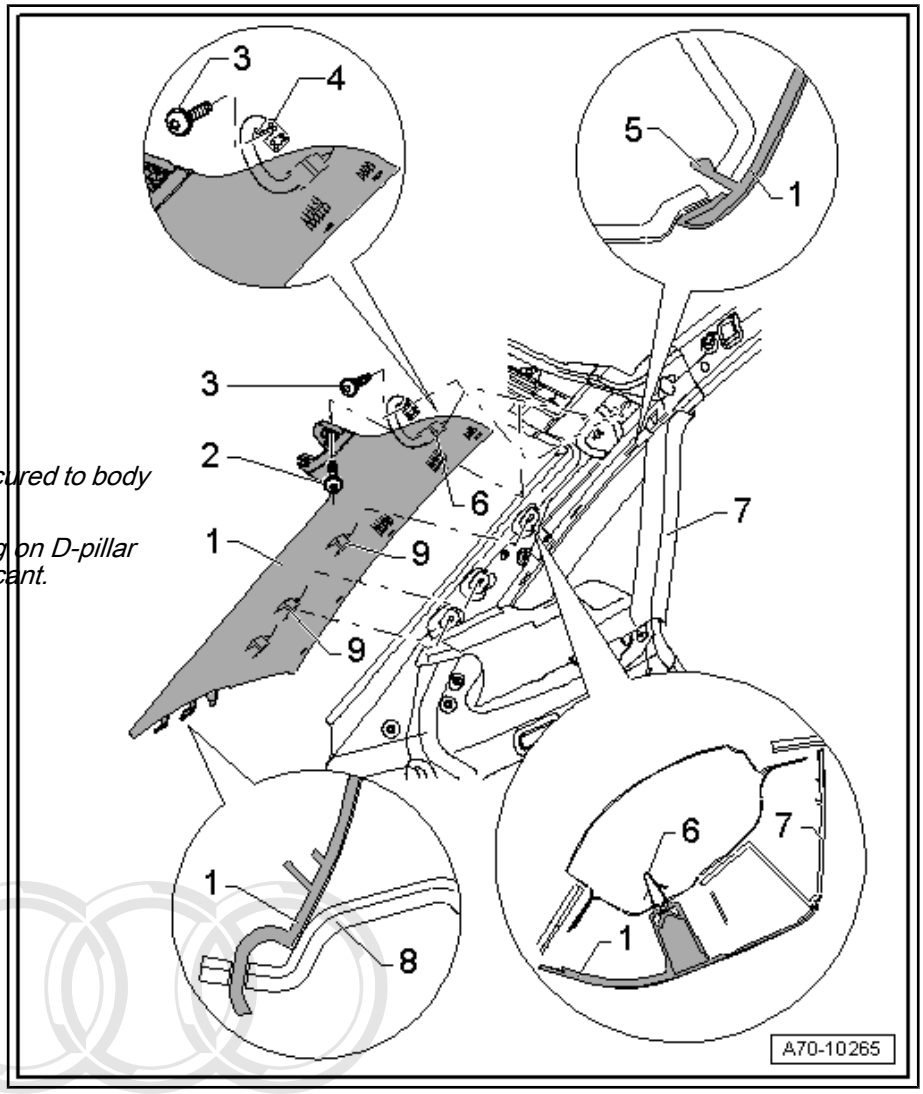
- ♦ *Bag tether -4- is secured to body shell with bolt -3-.*
- ♦ *Lower clip mounting on D-pillar trim -1- remains vacant.*

  - – Remove bolt -3- from bag tether -4-.
  - – Pull D-pillar trim -1- upwards out of rear shelf -8-.

- ♦ Installing: Install in reverse order, paying attention to the following:
  - – Check that clip -6- is not damaged or deformed.

Renew D-pillar trim if clip -6- is damaged or deformed.

  - – Check clips -9- for damage or deformation.



Any damaged or deformed clips -9- must be renewed.

  - – Remove any residual locking compound from the threaded hole for bolt -2- and -3-. To do so, you can use a thread tap.

If the tapped hole is not cleaned, there is a danger of the new bolt becoming seized on fitting, thus preventing operation of the bag tether.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. Audi does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

  - – Bolt on bag tether -4- with a new bolt -3- and tighten it to specified torque ⇒ Item 3 (page 268) .
  - – Before fitting D-pillar trim -1-, observe correct positioning of clips -6- and -9-.

WARNING

Make sure you do not trap curtain airbag when installing D-pillar trim -1-.

  - – Fit new bolt -2- and tighten it to specified torque ⇒ Item 2 (page 267) .

Make sure D-pillar trim -1- is securely engaged.

  - – Install roof end trim ⇒ page 268 .

2 - Bolt, self-locking

- ❑ Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm

- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Threaded hole for bolt must always be cleaned (e.g. with a thread tap).

3 - Bolt, self-locking

- ❑ Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Threaded hole for bolt must always be cleaned (e.g. with a thread tap).

4 - Bag tether

- ❑ ⇒ Item 1 (page 267)
- ❑ Fixed component of D-pillar trim -1-
- ❑ Check for damage
- ❑ If bag tether is damaged, renew D-pillar trim -1-
- ❑ D-pillar trim must be renewed if curtain airbag has been triggered, as bag tether could have been damaged.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 - Retaining hook

- ❑ ⇒ Item 1 (page 267)
- ❑ Fixed component of D-pillar trim -1-

6 - Clip

- ❑ If damaged or deformed, renew D-pillar trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280-

7 - C-pillar trim

8 - Rear shelf

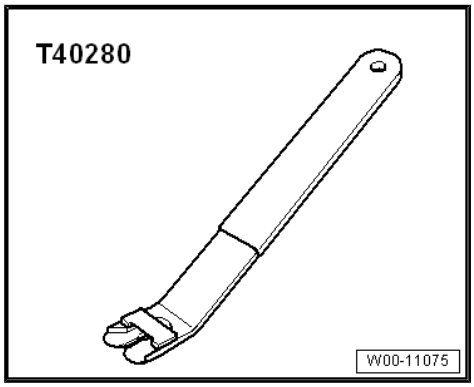
9 - Clip (2x)

- ❑ Renew clip if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280-

5.13 Removing and installing roof end trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Removal wedge -T40280- is needed to remove any clips left in body mounting points



1 - Roof end trim

- ♦ Removing
  - – Disengage roof end trim -1- at clips -4- (4x).
  - – To do so, detach roof end trim -1- downwards.

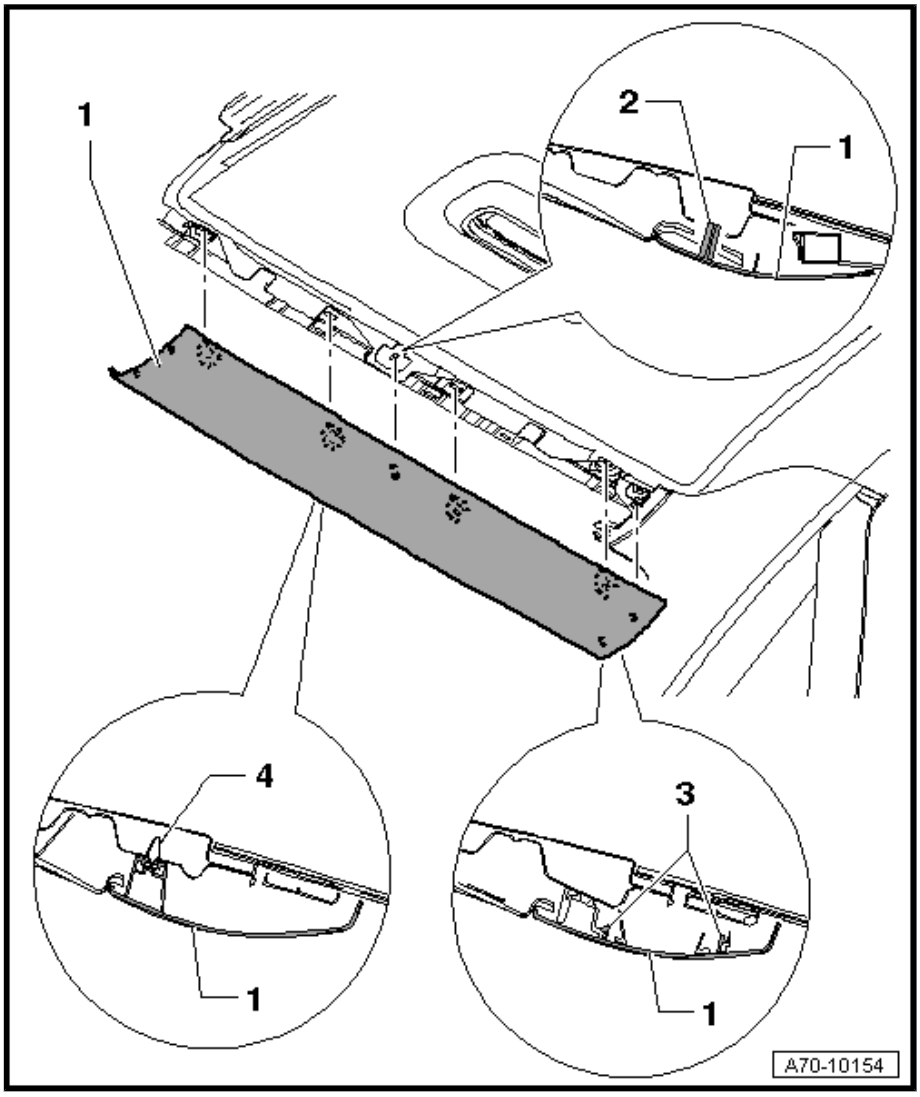
Make sure you do not damage retaining hooks -3- on roof end trim -1-.

  - – Detach roof end trim -1-.
- ♦ Installing
  - – Check that clips -4- (4x) are not damaged or deformed.

If clips are damaged or deformed they must be renewed.

  - – Before fitting roof end trim -1- make sure that clips -4- are correctly positioned.
  - – Locate roof end trim -1- in position with lug -2-.
  - – Secure roof end trim -1- with clips -4- (4x) and retaining hooks -3-.

Make sure roof end trim -1- is securely engaged.



2 - Lug

- ❑ ⇒ Item 1 (page 269)
- ❑ Fixed component of roof end trim -1-

3 - Retaining hook

- ❑ ⇒ Item 1 (page 269)
- ❑ Fixed component of roof end trim -1-

4 - Clips (4x)

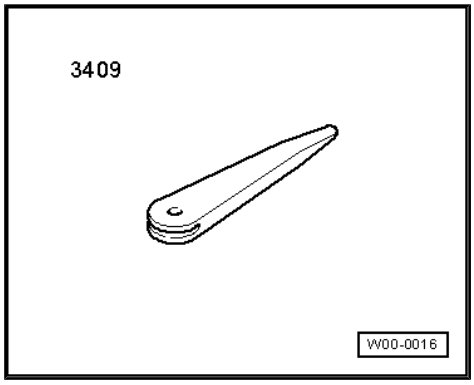
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280-

5.14 Removing and installing rear shelf without sun blind (rear)

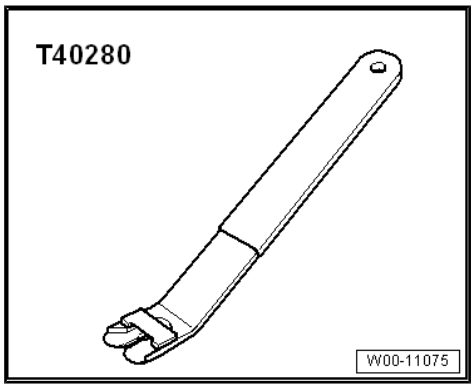
Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Removal wedge -3409-



- Removal wedge -T40280- is needed to remove any clips left in body mounting points



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Rear shelf without sun blind (rear)

♦ Removing

– Remove roof end trim ⇒ page 268 .
– Remove D-pillar trim (left and right) ⇒ page 266 .

Vehicles with folding rear seat backrest

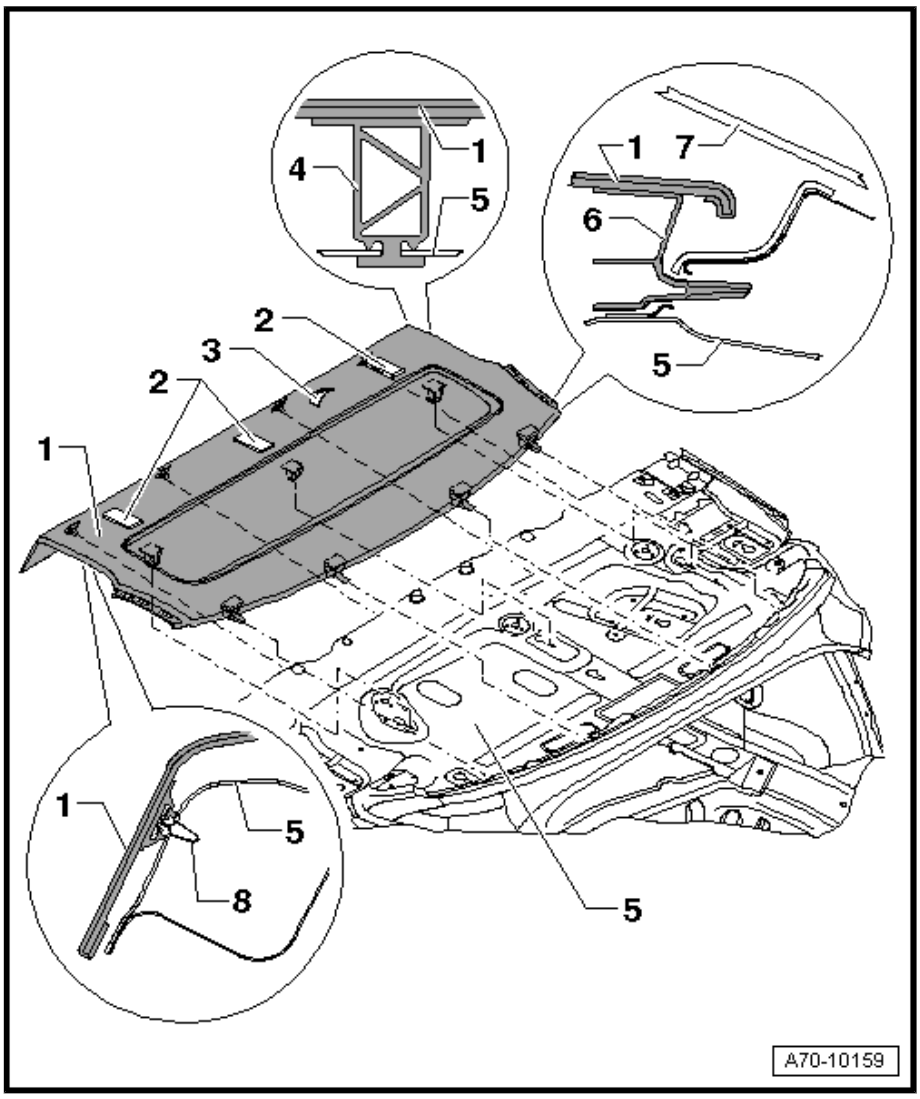
– Fold rear seat backrest forwards.

Vehicles with fixed rear seat backrest

– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .
– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 562 .
– Remove belt buckle with buckle bracket (right-side) ⇒ page 98 .

All vehicles (continued)

– Pull rear shelf -1- forwards and unclip clips -8- (4x) from cross member for rear shelf -5-.
– Pull rear shelf -1- further forwards and disengage retainers -4- (3x) from cut-outs (shaped like key-hole) on cross member for rear shelf -5-.
– Pull rear shelf -1- with retainers and pins -6- (4x) out of cross member below rear window -7-.



Vehicles with fixed rear seat backrest

– Unclip belt guide (rear centre) from rear shelf -1- ⇒ page 273 .
– Insert belt with belt guide (rear centre) through cut-out -3- in rear shelf -1-.

All vehicles (continued)

– Remove rear shelf -1-.

♦ Installing

– Check that clips -8- (4x) are not damaged or deformed.

If clips are damaged or deformed they must be renewed.

– Before fitting rear shelf -1- make sure that clips -8- (4x) are correctly positioned.

Vehicles with fixed rear seat backrest

– Insert belt with belt guide (rear centre) through cut-out -3- in rear shelf -1-.
– Clip belt guide (rear centre) into rear shelf -1- ⇒ page 273 .

Make sure that belt is not twisted.

All vehicles (continued)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Hook retainers -4- (3x) into cut-outs (shaped like key-holes) in cross member for rear shelf -5-.
– Push rear shelf -1- to rear as far as it will go.
– Make sure that pins on retainers -6- (4x) are inserted into cut-outs in cross member below rear window -7-.

– Secure rear shelf -1- to cross member for rear shelf -5- with clips -8- (4x).

Vehicles with fixed rear seat backrest

– Install belt buckle with buckle bracket (right-side) ⇒ page 98 .

Make sure that belt is not twisted.

– Install rear seat backrest ⇒ page 562 .

– Install rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .

Vehicles with folding rear seat backrest

– Return backrest to upright position.

All vehicles (continued)

– Install D-pillar trim (left and right) ⇒ page 266 .

– Install roof end trim ⇒ page 268 .

2 - Child seat anchorage (3x)

- ❑ Only for USA and Canada
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 104
- ❑ Cut-outs for child seat anchorage only provided on rear shelf of vehicles for USA and Canada

3 - Cut-out for belt guide

- ❑ Only on vehicles with fixed rear seat backrest

4 - Retainers (3x)

- ❑ ⇒ Item 1 (page 271)
- ❑ Fixed component of rear shelf -1-

5 - Cross member for rear shelf

6 - Retainers with pins (4x)

- ❑ ⇒ Item 1 (page 271)
- ❑ Fixed component of rear shelf -1-

7 - Rear window

8 - Clips (4x)

- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

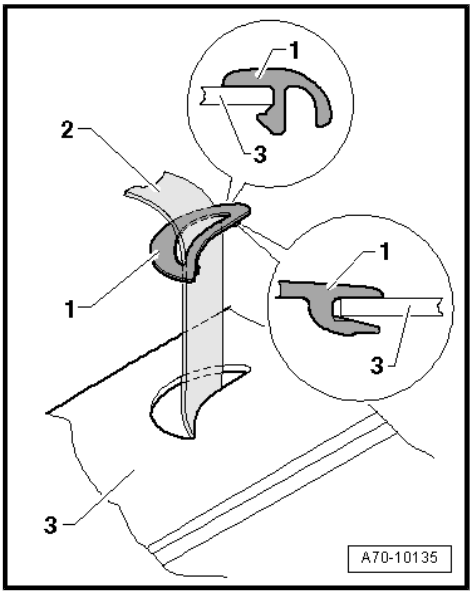
Removing and installing centre belt guide (rear)

Removing:

– Unclip front retaining hook for belt guide (rear centre) -1-.
– To do so, insert removal wedge -3409- in between rear shelf -3- and belt guide (rear centre) -1-.
– Swivel belt guide (rear centre) -1- upwards approx. 45°.
– Detach belt guide (rear centre) -1- from rear shelf -3-.

Installing:

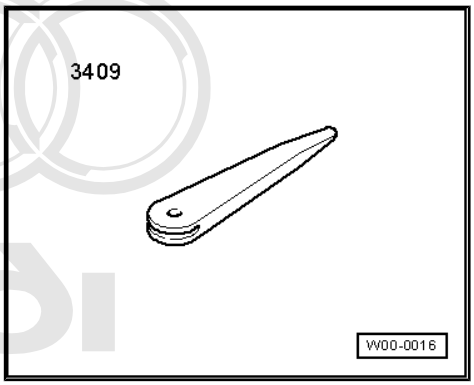
– First clip rear part of belt guide (rear centre) -1- into rear shelf -3-.
– Clip front retaining hook for belt guide (rear centre) -1- into rear shelf -3-.



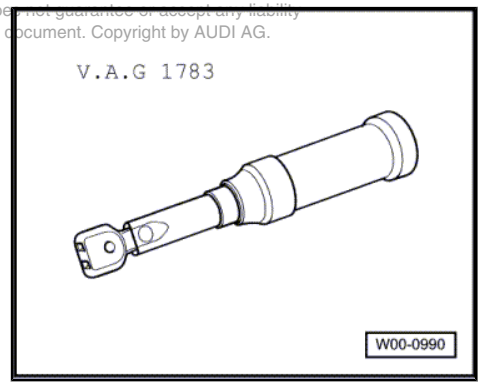
5.15 Removing and installing rear shelf with sun blind (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge -3409-

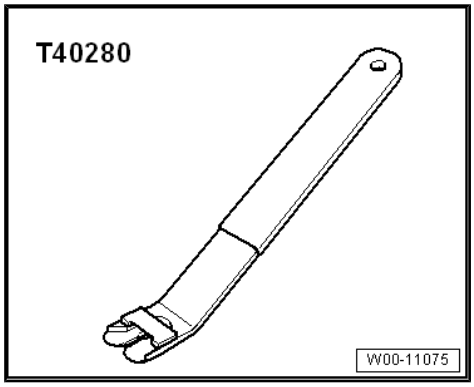


♦ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1783-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removal wedge -T40280- is needed to remove any clips left in body mounting points



1 - Rear shelf with sun blind (rear)

♦ Removing

– Retract sun blind (rear) -4-.
– Remove roof end trim ⇒ page 268 .
– Remove D-pillar trim (left and right) ⇒ page 266 .

Vehicles with folding rear seat backrest

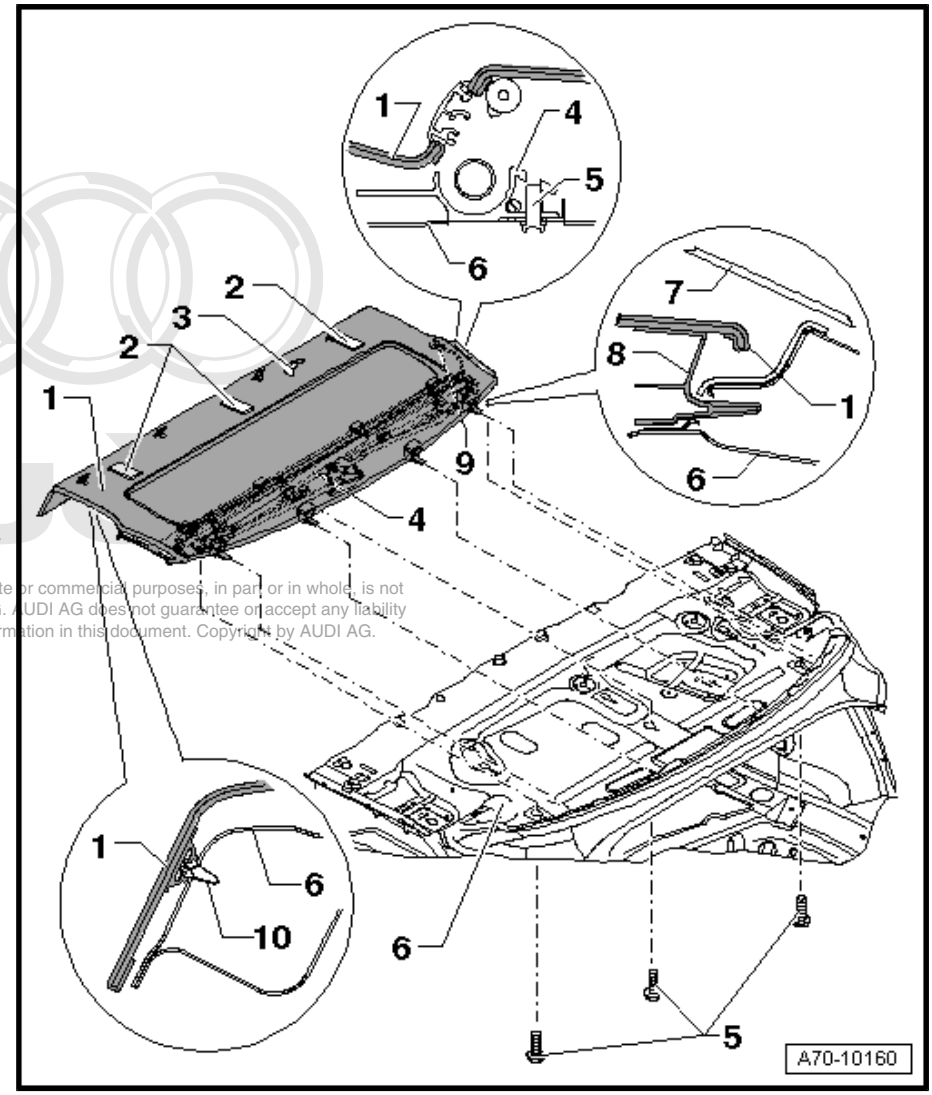
– Fold rear seat backrest forwards.

Vehicles with fixed rear seat backrest

– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .
– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 562 .
– Remove belt buckle with buckle bracket (right-side) ⇒ page 98 .

All vehicles (continued)

– Unscrew bolts -5- (3x).
– Pull rear shelf -1- forwards and unclip clips -10- (4x) from cross member for rear shelf -6-.
– Pull rear shelf -1- with retainers and pins -8- (4x) out of cross member below rear window -7-.
– Unplug electrical connector -9-.



Vehicles with fixed rear seat backrest

– Unclip belt guide (rear centre) from rear shelf -1- ⇒ page 273 .
– Insert belt with belt guide (rear centre) through cut-out -3- in rear shelf -1-.

All vehicles (continued)

– Remove rear shelf -1-.

♦ Installing

– Check that clips -10- (4x) are not damaged or deformed.

If clips are damaged or deformed they must be renewed.

– Before fitting rear shelf -1- make sure that clips -10- (4x) are correctly positioned.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Vehicles with fixed rear seat backrest

- Insert belt with belt guide (rear centre) through cut-out -3- in rear shelf -1-.
- Clip belt guide (rear centre) into rear shelf -1- ⇒ page 273 .

Make sure that belt is not twisted.

All vehicles (continued)

- Position rear shelf -1- on cross member for rear shelf -6-.
- Plug in connector -9-.
- Push rear shelf -1- to rear as far as it will go.
- Make sure that pins on retainers -8- (4x) are inserted into cut-outs in cross member below rear window -7-.
- Secure rear shelf -1- to cross member for rear shelf -6- with clips -10- (4x).
- Screw in bolts -5- (3x) and tighten to specified torque.

Make sure that the bolt heads are located in the narrow part of the cut-outs shaped like a key-hole.

Vehicles with fixed rear seat backrest

- Install belt buckle with buckle bracket (right-side) ⇒ page 98 .
- Install rear seat backrest ⇒ page 562 .
- Install rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .

Vehicles with folding rear seat backrest

- Return backrest to upright position.

All vehicles (continued)

- Install D-pillar trim (left and right) ⇒ page 266 .
- Install roof end trim ⇒ page 268 .
- Check that sun blind (rear) is functioning correctly.

2 - Child seat anchorage (3x)

- ❑ Only for USA and Canada
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 104
- ❑ Cut-outs for child seat anchorage only provided on rear shelf of vehicles for USA and Canada

3 - Cut-out for belt guide

- ❑ Only on vehicles with fixed rear seat backrest

4 - Electrical rear roller blind (sun blind)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Item 1 (page 274)

5 - Bolts (3x)

- ❑ Tightening torque: 4 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without prior written consent of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6 - Cross member for rear shelf

7 - Rear window

8 - Retainers with pins (4x)

- ❑ ⇒ Item 1 (page 271)
- ❑ Fixed component of rear shelf -1-

9 - Connector for sun blind (rear)

10 - Clips (4x)

- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280-

Removing and installing centre belt guide (rear)

Removing:

– Unclip front retaining hook for belt guide (rear centre) -1-.

– To do so, insert removal wedge -3409- in between rear shelf -3- and belt guide (rear centre) -1-.

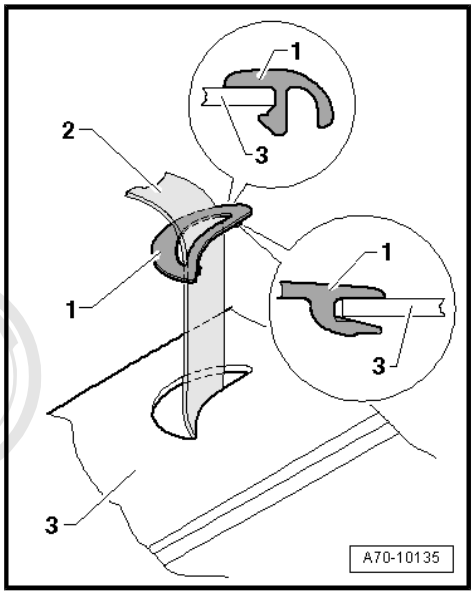
– Swivel belt guide (rear centre) -1- upwards approx. 45°.

– Detach belt guide (rear centre) -1- from rear shelf -3-.

Installing:

– First clip rear part of belt guide (rear centre) -1- into rear shelf -3-.

– Clip front retaining hook for belt guide (rear centre) -1- into rear shelf -3-.

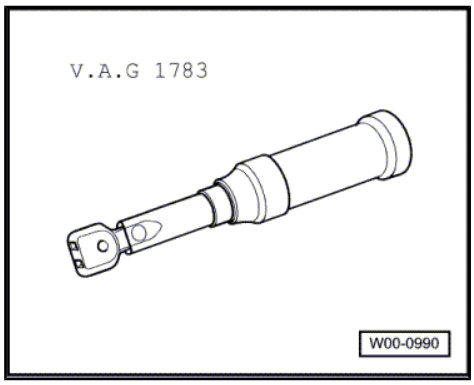


5.16 Removing and installing electrical rear roller blind (sun blind)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1783-

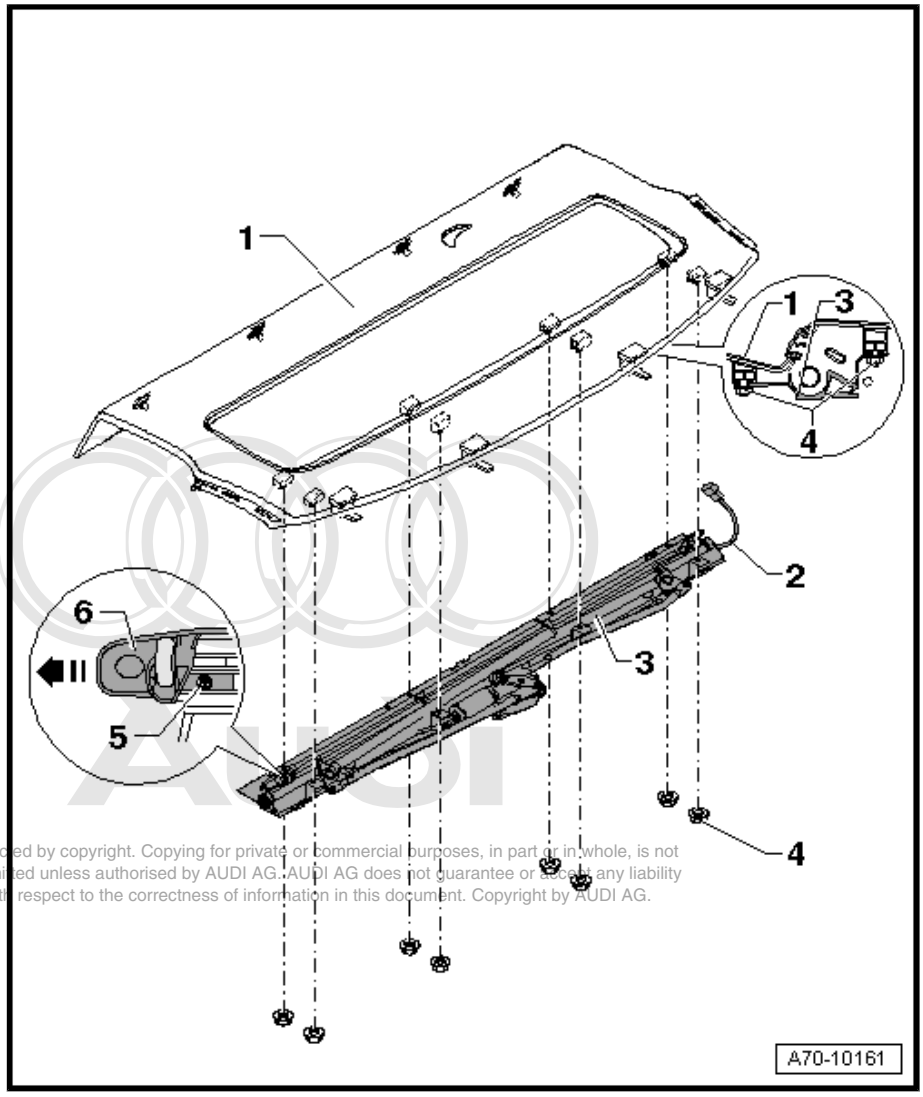


1 - Rear shelf

2 - Connector for electrical rear roller blind (sun blind)

3 - Electrical rear roller blind (sun blind)

- ♦ Removing
  - – Retract sun blind (rear) -3-.
  - – Remove rear shelf with sun blind (rear) ⇒ page 273 .
  - – Pull out sun blind (rear) -3- approx. 50 mm at covers with wheel -6-.
  - – Wedge a suitable object in between sun blind (rear) -3- and rear shelf -1-.
  - – Unscrew bolts -5- (2x).
  - – Pull out covers with wheel -6- (left and right) in direction of -arrow-.
  - – Detach wiring harness from rear shelf -1-.
  - – Unscrew nuts -4- (8x).
  - – Detach sun blind (rear) -3- from rear shelf -1-.
- ♦ Installing
  - – Install in reverse order of removal.
  - – Check operation of electrical rear roller blind -3- (sun blind).



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 - Nuts (8x)

- ❑ Tightening torque: 4 Nm

5 - Bolts (2x)

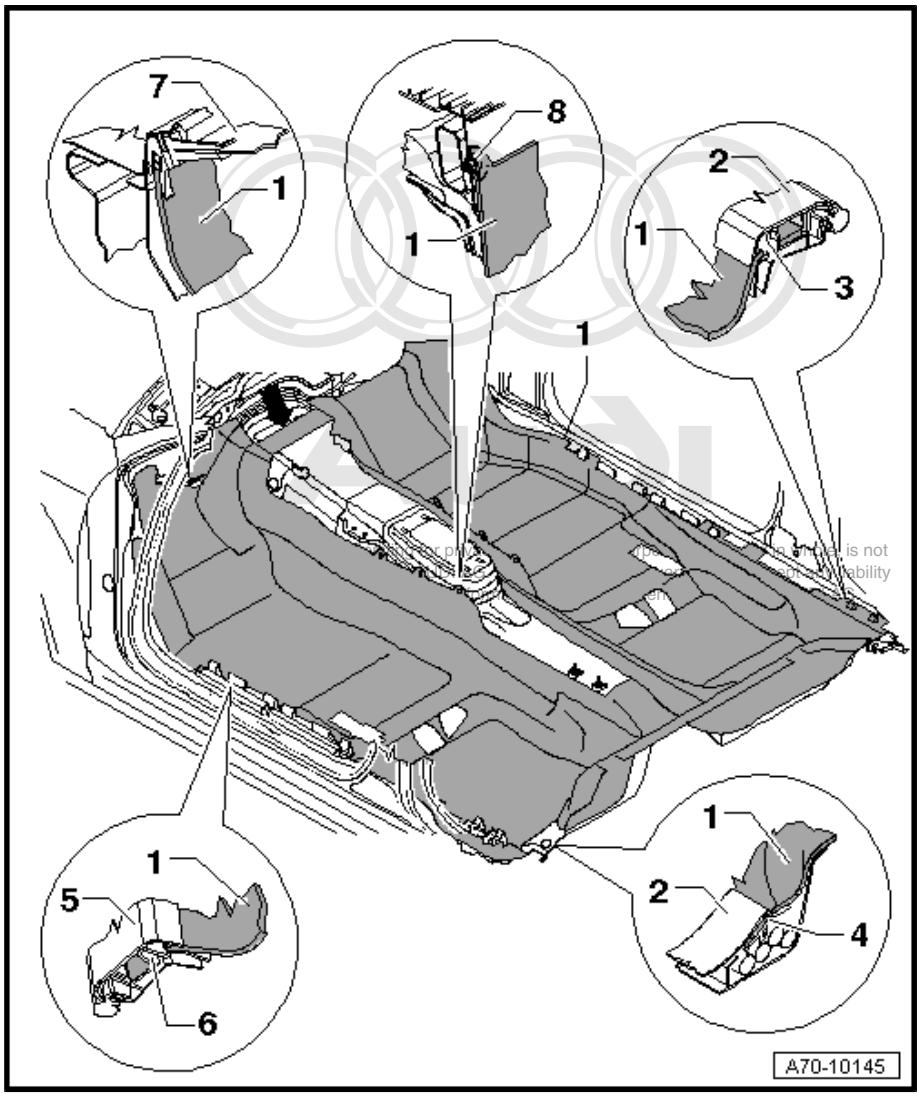
- ❑ Tightening torque: 0.6 Nm

6 - Cover with wheel

- ❑ ⇒ Item 5 (page 277)

5.17 Removing and installing floor covering

1 - Floor covering



- ♦ Removing
  - – Remove front seats ⇒ page 379 .
  - – Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .
  - – Remove centre console (rear) ⇒ page 17 .
  - – Remove centre console (front) ⇒ page 22 .
  - – Remove connecting pieces (left and right) ⇒ page 253 .
  - – Remove B-pillar trim (top) on left and right ⇒ page 257 .
  - – Remove B-pillar trim (bottom) on left and right ⇒ page 260 .
  - – Remove A-pillar trim (bottom, left and right) ⇒ page 251 .
  - – Unfasten sill/pillar trim (rear left and right) in area of floor covering -1- ⇒ page 264 .
  - – Remove foot rest ⇒ page 255 .
  - – If fitted, remove covers or trim for connector points, footwell air vents etc.
  - – Remove speed nuts -8- (6x).
  - – Detach floor covering from pins (6x) on mounting frame for centre console ⇒ page 279 .
  - – Remove mounting frame for centre console ⇒ page 31 .
  - – Pull floor covering -1- towards rear.
  - – Fold up floor covering -1- lengthwise and take it out through one of the doors.
- ♦ Installing

Note

The floor covering is liable to tear easily at the cut-outs. You should therefore fit the floor covering in the vehicle carefully.

- – Remove transportation crosspiece -arrow- when you fit floor covering -1-.
- – Move floor covering -1- fully forwards.
- – Check that all cut-outs in floor covering -1- are correctly positioned.
- – Install mounting frame for centre console ⇒ page 31 .
- – When installing the mounting frame for the centre console make sure that its rear end is seated on the floor covering ⇒ page 280 .
- – Fix floor covering -1- in position on mounting frame for centre console with pins (6x) ⇒ page 279 .

- Install new speed nuts -8-.
- If necessary, install covers or trim for connector points, footwell air outlets etc.
- Install foot rest ⇒ page 255 .
- Install sill/pillar trim (rear left and right) in area of floor covering -1- ⇒ page 264 .
- Install A-pillar trim (bottom left and right) ⇒ page 251 .
- Install B-pillar trim (bottom left and right) ⇒ page 260 .
- Install B-pillar trim (top left and right) ⇒ page 257 .
- Install connecting pieces (left and right) ⇒ page 253 .
- Install centre console (rear) ⇒ page 17 .
- Install centre console (front) ⇒ page 22 .
- Install rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .
- Install front seats ⇒ page 379 .
- Fit lip of door seal over A-pillar trim (bottom) and B-pillar trim (top and bottom) and over connecting piece and sill/pillar trim (rear).

2 - Sill/pillar trim (rear)

3 - Support piece for sill/pillar trim (rear)

4 - Reinforcement for floor covering

5 - A-pillar trim (bottom)

6 - Support piece for A-pillar trim (bottom)

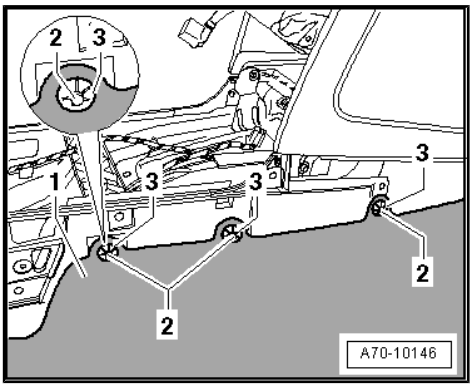
7 - Storage compartment (driver side)

8 - Speed nuts (6x)

❑ Always renew after removing

Securing floor covering

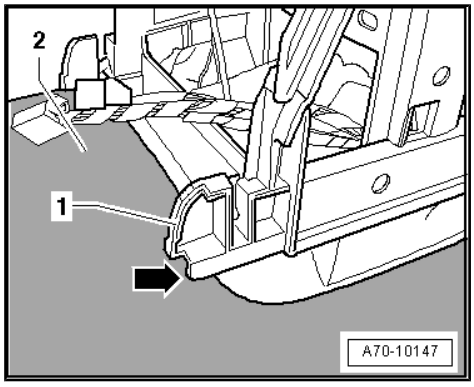
- Push floor covering -1- onto pins -2- (6x).
- Fit new speed nuts -3- (6x).



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation position of mounting frame for centre console

Make sure that rear part of mounting frame for centre console -1- -arrow- is seated correctly on floor covering -2-.



5.18 Rear lid trim - exploded view

1 - Bolts, 1.8 Nm
- ❑ 2x

2 - Handle recess
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 283

3 - Pop rivet

4 - Bracket for handle recess

5 - Spring clip
- ❑ Renew if damaged

6 - Rear lid trim
- ❑ Removing and installing

7 - Lock cover

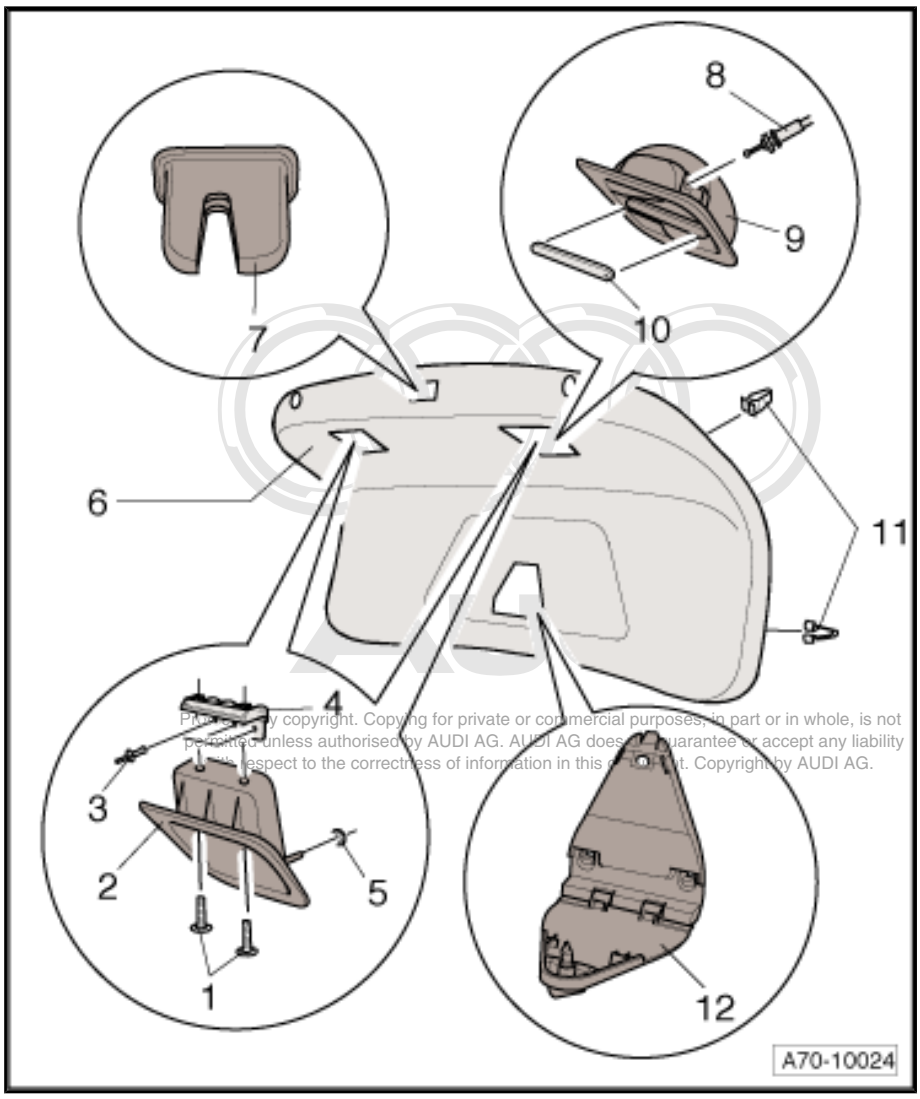
8 - Operating mechanism for releasing rear lid manually
- ❑ Disengaging ⇒ page 282

9 - Manual release for rear lid
- ❑ For USA vehicles and Audi A6 Security

10 - Cover for rear lid manual release handle

11 - Spring clip
- ❑ Renew if damaged
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280-

12 - Bracket for warning triangle

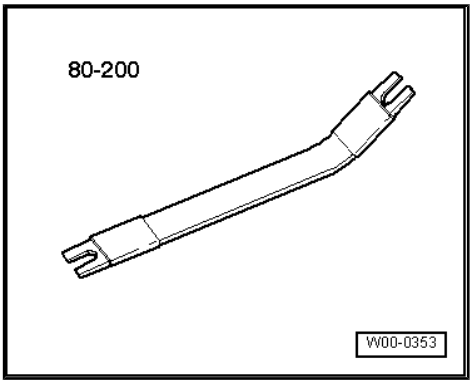


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

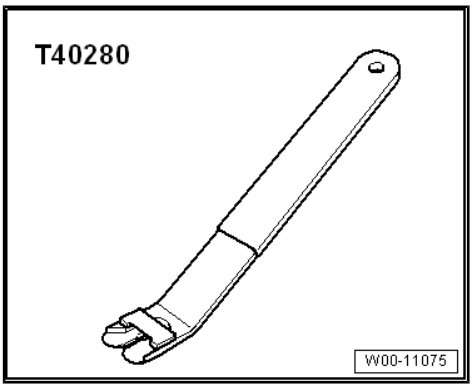
5.19 Removing and installing rear lid trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever -80-200-



- Removal wedge -T40280- is needed to remove any clips left in body mounting points

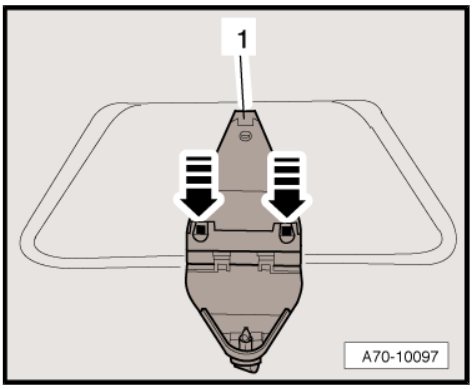


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

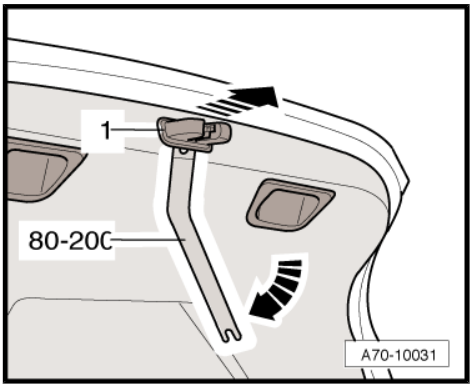
Removing

– Take warning triangle out of its bracket.

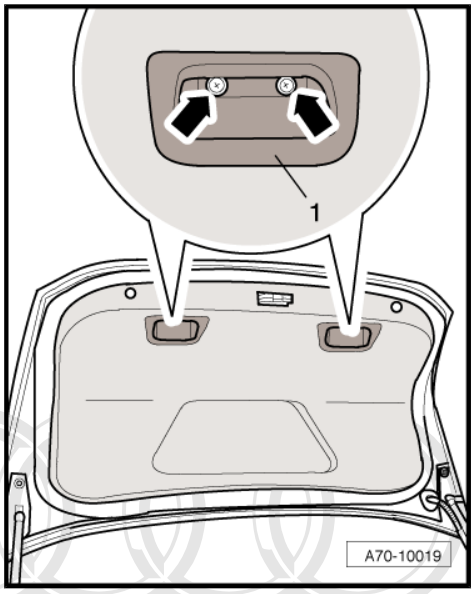
– Release the two retaining springs -arrows- and detach bracket -1- for warning triangle.



– Use removal lever -80-200- to lever off cover -1- over rear lid lock in direction of -arrow-.

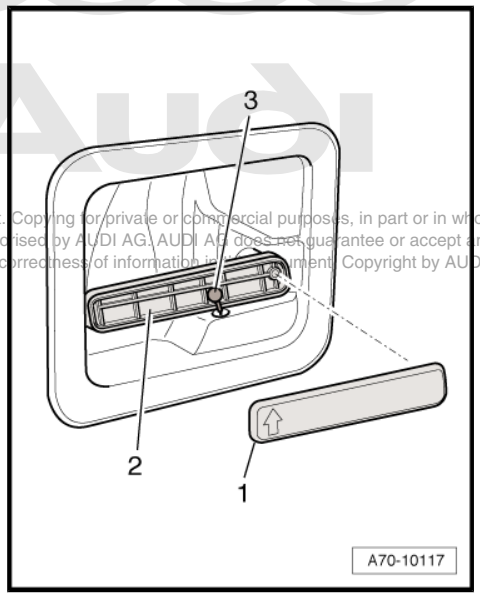


– Unscrew bolts -arrows- at handle recesses -1-.



USA vehicles and Audi A6 Security:

– Unclip cover -1- from operating lever -2-.
– Disengage nipple -3- of release cable at operating lever.
– Unscrew bolt behind operating lever.



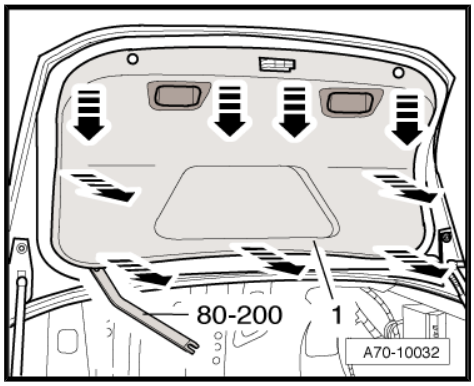
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

All vehicles:

– Use removal lever -80-200- to lever off trim -1- for rear lid at points marked with -arrows-.

USA vehicles and Audi A6 Security:

– Disengage cable sheath at rear of handle recess -3- for operating lever.



Installing

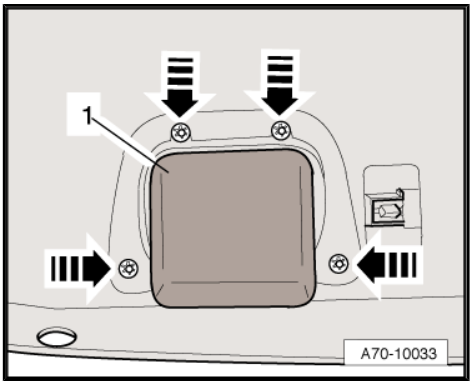
Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Handle recess to rear lid	1.8

5.20 Removing and installing handle recess

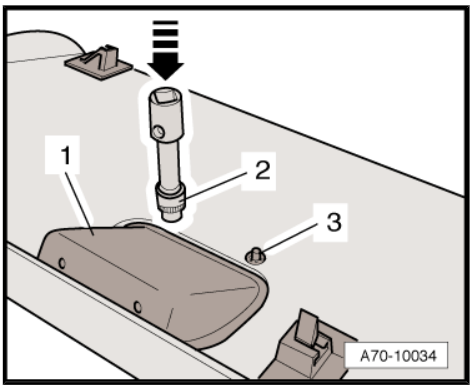
Removing



– Remove rear lid trim ⇒ page 280 .
– Remove speed nuts -arrows-.
– Take handle recess -1- out of trim.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:



– Insert handle recess -1- in rear lid trim.
– Position new speed nuts -3- on locating pins.
– Use hexagon socket (7 mm) -item 2- to press on speed nuts -arrow-.
– Install rear lid trim ⇒ page 280 .

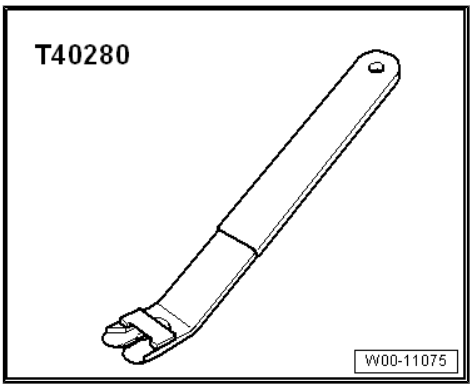
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Handle recess to rear lid	1.8

5.21 Exploded view of rear cross panel trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required



♦ Removal wedge -T40280- is needed to remove any clips left in body mounting points

1 - 2.5 Nm

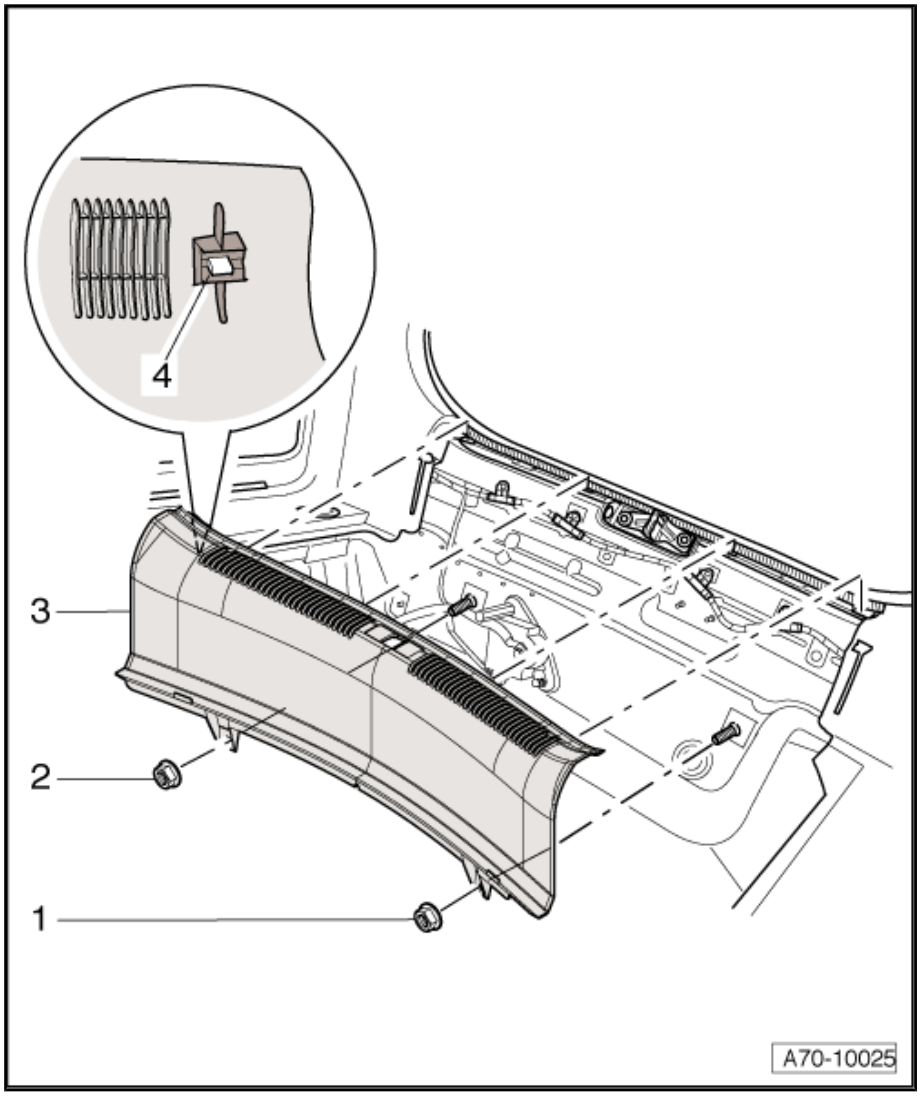
2 - 2.5 Nm

3 - Rear cross panel trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 284

4 - Spring clip

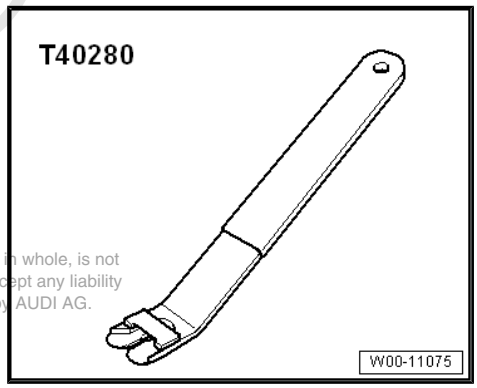
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Renew if damaged
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280-



5.22 Removing and installing rear cross panel trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Removal wedge -T40280- is needed to remove any clips left in body mounting points

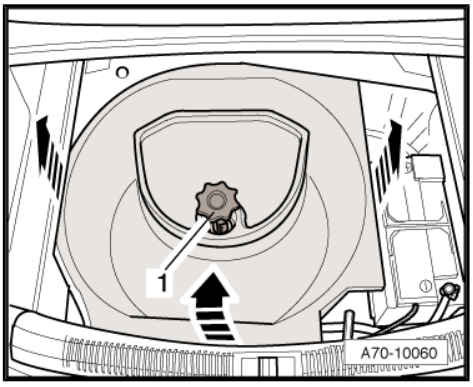


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

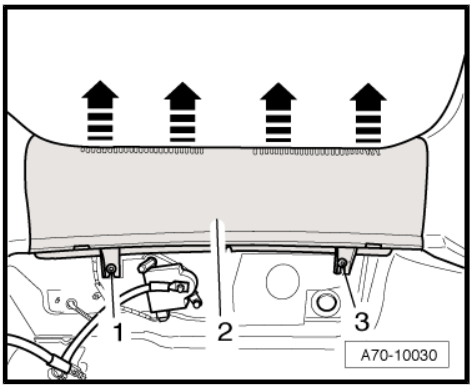
– Remove retaining bolt -1-.

– Take moulded insert out of spare wheel well -arrows-.



– Unscrew nuts -1- and -3-.

– Lift off rear cross panel trim -2- -arrows-.



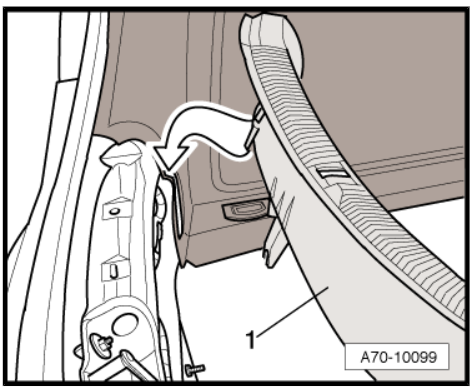
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Guide retaining tabs of rear cross panel trim -1- into recesses on luggage compartment side trim -arrow-.

– Fit sealing lip of rubber seal over leading edge of rear cross panel trim.



Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Rear cross panel trim to body	2.5

5.23 Luggage compartment side trim - exploded view

1 - Spring clip

- ❑ Renew if damaged
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280-

2 - Rear lid seal

3 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 286

4 - Spring clip

- ❑ Renew if damaged
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280-

5 - Retaining hook

6 - Fastener

- ❑ Renew if damaged

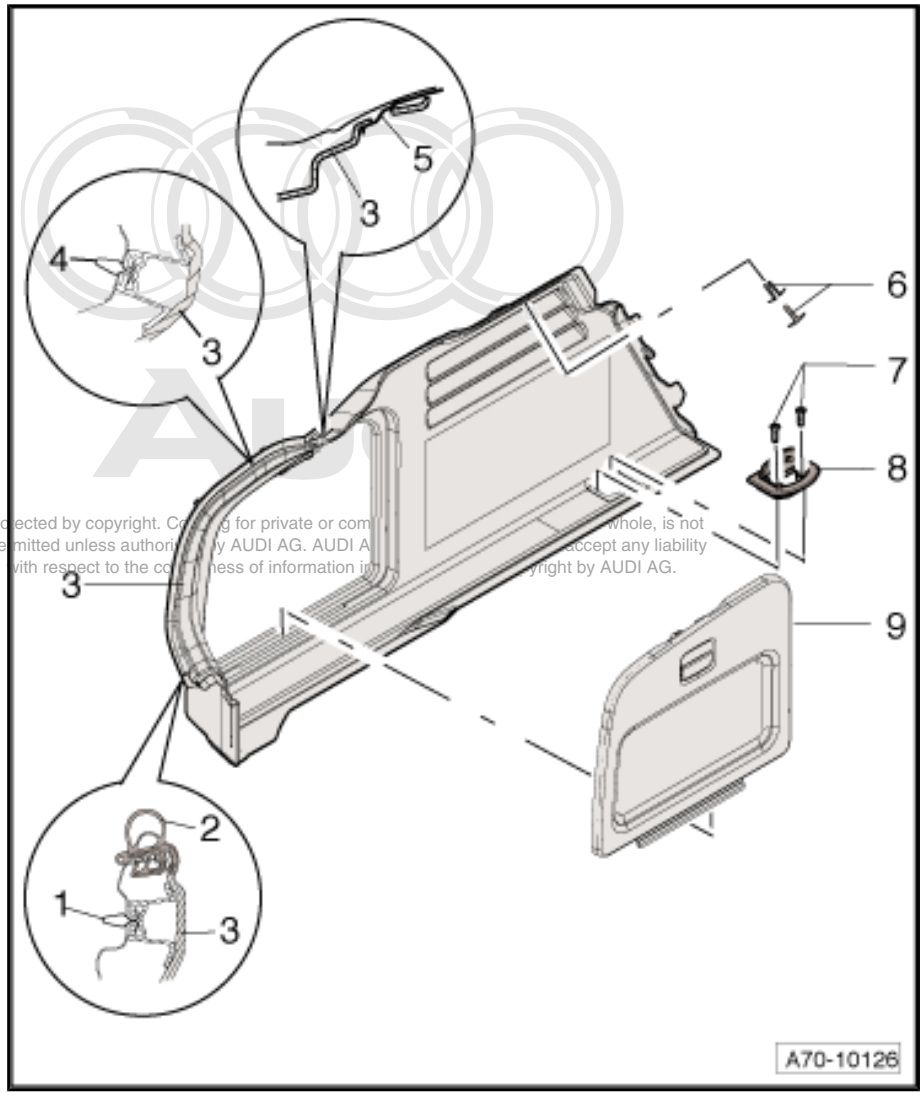
7 - 4 Nm

- ❑ 2x per fastening ring

8 - Fastening ring

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 288

9 - Cover for luggage compartment side trim

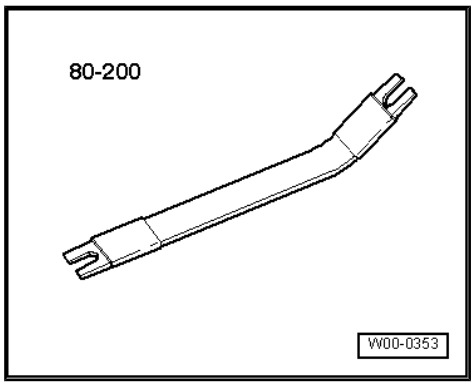


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

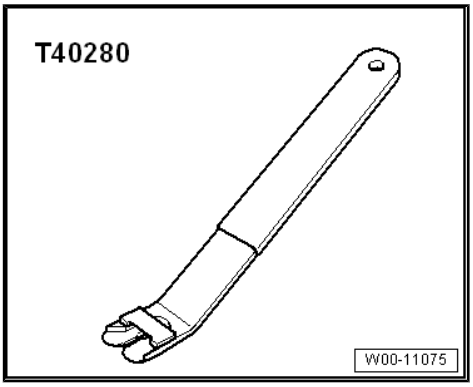
5.24 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Removal lever -80-200-



♦ Removal wedge -T40280- is needed to remove any clips left in body mounting points

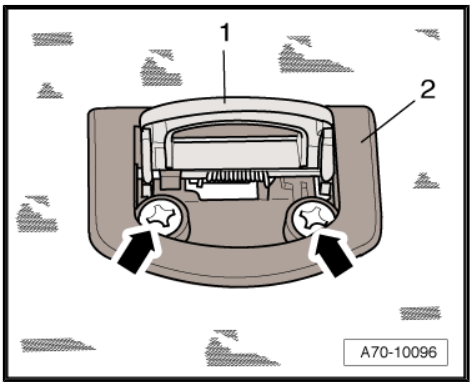


Removing

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

– On vehicles with folding rear seat backrest, remove appropriate side airbag (rear) ⇒ page 150 .
– On vehicles with fixed backrests (rear), remove back panel trim ⇒ page 288 .
– Take out luggage compartment floor covering ⇒ page 290 .
– Remove rear cross panel trim ⇒ page 284 .
– Remove cover from luggage compartment side trim.
– If fitted, fold up fastening ring -1-.
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach mounting bracket for fastening ring -2-.



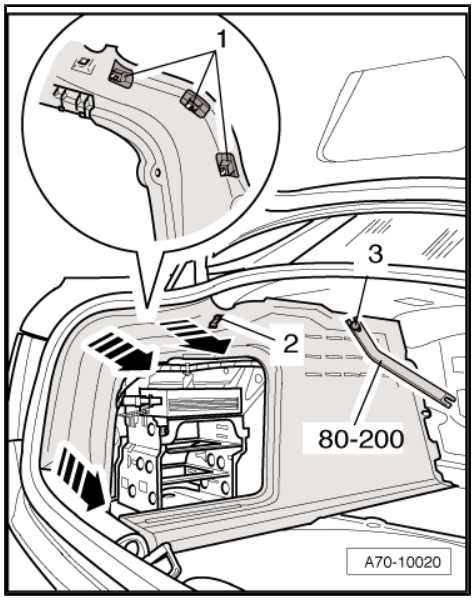
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Use release lever -80-200- to release fastener -3-.
– Use removal lever -80-200- to lever spring clips -1- out of body -arrows-.
– Disengage luggage compartment side trim from retaining hook -2- and take it out of luggage compartment.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Fold sealing lip of rubber seal over leading edge of luggage compartment side trim.
– Install rear cross panel trim ⇒ page 284 .
– On vehicles with folding rear seat backrest, install appropriate side airbag (rear) ⇒ page 150 .
– On vehicles with fixed backrests (rear), install back panel trim ⇒ page 288 .
– Fit luggage compartment floor covering in luggage compartment ⇒ page 290 .



5.25 Removing and installing fastening rings

Removing

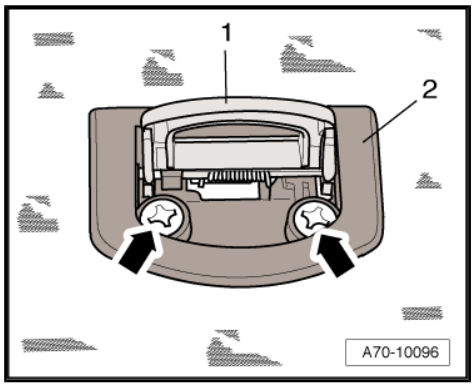
– Fold up fastening ring -1-.
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach mounting bracket for fastening ring -2-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Fastening ring to body	4



5.26 Removing and installing retaining hooks

Removing

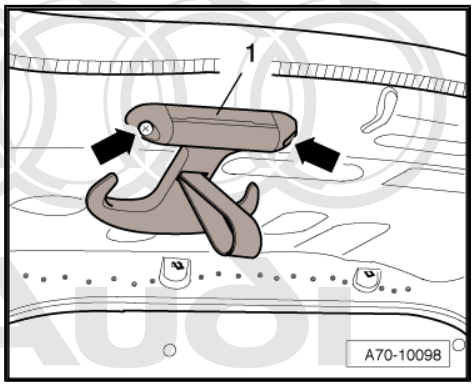
– Remove bolts -arrows- and detach retaining hook -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Retaining hook to body	1.5



5.27 Back panel trim on vehicles with fixed rear seat backrests - exploded view

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. Audi does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Retaining clips

- ❑ Renew if damaged

2 - Retaining clip

- ❑ On vehicles with no load-through facility (ski bag):
- ❑ Renew if damaged

3 - Retaining clips

- ❑ Renew if damaged

4 - Back panel trim

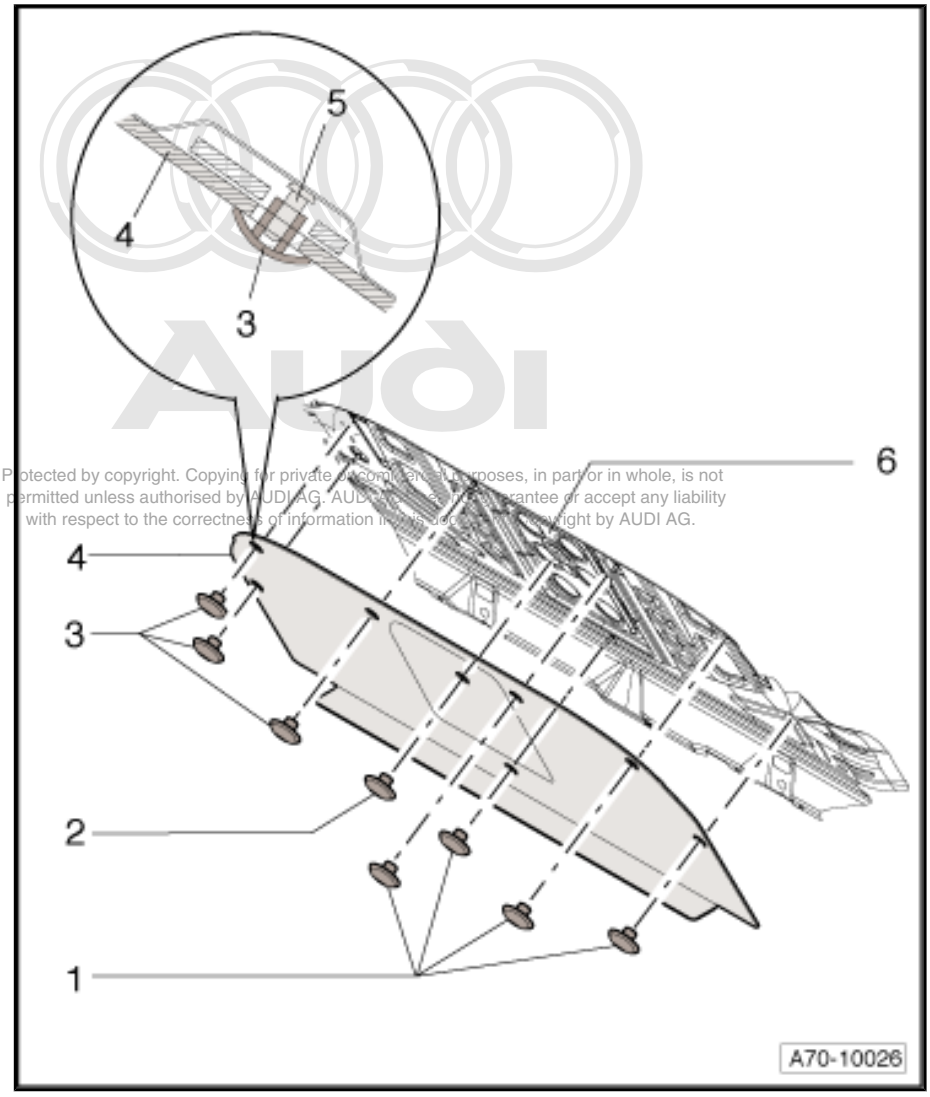
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 289

5 - Threaded pin

- ❑ On partition

6 - Partition

- ❑ Between luggage compartment and passenger compartment



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

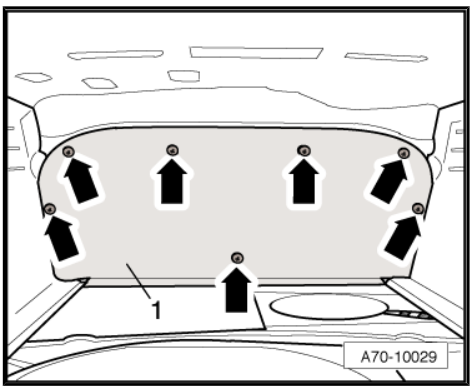
5.28 Removing and installing back panel trim

Removing

– Remove luggage compartment floor covering ⇒ page 290 .

– Use a flat-bladed screwdriver to unscrew retaining clips -arrows-.

– Take back panel trim out of luggage compartment.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

Note

Renew any damaged retaining clips.

– Ensure that no creases form in the back panel trim.

5.29 Luggage compartment floor covering - exploded view

1 - Expanding nut

- ❑ Only on vehicles with folding rear seat backrest

2 - 2 Nm

- ❑ Only on vehicles with folding rear seat backrest

3 - Clip nut

4 - Retainer for luggage compartment floor covering

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 290

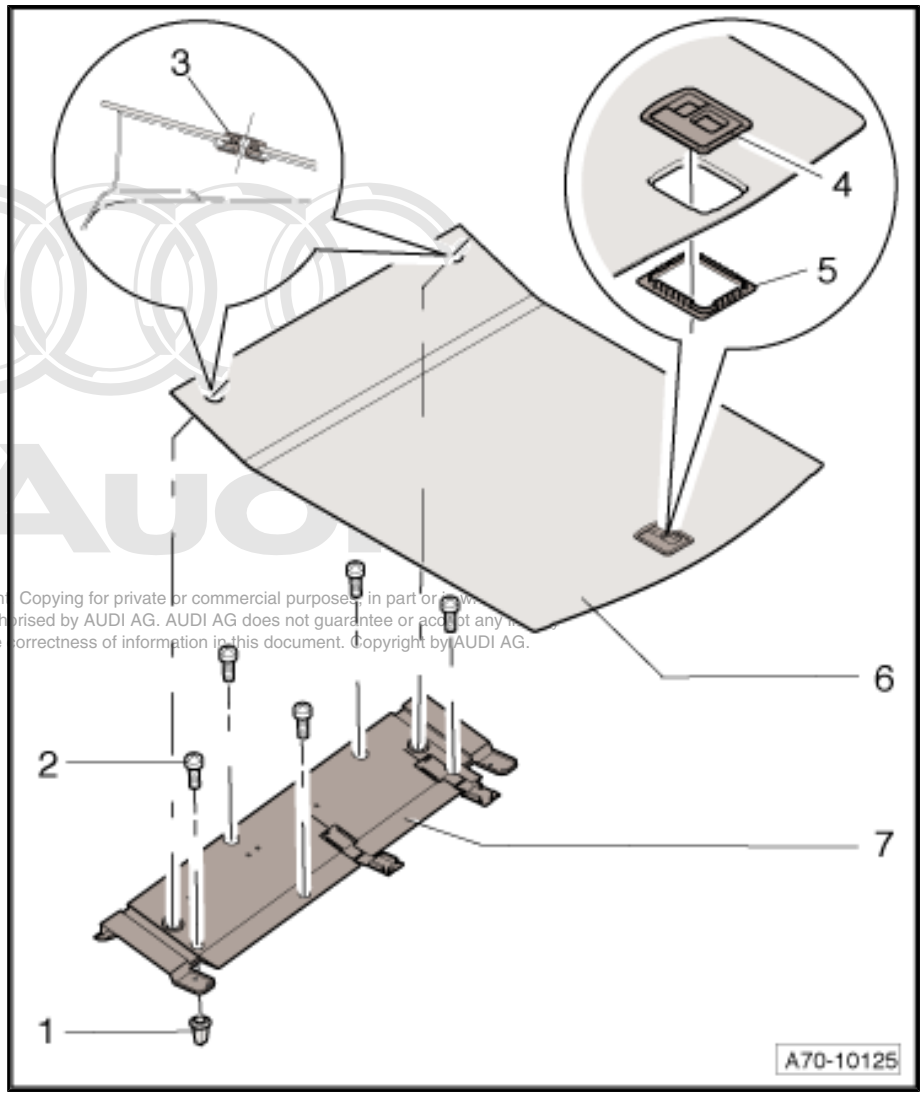
5 - Retaining frame

- ❑ For retainer for luggage compartment floor covering
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 290

6 - Luggage compartment floor covering

7 - Mounting frame for loading aid

- ❑ Only on vehicles with folding rear seat backrest
- ❑ For securing luggage compartment floor covering
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 291



Copyright AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.30 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor covering

Removing

– On vehicles with folding backrests (rear), pull clip nut of luggage compartment floor covering upwards off retaining clip.

– Take luggage compartment floor covering out of luggage compartment.

Installing

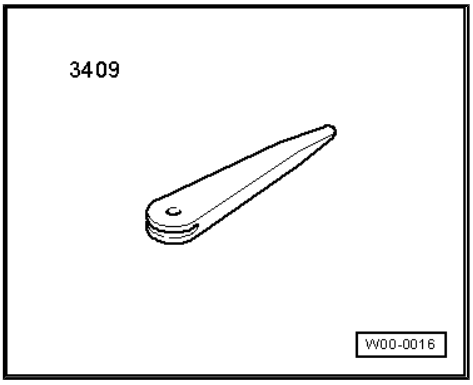
Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– On vehicles with folding backrests (rear), please make sure that you hear clip nut engage in retaining clip.

5.31 Removing and installing retainer for luggage compartment floor

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge -3409-

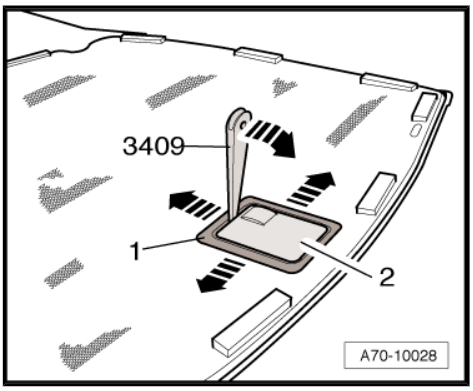


Removing

– Remove luggage compartment floor covering ⇒ page 290 .

– Use removal wedge -3409- to release retaining frame -1- -arrows-.

– Disengage retaining frame and detach retainer for luggage compartment floor covering -2-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– The retaining frame can only be pressed onto the retainer for luggage compartment floor covering in one position.

5.32 Removing and installing mounting frame for loading aid

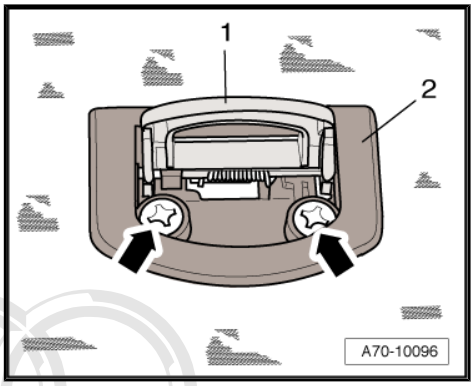
Removing

– Pull clip nut of luggage compartment floor covering upwards off retaining clip.

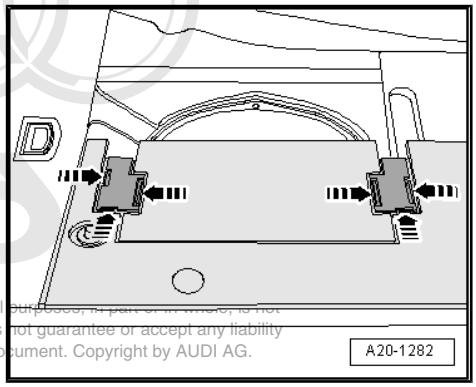
– Fold backrests (rear) forwards.

– Fold up fastening ring -1-.

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach mounting bracket for fastening ring -2-.

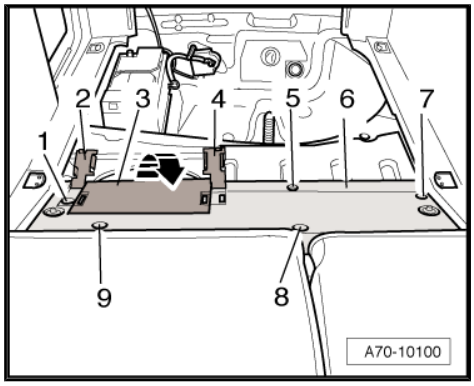


– Release retaining tabs -arrows-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Open retaining tabs -1- and -3- by folding them towards rear.
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Fold cover -2- forwards -arrow- and take mounting frame for loading aid -4- out of luggage compartment.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

Component	Nm
Mounting frame for loading aid to body	2
Fastening ring to body	4

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6 Trim panels - Avant

6.1 C-pillar trim (top) - exploded view

1 - Belt guide

2 - Spring clip

- ❑ Renew if damaged
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280-

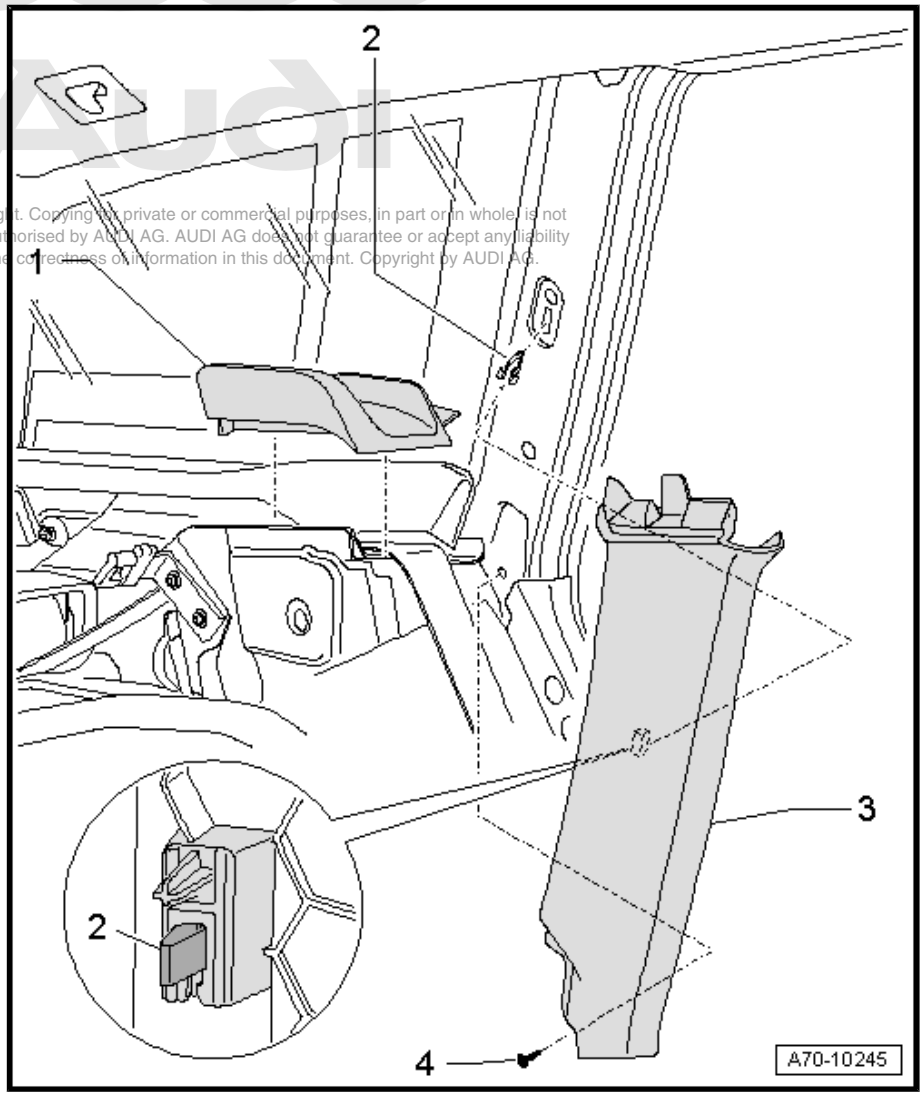
3 - C-pillar trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 293

4 - Bolt, 3.5 Nm

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Threaded holes for bolts must always be cleaned (e.g. with a thread tap).

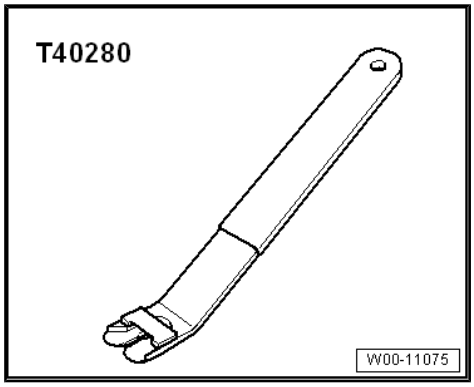
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



6.2 Removing and installing C-pillar trim (top)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge -T40280- is needed to remove any clips left in body mounting points

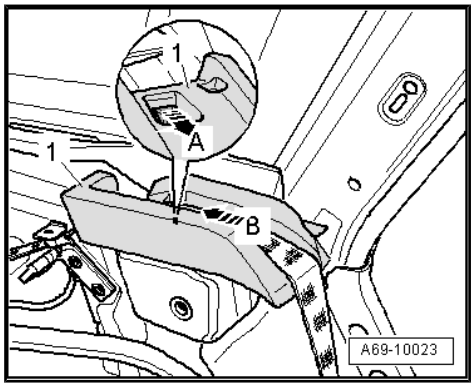


Removing

WARNING

Observe safety precautions for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 , side airbags ⇒ page 111 and curtain airbags ⇒ page 112 .

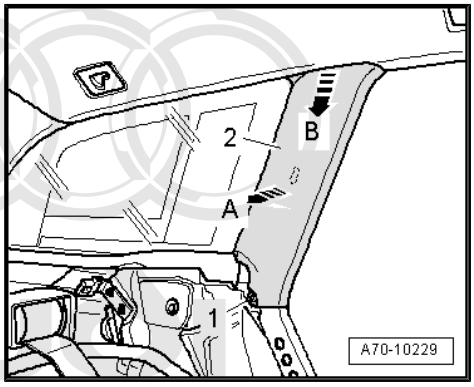
– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .
– Remove side airbag ⇒ page 556 .
– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 308 .
– Lift spring tab -arrow A-.
– Push belt guide -1- towards rear, out of retainer -arrow B-.



Note

Bolts on underside of belt guide must NOT be turned. If the bolts have been turned, the belt guide must be renewed.

– Remove bolt -1-.
– Detach trim -2- for C-pillar (top) from body -arrow A-.
– Remove trim for C-pillar downwards -arrow B-.



Installing

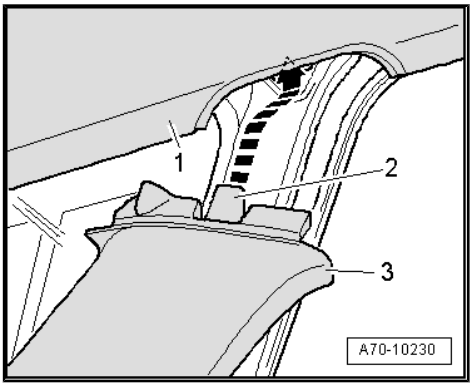
Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

Note

- *Locking fluid residue must always be removed from the threaded holes for the C-pillar trim (top) after the trim has been removed. Otherwise, new bolts could seize when screwed in and shear off when they are removed.*
- *You can use a thread tap to clean the threaded holes.*
- *Renew self-locking bolts.*
- *Renew spring clips if damaged.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– When installing trim -3- for C-pillar (top) make sure that retaining tab -2- engages in body cut-out -arrow- and in headliner -1-.
– Push belt guide on until you hear it engage.



Note

Bolts on underside of belt guide must NOT be turned. If the bolts have been turned, the belt guide must be renewed.

– Pull rubber lip of door seal over edge of trim at all door openings.
– Install luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 308 .
– Install side airbag ⇒ page 556 .
– Install rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .

Tightening torque

Component	Nm
C-pillar trim to body	3.5 3)

3) Renew bolts

6.3 Exploded view of D-pillar trim

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Spring clip

- ❑ Renew if damaged
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280-

2 - Spring clip

- ❑ Renew if damaged
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280-

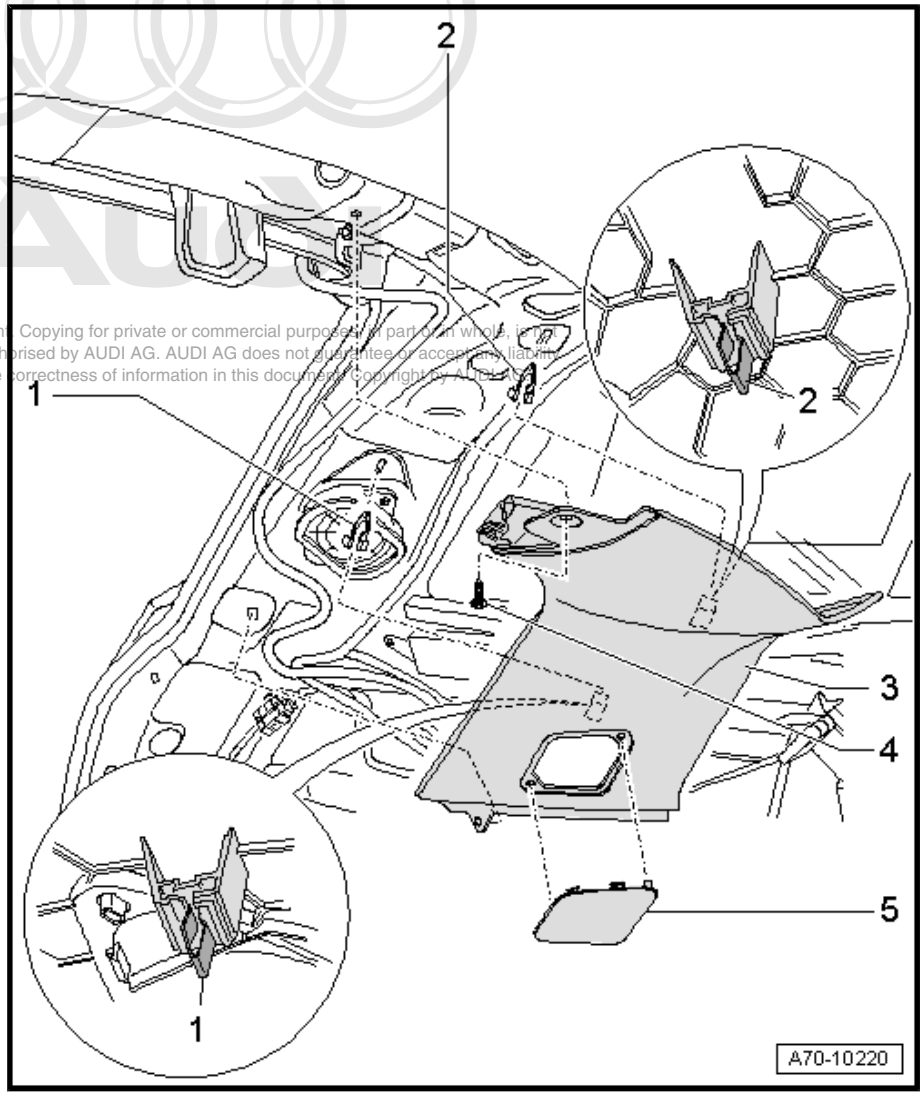
3 - D-pillar trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 296

4 - Bolt, 4 Nm

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Threaded holes for bolts must always be cleaned (e.g. with a thread tap).

5 - Loudspeaker cover

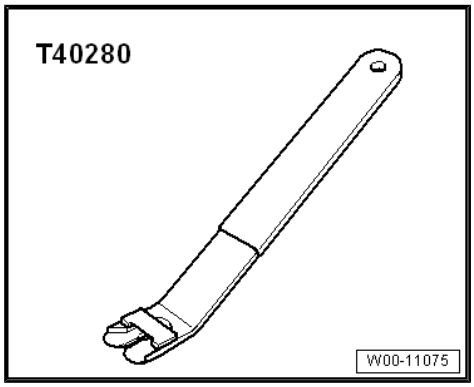


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.4 Removing and installing D-pillar trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Removal wedge -T40280- is needed to remove any clips left in body mounting points

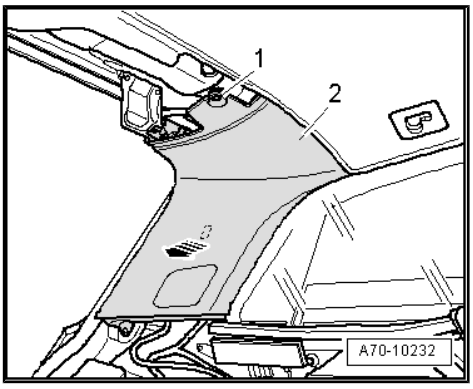


Removing

WARNING

Observe safety precautions for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 , side airbags ⇒ page 111 and curtain airbags ⇒ page 112 .

– Remove retaining rail for fastening rings ⇒ page 310 .
– Remove rear cross panel trim ⇒ page 306 .
– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 308 .
– Remove roof end trim ⇒ page 298 .
– Remove bolt -1-.
– Detach trim -2- for D-pillar from body -arrow-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

Note

- *Locking fluid residue must always be removed from the threaded holes for the D-pillar trim after the trim has been removed. Otherwise, new bolts could seize when screwed in and shear off when they are removed.*
- *You can use a thread tap to clean the threaded holes.*
- *Renew self-locking bolts.*
- *Renew spring clips if damaged.*

– Install roof end trim ⇒ page 298 .
– Install luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 308 .
– Install rear cross panel trim ⇒ page 306 .
– Install retaining rail for fastening rings ⇒ page 310 .

Tightening torque

Component	Nm
D-pillar trim to body	4 4)

4) Renew bolts

6.5 Exploded view of roof end trim

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Roof end trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 298

2 - Bolt, 4 Nm

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Threaded holes for bolts must always be cleaned (e.g. with a thread tap).

3 - Luggage compartment light

4 - Body cut-out

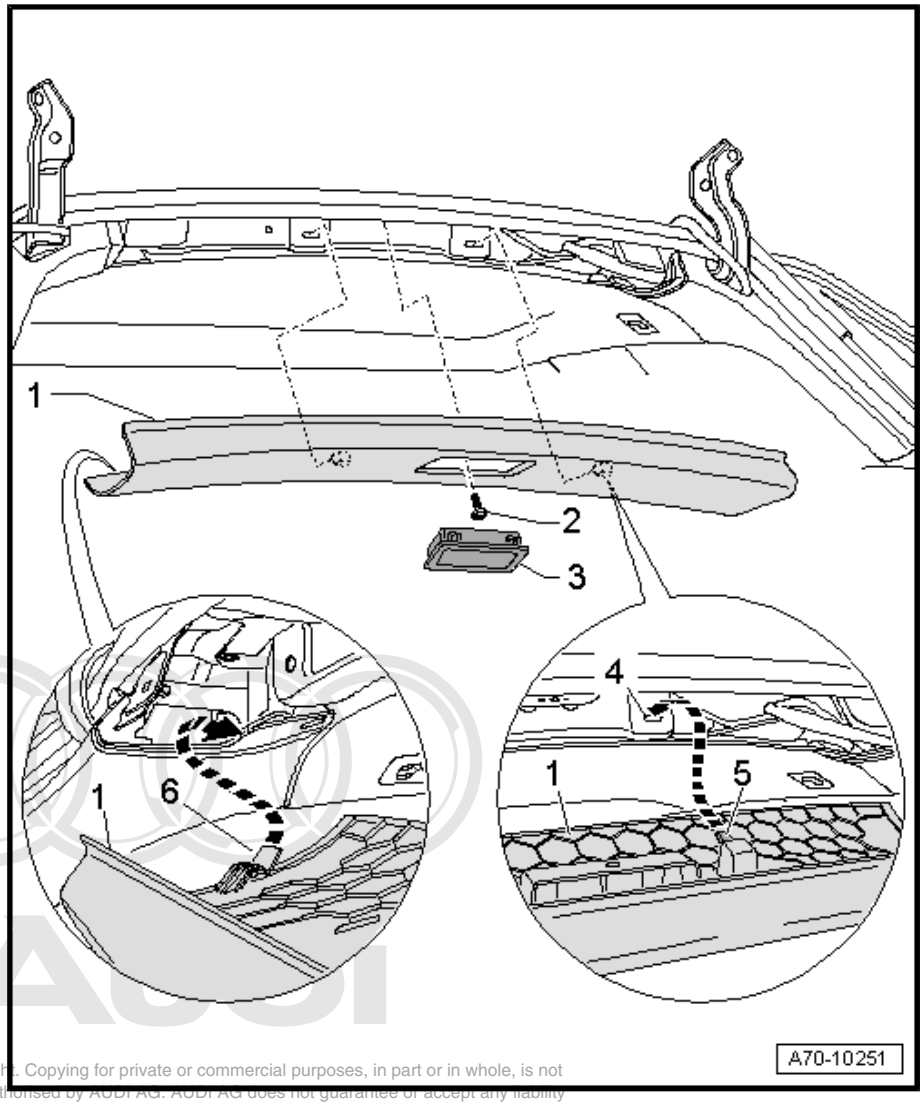
- ❑ For spring clip

5 - Spring clip

- ❑ Renew if damaged
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280-

6 - Retaining clip

- ❑ Slide onto D-pillar trim

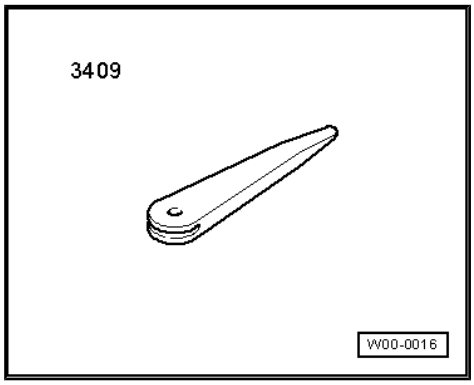


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

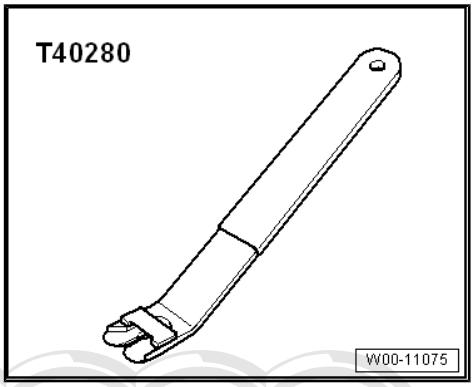
6.6 Removing and installing roof end trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Removal wedge -3409-



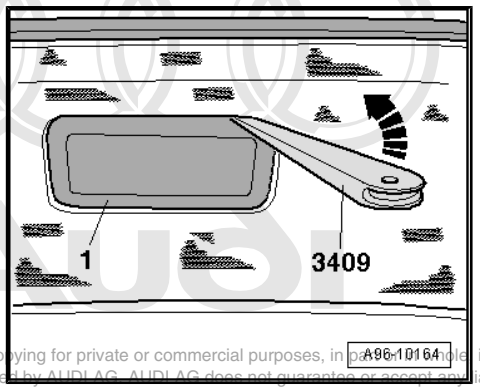
♦ Removal wedge -T40280- is needed to remove any clips left in body mounting points



Removing

– Use removal wedge -3409- to carefully prise luggage compartment light -1- out of opening in headliner -arrow-.

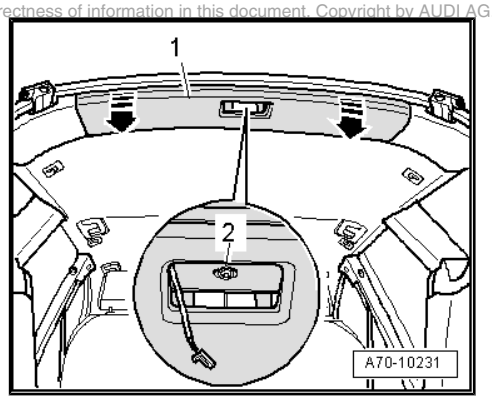
– Unplug electrical connector.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove bolt -2-.

– Carefully pull roof end trim -1- off roof frame towards rear -arrows-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

Note

♦ *Locking fluid residue must always be removed from threaded holes for roof end trim after it has been removed. Otherwise, the new bolt could seize when screwed in and shear off when it is removed.*

♦ *You can use a thread tap to clean the threaded holes.*

♦ *Renew self-locking bolts.*

♦ *Renew spring clips if damaged.*

– Position roof end trim in such a way that retaining clips make contact with D-pillar trim and spring clips make contact with body cut-out.

– Slide roof end trim on until you hear spring clips engage.

Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Roof end trim to body	4 [5]

5) Renew bolt.

6.7 Rear lid trim - exploded view

1 - 4 Nm

2 - Spring clip

- ❑ Renew if damaged
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280-

3 - Bolt, 2 Nm

- ❑ 2x

4 - Spring clip

- ❑ Renew if damaged
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280-

5 - Rubber buffer

6 - Spring clip

- ❑ Renew if damaged

7 - Rubber buffer

8 - Trim (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 302

9 - Trim for rear lid lock

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 304

10 - Trim (bottom)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 300

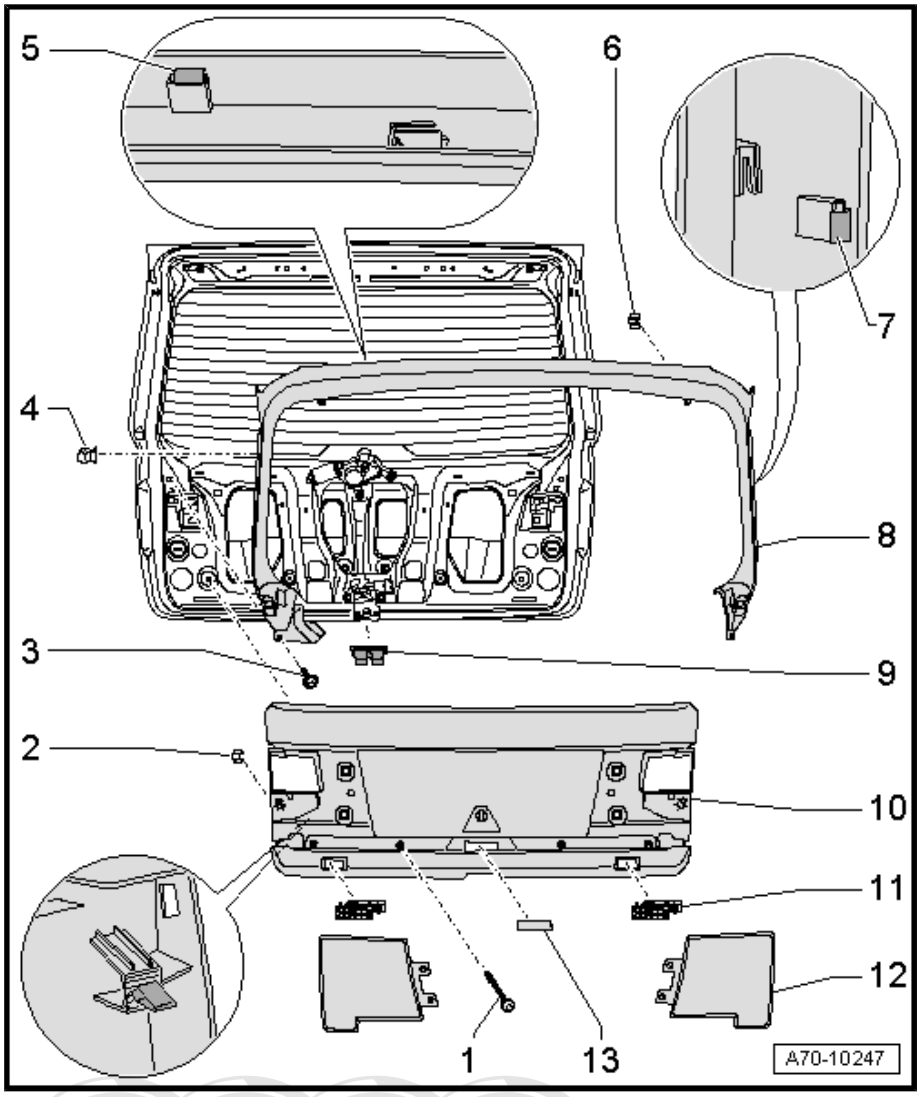
11 - Luggage compartment light

12 - Cover

- ❑ For inner tail light

13 - Cover

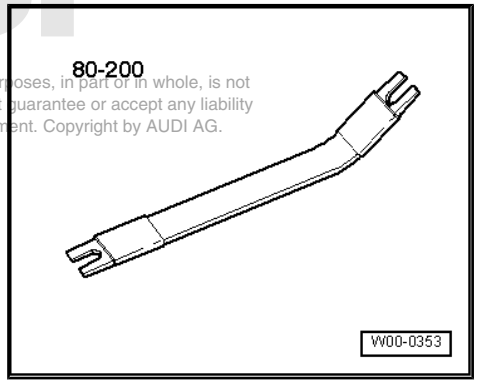
- ❑ For manual release for rear lid



6.8 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom)

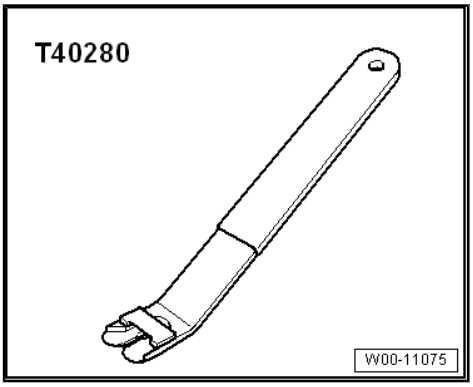
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Removal lever -80-200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

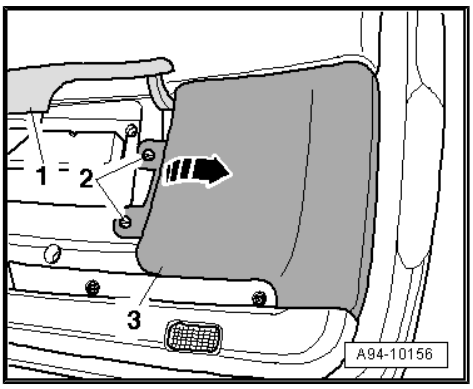
♦ Removal wedge -T40280- is needed to remove any clips left in body mounting points



Removing

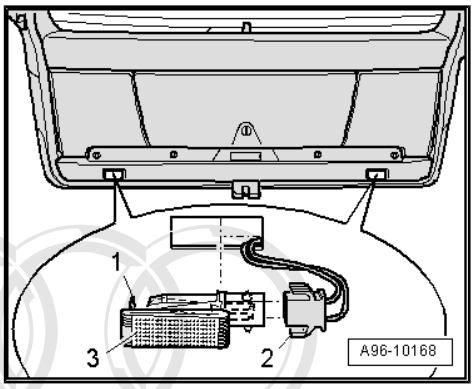
– Open flap -1- for warning triangle.

– Turn quick release fastener -2- 90° in anti-clockwise direction and take cover -3- out of luggage compartment lining in direction of -arrow-.



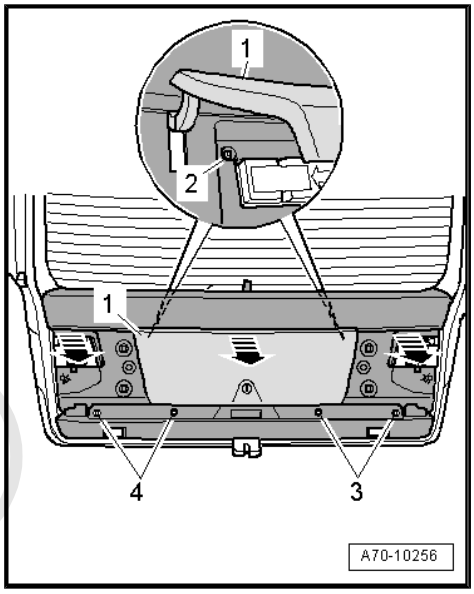
– Use a flat screwdriver to press in retaining tab -1- and prise out luggage compartment light -3-.

– Unplug electrical connector -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove bolts -3- and -4-.
– Open flap -1- for warning triangle and unscrew bolts -2-.
– Carefully release spring clips on trim (left and right) from rear lid and carefully pull trim off rear lid -arrows-.
– Reach between trim and rear lid and disengage other spring clips.
– Detach trim.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

Note

Renew spring clips if damaged.

– Engage rear lid trim (bottom) trim at rear lid lock.

Tightening torque

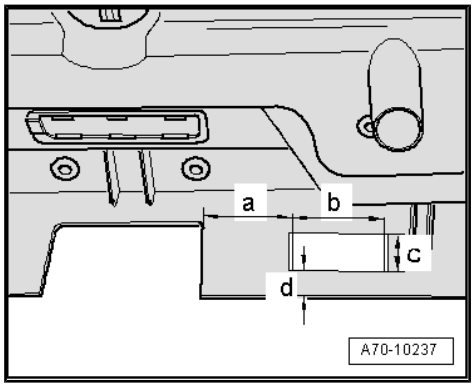
Component	Nm
Trim (bottom) to rear lid	4

Audi
Copyright by AUDI AG. Any reproduction, duplication, transmission, distribution, storage, translation, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.9 Making opening for button to close rear lid in luggage compartment -E406- on replacement trim part (bottom) for rear lid

Procedure

– Cut opening for button to close rear lid in luggage compartment -E406- out of new trim part (bottom) according to dimensions shown in illustration.



- Dimension -a- = 44 mm
- Dimension -b- = 49 mm
- Dimension -c- = 24 mm
- Dimension -d- = 23 mm

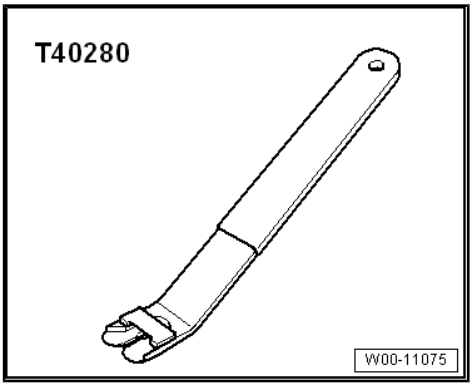
Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Install trim (bottom) ⇒ page 300 .
– Plug in electrical connector.
– Press in button to close rear lid in luggage compartment -E406- until it engages.

6.10 Removing and installing rear lid trim (top)

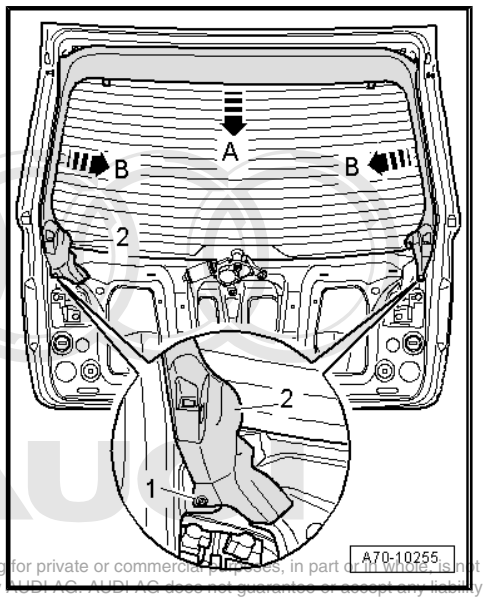
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge -T40280- is needed to remove any clips left in body mounting points



Removing

– Remove trim (bottom) ⇒ page 300 .
– Unscrew bolts -1-.
– Pull side sections of trim -2- off rear lid -arrows A-.
– Then pull off trim (top) from rear lid -arrow B-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

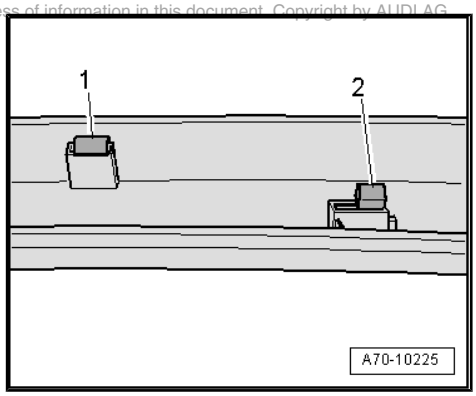
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

Note

Renew spring clips -2- if damaged.

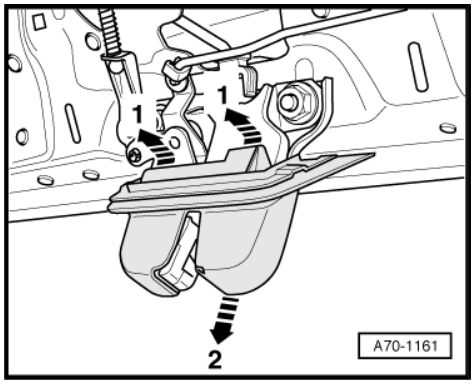
– Check that all rubber buffers -1- are fitted in trim.
– First guide trim behind side window frames of rear lid.
– Clip in trim (first at top, then at sides).



Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Trim (top) to rear lid	2

6.11 Removing and installing trim for rear lid lock



Removing

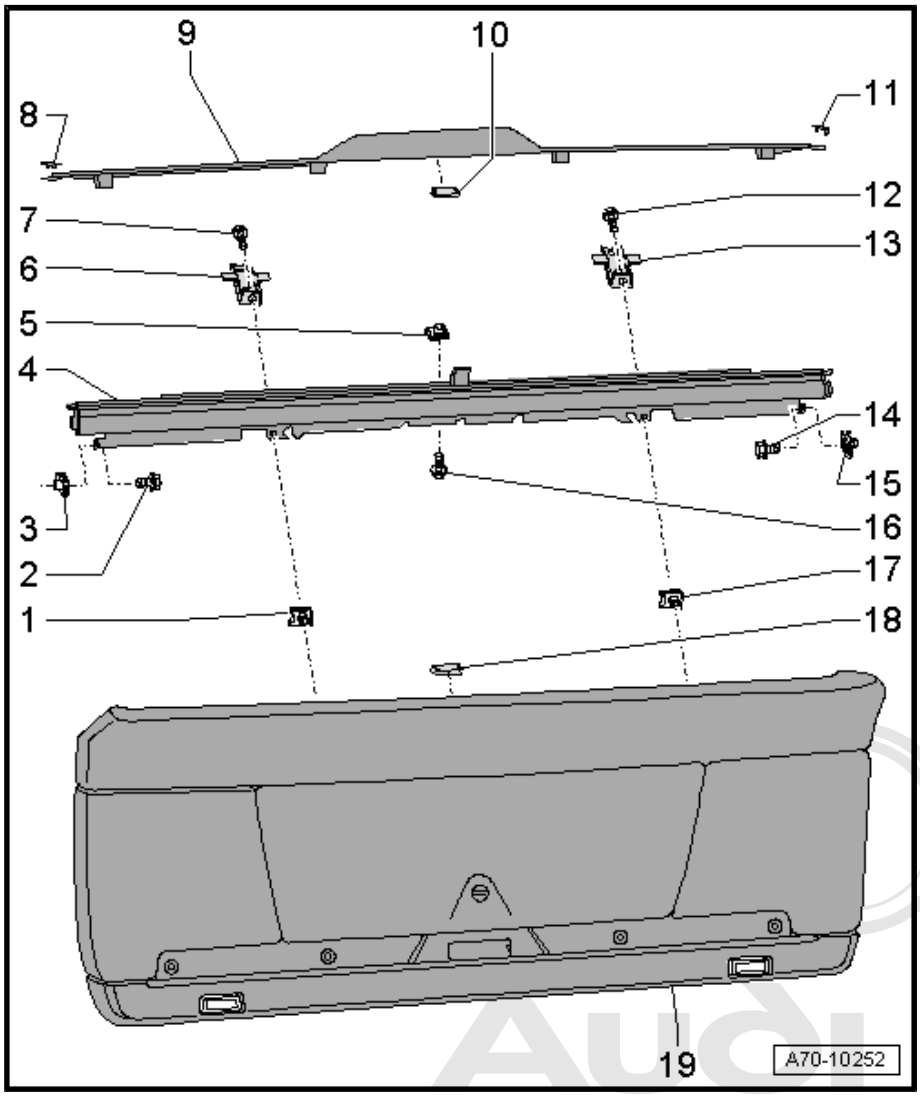
– Remove rear lid trim (bottom) ⇒ page 300 .
– Release trim retaining hooks -arrows 1-.
– Pull trim off rear lid lock -arrow 2-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Slide trim onto rear lid lock until it engages.
– Install rear lid trim (bottom) ⇒ page 300 .

6.12 Sun blind (rear) - exploded view



1 - Speed nut

2 - 2.5 Nm

3 - Speed nut

4 - Sun blind (rear)

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 305

5 - Speed nut

6 - Support piece (right-side)

❑ For sun blind (rear)

7 - 2.5 Nm

8 - Cover cap for sun blind (rear, right-side)

9 - Trim for sun blind (rear)

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 305

10 - Clip

11 - Cover cap for sun blind (rear, left-side)

12 - 2.5 Nm

13 - Support piece (left-side)

❑ For sun blind (rear)

14 - 2.5 Nm

15 - Speed nut

16 - 3 Nm

17 - Speed nut

18 - Clip

19 - Rear lid trim (bottom)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.13 Removing and installing sun blind (rear)

Removing

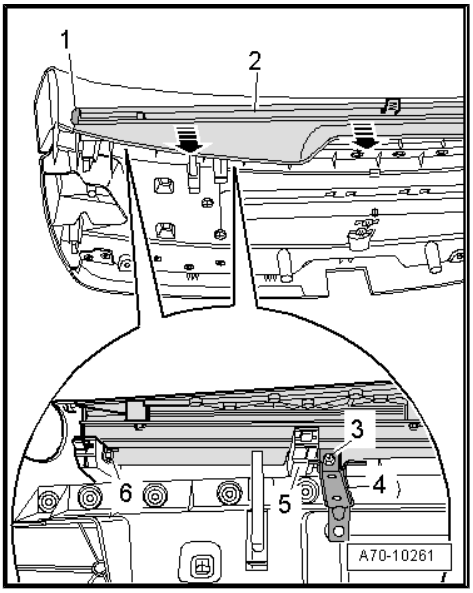
– Remove trim (bottom) ⇒ page 300 .

– Prise out cover cap -1-.

– Remove bolts -3- and -6-.

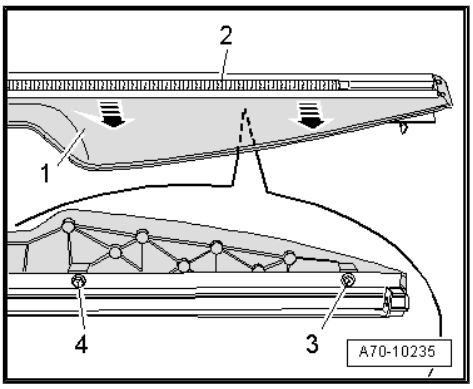
– Pull support pieces -4- out of spring clip mounting -5-.

– Pull sun blind (rear) -2- out of trim (bottom) in direction of -arrow-.



– Remove bolts -3- and -4-.

– Use a screwdriver to carefully prise trim for sun blind (rear) -1- out of sun blind (rear) -2- in direction of -arrow-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– The clips must engage in the openings in the sun blind (rear).

Tightening torques

Component	Nm
Trim for sun blind (rear) to sun blind (rear)	3
Sun blind (rear) to trim (bottom)	2.5

6.14 Removing and installing trim for sun blind (rear)

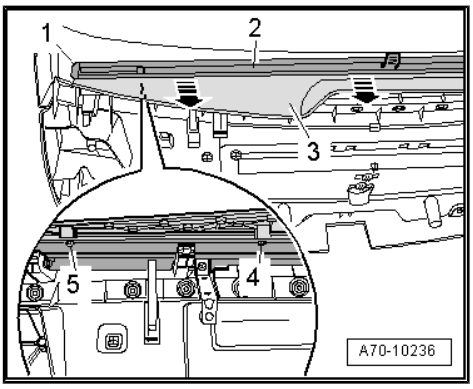
Removing

– Remove trim (bottom) ⇒ page 300 .

– Prise out cover cap -1-.

– Remove bolts -4- and -5-.

– Use a screwdriver to carefully prise trim for sun blind (rear) -3- out of sun blind (rear) -2- in direction of -arrow-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– The clips must engage openings in the sun blind (rear).

Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Trim for sun blind (rear) to sun blind (rear)	3

6.15 Exploded view of rear cross panel trim

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Storage well liner

2 - 3.5 Nm

3 - 3.5 Nm

4 - Spring clip

- ❑ Renew if damaged
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280-

5 - Rear cross panel trim

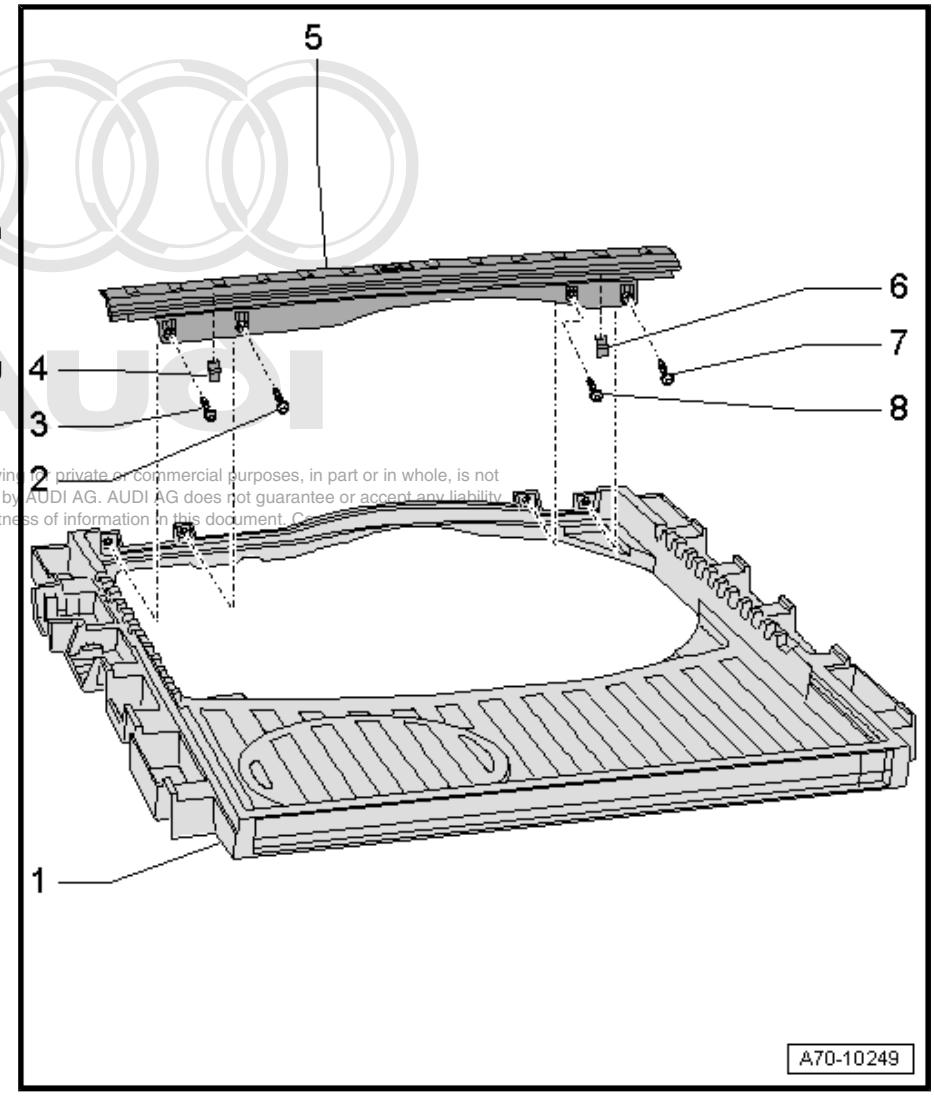
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 306

6 - Spring clip

- ❑ Renew if damaged

7 - 3.5 Nm

8 - 3.5 Nm

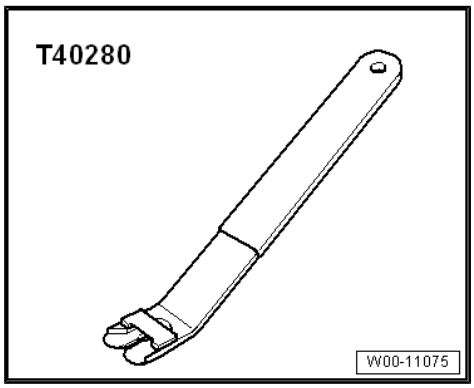


Audi Technical Content. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.16 Removing and installing rear cross panel trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Removal wedge -T40280- is needed to remove any clips left in body mounting points



Removing

– Unscrew bolts -2 ... 5-.

– Lift off rear cross panel trim -1- -arrows-.

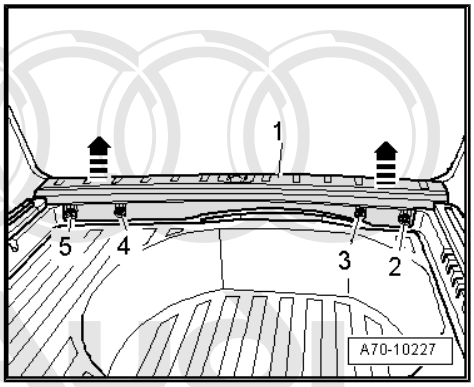
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Fit sealing lip of rubber seal over leading edge of rear cross panel trim.

Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Rear cross panel trim to body	3.5



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.17 Luggage compartment side trim - exploded view

1 - Spring clip
- ❑ Renew if damaged
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280-

2 - Spring clip
- ❑ Renew if damaged
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280-

3 - Luggage compartment side trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 308

4 - Mounting
- ❑ For load guard

5 - Bolt, 3.5 Nm

6 - Bolt, 3.5 Nm

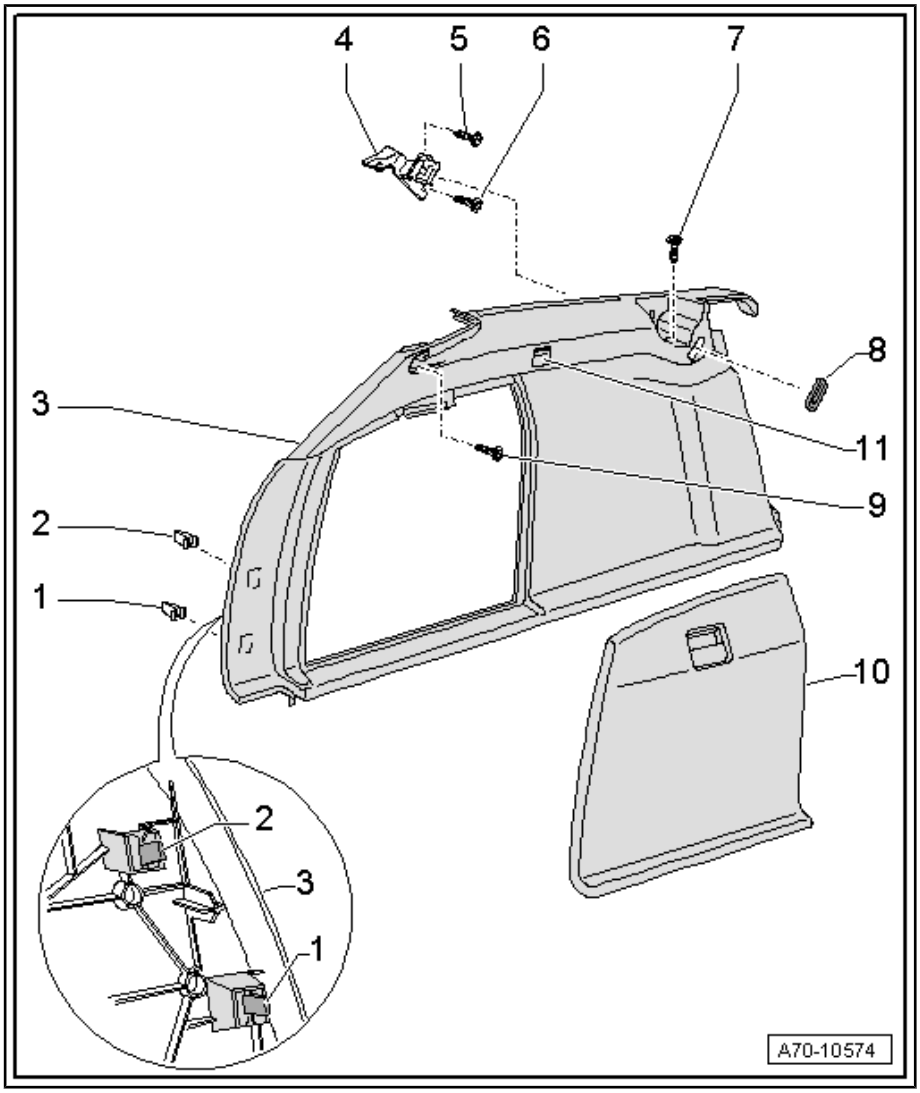
7 - Bolt, 3.5 Nm

8 - Rubber grommet
- ❑ For mounting for load guard

9 - Bolt, 3.5 Nm

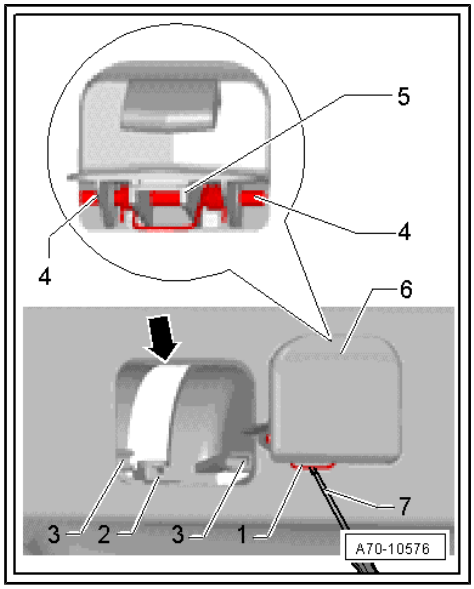
10 - Cover for luggage compartment side trim

11 - Hinged hook
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 308



6.18 Removing and installing hinged hook

Removing



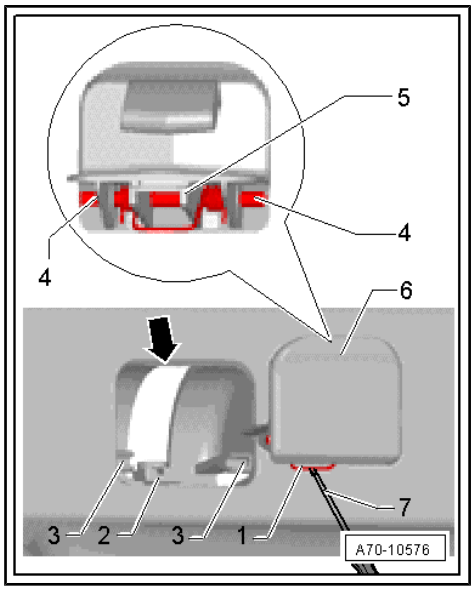
– Unfold hinged hook -6-.

Note

Considerable force is required to unclip the hinged hook.

– Pull hinged hook forwards until pins -4- are unclipped from support bracket -3-.

Installing



– Use a screwdriver -7- to prise down spring -1-, as shown.

Note

When installed, the spring -1- must be positioned beneath the lug -2-. During the entire installation process, press the spring -1- down with the screwdriver -7-.

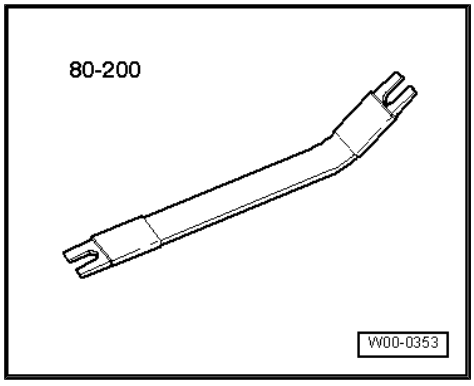
– Swivel hinged hook -6- with lug -5- under edge of luggage compartment side trim -arrow-.
– Position hinged hook so that spring -1- slides underneath lug -2-.
– Pull out screwdriver and clip pins -4- into support brackets -3-.
– After fitting, check whether hinged hook swivels automatically into luggage compartment side trim. If not, spring -1- is located above lug -2- and entire removal and installation procedure must be repeated.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

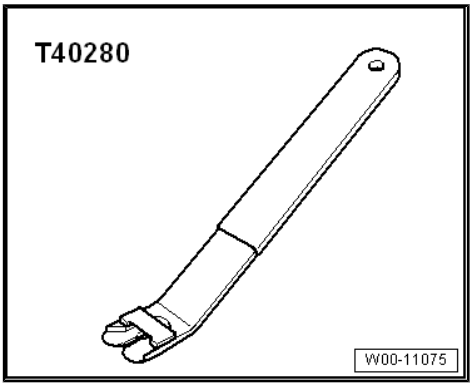
6.19 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever -80-200-



♦ Removal wedge -T40280- is needed to remove any clips left in body mounting points

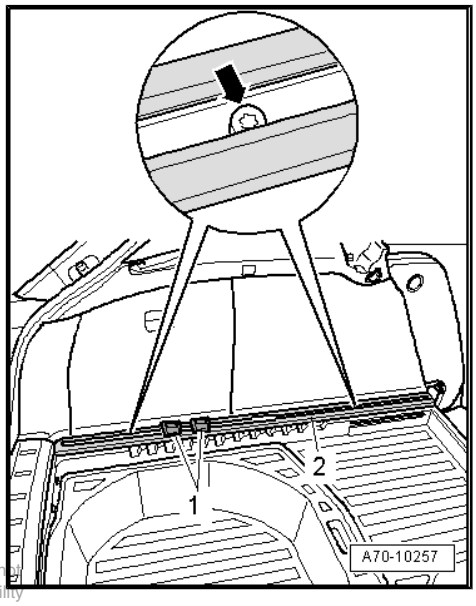


Removing

WARNING

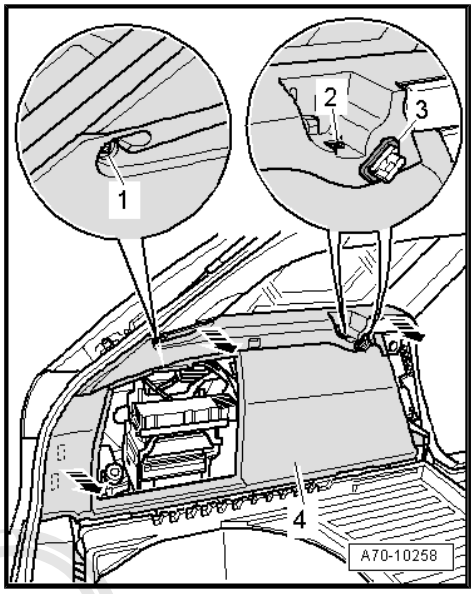
Observe safety precautions for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 , side airbags ⇒ page 111 and curtain airbags ⇒ page 112 .

– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .
– Remove side airbag (rear) ⇒ page 150 .
– Remove rear cross panel trim ⇒ page 306 .
– Remove cover from luggage compartment side trim.
– Push fastening rings -1- together in retaining rail -2- so that they are NOT located on the bolts.
– Unscrew bolts -arrow- and detach retaining rail.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove bolts -1- and -2-.
– If fitted, remove rubber grommet -3- at bracket for load guard.
– Prise spring clips out of body -arrow-.
– Take luggage compartment side trim -4- out of luggage compartment.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Install rear cross panel trim ⇒ page 306 .
– Install retaining rail for fastening rings ⇒ page 310 .
– Install side airbag (rear) ⇒ page 150 .
– Fold sealing lip of rubber seal over leading edge of luggage compartment side trim.

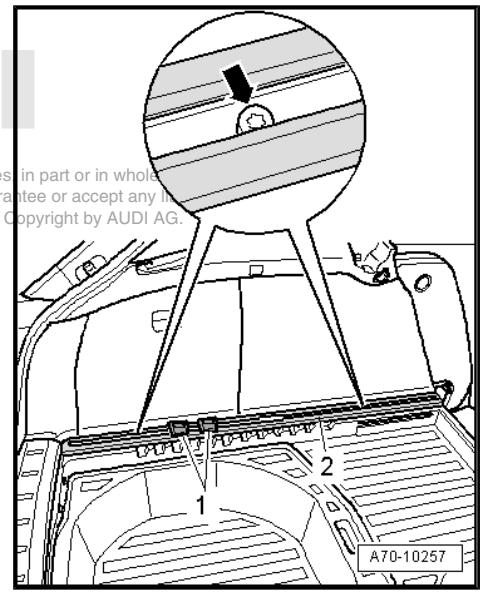
Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Luggage compartment side trim to body	3.5

6.20 Removing and installing retaining rail for fastening rings

Removing

– Push fastening rings -1- together in retaining rail -2- so that they are NOT located on the bolts.
– Unscrew bolts -arrow- and detach retaining rail.



Installing

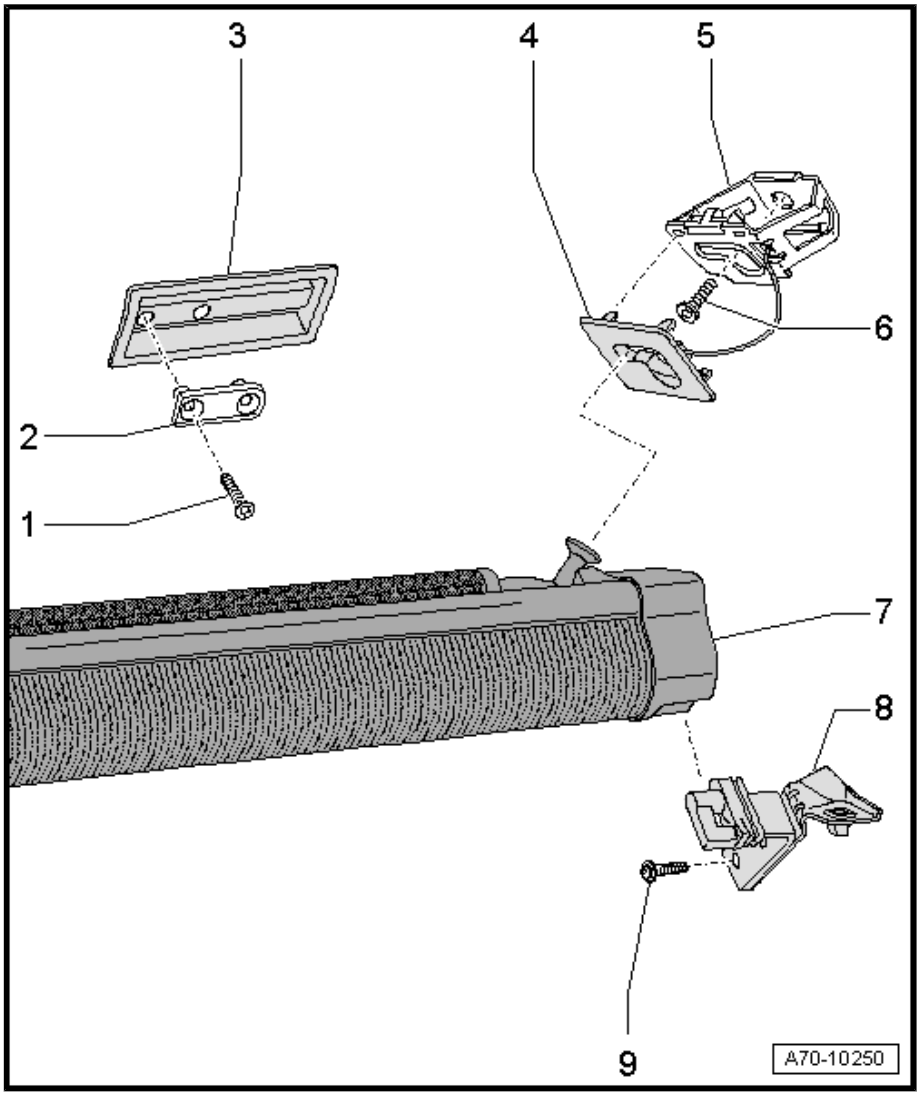
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Retaining rail for fastening rings to body	4

6.21 Load guard - exploded view



1 - Bolt, 3.5 Nm

2 - Mounting

- ❑ For load guard

3 - Cover on backrest

- ❑ For load guard

4 - Cover

- ❑ For mounting in moulded headliner
- ❑ For load guard
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “7.2 Removing and installing moulded headliner”, page 320

5 - Mounting in moulded headliner

- ❑ For load guard
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “7.2 Removing and installing moulded headliner”, page 320

6 - Bolt, 9 Nm

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Threaded holes for bolts must always be cleaned (e.g. with a thread tap).

7 - Load guard

- ❑ Removing and installing at rear seat backrest ⇒ page 312

8 - Bracket

- ❑ For load guard
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 312

9 - Bolt, 3.5 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.22 Removing and installing load guard at rear seat backrest

1 - Load guard

Removing

- Fold both backrests (rear) forwards.
- Press load guard -1- from 1/3 section of rear seat backrest towards 2/3 section of rear seat backrest -4-.
- Detach load guard.

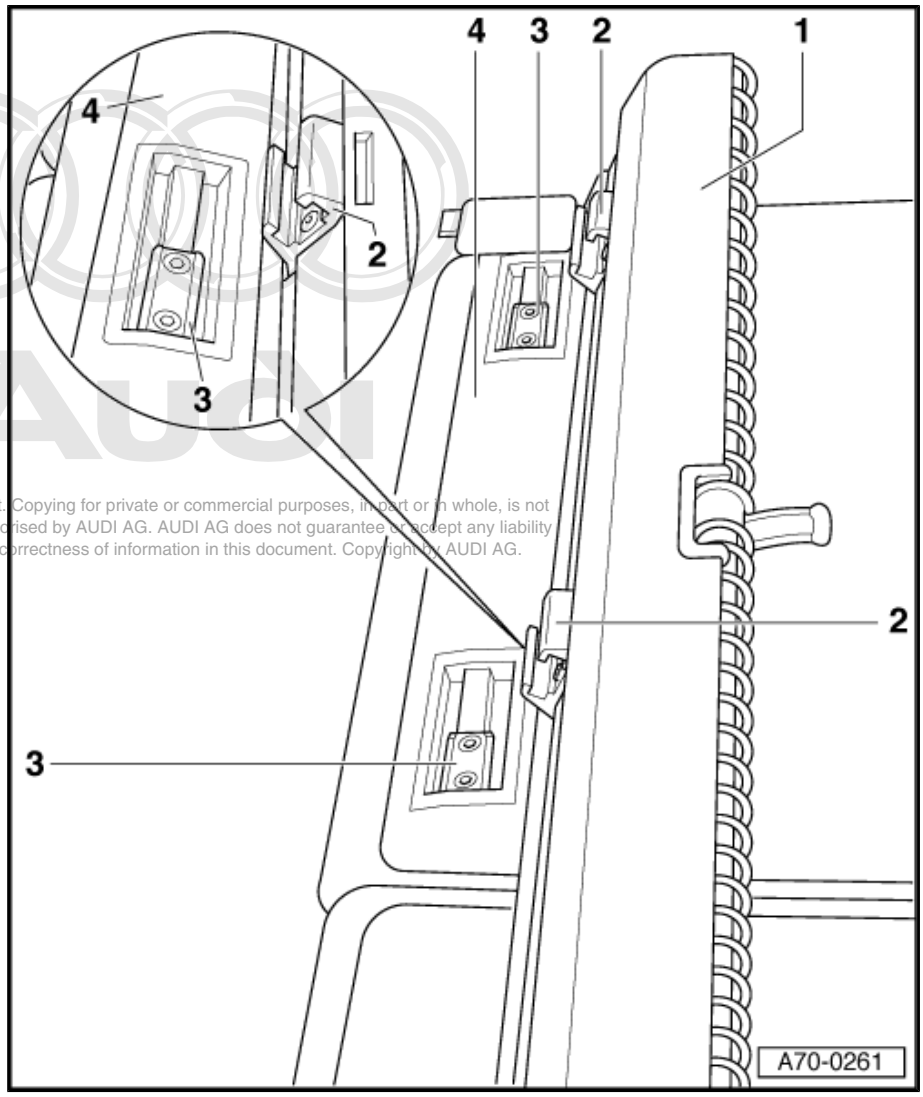
Installing

- Fit retaining element -2- into slot in 2/3 section of backrest.
- Lift 2/3 section of rear seat backrest slightly, and at the same time press load guard -1- towards 1/3 section of rear seat backrest.

2 - Retaining element

3 - Bracket

4 - 2/3 section of rear seat backrest



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.23 Removing and installing bracket for load guard in luggage compartment

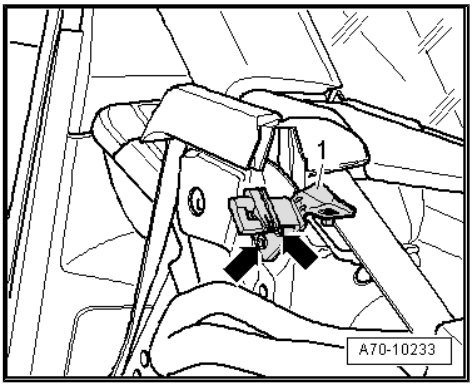
Removing

WARNING

Observe safety precautions for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 , side airbags ⇒ page 111 and curtain airbags ⇒ page 112 .

- Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .
- Remove side airbag ⇒ page 556 .
- Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 308 .

– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Detach bracket -1- for load guard.



Installing

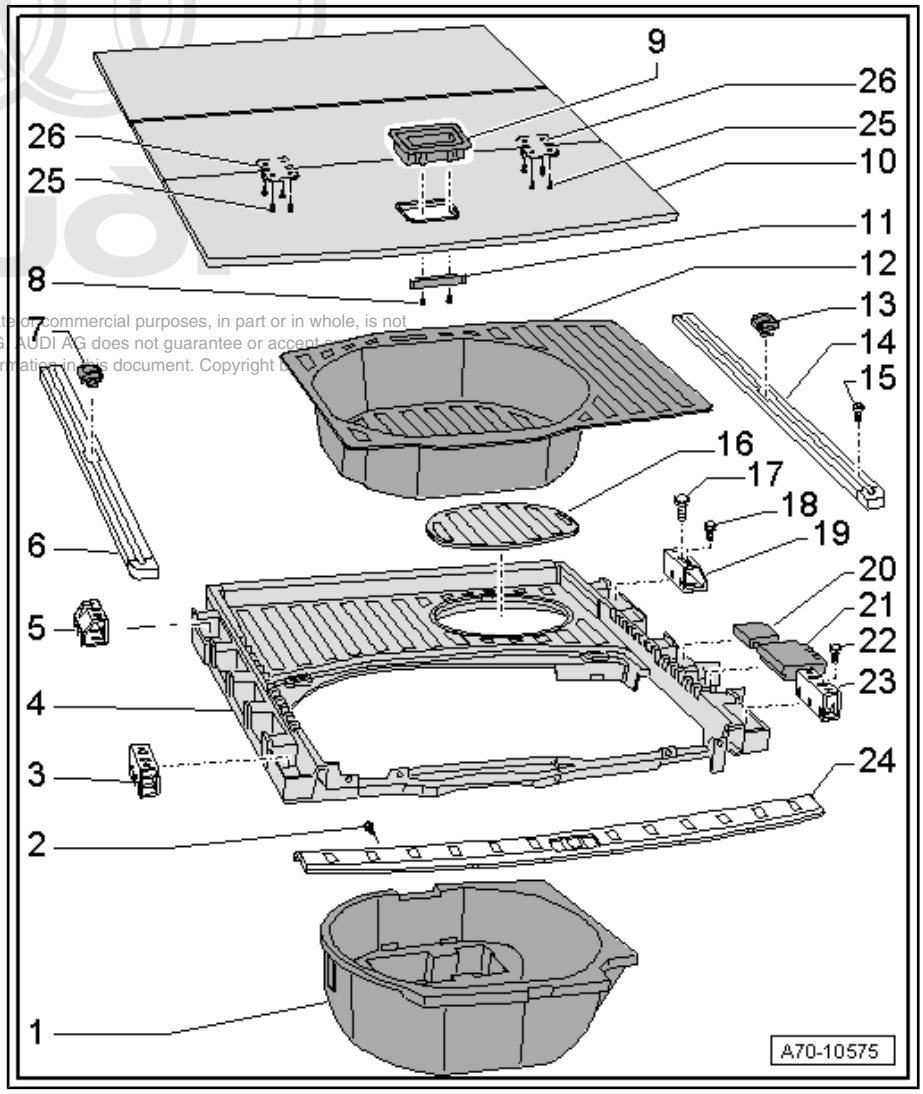
Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Install luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 308 .
– Install side airbag ⇒ page 556 .
– Install rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .

Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Bracket for load guard to body	3.5

6.24 Exploded view of cover for luggage compartment floor



1 - Moulded insert
- ❑ For vehicle tool kit
- ❑ Making opening for earth stud for boost starting in replacement part ⇒ page 314

2 - 3.5 Nm

3 - Mounting (rear left)
- ❑ For retaining rail for fastening rings

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 - Storage well liner
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 315
- ❑ Vehicles with air suspension: Removing cover plate for accumulator ⇒ page 315

5 - Mounting (front left)
- ❑ For retaining rail for fastening rings

6 - Retaining rail (left-side)
- ❑ For fastening ring

7 - Fastening ring

8 - 1.2 Nm

9 - Handle
- ❑ For luggage compartment floor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 316

10 - Luggage compartment floor

11 - Support element
- ❑ For grip for luggage compartment floor

12 - Cover for moulded insert (deep version)

13 - Fastening ring

14 - Retaining rail (right-side)

- ❑ For fastening ring

15 - 4 Nm

16 - Cover

- ❑ For fuel delivery unit

17 - 55 Nm

18 - 10 Nm

19 - Mounting (front right)

- ❑ For retaining rail for fastening rings

20 - Parking aid control unit -J446-

21 - Trailer detector control unit -J345-

22 - 10 Nm

23 - Mounting (rear right)

- ❑ For retaining rail for fastening rings

24 - Rear cross panel trim

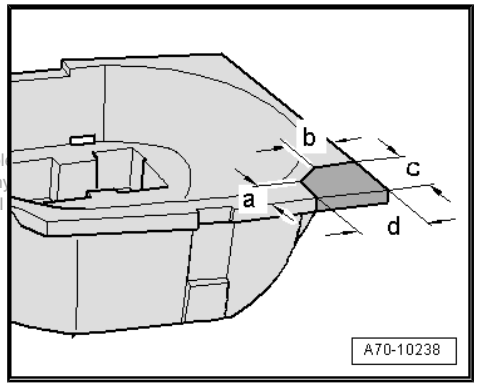
25 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.5 Nm

26 - Hinge

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 317

Making opening for earth stud for boost starting in replacement part



Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

When renewing the moulded insert on vehicles which have the earth stud for boost starting fitted in the cross panel, an opening has to be made in the replacement part to provide access to the earth stud.

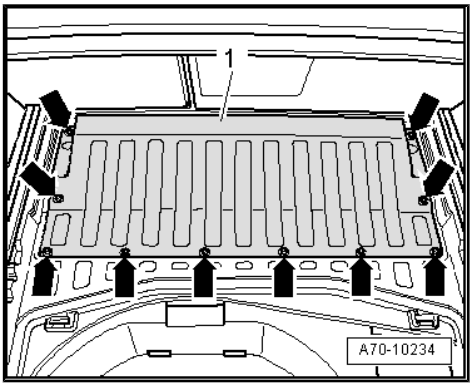
– Mark dimensions -a ... d- on moulded insert.

- Dimension -a- = 80 mm
- Dimension -b- = 65 mm
- Dimension -c- = 130 mm
- Dimension -d- = 110 mm

– Cut off the edge of the moulded insert along the markings (in order to provide access to the earth stud for boost starting).

Removing cover plate for accumulator

– Remove spreader pins -arrows- and detach cover plate -1- for accumulator.

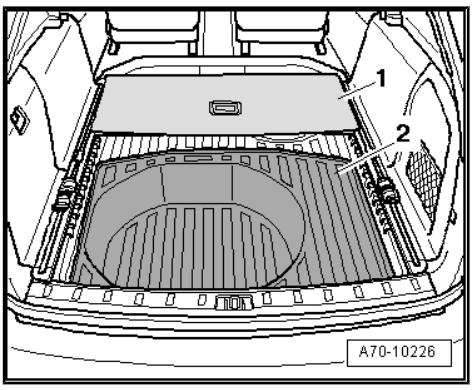


6.25 Removing and installing storage well liner

Removing

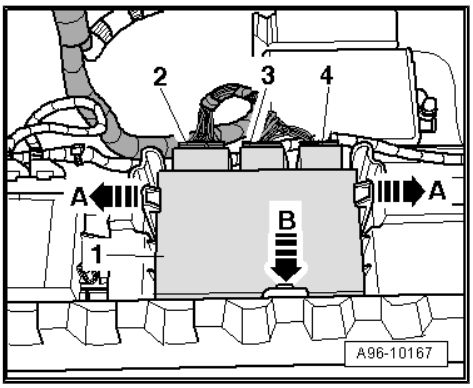
– Remove luggage compartment floor -1- and cover for moulded insert (deep version) -2-.

> **WARNING**
>
> *Observe safety precautions for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 , side airbags ⇒ page 111 and curtain airbags ⇒ page 112 .*

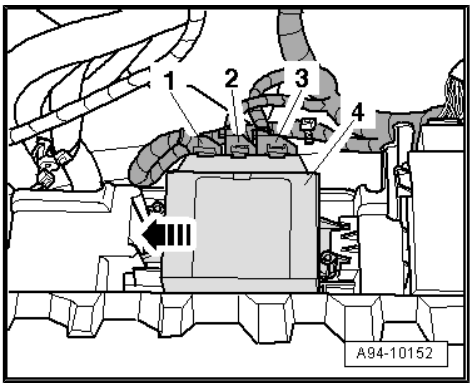


– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .
– Remove side airbag ⇒ page 556 .
– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 308 .

– If fitted, release retaining clips -arrows A- and pivot trailer detector control unit -J345- -item 1- out slightly.
– Release retaining clip -arrow B- and pivot trailer detection control unit -J345- out of retaining frame.
– Move trailer detection control unit -J345- clear to one side with electrical wires -2 ... 4- connected.



– If fitted, release retaining clip -arrow- and pivot parking aid control unit -J446- -item 4- out of retaining frame.
– Move parking aid control unit -J446- clear to one side with electrical wires -1 ... 3- connected.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Vehicles with air suspension:

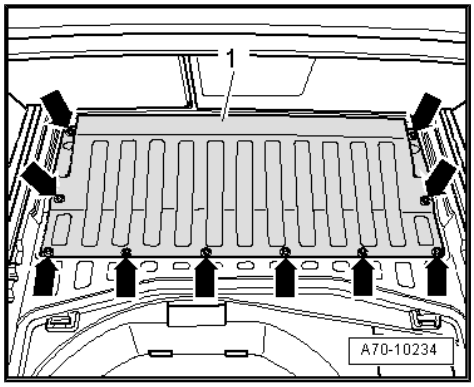
– Remove spreader pins -arrows- and detach cover plate -1-.

– Remove accumulator ⇒ Running gear, front-wheel drive and four-wheel drive; Rep. gr. 43 .

All vehicles:

– Unscrew bolts and detach mountings for retaining rail for fastening rings.

– Remove storage well liner.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Install accumulator ⇒ Running gear, front-wheel drive and four-wheel drive; Rep. gr. 43 .

– Install luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 308 .

– Install side airbag ⇒ page 556 .

– Install rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .

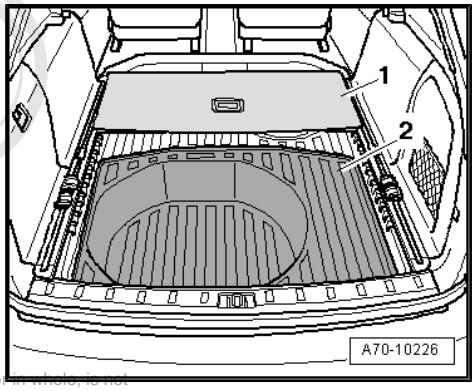
Tightening torques

Component		Nm
Mountings for retaining rail for fastening rings to body	M6	10
	M11	55

6.26 Removing and installing handle for luggage compartment floor

Removing

– Take out luggage compartment floor -1-.



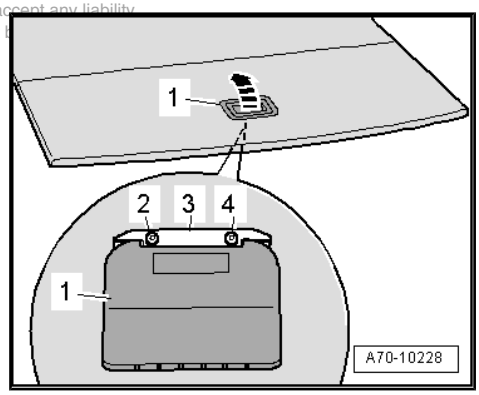
Note

Ignore -item 2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unscrew bolts -2- and -4- and detach support element.

– Pivot handle -3- for luggage compartment floor -1- out in direction of -arrow-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Support element to handle for luggage compartment floor	1.2

6.27 Removing and installing hinge for luggage compartment floor

Removing

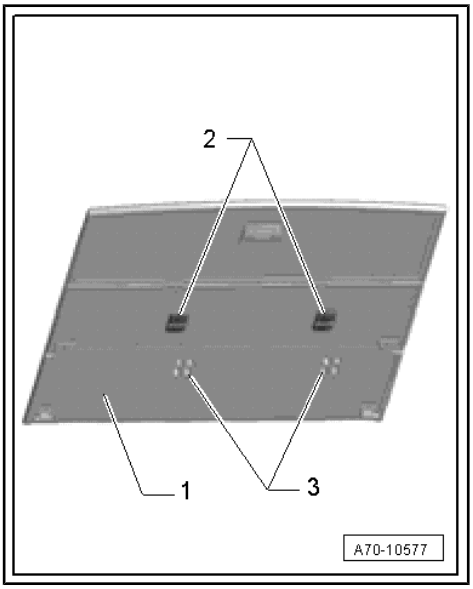
– Take luggage compartment floor -1- out of vehicle.

– Remove bolts -3- and detach hinge -2-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order, note the following.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 313



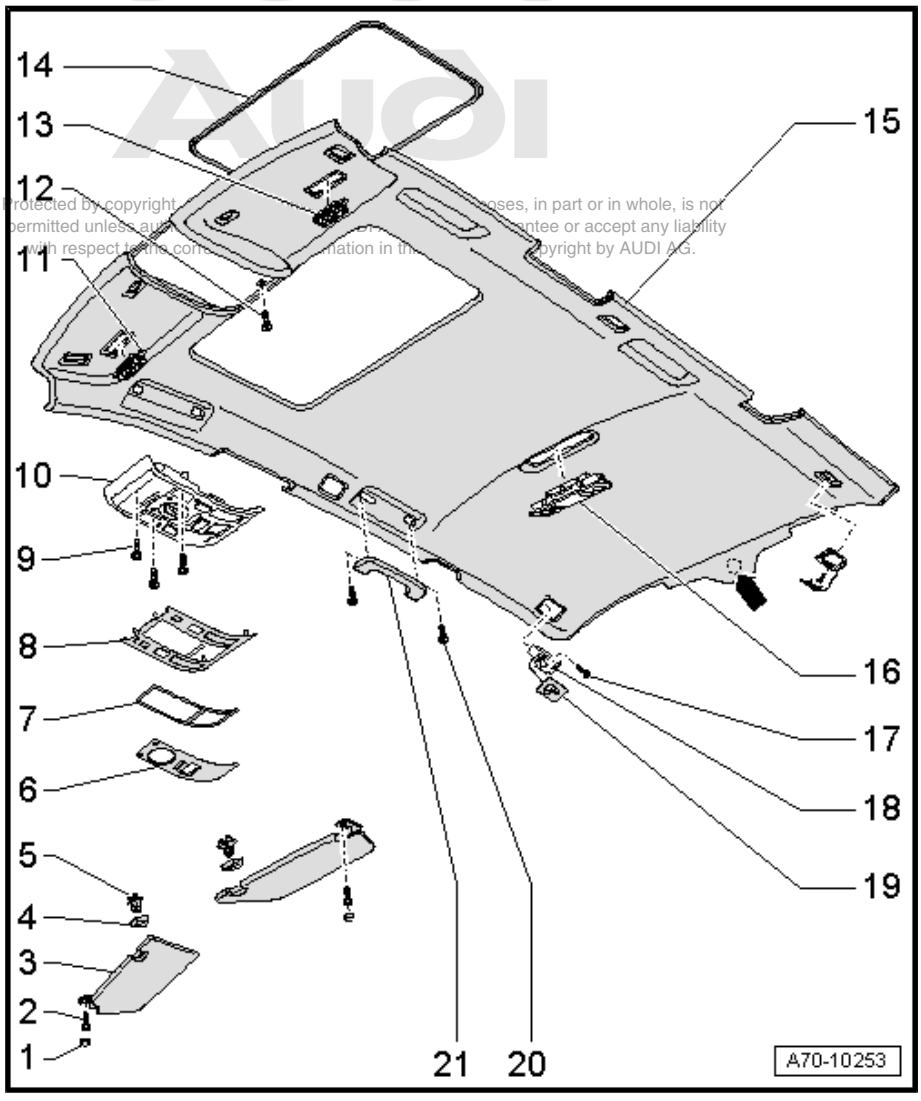
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7 Roof trim

7.1 Exploded view of moulded headliner

Note

The moulded headliner shown in the following illustrations is the version fitted on Audi Avant models.



1 - Cap

2 - Bolt

3 - Sun visor

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 328

4 - Cover

- For centre bracket for sun visor
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 330

5 - Centre bracket for sun visor

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 330

6 - Centre trim cover

- For interior light/reading light (front)

7 - Trim frame

- For centre trim cover

8 - Lens

- For interior light/reading light (front)

9 - Bolt, 2 Nm

10 - Interior light/reading light (front)

11 - Light for make-up mirror

12 - Bolt, 1.5 Nm

13 - Light for make-up mirror

14 - Cover frame for sliding sunroof

15 - Moulded headliner

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 320
- Releasing retaining clip -arrow- ⇒ page 319

16 - Interior light/reading light (rear)

17 - Bolt, 9 Nm

- Self-locking
- Renew
- Threaded holes for bolts must always be cleaned (e.g. with a thread tap).

18 - Mounting for load guard

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “7.2 Removing and installing moulded headliner”, page 320

19 - Cover

- ❑ For mounting for load guard
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “7.2 Removing and installing moulded headliner”, page 320

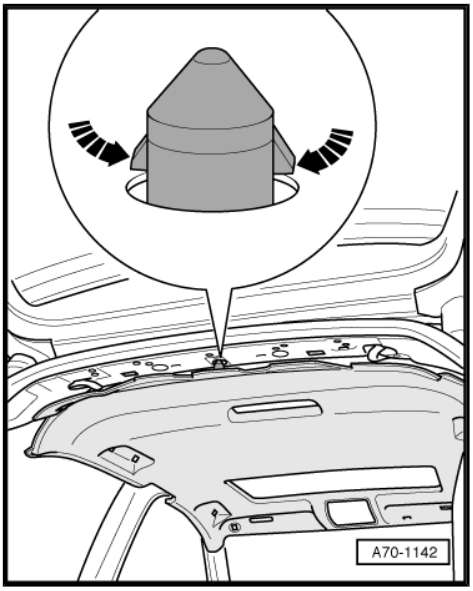
20 - Bolt

21 - Roof grab handle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 331

Releasing retaining clip for moulded headliner

– Release fasteners at retaining clip (rear) -arrows-.

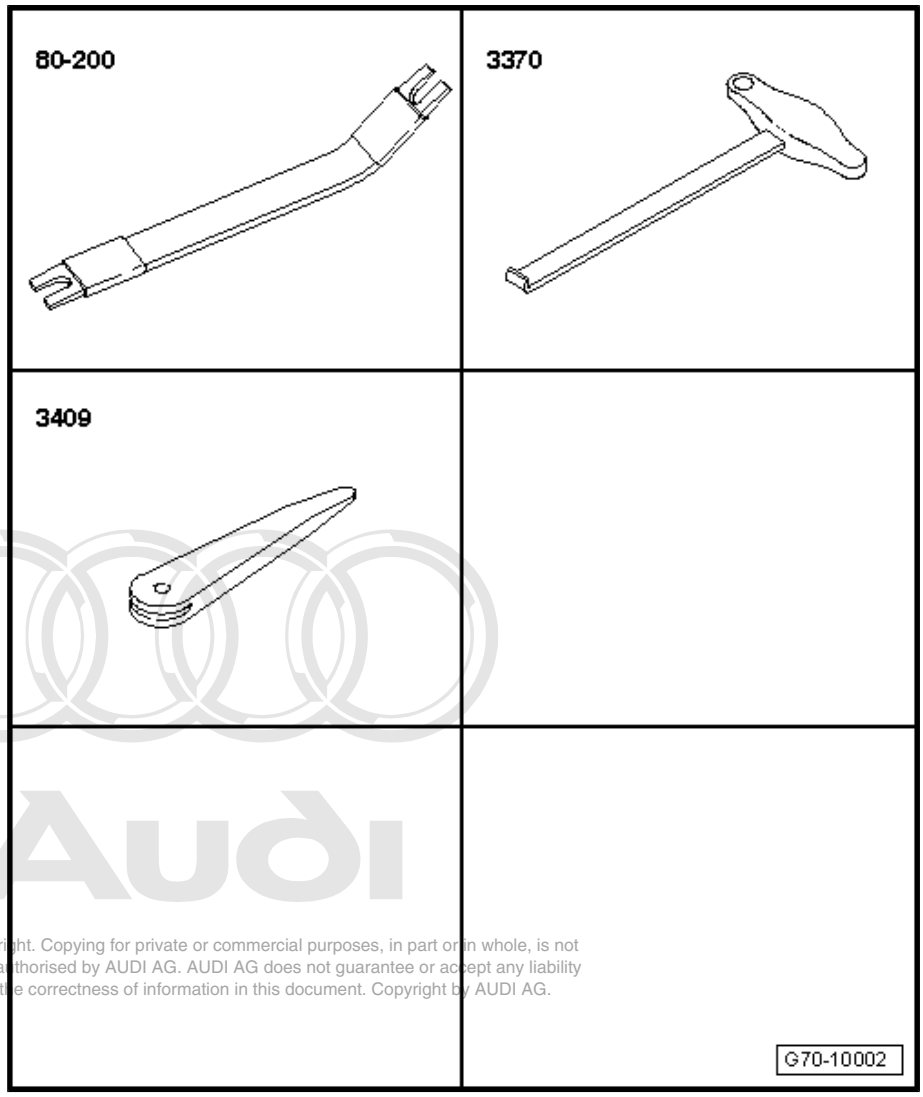


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7.2 Removing and installing moulded headliner

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever -80-200-
- Front-end hook -3370-
- Removal wedge -3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

Observe safety precautions for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 and curtain airbags ⇒ page 112 .

– Remove left and right A-pillar trim (top).
- Audi A6 ⇒ page 246
- Audi A6 Security ⇒ page 249

– Remove B-pillar trim (top).
- Audi A6 ⇒ page 257
- Audi A6 Security ⇒ page 258

– Remove C-pillar trim (top): Avant ⇒ page 293 .
– Remove roof end trim: saloon ⇒ page 268 .

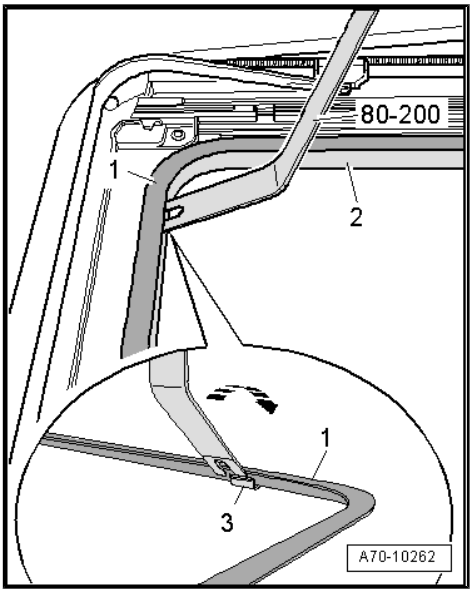
– Remove D-pillar trim: saloon ⇒ page 266 ; Avant ⇒ page 296 .

Vehicles with sliding sunroof:

– Clean removal lever -80-200- to avoid soiling moulded headliner.

– Slide removal lever -80-200- along between retaining frame -1- for sunroof opening and moulded headliner -2- until it makes contact with one of the 15 retaining clips -3-.

– Use removal lever -80-200- to release retaining clips one after the other as shown in illustration (-arrow-).



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

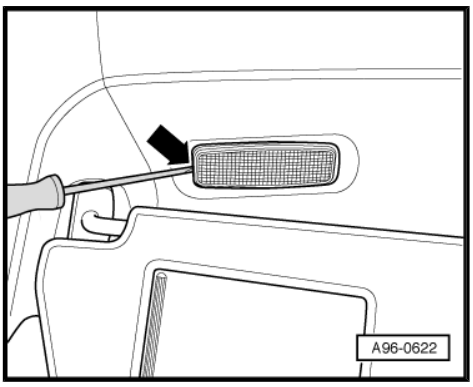
All vehicles:

– Remove sun visors ⇒ page 328 .

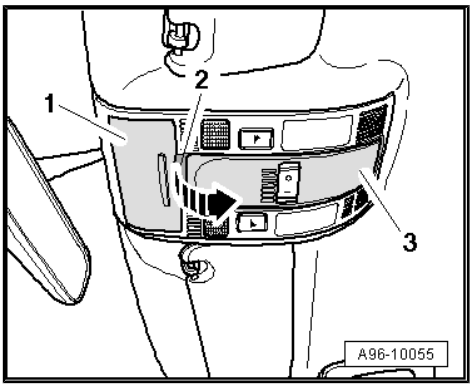
– Remove centre brackets for sun visors ⇒ page 330 .

– If vehicle is fitted with light for make-up mirror, use flat screwdriver to carefully prise out light for make-up mirror at recess -arrow-.

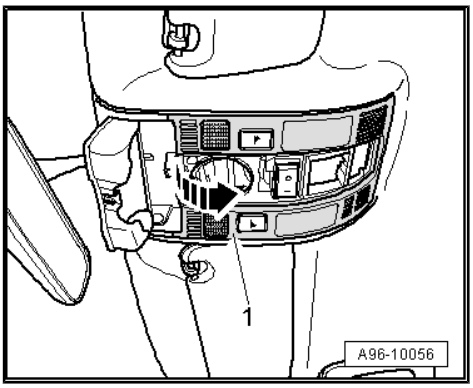
– Unplug electrical connector.



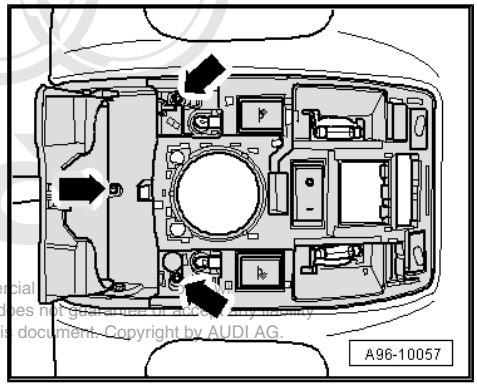
– Open compartment for (sun)glasses -1- and release centre cover -2- and -3- on interior light/reading light -arrow-.



– Release lens -1- for interior light/reading light -arrow-.



– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Swivel down interior light (front) and remove from roof trim.
– Unplug electrical connectors.

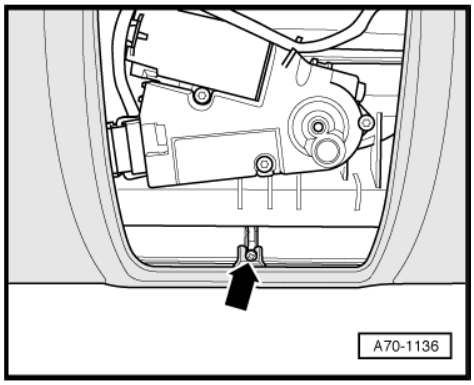


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– If fitted, unscrew bolt -arrow- in roof opening for interior light/ reading light (front).

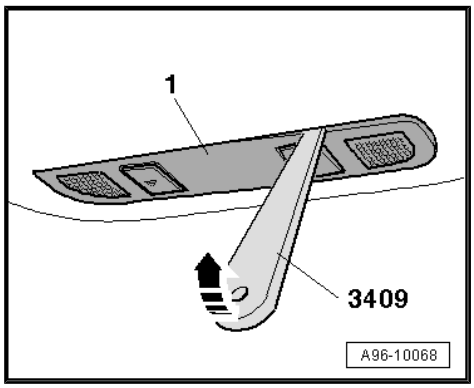
Saloon:

– Remove windscreen ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 64 .



Both:

– Remove roof grab handle ⇒ page 331 .
– Use removal wedge -3409- to carefully prise interior light/ reading light -1- out of opening in headliner -arrow-.
– Unplug electrical connector.

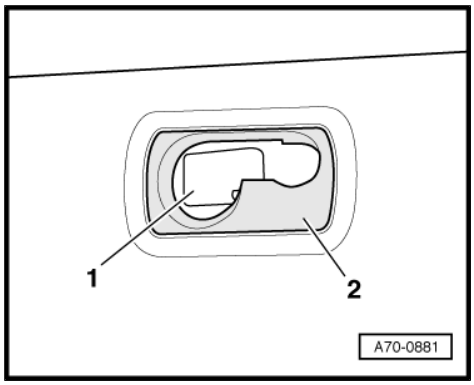


Avant models:

– Remove roof end trim ⇒ page 298 .
– Push flap -1- to one side and unscrew bolt located beneath flap at retainer -2- for load guard.
– Fold backrests (rear) forwards.
– Adjust driver seat and front passenger seat as follows:

♦ Move seat as far forwards as possible.
♦ Bring backrest into reclining position.
♦ Head restraints removed

– Clean bottom left area of luggage compartment and top right area of rear lid opening in order to avoid soiling moulded head-liner. If necessary, mask these areas with tape or cover them with protective foil.

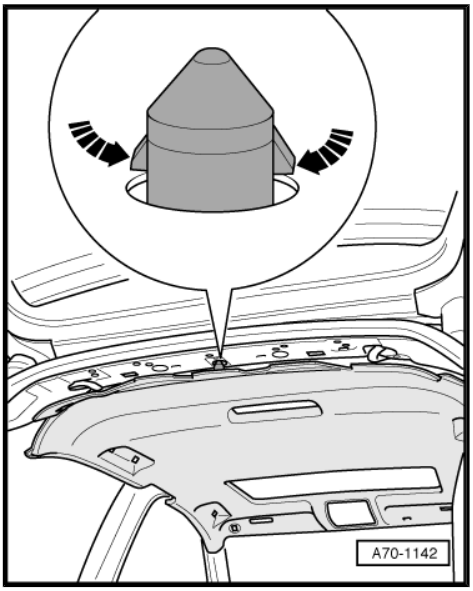


Both:

Note

- *Take care not to kink moulded headliner, as it would then need to be renewed.*
- *A second mechanic is required to unfasten the last connections and take out the moulded headliner.*

– Release fasteners at retaining clip (rear) -arrows-.



Saloon:

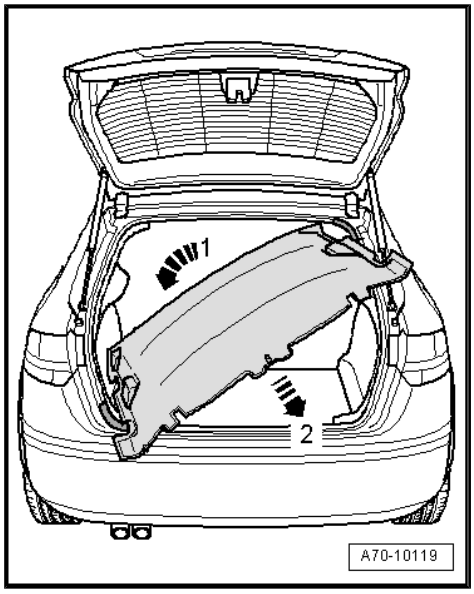
– Take out moulded headliner through opening for windscreen.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Avant models:

– Lower moulded headliner at left side of vehicle -arrow 1-.

– Take moulded headliner out of vehicle via rear lid opening -arrow 2-.



Installing

Note

- *Locking fluid residue must always be removed from the threaded holes of the roof grab handle and the sun visors after the roof grab handle and sun visors have been dismantled. Otherwise, new bolts could seize when screwed in and shear off when they are removed.*
- *You can use a thread tap to clean the threaded holes.*
- *Renew self-locking bolts.*

– Align moulded headliner in central position.

– Use removal wedge -3409- to pull rubber lip of door seal over edge of moulded headliner at all door openings.

Further installation is carried out in the reverse order, note the following:

Saloon:

– Install windscreen ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 64 .

All models:

– Install D-pillar trim ⇒ page 296 .

– Install roof end trim ⇒ page 298 .

– Install C-pillar trim ⇒ page 293 .

– Install B-pillar trim (top).

- Audi A6 ⇒ page 257
- Audi A6 Security ⇒ page 258

– Fit left and right A-pillar trim (top).

- Audi A6 ⇒ page 246
- Audi A6 Security ⇒ page 249

– Install roof grab handle ⇒ page 331 .

– Fit centre brackets for sun visor ⇒ page 330 .

– Install sun visors ⇒ page 328 .

Tightening torques

Component	Nm
Moulded headliner to body	1.5
Mounting for load guard to body	9 6)
Interior light to body	2

6) Renew bolt.

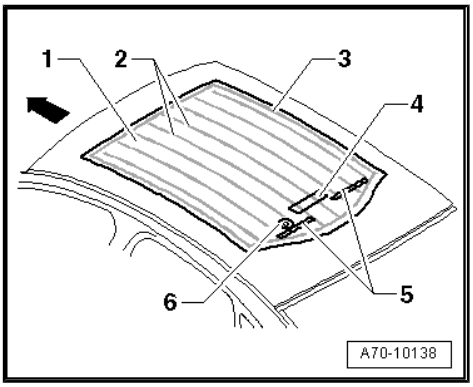
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7.3 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - saloon models without sunroof

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- One-pack adhesive -D 190 MKD A3-

Removing



– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ page 320 .

– Starting at rear, carefully detach roof reinforcement -1- from roof panel.

Note

- *-Arrow- points in direction of travel.*
- *Roof reinforcement must be renewed if it was damaged during removal, e.g. if there are tears or kinks.*

Re-installing "old" roof reinforcement

– Apply new adhesive between adhesive beads -2-.

– Apply new adhesive next to peripheral adhesive bead -3-.

Installing new roof reinforcement

– Apply new adhesive on adhesive beads -2-.

– Apply new adhesive on peripheral adhesive bead -3-.

All:

– Position roof reinforcement on roof panel centrally between the outer edges.

– Press roof reinforcement onto roof panel from inside.

– Install moulded headliner ⇒ page 320 .

Note

Ignore -items 4 ... 6-.

Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7.4 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - saloon models with sunroof

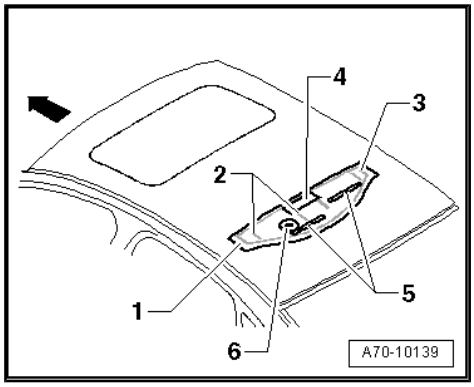
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- One-pack adhesive -D 190 MKD A3-

Removing

– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ page 320 .

– Starting at rear, carefully detach roof reinforcement -1- from roof panel.



Note

- *-Arrow- points in direction of travel.*
- *Roof reinforcement must be renewed if it was damaged during removal, e.g. if there are tears or kinks.*

Re-installing "old" roof reinforcement

– Apply new adhesive between adhesive beads -2-.

– Apply new adhesive next to peripheral adhesive bead -3-.

Installing new roof reinforcement

– Apply new adhesive on adhesive beads -2-.

– Apply new adhesive on peripheral adhesive bead -3-.

All:

– Position roof reinforcement on roof panel centrally between the outer edges.

– Press roof reinforcement onto roof panel from inside.

– Install moulded headliner ⇒ page 320 .

Note

Ignore -items 4 ... 6-.

7.5 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - Avant models without sunroof

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- One-pack adhesive -D 190 MKD A3-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ page 320 .

– Starting at rear, carefully detach roof reinforcements -1- from roof panel.

Note

Roof reinforcement must be renewed if it was damaged during removal, e.g. if there are tears or kinks.

Re-installing "old" roof reinforcement

– Apply new adhesive between adhesive beads -3-.

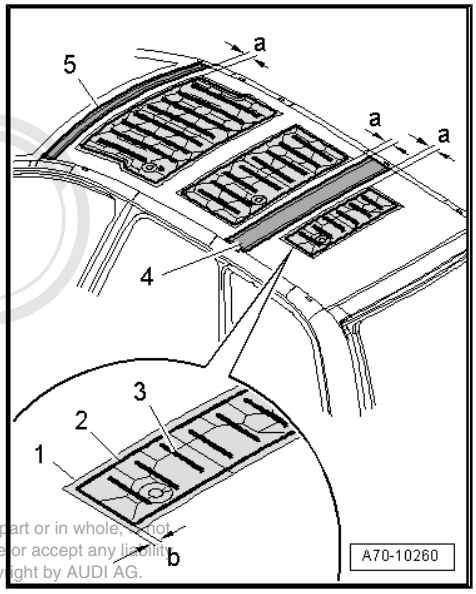
– Apply new adhesive next to peripheral adhesive bead -2-.

Installing new roof reinforcement

– Apply adhesive bead -2- to roof reinforcement -1- at distance -b- from outer edge, as shown in illustration.

• Dimension -b- = 25 mm all around

– Apply adhesive beads -3- to roof reinforcement as shown in illustration.



All:

– Position roof reinforcement on roof panel centrally between the outer edges and at distance -a- from roof members -4- and -5-.

• Dimension -a- = 10 mm

– Press roof reinforcement onto roof panel from inside.

– Install moulded headliner ⇒ page 320 .

7.6 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - Avant models with sunroof

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ One-pack adhesive -D 190 MKD A3-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ page 320 .

– Starting at rear, carefully detach roof reinforcements -1- from roof panel.

Note

Roof reinforcement must be renewed if it was damaged during removal, e.g. if there are tears or kinks.

Re-installing "old" roof reinforcement

– Apply new adhesive between adhesive beads -3-.

– Apply new adhesive next to peripheral adhesive bead -2-.

Installing new roof reinforcement

– Apply adhesive bead -2- to roof reinforcement -1- at distance -b- from outer edge, as shown in illustration.

• Dimension -b- = 25 mm all around

– Apply adhesive beads -3- to roof reinforcement as shown in illustration.

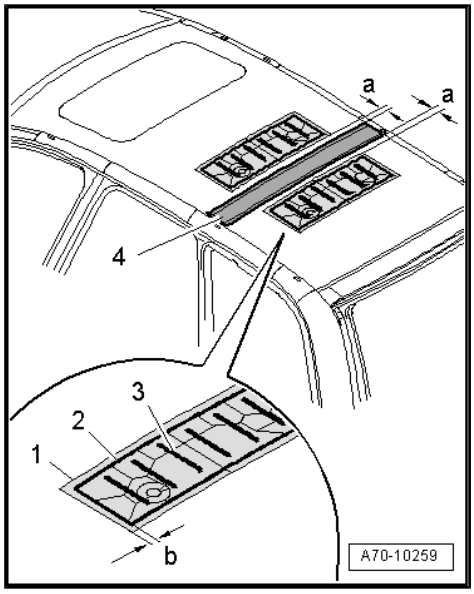
All:

– Position roof reinforcement on roof panel centrally between the outer edges and at distance -a- from roof member -4-.

• Dimension -a- = 10 mm

– Press roof reinforcement onto roof panel from inside.

– Install moulded headliner ⇒ page 320 .



7.7 Removing and installing sun visor

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Sun visor

❑ Removing

– Unhook sun visor at centre bracket -2- and fold sun visor to the side.

– Use screwdriver to carefully prise out cover cap -6-.

– Remove bolt -5-.

– Swivel sun visor bracket down and detach sun visor.

❑ Installing

– Engage lug of sun visor bracket -4- in cut-out in moulded headliner -3-.

– Tighten bolt -5-.

– Press cover cap -6- onto sun visor bracket.

– Engage sun visor in centre bracket for sun visor -2-.

2 - Centre bracket for sun visor

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 330

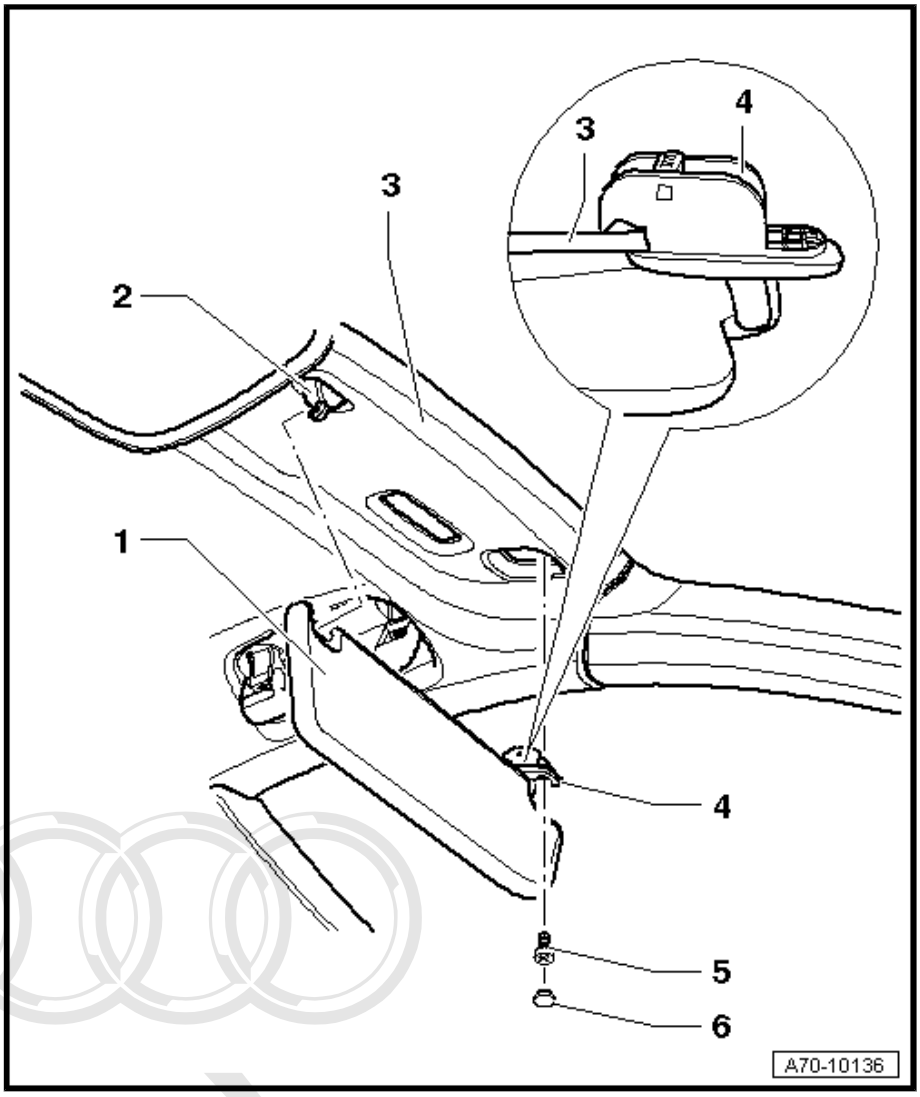
3 - Moulded headliner

4 - Sun visor bracket

5 - Bolt, 2 Nm

❑ Renew

6 - Cap



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7.8 Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor

1 - Centre bracket for sun visor

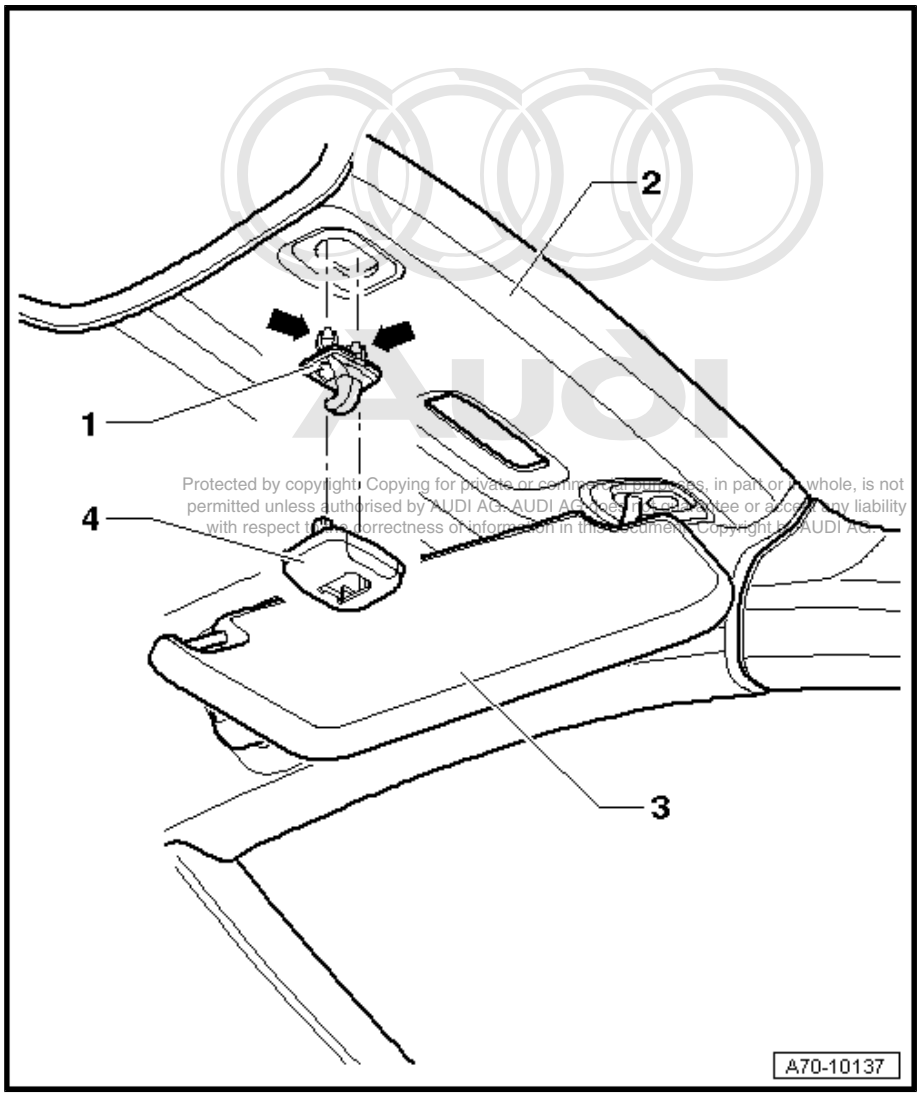
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 330

2 - Moulded headliner

3 - Sun visor

4 - Cap

- ❑ Clipped into centre bracket for sun visor



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor

Removing

– Unhook sun visor at centre bracket and fold sun visor to the side.

– Unclip cover for centre bracket for sun visor -arrows 1-.

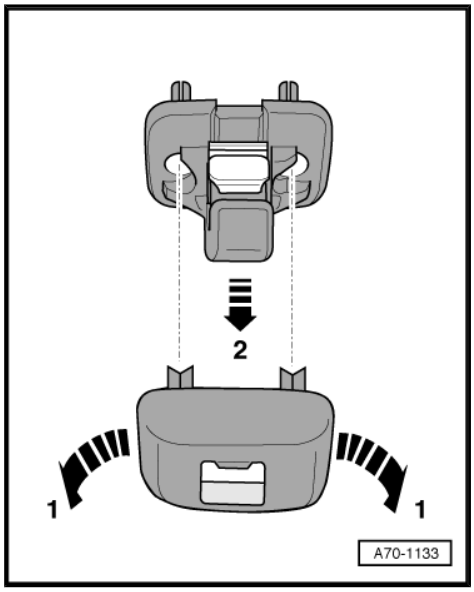
– Pull out centre bracket for sun visor -arrow 2-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

Note

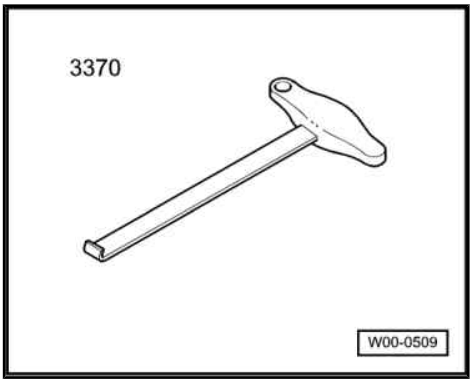
When installing centre bracket for sun visor make sure that spreader lugs are not damaged.



7.9 Removing and installing roof grab handle

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Front-end hook -3370-

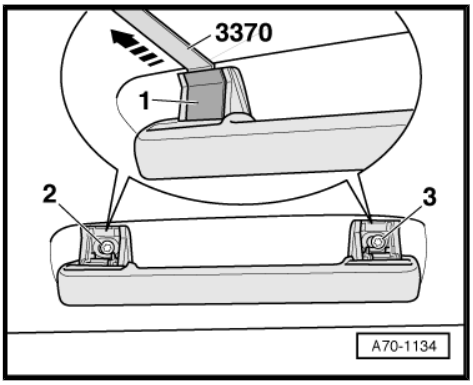


Removing

– Use front-end hook -3370- to open covers -1- on roof grab handle.

– Remove bolts -2- and -3-.

– Detach roof grab handle.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

Note

- *Locking fluid residue must always be removed from the threaded holes of the roof grab handle after the roof grab handle has been detached. Otherwise, new bolts could seize when screwed in and shear off when they are removed.*
- *You can use a thread tap to clean the threaded holes.*
- *Renew bolts (self-locking) for roof grab handle.*

Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Roof grab handle to body	4 7)

7) Renew bolts

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

72 – Seat frames

1 Front seat (standard seat)

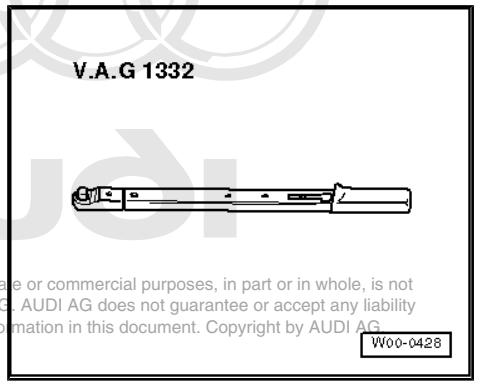
Note

- *From 07.06 onwards, the conventional method of routing the wiring harness to the connector point beneath the front seat ⇒ page 335 is replaced by modular wire routing ⇒ page 338 .*
- *Modular wire routing has not been implemented for all country-specific versions.*

1.1 Removing and installing front seat (standard seat)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench -V.A.G 1332-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

Obtain radio code before disconnecting battery.

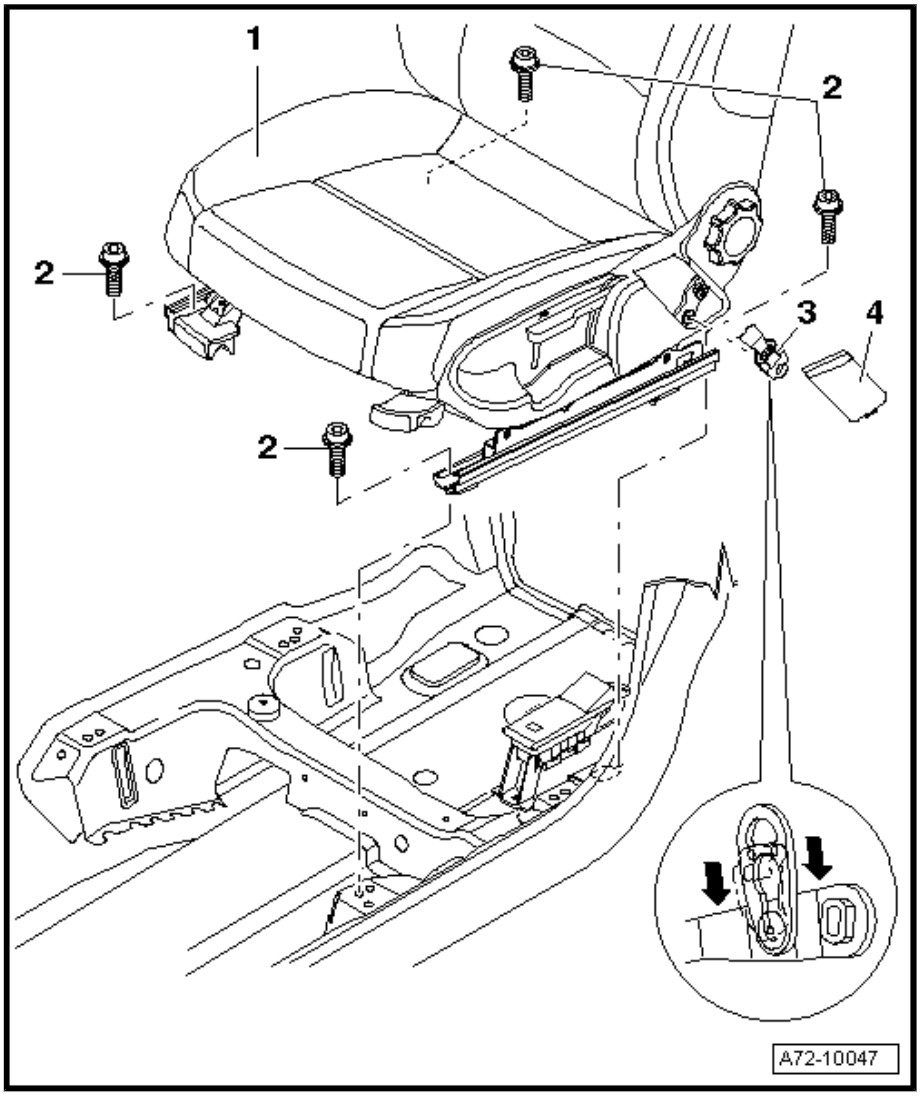
1 - Front seat

◆ Removing

WARNING

Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

– Move seat up.
– Pull up and detach assembly cover -4-.
– Pull down belt end fitting -3- in direction of arrow and detach.
– Pull handle for longitudinal adjustment of seat and move front seat -1- to rearmost position.
– Remove bolts -2- (2x) at front. Pull handle for longitudinal adjustment of seat and move front seat -1- as far forwards as possible.
– Remove bolts -2- (2x) at rear.
– Disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .



WARNING

Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Tilt front seat -1- backwards.
– Unplug connectors ⇒ page 335 .
– Connect airbag adapter ⇒ page 336 .
– Lift front seat -1- out of vehicle with the assistance of a second mechanic.

◆ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

WARNING

Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

Copyright by AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Install front seat before detaching airbag adapter -VAS 6036- ⇒ page 336 .

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Plug in connectors at couplings of connector point in floor ⇒ page 335 .

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .

– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

2 - Bolts (4x)

❑ Tightening torque: 50 Nm

3 - Belt end fitting

4 - Assembly cover

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.2 Unplugging connectors

WARNING

1 - Front seat

2 - Connector for belt buckle sensor (black)

3 - Connector for seat heating (green)

4 - Connector for current supply (red)

5 - Connector for airbag (orange)

6 - Cover/cover panel

❑ For connector point

♦ Removing

– Tilt front seat -1- backwards.

Vehicles without modular wire routing up to 07.06

– Lift off cover of connector point -6-.

Vehicles with modular wire routing from 07.06 onwards

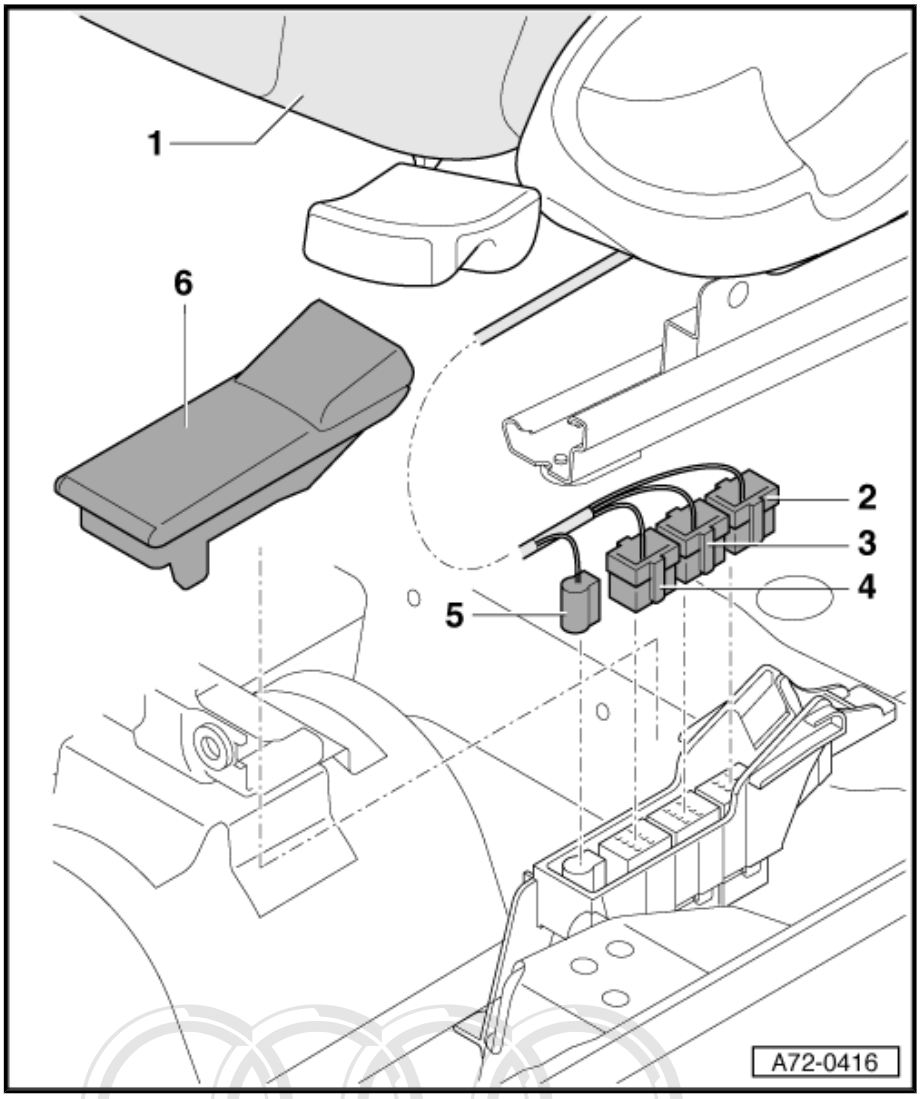
– Remove cover for connector point ⇒ page 340 .

All vehicles (continued)

– Press in tab at airbag connector -5- (tunnel side) and unplug airbag connector -5-.
– Press in tab at current supply connector -4- (tunnel side) and unplug current supply connector -4-.
– Press in lug at seat heating connector -3- (tunnel side) and unplug seat heating connector -3-.
– Vehicles with belt buckle sensor: Press in tab at belt buckle sensor connector -2- (tunnel side) and unplug belt buckle sensor connector -2-.
– Connect airbag adapter ⇒ page 336 .

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

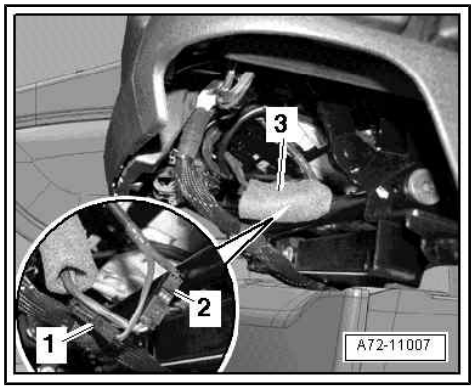


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Vehicles with DVD player

– Push grommet -3- to the side.

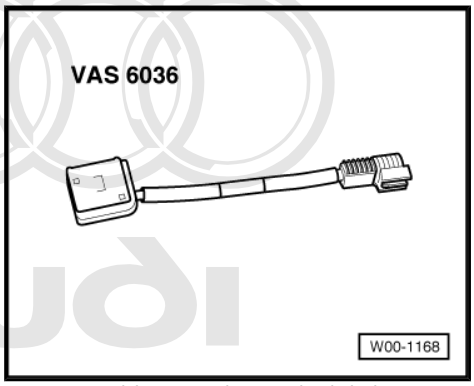
– Unplug electrical connectors -1- and -2- and move wiring harness clear.



1.3 Connecting airbag adapter -VAS 6036-

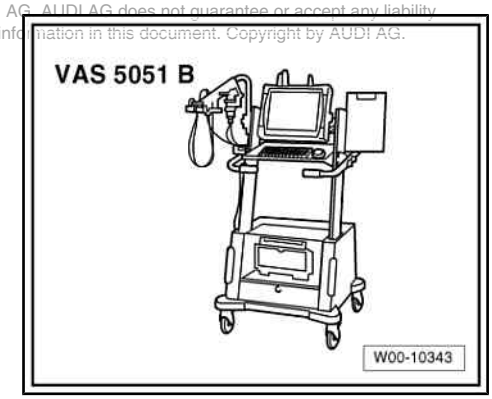
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Airbag adapter -VAS 6036-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B-



Note

Before disconnecting igniter and earth wires, the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate or body.

Caution

Leave airbag adapter -VAS 6036- connected to seat until seat has been re-installed.

1 - Side airbag connector, on seat wiring (orange)

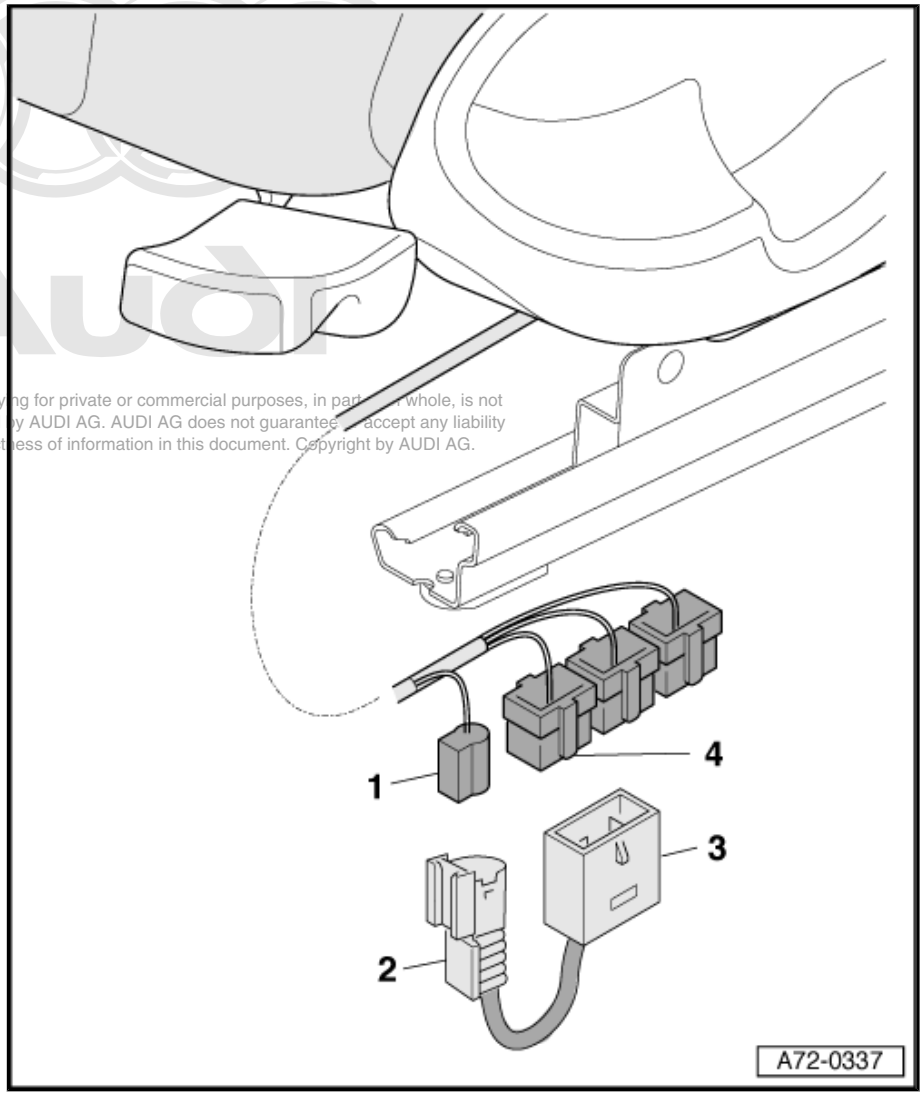
2 - Side airbag connector, on adapter wiring (orange)

– Detach igniter and earth wires.

– Plug side airbag connector (adapter end) -2- into side airbag connector (seat end) -1-.

3 - Current supply connector, on adapter wiring (red)

4 - Current supply connector, on seat wiring (red)

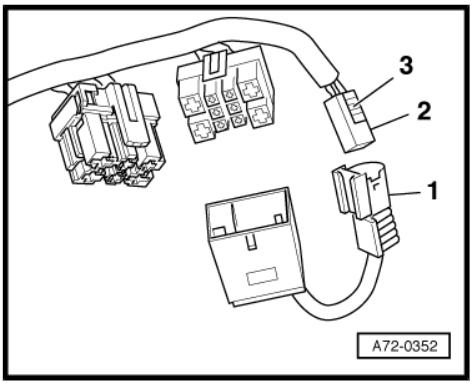


Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.3.1 Disconnecting connector for side airbag

– Press retaining tab -3- of connector for side airbag -2- out of mating piece -1- and unplug connector.

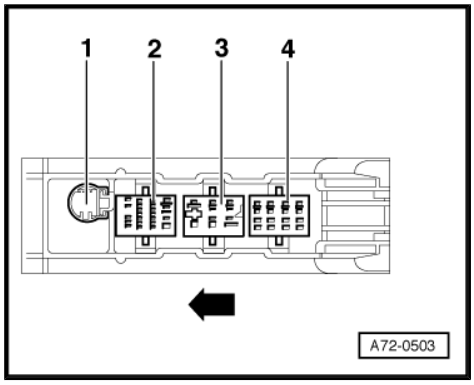
– Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .



Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, use vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- to interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate event memory.

1.4 Connector assignment at connector point



Note

Arrow points in direction of travel.

1 - Side airbag
2 - Current supply
3 - Seat heating
4 - Belt buckle sensor

1.5 Exploded view of modular wire routing - vehicles from 07/06 onwards

Note

- *Modular wire routing has not been implemented for all country-specific versions.*
- *Check the type of front seats and the vehicle model and perform the repair work accordingly.*
- *Note that there are two possible modular wire routing versions, »Modular Light« and »Modular«* *⇒ page 339* .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Front seat

2 - Cable clip

- ❑ For attaching corrugated tube to seat pan

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 3.5 Nm

4 - Cable retainer

- ❑ Observe correct installation position ⇒ page 340

5 - Corrugated tube

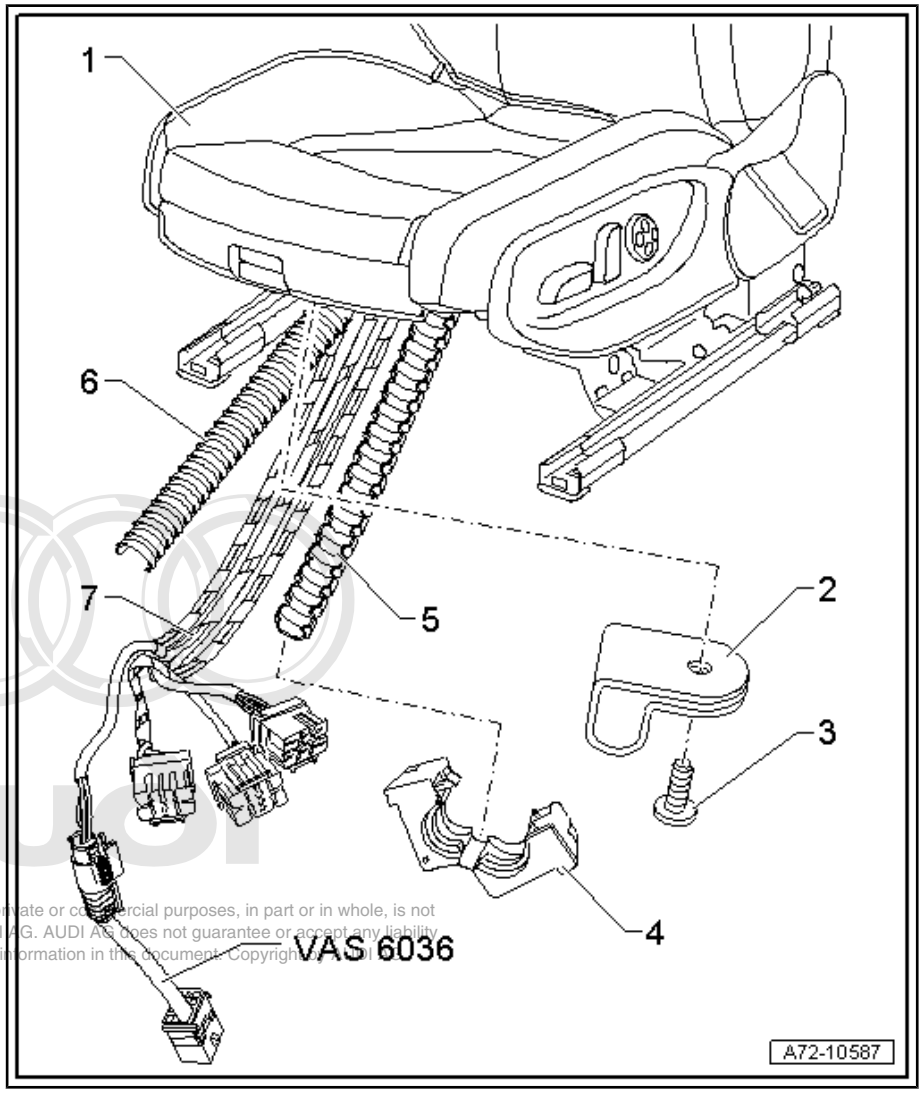
- ❑ Lower pan
- ❑ Observe correct installation position ⇒ page 340

6 - Corrugated tube

- ❑ Upper pan
- ❑ Observe correct installation position ⇒ page 340

7 - Wiring harness

- ❑ Note information on routing of wiring harness in corrugated tube ⇒ page 340



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.6 Modular wire routing versions

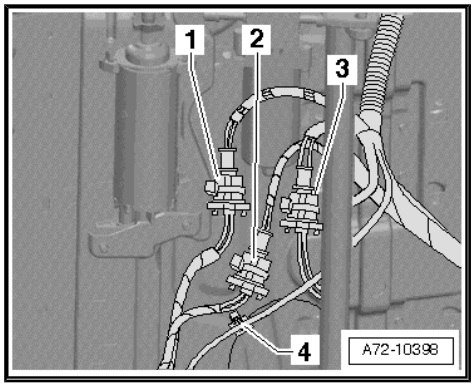
There are two modular wire routing versions:

- ♦ Modular Light ⇒ page 339
- ♦ Modular ⇒ page 340

Wire routing »Modular Light«

The characteristic feature of the »Modular Light« version is that only the side airbag wiring harness is laid in one section right through to the connector point in the vehicle floor. There is no additional connector (intermediate coupling) in the side airbag wiring harness.

All other electrical and electronic components, for example the seat occupied sensor, the seat and backrest heaters and the electric backrest adjuster feature an additional connector (intermediate coupling) -1-, -2-, -3- on the underside of the upper seat pan frame.



4 - Clip

In the seat/connector point area, all wiring harnesses are laid in a two-piece corrugated tube.

Wire routing »Modular«

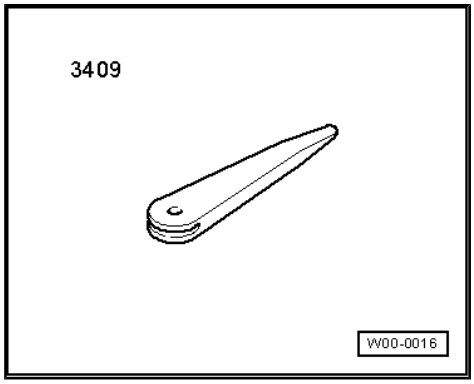
The characteristic feature of the »Modular« version is that all the wiring harnesses of the electric and electronic components, for example the side airbag, the seat occupied sensor, the bladder system, the seat and backrest heaters and the electric backrest adjuster, are routed in one section right through to the connector point in the vehicle floor. There are no additional connectors (intermediate couplings) in the wiring harnesses of the electrical and electronic components.

In the seat/connector point area, all wiring harnesses are laid in a two-piece corrugated tube.

1.7 Modular wire routing with corrugated tube on front seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge -3409-



General notes

The full sheathing for the entire wiring harness with fabric tape between the seat pan and the connectors to the connector point was discontinued with the introduction of the modular wire routing. Instead, a two-shell corrugated tube is used in which the individual wires are laid separately.

Opening corrugated tube and removing individual wire

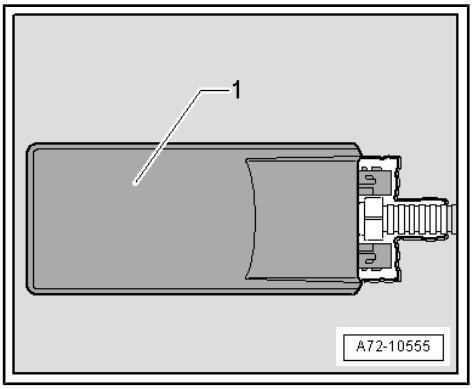
WARNING

Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags *⇒ page 110* *.*

– Move front seat as far up and to the rear as possible.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

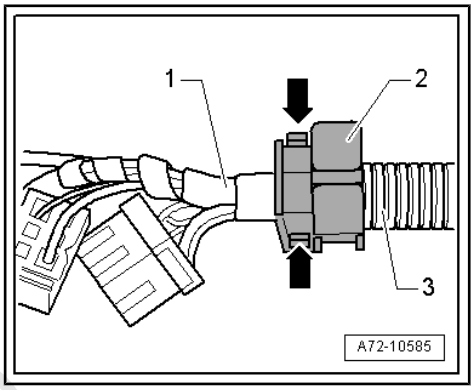
– Unclip cover panel -1- of connector point beneath front seat.
– To do so, use removal wedge -3409- .
– Disengage cover panel -1- on corrugated tube end.



– Unfasten cable retainer -2- at connector point by pressing retaining tabs -arrows- on both sides.

1 - Wiring harness

3 - Two-shell corrugated tube



WARNING

Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

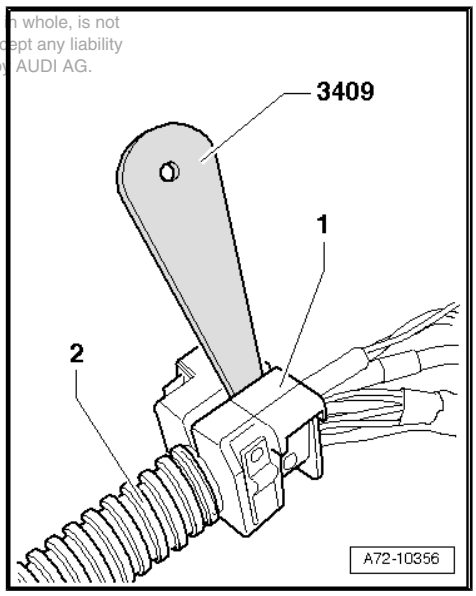
– Remove front seat:

- Removing and installing front seat (standard seat) ⇒ page 332
- Removing and installing front seat (seat with seat memory, seat with electric adjustment) ⇒ page 379
- Removing and installing front seat on S6 (seat with seat memory, seat with electric adjustment) ⇒ page 446

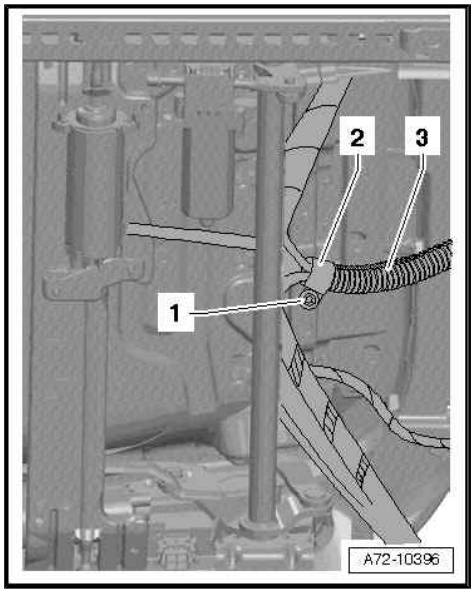
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 443 .

– Use removal wedge -3409- to unfasten cable retainer -1-.
– Detach cable retainer -1- from corrugated tube -2-.

The reproduction, distribution and utilisation of this document, in whole or in parts, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



– Remove bolt -1-.
– Detach cable clip -2- from corrugated tube -3-.



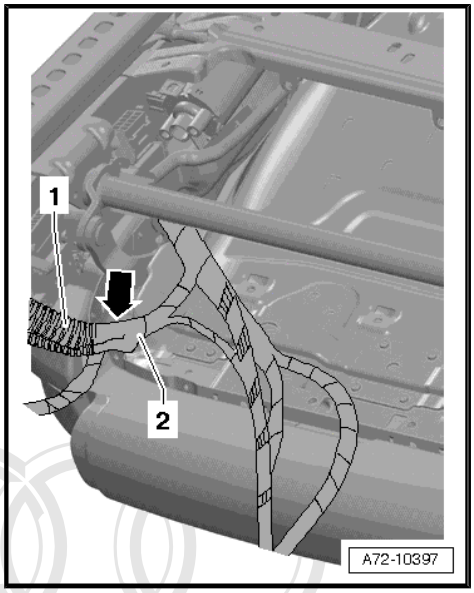
– Unfasten fabric tape -2- in area of -arrow-.
– Open corrugated tube -1-.

Fitting individual wires and closing corrugated tube

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



– Take care not to twist any wires when bunching the individual wires and fitting them in the corrugated tube.

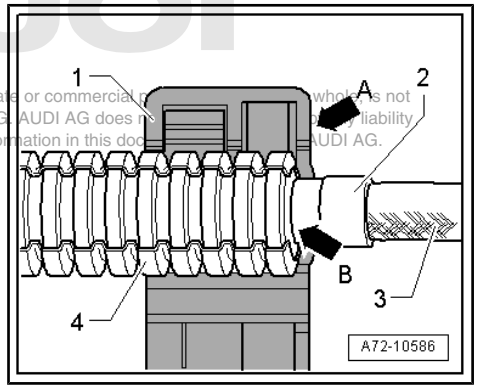
Note

Note the correct installation position of the two-piece corrugated tube in relation to the wiring harness and the cable retainer.

– The start of the corrugated tube -4- should be positioned immediately after the clip -2-/cable tie.

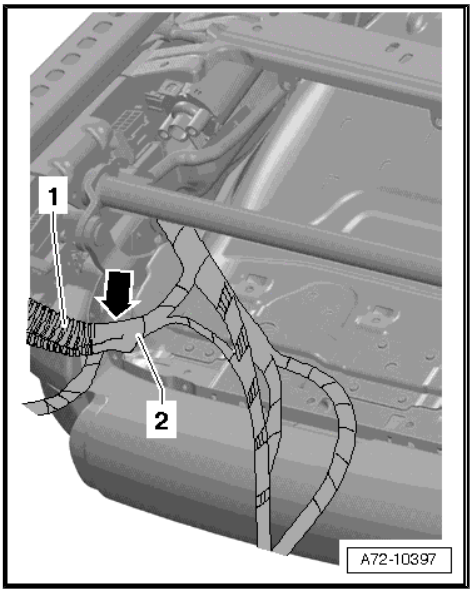
3 - Wiring harness to connector point

– Make sure the two-piece corrugated tube -4- is properly closed over its entire length.
– Make sure side -arrow A- of cable retainer -1- follows on immediately from last bead -arrow B- of corrugated tube -4-.



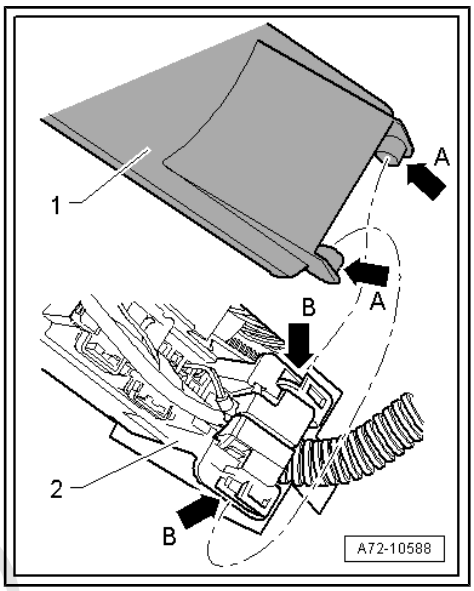
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Tie self-adhesive fabric tape -arrow- around transition between corrugated tube on seat end -1- and wiring harness -2-.



– Take care to first engage lugs -arrows A- of cover panel -1- properly in mountings -arrows B- of connector point -2-.
– Cover panel can only be engaged with connector point if it is attached properly.

Tightening torques ⇒ page 338



1.8 Removing and installing seat rail covers

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

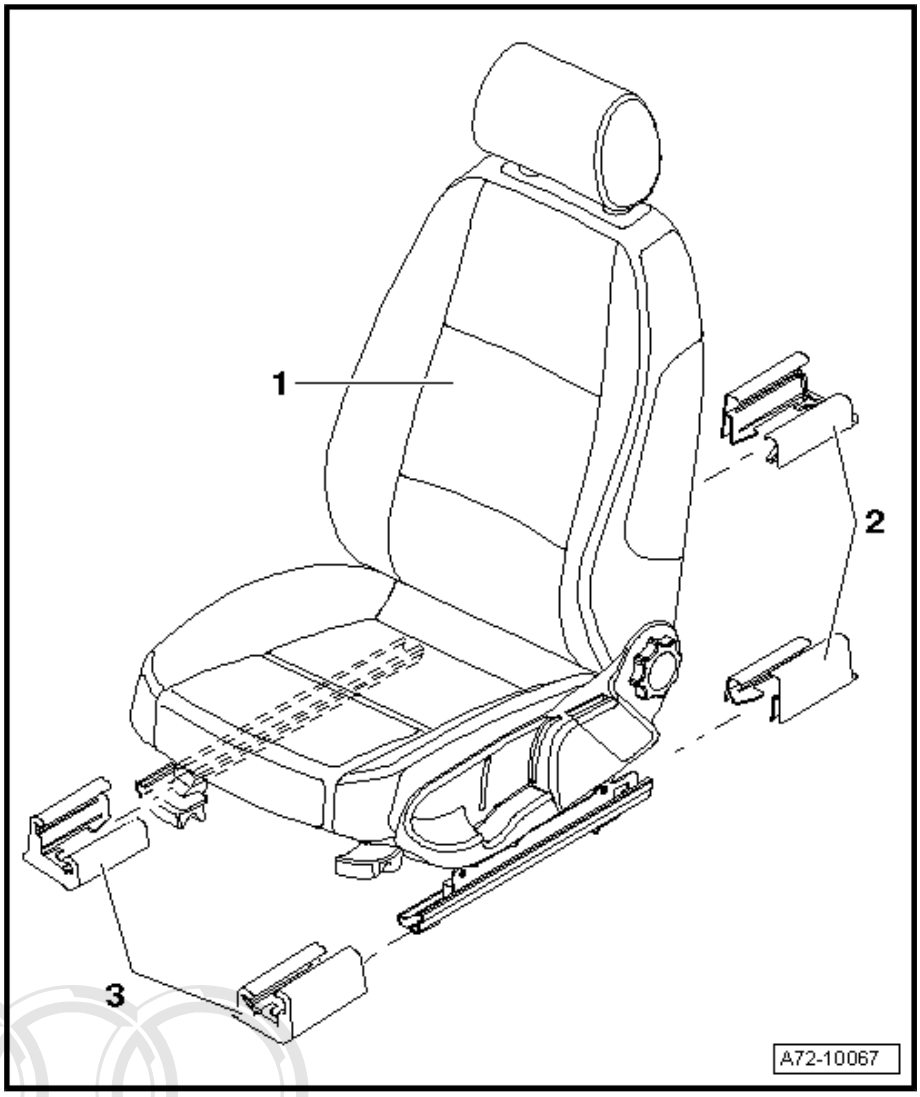
1 - Front seat

2 - Seat rails covers (rear; 2x)

- ♦ Removing
  - – Move front seat -1- into half-way position.
  - – Remove seat ⇒ page 379 .
  - – Working from below, lever off covers for seat rails -2- and -3- on inside of seat rails.
  - – Lever off covers for seat rails on outside of seat rails.
  - – Detach covers for seat rails -2- and -3-, keeping them as straight as possible.
- ♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

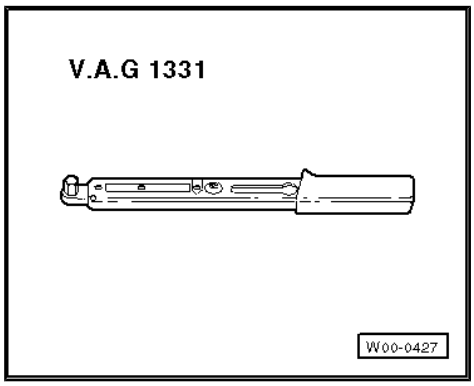
3 - Seat rail covers (front; 2x)



1.9 Removing and installing backrests, front (standard seats)

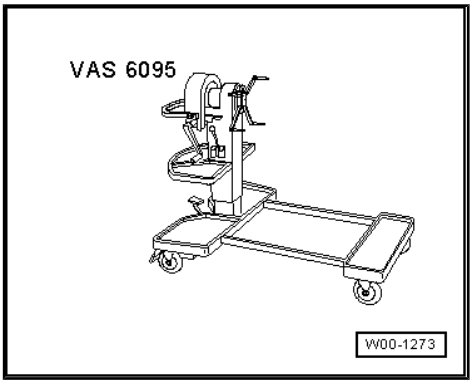
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1331-

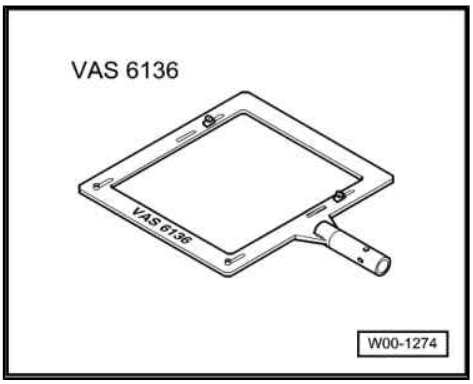


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



- Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



WARNING

On vehicles with side airbags please observe relevant safety regulations ⇒ page 111 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Fastening strip

2 - Backrest

♦ Removing

- Remove seat ⇒ page 332 .
- Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
- Remove backrest adjuster ⇒ page 348 .
- Remove seat height adjuster ⇒ page 349 .
- Remove side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 350 .
- Remove side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 352 .
- Disengage fastening strip -1- from seat pan -8-.

Vehicles without modular wire routing up to 07.06

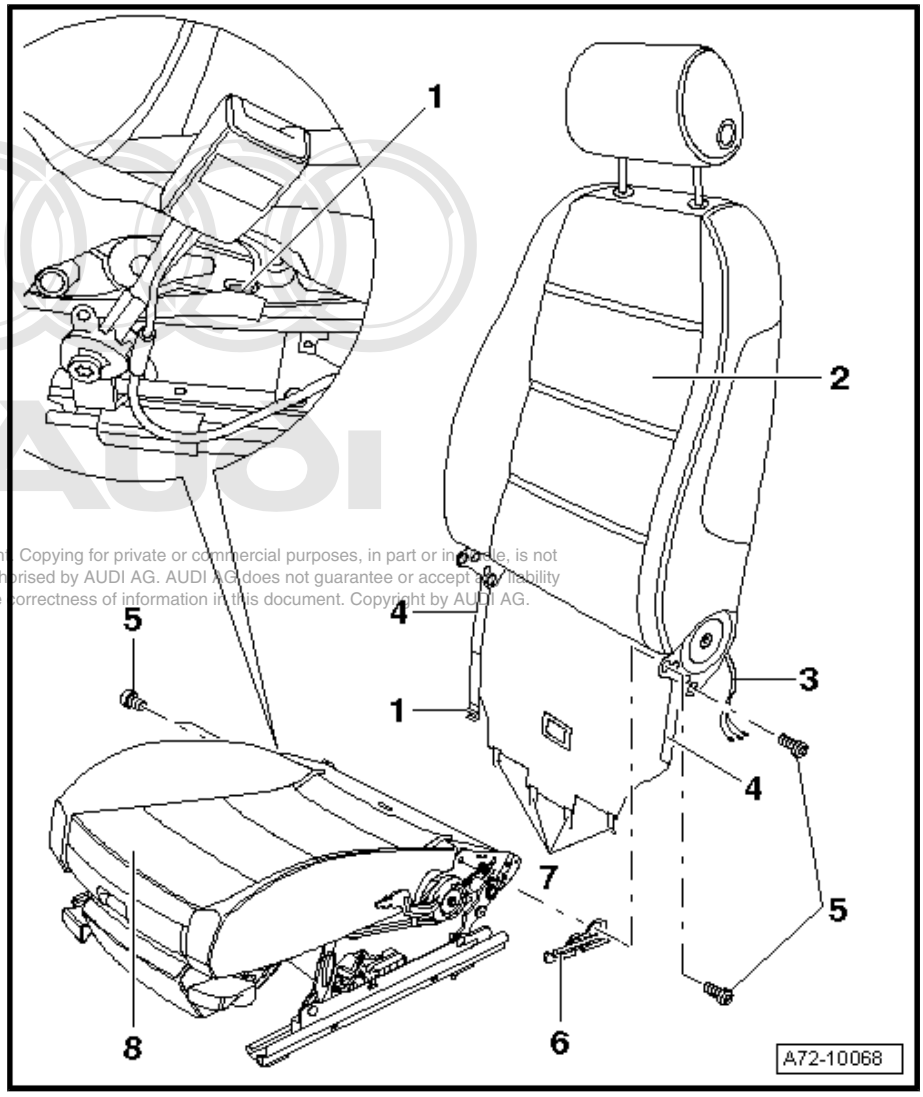
- Unplug electrical connectors and disconnect cable from spring mat ⇒ Item 1 (page 347) .

Vehicles with »Modular Light« wire routing from 07.06 onwards

- Remove corrugated tube ⇒ page 340 .

All vehicles (continued)

- Remove bolts -5- (4x).
- Tilt backrest -2- forwards onto seat.
- Press padding to side and carefully pull wiring harness -3- out of seat pan -8-.
- Detach backrest -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Renew backrest adjuster if it is too loose after assembly.
- Secure footwell trim to spring mat of seat pan at lugs -7- (4x).

3 - Wiring harness

4 - Fastening strips (2x)

5 - Bolts (4x)

❑ Tightening torque: 20 Nm
❑ Self-locking
❑ Always renew after removing
❑ Threaded holes for bolts must always be cleaned (e.g. with a thread tap).

6 - Bracket

7 - Lugs (4x)

8 - Seat pan

1 - Connector for side airbag

❑ Vehicles without modular wire routing up to 07.06 only

– Press lugs in on connectors -4-, -5- and -6- (left and right) and detach connectors.

– Unplug connector for side airbag -1- ⇒ page 347 .

– Detach clip -2-.

– Release cables at cable tie clips -3-.

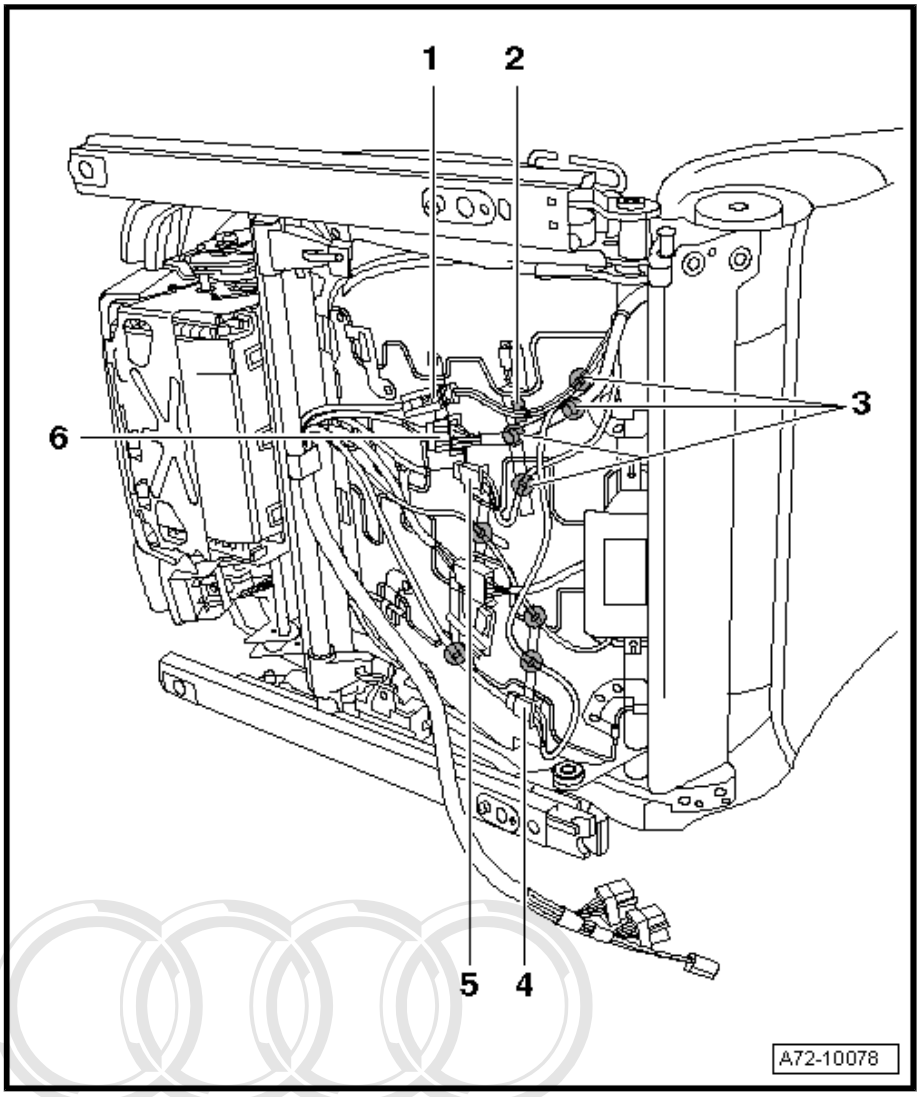
2 - Clip

3 - Cable tie clips

4 - Connector for side airbag - earth

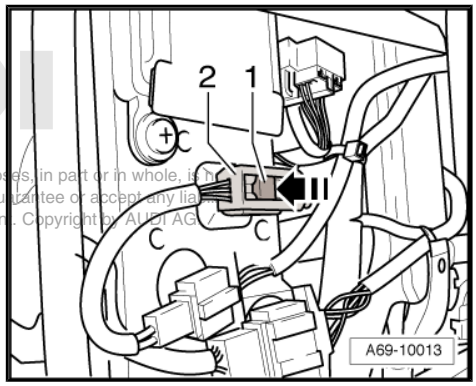
5 - Connector for backrest heating

6 - Connector for four-way lumbar support



Unplugging connector for side airbag - vehicles without modular wire routing up to 07.06

– Press retaining tab -1- in direction of arrow and unplug side airbag connector -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

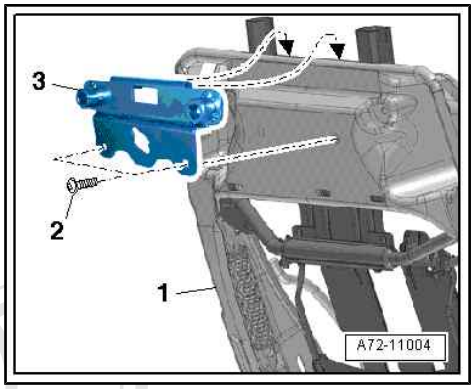
1.10 Removing and installing retaining plate for DVD player

Removing

– Remove cover and padding for front seat backrest ⇒ page 573 .

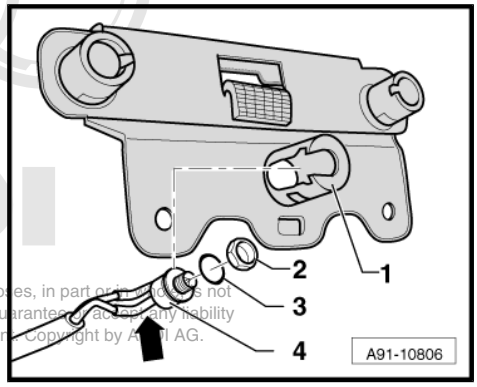
– Remove bolts -2-.

– Detach retaining plate -3- for screen bracket.



– Loosen nut -2-.

– Guide charger socket -4- with washer -3- out of mounting -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Pull washer -3- upwards and slide charger socket -4- into mounting -1- from the side.

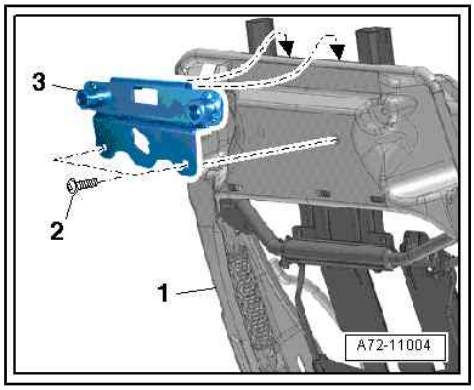
• Charger socket must be positioned centrally in mounting.

– Hold charger socket in this position and tighten nut.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Engage hook of retaining plate in outer backrest frame -1- -arrows-.

– Tighten bolts.



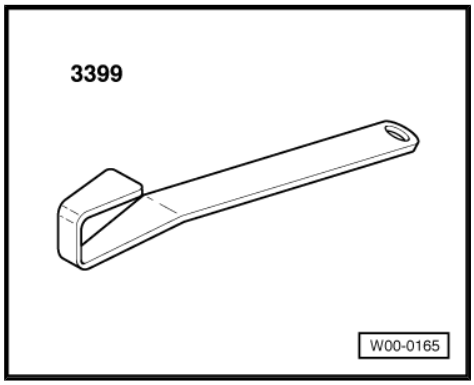
Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Charger socket to mounting	0.4
Retaining plate to outer backrest frame	6

1.11 Removing and installing backrest adjuster

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Assembly tool -3399-



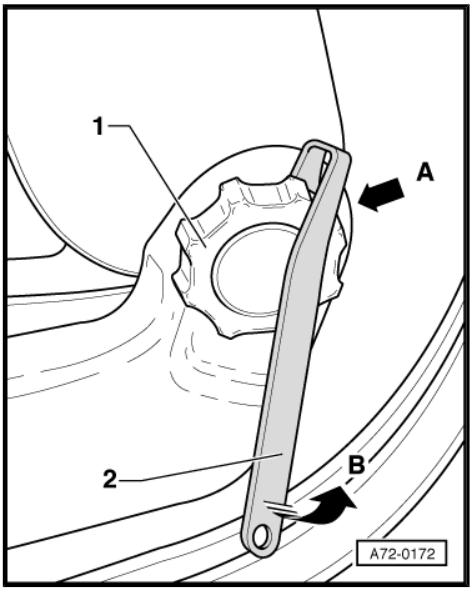
♦ Removing

– Turn backrest adjuster -1- until detent is visible from rear -arrow A-. Use torch if necessary.
– Hook in assembly tool -3399- -2- and lever in direction of -arrow B-.
– Turn backrest adjuster a further 120°.
– Hook in assembly tool -3399- -2- and lever in direction of -arrow B-.
– Remove backrest adjuster.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

– Renew backrest adjuster if it is too loose after assembly.



1.12 Removing and installing seat height adjuster

1 - Seat height adjuster

– Make improvised tool ⇒ page 350 .
– Pull seat height adjuster -1- slightly away from seat.
– Insert improvised tool -2- in mounting -4-.
– Pull improvised tool -2- in direction of -arrow A- to press spring -3- outwards.
– Pull off seat height adjuster -1- in direction of -arrow B-.

♦ Installing

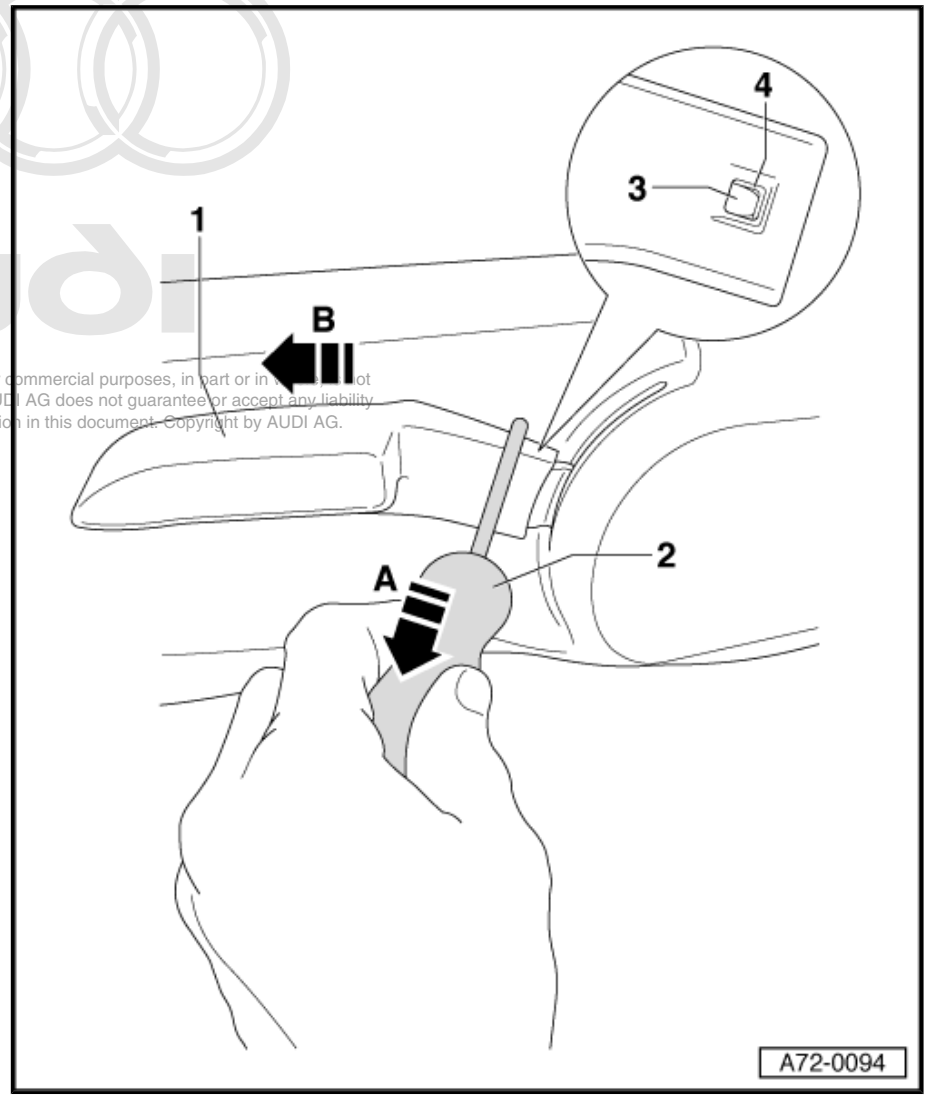
Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

– Make sure retaining clip is attached to lever of seat height adjuster. Note correct installation position ⇒ page 350 .

2 - Improvised tool

3 - Clip

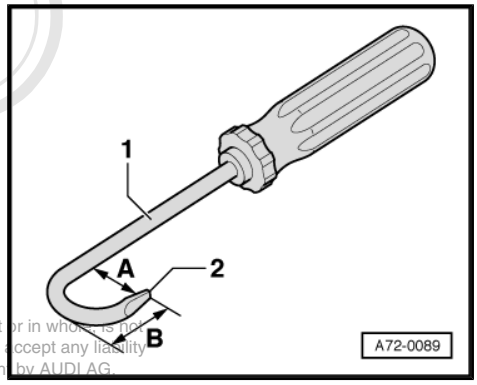
4 - Mounting



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Making improvised tool for removing seat height adjuster

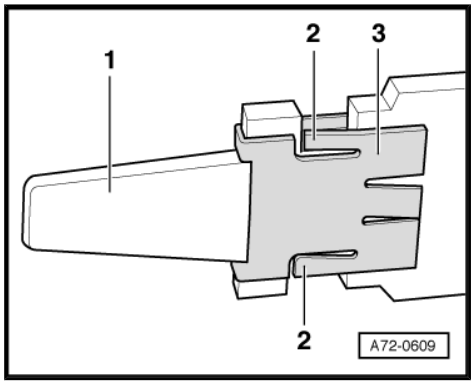
– Bend a screwdriver -1- with a width -2- of 3.5 mm to obtain dimensions -A- 20 mm and -B- max. 15 mm.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation position of retaining clip

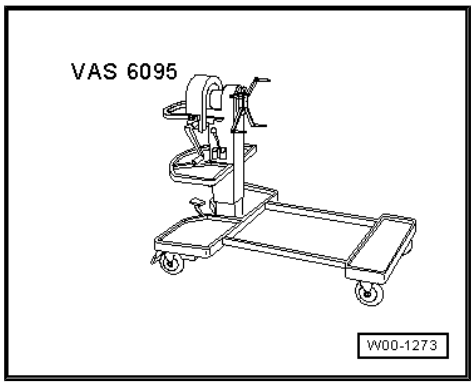
– Make sure springs -2- (2x) of retaining clip -3- are positioned on outside of lever -1-.



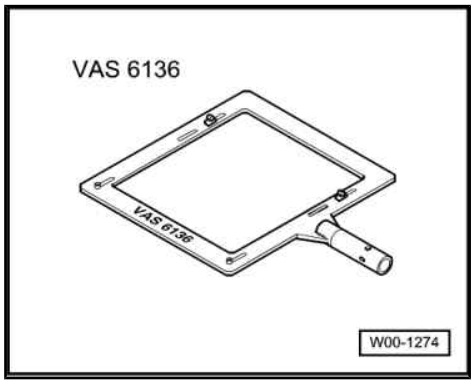
1.13 Removing and installing side trim (sill side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



♦ Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



1 - Fastener

2 - Side trim (sill side)

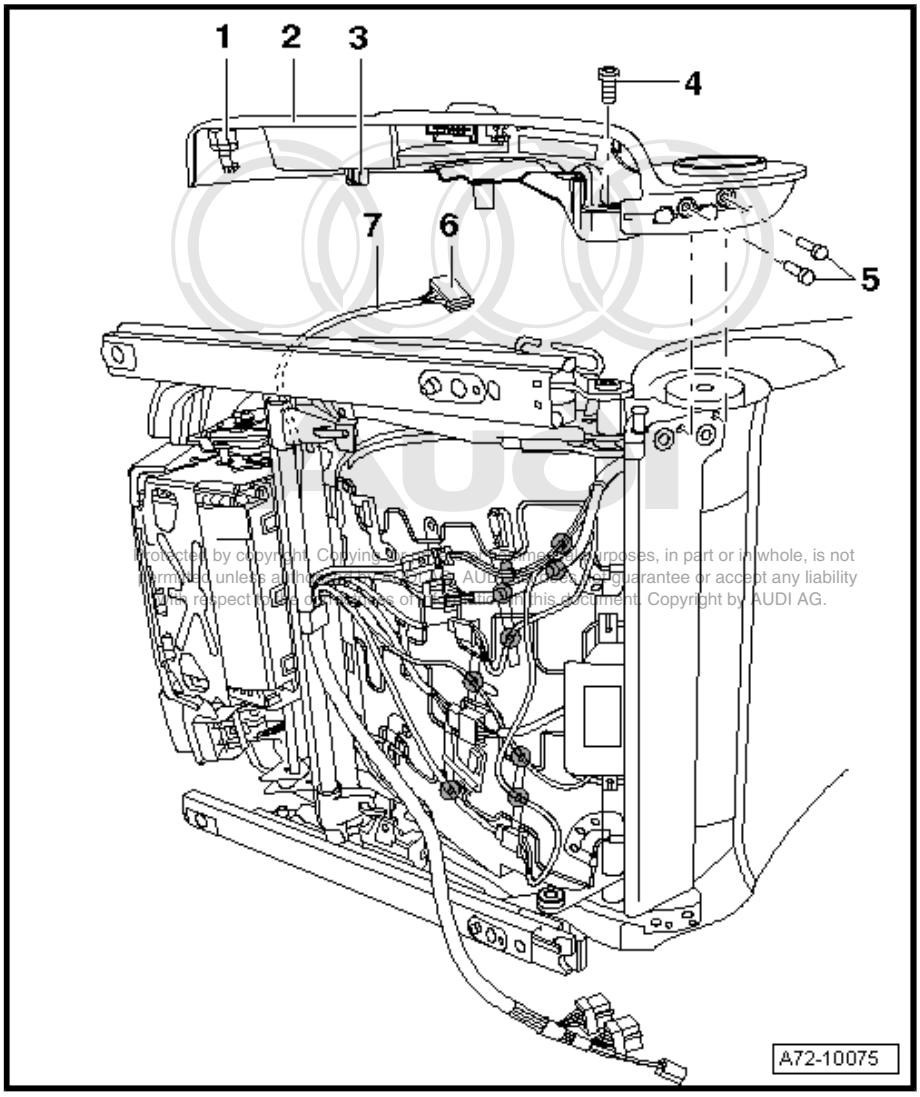
♦ Removing

- Remove seat ⇒ page 332 .
- Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
- Remove backrest adjuster ⇒ page 348 .
- Remove seat height adjuster ⇒ page 349 .
- Detach fastening strip of footwell trim from side trim ⇒ page 351 .
- Apply screwdriver to head of plastic rivets -5- (2x).
- Twist screwdriver to prise out plastic rivets -5- (2x).
- Unscrew bolt -4-.
- Disengage side trim (front) at fastener -1-.
- Pull side trim forwards to disengage lug -3-.
- Disengage side trim upwards.
- Unplug connector -6-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Insert fastening strip of footwell trim in retainers on side trim -2- ⇒ page 351 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 - Lug

4 - Bolt

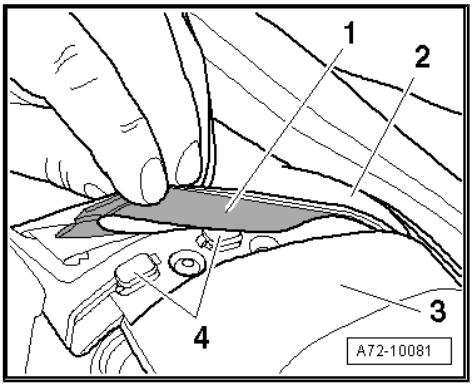
5 - Plastic rivets (2x)

6 - Connector

7 - Wiring leading to four-way lumbar support

Disconnecting fastening strip of footwell trim

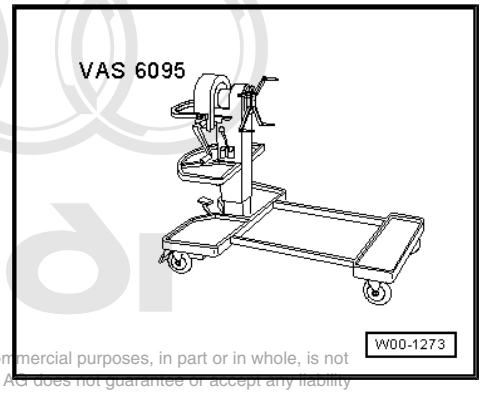
- Disengage fastening strip -1- of footwell trim -2- from retainers -4- (2x) on side trim -3-.



1.14 Removing and installing side trim (tunnel side)

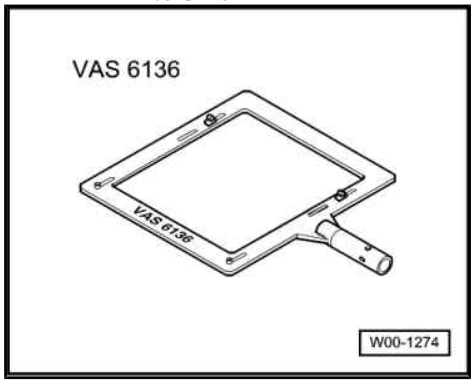
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



- Removing

– Remove seat ⇒ page 332 .

– Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .

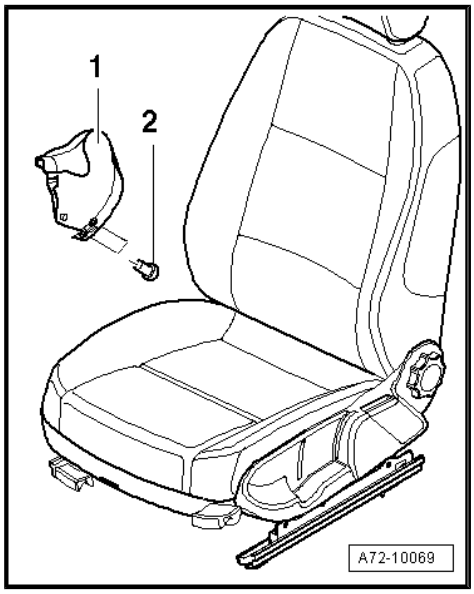
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .

– Detach fastening strip of footwell trim from side trim ⇒ page 353 .

– Apply screwdriver to head of plastic rivets -2- (2x).

– Twist screwdriver to prise out plastic rivets -2- (2x).

– Disengage side trim -1- upwards.



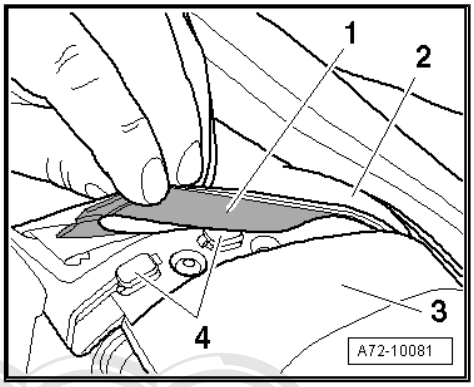
- Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

– Insert fastening strip of footwell trim in retainers on side trim ⇒ page 353 .

Disconnecting fastening strip of footwell trim

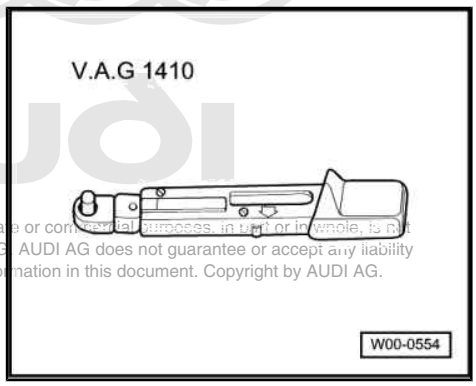
– Disengage fastening strip -1- of footwell trim -2- from retainers -4- (2x) on side trim -3-.



1.15 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit

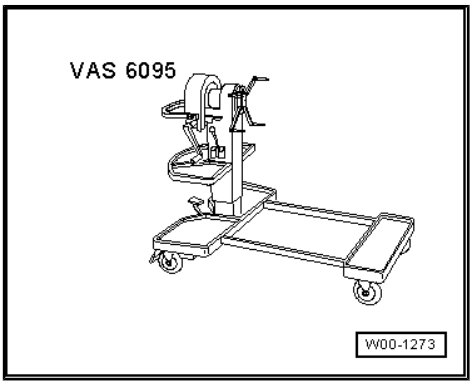
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1410-

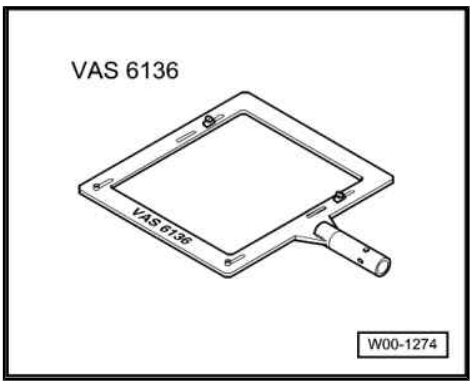


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



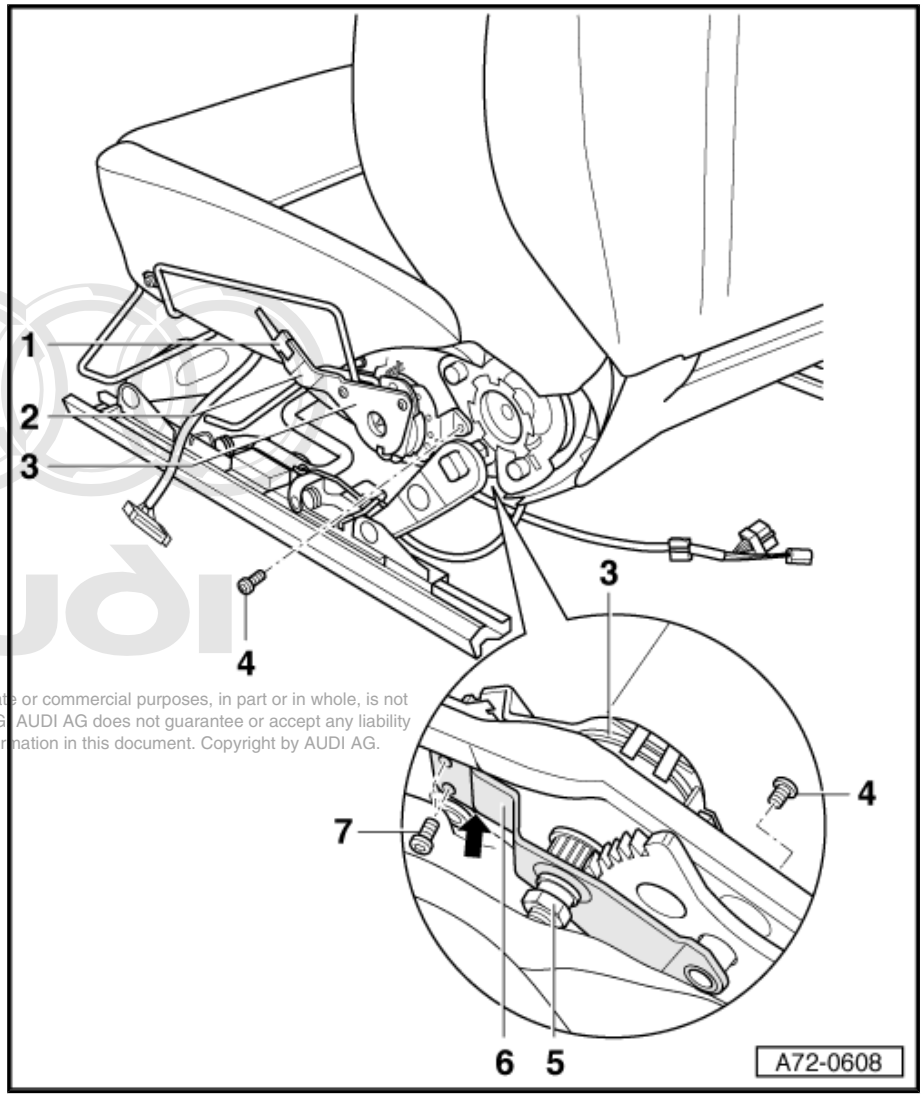
♦ Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



1 - Retaining clip

2 - Seat height adjuster lever

3 - Seat height adjustment unit



- ♦ Removing
  - – Remove seat ⇒ page 332 .
  - – Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
  - – Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
  - – Remove backrest adjuster ⇒ page 348 .
  - – Remove seat height adjuster ⇒ page 349 .
  - – Remove side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 350 .
  - – Remove nut -5-.
  - – Remove bolts -7- (2x).
  - – Unscrew bolt -4-.
  - – Detach seat height adjuster unit -3- and retaining plate -6-.
- ♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- – Make sure retaining plate -6- makes contact with outer backrest frame at point indicated by the arrow.
- – Make sure retaining clip -1- is attached to seat height adjuster lever -2-. Note correct installation position ⇒ page 350 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque: 8 Nm

5 - Nut

- ❑ Tightening torque: 12 Nm

6 - Retaining plate

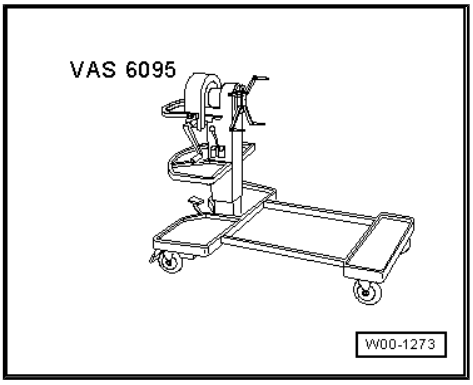
7 - Bolts (2x)

- ❑ Tightening torque: 8 Nm

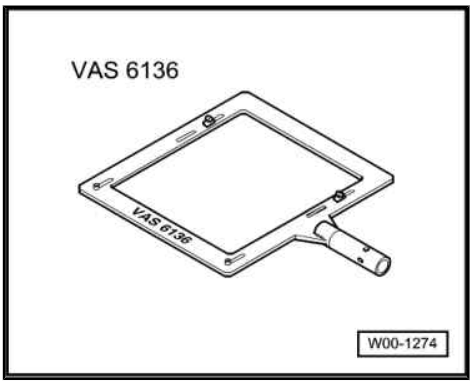
1.16 Removing and installing four-way lumbar support switch

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-

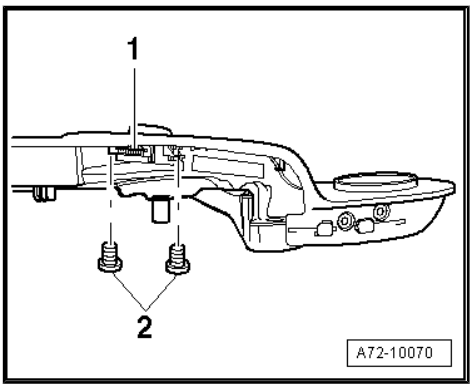


♦ Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



♦ Removing

– Remove seat ⇒ page 332 .
– Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
– Remove backrest adjuster ⇒ page 348 .
– Remove seat height adjuster ⇒ page 349 .
– Remove side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 350 .
– Remove bolts -2- (2x).
– Detach four-way lumbar support -1-.



♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

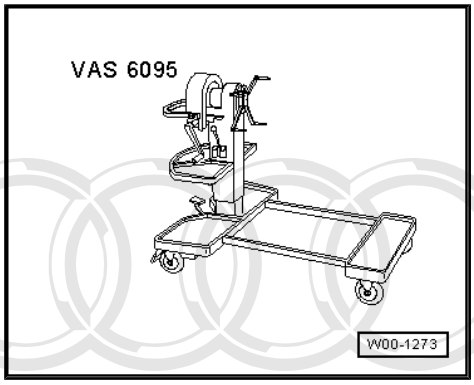
♦ Tightening torque for bolts -2-: 0.5 Nm

1.17 Removing and installing drawer - vehicles up to 06/2006

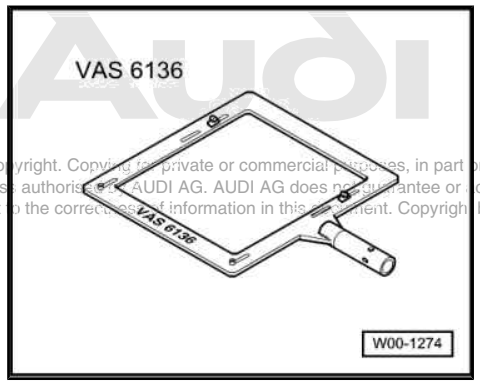
Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



- Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Drawer

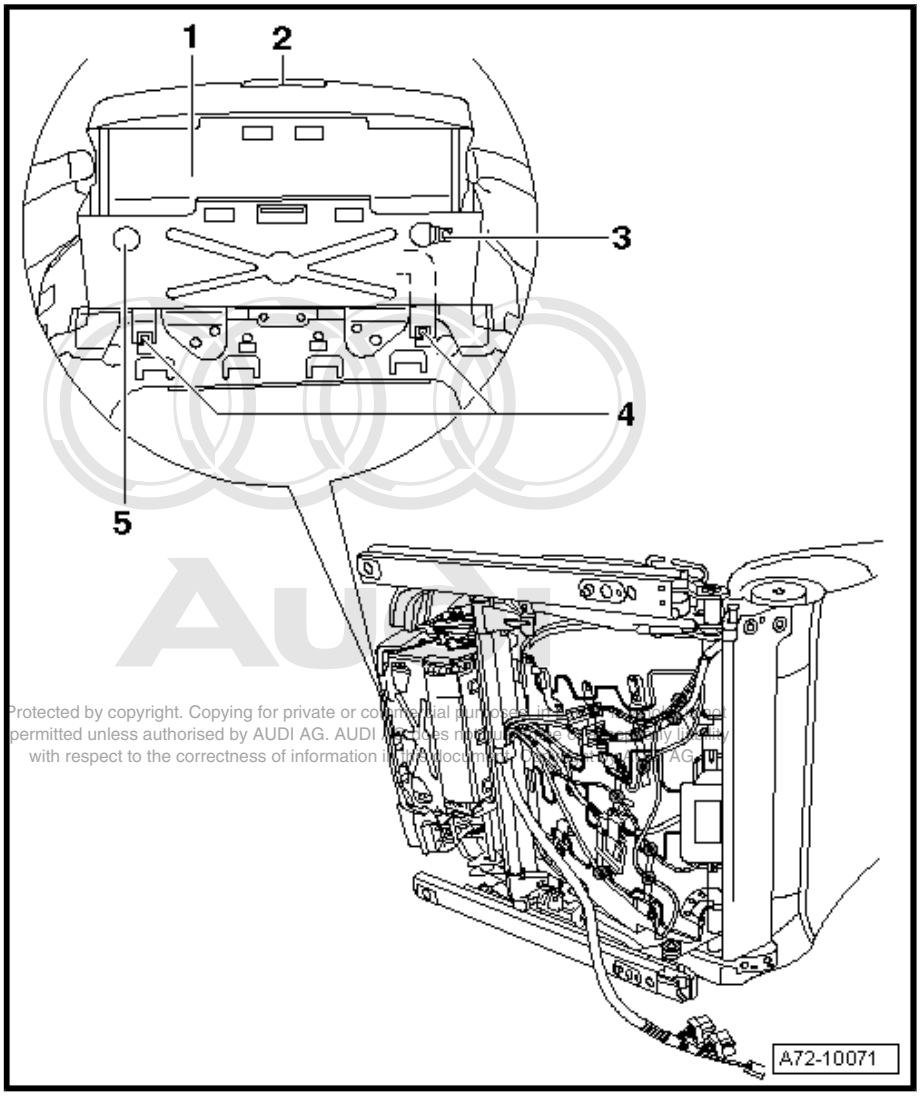
- ♦ Removing
  - – Remove seat ⇒ page 332 .
  - – Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
  - – Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
  - – Pull handle -2- and pull out drawer -1-.
  - – Guide screwdriver with bit attachment into opening -5- and unscrew bolt beneath opening.
  - – Remove bolts -4- (2x).
  - – Unscrew bolt -3-.
  - – Detach drawer -1-.
- ♦ Installing
  - – Install in reverse order of removal.

2 - Handle

3 - Bolt

4 - Bolts (2x)

5 - Opening



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.18 Exploded view of storage compartment (passenger side)

Country-specific version: vehicles from 06.06 onwards

RoW: vehicles from 06.06 onwards

1 - Storage compartment

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 358
- ❑ Exploded view of storage compartment components ⇒ page 360
- ❑ Dismantling and assembling ⇒ page 361
- ❑ Only fitted on passenger side

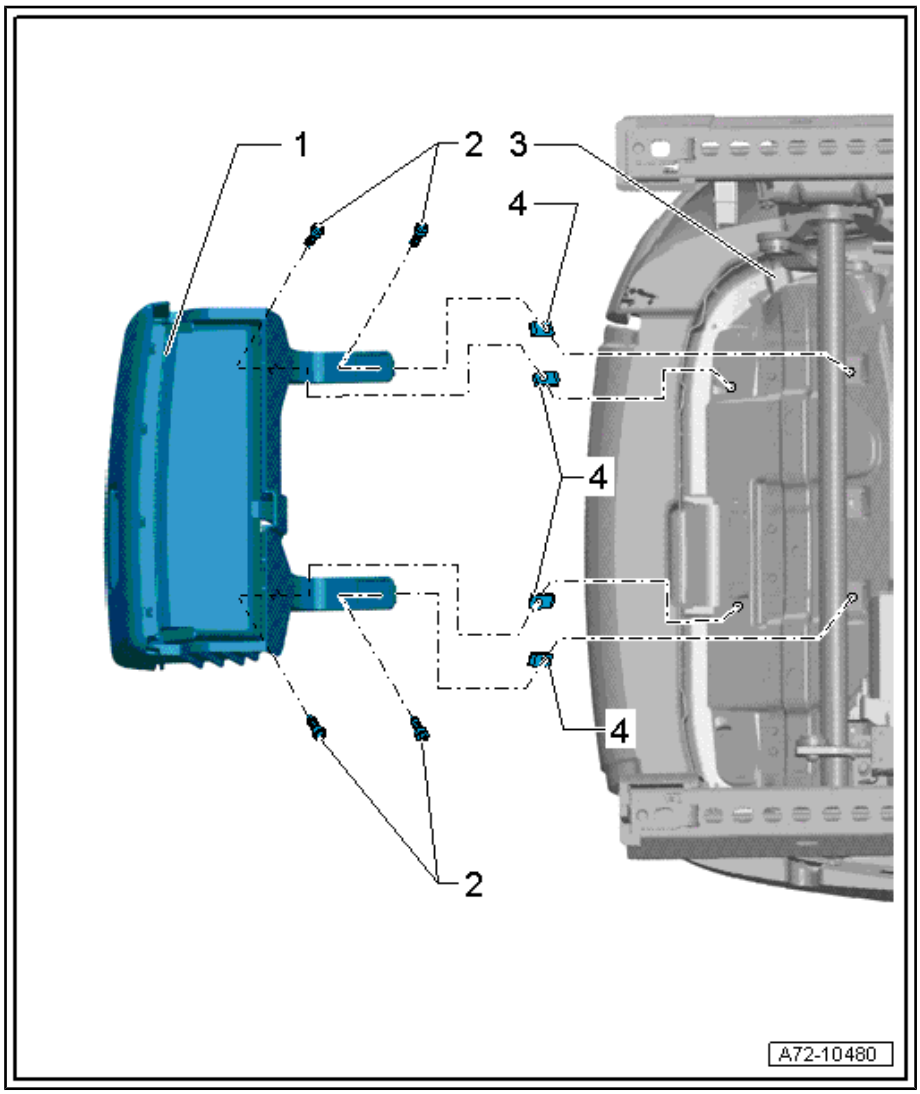
2 - Bolt

- ❑ 3.5 Nm
- ❑ 4x

3 - Seat pan

4 - Speed nut

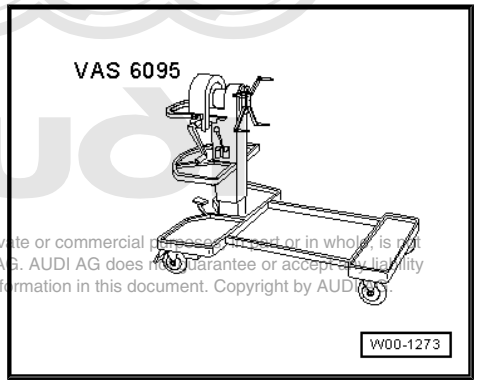
- ❑ 4x



1.19 Removing and installing storage compartment

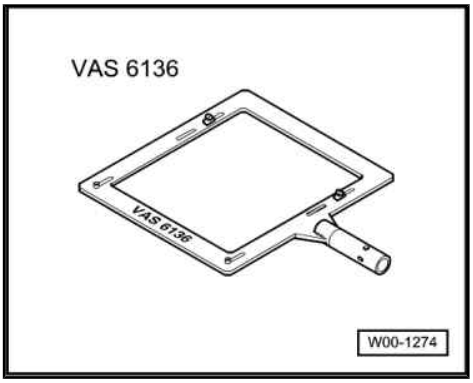
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



Removing

WARNING

- ***Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .***
- ***Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove front seat:

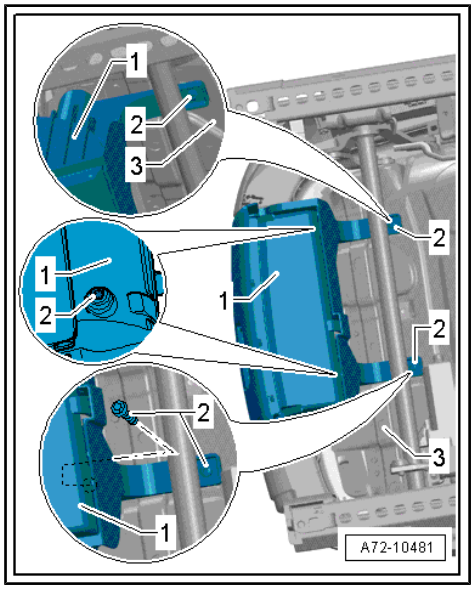
- Standard seat ⇒ page 332
- Seat with seat memory and seat with electric adjustment ⇒ page 379
- S6 front seat (seat with seat memory and seat with electric adjustment) ⇒ page 446 .

– Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .

– Open storage compartment.

– Remove bolts -2- (4x).



Note

For greater clarity the storage compartment is shown closed in the illustration.

– Detach entire storage compartment -1- from front seat -3-.

y copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .
– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

Tightening torques ⇒ page 358

1.20 Exploded view of storage compartment components

1 - Shaft

- ❑ For handle with locking mechanism
  ⇒ Item 3 (page 361)

2 - Torsion spring

- ❑ Replacement part: Only available with handle with locking mechanism
  ⇒ Item 3 (page 361)
  and shaft
  ⇒ Item 1 (page 361)

3 - Handle with locking mechanism

- ❑ Replacement part: Available with shaft
  ⇒ Item 1 (page 361) and torsion spring
  ⇒ Item 2 (page 361)

4 - Trim

- ❑ Clipped onto inner section

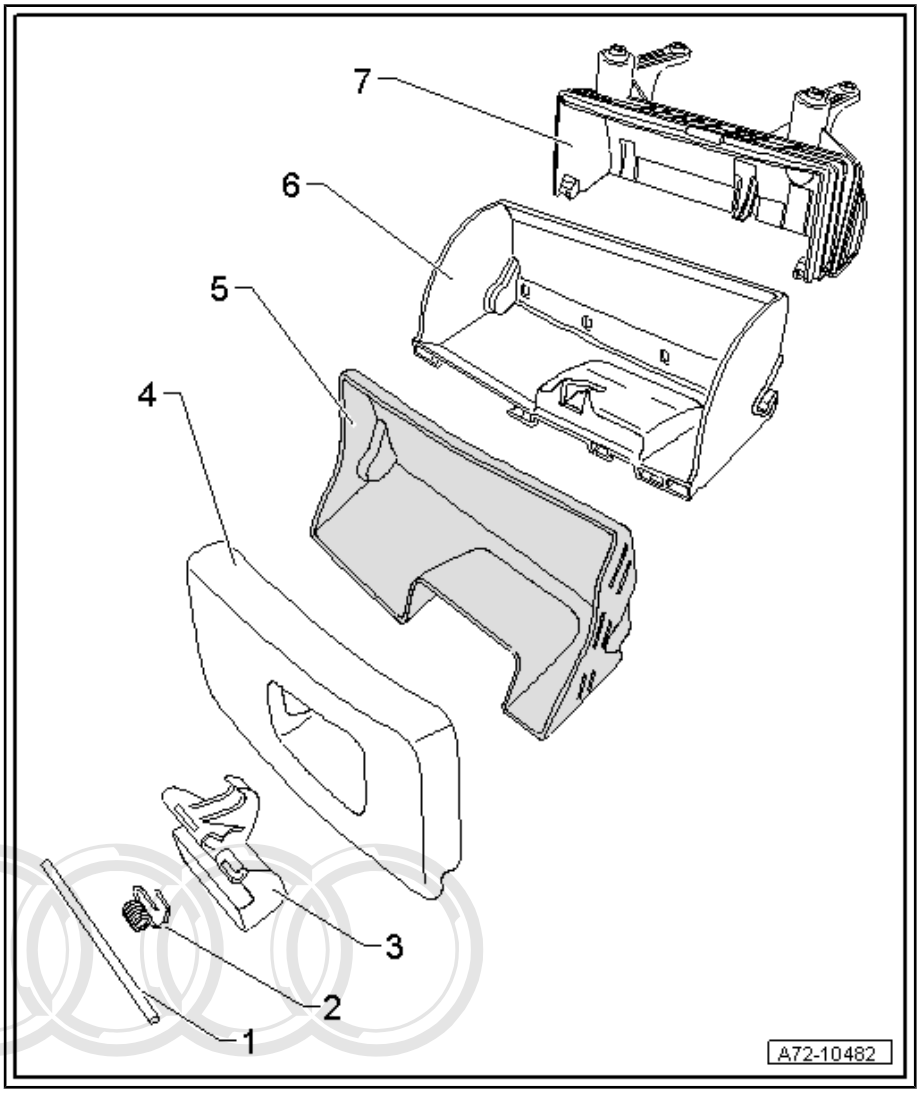
5 - Insert

6 - Inner section

- ❑ Replacement part: Only available with outer section
  ⇒ Item 7 (page 361)

7 - Outer section

- ❑ Replacement part: Only available with inner section
  ⇒ Item 6 (page 361)



1.21 Dismantling and assembling storage compartment

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

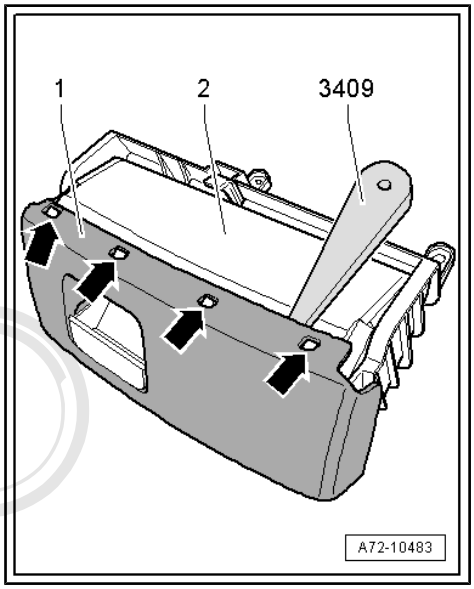
Note

- ♦ *You do not have to remove the front seat to dismantle and assemble the storage compartment.*
- ♦ *The storage compartment does not have to be removed to be dismantled and assembled.*
- ♦ *To renew the outer section ⇒ Item 7 (page 361) , the front seat and the storage compartment must be removed.*

Removing trim

– Take inner section out of outer section ⇒ page 362 .

– Use removal wedge -3409- to unclip trim -1- from retaining tabs -arrows- (4x) on inner section -2-.

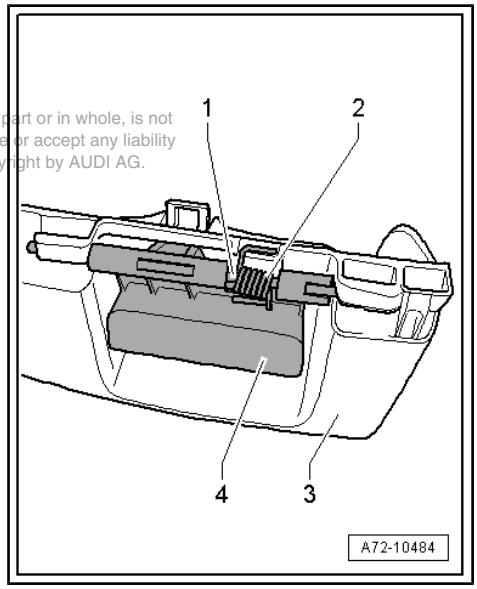


Removing handle with locking mechanism

– Remove trim ⇒ page 361 .

– Pull shaft -1- out of inner section -3-.

– Detach handle with locking mechanism -4-, torsion spring -2- and shaft -1-.



Removing insert

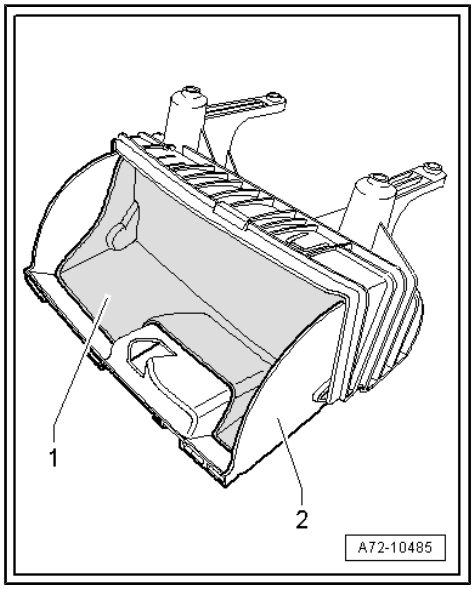
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

- *The insert is only placed in the inner section and not secured.*
- *For greater clarity, the storage compartment is shown removed from the vehicle and without the trim and the handle with locking mechanism in the following illustrations.*

– Open storage compartment.

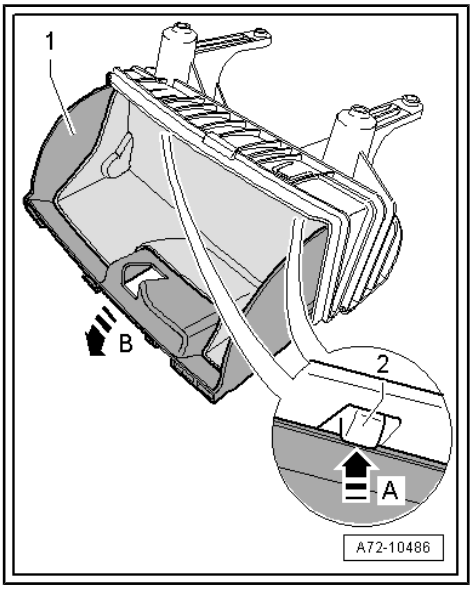
– Take insert -1- out of inner section -2-.



Taking inner section out of outer section

– Open storage compartment.

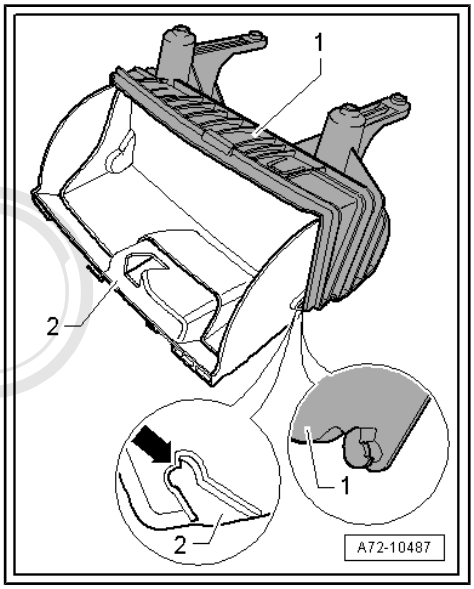
– Press catches -2- (2x) upwards in direction of -arrow A-.
– Swivel inner section -1- downwards in direction of -arrow B-.



– Pull outer section -1- out of guide -arrow- on inner section -2-.

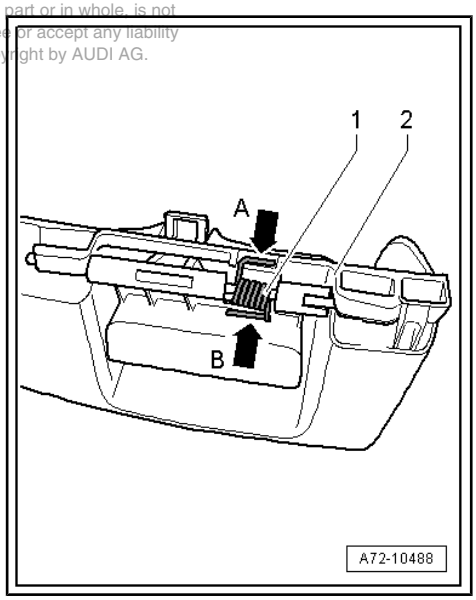
Assembling storage compartment

Assemble in reverse order. Observe the following:



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. Audi does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

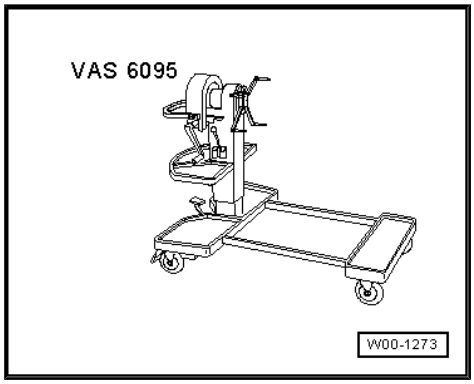
– Engage torsion spring -1- so that short arm -arrow A- rests on inner section -2- and long arm -arrow B- rests on handle -3-.



1.22 Removing and installing seat depth adjuster (sports seat)

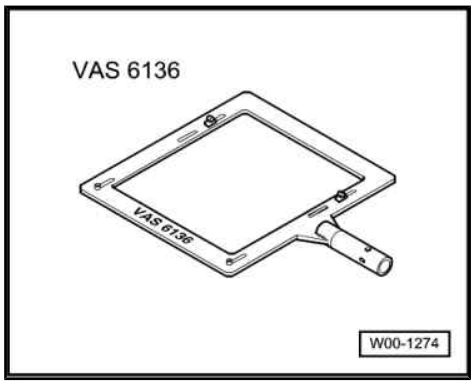
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

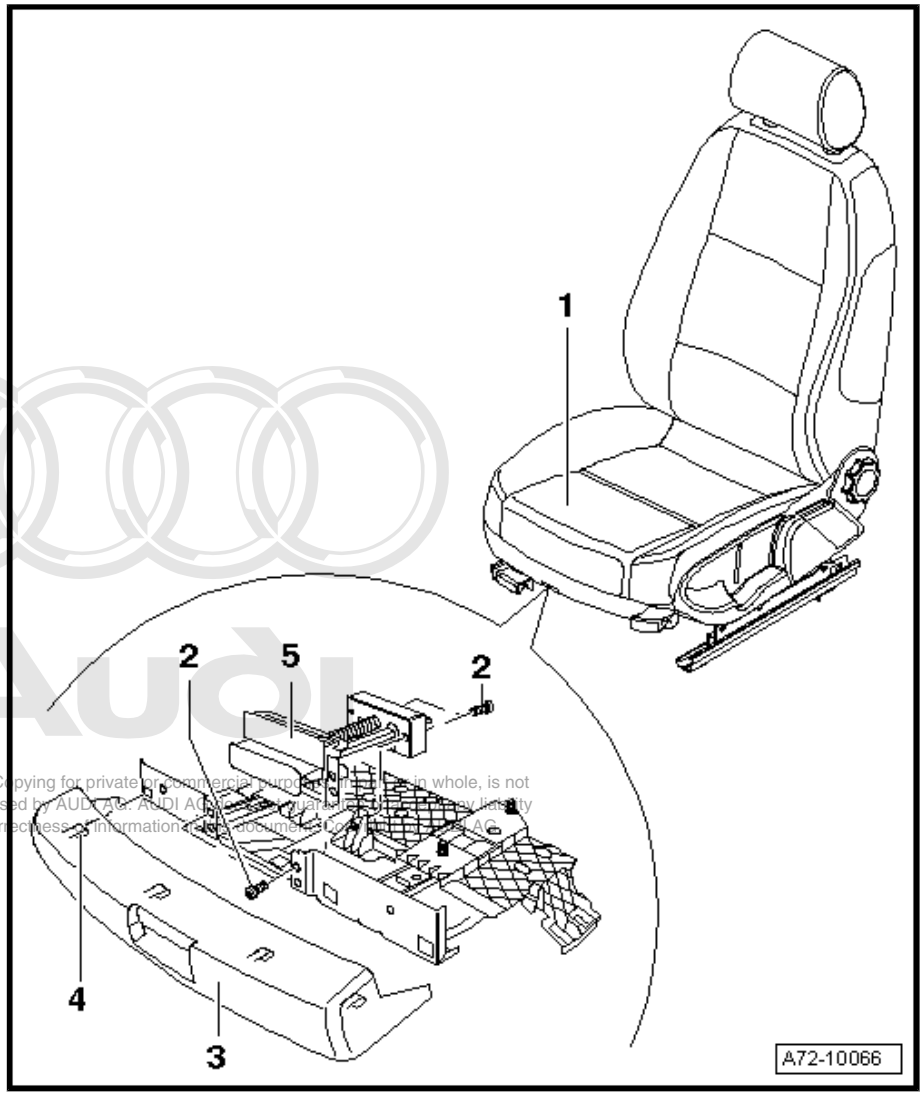
- Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



1 - Seat depth adjuster

- ♦ Removing
  - – Remove seat ⇒ page 332 .
  - – Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
  - – Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
  - – Remove drawer / storage compartment:
- ♦ Removing drawer ⇒ page 355
- ♦ Removing storage compartment ⇒ page 358
  - – Detach seat cover and padding from seat pan ⇒ page 568 .
  - – Separate seat depth adjuster from cover and padding ⇒ page 571 .
- ♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 - Bolts (4x)

3 - Trim

- ♦ Removing
  - – Lever out clips -4- (4x) at trim -3-.
- ♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

4 - Clips (4x)

5 - Handle

- ♦ Removing
  - – Remove bolts -2- (4x).
  - – Detach handle -5-.
- ♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

1.23 Renewing backrest

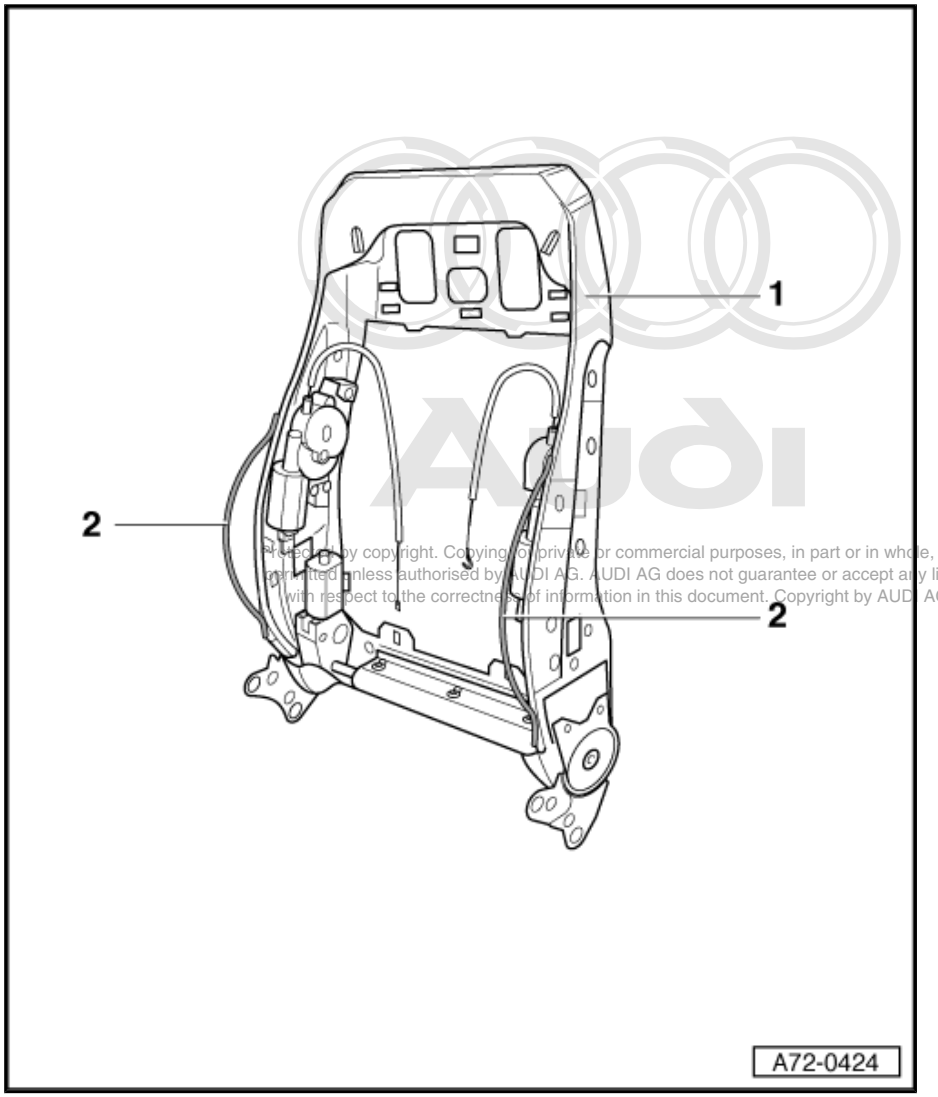
Note

Only sports seat backrests are available as replacement parts. Convert the sports seat backrest if you require a backrest for a standard seat.

1 - Backrest (sports seat)

- ♦ Conversion
  - – Detach support wires -2- (2x) from backrest (sports seat) -1-.
  - – Repair paint finish as specified in Workshop Manual ⇒ Audi Paintwork . If necessary, apply anti-corrosion treatment also as specified in Workshop Manual ⇒ Audi Paintwork .

2 - Support wires (2x)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.24 Renewing seat pan

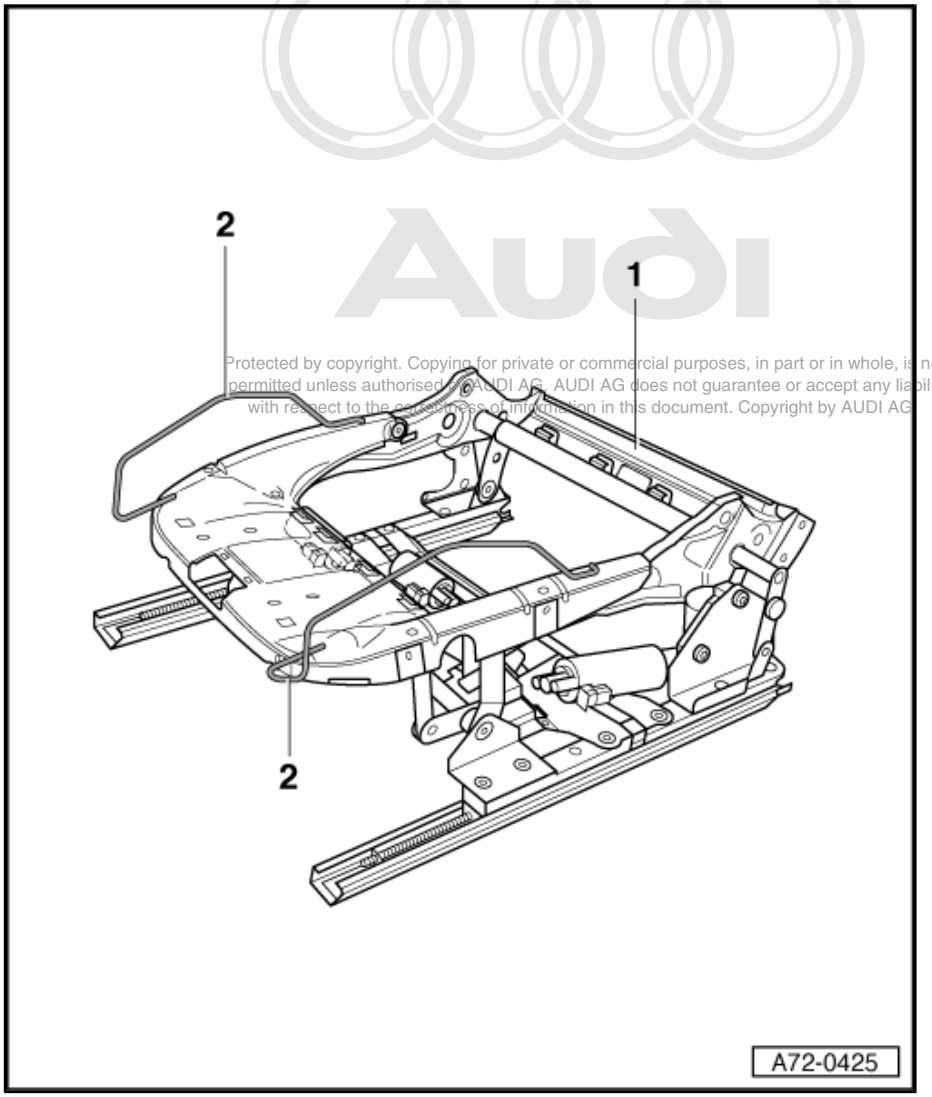
Note

Only sports seat pans are available as replacement parts. Convert the sports seat pan if you require a standard seat pan.

1 - Sports seat pan

- Conversion
  - Detach support wires -2- (2x) from sports seat pan -1-.
  - Repair paint finish as specified in Workshop Manual ⇒ Audi Paintwork . If necessary, apply anti-corrosion treatment also as specified in Workshop Manual ⇒ Audi Paintwork .

2 - Support wires (2x)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.25 Removing and installing backrest cover panel

Note

- *The illustration shows the removal and installation of the backrest cover panel on a front seat with active head restraint system.*
- *The removal and installation procedures for the backrest cover panel on a front seat without the active head restraint system are similar to those for a front seat with the active head restraint system.*

1 - Front seat

2 - Fastening strip

- ❑ Always on tunnel side

3 - Spring clips (3x)

- ❑ Always renew

4 - Backrest cover panel

- ♦ Removing
  - – Disengage footwell trim -8- from spring mat under the seat at lugs -7- (4x).
  - – Disengage fastening strip -2-.
  - – Detach fastening strips -6- (2x) from side trim ⇒ page 369 .
  - – Press backrest cover panel -4- in direction of -arrow- to disengage spring clips -3- (3x).
  - – Disengage backrest cover panel -4- upwards from retainers -5- (2x).
- ♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

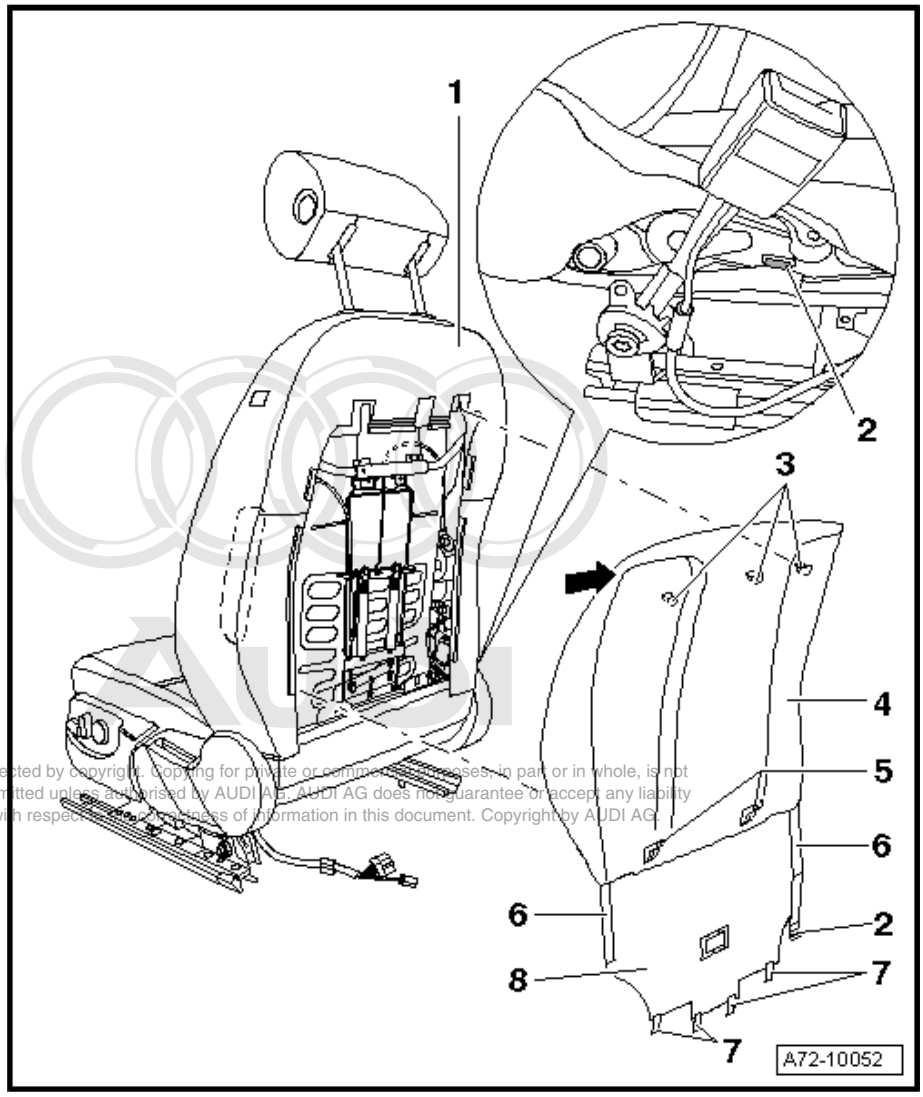
- – Renew clips -3- (3x).
- – Insert fastening strip of footwell trim in retainers on side trim ⇒ page 369 .

5 - Retainers (2x)

6 - Fastening strips (2x)

7 - Lugs (4x)

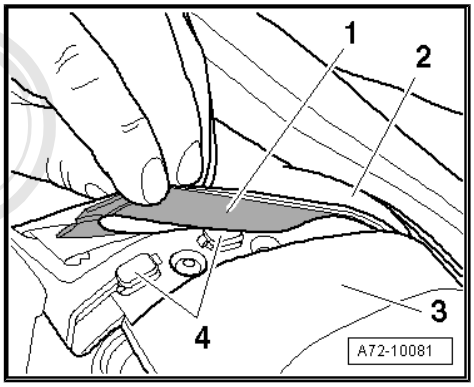
8 - Footwell trim



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Disconnecting fastening strip of footwell trim

– Disengage fastening strip -1- of footwell trim -2- from retainers -4- (2x) on side trim -3-.

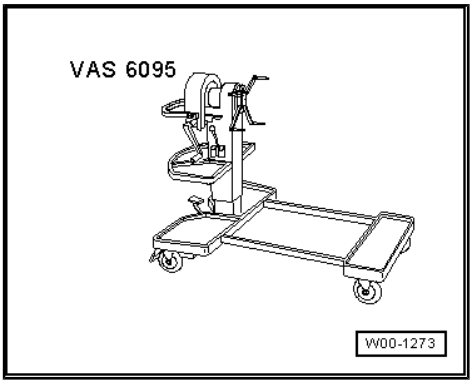


1.26 Removing and installing four-way lumbar support - old version

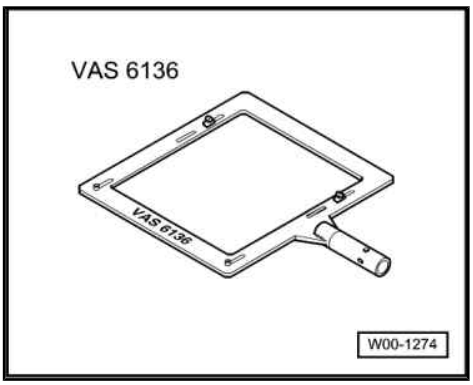
Vervielfältigung, Weitergabe oder Verwendung dieser Unterlage für Zwecke jeder Art, in Teilen oder im Ganzen, ist nicht gestattet, wenn nicht ausdrücklich von AUDI AG zugelassen. AUDI AG übernimmt keine Haftung für die Richtigkeit der Angaben in dieser Unterlage. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753 A-
- Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



- Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



1 - Retainer

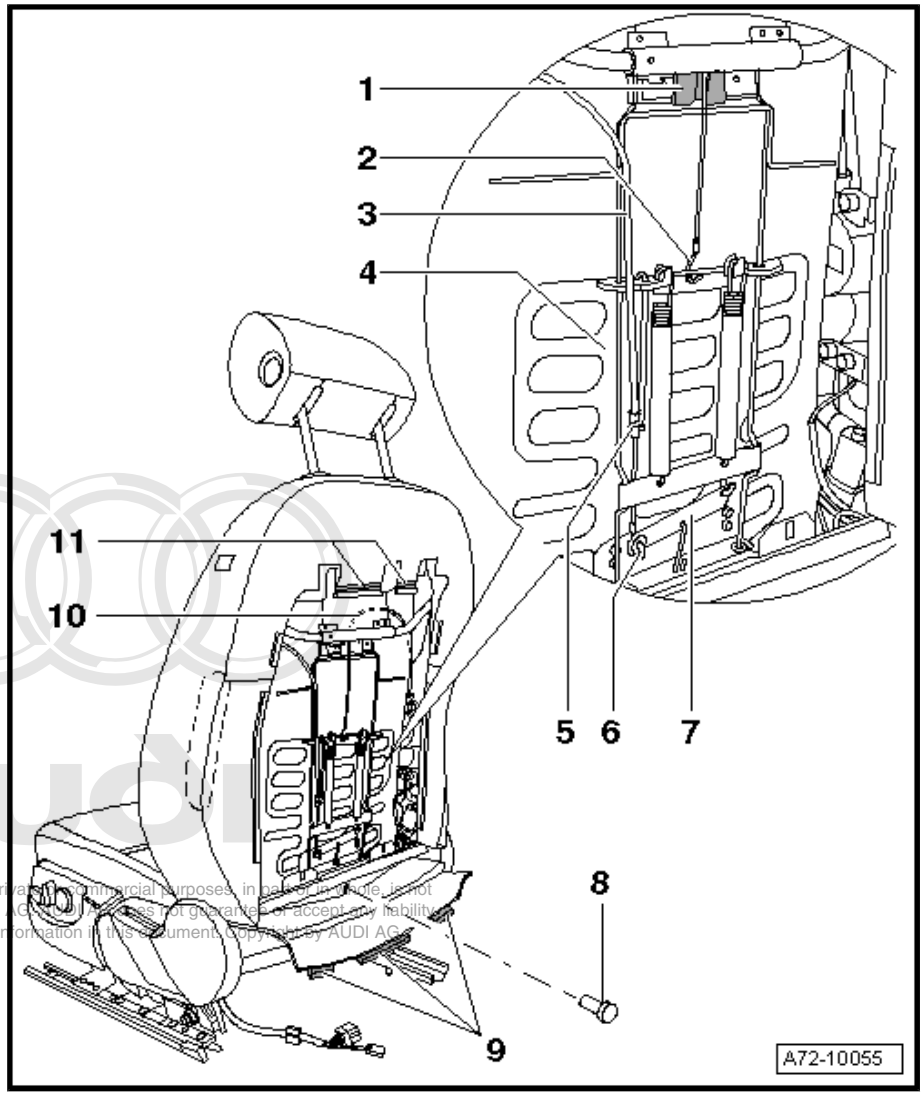
2 - Hook

3 - Bowden cable for lumbar support adjustment

4 - Four-way lumbar support

♦ Removing

- Remove seat ⇒ page 332 .
- Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
- Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 368 .
- Use screwdriver to prise out fastening strips -9- (4x).
- Drill out rivet -8-.
- Prise out fastening strips -11- (2x).
- Disengage four-way lumbar support -4- (top left and right) from outer backrest frame.
- Thread Bowden cable -3- out of support -5-.
- Disengage Bowden cable -10- from four-way lumbar support -4- at hook -2-.
- Disengage Bowden cable -10- from retainer -1-.
- Take out four-way lumbar support -4-.



♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

- IMPORTANT: Before riveting, position a plastic washer between four-way lumbar support and backrest frame ⇒ page 371 .

5 - Support

6 - Hook

7 - Retaining plate

8 - Rivet

❑ Set rivet using special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A- ⇒ page 371 .

❑ IMPORTANT: Before riveting, position a plastic washer between four-way lumbar support and backrest frame ⇒ page 371 .

9 - Fastening strips (3x)

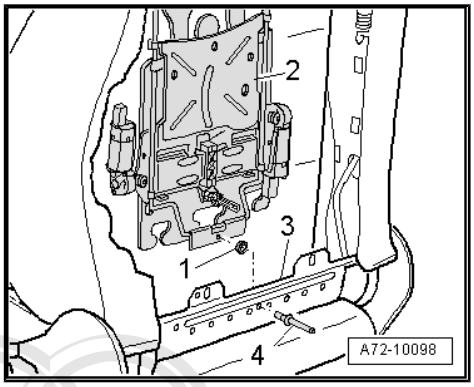
10 - Bowden cable for lumbar support adjustment

11 - Fastening strips (2x)

Copyright by AUDI AG
For private and commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Riveting four-way lumbar support to backrest frame

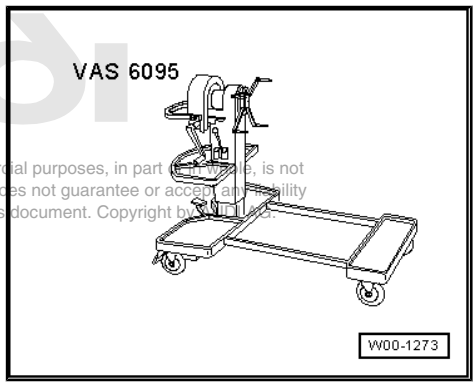
– Before attaching rivet -4- you must place a plastic washer -1- between four-way lumbar support -2- and outer backrest frame -3-.



1.27 Removing and installing control motors for lumbar support adjustment - old version

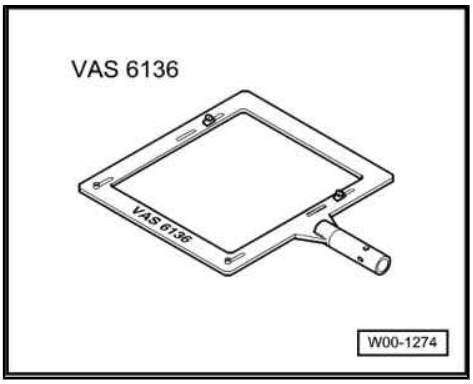
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



Note

The illustration shows the driver's seat with the lumbar support height adjustment motor on the left side and the lumbar support adjustment motor on the right.

1 - Retainer

2 - Hook

3 - Bowden cable for lumbar support height adjustment

4 - Four-way lumbar support

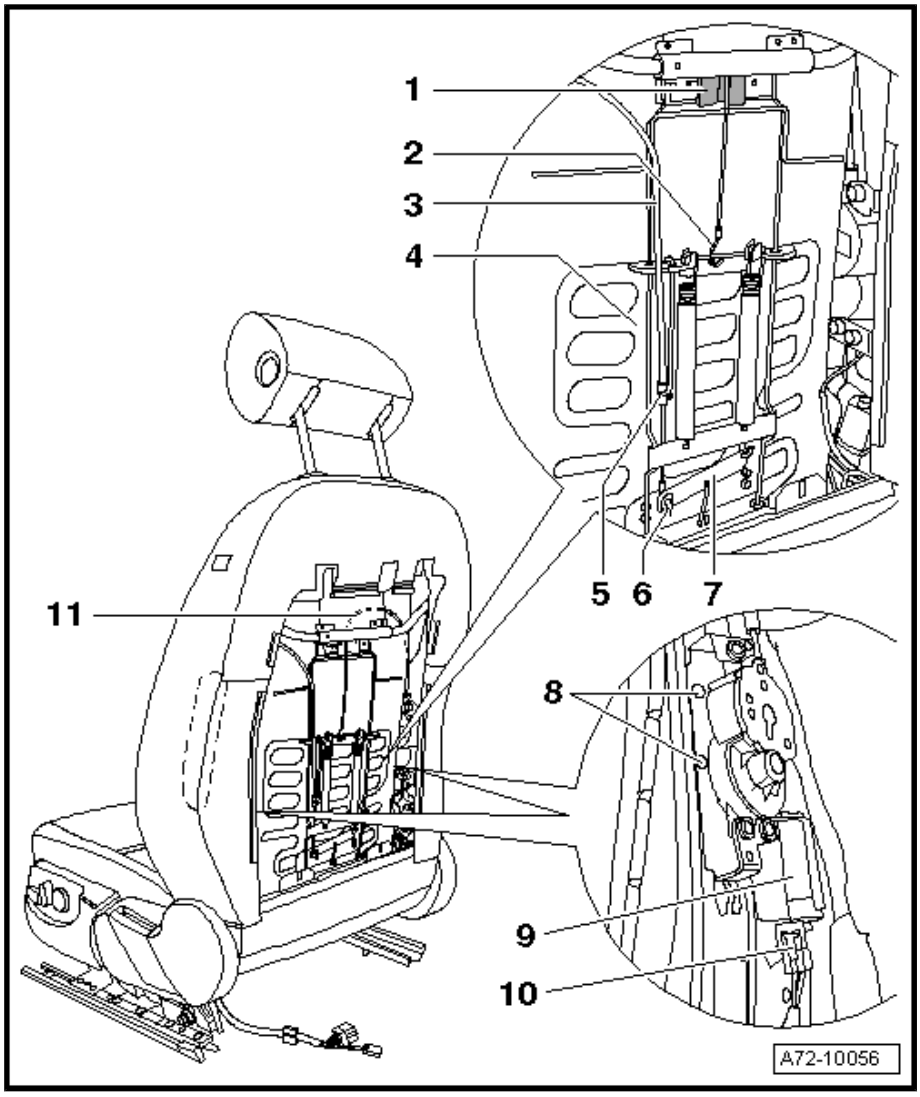
5 - Support

6 - Hook

7 - Retaining plate

8 - Rivets (4x)

9 - Motors for lumbar support adjustment (2x)



♦ Removing

– Remove seat ⇒ page 332 .
– Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 368 .

When removing lumbar support height adjustment motor:

– Remove side airbag ⇒ page 141 .
– Unplug connector -10-.
– Drill out rivets -8- (2x) on outside.
– Disengage Bowden cable -3- from retaining plate -7- at hook -6-.
– Thread Bowden cable -3- out of support -5-.

When removing lumbar support adjustment motor:

– Unplug connector -10-.
– Drill out rivets -8- (2x) on outside.
– Disengage Bowden cable -11- from four-way lumbar support -4- at hook -2-.
– Disengage Bowden cable -11- from retainer -1-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

10 - Connectors (2x)

11 - Bowden cable for lumbar support adjustment

1.28 Removing and installing four-way lumber support (new version) - vehicles up to 11/2006

Copyright by AUDI AG. Duplicating for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753 A-

1 - Backrest padding

2 - Lumbar support

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Item 4 (page 373)

3 - Clamp

4 - Frame for lumbar support

❑ Removing:

– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 368 .

– Use screwdriver to prise out fastening strips -10- (4x).

– Place foil between padding and outer backrest frame as protection against metal particles.

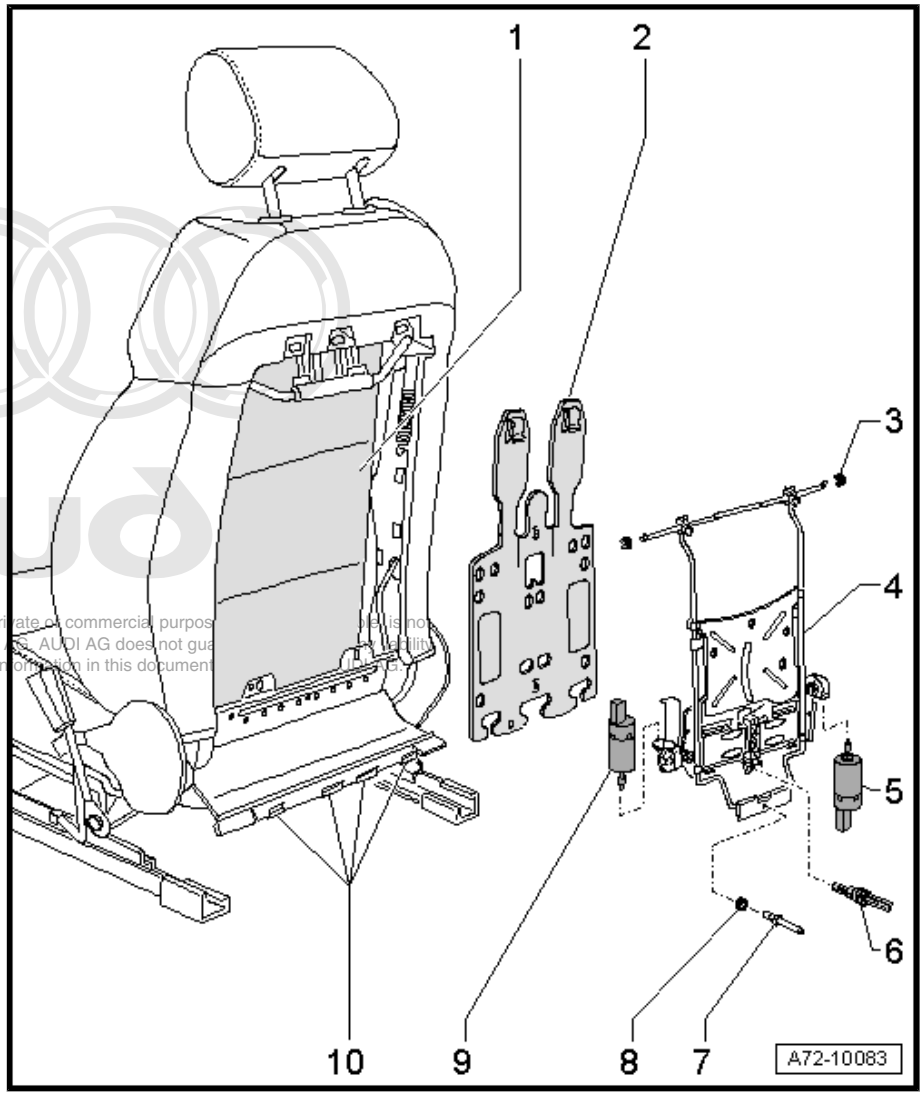
– Drill out rivet -7-.

– Disengage lumbar support frame -4- at top left and right from outer backrest frame.

– Unplug electrical connectors at control motors -5- and -9- for lumbar support.

– Unfasten Velcro strip between lumbar support -2- and backrest padding -1-.

– Disengage lumbar support at top of lumbar support frame.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpos... is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gua... with respect to the correctness of information in this document...

– Take out lumbar support.

❑ Installing:

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Place plastic foil on velcro strips of lumbar support. Secure plastic foil in position at lumbar support ⇒ page 374 .

– Ensure that lumbar support is fixed in position with transport lock or a suitable pin at lumbar support frame ⇒ page 374 .

– Position lumbar support frame behind outer backrest frame and engage top left and right of lumbar support frame in mounting on backrest.

– Rivet bottom of lumbar support frame to outer backrest frame. IMPORTANT: Place a plastic washer between lumbar support frame and outer backrest frame ⇒ page 374 .

– Pull out plastic foil between backrest padding and lumbar support.

– Fasten Velcro strip of lumbar support to backrest padding.

– Plug in electrical connectors at lumbar support height adjustment motors.

5 - Control motor for lumbar support height adjustment

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 375

6 - Assembly lock

For centralising lumbar support in lumbar support frame

7 - Rivet

- ❑ Set rivet using special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753 A-
- ❑ A plastic washer must be inserted between lumbar support and backrest frame before riveting on

8 - Plastic washer

9 - Control motor for lumbar support longitudinal adjustment

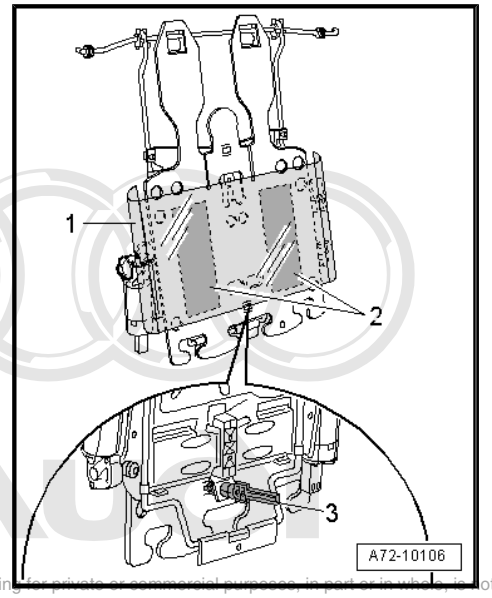
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 375

10 - Fastening strips

Securing lumbar support using assembly lock and attaching plastic foil to lumbar support

– Place plastic foil -1- over Velcro strips -2- of lumbar support. Secure plastic foil in position at lumbar support.

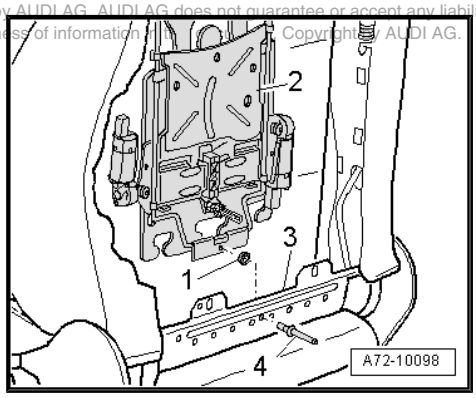
– Make sure that the lumbar support is secured to the lumbar support frame using either the assembly lock -3- or a suitable pin.



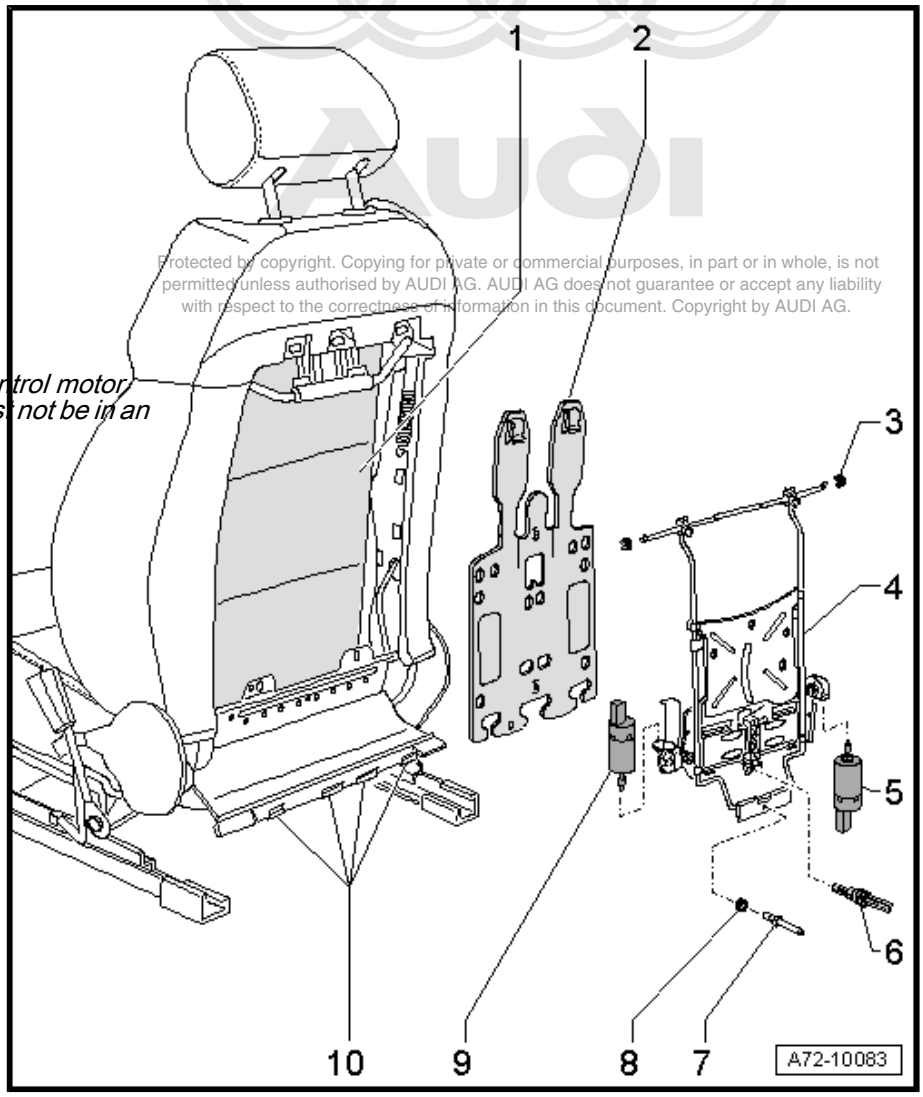
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Riveting four-way lumbar support to backrest frame

– Before attaching rivet -4- you must place a plastic washer -1- between lumbar support -2- and outer backrest frame -3-.



1.29 Removing and installing control motors for lumbar support adjustment - new version



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Backrest padding

2 - Lumbar support

3 - Clamp

4 - Frame for lumbar support

5 - Control motor for lumbar support height adjustment

❑ Removing:

Note

When renewing the control motor, the lumbar support must not be in an end stop position.

– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 368 .

– Unplug electrical connector ⇒ page 376 .

– Release retaining bracket and take control motor out downwards ⇒ page 376 .

❑ Installing:

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– The control motor can only be installed in one position.

6 - Centring pin

For centralising lumbar support in lumbar support frame

7 - Rivet

8 - Plastic washer

9 - Control motor for lumbar support longitudinal adjustment

❑ Removing:

Note

When renewing the control motor the lumbar support must not be in an end stop position.

– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 368 .

– Unplug electrical connector ⇒ page 376 .

– Release retaining bracket and lift out control motor ⇒ page 376 .

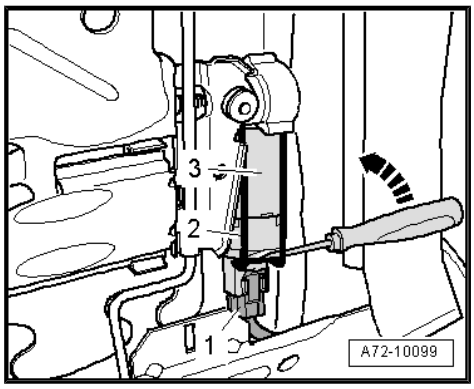
❑ Installing:

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– The control motor can only be installed in one position.

10 - Fastening strips

Unplugging electrical connector and releasing retaining bracket at control motor



Note

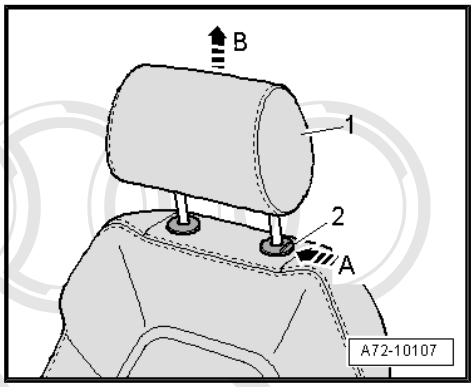
When renewing the control motor the lumbar support must not be in an end stop position.

– Unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Use a screwdriver to release retaining bracket -2- and take out control motor -3-.

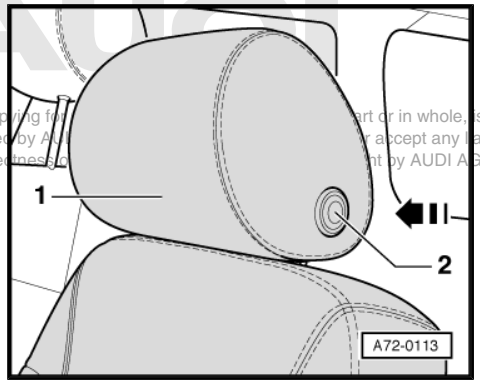
1.30 Removing and installing head restraints with slide-in locking mechanism

Removing

– Press and hold release button -2- in direction of -arrow A- and pull head restraint -1- out upwards as far as possible -arrow B-.



– Press in release button -2- on head restraint -1- as far as it will go -arrow-.
– Keep pressing the release button in and push the head restraint down as far as possible on the posts.
– Take the head restraint out of the head restraint guides.

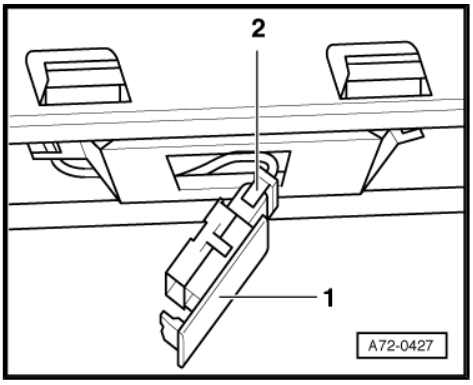


Protected by copyright. Copying for ... part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by A... accept any liability with respect to the correctness ... by AUDI AG.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

1.31 Removing and installing rear footwell light



♦ Removing

– Press out rear footwell light -1- from behind.

– Unplug connector -2-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

1.32 Exploded view of front seat (standard seat) without active head restraint system - vehicles from 11/2006 onwards

Note

- *With the introduction of the backrest without active head restraint system, the active head restraint is no longer installed.*
- *The upper section of the outer backrest frame has been modified for the backrest without active head restraint system.*
- *The head restraints for the backrest without active head restraint system do not have the angle adjustment feature.*
- *The upper back section of the padding has been adapted to suit the modified outer backrest frame.*
- *The method of attaching the four-way lumbar support to the upper section of the outer backrest frame was modified with the introduction of the backrest without active head restraint system.*
- *The steps for removing and installing the longitudinal and height adjustment motors of the four-way lumbar support are similar to those for removing and installing the motors on the backrest with active head restraint system.*
- *The backrest covers are identical for seats with and without active head restraint system.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

For safety reasons, do not use the head restraints of seats with active head restraint system for seats without active head restraint system.

Exploded view of front seat without active head restraint system
⇒ page 436

1.33 Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing head restraint

Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing head restraint ⇒ page 376

1.34 Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing backrest cover panel

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing backrest cover panel ⇒ page 368

1.35 Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing four-way lumbar support

Removal and installation procedures of four-way lumbar support on a standard front seat are similar to those for a front seat with seat memory and a front seat with electric adjustment.

Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing four-way lumbar support ⇒ page 372

1.36 Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing lumbar support adjustment motors

Motors for:

- Lumbar support longitudinal adjustment -V125- / -V126- , removing and installing ⇒ page 375
- Lumbar support height adjustment -V129- / -V130- , removing and installing ⇒ page 375

1.37 Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing head restraint guides

Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing head restraint guides ⇒ page 590

1.38 Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing cover with padding

Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing cover with padding ⇒ page 574

1.39 Backrest without active head restraint system - detaching cover from padding

Backrest without active head restraint system - detaching cover from padding ⇒ page 576

2 Front seat (memory seat, seat with electric adjustment)

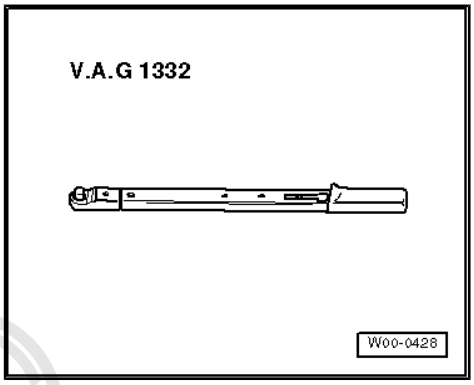
Note

- *From 07.06 onwards, the conventional method of routing the wiring harness ⇒ page 384 to the connector point beneath the front seat is replaced by modular wire routing ⇒ page 338 .*
- *Modular wire routing has not been implemented for all country-specific versions.*
- *Check the type of front seats and the vehicle model and perform the repair work accordingly.*
- *Note that there are two possible modular wire routing versions, »Modular Light« and »Modular« ⇒ page 339 .*

2.1 Removing and installing front seat (seat with seat memory, seat with electric adjustment)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench -V.A.G 1332-

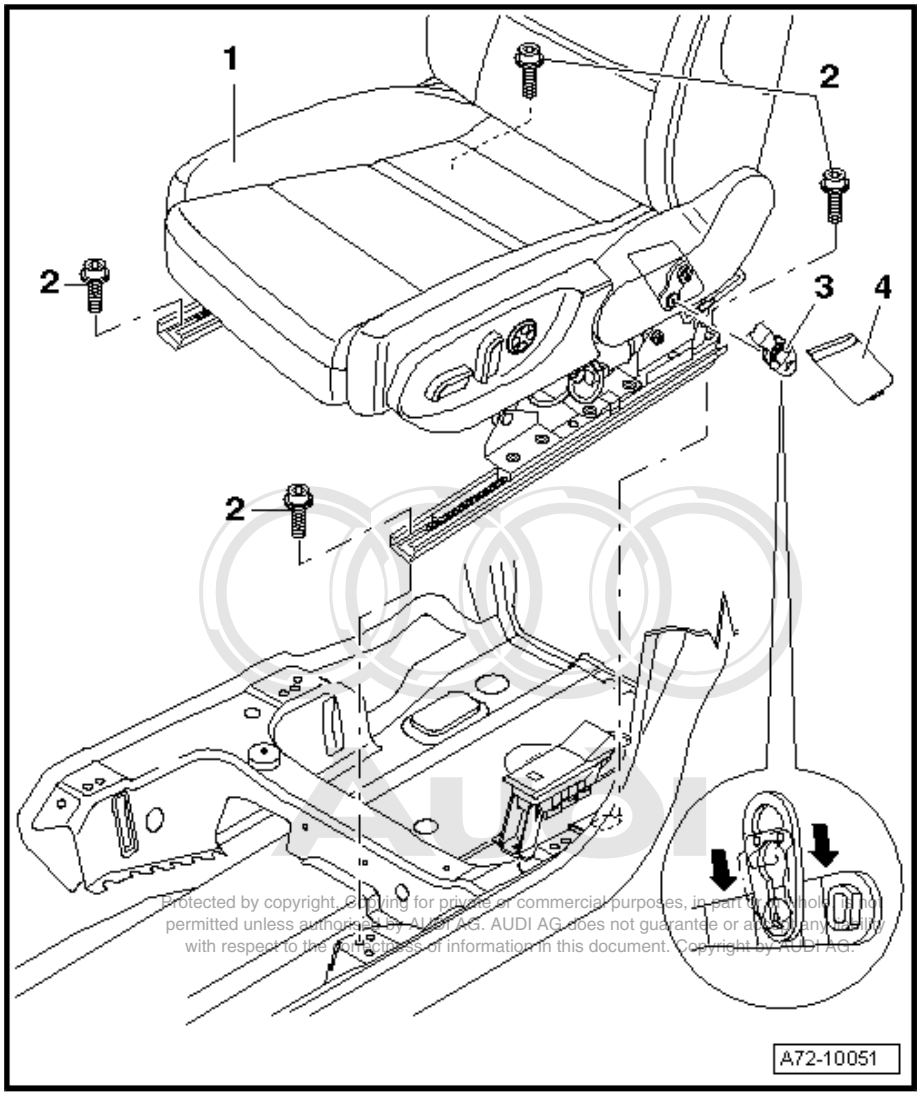


Note

Obtain radio code before disconnecting battery.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Front seat



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removing

WARNING

Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

– Move front seat -1- as far upwards and to rear as possible.
– Pull up and detach assembly cover -4-.
– Pull down belt end fitting -3- in direction of arrow and detach.
– Remove bolts -2- (2x) at front.
– Move seat forwards.
– Remove bolts -2- (2x) at rear.
– Disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .

WARNING

Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Tilt front seat -1- backwards.
– Unplug connectors ⇒ page 384 .
– Connect airbag adapter ⇒ page 385 .
– Lift front seat -1- out of vehicle with the assistance of a second mechanic.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Install front seat before detaching airbag adapter -VAS 6036- ⇒ page 385 .

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Plug in connectors at couplings of connector point in floor ⇒ page 384 .

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .

– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 - Bolts (4x)

❑ Tightening torque: 50 Nm

3 - Belt end fitting

4 - Assembly cover

2.2 Removing front seat if control unit or seat longitudinal adjustment motor are defective

Note

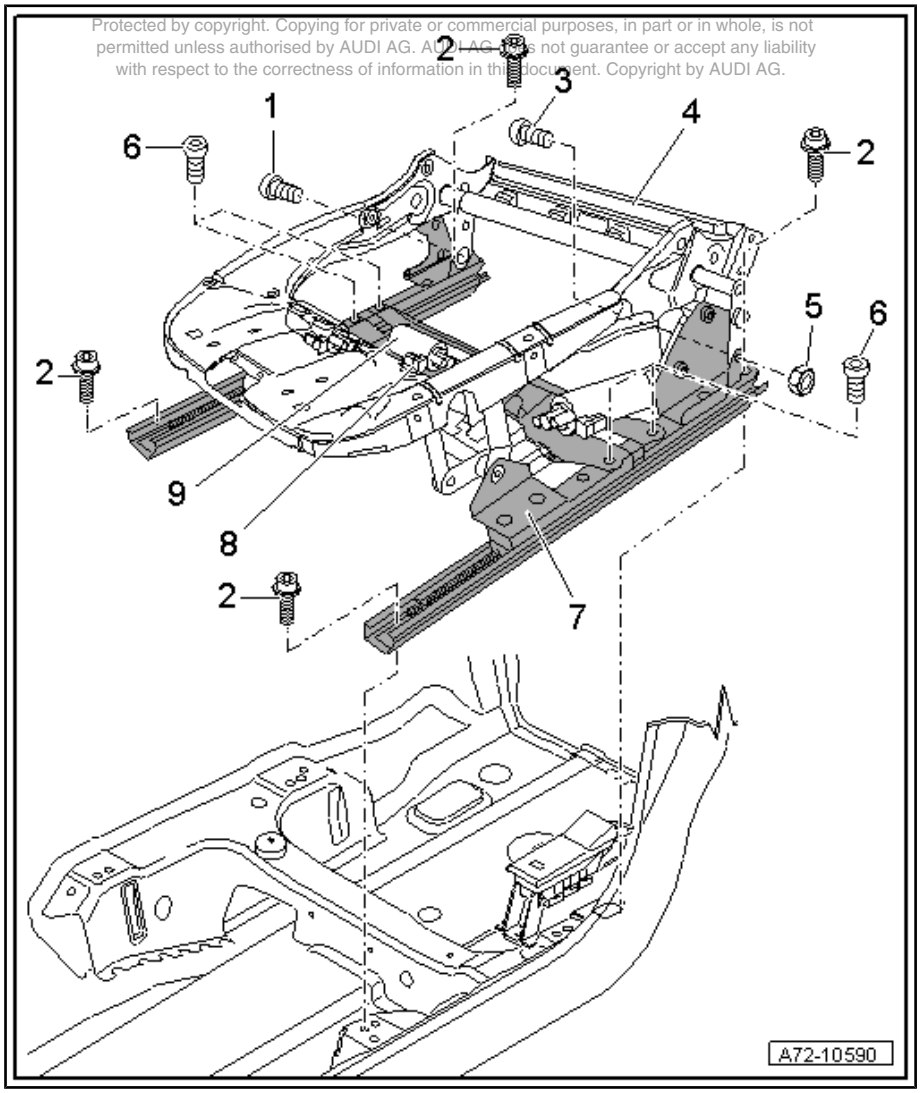
- *If possible move seat upwards.*
- *Obtain radio code before disconnecting battery.*
- *For greater clarity, the illustration shows the seat pan without padding or backrest.*

Caution

Check electrical/electronic components and wiring before loosening bolts -6-.

After slackening bolts -6-, lower seat pan frame -7- including seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288- with cross member -9- must be renewed.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 427
- ❑ Always clean threaded holes for bolts (using a tap for example)

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 379
- ❑ 4x

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 427
- ❑ For nut ⇒ Item 5 (page 383)

4 - Upper seat pan frame

♦ Removing

WARNING

Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

– Unscrew bolt -1-.
– Remove nut -5- and bolt -3-.
– Fold seat forwards. If necessary remove steering wheel ⇒ page 131 .

WARNING

Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

Note

To avoid unnecessary repair costs, check the electrical/electronic components and wiring before removing the seat any further.

– Perform the following checks:

- Check fuse ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations
- Check voltage at connector point and perform Fault Finding if necessary ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations
- Check voltage at control unit ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations
- Check voltage at seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288- ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations

– Renew fuse if it is defective ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

– Repair or renew wire if there is no voltage at connector point ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

Copyright by AUDI AG. Reproduction of this document or parts thereof is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– If control unit is defective it must be renewed ⇒ page 400 .

– If seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288- is defective, renew lower seat pan frame -7- ⇒ page 429 .

Further removal (only if seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288- defective):

– Disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .

– Remove bolts -6- (4x).

WARNING

Before removing seat disconnect battery earth strap ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

– Unplug connector -8-.

– Tilt front seat backwards.

– Move seat until bolts -2- (4x) are visible.

– Remove bolts -2- (4x).

– Unplug connectors ⇒ page 384 .

– Connect airbag adapter ⇒ page 385 .

– Lift front seat out of vehicle with the assistance of a second mechanic.

– Separate lower -7- and upper -4- seat pan frames ⇒ page 429 .

– Renew lower seat pan frame -7- with seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288- and cross member -9- ⇒ page 429 .

5 - Nut

❑ Always clean threaded holes for bolts (using a tap for example)

6 - Bolt

❑ 4x

❑ For attaching cross member to lower seat pan frame

7 - Lower seat pan frame

❑ Renewing ⇒ page 429

8 - Connector

9 - Seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288- with cross member

❑ After removing bolts ⇒ Item 6 (page 383) , renew lower seat pan frame with seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288- and cross member ⇒ page 429 .

♦ Installing

– Install front seat ⇒ page 379 .

2.3 Unplugging connectors

WARNING

1 - Front seat

2 - Connector for belt buckle sensor (black)

3 - Connector for seat heating (green)

4 - Connector for current supply (red)

5 - Connector for airbag (orange)

6 - Cover/cover panel

❑ For connector point

♦ Removing

– Tilt front seat -1- backwards.

Vehicles without modular wire routing up to 07.06

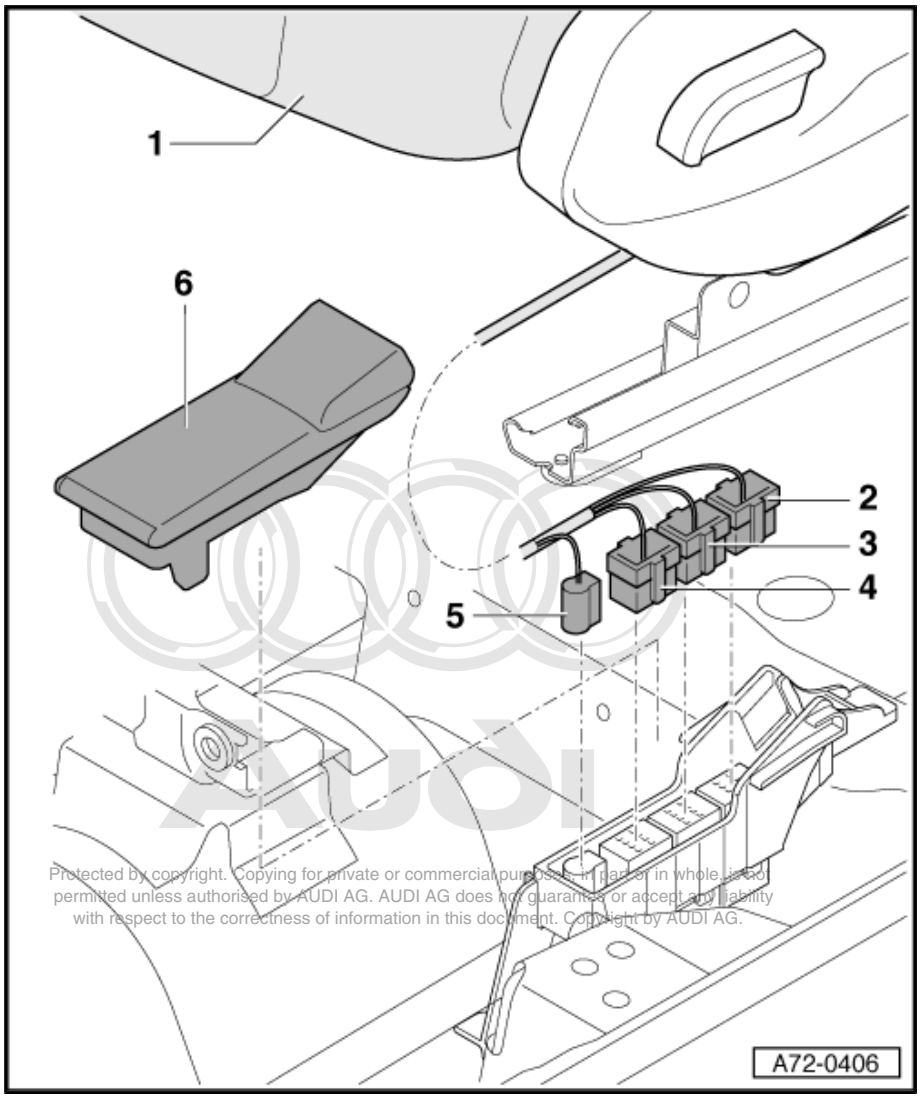
– Lift off cover for connector point -6-.

Vehicles with modular wire routing from 07.06 onwards

– Remove cover for connector point ⇒ page 340 .

All vehicles (continued)

– Press in tab at airbag connector -5- (tunnel side) and unplug airbag connector -5-.
– Press in tab at current supply connector -4- (tunnel side) and unplug current supply connector -4-.
– Press in lug at seat heating connector -3- (tunnel side) and unplug seat heating connector -3-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Vehicles with belt buckle sensor: Press in tab at belt buckle sensor connector -2- (tunnel side) and unplug belt buckle sensor connector -2-.
– Connect airbag adapter ⇒ page 385 .

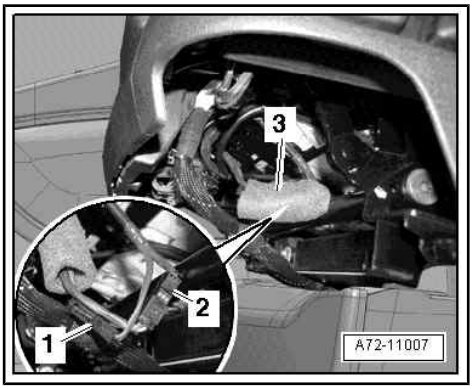
♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Vehicles with DVD player

– Push grommet -3- to the side.

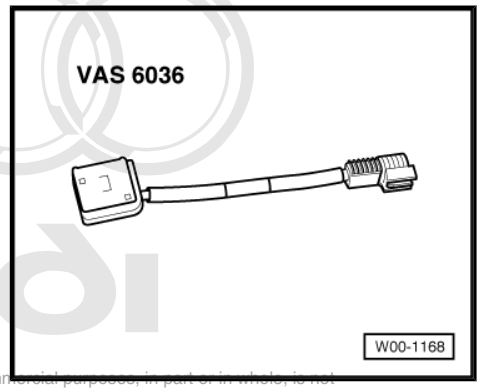
– Unplug electrical connectors -1- and -2- and move wiring harness clear.



2.4 Connecting airbag adapter -VAS 6036-

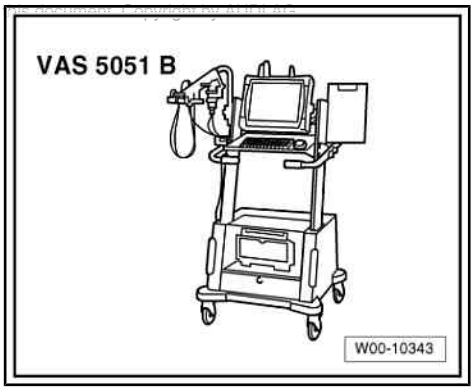
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Airbag adapter -VAS 6036-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B-



Note

Before disconnecting igniter and earth wires, the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate or body.

Caution

Leave airbag adapter -VAS 6036- connected to seat until seat has been re-installed.

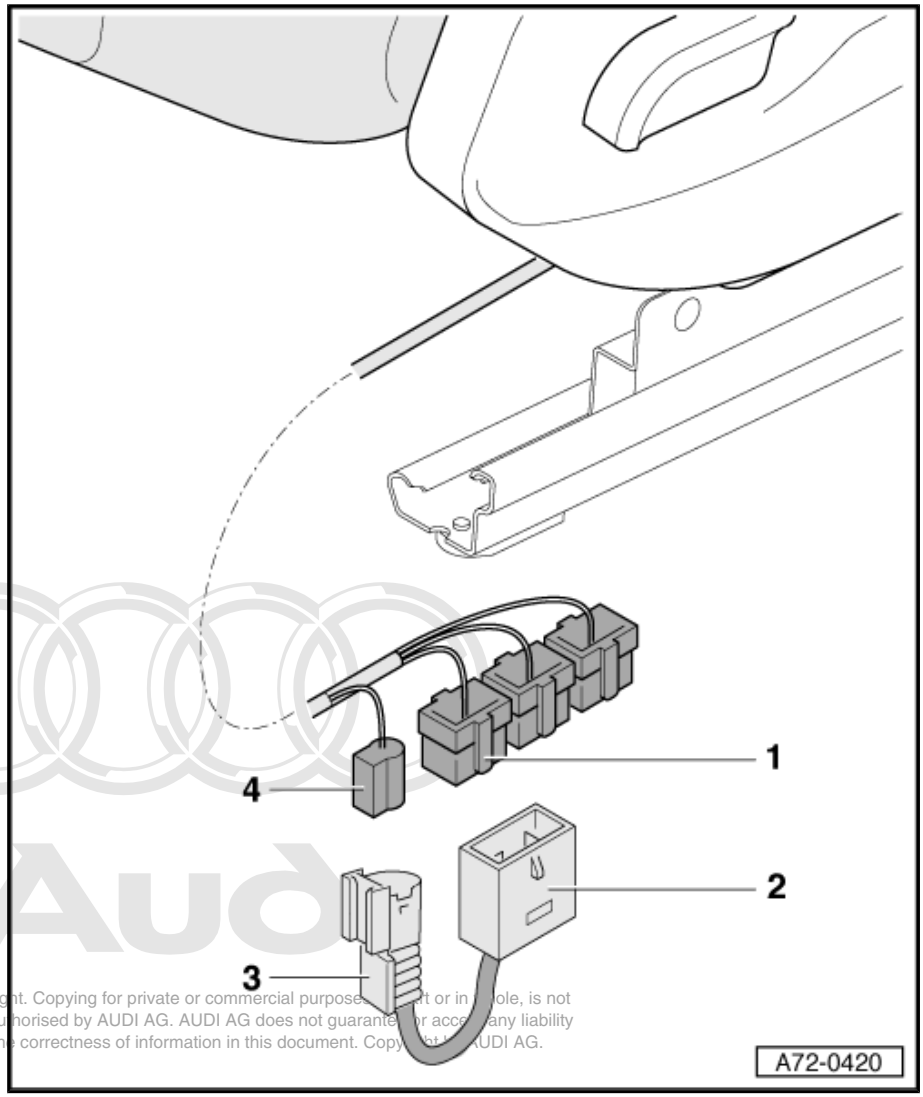
1 - Current supply connector, on seat wiring (red)

2 - Current supply connector, on adapter wiring (red)

3 - Side airbag connector, on adapter wiring (orange)

- Detach igniter and earth wires.
- Attach airbag connector -4- to airbag adapter connector -3-.

4 - Side airbag connector, on seat wiring (orange)

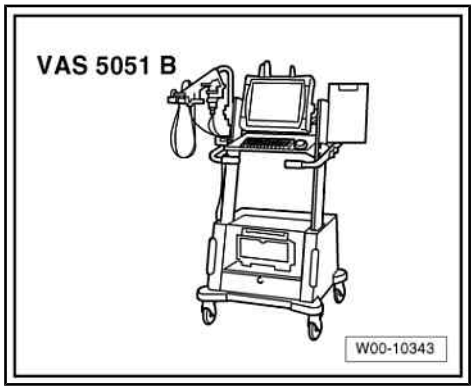


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

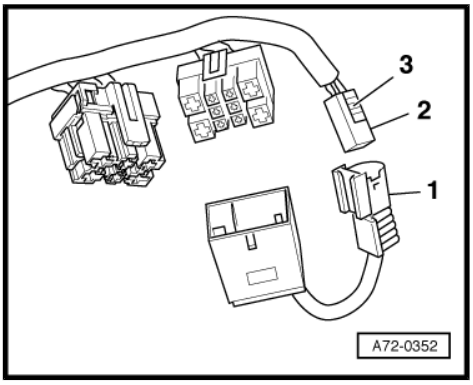
2.4.1 Disconnecting connector for side airbag

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B-



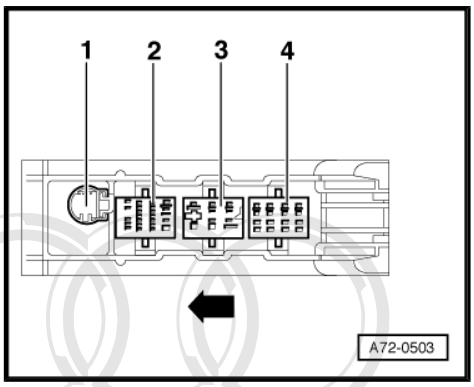
– Press retaining tab -3- of airbag connector -2- out of airbag adapter connector -1- and unplug airbag connector -2-.
– Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .



Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, use vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- to interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate event memory.

2.5 Connector assignment at connector point



Note

Arrow points in direction of travel.

1 - Side airbag
2 - Current supply
3 - Seat heating
4 - Belt buckle sensor

2.6 Exploded view of modular wire routing - vehicles from 07/2006 onwards

Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- *Modular wire routing is not implemented for all country-specific versions.*
- *Check the type of front seats and the vehicle model and perform the repair work accordingly.*
- *Note that there are two possible modular wire routing versions, »Modular Light« and »Modular« ⇒ page 339 .*

Exploded view of modular wire routing ⇒ page 338

2.7 Modular wire routing versions

This section explains the differences between the »Modular Light« and »Modular« routing options.

Modular wire routing versions ⇒ page 339

2.8 Modular wire routing with corrugated tube on front seat

The following description contains the steps required for and notes on the removal and installation of the corrugated tube and wiring.

Modular wire routing with corrugated tube on front seat ⇒ page 340

2.9 Removing and installing seat rail covers

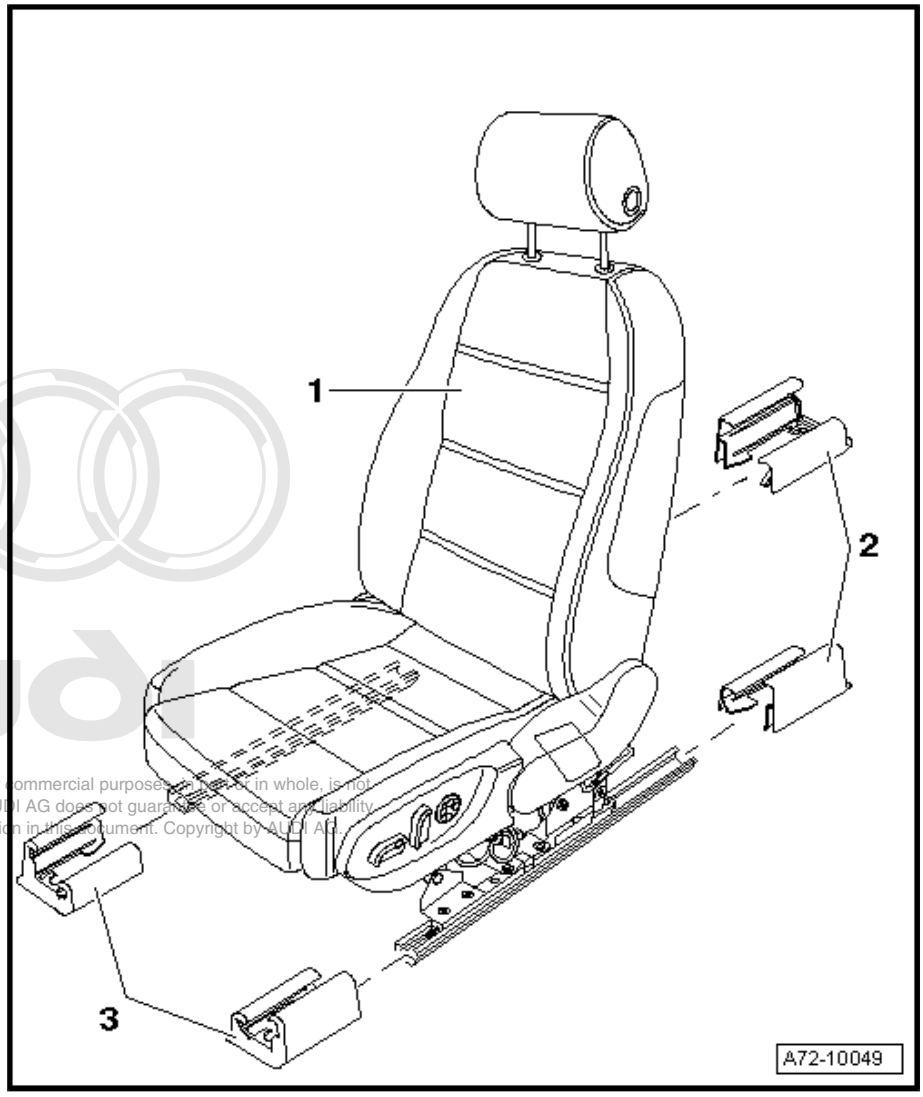
1 - Front seat

2 - Seat rails covers (rear; 2x)

- ♦ Removing
  - – Move front seat -1- into half-way position.
  - – Remove seat ⇒ page 379 .
  - – Working from below, lever off covers for seat rails -2- and -3- on inside of seat rails.
  - – Lever off covers for seat rails on outside of seat rails.
  - – Detach covers for seat rails -2- and -3-, keeping them as straight as possible.
- ♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

3 - Seat rail covers (front; 2x)

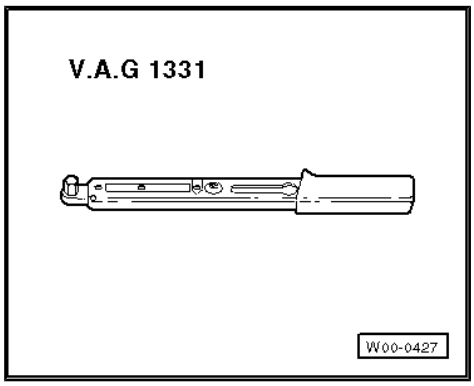


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

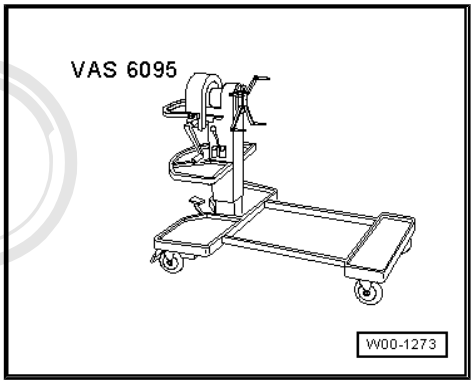
2.10 Removing and installing front seat backrest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1331-

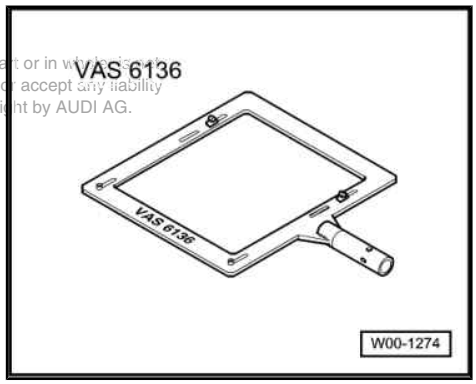


- Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



- Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



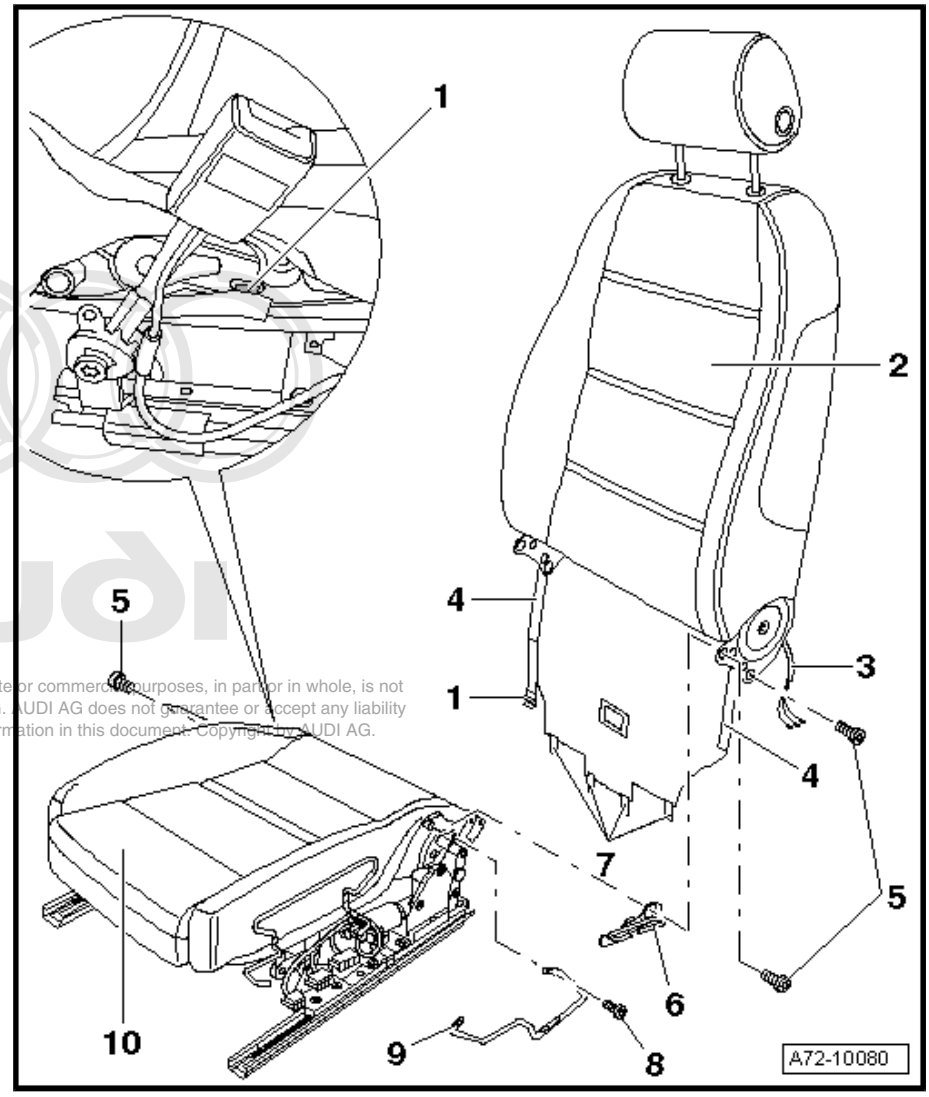
1 - Fastening strip

2 - Backrest

♦ Removing

> **WARNING**
>
> ***Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .***
>
> ***Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– Remove seat ⇒ page 379 .
– Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
– Remove side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 392 .
– Remove side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 395 .
– Disengage fastening strip -1- from seat pan -10-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Vehicles without modular wire routing up to 07.06

– Unplug electrical connectors and disconnect cable from spring mat ⇒ Item 1 (page 391) .

Vehicles with modular wire routing from 07.06 onwards

– Remove corrugated tube ⇒ page 340

All vehicles (continued)

– Unscrew bolt -8-.
– Swivel bracket -9- upwards.
– Remove bolts -5- (4x).
– Tilt backrest -1- forwards onto seat.
– Press padding to side and carefully pull wiring harness -3- out of seat pan -10-.
– Detach backrest -2-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

– Re-cut threads in backrest frame before inserting bolts -5- (4x).

– Always renew bolts -5- (4x).

– Secure footwell trim to spring mat of seat pan at lugs -7-.

– Seats with seat memory: After installing seat in vehicle, perform basic setting of backrest/seat.

3 - Wiring harness

4 - Fastening strips (2x)

5 - Bolt, self-locking

❑ 20 Nm

- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Always clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap

6 - Support

7 - Lug

- ❑ 4x

8 - Bolt

9 - Bracket

10 - Seat pan

1 - Connector for side airbag

- ❑ Vehicles without modular wire routing up to 07.06 only
- – Press lugs in on connectors -4-, -5- and -6- (left and right) and detach connectors.
- – Unplug connector for side airbag -1- ⇒ page 392 .
- – Detach clip -2-.
- – Release cables at cable tie clips -3-.

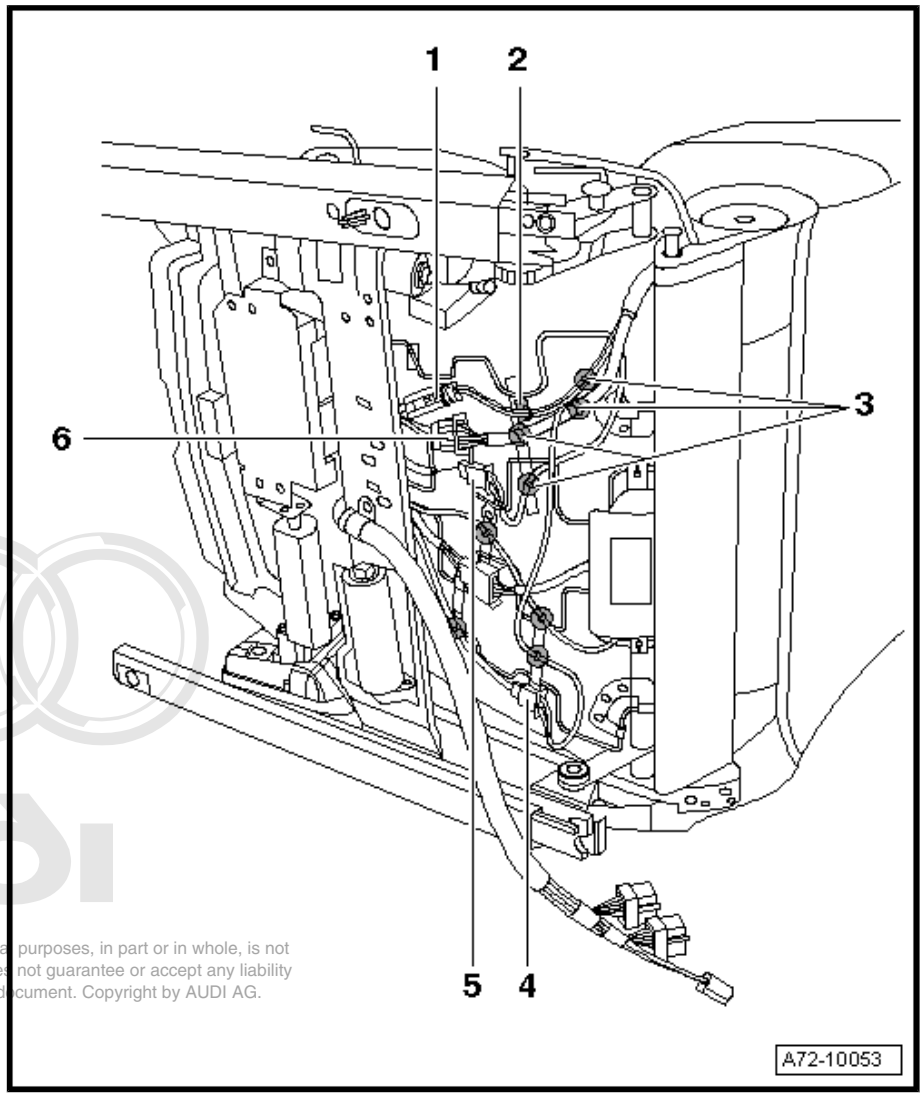
2 - Clip

3 - Cable tie clips

4 - Connector for side airbag - earth

5 - Connector for backrest heating

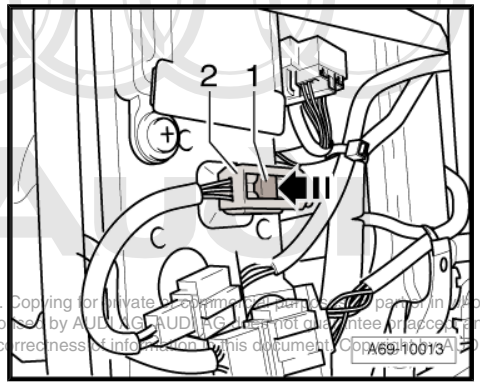
6 - Connector for four-way lumbar support



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Unplugging connector for side airbag - vehicles without modular wire routing up to 07.06

– Press retaining tab -1- in direction of arrow and unplug side airbag connector -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

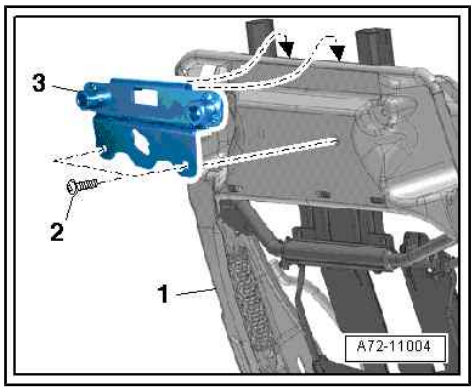
2.11 Removing and installing retaining plate for DVD player

Removing

– Remove cover and padding for front seat backrest ⇒ page 580 .

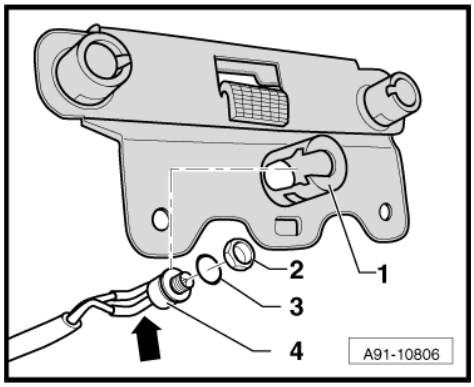
– Remove bolts -2-.

– Detach retaining plate -3- for screen bracket.



– Loosen nut -2-.

– Guide charger socket -4- with washer -3- out of mounting -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

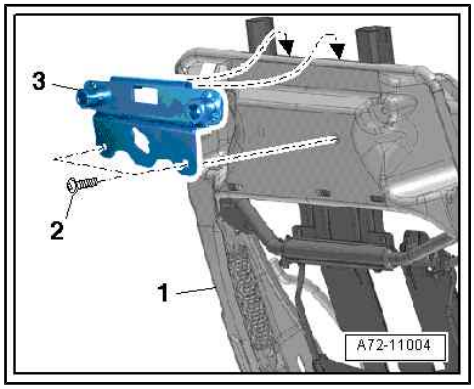
– Pull washer -3- upwards and slide charger socket -4- into mounting -1- from the side.

• Charger socket must be positioned centrally in mounting.

– Hold charger socket in this position and tighten nut.

– Engage hook of retaining plate in outer backrest frame -1- -arrows-.

– Tighten bolts.



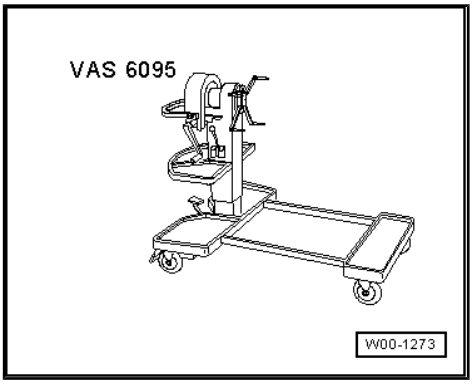
Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Charger socket to mounting	0.4
Retaining plate to outer backrest frame	6

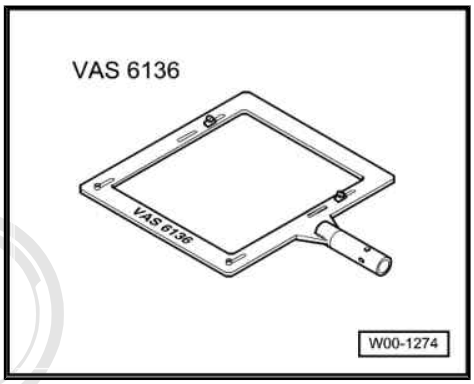
2.12 Removing and installing side trim (sill side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



- Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



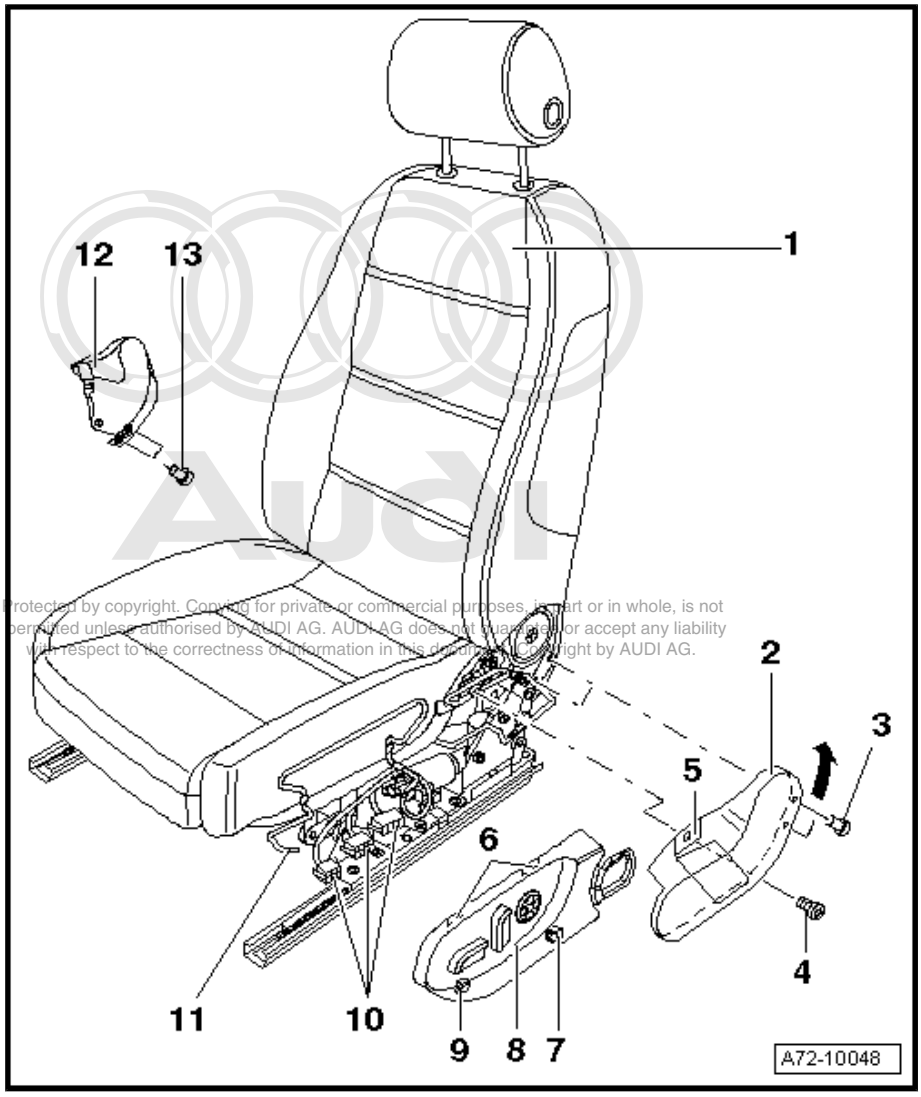
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Backrest

2 - Side trim (sill side; rear)

♦ Removing

- Remove seat ⇒ page 379 .
- Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
- Detach fastening strip of footwell trim from side trim ⇒ page 395 .
- Apply screwdriver to head of plastic rivets -3- (2x).
- Twist screwdriver to prise out plastic rivets -3- (2x).
- Unscrew bolt -4-.
- Disengage rear side trim -2- upwards at retainer -5-.
- Twist rear side trim -2- in direction of arrow to separate it from front side trim -8-.
- Slide side trim -8- forwards to disengage lug -7- from bracket -11-.
- Disengage front side trim -8- upwards at retainers -6- (2x).
- Open fastener -9-.
- Unplug connectors -10- (3x).
- Detach front side trim -8-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Insert fastening strip of footwell trim in retainers on side trim ⇒ page 395 .

3 - Plastic rivets (2x)

4 - Bolt

5 - Retainer

6 - Retainers (2x)

7 - Lug

8 - Side trim (sill side; front)

9 - Fastener

10 - Connector (3x)

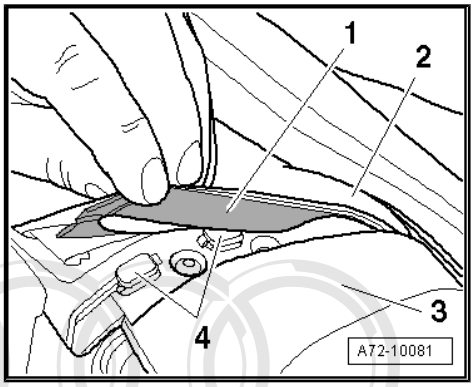
11 - Bracket

12 - Side trim (tunnel side)

13 - Plastic rivets (2x)

Disconnecting fastening strip of footwell trim

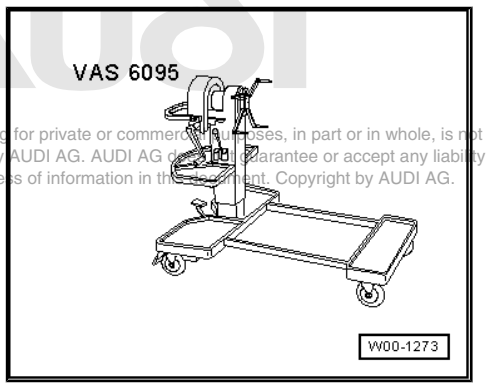
– Disengage fastening strip -1- of footwell trim -2- from retainers -4- (2x) on side trim -3-.



2.13 Removing and installing side trim (tunnel side)

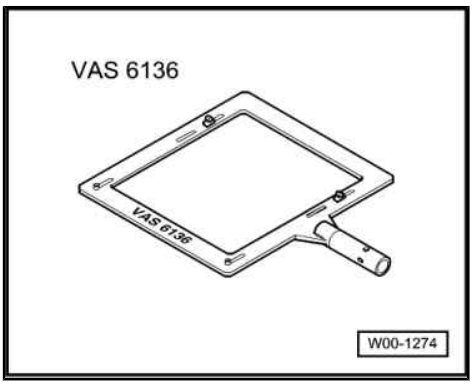
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



1 - Backrest

2 - Side trim (sill side; rear)

3 - Plastic rivets (2x)

4 - Bolt

5 - Retainer

6 - Retainers (2x)

7 - Lug

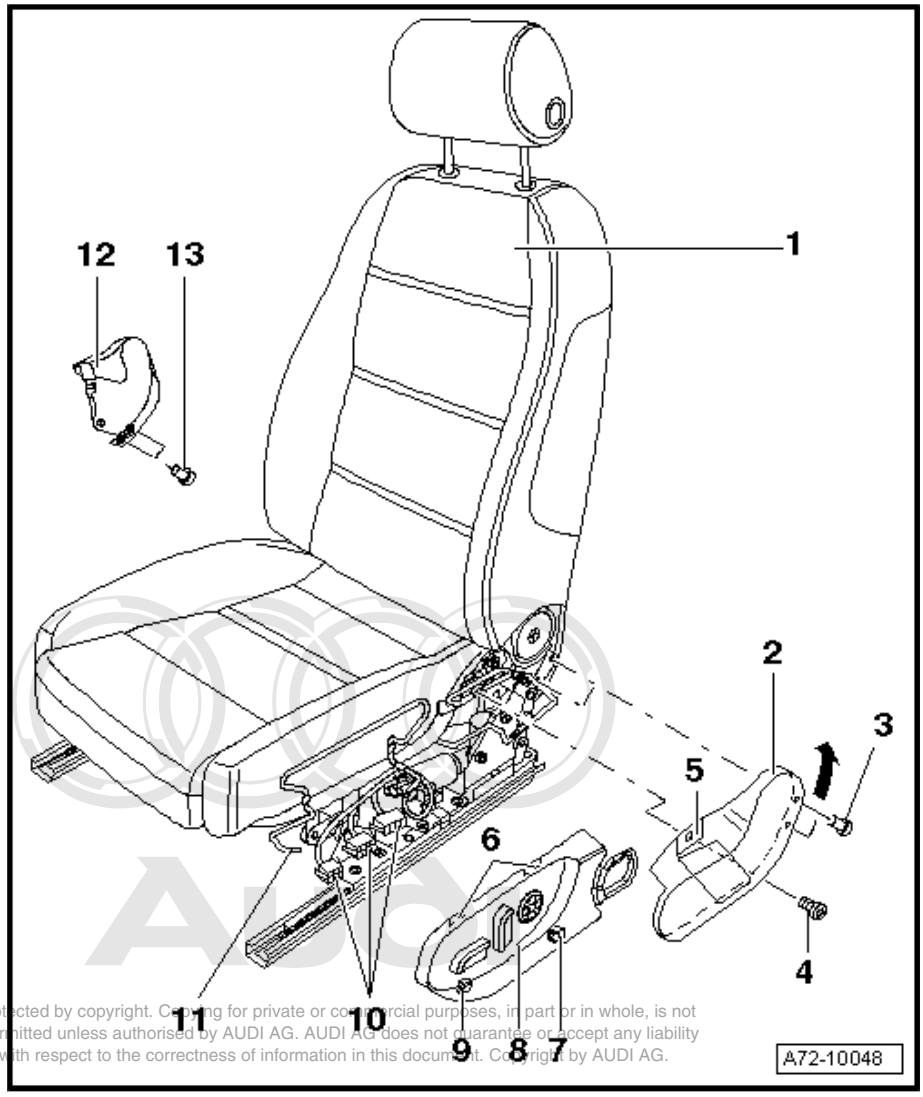
8 - Side trim (sill side; front)

9 - Fastener

10 - Connector (3x)

11 - Bracket

12 - Side trim (tunnel side)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removing

- Remove seat ⇒ page 379 .
- Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
- Detach fastening strip of footwell trim from side trim ⇒ page 396 .
- Apply screwdriver to head of plastic rivets -13- (2x).
- Twist screwdriver to prise out plastic rivets -13- (2x).
- Lift off side trim -12-.

♦ Installing

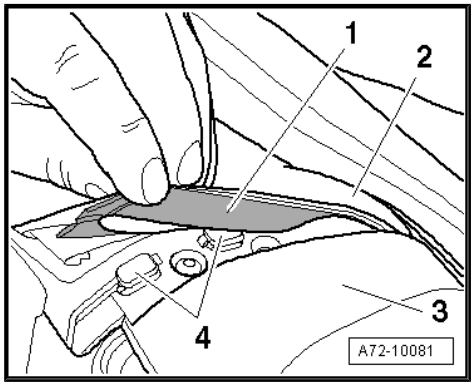
Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Insert fastening strip of footwell trim in retainers on side trim ⇒ page 396 .

13 - Plastic rivets (2x)

Disconnecting fastening strip of footwell trim

- Disengage fastening strip -1- of footwell trim -2- from retainers -4- (2x) on side trim -3-.



2.14 Renewing backrest

Note

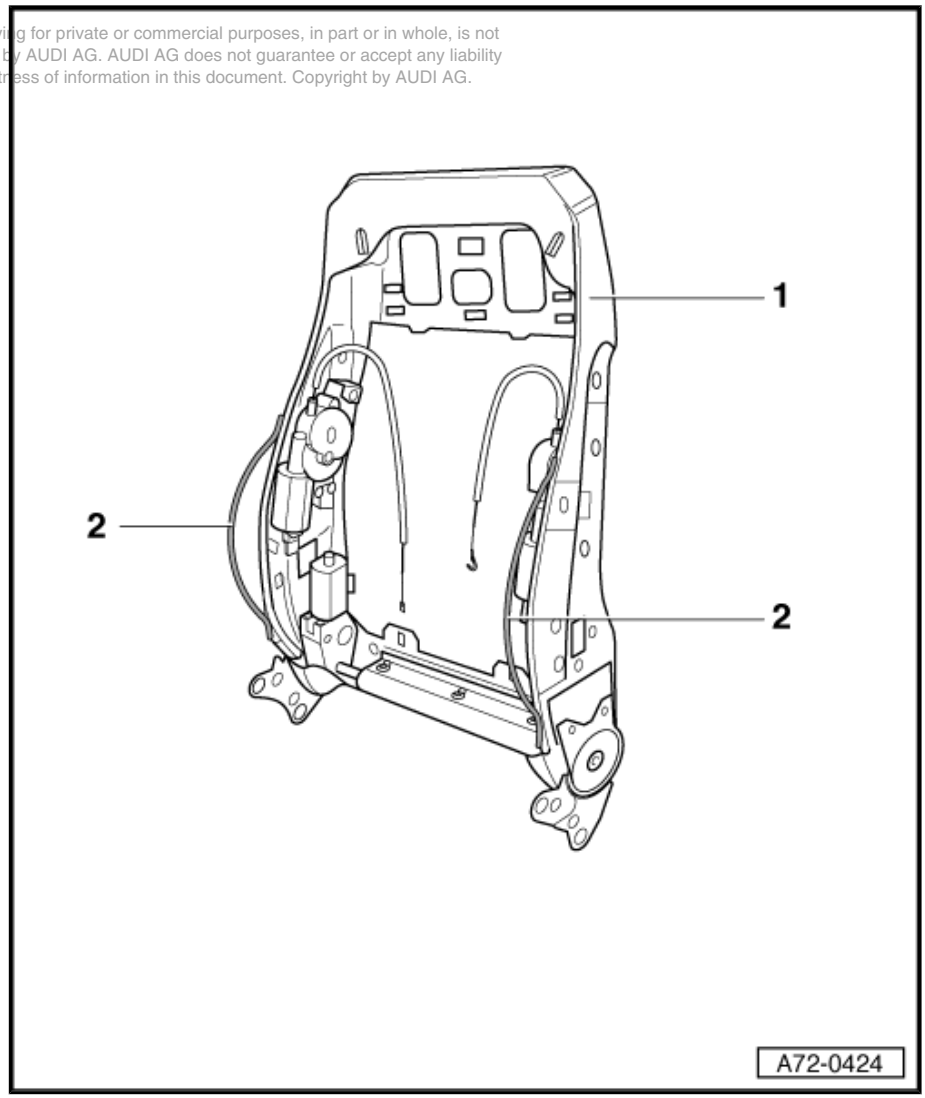
Only sports seat backrests are available as replacement parts. Convert the sports seat backrest if you require a backrest for a standard seat.

Released by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Backrest (sports seat)

- ♦ Conversion
  - – Detach support wires -2- (2x) from backrest (sports seat) -1-.
  - – Repair paint finish as specified in Workshop Manual ⇒ Audi Paintwork . If necessary, apply anti-corrosion treatment also as specified in Workshop Manual ⇒ Audi Paintwork .

2 - Support wires (2x)



2.15 Renewing seat pan

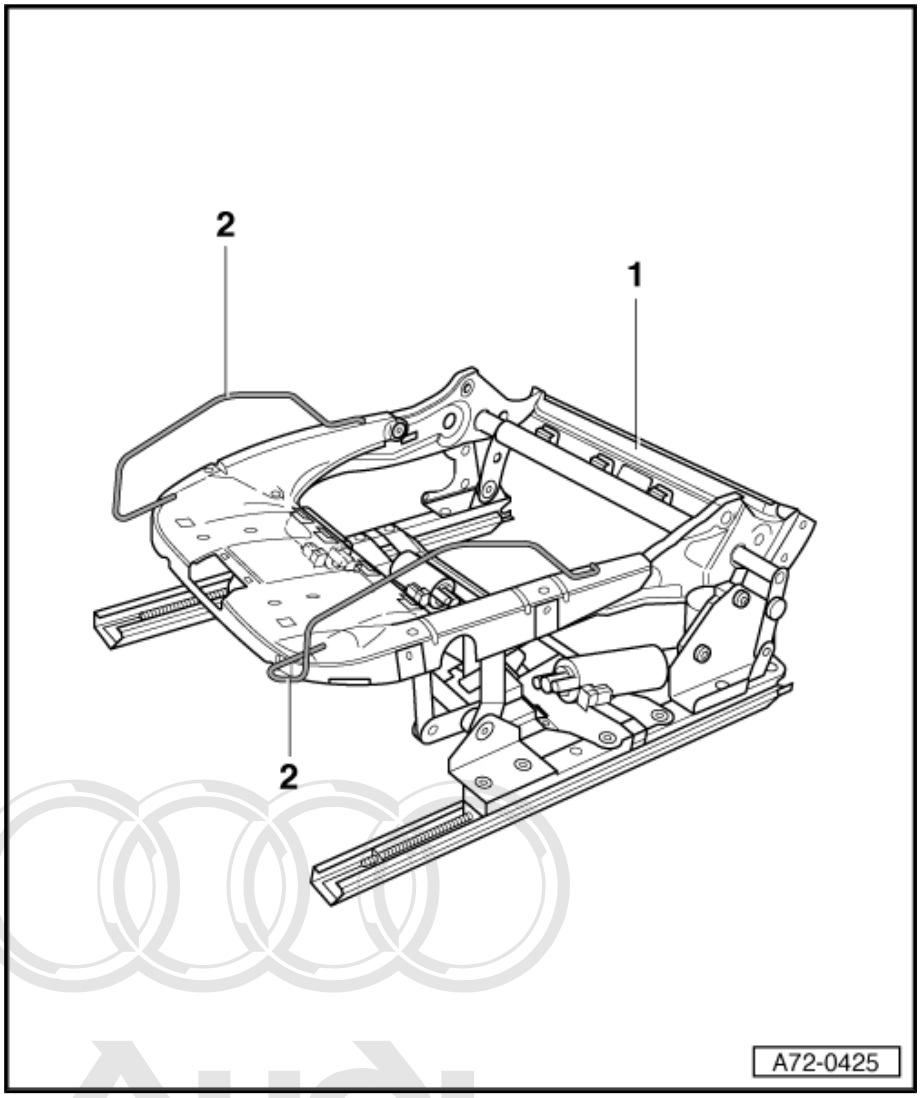
Note

Only sports seat pans are available as replacement parts. Convert the sports seat pan if you require a standard seat pan.

1 - Sports seat pan

- Conversion
  - Detach support wires -2- (2x) from sports seat pan -1-.
  - Repair paint finish as specified in Workshop Manual ⇒ Audi Paintwork . If necessary, apply anti-corrosion treatment also as specified in Workshop Manual ⇒ Audi Paintwork .

2 - Support wires (2x)

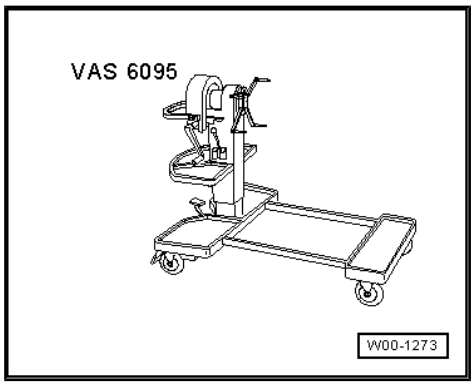


2.16 Removing and installing seat adjustment switch

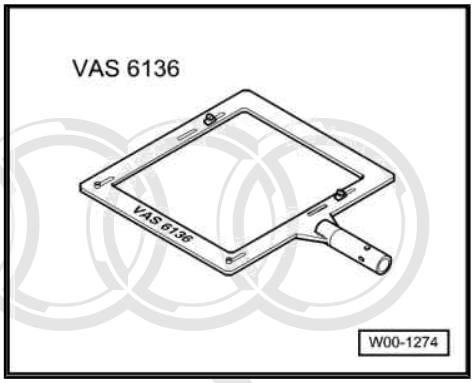
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



♦ Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



♦ Removing

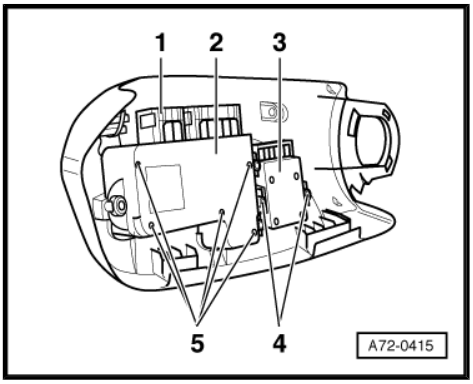
– Remove seat ⇒ page 379 .
– Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
– Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 392 .
– Unscrew bolts -5- (5x).
– Detach seat adjustment switch -2-.
– Take out printed circuit board with connectors -1-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

♦ Tightening torque for bolts -5-: 1.5 Nm

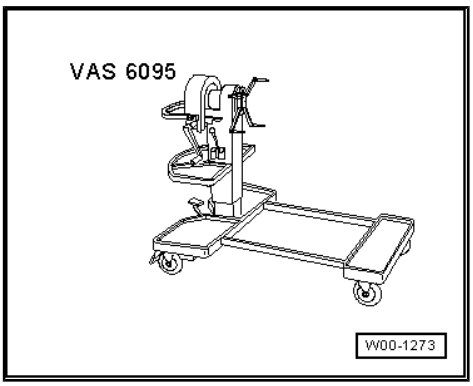
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



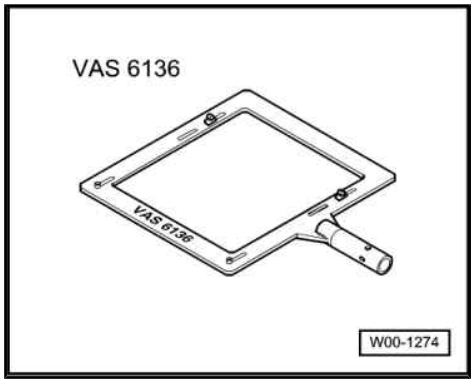
2.17 Removing and installing four-way lumbar support switch

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-

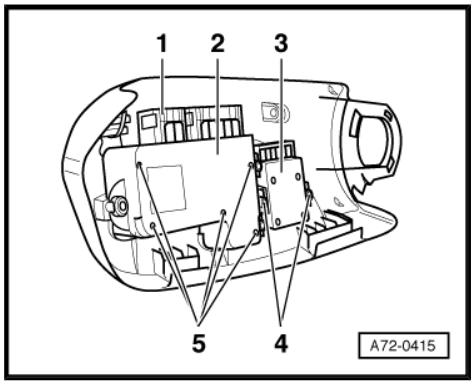


♦ Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



♦ Removing

– Remove seat ⇒ page 379 .
– Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
– Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 392 .
– Remove bolts -4- (2x).
– Detach four-way lumbar support -3-.



♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

♦ Tightening torque for bolts -4-: 0.4 Nm

2.18 Removing and installing seat adjustment control unit with memory function

Note

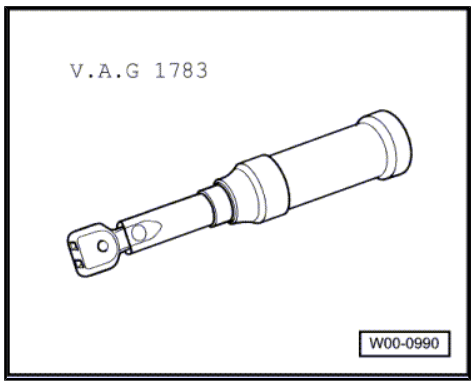
♦ *The control unit for the seat memory and electric seat adjustment is located under the seat.*

♦ *If control unit is defective, detach upper seat pan frame with backrest ⇒ page 381 .*

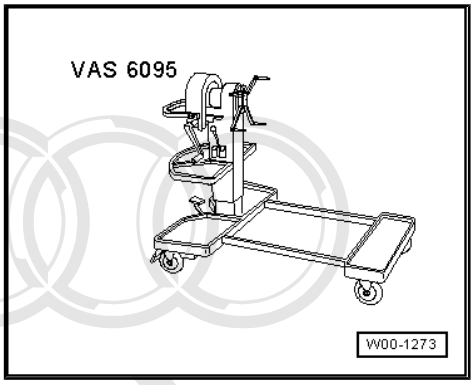
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

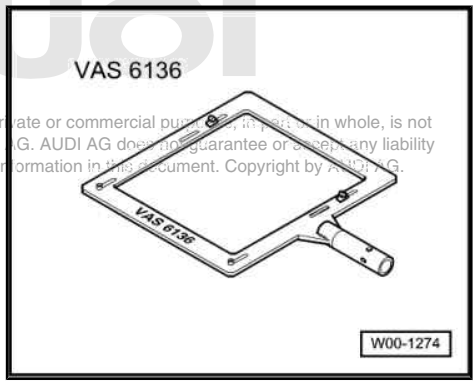
♦ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1783-



♦ Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



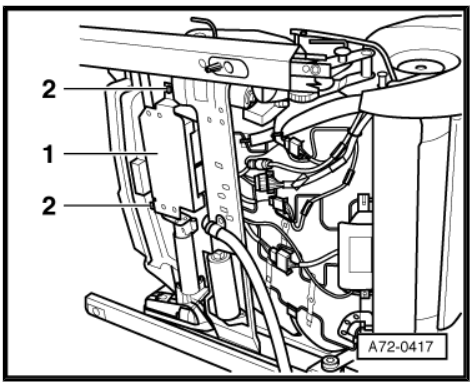
♦ Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removing

– Remove seat ⇒ page 379 .
– Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
– Remove bolts -2- (2x).
– Turn control unit -1- around.

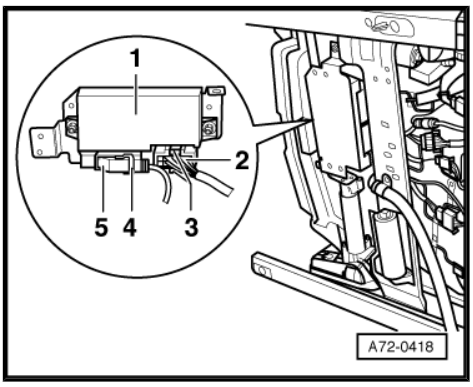


– Disengage retaining bracket -4- and unplug connector -5-.
– Press in retaining tabs -3- (2x) and unplug connector -2-.
– Detach control unit -1-.
– Detach control unit (left and right) from brackets (2x) at nuts (2x).

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

♦ Tightening torque for bolts -2-: 1.5 Nm



2.19 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment motor

Note

If motor is defective, lower seat pan frame must be renewed *⇒ page 429* .

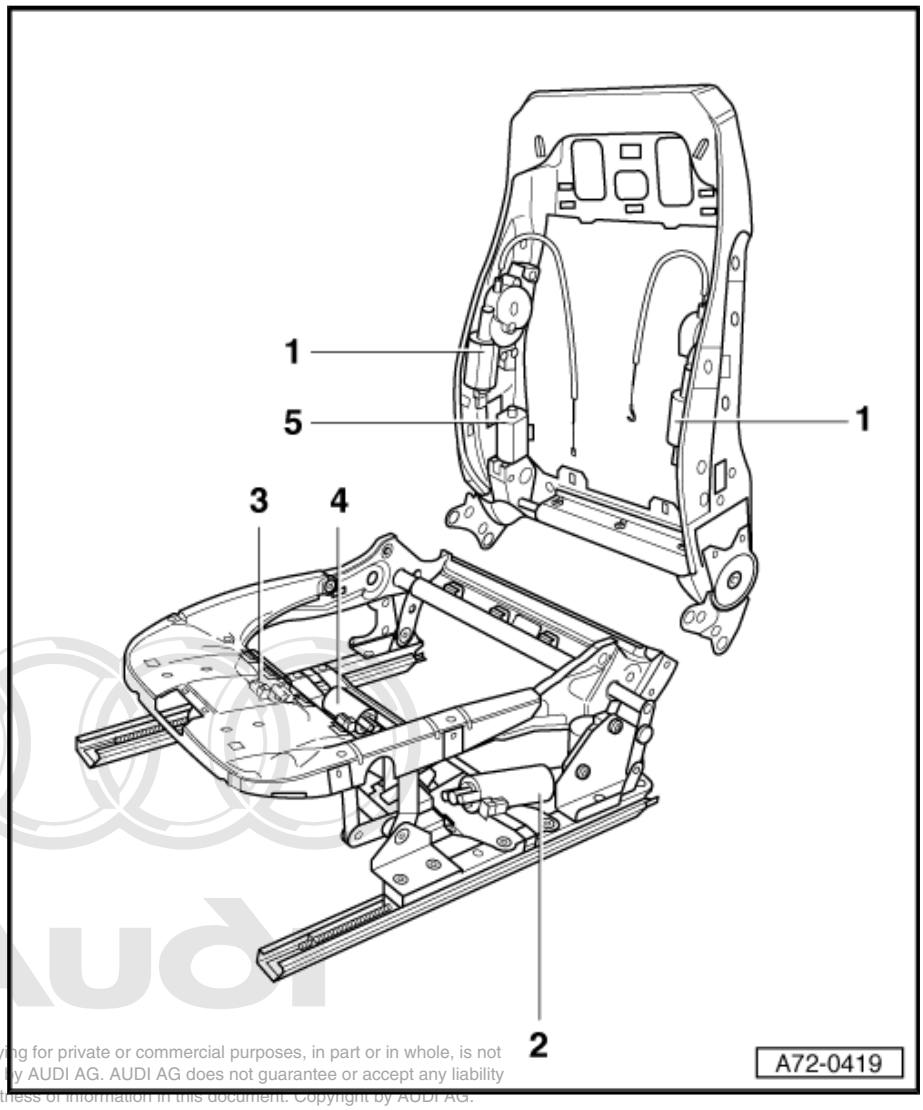
1 - Motors for lumbar support adjustment (2x)

2 - Seat height adjustment motor

3 - Seat rake adjustment motor

4 - Seat longitudinal adjustment motor

5 - Backrest adjustment motor



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.20 Exploded view - seat height adjustment motor

1 - Seat height adjustment motor

- ❑ Driver seat height adjustment motor -V245-
- ❑ Front passenger seat height adjustment motor -V246-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 403

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 18 Nm
- ❑ Renew

3 - Nut

- ❑ Clean threaded holes for self-locking bolts, using e.g. a thread tap.

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 18 Nm

5 - Lower seat pan frame

6 - Seat pan

7 - Bolt

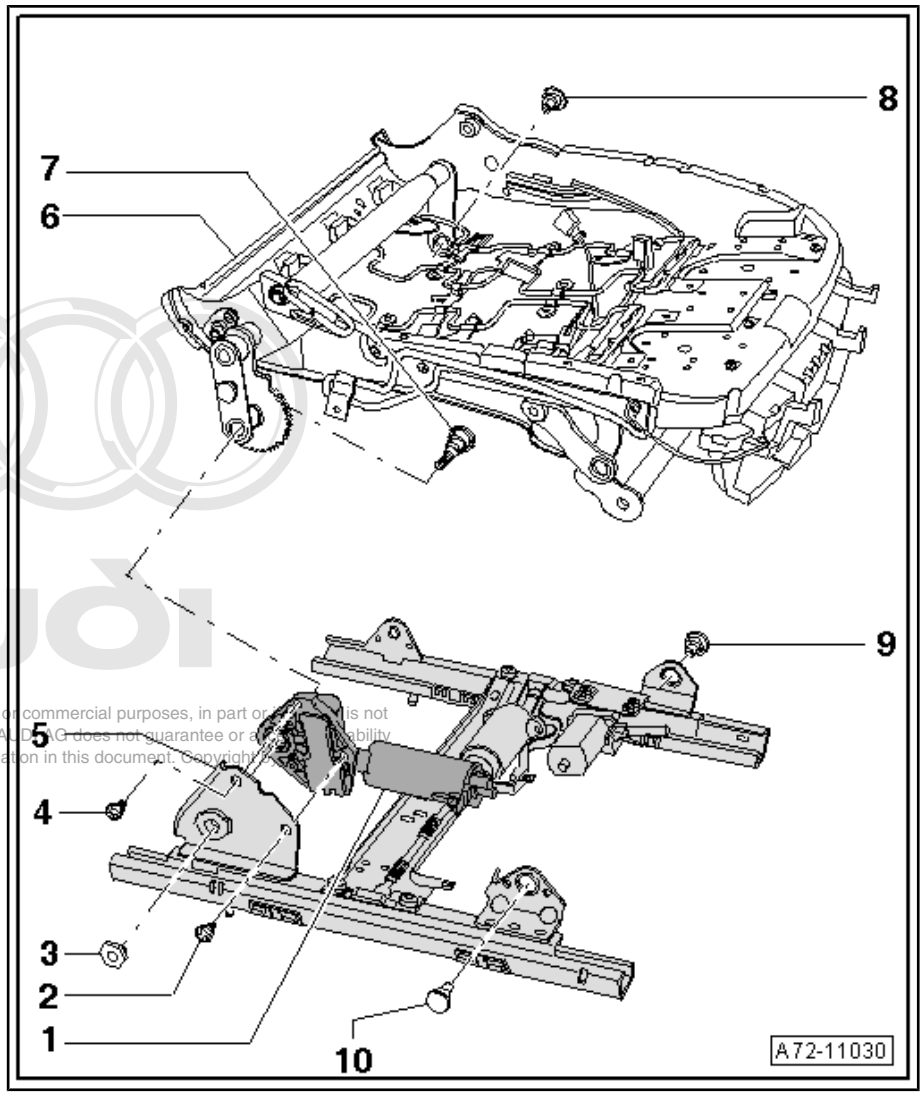
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 5 (page 428)

8 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 1 (page 428)
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for self-locking bolts, using e.g. a thread tap.

9 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 1 (page 428)
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for self-locking bolts, using e.g. a thread tap.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

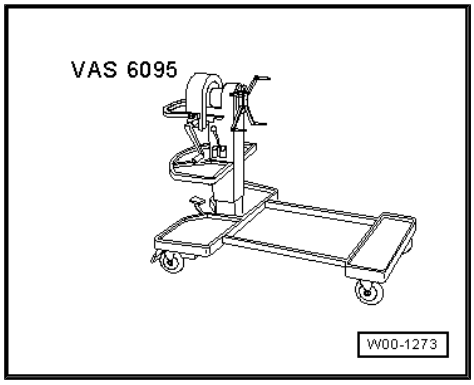
10 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 1 (page 428)
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for self-locking bolts, using e.g. a thread tap.

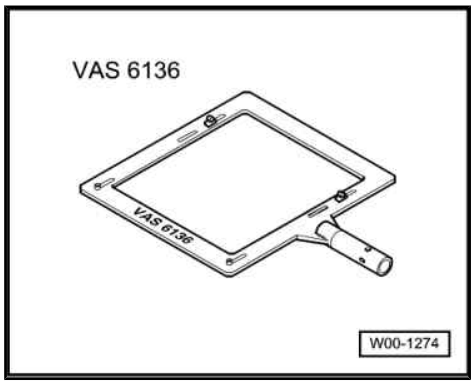
2.21 Removing and installing seat height adjustment motor -V245- / -V246-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



- Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-

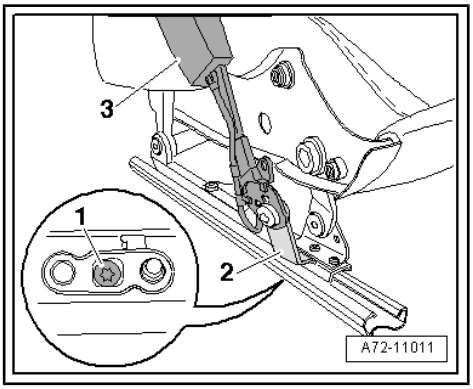


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

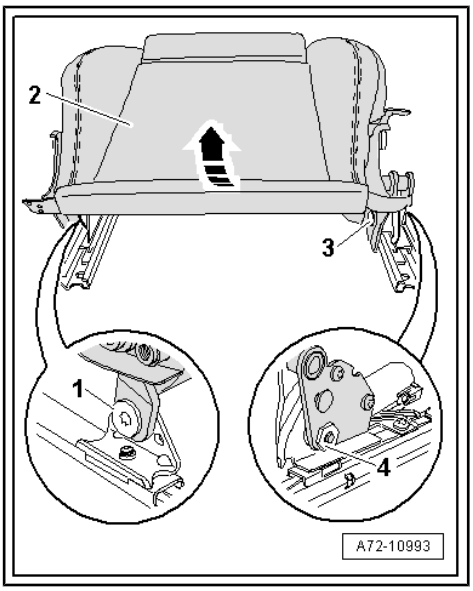
Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .



– Remove front seat ⇒ page 379 .
– Unplug electrical connector at seat longitudinal adjustment motor.
– Unscrew bolt -1-; to do so, connect contacts at motor with a battery using leads from auxiliary measuring set -V.A.G 1594C- and move longitudinal seat adjustment into position -1- shown in illustration.
– Detach mounting -2- for belt buckle -3- and unplug electrical connector for belt buckle sensor.
– Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
– Attach seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
– Remove side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 392 .
– Remove side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 395 .
– Take photographs or make sketches of the wiring attachment and routing.
– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 388 .

Note

If the front seat backrest is not removed, there will be such a load on the ceramic sleeves on the seat frame that they will break.

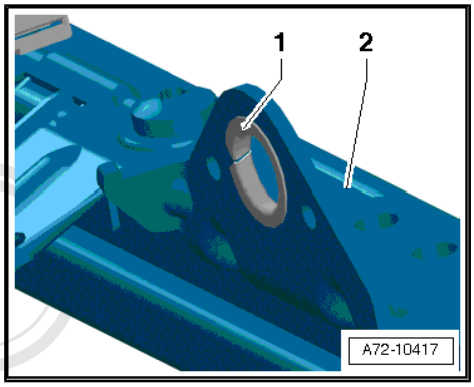


– Remove bolt -1-.
– Remove nut -4- and detach bolt -3-.
– Fold up seat pan -2- -arrow- and prevent it from folding back down with a wooden block.

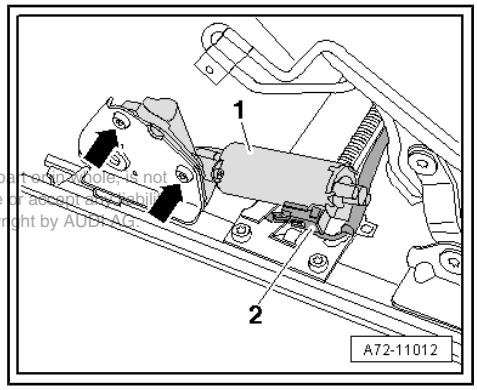
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

Take care not to damage bushes -1- in pivot points on lower seat pan frame -2- when folding them up.



– Unplug electrical connector -2-.
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach seat height adjustment motor -1-.



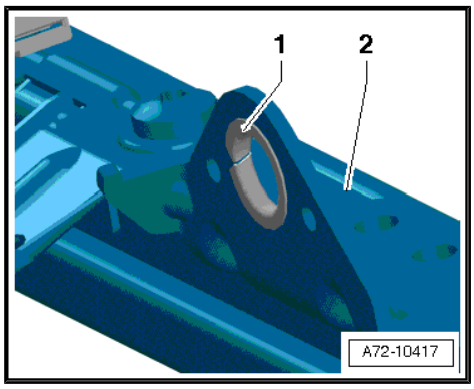
Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



Caution

- *Bushes -1- that have been damaged cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
- *If bushes have been damaged, renew entire lower seat pan frame -2-.*

– Clean threaded holes for self-locking bolts, using e.g. a thread tap.
– Renew all self-locking bolts.

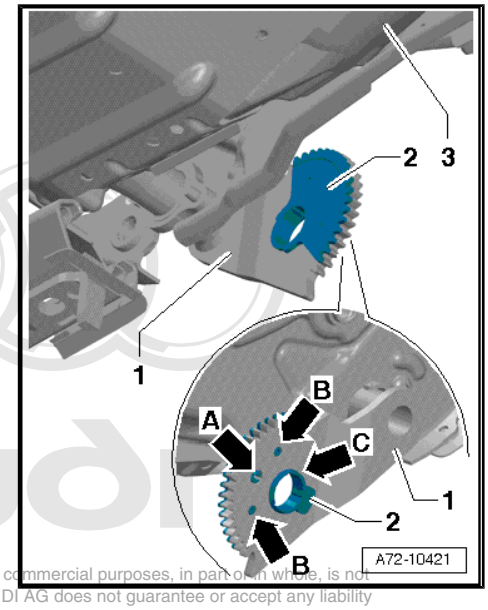
WARNING

Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Make sure clip -A-, collar of plastic toothed segment -2- and locking lugs -arrows B- are properly inserted in holes in fitting -1-.

– Make sure plastic toothed segment -2- is properly clipped to fitting -1-.

Collar of plastic toothed segment -arrow C- must make uniform contact with fitting -1-.



– Route and secure the wiring according to the photographs taken or sketches made earlier.

– Make sure all electrical connectors are properly engaged.

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. For safety reasons, when connecting the battery, keep clear of the airbag inflation areas and the belt tensioners/seat belts and make sure there is no-one else in the vehicle.

– Switch on ignition.

– Connect battery with ignition switched on. For procedure, refer to ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .

– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

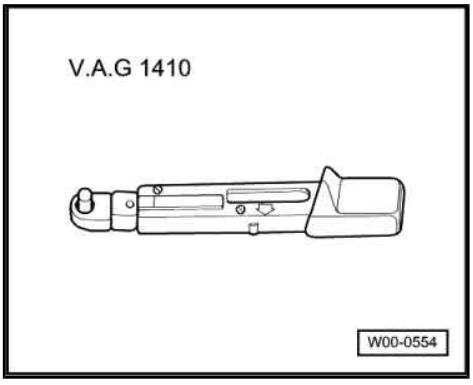
– Seats with seat memory: After installing seat in vehicle, perform "basic setting" of backrest/seat ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 403

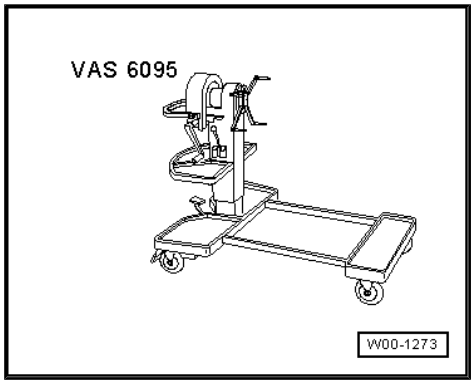
2.22 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment motor

Special tools and workshop equipment required

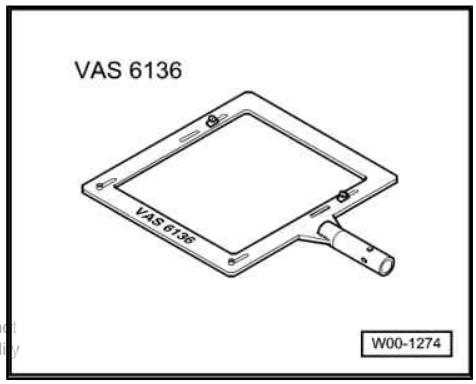
- Torque wrench -V.A.G 1410-



- Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



- Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Seat rake adjustment motor

♦ Removing

– Remove seat ⇒ page 379 .
– Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
– Remove bolts -2- (4x).
– Unscrew bolt -3-.
– Unplug connector -4-.
– Take out seat rake adjustment motor -1-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

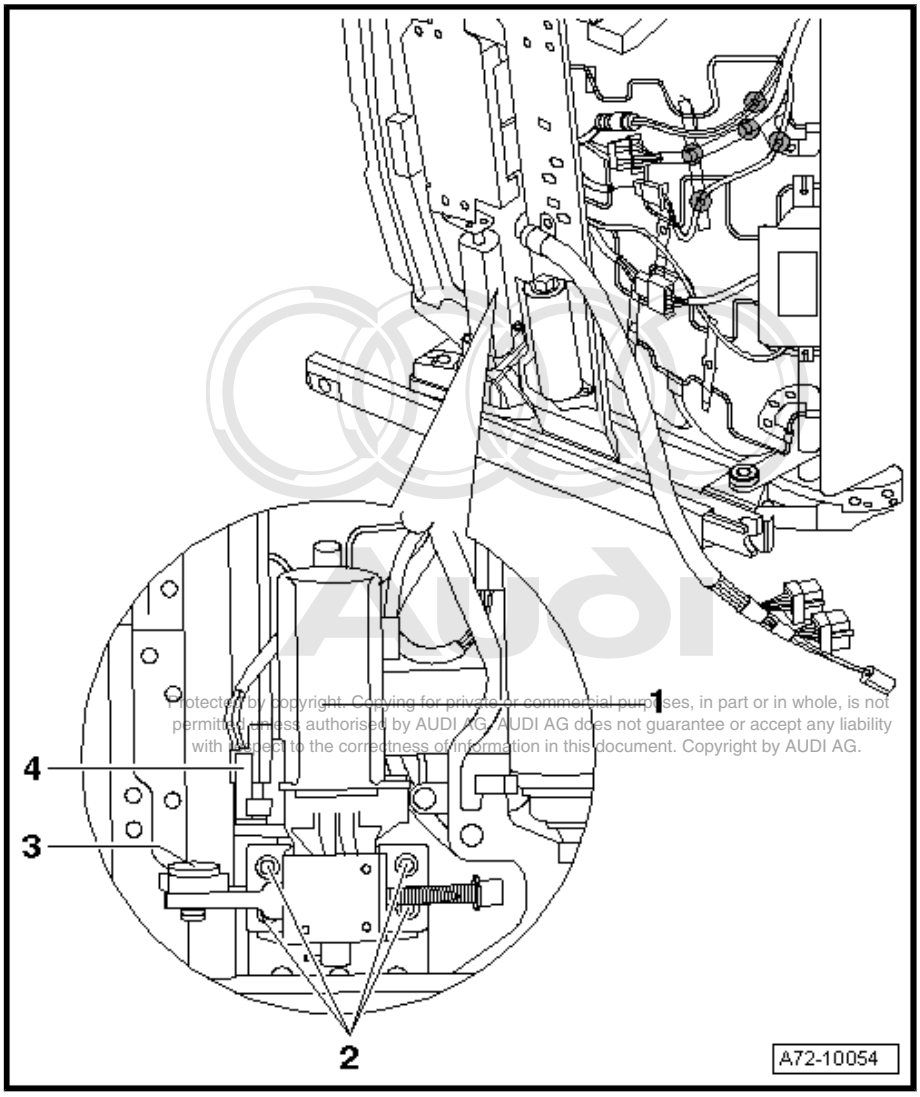
2 - Bolts

❑ 12 Nm
❑ 4x

3 - Bolt

❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 427
❑ Renew
❑ Always clean threaded holes for bolts (using a tap for example)

4 - Connector

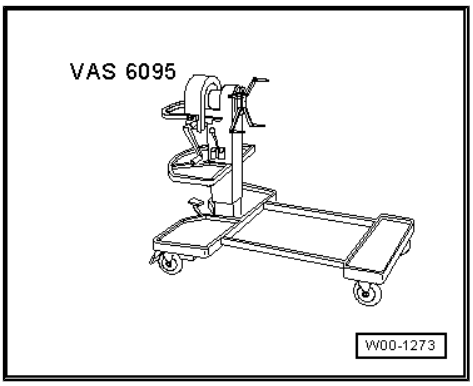


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

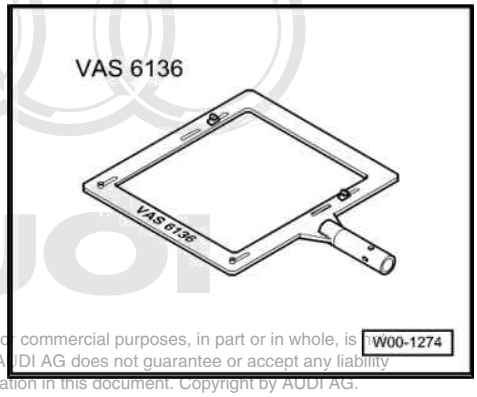
2.23 Removing and installing drawer - vehicles up to 06/2006

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



- Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Drawer

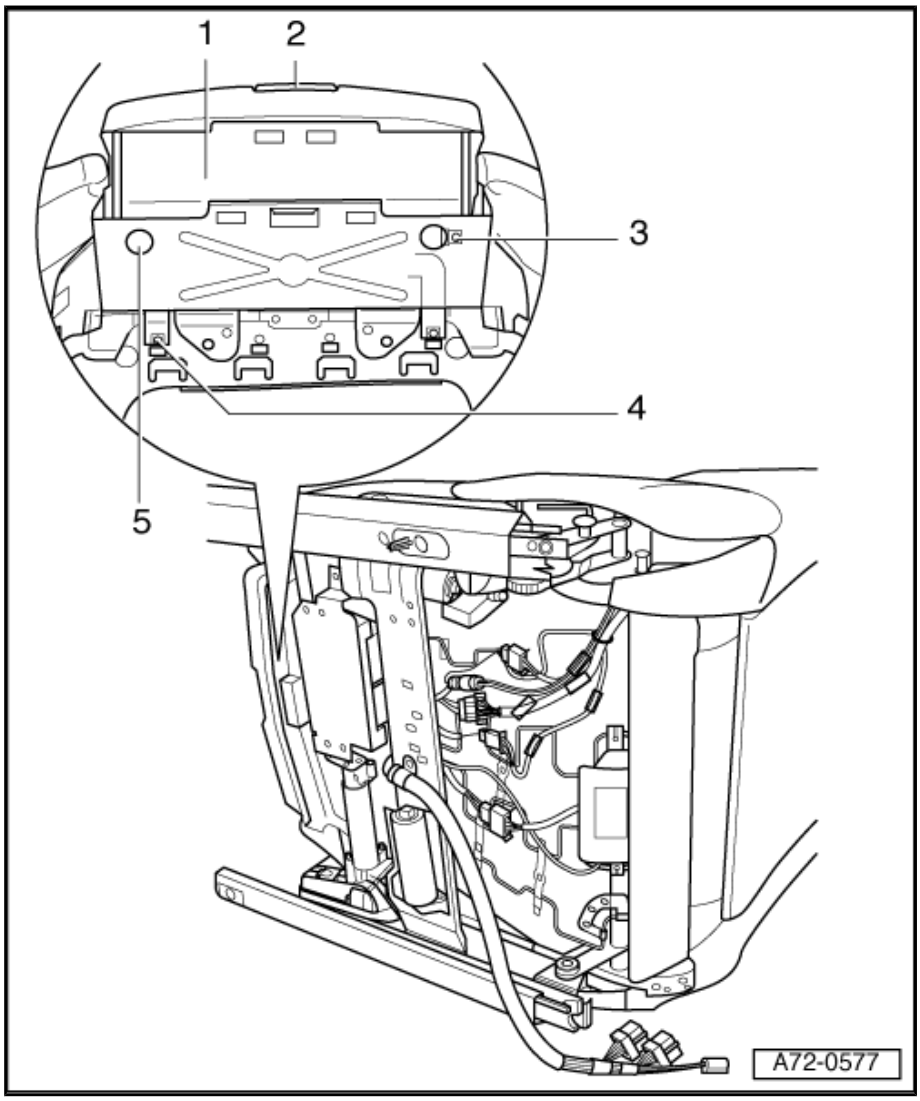
- Removing
  - Remove seat ⇒ page 332 .
  - Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
  - Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
  - Pull handle -2- and pull out drawer -1-.
  - Guide screwdriver with bit attachment into opening -5- and unscrew bolt beneath opening.
  - Remove bolts -4- (2x).
  - Unscrew bolt -3-.
  - Detach drawer -1-.
- Installing
  - Install in reverse order of removal.

2 - Handle

3 - Bolt

4 - Bolts (2x)

5 - Opening



2.24 Exploded view of storage compartment (passenger side)

Exploded view of storage compartment (passenger side)
⇒ page 358

2.25 Removing and installing storage compartment

Removing and installing storage compartment ⇒ page 358

2.26 Exploded view of storage compartment components

Exploded view of storage compartment components
⇒ page 360

2.27 Dismantling and assembling storage compartment

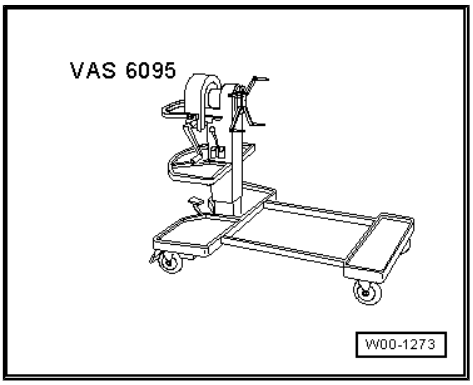
Dismantling and assembling storage compartment ⇒ page 361

2.28 Removing and installing seat depth adjuster (sports seat)

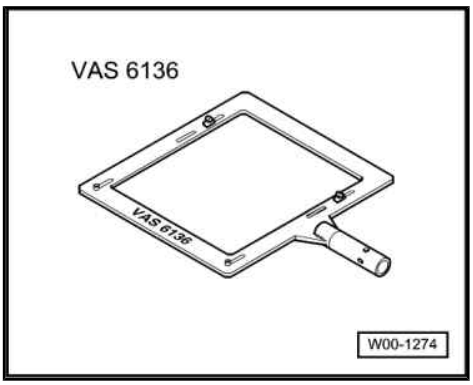
Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



- Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



1 - Seat depth adjuster

- ♦ Removing
  - – Remove seat ⇒ page 379 .
  - – Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
  - – Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
  - – Remove drawer / storage compartment:
- ♦ Removing drawer ⇒ page 409
- ♦ Removing storage compartment ⇒ page 411
  - – Detach seat cover and padding from seat pan ⇒ page 582 .
  - – Separate seat depth adjuster from cover and padding ⇒ page 571 .
- ♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2 - Bolts (4x)

3 - Trim

- ♦ Removing
  - – Lever out clips -4- (4x) at trim -3-.
- ♦ Installing

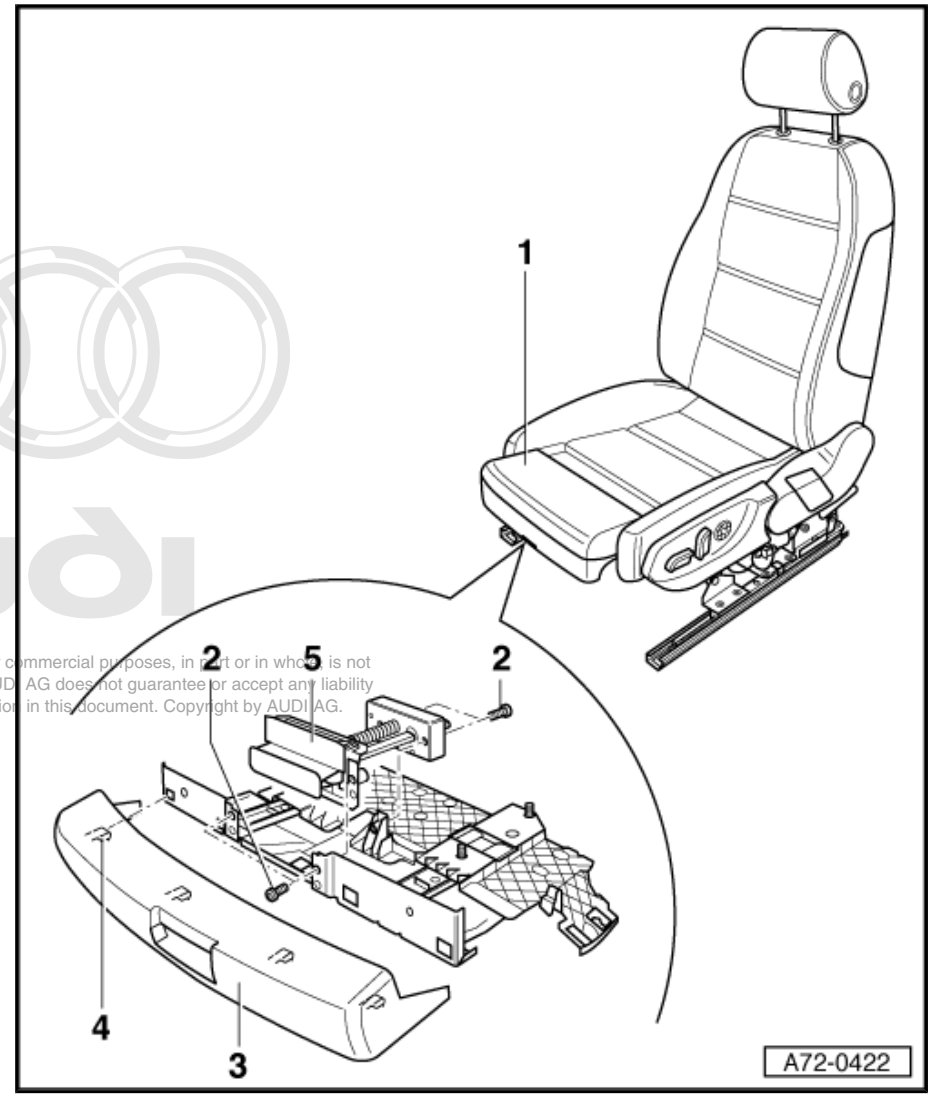
Install in reverse order of removal.

4 - Clips (4x)

5 - Handle

- ♦ Removing
  - – Remove bolts -2- (4x).
  - – Detach handle -5-.
- ♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

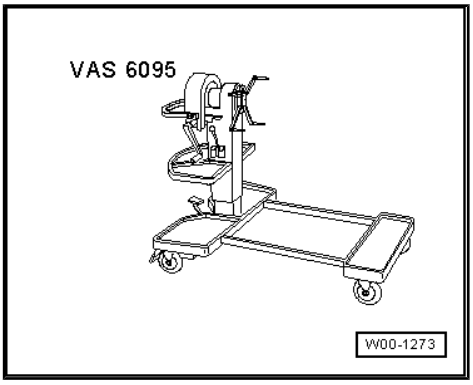


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

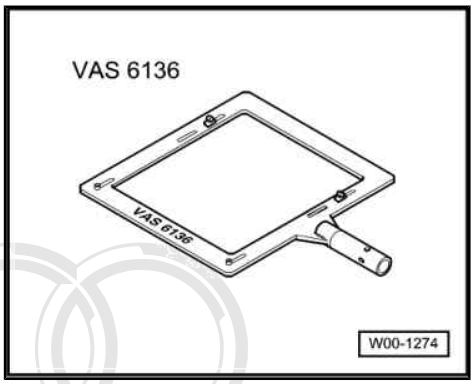
2.29 Removing and installing backrest adjustment motor

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



- Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

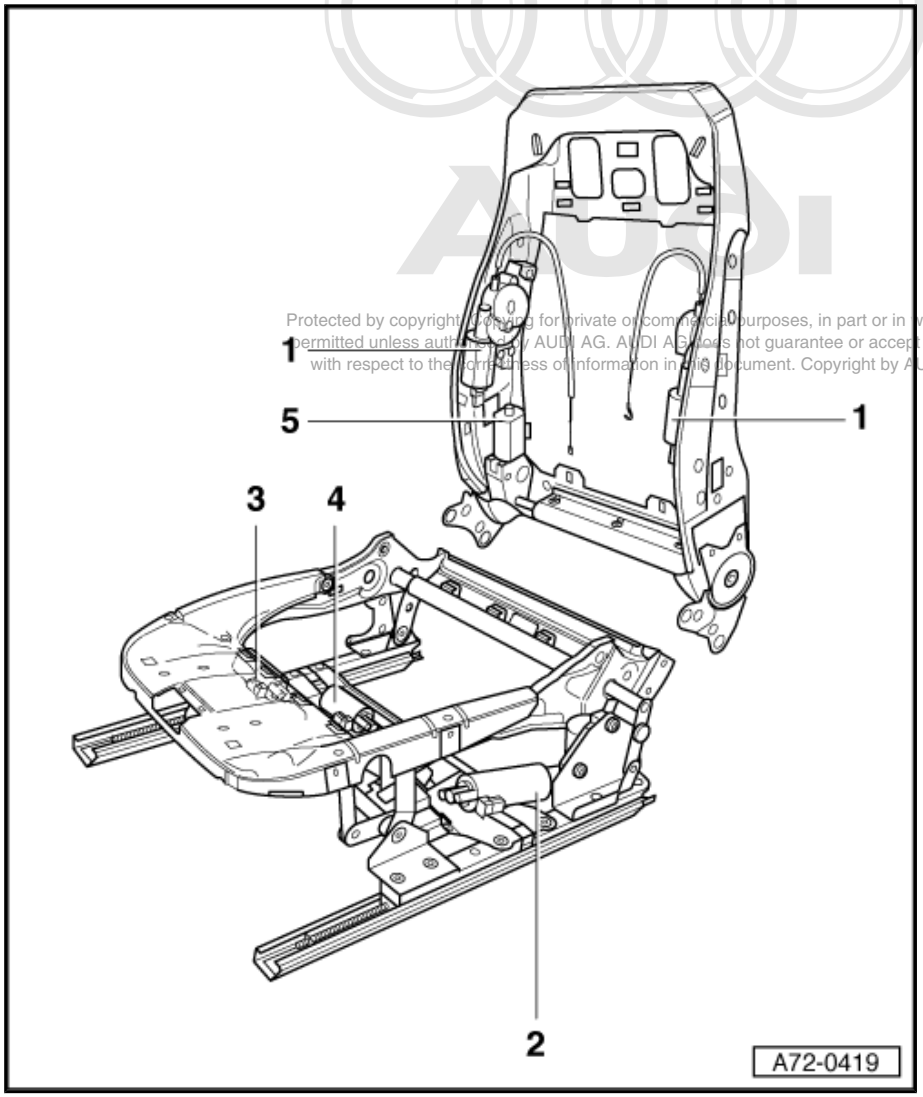
1 - Lumbar support height adjustment motors (2x)

2 - Seat height adjustment motor

3 - Seat rake adjustment motor

4 - Seat longitudinal adjustment motor

5 - Backrest adjustment motor



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removing

– Remove seat ⇒ page 379 .

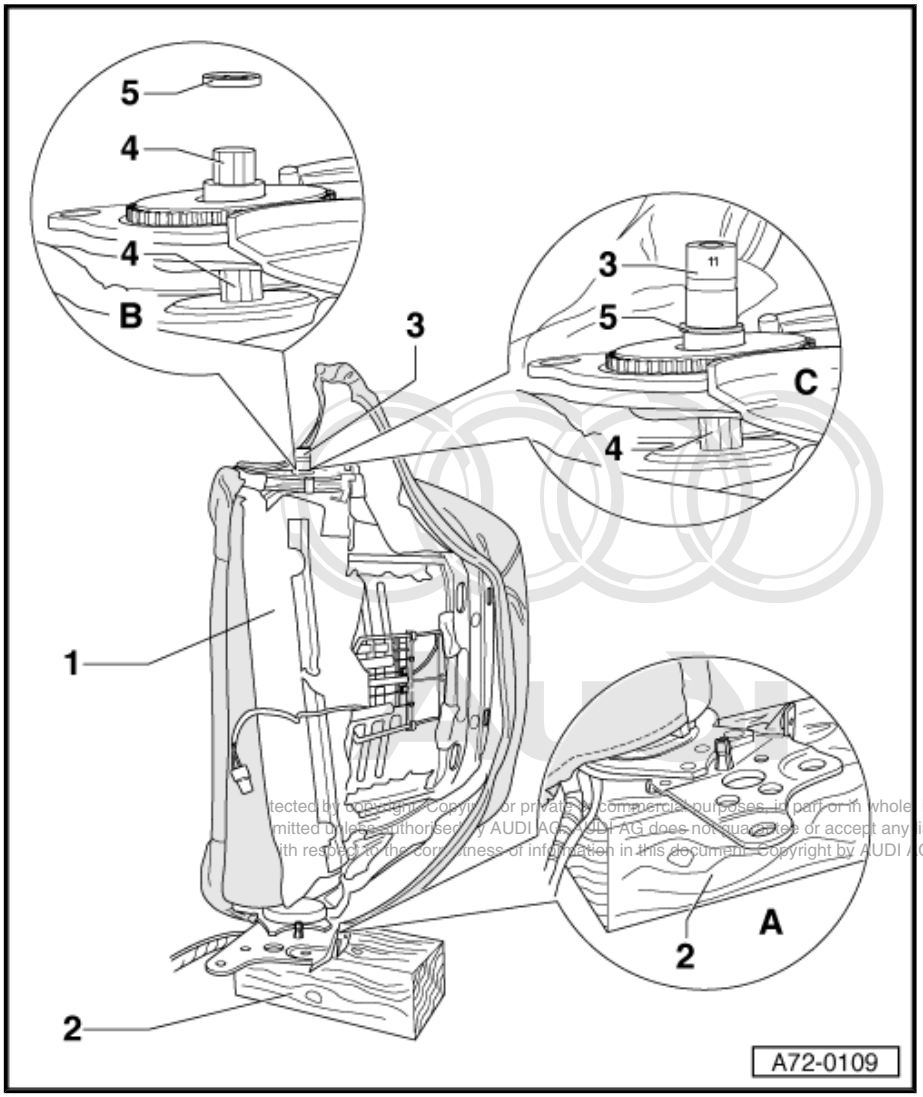
– Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .

– Remove side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 392 .

– Remove side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 395 .

– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 417 .



tected by copyright. Copyright for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not mitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability th respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

The illustration shows the backrest of the front passenger's seat.

- Slacken off bolt securing backrest adjustment motor ⇒ page 417 .
- Use screwdriver to prise off spring washer -5- on side of backrest motor (-B-).
- Using a hammer and punch, knock shaft -4- through side of outer backrest frame.
- Pull shaft -4- out of outer backrest frame -1- until backrest adjustment motor is released and you can take it out.
- Align splines of new backrest adjustment motor ⇒ page 417 .
- Push shaft -4- through backrest adjustment motor and through outer backrest frame -1-.
- Move seat aside.
- On the opposite side of the backrest adjustment motor, place a wooden block -2- beneath the shaft -4- (-A-).

– Use 11 mm socket attachment -3- to knock spring washer -5- onto shaft -4- (-C-).
– Tighten bolt on backrest adjustment motor and plug in connector.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

– Seats with seat memory: After installing seat in vehicle, perform basic setting of backrest/seat.

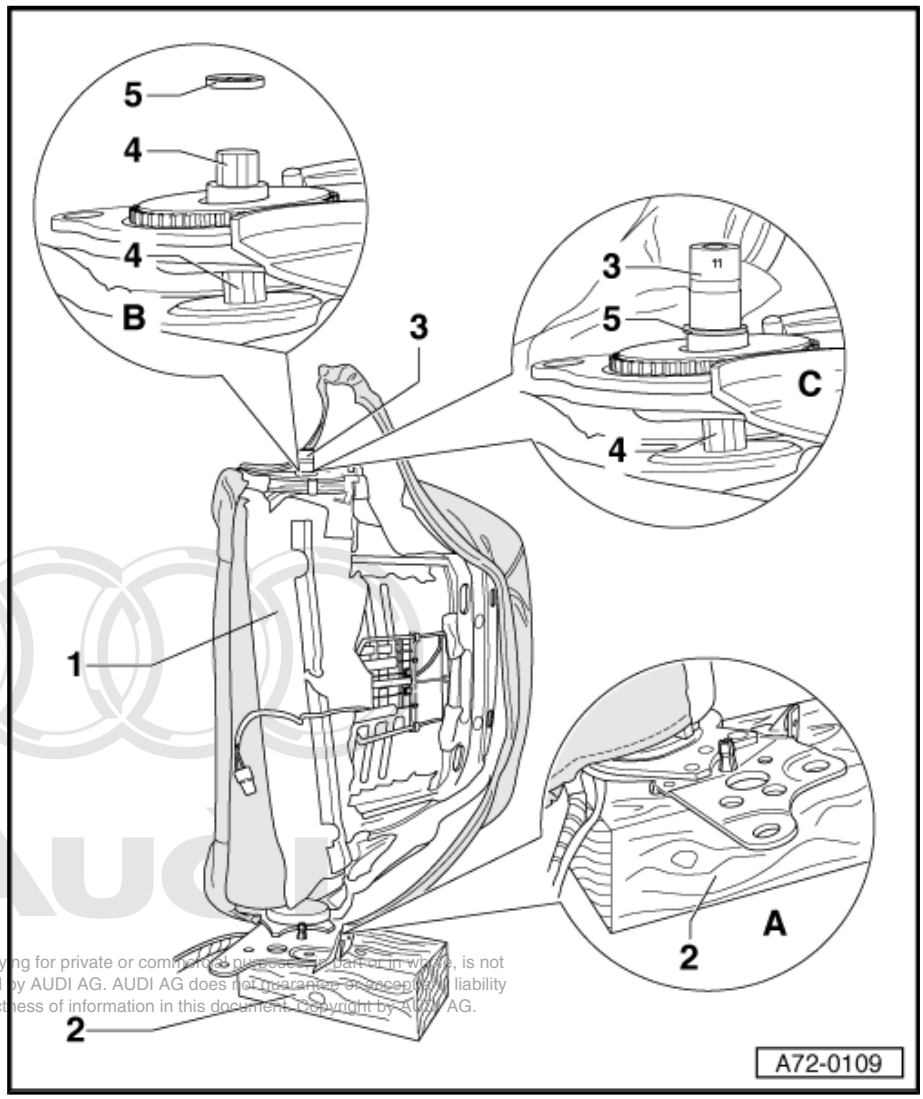
1 - Outer backrest frame

2 - Wooden block

3 - Socket (11 mm)

4 - Shaft

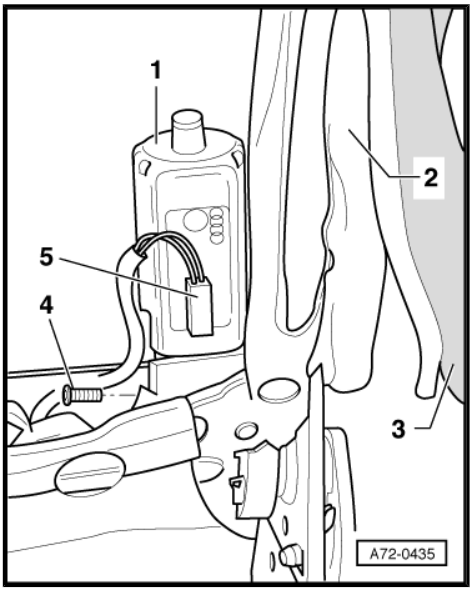
5 - Spring washer



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

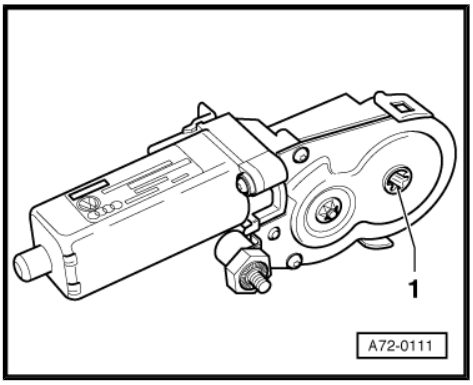
Detaching mountings of backrest adjustment motor

– Unplug connector -5-.
– Pull backrest cover -3- and anti-squeak pad -2- to one side.
– Unscrew bolt -4-.



Preparing backrest adjustment motor

– Use screwdriver to align locating element of splines -1- with shaft of outer backrest frame.



2.30 Removing and installing backrest cover panel

Note

- *The illustration shows the removal and installation of the backrest cover panel on a front seat with active head restraint system.*
- *The removal and installation procedures for the backrest cover panel on a front seat without the active head restraint system are similar to those for a front seat with the active head restraint system.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Front seat

2 - Fastening strip

- ❑ Always on tunnel side

3 - Clips (3x)

- ❑ Always renew

4 - Backrest cover panel

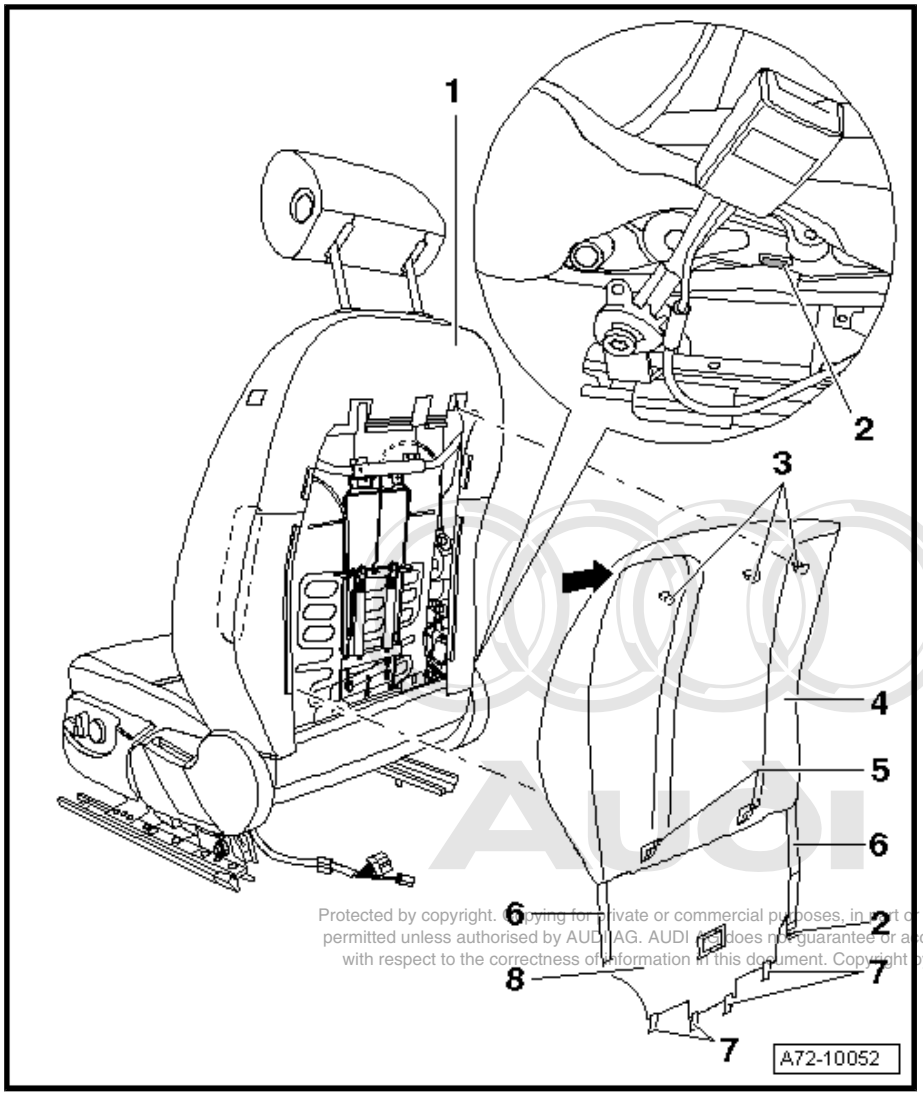
♦ Removing

- Disengage footwell trim -8- from spring mat under the seat at lugs -7- (4x).
- Disengage fastening strip -2-.
- Detach fastening strips -6- (2x) from side trim ⇒ page 418 .
- Press on backrest cover panel -4- at point indicated by arrow in order to prise out upholstery clips -3- (3x).
- Disengage backrest cover panel -4- upwards from retainers -5- (2x).

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Renew clips -3- (3x).
- Insert fastening strip of footwell trim in retainers on side trim ⇒ page 418 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 - Retainers (2x)

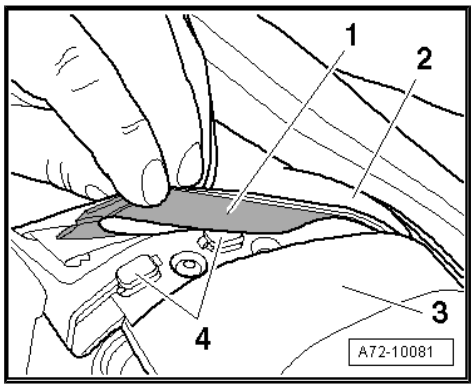
6 - Fastening strips (2x)

7 - Lugs (4x)

8 - Footwell trim

Disconnecting fastening strip of footwell trim

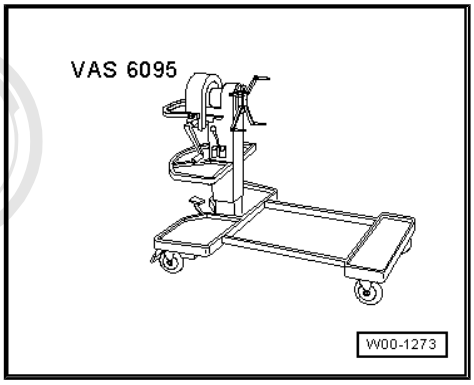
- Disengage fastening strip -1- of footwell trim -2- from retainers -4- (2x) on side trim -3-.



2.31 Removing and installing four-way lumbar support - old version

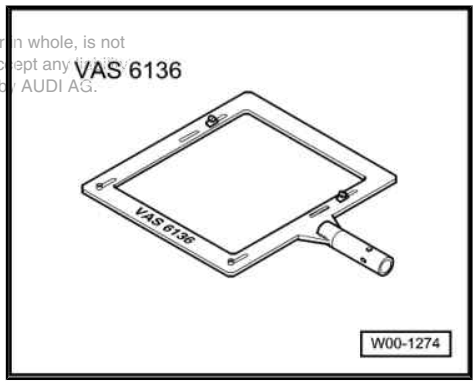
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



- Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

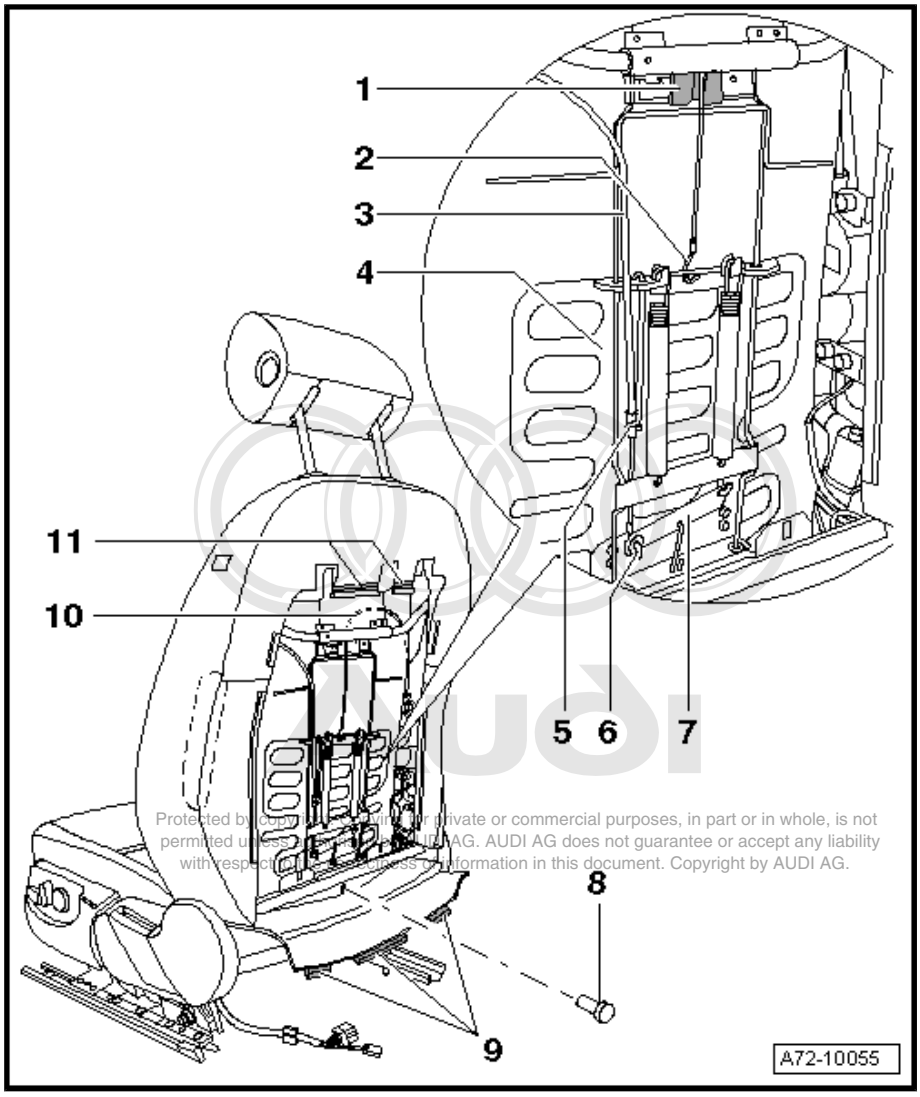


1 - Retainer

2 - Hook

3 - Bowden cable for lumbar support height adjustment

4 - Four-way lumbar support



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the accuracy of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ♦ Removing
  - – Remove seat ⇒ page 379 .
  - – Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
  - – Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
  - – Remove backrest ⇒ page 388 .
  - – Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 417 .
  - – Use screwdriver to prise out fastening strips -9- (3x).
  - – Drill out rivet -8-.
  - – Prise out fastening strips -11- (2x).
  - – Disengage four-way lumbar support -4- (top left and right) from outer backrest frame.
  - – Thread Bowden cable -3- out of support -5-.
  - – Disengage Bowden cable -10- from four-way lumbar support -4- at hook -2-.
  - – Disengage Bowden cable -10- from retainer -1-.
  - – Take out four-way lumbar support -4-.
- ♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

5 - Support

6 - Hook

7 - Retaining plate

8 - Rivet

9 - Fastening strips (3x)

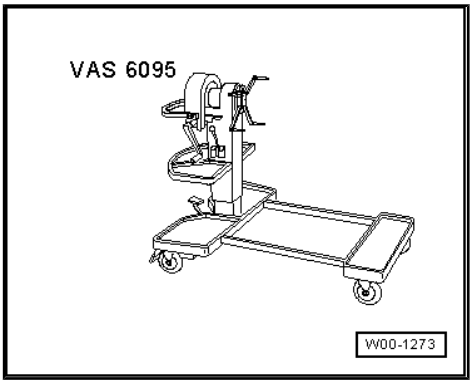
10 - Bowden cable for lumbar support height adjustment

11 - Fastening strips (2x)

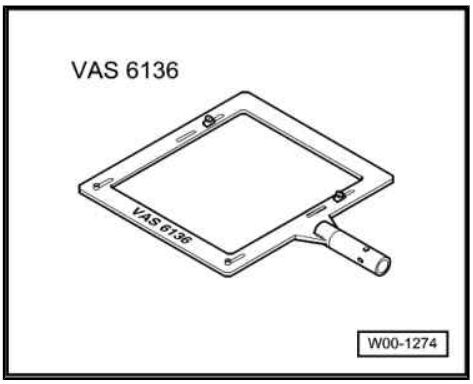
2.32 Removing and installing lumbar support height adjustment motors - old version

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



- Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



Note

On the driver's seat shown in the illustration, the lumbar support height adjustment motor is on the left and the lumbar support adjustment motor is on the right.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Retainer

2 - Hook

3 - Bowden cable for lumbar support height adjustment

4 - Four-way lumbar support

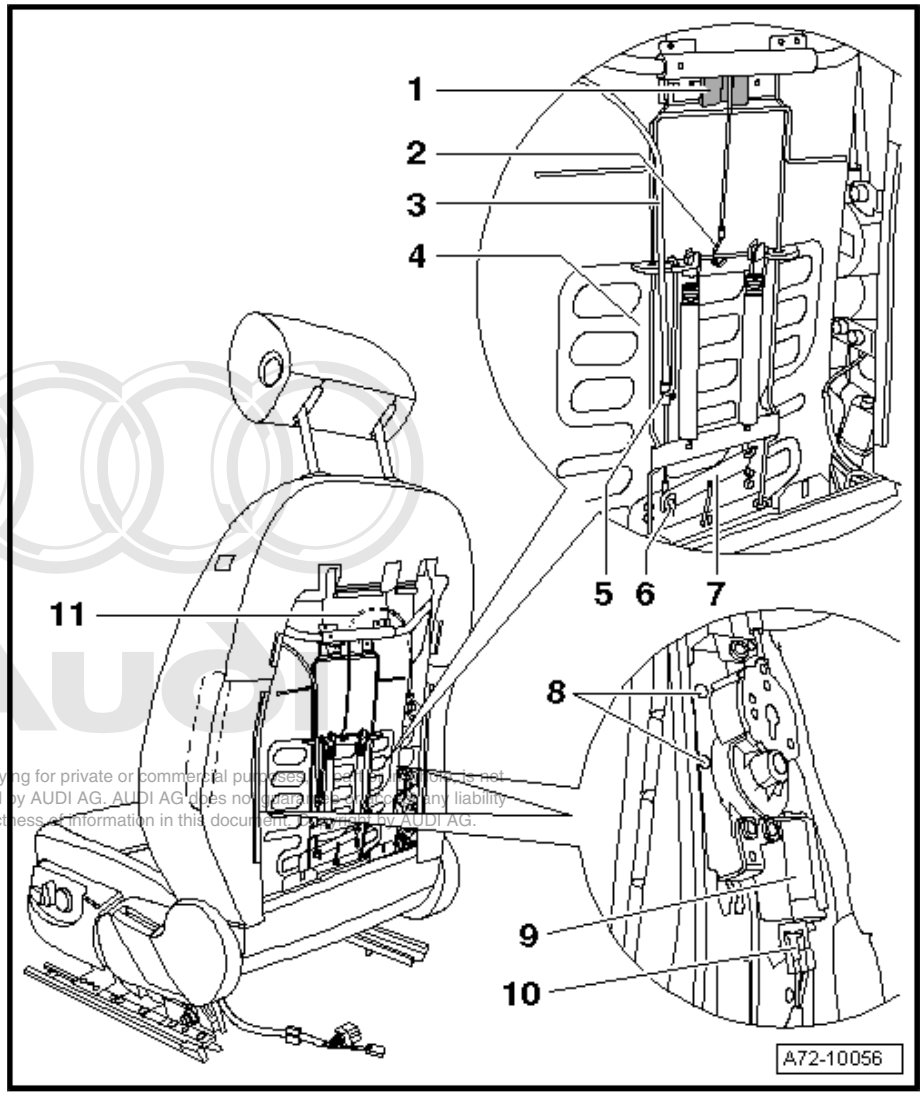
5 - Support

6 - Hook

7 - Retaining plate

8 - Rivets (4x)

9 - Motors for lumbar support adjustment (2x)



♦ Removing

– Remove seat ⇒ page 379 .
– Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 417 .

When removing lumbar support height adjustment motor:

– Remove side airbag ⇒ page 141 .
– Unplug connector -10-.
– Drill out rivets -8- (2x) on outside.
– Disengage Bowden cable -3- from retaining plate -7- at hook -6-.
– Thread Bowden cable -3- out of support -5-.

When removing lumbar support adjustment motor:

– Unplug connector -10-.
– Drill out rivets -8- (2x) on outside.
– Disengage Bowden cable -11- from four-way lumbar support -4- at hook -2-.
– Disengage Bowden cable -11- from retainer -1-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

10 - Connectors (2x)

11 - Bowden cable for lumbar support adjustment

2.33 Removing and installing four-way lumber support (new version) - vehicles up to 11/2006

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753 A-

1 - Backrest padding

2 - Lumbar support

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Item 4 (page 423)

3 - Clamp

4 - Frame for lumbar support

❑ Removing:

– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 417 .

– Use screwdriver to prise out fastening strips -10- (4x).

– Place foil between padding and outer backrest frame as protection against metal particles.

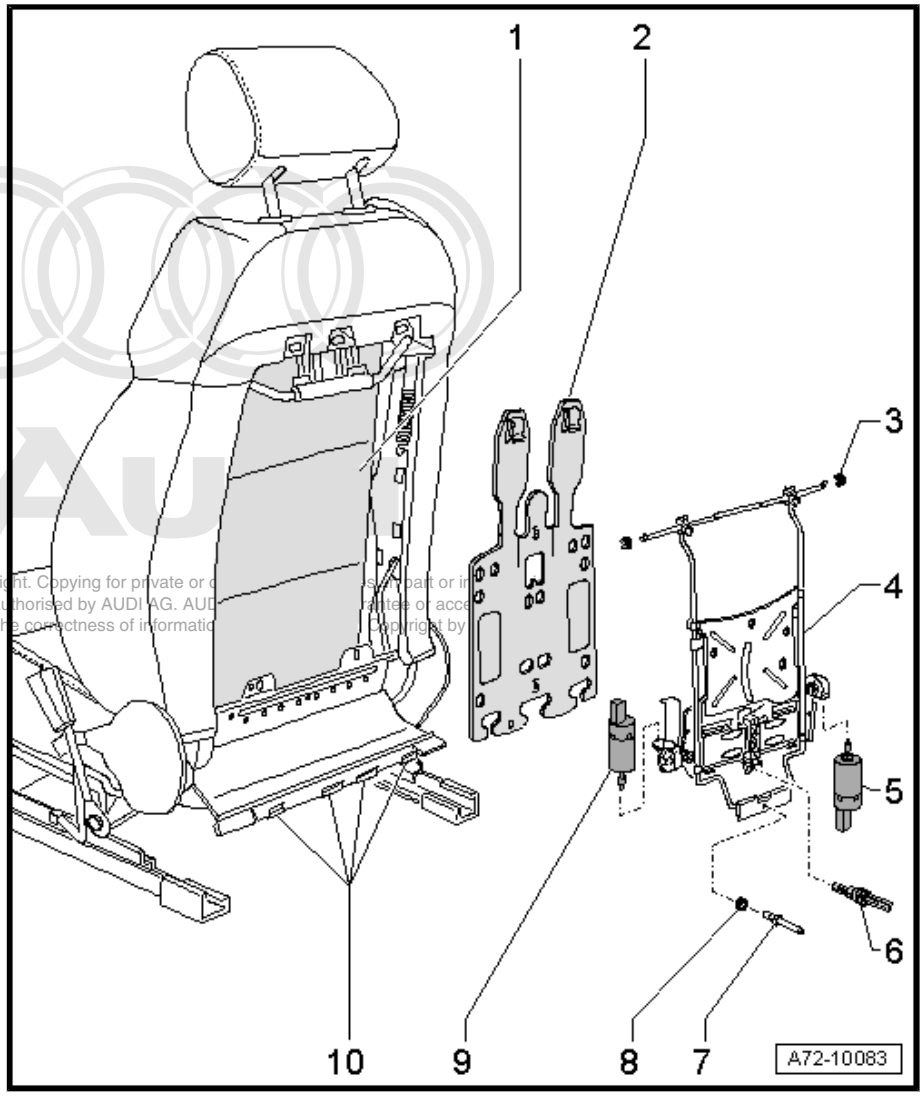
– Drill out rivet -7-.

– Disengage lumbar support frame -4- at top left and right from outer backrest frame.

– Unplug electrical connectors at control motors -5- and -9- for lumbar support.

– Unfasten Velcro strip between lumbar support -2- and backrest padding -1-.

– Disengage lumbar support at top of lumbar support frame.



– Take out lumbar support.

❑ Installing:

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Place plastic foil on velcro strips of lumbar support. Secure plastic foil in position at lumbar support ⇒ page 424 .

– Ensure that lumbar support is fixed in position with transport lock or a suitable pin at lumbar support frame ⇒ page 424 .

– Position lumbar support frame behind outer backrest frame and engage top left and right of lumbar support frame in mounting on backrest.

– Rivet bottom of lumbar support frame to outer backrest frame. IMPORTANT: Place a plastic washer between lumbar support frame and outer backrest frame ⇒ page 424 .

– Pull out plastic foil between backrest padding and lumbar support.

– Fasten Velcro strip of lumbar support to backrest padding.

– Plug in electrical connectors at lumbar support height adjustment motors.

5 - Control motor for lumbar support height adjustment

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 425

6 - Assembly lock

For centralising lumbar support in lumbar support frame

7 - Rivet

- ❑ Set rivet using special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753 A-
- ❑ A plastic washer must be inserted between lumbar support and backrest frame before riveting on

8 - Plastic washer

9 - Control motor for lumbar support longitudinal adjustment

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 425

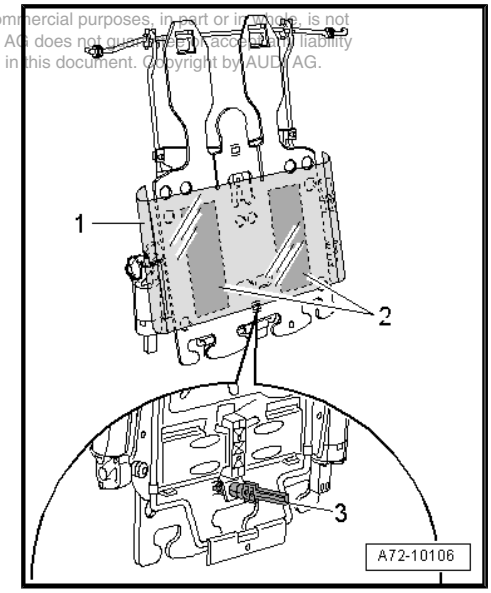
10 - Fastening strips

Copyright by AUDI AG.
Reproduction and distribution to third parties or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Securing lumbar support using assembly lock and attaching plastic foil to lumbar support

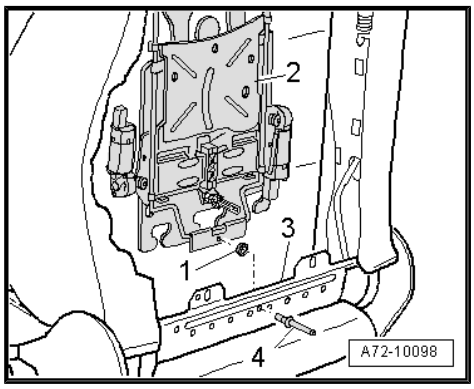
– Place plastic foil -1- over Velcro strips -2- of lumbar support. Secure plastic foil in position at lumbar support.

– Make sure that the lumbar support is secured to the lumbar support frame using either the assembly lock -3- or a suitable pin.

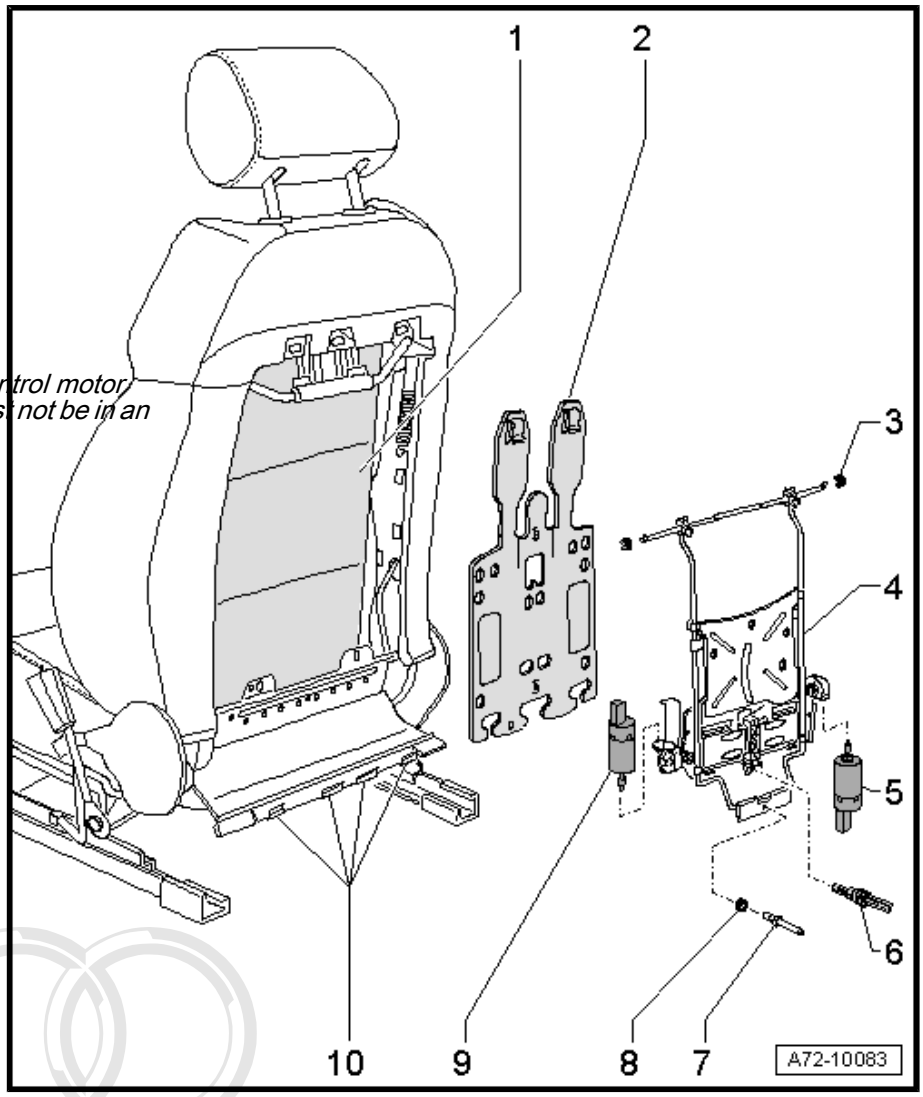


Riveting four-way lumbar support to backrest frame

– Before attaching rivet -4- you must place a plastic washer -1- between lumbar support -2- and outer backrest frame -3-.



2.34 Removing and installing control motors for lumbar support adjustment - new version



1 - Backrest padding

2 - Lumbar support

3 - Clamp

4 - Frame for lumbar support

5 - Control motor for lumbar support height adjustment

❑ Removing:

Note

When renewing the control motor, the lumbar support must not be in an end stop position.

– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 417 .

– Unplug electrical connector ⇒ page 426 .

– Release retaining bracket and lift out control motor ⇒ page 426 .

❑ Installing:

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– The control motor can only be installed in one position.

6 - Centring pin

For centralising lumbar support in lumbar support frame

7 - Rivet

8 - Plastic washer

9 - Control motor for lumbar support longitudinal adjustment

❑ Removing:

Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

When renewing the control motor, the lumbar support must not be in an end stop position.

– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 417 .

– Unplug electrical connector ⇒ page 426 .

– Release retaining bracket and lift out control motor ⇒ page 426 .

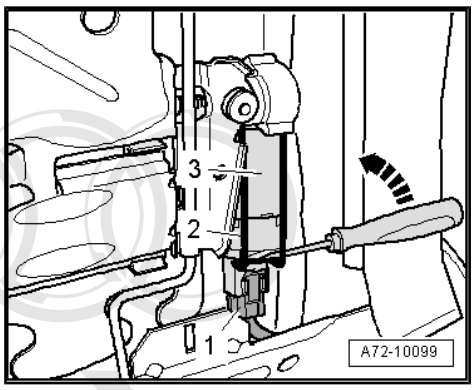
❑ Installing:

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– The control motor can only be installed in one position.

10 - Fastening strips

Unplugging electrical connector and releasing retaining bracket at control motor



Note

When renewing the control motor the lumbar support must not be in an end stop position.

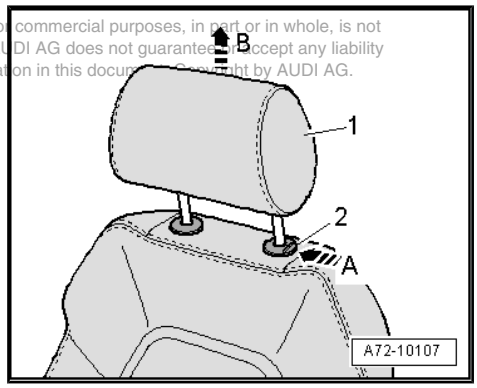
– Unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Use a screwdriver to release retaining bracket -2- and take out control motor -3-.

2.35 Removing and installing head restraint with slide-in locking mechanism

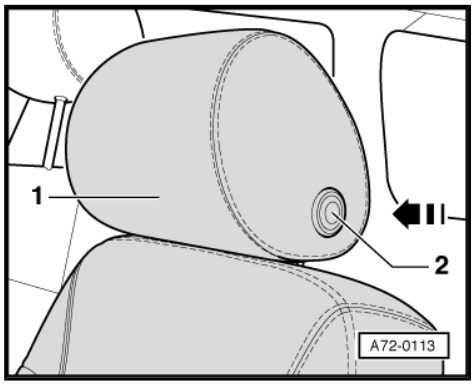
Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Press and hold release button -2- in direction of -arrow A- and pull head restraint -1- out upwards as far as possible -arrow B-.



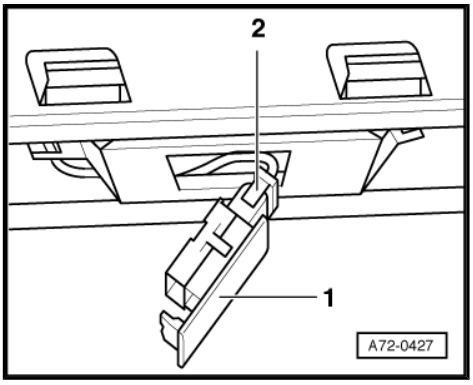
– Press in release button -2- on head restraint -1- as far as it will go -arrow-.
– Keep pressing the release button in and push the head restraint down as far as possible on the posts.
– Take the head restraint out of the head restraint guides.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2.36 Removing and installing rear footwell light



♦ Removing

– Press out rear footwell light -1- from behind.

– Unplug connector -2-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

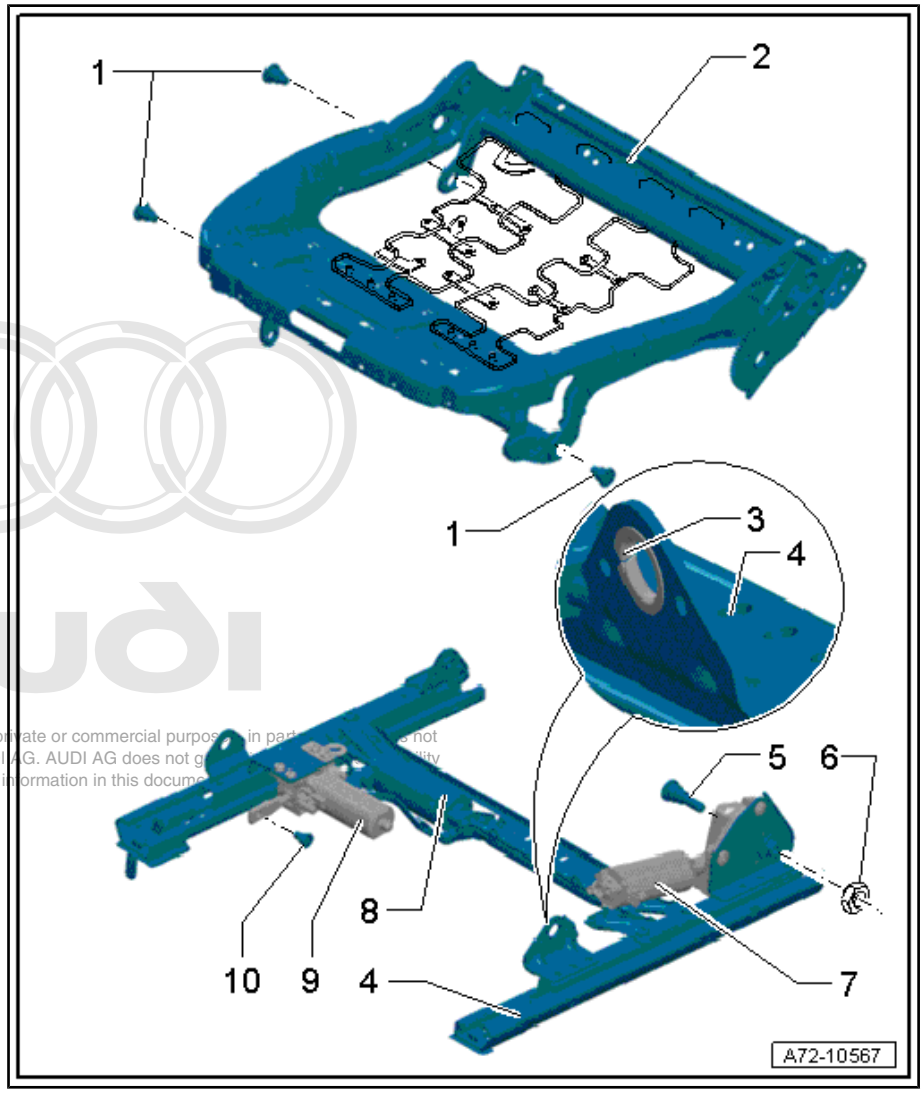
2.37 Exploded view of seat pan

Note

♦ *The upper and lower seat pan frames of the front seat can be separated and renewed separately.*

♦ *When removing the seat pan, take care not to damage bushes in pivot points (bolted connection between upper and lower frames). These bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Bolt, self-locking

- ❑ 28 Nm
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Always clean threaded holes for bolts (using a tap for example)

2 - Upper seat pan frame

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 429

3 - Bush

- ❑ Inserted in all pivot points
- ❑ Cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops
- ❑ Component must be renewed if bush is damaged; for assignment, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

4 - Lower seat pan frame

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 429

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpos in part s not
AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not g lity
with respect to the correctness of information in this docum

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 28 Nm
- ❑ Renew

6 - Nut

- ❑ Always clean threaded holes for bolts (using a tap for example)

7 - Driver seat height adjustment motor -V245- / front passenger seat height adjustment motor -V246-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 403

8 - Seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288-

- ❑ Cannot be removed and installed with the equipment available to workshops
- ❑ Leave in position on lower seat pan frame ⇒ Item 4 (page 428)

9 - Driver seat rake adjustment motor -V243- / front passenger seat rake adjustment motor -V244-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 407

10 - Bolt, self-locking

- ❑ 20 Nm
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Always clean threaded holes for bolts (using a tap for example)

2.38 Dismantling and assembling seat pan

Dismantling seat pan

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

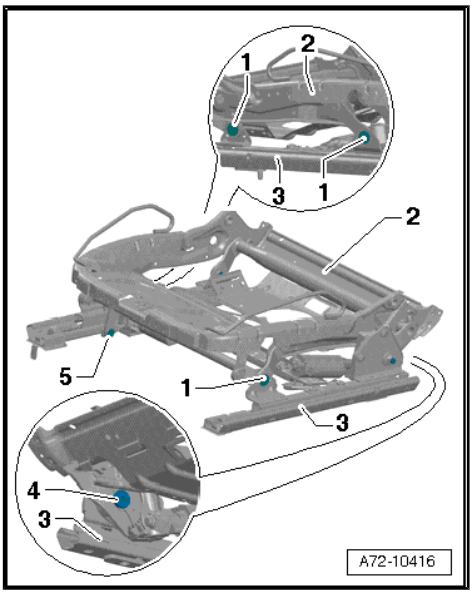
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 379 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 443 .
– Remove backrest ⇒ page 388 .
– Remove seat pan cover and padding:
♦ For standard seat ⇒ page 566
♦ For sports seat ⇒ page 568
– Unplug any electrical connectors.

Renewing upper seat pan frame

– Detach spring mat with wiring harness from upper seat pan frame ⇒ page 431 .

Renewing upper/lower frame (continued)

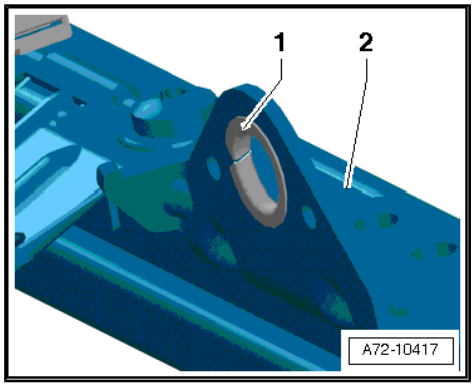
– Remove bolts -1- (3x).
– Remove bolt -4-.
– Remove bolt -5-.
– Lift upper frame -2- off lower frame -3- of seat pan.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– When doing so, pay attention to bushes -1- in pivot points.

2 - Lower seat pan frame



Caution

- *When separating or assembling upper and lower frames, take care not to damage bushes -1- inserted in all pivot points.*
- *The bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
- *The relevant components must be renewed if the bushes are damaged.*

– Remove driver seat height adjustment motor -V245- / front passenger seat height adjustment motor -V246- ⇒ page 403 .

– Remove driver seat rake adjustment motor -V243- / front passenger seat rake adjustment motor -V244- ⇒ page 407 .

Assembling seat pan

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

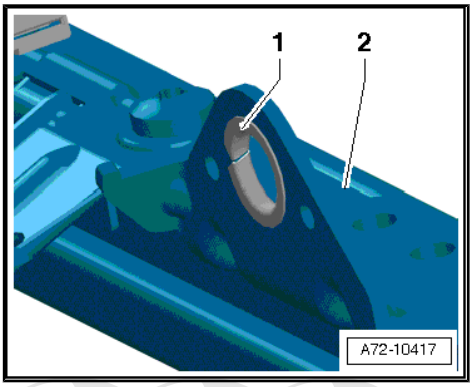
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Install driver seat height adjustment motor -V245- / front passenger seat height adjustment motor -V246- removed earlier in new lower seat pan frame ⇒ page 403 .

– Install driver seat rake adjustment motor -V243- / front passenger seat rake adjustment motor -V244- removed earlier in new lower seat pan frame ⇒ page 407 .

– Install spring mat with wiring harness in upper seat pan frame ⇒ page 431 .

– Take care not to damage bushes -1- in course of further assembly work.



Caution

- *When separating or assembling upper and lower frames, take care not to damage bushes -1- inserted in all pivot points.*
- *The bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
- *The relevant components must be renewed if the bushes are damaged.*

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .

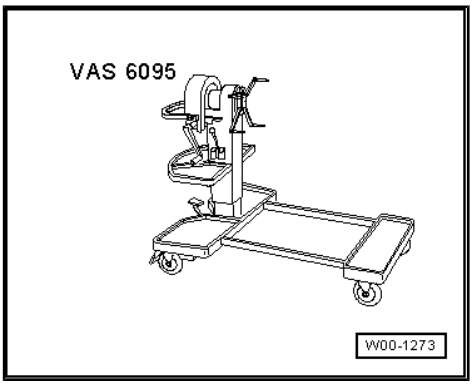
– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

Tightening torques ⇒ page 427

2.39 Removing and installing spring mat with wiring harness for seat pan

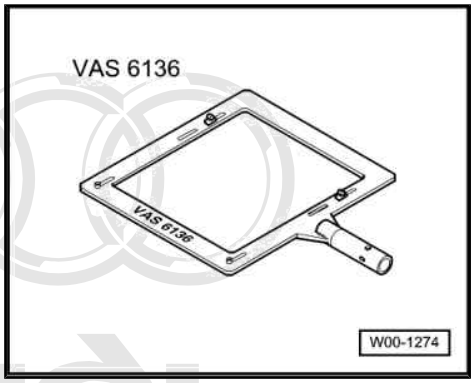
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-

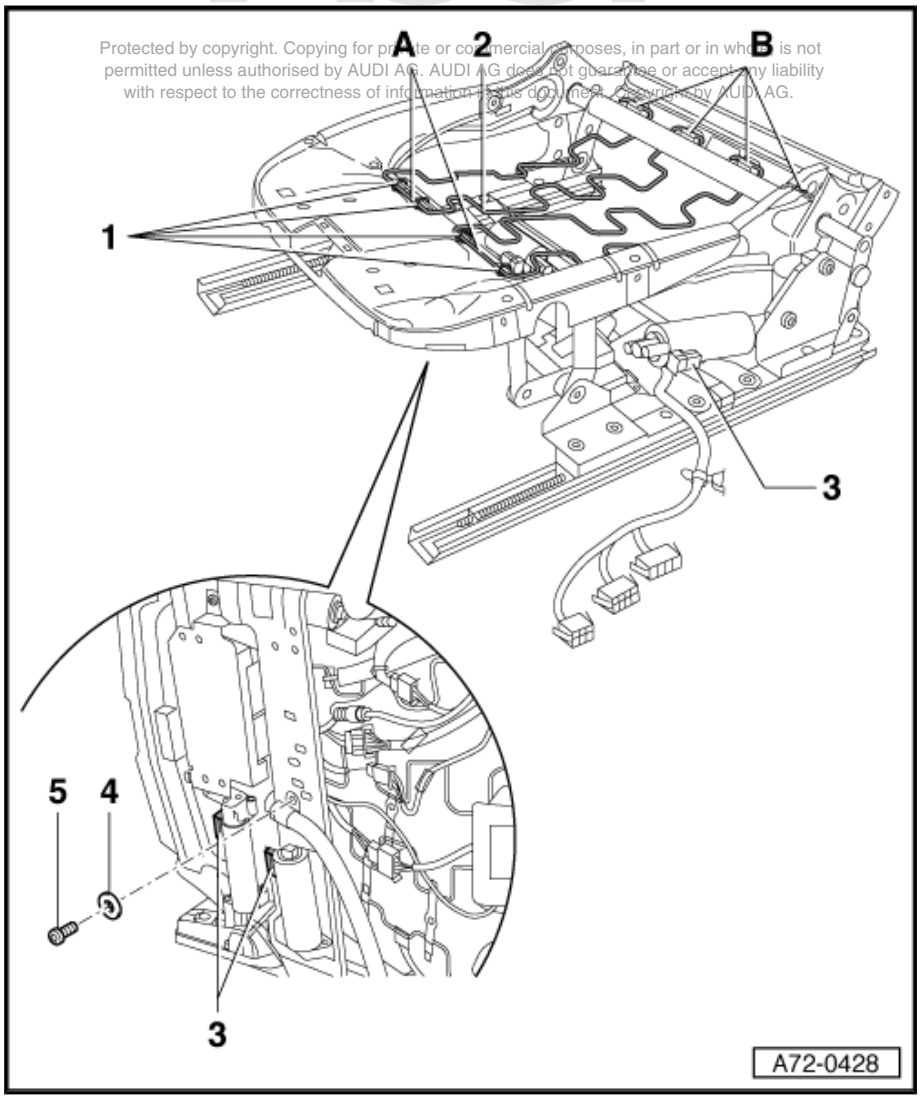


1 - Cable ties (4x)

2 - Spring mat with wiring harness

♦ Removing

- Remove seat ⇒ page 379 .
- Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
- Remove side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 392 .
- Remove side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 395 .
- Remove belt buckle ⇒ page 75 .
- Remove backrest ⇒ page 388 .
- Remove seat pan cover and padding ⇒ page 582 .
- Remove cable ties -1- (4x).
- Disengage spring mat -2- at locations marked -A- (2x).
- Disengage spring mat -2- at locations marked -B- (4x).
- Tilt seat to the side.
- Unplug connectors -3- (3x).
- On vehicles with belt buckle sensor: disconnect the cable.
- Loosen bolt -5-.
- Detach spring mat with wiring harness -2-.



♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Renew seat pan if metal tabs -item A- and -item B- are damaged.

3 - Connector (3x)

4 - Washer

5 - Bolt

2.40 Wiring assignment for seat

1 - Wiring harness for seat heating

2 - Connector for seat adjustment (2x)

3 - Connector for four-way lumbar support

4 - Wiring harness for backrest heating

5 - Wire for side airbag (earth)

6 - Wiring harness for footwell light

7 - Connector for belt buckle sensor (black)

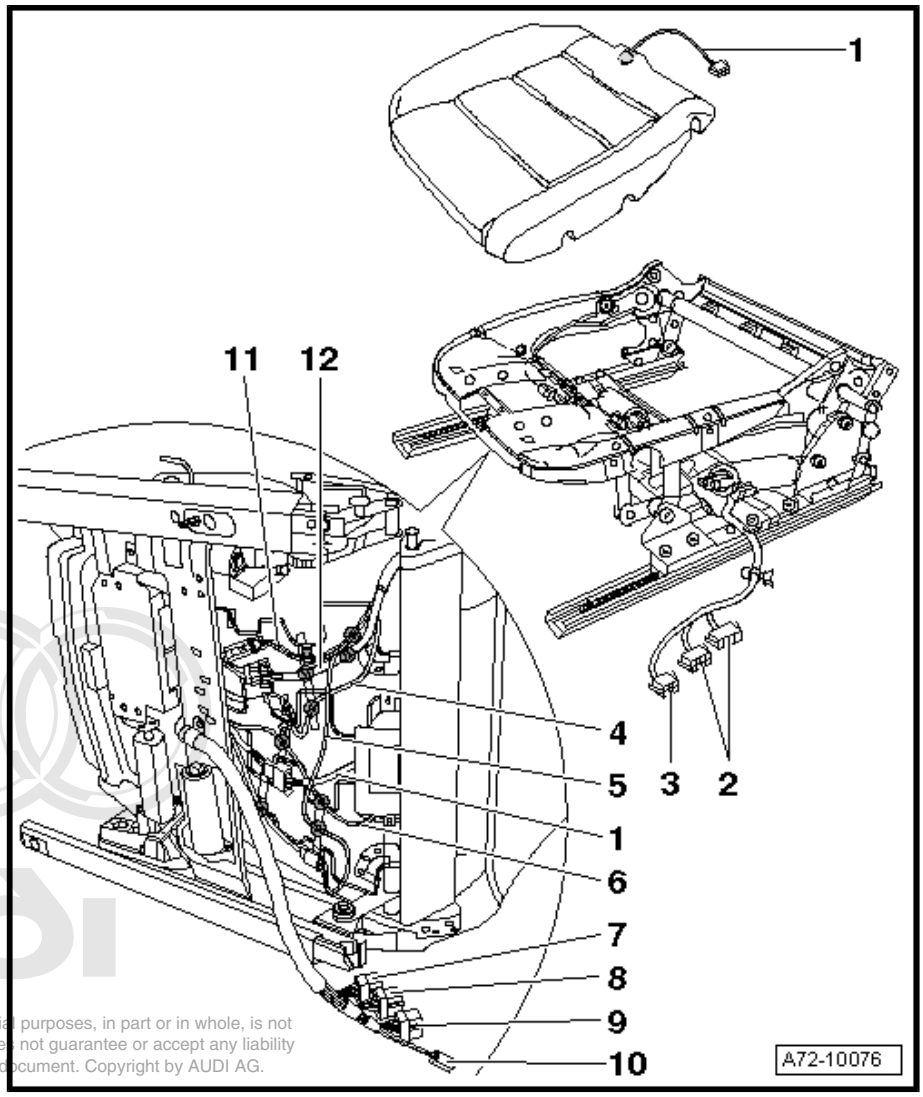
8 - Connector for seat heating (green)

9 - Connector for current supply (red)

10 - Connector for airbag (orange)

11 - Wiring harness for airbag

12 - Wiring harness for electric lumbar support (tunnel side)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.41 Wiring assignment for backrest

1 - Connector for side airbag

2 - Wire for side airbag (earth)

3 - Wiring harness for side airbag

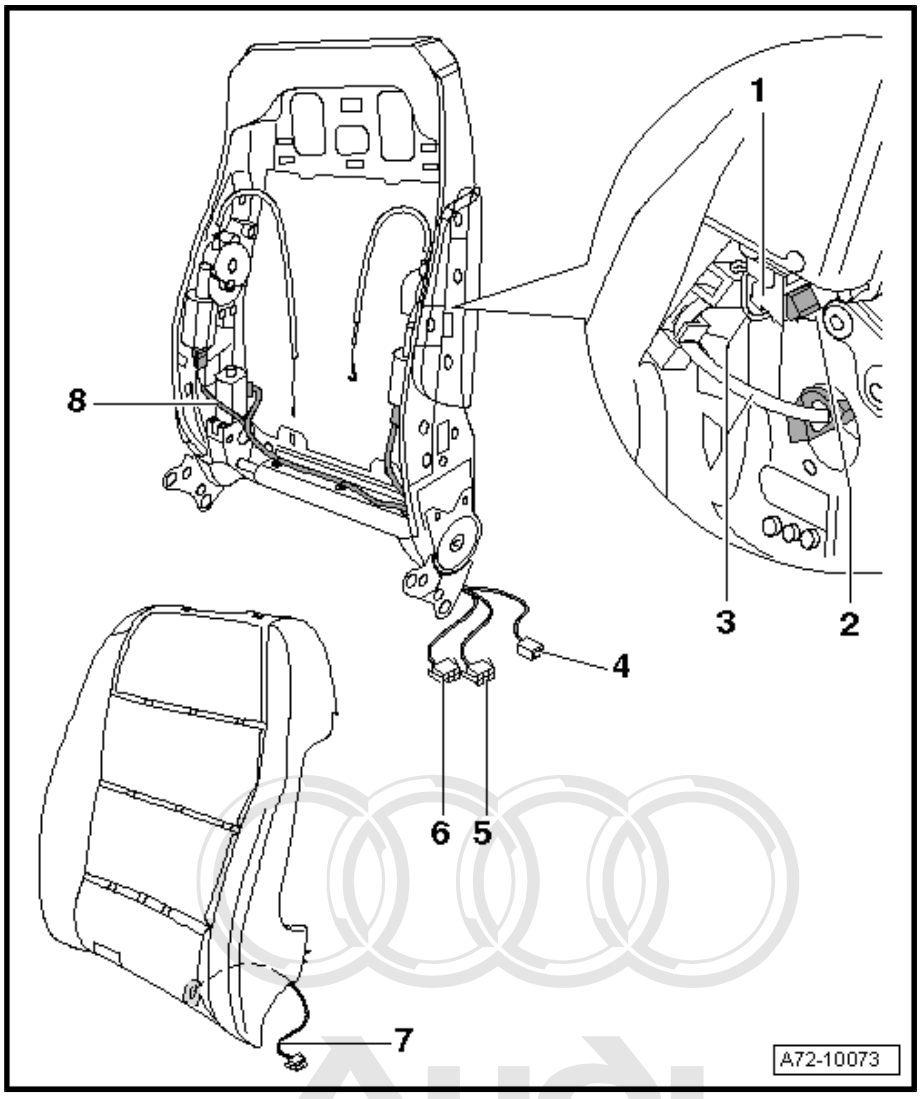
4 - Connector for side airbag

5 - Connector for electric lumbar support

6 - Connector for backrest heating

7 - Wiring harness for backrest heating

8 - Wiring harness for electric lumbar support (tunnel side)

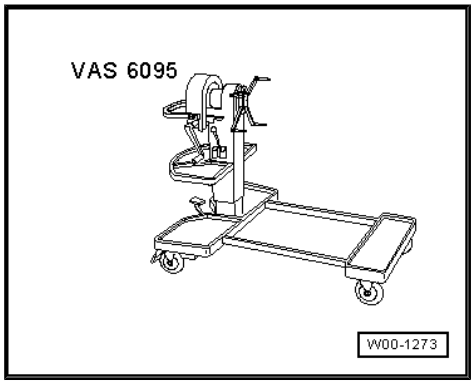


2.42 Removing and installing wiring harness for backrest

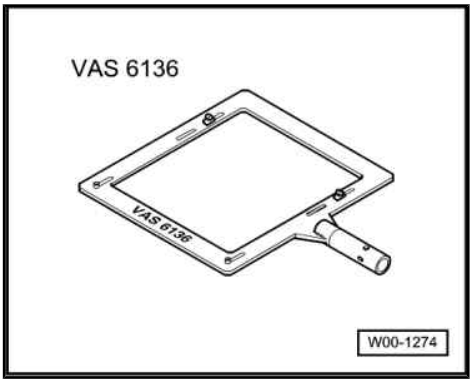
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



♦ Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



1 - Connector (3x)

2 - Wiring harness

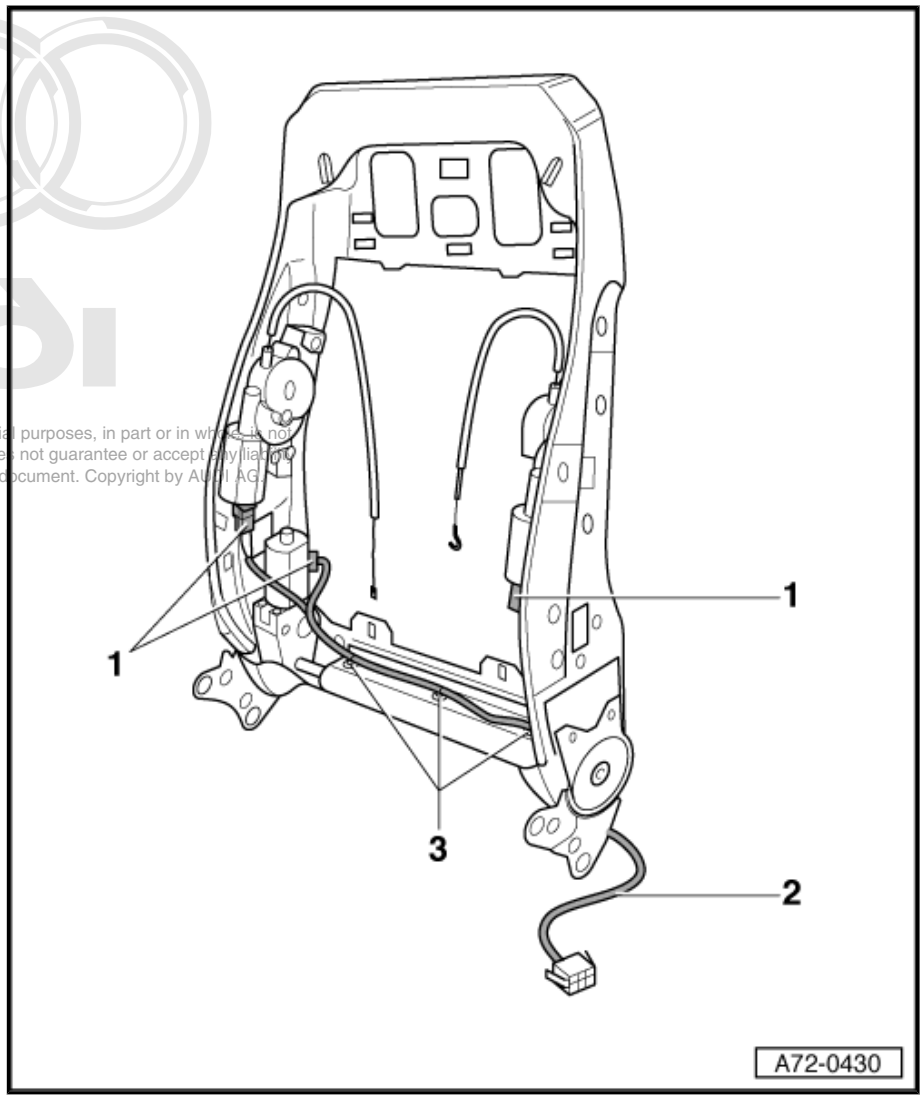
♦ Removing

- Remove seat ⇒ page 379 .
- Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
- Remove side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 392 .
- Remove side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 395 .
- Remove backrest ⇒ page 388 .
- Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 417 .
- Remove backrest cover and padding ⇒ page 587 .
- Unfasten cable ties -3- (3x).
- Unplug connectors -1- (3x).
- Detach wiring harness -2-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

3 - Cable ties (3x)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.43 Exploded view - front seat (memory seat, seat with electric adjustment) without active head restraint system - vehicles from 11/2006 onwards

Note

- *With the introduction of the backrest without active head restraint system, the active head restraint is no longer installed.*
- *The upper section of the outer backrest frame has been modified for the backrest without active head restraint system.*
- *The head restraints for the backrest without active head restraint system do not have the angle adjustment feature.*
- *The upper back section of the padding has been adapted to suit the modified outer backrest frame.*
- *The method of attaching the four-way lumbar support to the upper section of the outer backrest frame was modified with the introduction of the backrest without active head restraint system.*
- *The steps for removing and installing the longitudinal and height adjustment motors of the four-way lumbar support are similar to those for removing and installing the motors on the backrest with active head restraint system.*
- *The backrest covers are identical for seats with and without active head restraint system.*

WARNING

For safety reasons, do not use the head restraints of seats with active head restraint system for seats without active head restraint system.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Outer backrest frame

2 - Mounting for head restraint guide (right-side)

- ❑ Welded to outer backrest frame

3 - Mounting for head restraint guide (left-side)

- ❑ Welded to outer backrest frame

4 - Spring

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Engaged in outer backrest frame
- ❑ For securing four-way lumbar support at top

5 - Four-way lumbar support

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 437

6 - Head restraint guide (right-side)

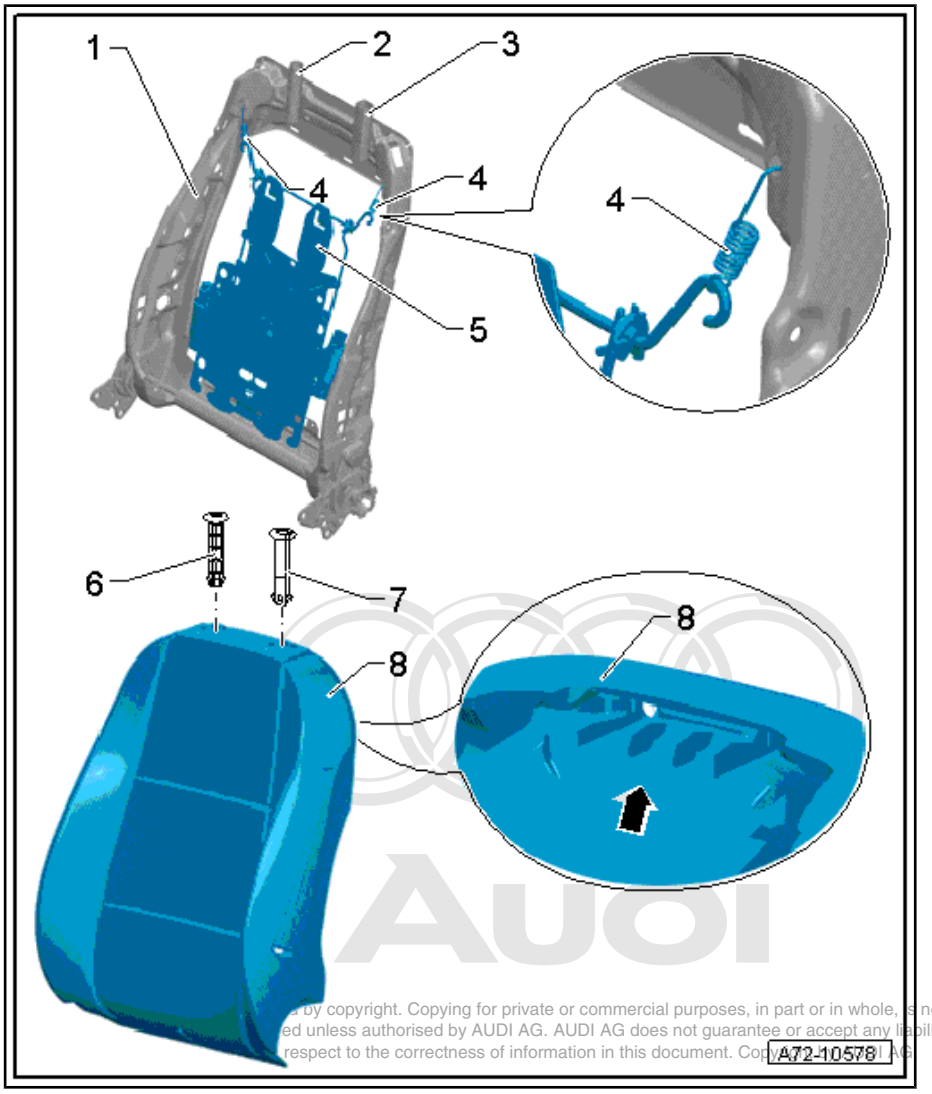
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 590

7 - Head restraint guide (left-side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 590

8 - Padding

- ❑ Upper back section adapted to new outer backrest frame
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 587



by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not ed unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright AUDI AG

2.44 Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing head restraint

Removing and installing head restraint ⇒ page 426

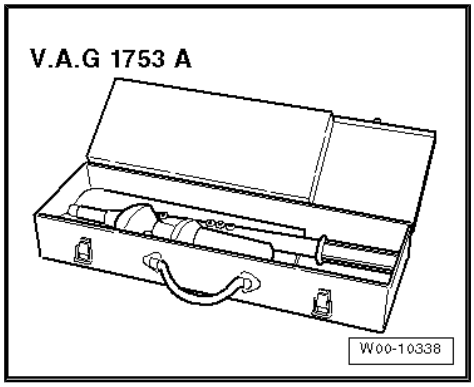
2.45 Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing backrest cover panel

Removing and installing backrest cover panel ⇒ page 417

2.46 Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing four-way lumbar support

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A-



Removing

WARNING

Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

– Remove front seat:

♦ Front seat (standard seat) ⇒ page 332

♦ Front seat (memory seat, seat with electric adjustment) ⇒ page 379

– Remove backrest cover panel:

♦ Front seat (standard seat) ⇒ page 368

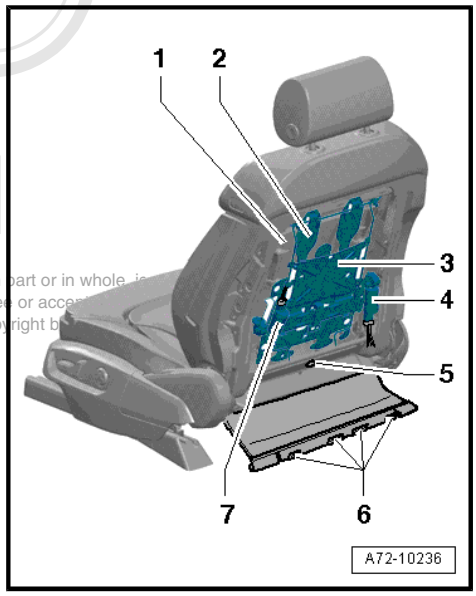
♦ Front seat (memory seat, seat with electric adjustment) ⇒ page 417

– Use screwdriver to prise out fastening strips -6- (4x).

– Place foil between padding and outer backrest frame as protection against metal particles.

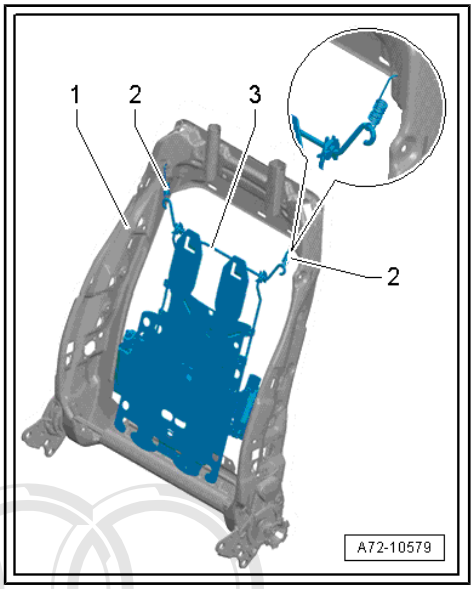
– Drill out rivet -5-.

– Unplug connectors at lumbar support longitudinal and height adjustment motors -4- and -7-.

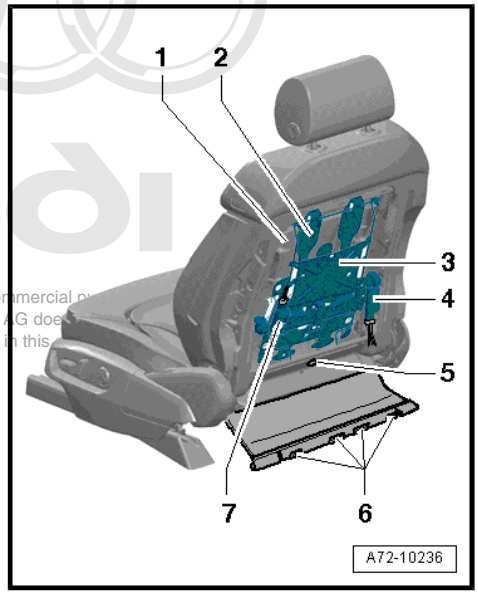


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Disengage four-way lumbar support -3- with springs -2- (2x) at outer backrest frame -3-.



– Unfasten Velcro strip between lumbar support -2- and backrest padding -1-.
– Disengage lumbar support -2- at top of lumbar support frame -3-.
– Take out lumbar support frame -3- with lumbar support -2-.



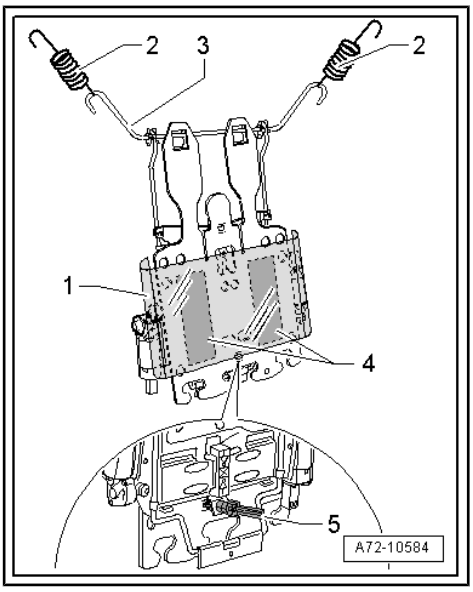
Installing

WARNING

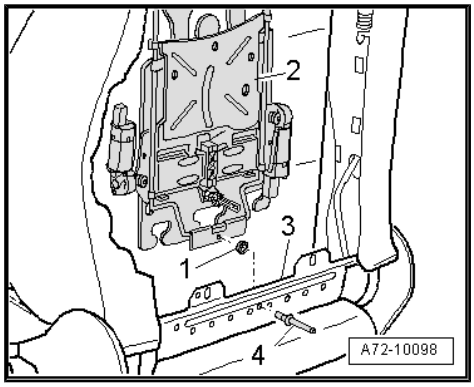
Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Place plastic foil -1- over Velcro strips -4- of lumbar support. Secure plastic foil in position at lumbar support.
– Make sure lumbar support is connected to lumbar support frame with locking element -5- or a suitable pin.
– Place lumbar support frame behind outer backrest frame and engage lumbar support frame -3- in mounting for outer backrest frame (top left and right) with springs -2-.



– Before setting rivet -4-, fit a plastic washer -1- between lumbar support -2- and outer backrest frame -3-.
– Rivet lumbar support frame -2- to outer backrest frame -3-.
– Pull out plastic foil between backrest padding and lumbar support.
– Fasten Velcro strip of lumbar support to backrest padding.
– Plug in electrical connectors at longitudinal and height adjustment motors.



Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– Connect battery with ignition switched on. For procedure, refer to ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .
– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

2.47 Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing lumbar support adjustment motors

Motors for:

- Lumbar support longitudinal adjustment -V125- / -V126- , removing and installing ⇒ page 425
- Lumbar support height adjustment -V129- / -V130- , removing and installing ⇒ page 425

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.48 Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing head restraint guides

Removing and installing head restraint guides ⇒ page 590

2.49 Backrest without active head restraint system - removing and installing cover with padding

Removing and installing cover with padding ⇒ page 587

2.50 Backrest without active head restraint system - detaching cover from padding

Detaching cover from padding ⇒ page 590

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 S6 front seat (memory seat, seat with electric adjustment)

RoW: vehicles from 06.06 onwards

Country-specific version: vehicles from 08/06 onwards

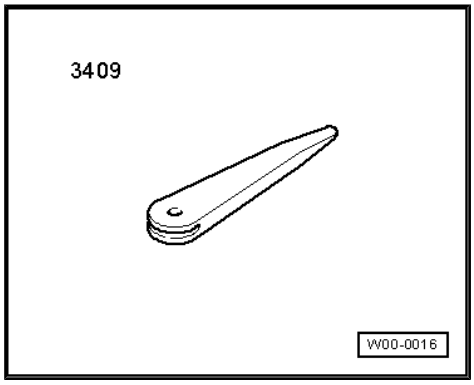
Note

- *Mit Serieneinsatz des Sitzes erfolgte die Modulare Leitungsverlegung.*
- *Check the type of front seats and the vehicle model and perform the repair work accordingly.*
- *Note that there are two possible modular wire routing versions, »Modular Light« and »Modular«* *⇒ page 339* *.*

3.1 Moving front seat to service position

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge -3409-



Setting service position

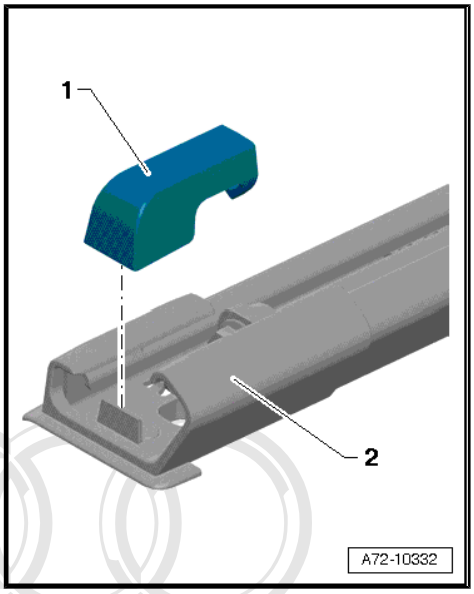
– Move seat as far towards rear and top as possible.

Note

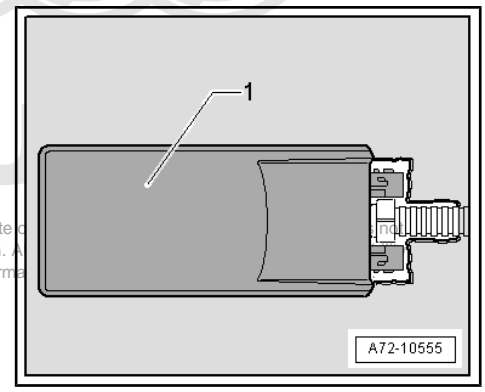
For greater clarity the surrounding area is not shown in the illustration.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Using removal wedge -3409- prise caps -1- off seat rail covers -3- and seat longitudinal adjustment spindle -2-.



– Open cover panel -1- of connector point beneath front seat ⇒ page 340 .



Note

- *For greater clarity, seat is not shown in illustration.*
- *Do not unplug electrical wiring.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG.
with respect to the correctness of

Taking seat out of service position

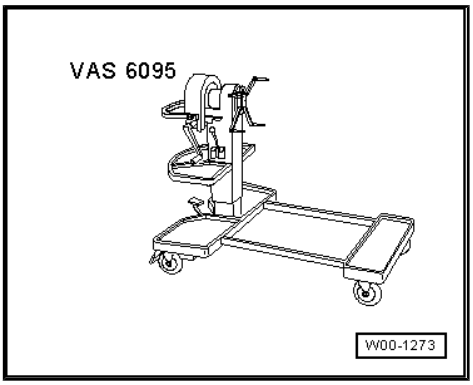
Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

– Engage cover panel properly with connector point.

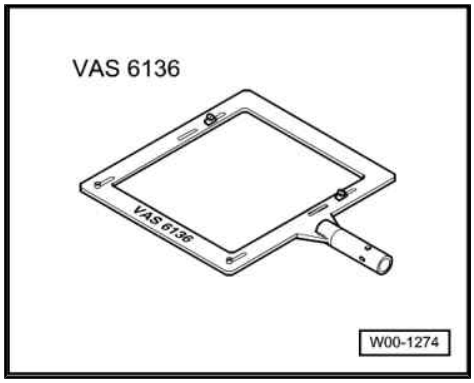
3.2 Attaching front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



♦ Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



Attaching front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136-

- Front seat removed from vehicle

– Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .

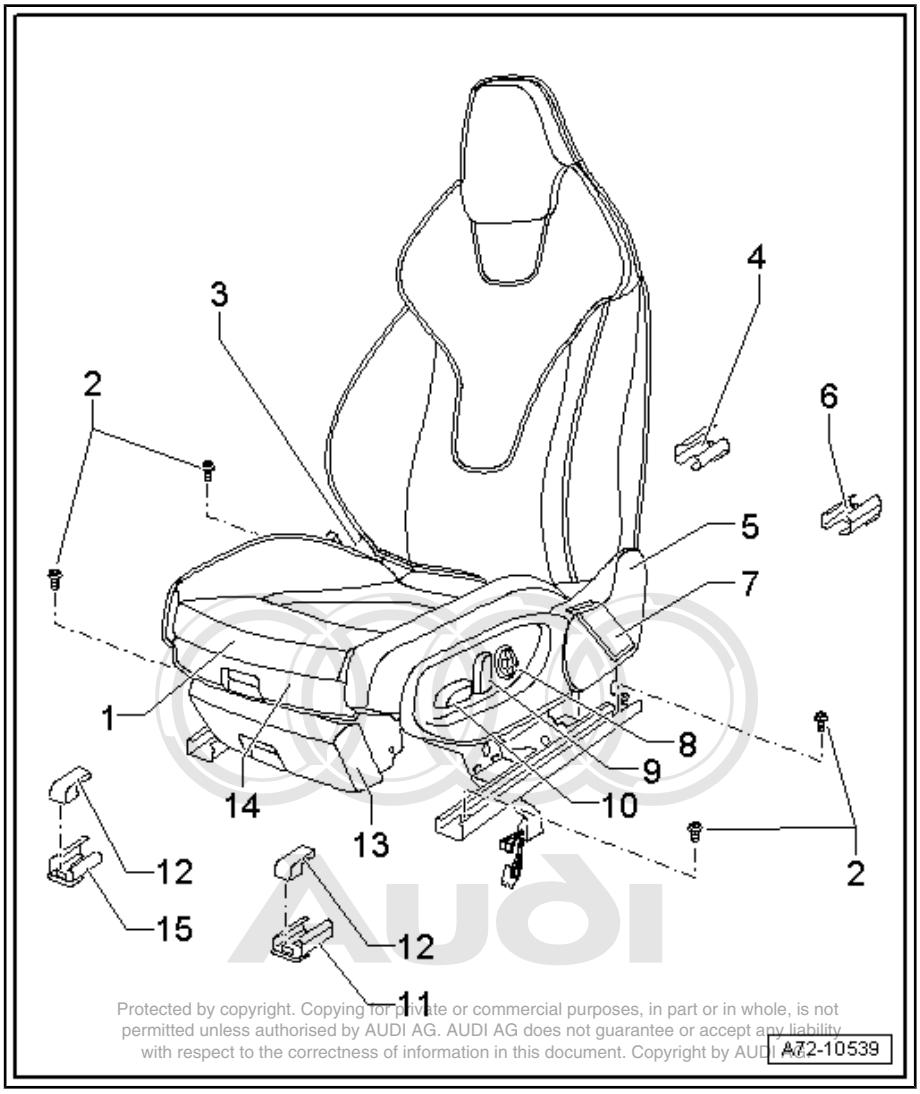
3.3 Exploded view - front seat

Note

♦ *The illustration is based on the driver's seat. The front passenger's seat is similar with the bolt-on parts fitted on the opposite sides.*

♦ *For reasons of clarity the floor covering is not shown in the illustration.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Front seat

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 446

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 50 Nm
- ❑ 4x

3 - Trim

- ❑ On tunnel side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 466

4 - Cover for seat rail

- ❑ Rear right
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 458

5 - Trim panels

- ❑ On sill side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 462

6 - Cover for seat rail

- ❑ Rear left
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 458

7 - Assembly cover

- ❑ Clipped in
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 462

8 - Lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / -E177-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 521
- ❑ Removing and installing four-way lumbar support ⇒ page 482

9 - Actuator

- ♦ For backrest adjustment button -E425-
  - ❑ Removing and installing actuator ⇒ page 474
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 523

10 - Actuator

- ♦ For seat longitudinal adjustment button -E418-
- ♦ For rake adjustment button -E421-
- ♦ For seat height adjustment button -E424-
  - ❑ Removing and installing actuator ⇒ page 473
  - ❑ Removing and installing button ⇒ page 523

11 - Cover for seat rail

- ❑ Front left
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 458

12 - Spindle cover

- ❑ Clipped onto seat rails at front left and right
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 458

13 - Drawer / storage compartment

- Removing and installing drawer ⇒ page 355
- Removing and installing storage compartment ⇒ page 358

14 - Seat depth adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 494

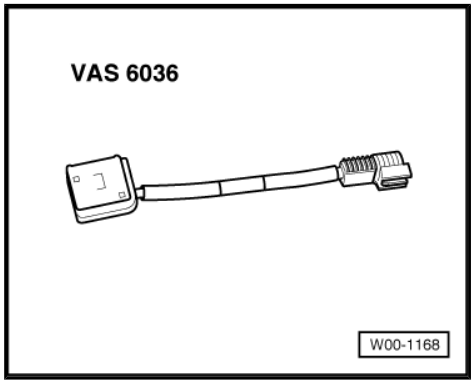
15 - Cover for seat rail

- ❑ Front right
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 458

3.4 Removing and installing front seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Airbag adapter -VAS 6036-



Note

Removal and installation are described for a driver's seat. The procedures for removal and installation are similar for the front passenger's seat.

Removing

WARNING

Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

– Move seat to service position ⇒ page 442 .
– Remove assembly cover ⇒ page 462 .
– Remove belt end fitting ⇒ page 67 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove bolts -1- (2x) at front.

2 - Front seat

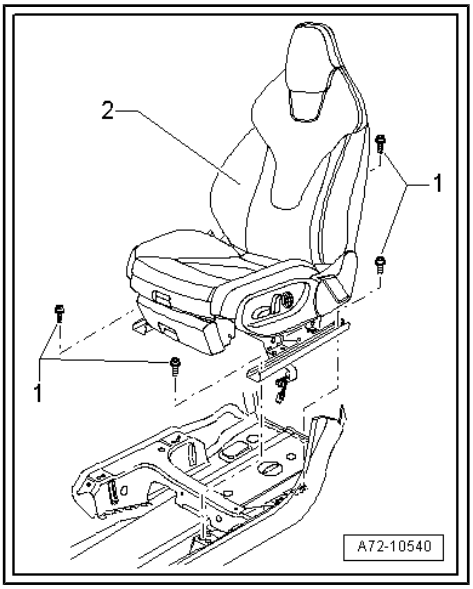
– Operate seat longitudinal adjuster and move seat -2- as far forwards as it will go.

– Remove bolts -1- (2x) at rear.

– Disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .

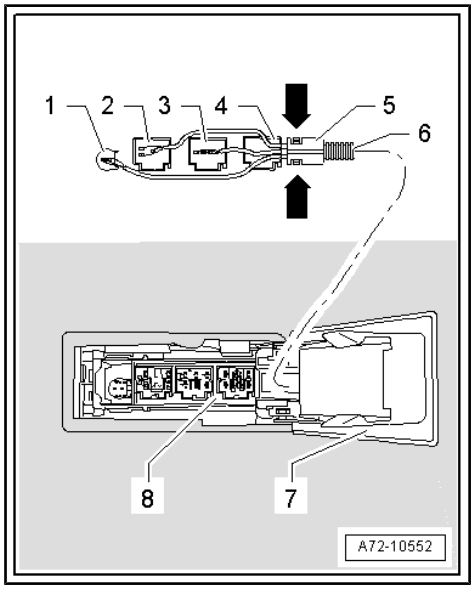
WARNING

Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unclip cover panel -7- of connector point ⇒ page 340 .
– Disengage and detach cover panel -7-.
– Release cable retainer -5- and detach it from connector point -8-.
– To do so, press retaining tabs -arrows- on cable retainer.
– Unplug connectors -1-, -2-, -3- and -4- at connector point -7- in floor ⇒ page 452 .
– Connect airbag adapter -VAS 6281- ⇒ page 455 .
– Lift front seat out of vehicle with the assistance of a second mechanic.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Install front seat before detaching airbag adapter -VAS 6036- ⇒ page 455 .

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Plug in connectors at couplings of connector point in floor ⇒ page 452 .
– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .
– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

Tightening torques ⇒ page 444

Audi
Printing for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.5 Removing front seat if control unit or seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V288- are defective

Note

For greater clarity, the padding of the seat pan and the backrest have been removed in the illustrations.

Removing

WARNING

Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags *⇒ page 110* *.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– If possible, move the seat to the highest position.

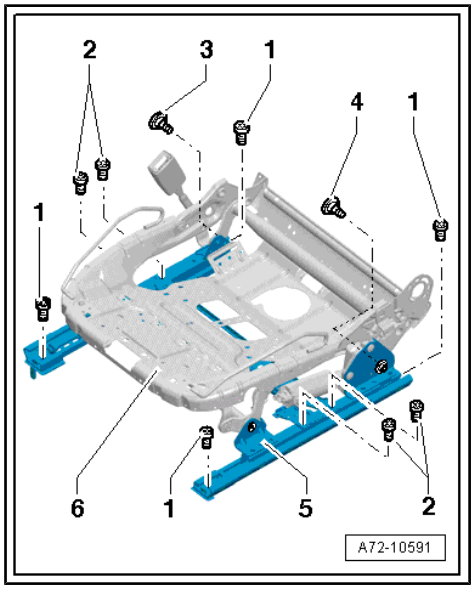
– Remove bolt -3-.

– Remove bolt -4-.

Caution

Check electrical/electronic components and wiring before loosening bolts -2-.

After slackening off the bolts -2-, the lower seat pan frame -4- including the seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288- with cross member must be renewed.



– Fold seat forwards. If necessary remove steering wheel ⇒ page 131 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

Note

To avoid unnecessary repair costs, check the electrical/electronic components and wiring before removing the seat any further.

– Perform the following checks:

- Check fuse ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations
- Check voltage at connector point and perform Fault Finding if necessary ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations
- Check voltage at control unit ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations
- Check voltage at seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288- ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations

– Renew fuse if it is defective ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

– Repair or renew wire if there is no voltage at connector point ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

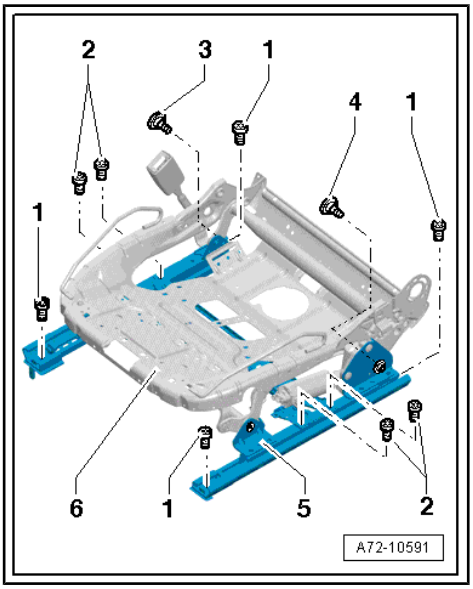
– If control unit is defective it must be renewed ⇒ page 524 .

– If seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288- is defective, renew lower seat pan frame ⇒ page 490 .

Further removal (only if seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288- defective):

– Disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .

– Remove bolts -2- (4x) for the cross-piece on both sides.



WARNING

Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Unplug connector at seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288- .

– Move seat until bolts -1- (4x) are visible.

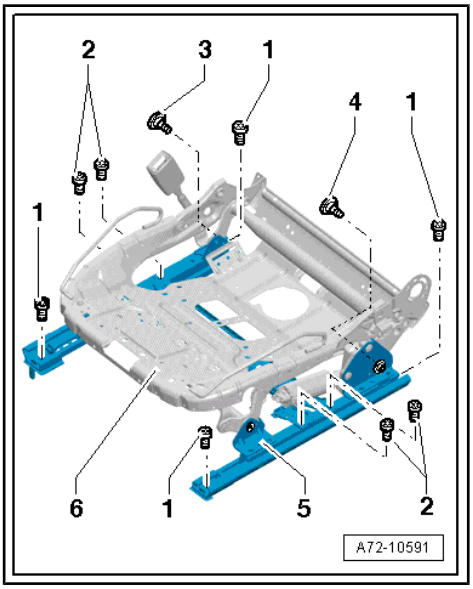
– Remove bolts -1- (4x).

– Unplug connectors at connector point ⇒ page 452 .

– Connect airbag adapter -VAS 6036- ⇒ page 455 .

– Lift front seat out of vehicle with the assistance of a second mechanic.

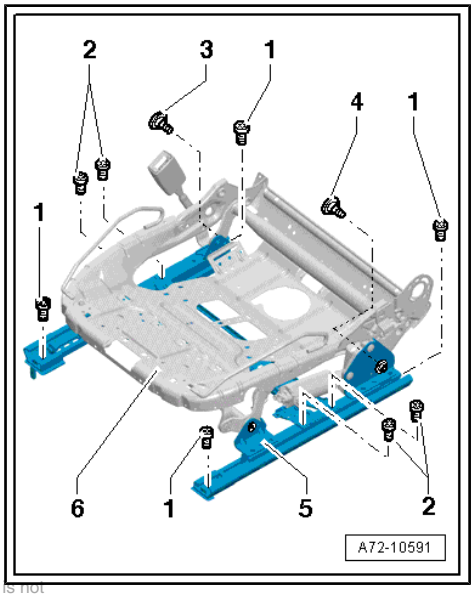
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 443 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Separate lower -5- and upper -6- seat pan frames ⇒ page 490 .

– Renew lower seat pan frame -4- with seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288- with cross member ⇒ page 490 .



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Install front seat before detaching airbag adapter -VAS 6281- ⇒ page 455 .

– Plug in connectors at couplings of connector point in floor ⇒ page 452 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .

– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

Tightening torques:

- Exploded view of front seat ⇒ page 444
- Exploded view of seat pan ⇒ page 488

3.6 Unplugging and plugging in connectors

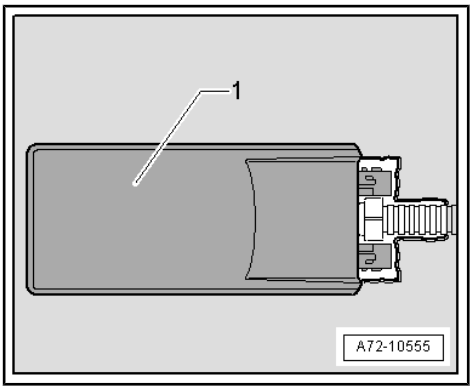
The connector point is located in the vehicle floor under the front section of the seat.

Unplugging connectors

WARNING

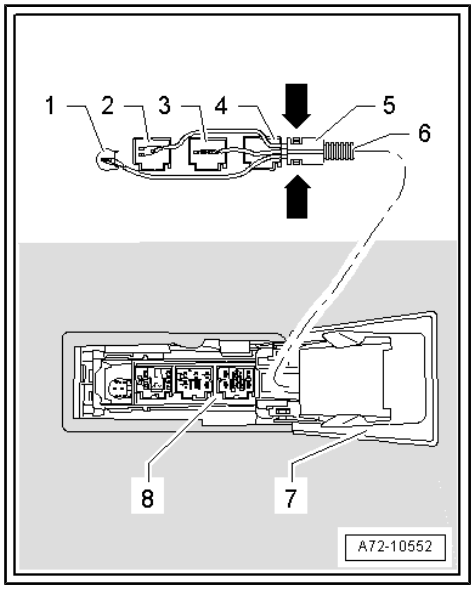
Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

– Move seat to service position ⇒ page 442 .
– Disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .
– Open cover panel -1- of connector point beneath front seat ⇒ page 340 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Open cable retainer -5-.
– To do so, press retaining tabs -arrows- on cable retainer.
– Lift cable retainer -5- off connector point -8-.



Note

The number of connectors may vary depending on equipment. The description relates to the version with maximum equipment.

WARNING

Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Unplug side airbag connector -1-.
– Unplug power supply connector -2-.
– Unplug seat heating connector -3-.
– Unplug belt buckle connector -4-.
– Plug in airbag adapter -VAS 6036- at side airbag connector on front seat.

Note

Make sure airbag adapter engages properly.

Plugging in connectors

Plug in the connectors in the reverse order. Observe the following:

WARNING

- ***Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags*** ***⇒ page 110*** ***.***
- ***Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

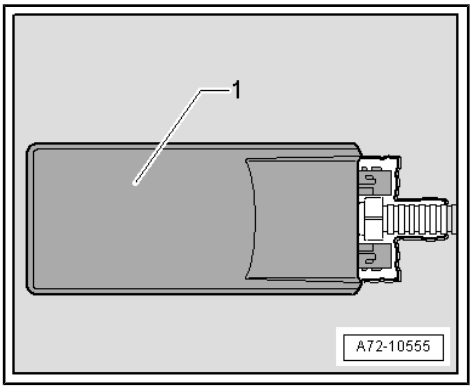
Copyright by AUDI AG.
Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Make sure cover panel -1- is properly engaged with connector point ⇒ page 340 .

– Switch on ignition.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

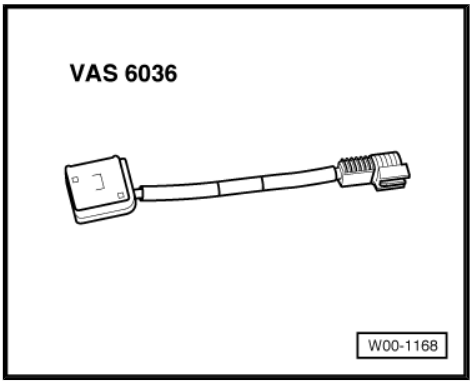
– Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .

– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

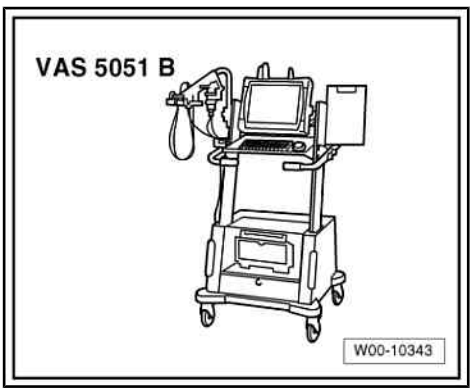
3.7 Connecting airbag adapter

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Airbag adapter -VAS 6036-



♦ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B-



Unplugging airbag connector

WARNING

Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

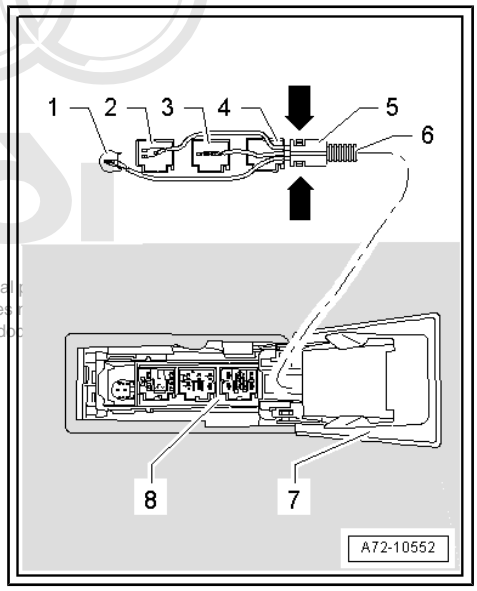
– Move seat to service position ⇒ page 442 .

– Disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .

WARNING

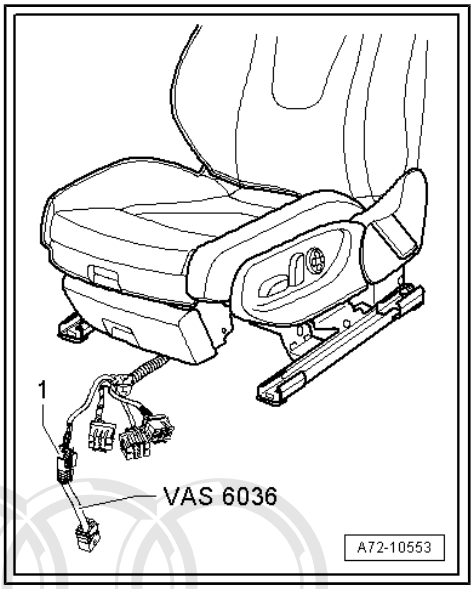
Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Release and unplug connector for side airbag -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does
with respect to the correctness of information in this doc

– Attach airbag adapter -VAS 6036- to connector for side airbag on seat -1-.



Caution

Leave airbag adapter -VAS 6036- connected to seat until seat has been re-installed.

Plugging in airbag connector

Plug in connectors for airbag in reverse order; note the following:

WARNING

- ***Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .***
- ***Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

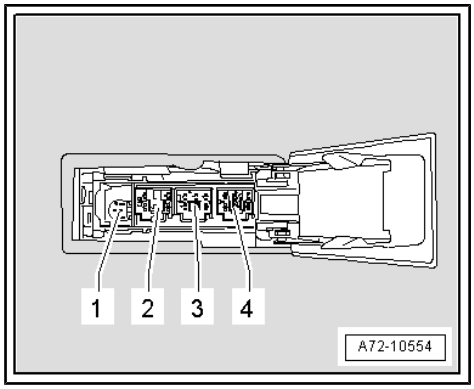
WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .
– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

3.8 Connector point connectors

Connector assignment ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations



1 - Side airbag

2 - Power supply for seat adjustment

3 - Seat heating

4 - Belt buckle

Note

The number of connectors may vary depending on equipment.
The description relates to the version with maximum equipment.

3.9 Exploded view of modular wire routing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Modular wire routing is installed from the introduction of the front seat described.

Exploded view of modular wire routing ⇒ page 338

3.10 Modular wire routing versions

This section explains the differences between the »Modular Light« and »Modular« routing options.

Modular wire routing versions ⇒ page 339

3.11 Modular wire routing with corrugated tube on front seat

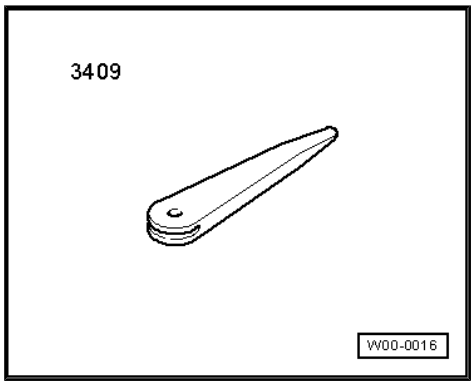
The following description contains the steps required for and notes on the removal and installation of the corrugated tube and wiring.

Modular wire routing with corrugated tube on front seat ⇒ page 340

3.12 Removing and installing spindle covers and seat rail covers

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge -3409-



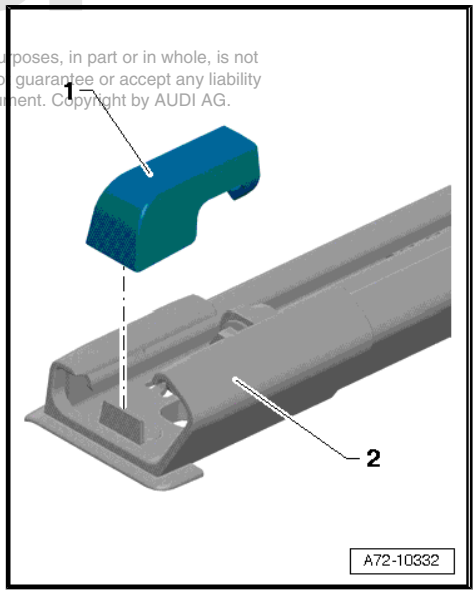
Note

The procedures for removing and installing the spindle covers and seat rail covers are described for the driver's seat rail on the sill side. For greater clarity the surrounding area is not shown in the corresponding illustration.

Removing spindle cover

– Move seat to service position ⇒ page 442 .

– Use removal wedge -3409- to prise spindle cover -1- off seat rail cover -3- and seat longitudinal adjustment spindle -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing spindle cover

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

– Make sure the spindle cover is properly engaged.

Removing seat rail cover

Note

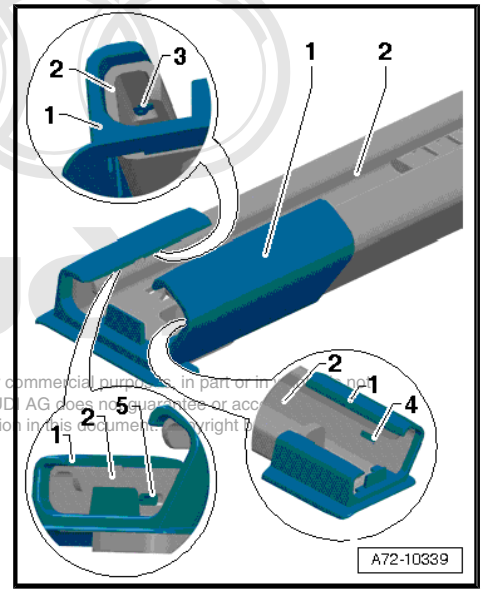
The procedures for removing and installing the seat rail covers are described for the driver's seat rail on the sill side. Removal and installation of cover (tunnel side) are similar.

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 446 .

– Unclip retaining tabs -3-, -4- and -5- of cover -1- from seat rail -2-.
– Detach cover -1- towards front, keeping it as parallel as possible with seat rail.



Installing seat rail cover

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

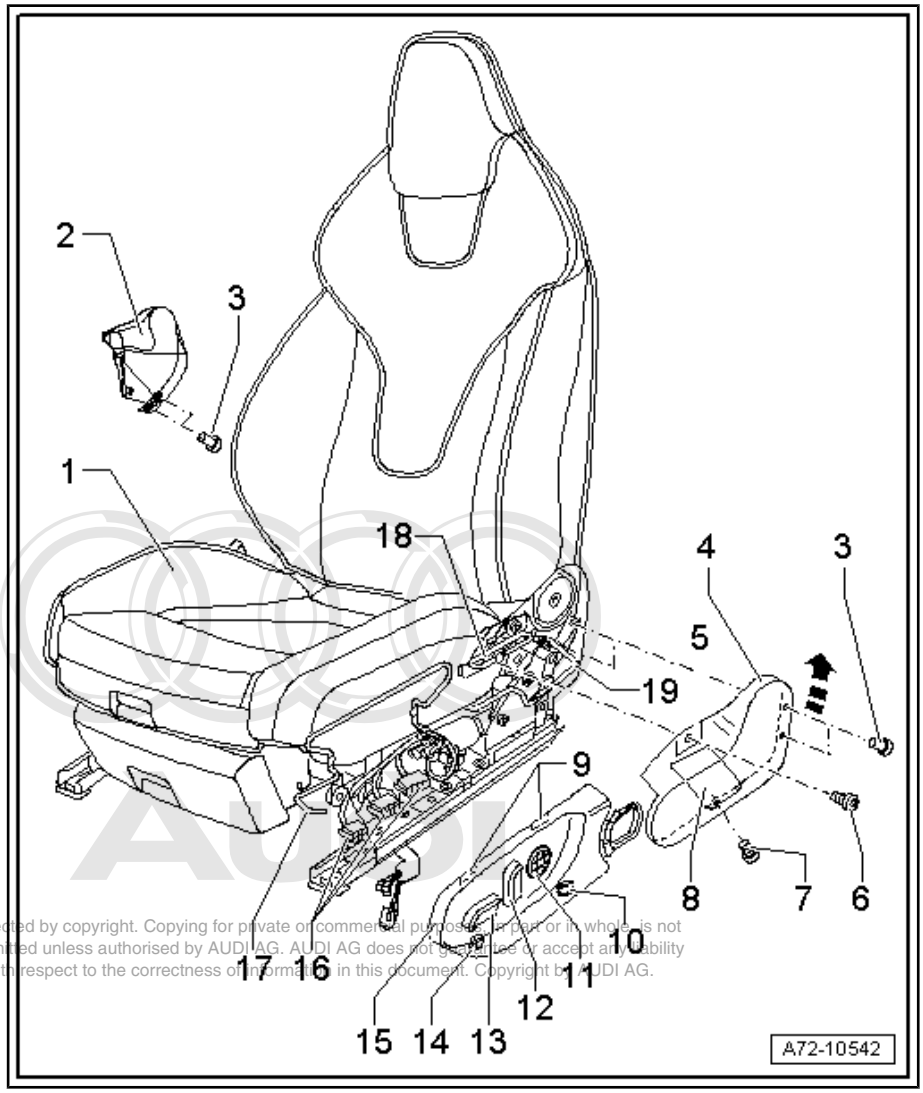
– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .
– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

3.13 Exploded view of trim (sill side and tunnel side)



1 - Front seat

2 - Trim (tunnel side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 466

3 - Spreader rivet

- ❑ 4x

4 - Trim (rear, sill side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 462

5 - Bracket

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.0 Nm

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 3.5 Nm

8 - Assembly cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 462

9 - Bracket

- ❑ 2x

10 - Lug

11 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E177-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 521

12 - Actuator

- ♦ For backrest adjustment button -E425-
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 474
  - ❑ Buttons -E418- , -E421- , -E424- and -E425- are located in a joint housing ⇒ Item 13 (page 461) .

13 - Actuator

- ❑ For seat longitudinal adjustment button -E418-
- ❑ For rake adjustment button -E421-
- ❑ For seat height adjustment button -E424-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 473
- ❑ Buttons -E418- , -E421- and -E424- are located in a joint housing ⇒ Item 12 (page 461) .

14 - Fastener

15 - Trim (front, sill side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 462

16 - Connector

- ❑ 3x

17 - Retaining bracket (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 469

18 - Retaining bracket (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 471

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

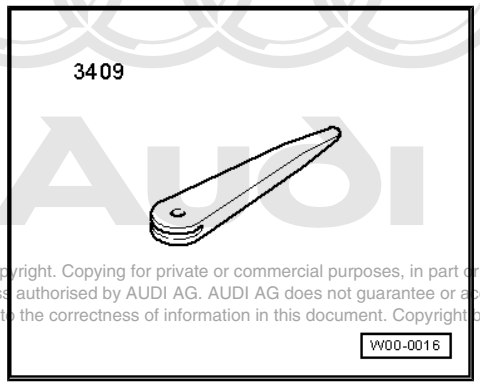
19 - Retaining bracket (rear)

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 470

3.14 Removing and installing trim and assembly cover (sill side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge -3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing and installing assembly cover

Note

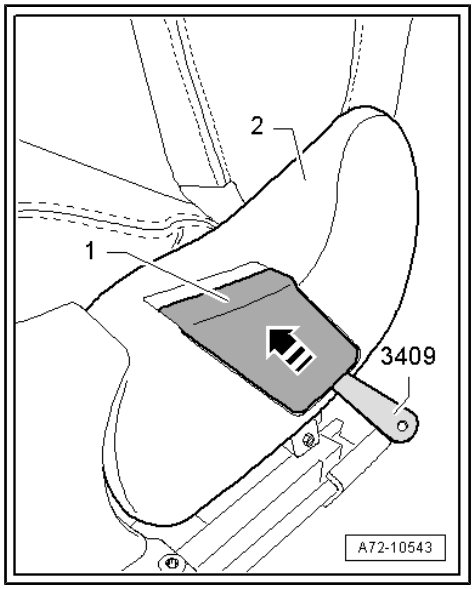
The assembly cover can be removed and installed with the front seat fitted.

Removing

– Position removal wedge -3409- at bottom and in centre of the assembly cover -1-.

– Prise out assembly cover -1-.

– Detach assembly cover -1- from trim (sill side, rear) -2- in direction of -arrow-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Removing and installing trim on sill side (rear and front)

Removing

WARNING

♦ *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*

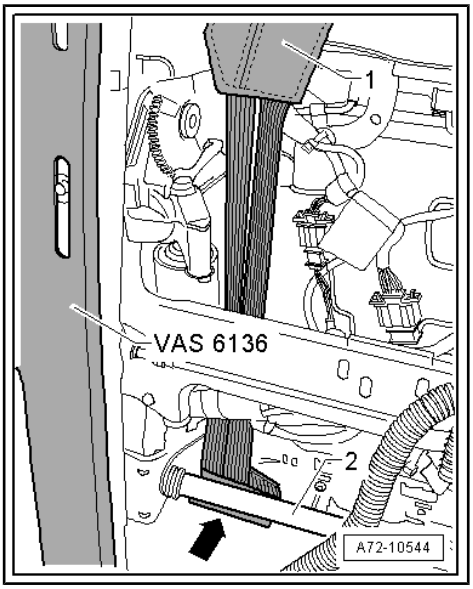
♦ *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 446 .

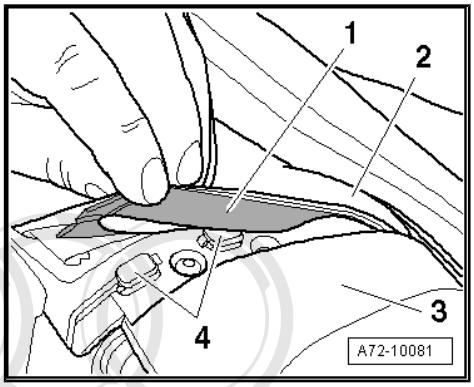
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 443 .

– Remove assembly cover ⇒ page 462 .

– Disengage tab -arrow- on cover -1- at upper seat pan frame -2-.

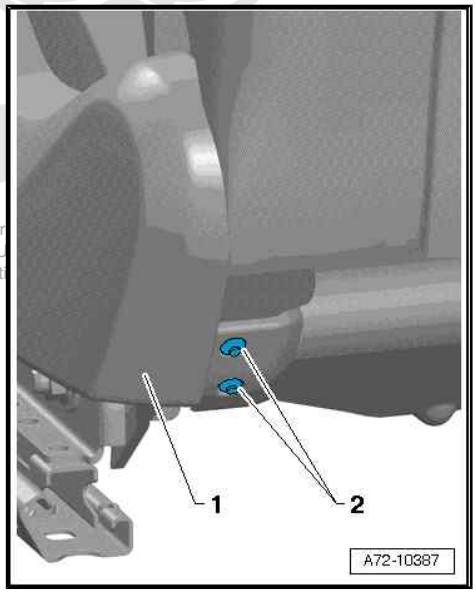


– Disengage fastening strip -1- of footwell trim -2- from retainers -4- (2x) of trim (sill side) at rear -3-.



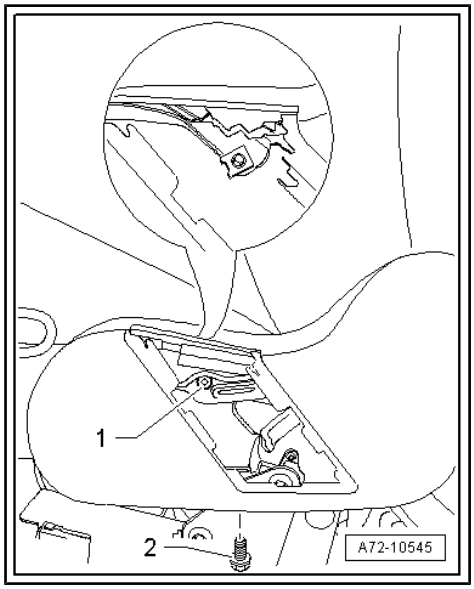
– Remove spreader rivets -2- (2x).

1 - Trim (rear, sill side)

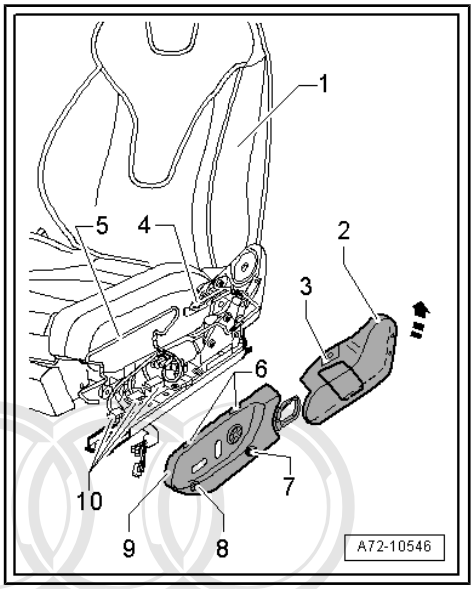


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AU
with respect to the correctness of informati

– Remove bolts -1- and -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



– Disengage trim (sill side, rear) -2- upwards at retaining bracket (rear) -4-.
– By twisting in direction of -arrow-, separate trim (sill side, rear) -2- from trim (sill side, front) -9-.
– Pull trim (sill side, front) -9- forwards to disengage lug -7- from retaining bracket (front) -5-.
– Disengage trim (sill side, front) -9- upwards at retainers -6- (2x).
– Open fastener -8-.
– Unplug connectors -10- (3x).
– Detach trim (sill side, front) -9-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .
– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

Tightening torque ⇒ page 460

3.15 Removing and installing trim (tunnel side)

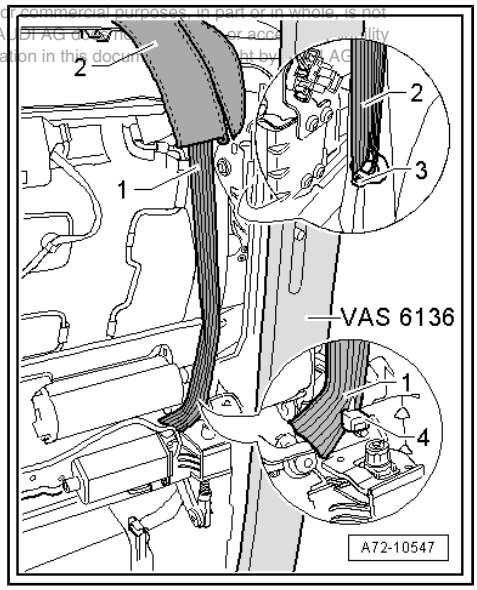
Removing

WARNING

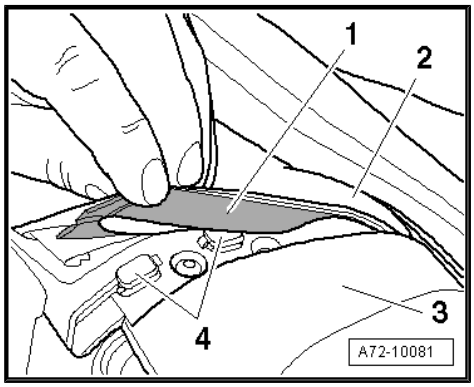
- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document copyright by AUDI AG

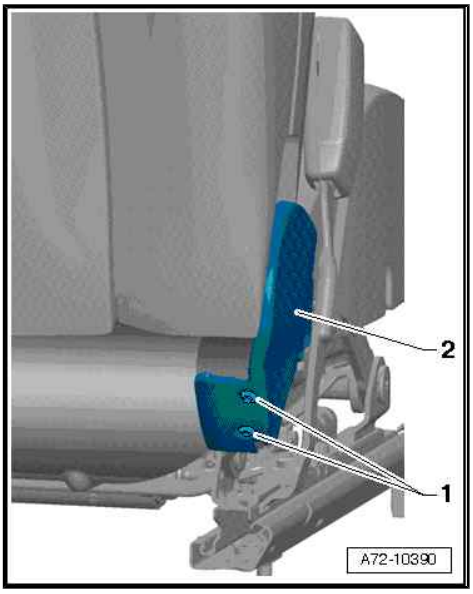
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 446 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 443 .
– Unfasten clip -4- on belt -1-.
– Unfasten clip -3- on belt -2-.



– Disengage fastening strip -1- of footwell trim -2- from retainers -4- (2x) of trim (tunnel side) -3-.



– Remove spreader rivets -2- (2x).
– Lift off trim (tunnel side) -1-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .
– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

3.16 Exploded view of retaining brackets for trim (sill side)

I Retaining bracket (front)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Upper seat pan frame

- ❑ With cover and padding

2 - Retaining bracket (front)

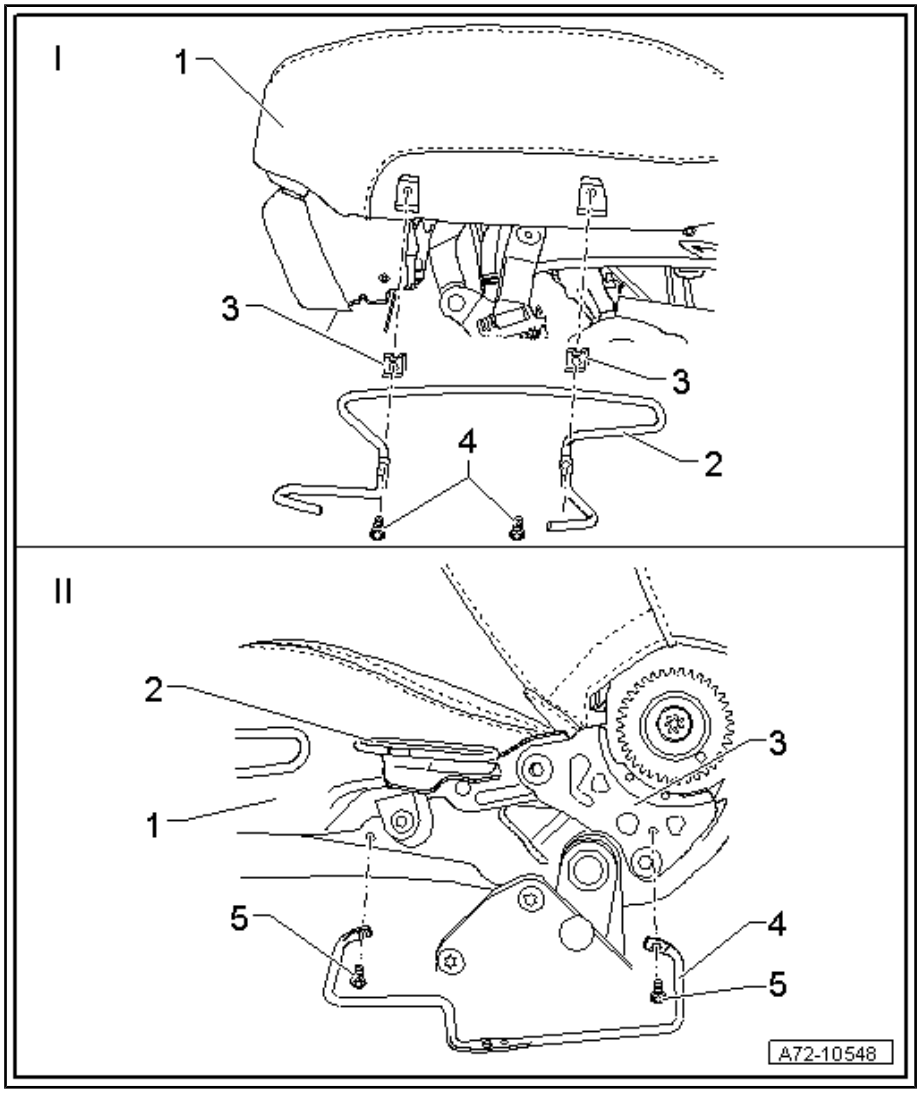
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 469

3 - Speed nut

- ❑ 2x

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 3.5 Nm
- ❑ 2x



II Retaining bracket (rear)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

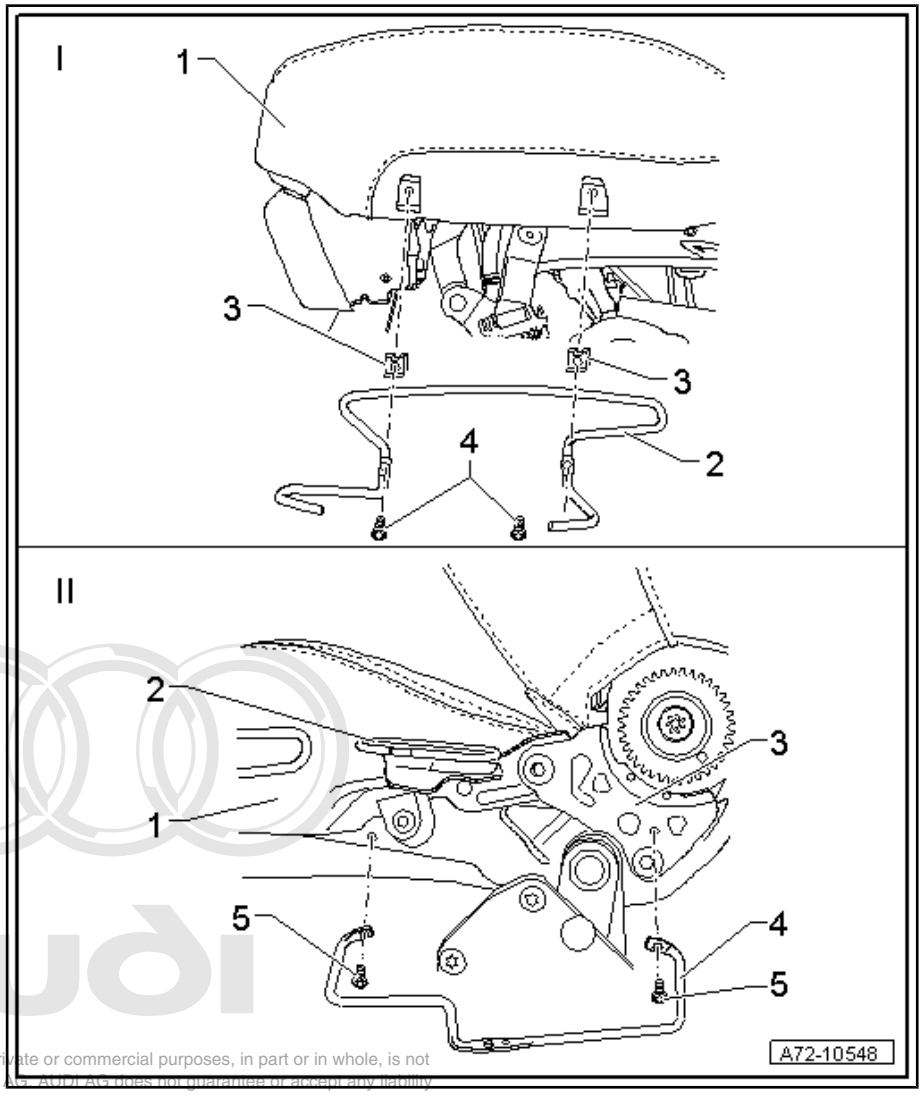
1 - Upper seat pan frame
- ❑ With cover and padding

2 - Retaining bracket (top)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 471

3 - Backrest
- ❑ With cover and padding

4 - Retaining bracket (rear)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 470

5 - Bolt
- ❑ 3.5 Nm
- ❑ 2x



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.17 Removing and installing retaining bracket (front)

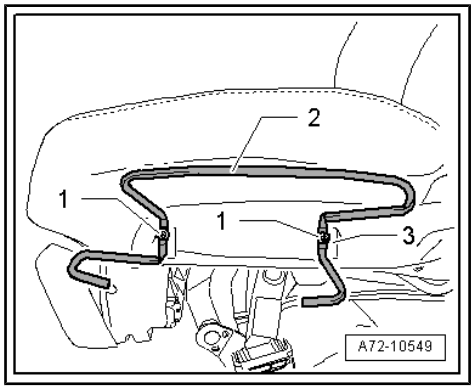
Removing

WARNING

Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

– Remove trim panels and assembly cover (sill side) ⇒ page 462 .

– Remove bolts -1- (2x).
– Detach retaining bracket (front) -2- from upper seat pan frame -3-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .
– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

Audi
Copyright by AUDI AG. Distribution to third parties and reproduction for non-commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.18 Removing and installing retaining bracket (rear)

Removing

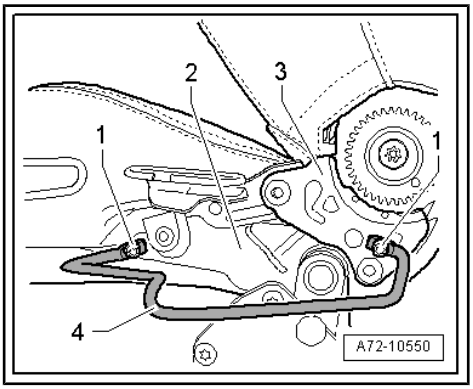
WARNING

Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

– Remove assembly cover ⇒ page 462 .
– Remove trim (sill side, rear) ⇒ page 462 .

– Remove bolts -1- (2x).

– Detach retaining bracket (rear) -4- from upper seat pan frame -2- and backrest -3-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .

– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

3.19 Removing and installing retaining bracket (top)

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

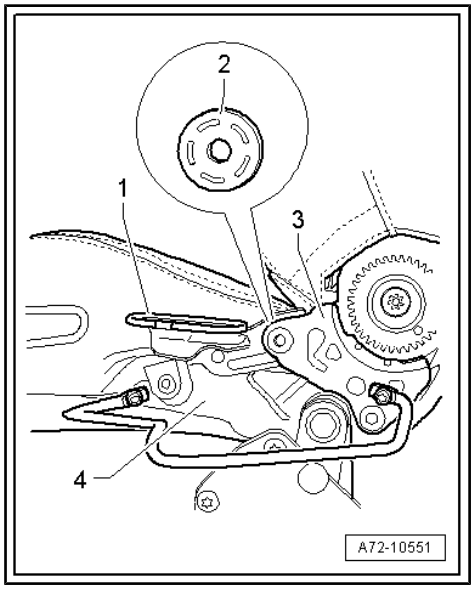
Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

– Remove assembly cover ⇒ page 462 .

– Remove trim (sill side, rear) ⇒ page 462 .

– Remove trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 466 .

– Remove backrest -3- ⇒ page 476
– Detach spacer ring -2-.
– Detach retaining bracket (top) -1- from upper seat pan frame -4-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .
– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

3.20 Exploded view of seat and backrest adjustment actuators

1 - Actuator

- For seat longitudinal adjustment button -E418-
- For rake adjustment button -E421-
- For seat height adjustment button -E424-
  - ❑ Removing and installing actuator ⇒ page 473
  - ❑ Removing and installing button ⇒ page 523

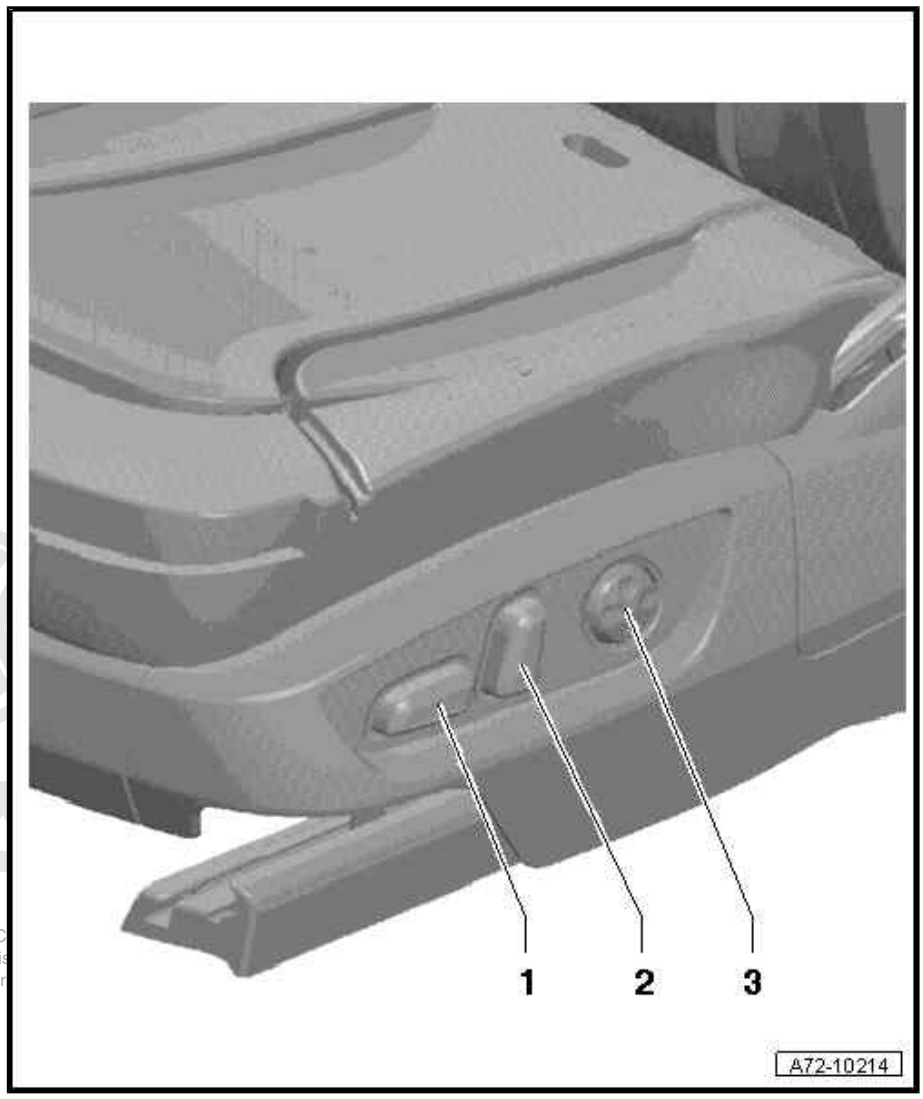
2 - Actuator

- For backrest adjustment button -E425-
  - ❑ Removing and installing actuator ⇒ page 474
  - ❑ Removing and installing button ⇒ page 523

3 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E177-

- ❑ Actuator and switch cannot be separated and can only be renewed as an entire unit.
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 521

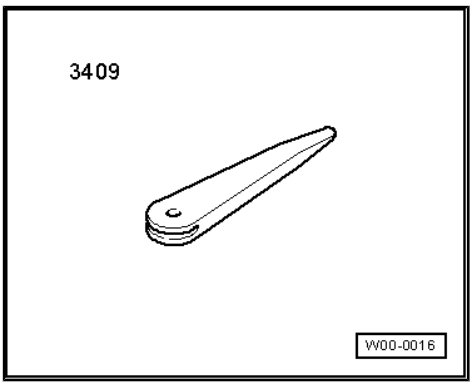
ected by copyright. C
permitted unless authoris
with respect to the cor



3.21 Removing and installing seat adjustment actuator

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge -3409-



Note

The seat adjustment actuator can be removed and installed with the front seat in position.

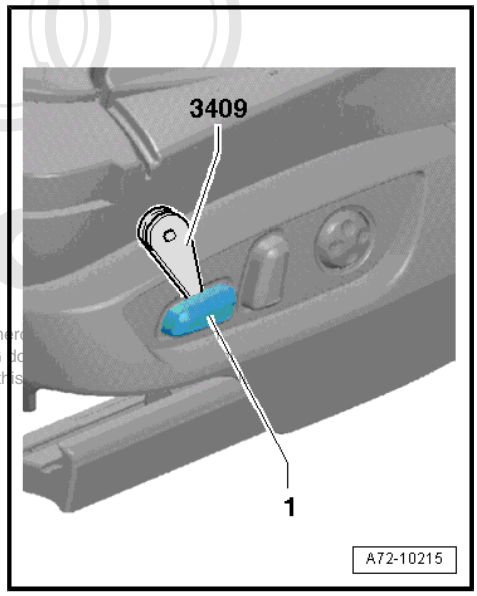
Removing

– Use removal wedge -3409- to prise actuator -1- off catch of:

- Seat longitudinal adjustment button -E418-
- Rake adjustment button -E421-
- Seat height adjustment button -E424-

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

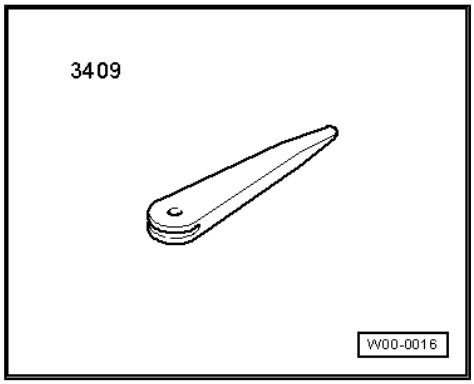


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commer
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG
with respect to the correctness of information in th

3.22 Removing and installing backrest adjustment actuator

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge -3409-



Note

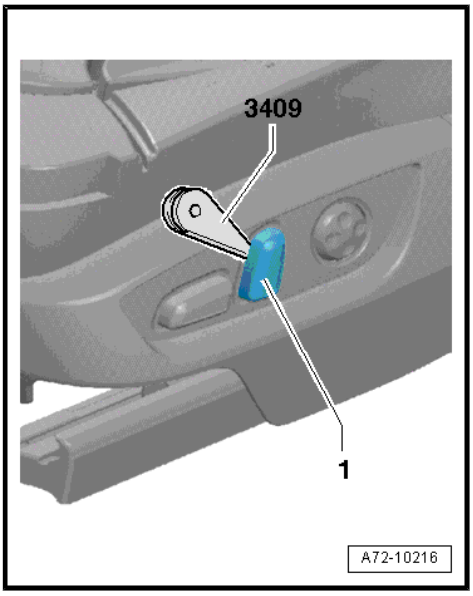
The backrest adjustment actuator can be removed and installed with the front seat in position.

Removing

– Use removal wedge -3409- to prise actuator -1- off fastener of backrest adjustment button -E425- .

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



3.23 Exploded view of front seat backrest

1 - Front seat backrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 476

2 - Bolt, self-locking

- ❑ 35 Nm
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Always clean threaded holes for bolts (using a tap for example)

3 - Fastening strip

- ❑ Attachment to trim on sill side (rear)

4 - Belt

- ❑ Engaged with tab in upper seat pan frame

5 - Wiring harness

- ❑ For side airbag

6 - Wiring harness

7 - Cover strip

- ❑ With tabs (3x) for engaging in backrest

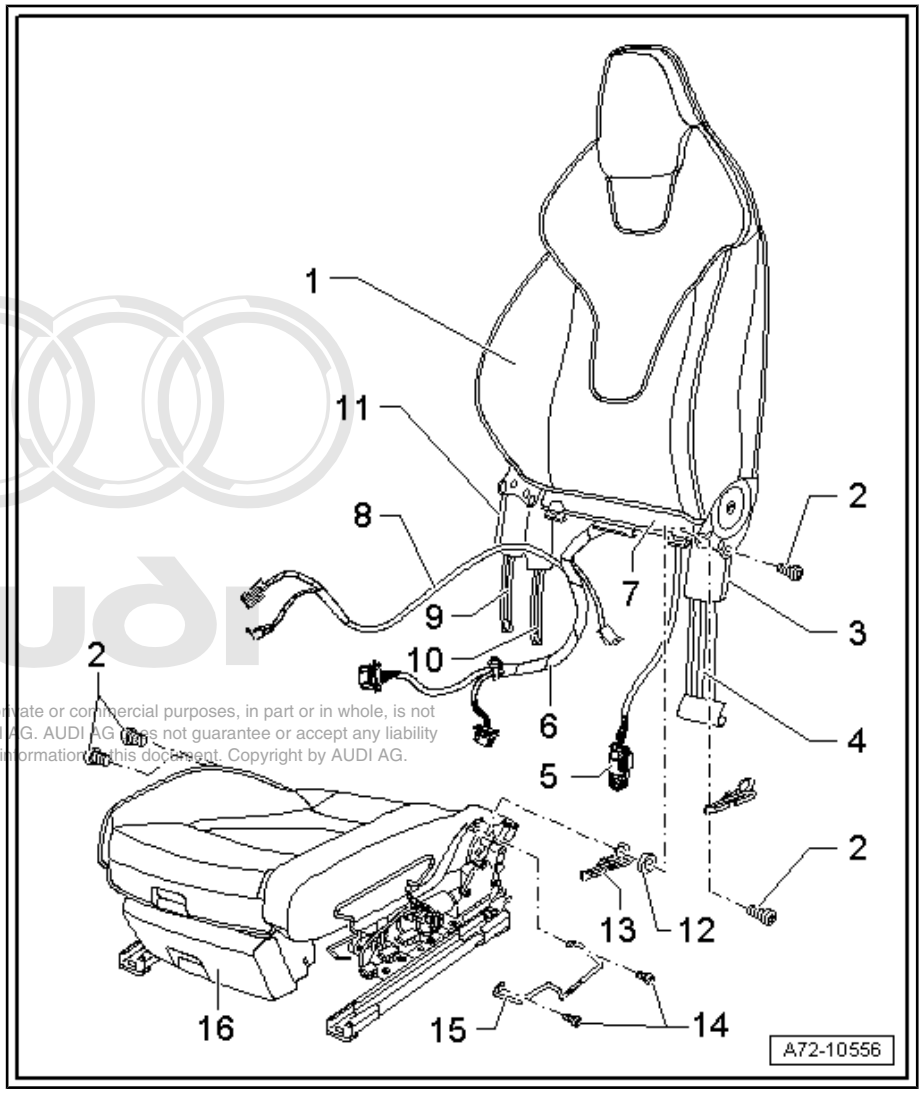
8 - Wiring harness

9 - Belt

- ❑ Engaged with clip in upper seat pan frame

10 - Belt

- ❑ Engaged with clip in upper seat pan frame



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

11 - Fastening strip

- ❑ Attachment to trim on tunnel side

12 - Spacer

- ❑ Between backrest fitting and retaining bracket (top)

13 - Retaining bracket (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 471

14 - Bolt

- ❑ 3.5 Nm
- ❑ 2x

15 - Retaining bracket (front)

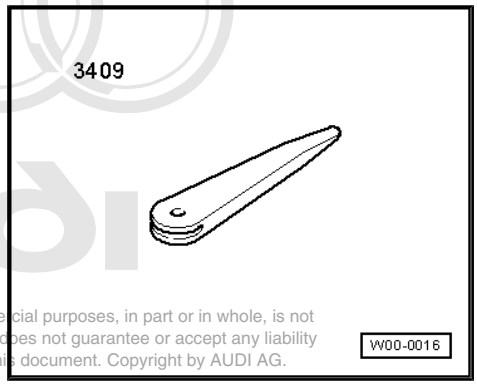
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 469

16 - Seat pan

3.24 Removing and installing front seat backrest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Removal wedge -3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

Removal and installation are described for a driver's seat. The removal and installation procedures for the front passenger's seat are similar.

Removing

WARNING

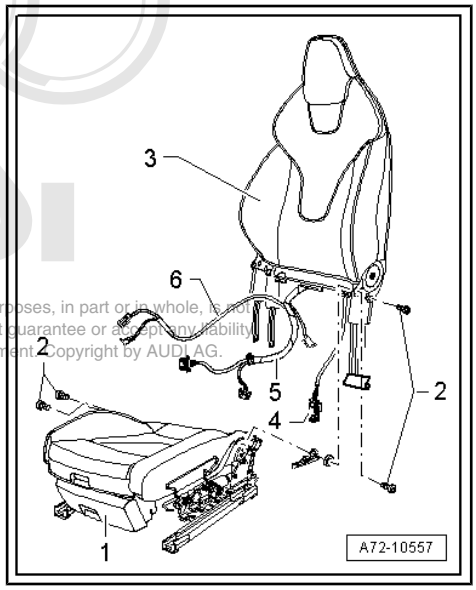
- ♦ ***Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .***
- ♦ ***Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 446 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 443 .

– Remove trim panels (sill side) and assembly cover ⇒ page 462 .

– Remove trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 466 .
– Remove corrugated tube and wiring leading from front seat to connector point ⇒ page 340 .
– Remove bolts -2- (4x).
– Swivel backrest -3- forwards onto seat pan -1-.
– Press padding to one side and carefully pull side airbag wire -4- and all other wiring harnesses -5- and -6- (depending on equipment version) out of seat pan.
– Detach backrest -3-.



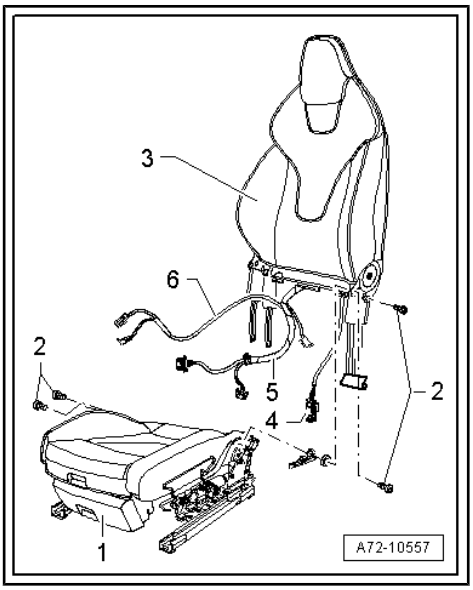
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



– Always clean threaded holes for bolts -2- (using e.g. a thread tap).
– Always renew bolts -2- (4x) after removal.
– Make sure upper and lower sections of corrugated tube fit together perfectly.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .
– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

Tightening torques ⇒ page 475

3.25 Exploded view of backrest cover panel

1 - Front seat

2 - Lug

- ❑ Moulded to backrest cover panel

3 - Backrest cover panel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 478

4 - Retainer

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Moulded to backrest cover panel

5 - Groove

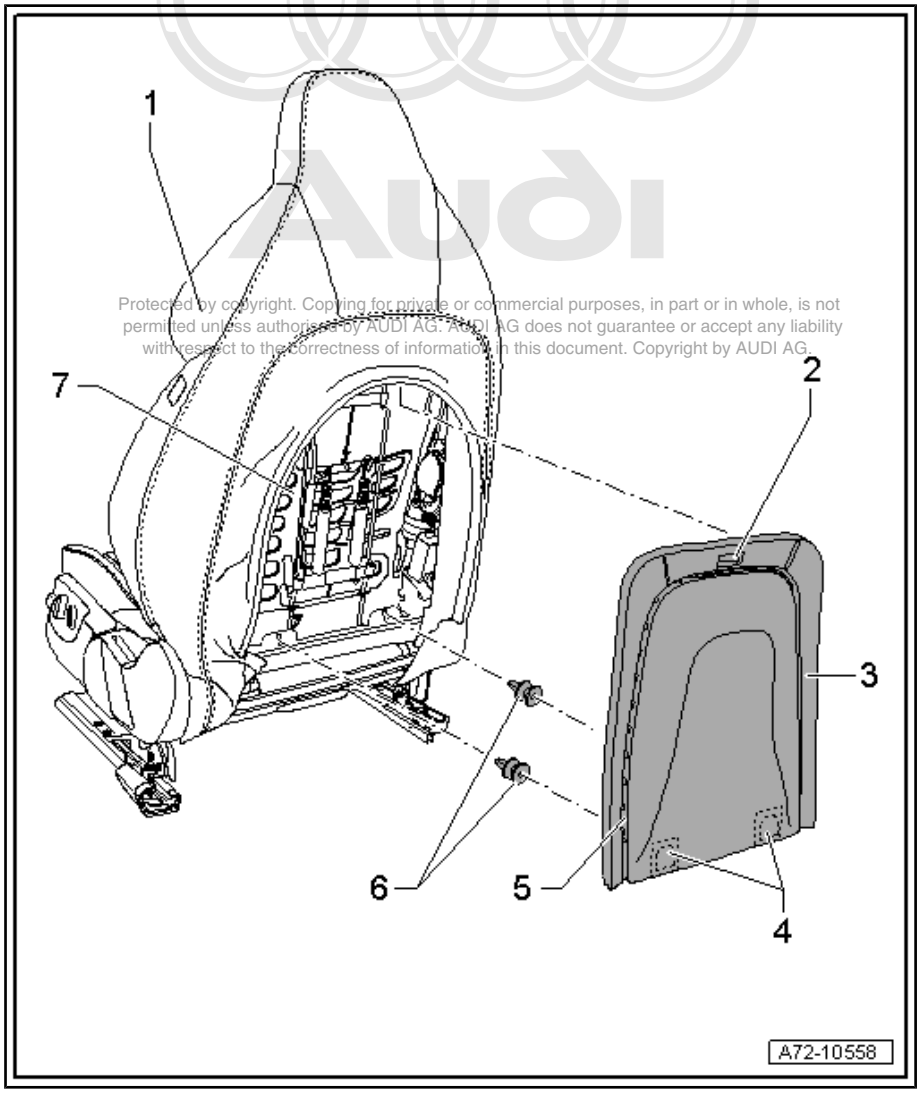
- ❑ For engaging backrest cover

6 - Clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Clipped into backrest cover panel
- ❑ Renew if damaged

7 - Four-way lumbar support

- ◆ Exploded view ⇒ page 481
- ◆ Removing and installing ⇒ page 482

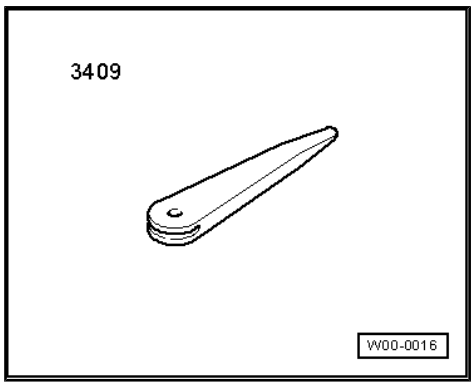


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

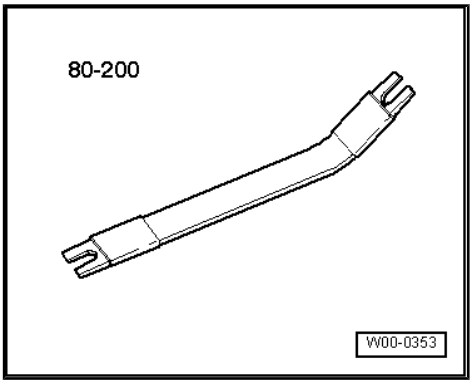
3.26 Removing and installing backrest cover panel

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



- Removal lever -80 - 200-



Removing

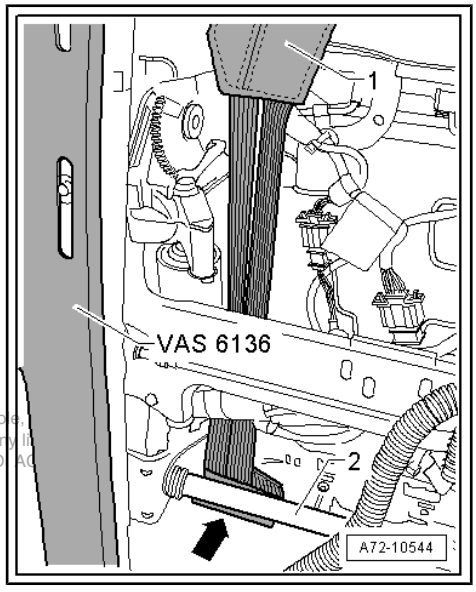
WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 446 .

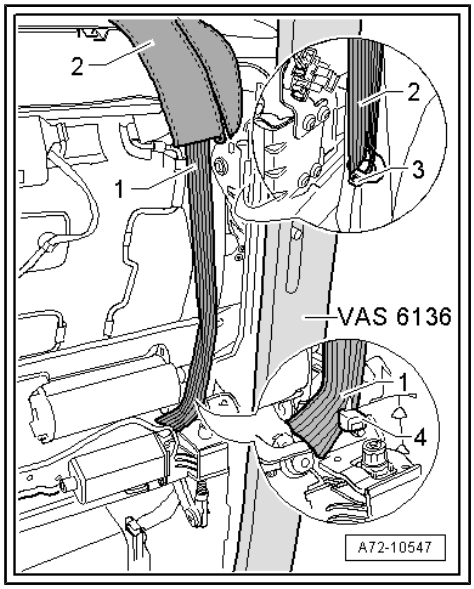
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 443 .

– Disengage tab -arrow- on cover -1- at upper seat pan frame -2-.

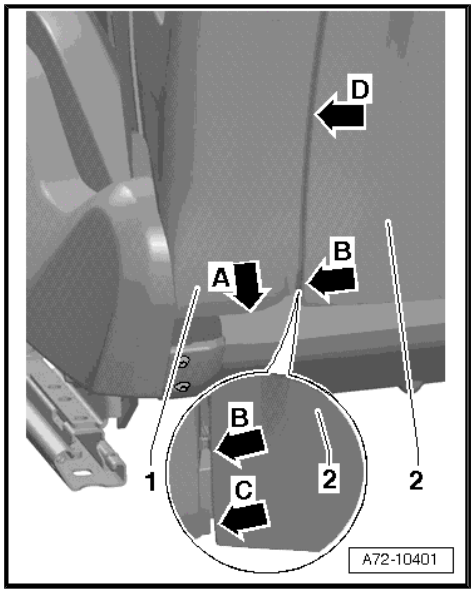


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unfasten clip -4- on belt -1-.
– Unfasten clip -3- on belt -2-.



– Fold out bottom edge of cover -1- in area of -arrow A-.
– Disengage cover -1- (bottom) from slots -arrow C- of backrest cover panel -2-.
– Unclip fastening strip of cover -1- from all-round groove -arrow D- of backrest cover panel -2-.
– Use removal wedge -3409- to unclip.
– Start unclipping in area around -arrow B- of backrest cover panel -2-.

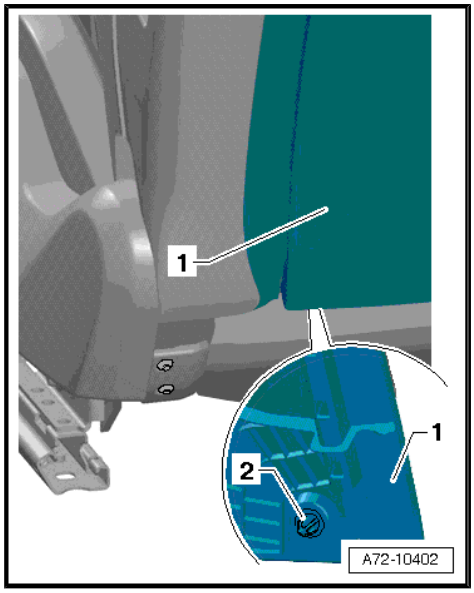


Note

Considerable force is required to unclip fastening strip of cover from groove of backrest cover panel.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unclip backrest cover panel -1- at bottom on both sides.
– Unclip using removal lever -80 - 200- .
– Detach backrest cover panel -1- from backrest by pulling downwards.



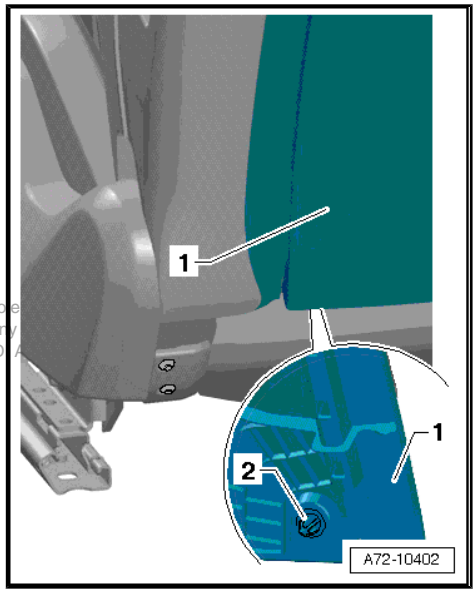
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

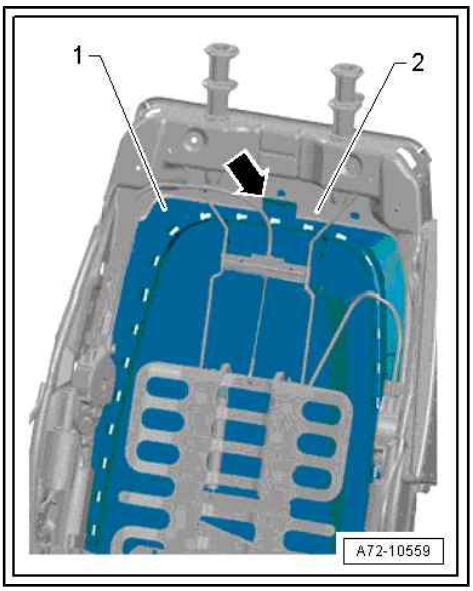
- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Check whether clip -2- is still in backrest cover panel after unclipping backrest cover panel -1-.
– If this is not the case, unfasten clip -2- from outer backrest frame and clip it into backrest cover panel -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– When inserting backrest cover panel -1- from underneath, make sure tab -arrow- is in front of outer backrest frame -2-.



Note

- *For greater clarity padding and cover are not shown in illustration.*
- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

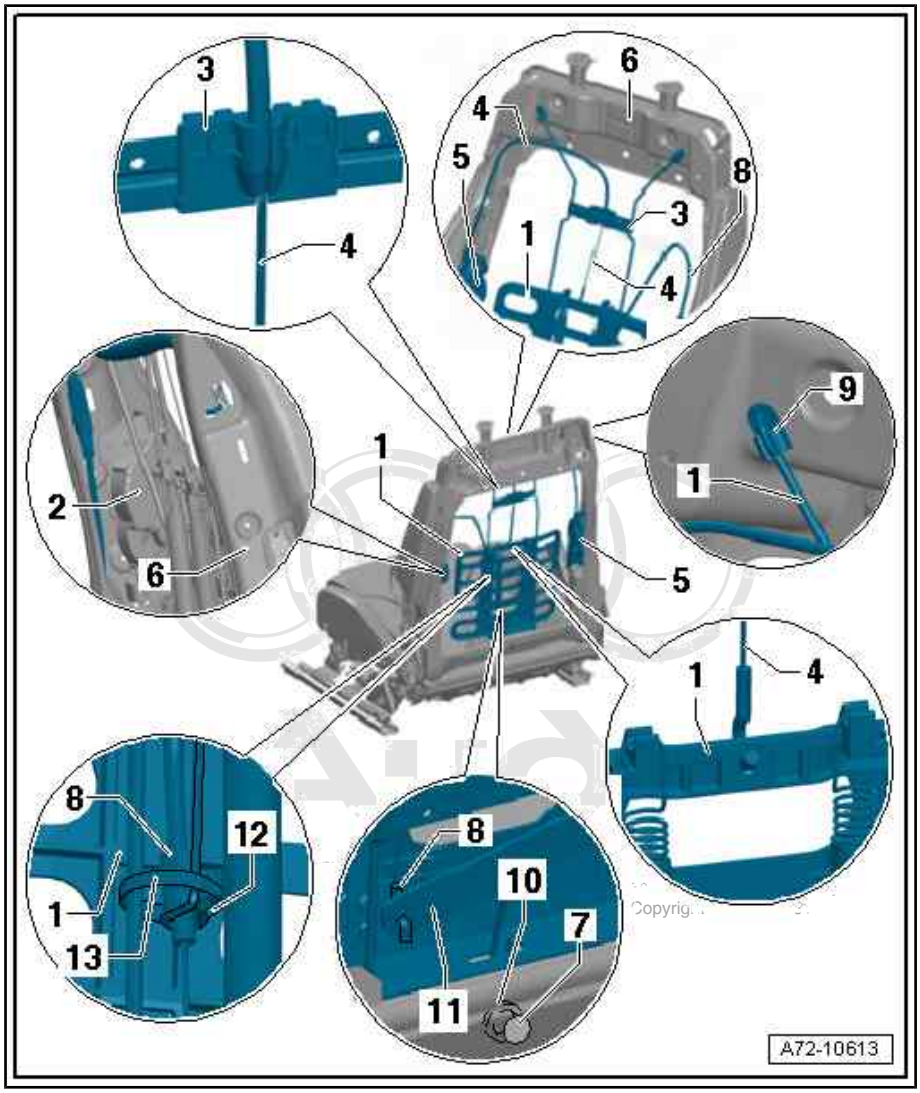
The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .
– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

3.27 Exploded view of four-way lumbar support

Note

For reasons of clarity, the cover with padding in the backrest is not shown in the illustration.



1 - Four-way lumbar support

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 482

2 - Driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V125- / front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V126-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 508

3 - Clip

- ❑ For guiding Bowden cable ⇒ Item 4 (page 482)

4 - Bowden cable

- ❑ For lumbar support adjustment
- ❑ Can only be renewed together with driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V129- / front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V130-

5 - Driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V129- / front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V130-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 510

6 - Outer backrest frame

7 - Rivet

- ❑ Set rivet using special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A-
- ❑ A plastic washer must be inserted between lumbar support and backrest frame before riveting on ⇒ Item 10 (page 482)

8 - Bowden cable

- ❑ For lumbar support adjustment
- ❑ Can only be renewed together with driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V125- / front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V126-

9 - Clip

10 - Plastic washer

- ❑ Between four-way lumbar support and outer backrest frame

11 - Retaining plate

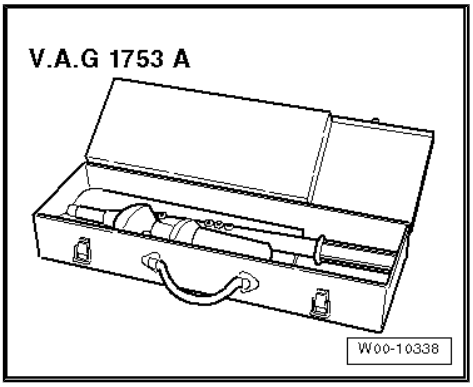
12 - Bracket

13 - Cable tie

3.28 Removing and installing four-way lumbar support

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A-



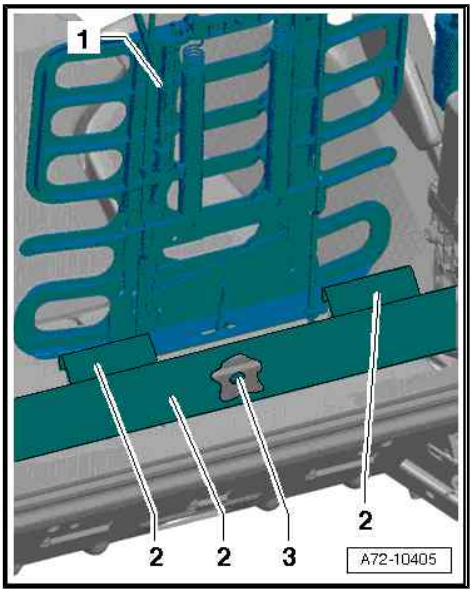
Removing

WARNING

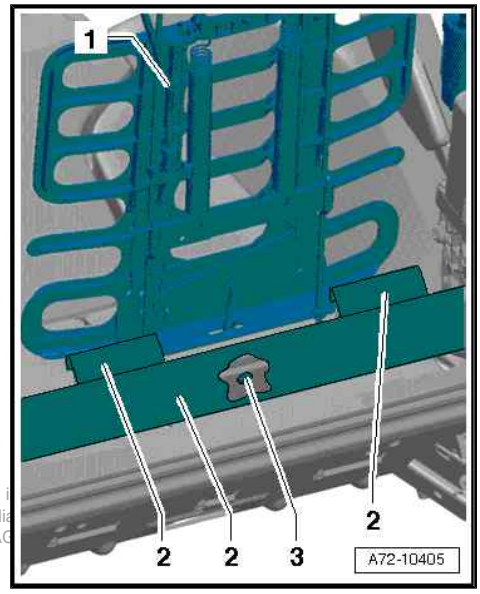
- ***Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .***
- ***Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness, completeness or currency of the data.

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 446 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 443 .
– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 478 .
– Use screwdriver to prise out fastening strips -2- (3x).
– Remove cover with padding ⇒ page 599 .
– As protection against metal swarf, place foil between cover and padding of seat pan and outer backrest frame.

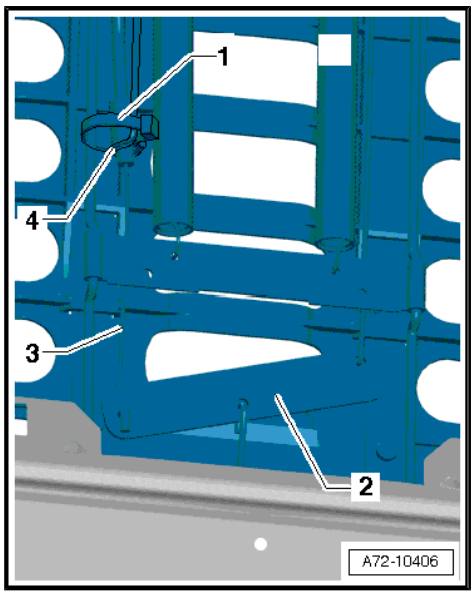


– Drill out rivet -3-.

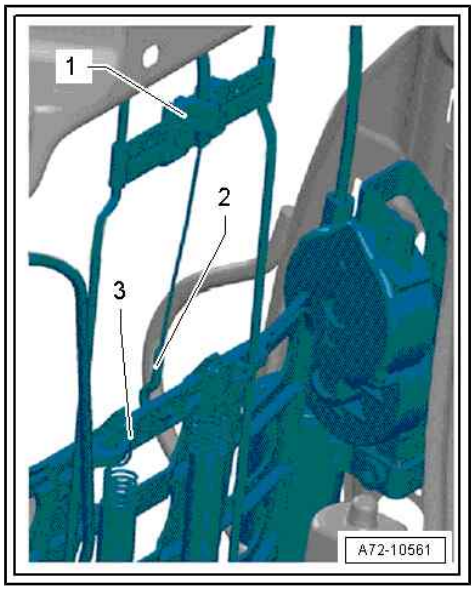


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, i
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any li
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

– Disengage Bowden cable -3- from retaining plate -2-.
– Unfasten cable tie -1-.
– Thread Bowden cable -3- out of support -4-.



– Disengage Bowden cable -2- from four-way lumbar support -3-.
– Disengage Bowden cable -2- from clip -1-.



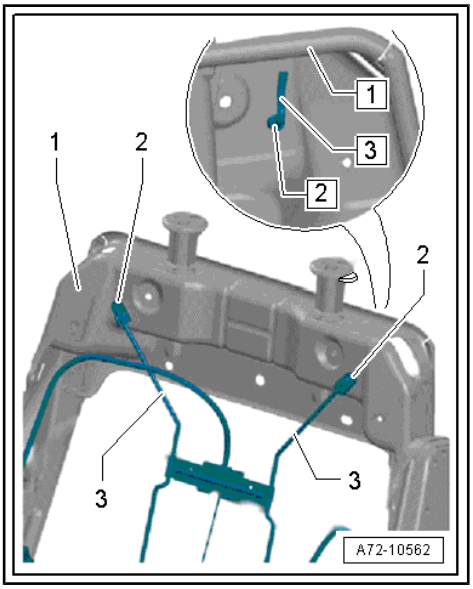
– Disengage four-way lumbar support -3- at top left and right from clips -2- and outer backrest frame -1-.
– Take out four-way lumbar support -3-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

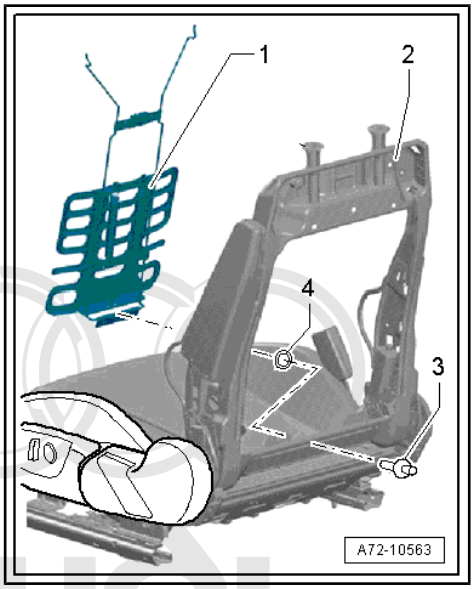


– Before riveting on lumbar support, fit a plastic washer -4- between lumbar support -1- and outer backrest frame -2-.

3 - Rivet

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.



– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .
– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.29 Exploded view of head restraints

Note

- *The head restraint is permanently attached to the backrest padding and can only be removed together with the backrest padding.*
- *The head restraint cannot be separated from the backrest padding.*
- *For greater clarity, the backrest cover is not shown in the illustration.*

1 - Outer backrest frame

2 - Head restraint guide without release button

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 487
- ❑ Always fitted on right side of backrest

3 - Head restraint with padding

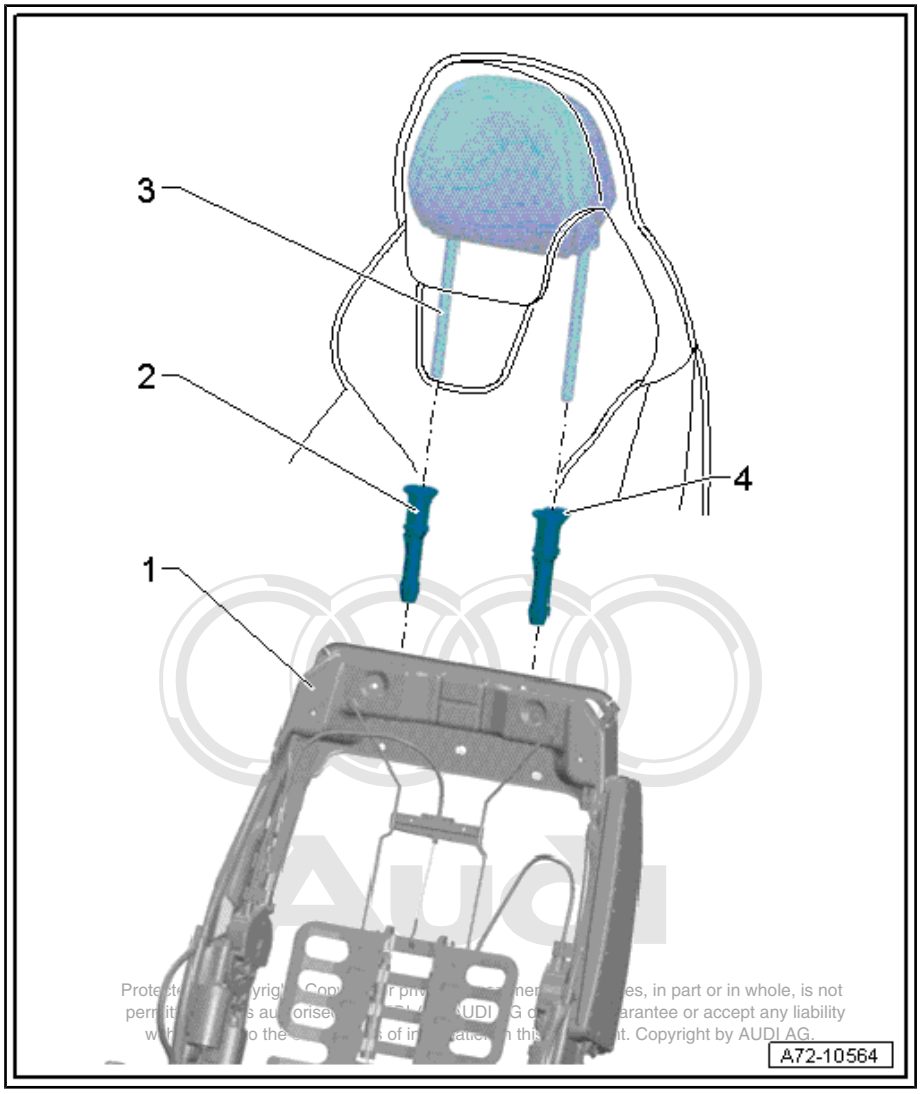
- ❑ Head restraint foam-fitted in padding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 486

4 - Head restraint guide with release button

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 487
- ❑ Always fitted on left side of backrest

5 - Side airbag

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 141



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.30 Removing and installing padding with head restraint with slide-in locking mechanism

The head restraint with slide-in locking mechanism is permanently attached to the backrest padding. The padding and head restraint cannot be separated. For this reason the removal and installation is described in the following chapter.

Removing and installing backrest cover and padding/head restraint ⇒ page 599

3.31 Removing and installing head restraint guides without and with release button

Removing

> **WARNING**
>
> - *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags* *⇒ page 110* *.*
> - *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 446 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 443 .

– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 478 .

– Remove padding with head restraint ⇒ page 486 .

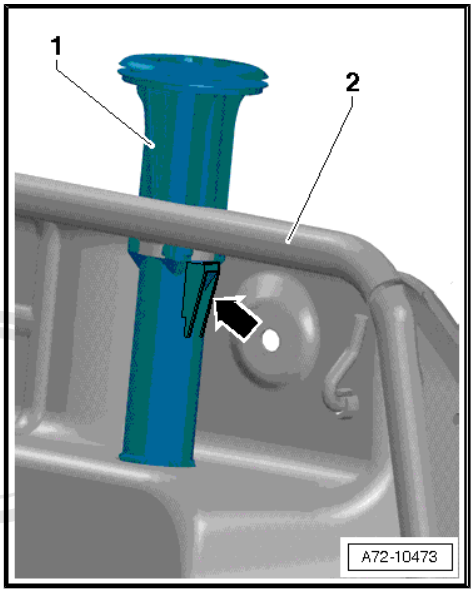
Head restraint guide without release button

– Press retaining tab -arrow- of head restraint guide -1- towards centre of head restraint guide.

– Keep retaining tab -arrow- pressed.

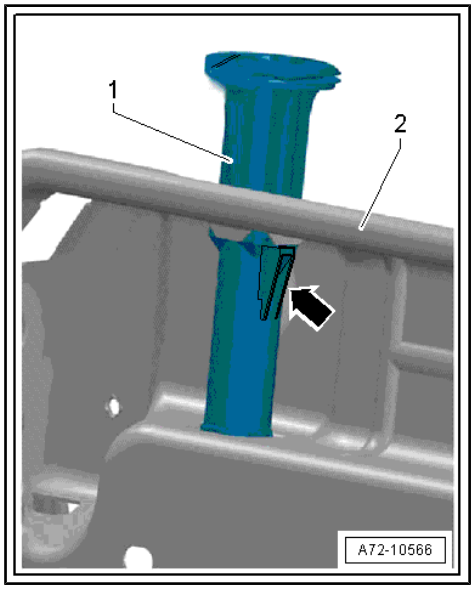
– Lift head restraint guide -1- out of outer backrest frame -2-.

Head restraint guide with release button



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Press retaining tab of head restraint guide -1- towards centre of head restraint guide.
– Keep retaining tab -arrow- pressed.
– Lift head restraint guide -1- out of outer backrest frame -2-.



Head restraint guide without and with release button (continued)

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
-

Note

- *Make sure retaining tab engages properly with outer backrest frame.*
- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

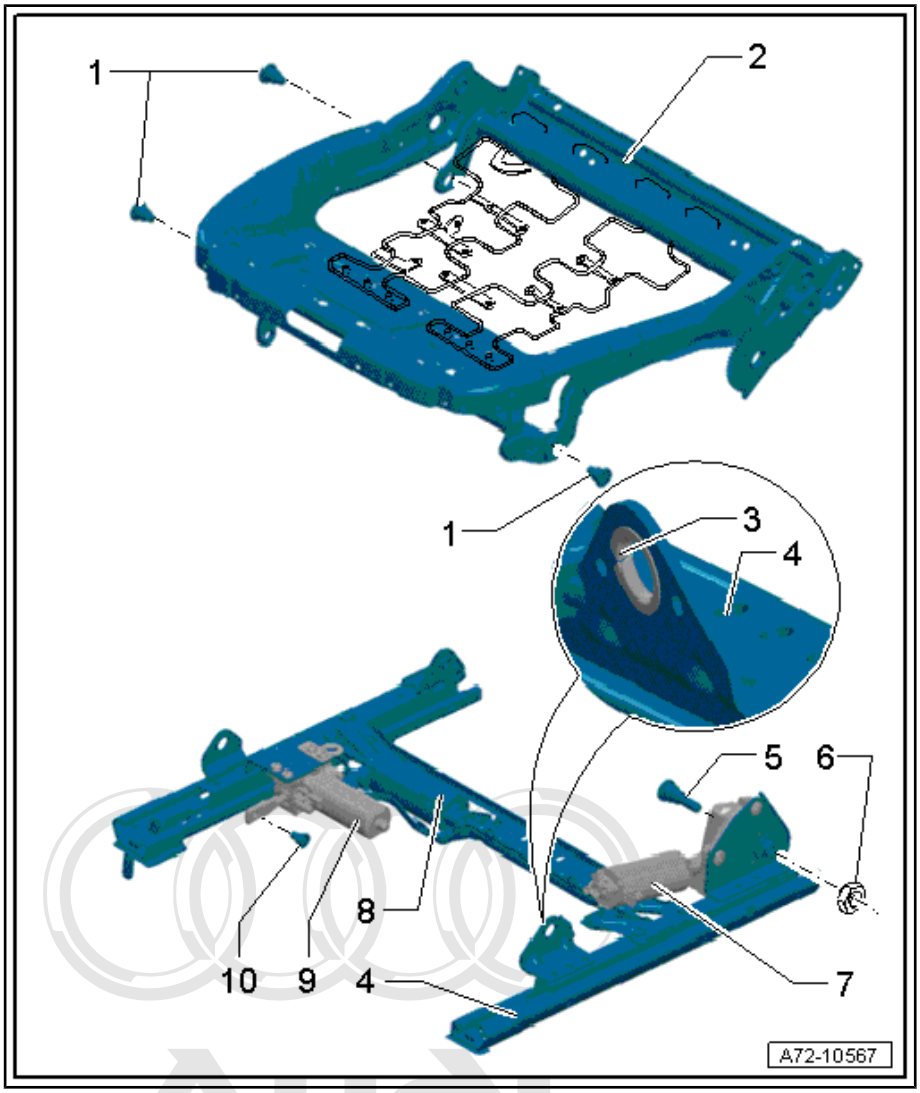
– Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .
– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

3.32 Exploded view of seat pan

Note

- *The upper and lower seat pan frames of the front seat can be separated and renewed separately.*
- *When removing the seat pan, take care not to damage bushes in pivot points (bolted connection between upper and lower frames). These bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Bolt, self-locking

- ❑ 28 Nm
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Always clean threaded holes for bolts (using a tap for example)

2 - Upper seat pan frame

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 490

3 - Bush

- ❑ Inserted in all pivot points
- ❑ Cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops
- ❑ Component must be renewed if bush is damaged; for assignment, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

4 - Lower seat pan frame

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 490

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 28 Nm
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Always clean threaded holes for bolts (using a tap for example)

6 - Nut

7 - Driver seat height adjustment motor -V245- / front passenger seat height adjustment motor -V246-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 513

8 - Seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288-

- ❑ Cannot be removed and installed with the equipment available to workshops
- ❑ Leave in position on lower seat pan frame ⇒ Item 4 (page 489)

9 - Driver seat rake adjustment motor -V243- / front passenger seat rake adjustment motor -V244-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 500

10 - Bolt, self-locking

- ❑ 20 Nm
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Always clean threaded holes for bolts (using a tap for example)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.33 Dismantling and assembling seat pan

Dismantling seat pan

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 446 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 443 .
– Remove backrest ⇒ page 476 .
– Remove seat pan cover with padding ⇒ page 595 .
– Unplug any electrical connectors.

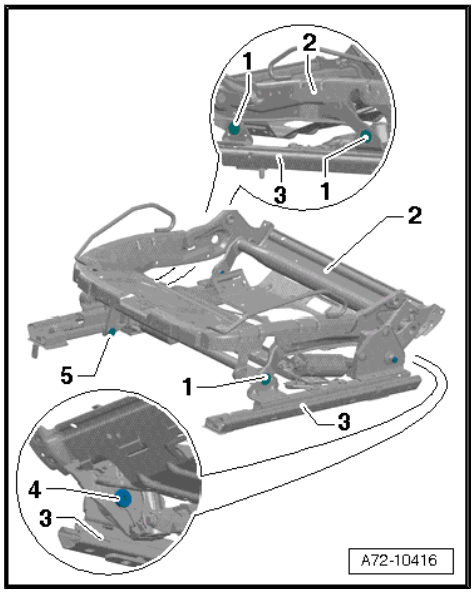
Renewing upper seat pan frame

– Detach spring mat with wiring harness from upper seat pan frame ⇒ page 493 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

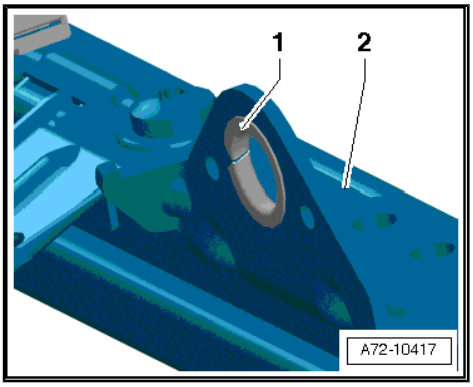
Renewing upper/lower frame (continued)

– Remove bolts -1- (3x).
– Remove bolt -4-.
– Remove bolt -5-.
– Lift upper frame -2- off lower frame -3- of seat pan.



– When doing so, pay attention to bushes -1- in pivot points.

2 - Lower seat pan frame



Caution

- *When separating or assembling upper and lower frames, take care not to damage bushes -1- inserted in all pivot points.*
- *The bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
- *The relevant components must be renewed if the bushes are damaged.*

– Remove driver seat height adjustment motor -V245- / front passenger seat height adjustment motor -V246- ⇒ page 513 .

– Remove driver seat rake adjustment motor -V243- / front passenger seat rake adjustment motor -V244- ⇒ page 500 .

Assembling seat pan

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

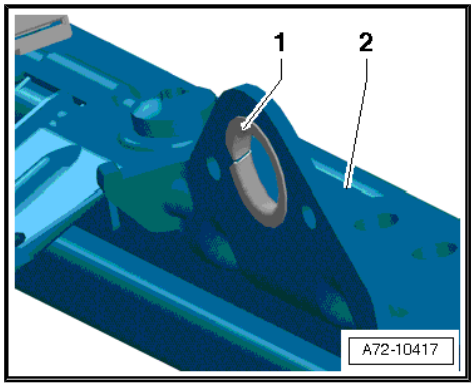
– Install driver seat height adjustment motor -V245- / front passenger seat height adjustment motor -V246- removed earlier in new lower seat pan frame ⇒ page 513 .

– Install driver seat rake adjustment motor -V243- / front passenger seat rake adjustment motor -V244- removed earlier in new lower seat pan frame ⇒ page 500 .

– Install spring mat with wiring harness in upper seat pan frame ⇒ page 493 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Take care not to damage bushes -1- in course of further assembly work.



Caution

- *When separating or assembling upper and lower frames, take care not to damage bushes -1- inserted in all pivot points.*
- *The bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
- *The relevant components must be renewed if the bushes are damaged.*

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .
– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

Tightening torques ⇒ page 488

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.34 Removing and installing spring mat with wiring harness for seat pan

Removing and installing spring mat with wiring harness for seat pan ⇒ page 431

3.35 Removing and installing wiring harness for backrest

Removing and installing wiring harness for backrest ⇒ page 434

3.36 Exploded view - storage compartment / drawer

Exploded view of drawer ⇒ page 355

Exploded view of storage compartment (hinged compartment) ⇒ page 358

3.37 Removing and installing storage compartment / drawer

Removing and installing drawer ⇒ page 355

Removing and installing storage compartment (hinged compartment) ⇒ page 358

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.38 Removing and installing footwell light

Removing and installing footwell light ⇒ Rep. gr. 96

3.39 Exploded view of seat depth adjuster

1 - Seat depth adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 494

2 - Seat depth adjustment base frame

3 - Nut

- ❑ 35 Nm
- ❑ 4x

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2.5 Nm
- ❑ 4x

5 - Handle

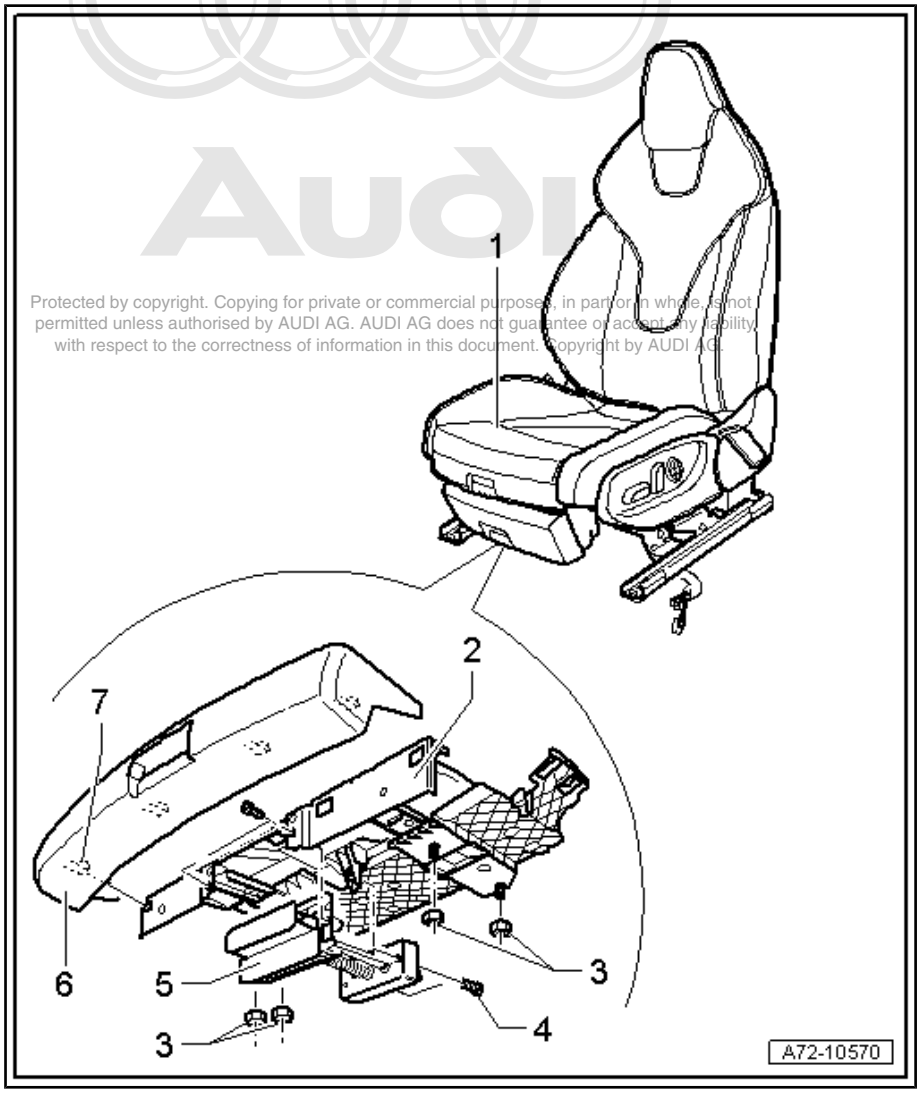
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 496

6 - Trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 495

7 - Clips

- ❑ 4x



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.40 Removing and installing seat depth adjuster

Removing

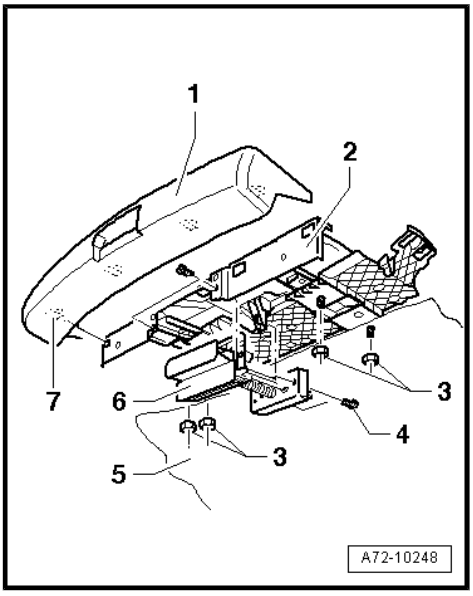
WARNING

Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 446 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 443 .
– Remove drawer / storage compartment:
♦ Removing drawer ⇒ page 355
♦ Removing storage compartment (hinged compartment) ⇒ page 358
– Detach seat cover and padding from seat pan ⇒ page 595 .
– Separate seat depth adjuster from cover and padding ⇒ page 597 .

– Unscrew nuts -3- (4x).

– Detach seat depth adjustment base frame -2-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

...ted by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– Connect the battery with the ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .

– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Tightening torques ⇒ page 493

3.41 Removing and installing trim

Removing

WARNING

Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 446 .

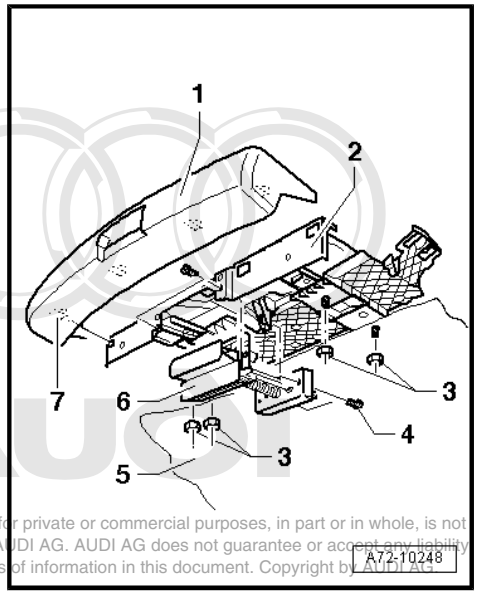
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 443 .

– Remove drawer / storage compartment:

- Removing drawer ⇒ page 355
- Removing storage compartment (hinged compartment) ⇒ page 358

– Prise out clips -7- (4x) at trim -1-.

– Detach trim -1-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– Connect the battery with the ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .

– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

3.42 Removing and installing handle

Removing

WARNING

Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

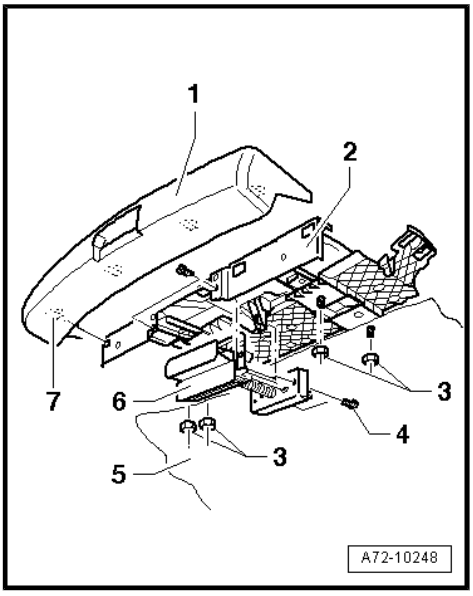
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 446 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 443 .

– Remove drawer / storage compartment:

- Removing drawer ⇒ page 355
- Removing storage compartment (hinged compartment) ⇒ page 358

– Remove bolts -4- (4x).
– Detach handle -6-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

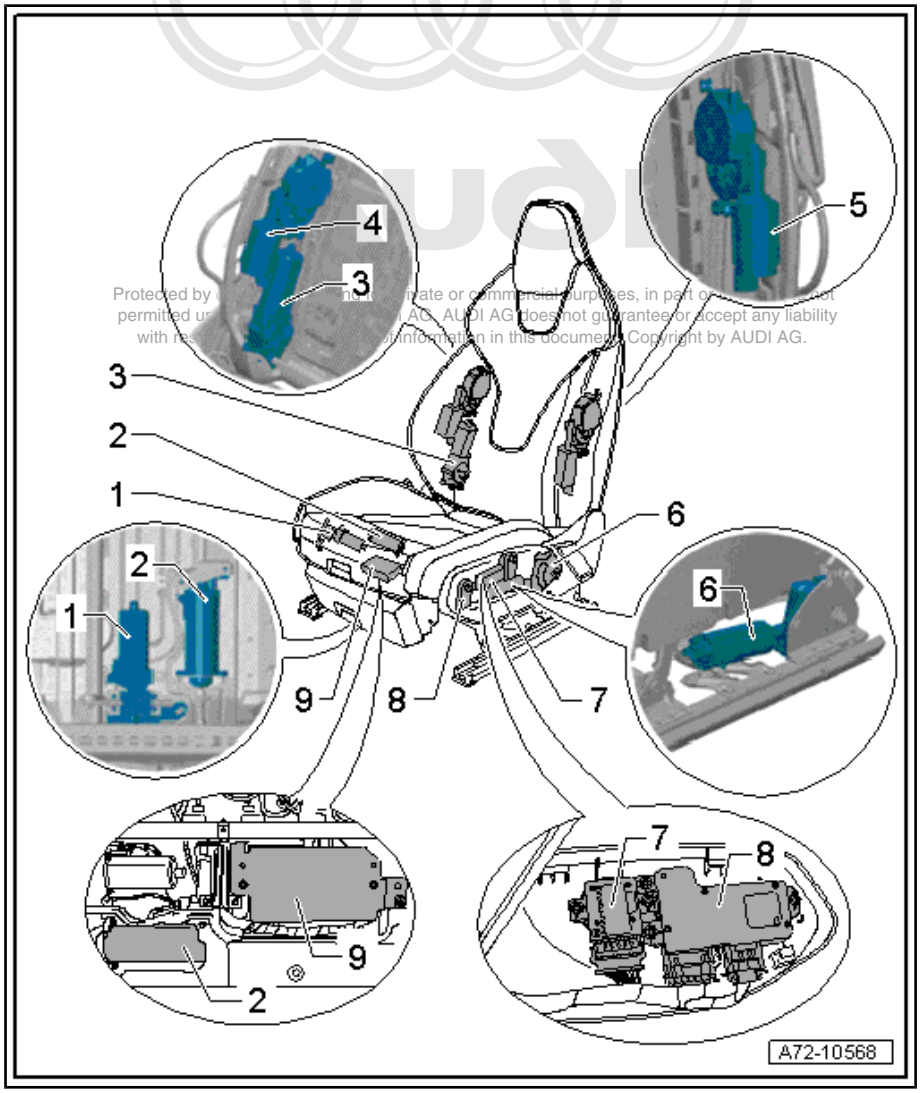
The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– Connect the battery with the ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .
– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Tightening torques ⇒ page 493

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.43 Overview of electrical and electronic components



1 - Seat rake adjustment motor

- ❑ For driver's seat -V243-
- ❑ For front passenger's seat -V244-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 499
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 500

2 - Seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 501
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 502

3 - Backrest adjustment motor

- ❑ For driver's seat -V45-
- ❑ For front passenger's seat -V46-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 504
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 504

4 - Lumbar support height adjustment motor

- ❑ For driver's seat -V125-
- ❑ For front passenger's seat -V126-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 507
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 510

5 - Lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor

- ❑ For driver's seat -V129-
- ❑ For front passenger's seat -V130-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 507
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 508

6 - Seat height adjustment motor

- ❑ For driver's seat -V245-
- ❑ For front passenger's seat -V246-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 512
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 513

7 - Lumbar support adjustment switch

- ❑ For driver's seat -E176-
- ❑ For front passenger's seat -E177-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 519
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 521

8 - Button

- ❑ For seat longitudinal adjustment -E418-
- ❑ For backrest adjustment -E425-
- ❑ For rake adjustment -E421-
- ❑ For seat height adjustment -E424-

Note

All listed buttons are located in a joint housing and cannot be renewed separately.

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 521
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 523

9 - Control unit

- ❑ For seat and steering column adjustment with memory -J136-
- ❑ For front passenger seat adjustment with memory -J521-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 523
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 524

3.44 Exploded view - seat rake adjustment motor -V243- / -V244-

1 - Seat rake adjustment motor

- ❑ For driver's seat -V243-
- ❑ For front passenger's seat -V244-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 500

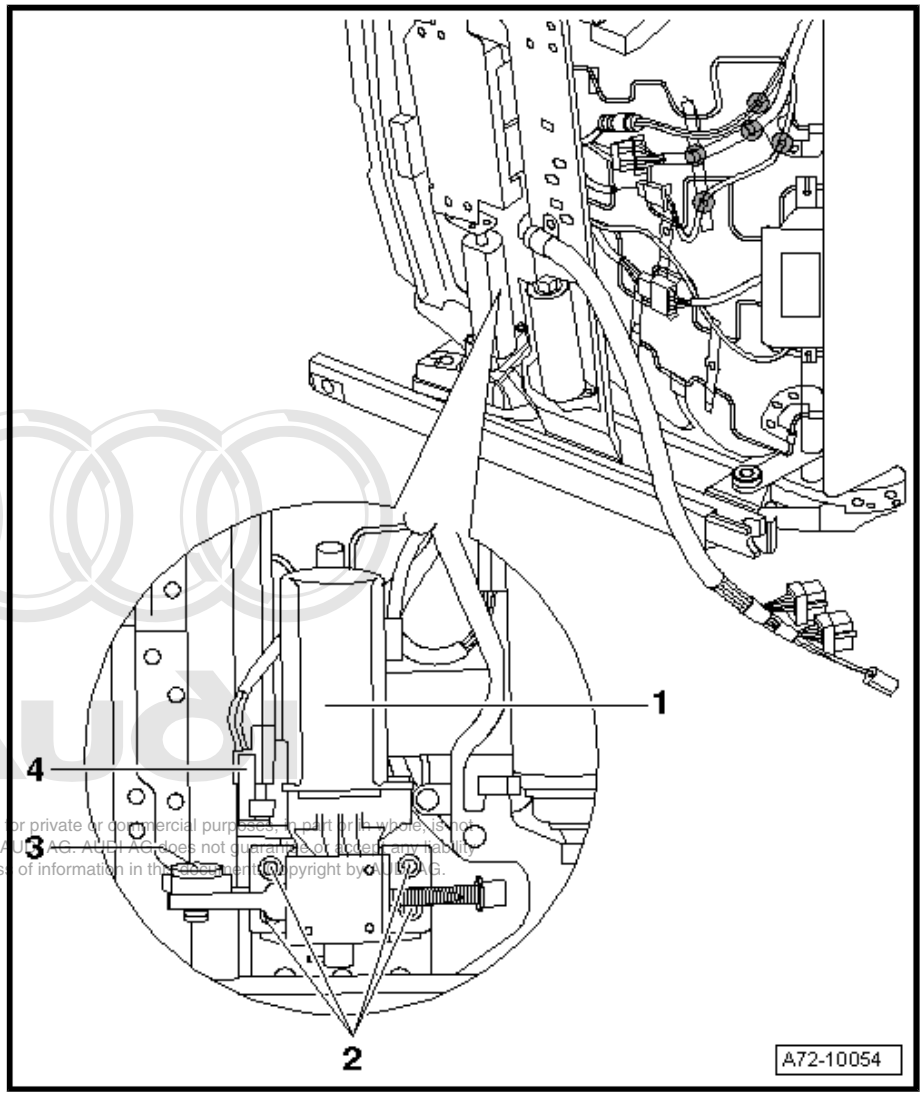
2 - Bolt

- ❑ 12 Nm
- ❑ 4x

3 - Bolt, self-locking

- ❑ 20 Nm
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Always clean threaded holes for bolts (using a tap for example)

4 - Connector



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

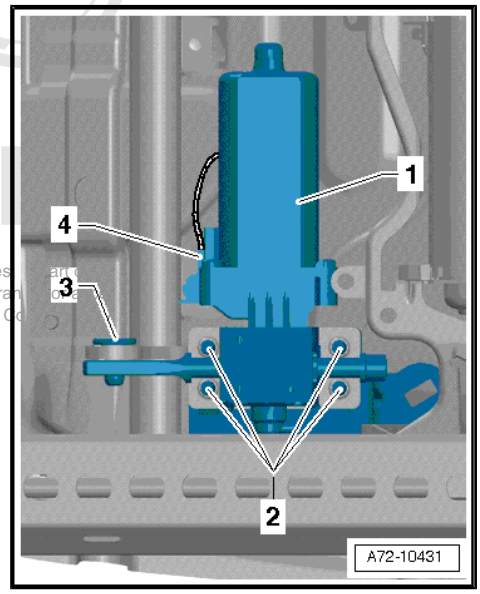
3.45 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment motor -V243- / -V244-

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove seat ⇒ page 446 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 443 .
– Remove bolts -2- (4x).
– Remove bolt -3-.
– Unplug connector -4-.
– Remove driver seat rake adjustment motor -V243- / front passenger seat rake adjustment motor -V244- -1-.



Installing

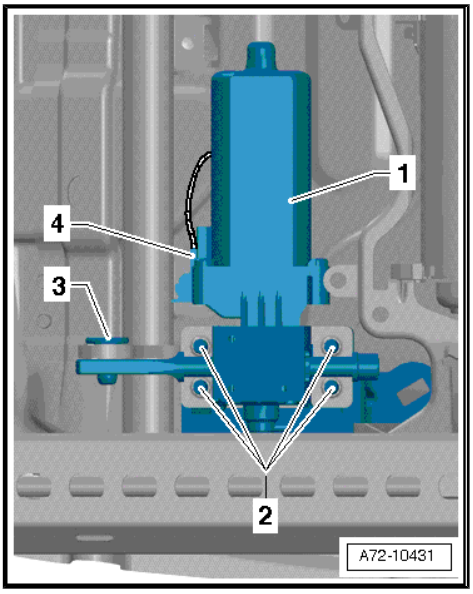
Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarant
with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Always renew bolt -3- after removal.
– Always clean threaded hole for bolt -3- (using a tap for example).



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .
– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

Tightening torques ⇒ page 499

3.46 Exploded view of seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Upper seat pan frame

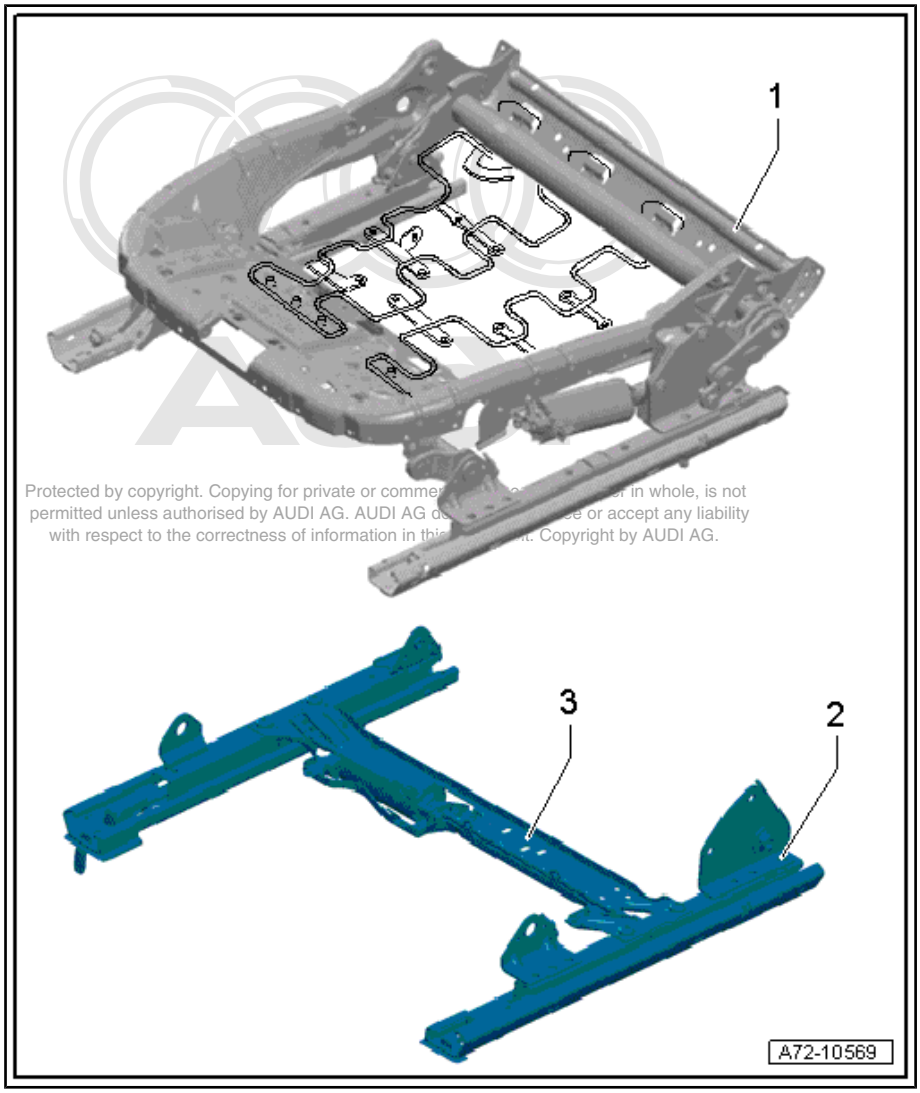
- ❑ Separating upper seat pan frame from lower seat pan frame and assembling ⇒ page 490

2 - Lower seat pan frame

- ❑ Separating upper seat pan frame from lower seat pan frame and assembling ⇒ page 490

3 - Seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 502



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commer... in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG d... or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in thi... Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.47 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288-

Note

- *If motor is defective, lower seat pan frame must be renewed.*
- *For greater clarity, the illustration shows the seat pan without padding or backrest.*

Removing

WARNING

- ***Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .***
- ***Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

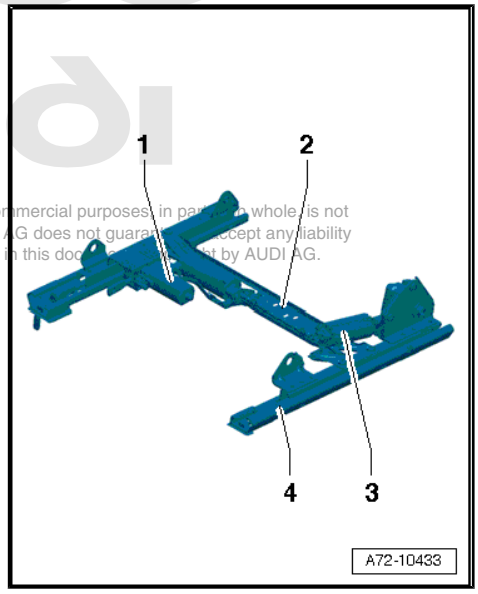
– Remove seat ⇒ page 446 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 443 .
– Separate upper from lower seat pan frame ⇒ page 490 .

Note

The seat rake and height adjustment motors must be transferred to the new lower seat pan frame.

– Remove seat rake adjustment motor -V243- / -V244- -1- ⇒ page 500 .
– Remove seat height adjustment motor -V245- / -V246- -3- ⇒ page 513 .



2 - Driver seat rake adjustment motor -V243- / front passenger seat rake adjustment motor -V244-

4 - Lower seat pan frame

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document by AUDI AG.

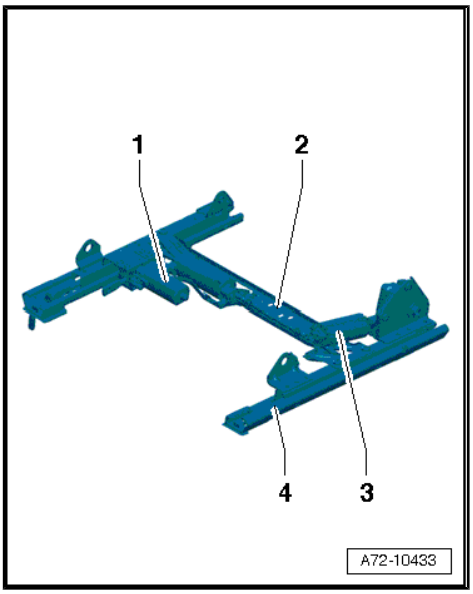
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Install seat height adjustment motor -V245- / -V246- -3- in new lower seat pan frame -4- ⇒ page 513 .
– Install seat rake adjustment motor -V243- / -V244- -1- in new lower seat pan frame -4- ⇒ page 500 .



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .
– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

3.48 Exploded view of backrest adjustment motor -V45- / -V46-

Note

- *For greater clarity, the backrest is shown without lumbar support, padding and cover.*
- *The upper section of the S6 outer backrest frame has a slightly different appearance to that shown in the illustration.*

1 - Backrest adjustment motor
- ❑ For driver's seat -V45-
- ❑ For front passenger's seat -V46-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 504

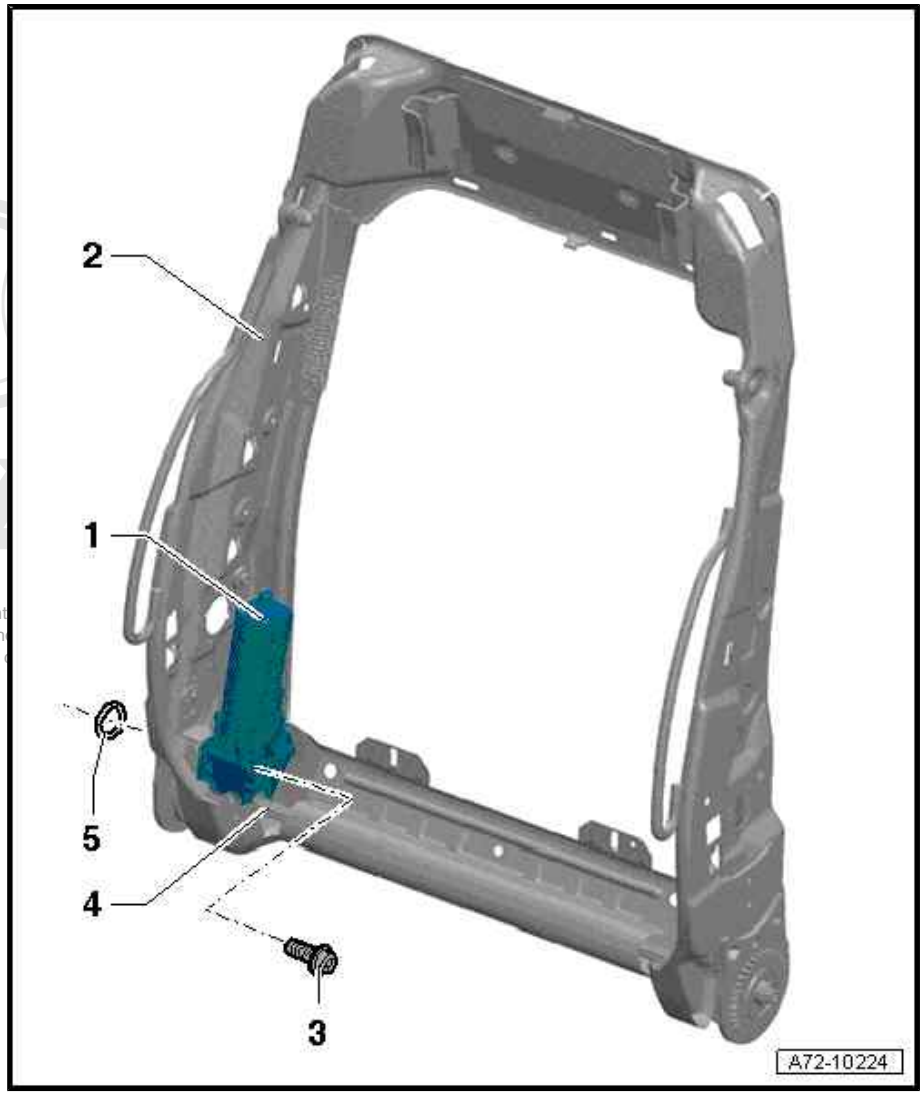
2 - Front seat backrest
- ❑ Only outer backrest frame is shown

3 - Bolt
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

4 - Shaft

5 - Spring washer
- ❑ Renew

Protected by copyright
permitted unless auth
with respect to the



3.49 Removing and installing backrest adjustment motor -V45- / -V46-

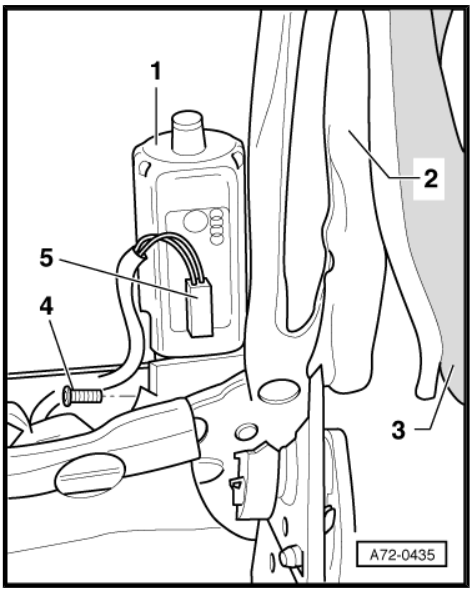
Removing

WARNING

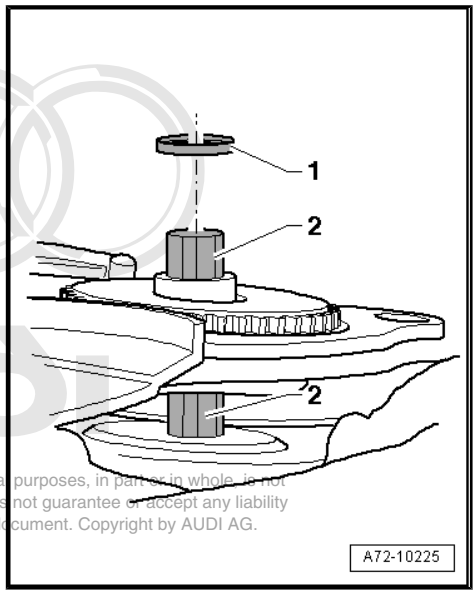
Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

– Remove seat ⇒ page 446 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 443 .
– Remove trim panels and assembly cover (sill side) ⇒ page 462 .
– Remove trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 466 .
– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 478 .
– Unplug connector -5- at backrest adjustment motor -1-.
– Pull backrest cover -3- and anti-squeak pad -2- to one side.
– Remove bolt -4-.



– Use a screwdriver to prise off spring washer -1- on backrest motor side.
– Using a hammer and punch, knock shaft -2- through side of outer backrest frame.
– Pull shaft -2- out of outer backrest frame until seat longitudinal adjustment motor can be taken out.



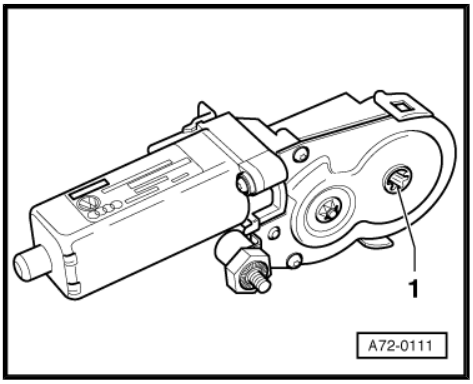
Installing

WARNING

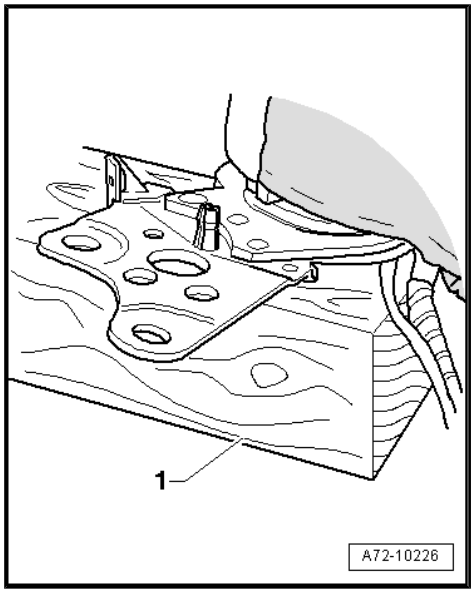
Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Use screwdriver to align locating element of splines -1- with shaft of outer backrest frame.
– Slide shaft through backrest adjustment motor and outer backrest frame.

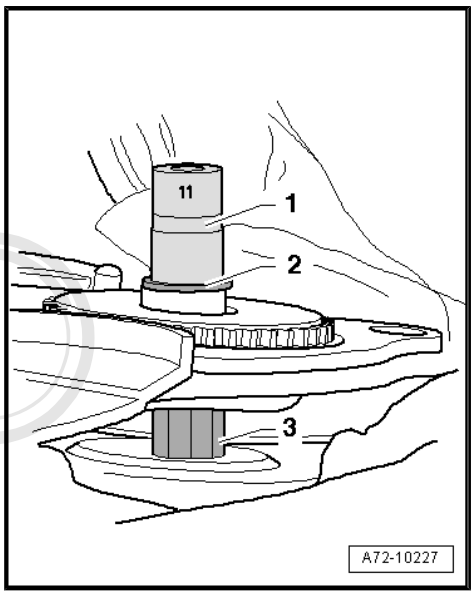


– Place a wooden block -1- beneath shaft on opposite side of backrest adjustment motor.



– Use 11 mm socket attachment -1- to knock spring washer -2- onto shaft -3-.
– Fit bolt at backrest adjustment motor and tighten it to specified torque.
– Plug in connector at backrest adjustment motor.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



WARNING

Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Switch on ignition.

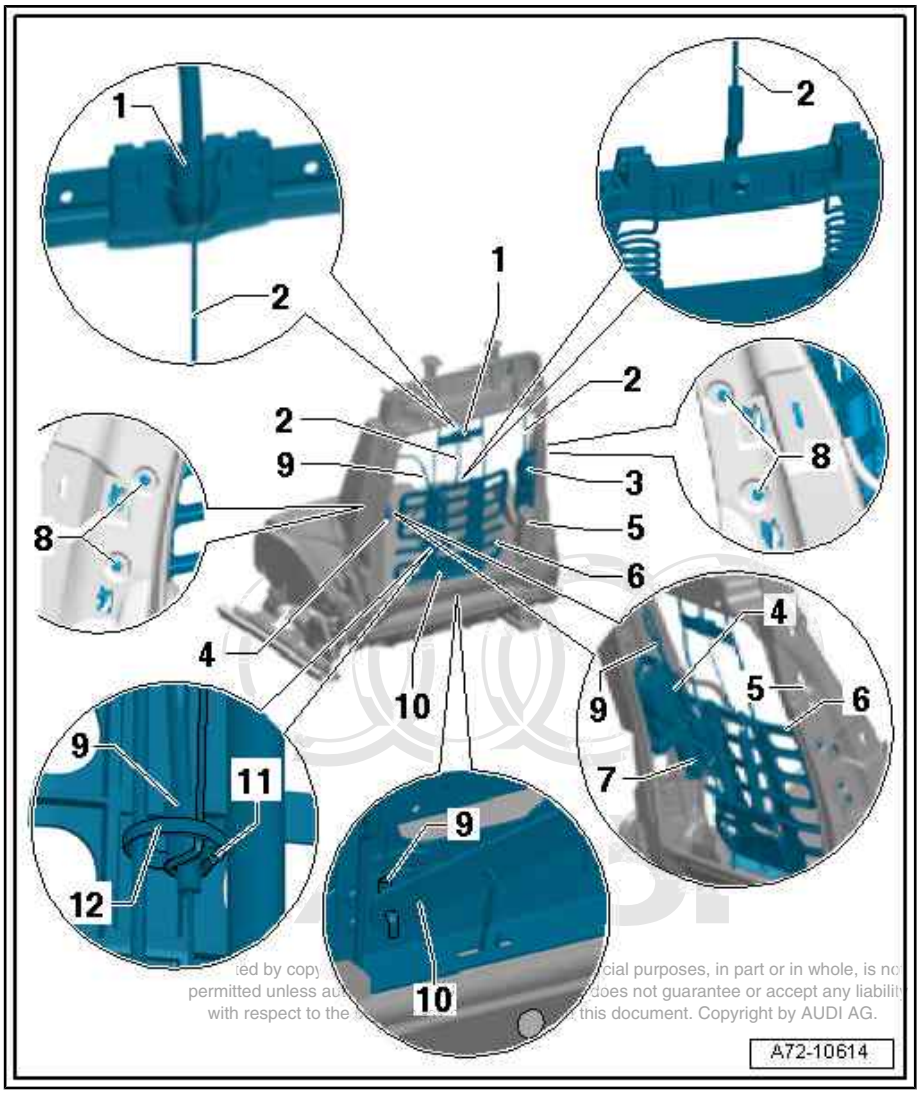
WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– Connect the battery with the ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .
– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Tightening torques ⇒ page 504

3.50 Exploded view - lumbar support longitudinal and height adjustment motors



1 - Clip

- ❑ For guiding Bowden cable ⇒ Item 2 (page 507)

2 - Bowden cable

- ❑ For adjusting height of four-way lumbar support
- ❑ Can only be renewed together with driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V129- / front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V130-

3 - Driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V129- / front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V130-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 510

4 - Driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V125- / front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V126-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 508

5 - Outer backrest frame

6 - Four-way lumbar support

7 - Connector

8 - Rivet

- ❑ 4x in total

♦ 2x for driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V129- / front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V130-

♦ 2x for driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V125- / front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V126-

- ❑ Set rivet using special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A-

9 - Bowden cable

- ❑ For longitudinal adjustment of four-way lumbar support
- ❑ Can only be renewed together with driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V125- / front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V126-

10 - Retaining plate

11 - Bracket

- ❑ For guiding Bowden cable ⇒ Item 9 (page 507)

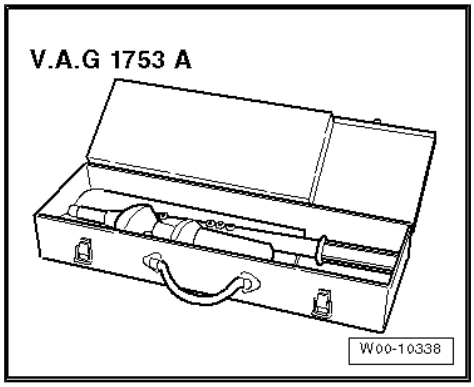
12 - Cable tie

ed by copy cial purposes, in part or in whole, is no permitted unless au does not guarantee or accept any liabilit with respect to the this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.51 Removing and installing lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V125- / -V126-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A-



Removing

> **WARNING**
>
> - *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
> - *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

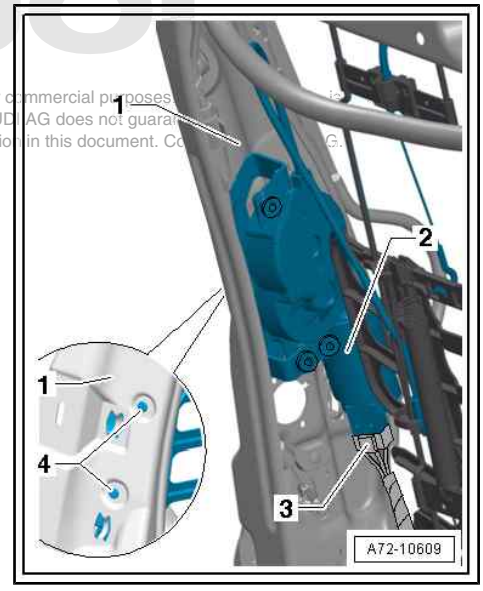
– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 478 .

– Remove cover with padding ⇒ page 599 .

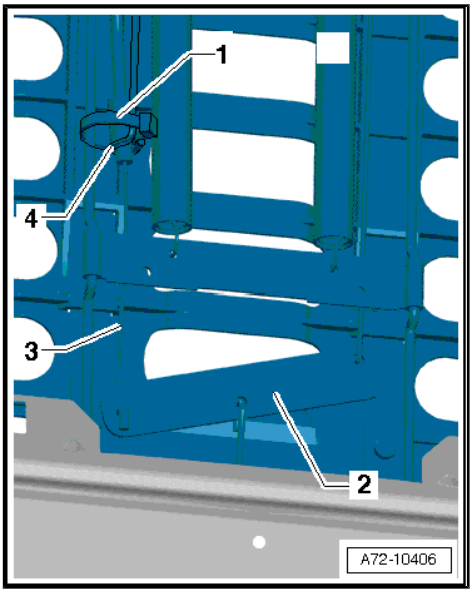
– Remove side airbag: vehicles up to approx. 04.2007 ⇒ page 141 , vehicles from approx. 05.2007 onwards ⇒ page 144 .

– Unplug electrical connector -3-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



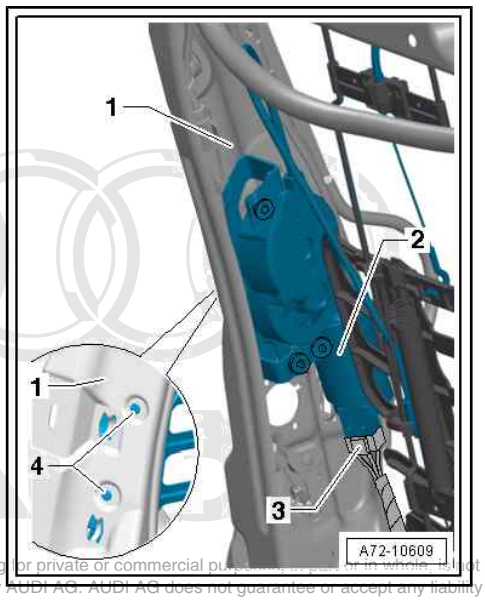
– Disengage Bowden cable -3- at retaining plate -2-.
– Unfasten cable tie -1-.
– Disengage Bowden cable -3- from bracket -4-.



– Drill out the rivets -4- (2x).

1 - Outer backrest frame

– Take out driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V125- -2- / front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V126- .



Installing

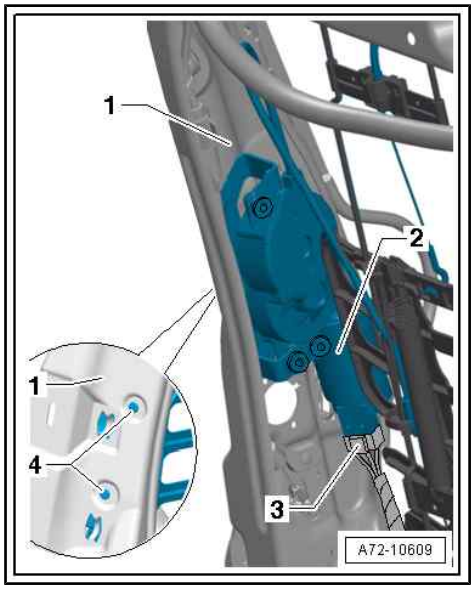
Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Rivet driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V125- / front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V126- to outer backrest frame -1- using special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A- .



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

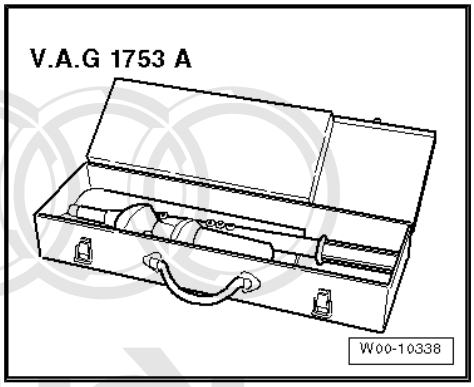
– Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .

– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

3.52 Removing and installing lumbar support height adjustment motor -V129- / -V130-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A-



Removing

WARNING

♦ ***Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .***

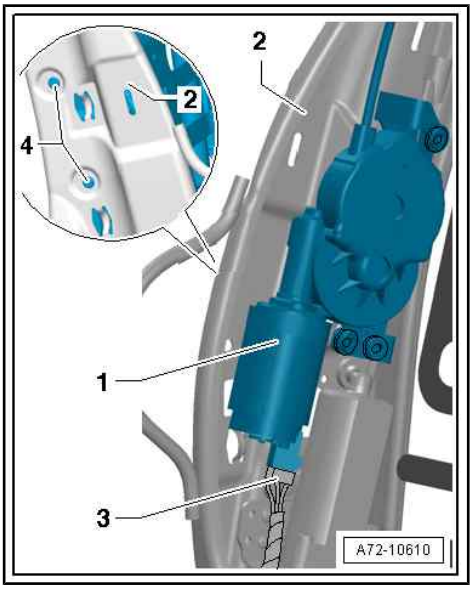
♦ ***Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 478 .

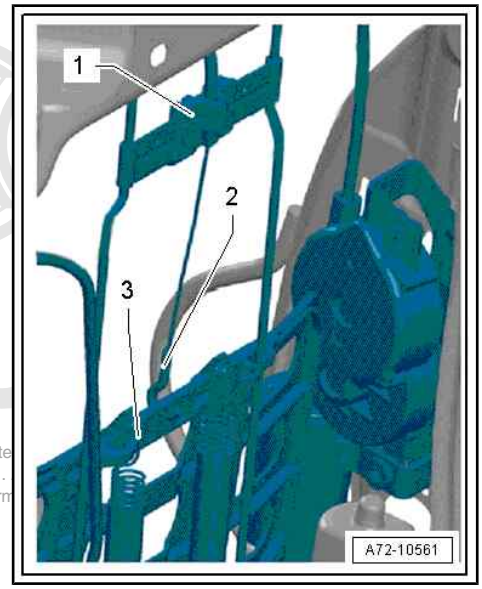
– Remove cover with padding ⇒ page 599 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unplug electrical connector -3-.



– Disengage Bowden cable -2- from clip -1-.
– Disengage Bowden cable -2- from four-way lumbar support -3-.

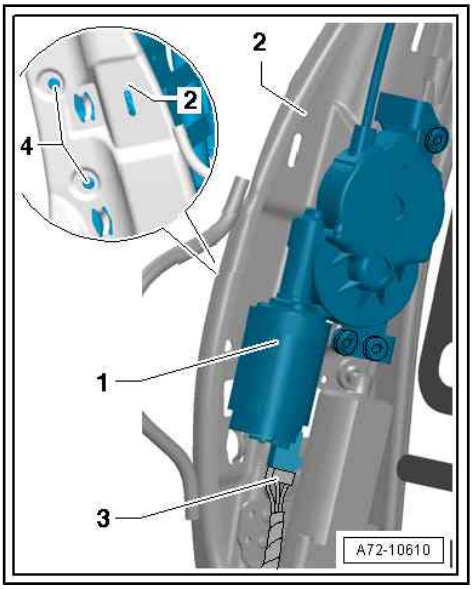


Protected by copyright. Copying for private
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG.
with respect to the correctness of inform

– Drill out the rivets -4- (2x).

2 - Outer backrest frame

– Take out driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V129- -1- / front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V130- .



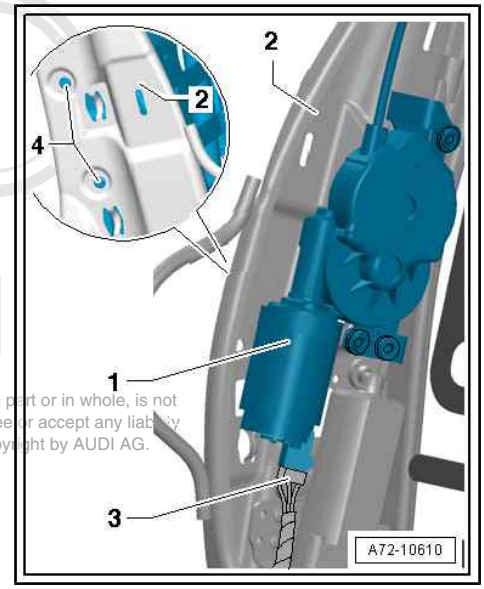
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Rivet driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V129- / front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V130- to outer backrest frame -2- using special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A- .



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

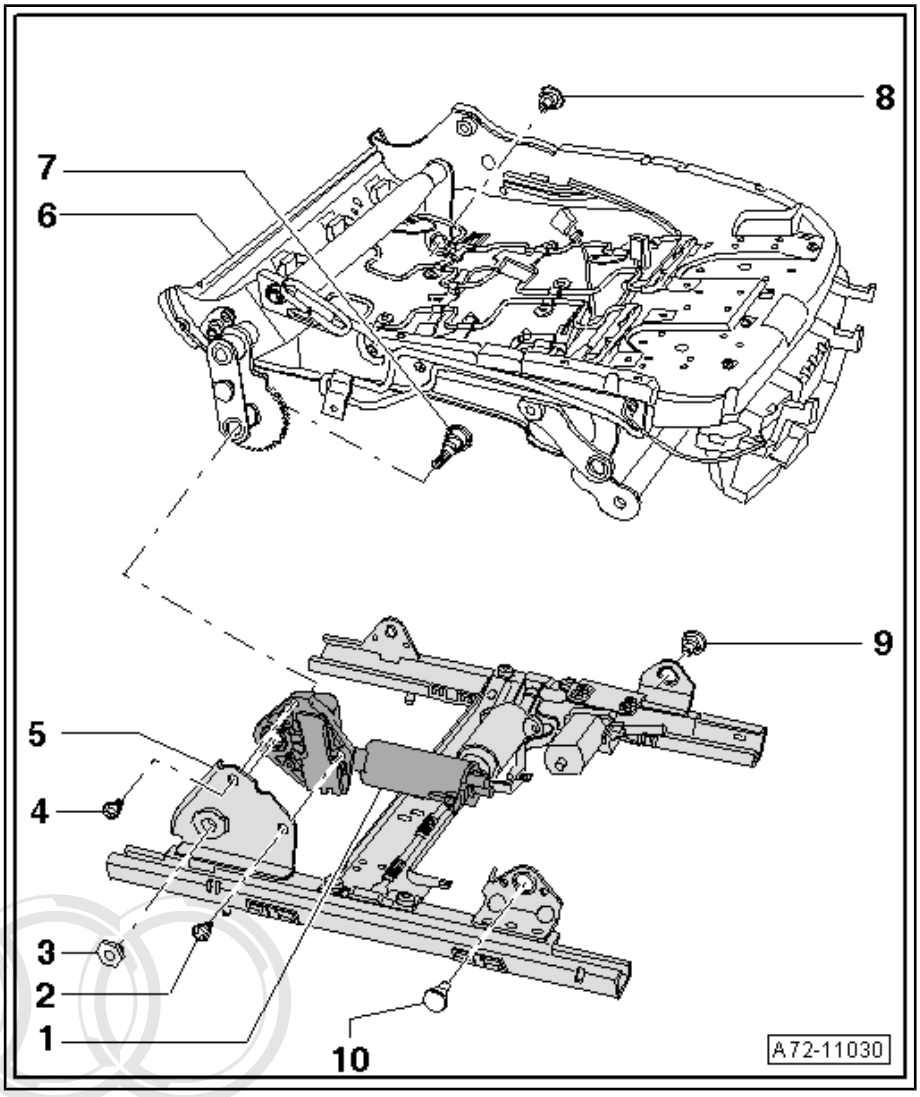
The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .

– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

3.53 Exploded view - seat height adjustment motor



1 - Seat height adjustment motor

- ❑ Driver seat height adjustment motor -V245-
- ❑ Front passenger seat height adjustment motor -V246-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 513

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 18 Nm
- ❑ Renew

3 - Nut

- ❑ Clean threaded holes for self-locking bolts, using e.g. a thread tap.

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 18 Nm

5 - Lower seat pan frame

6 - Seat pan

7 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 5 (page 489)

8 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 1 (page 489)
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for self-locking bolts, using e.g. a thread tap.

9 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 1 (page 489)
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for self-locking bolts, using e.g. a thread tap.

10 - Bolt

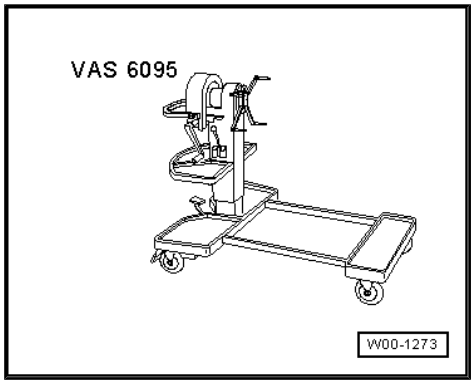
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 1 (page 489)
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for self-locking bolts, using e.g. a thread tap.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

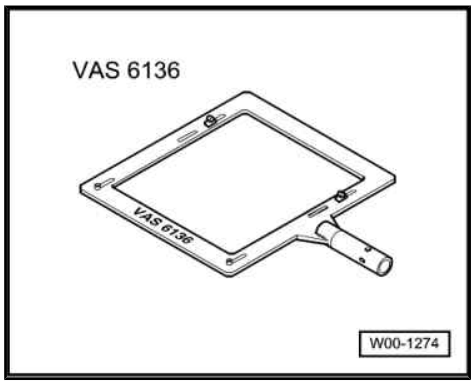
3.54 Removing and installing seat height adjustment motor -V245- / -V246-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



- Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-

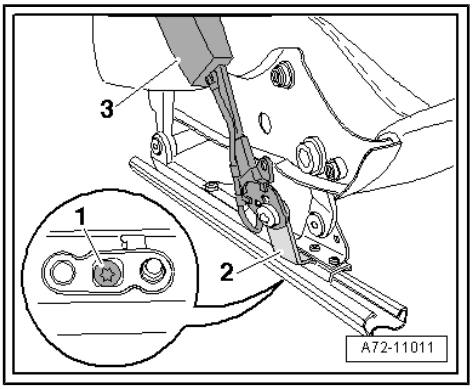


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

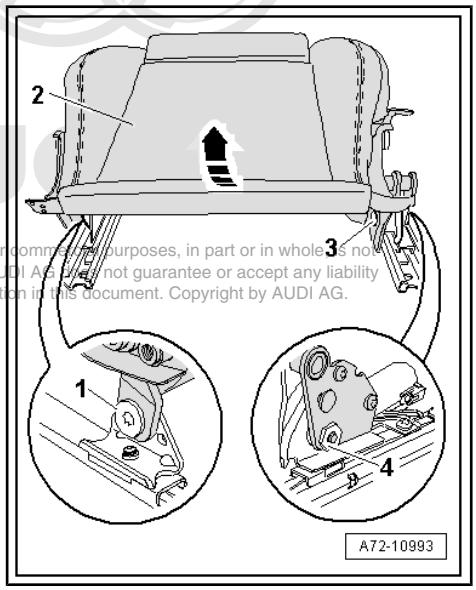


- Remove front seat ⇒ page 446 .
- Unplug electrical connector at seat longitudinal adjustment motor.
- Unscrew bolt -1-; to do so, connect contacts at motor with battery using leads from auxiliary measuring set -V.A.G 1594C- and move longitudinal seat adjustment into position shown in illustration.
- Detach mounting -2- for belt buckle -3- and unplug electrical connector for belt buckle sensor.
- Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
- Attach seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
- Remove trim panels and assembly cover (sill side) ⇒ page 462 .
- Remove trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 466 .
- Take photographs or make sketches of the wiring attachment and routing.
- Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 476 .

Note

If the front seat backrest is not removed, there will be such a load on the ceramic sleeves on the seat frame that they will break.

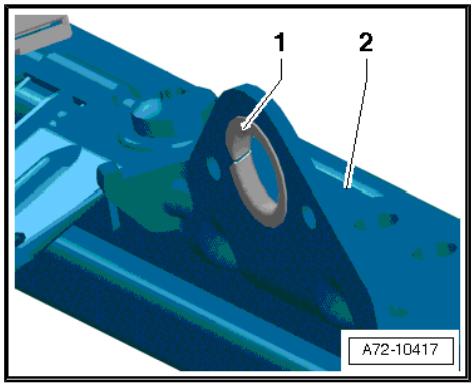
- Remove bolt -1-.
- Remove nut -4- and detach bolt -3-.
- Fold up seat pan -2- -arrow- and prevent it from folding back down with a wooden block.



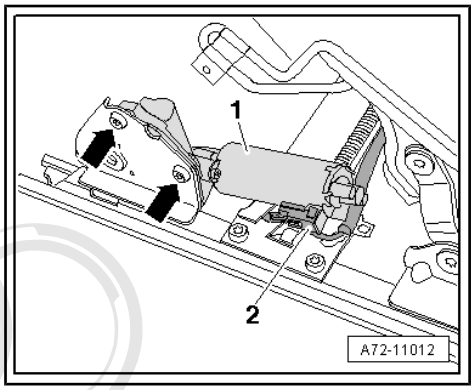
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

Take care not to damage bushes -1- in pivot points on lower seat pan frame -2- when folding them up.



– Unplug electrical connector -2-.
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach seat height adjustment motor -1-.



Installing

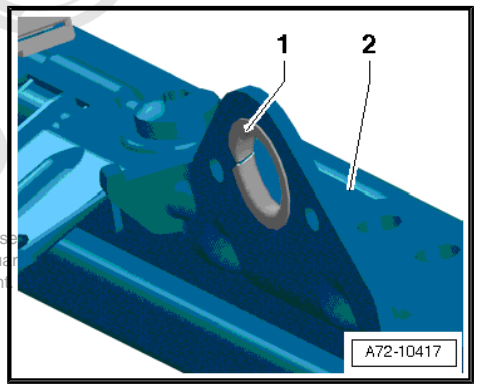
WARNING

Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Caution

- *Bushes -1- that have been damaged cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
- *If bushes have been damaged, renew entire lower seat pan frame -2-.*



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Clean threaded holes for self-locking bolts, using e.g. a thread tap.
– Renew all self-locking bolts.

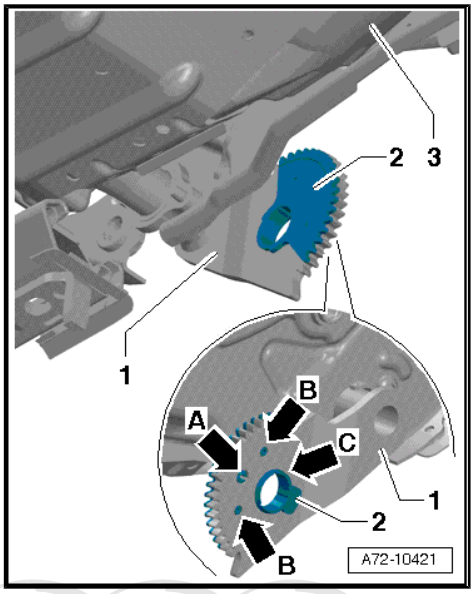
WARNING

Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Make sure clip -A-, collar of plastic toothed segment -2- and locking lugs -arrows B- are properly inserted in holes in fitting -1-.

– Make sure plastic toothed segment -2- is properly clipped to fitting -1-.

Collar of plastic toothed segment -arrow C- must make uniform contact with fitting -1-.



– Route and secure the wiring according to the photographs taken or sketches made earlier.

– Make sure all electrical connectors are properly engaged.

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. For safety reasons, when connecting the battery, keep clear of the airbag inflation areas and the belt tensioners/seat belts and make sure there is no-one else in the vehicle.

– Switch on ignition.

– Connect battery with ignition switched on. For procedure, refer to ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .

– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

– Seats with seat memory: After installing seat in vehicle, perform "basic setting" of backrest/seat ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

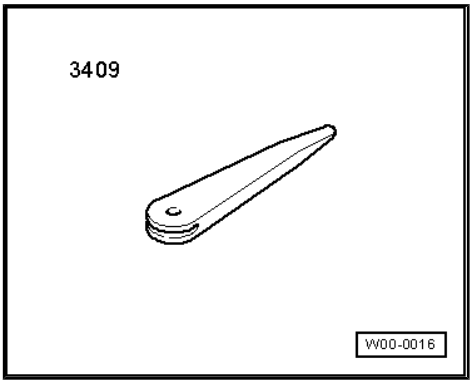
Tightening torque ⇒ page 512

Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.55 Removing and installing toothed segment for seat height adjustment

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge -3409-



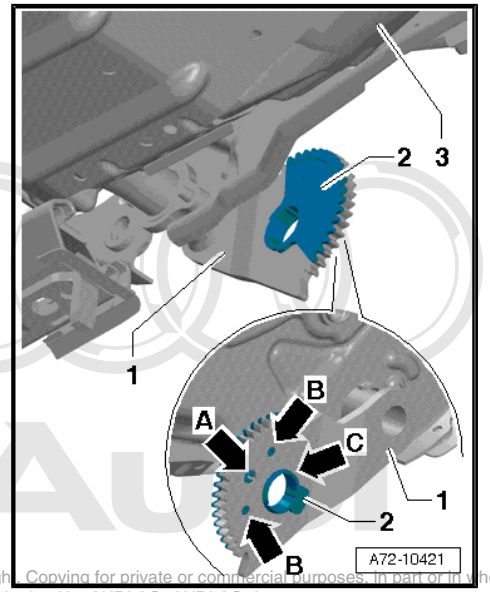
Removing

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove driver seat height adjustment motor -V245- / front passenger seat height adjustment motor -V246- ⇒ page 513 .

– Use removal wedge -3409- to unclip plastic toothed segment -2- from fitting -1-.



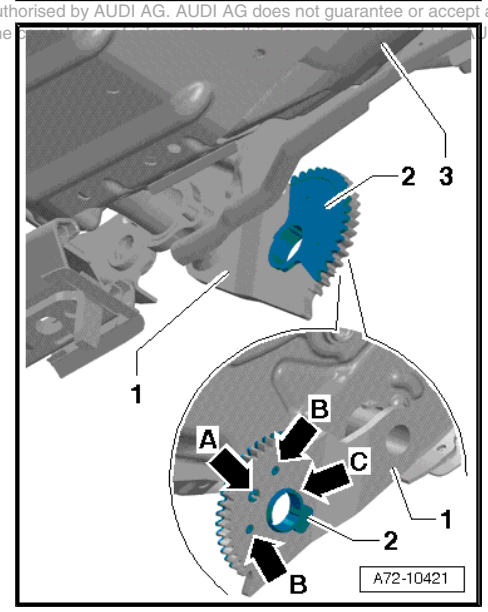
Installing

– Clip plastic toothed segment -2- into fitting -1-.

– Make sure clip -A-, collar of plastic toothed segment -2- and locking lugs -arrows B- are properly inserted in holes in fitting -1-.

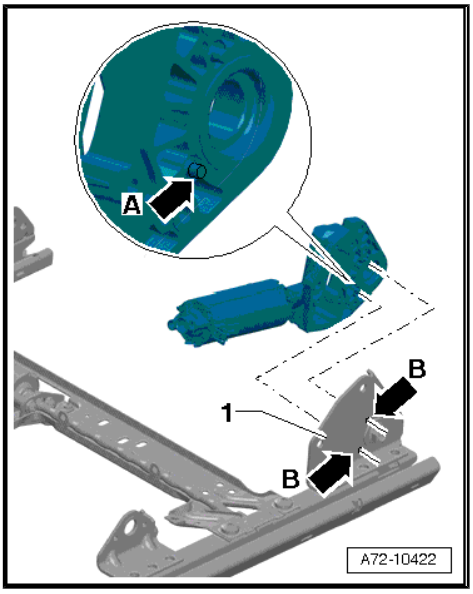
– Make sure plastic toothed segment -2- is properly clipped to fitting -1-.

Collar of plastic toothed segment -arrow C- must make uniform contact with fitting -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the [illegible] UDI AG.

– Make sure locking lugs -arrows A- are properly inserted in holes -arrows B- of link plate -1-.



Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .
– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

3.56 Exploded view of lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / -E177-

1 - Trim (sill side)

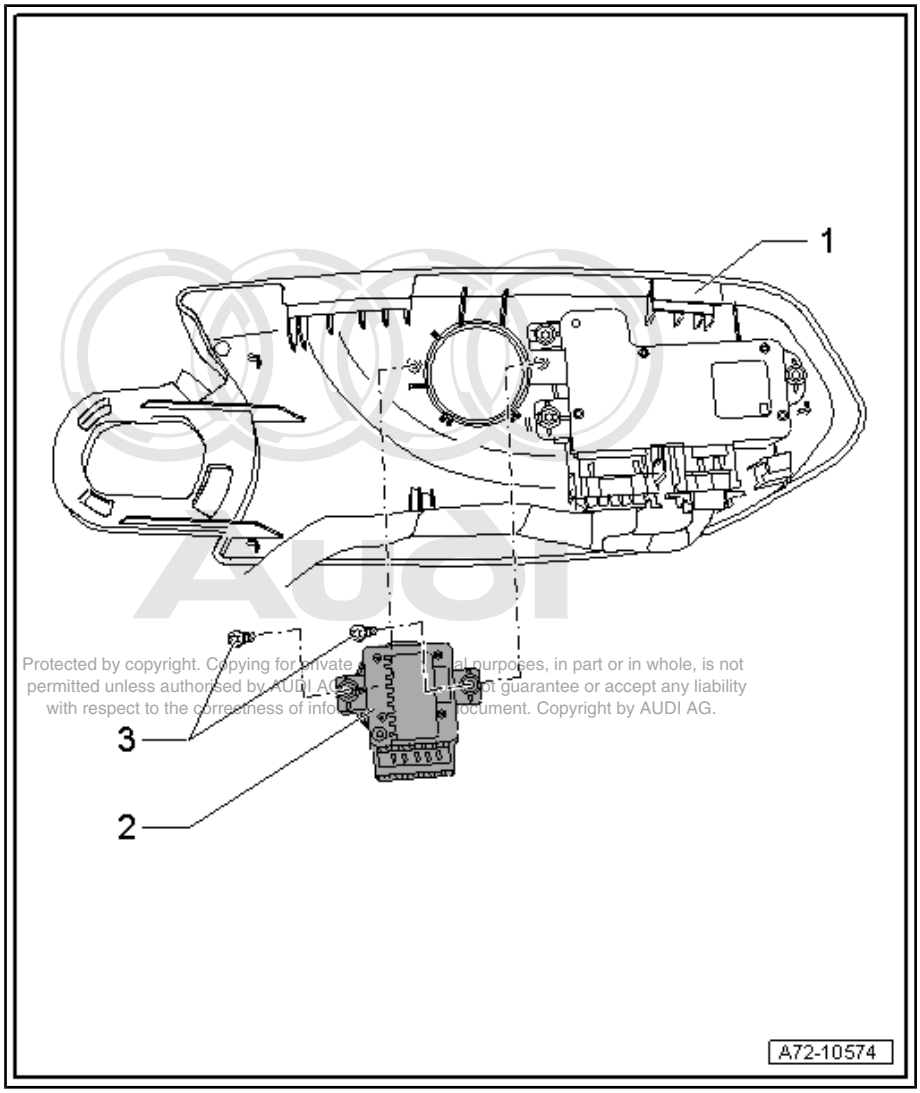
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 462

2 - Lumbar support adjustment switch

- ❑ For driver's seat -E176-
- ❑ For front passenger's seat -E177-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 521
- ❑ Switch and actuator cannot be separated and renewed separately

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 0.5 Nm
- ❑ 2x



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.57 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / -E177-

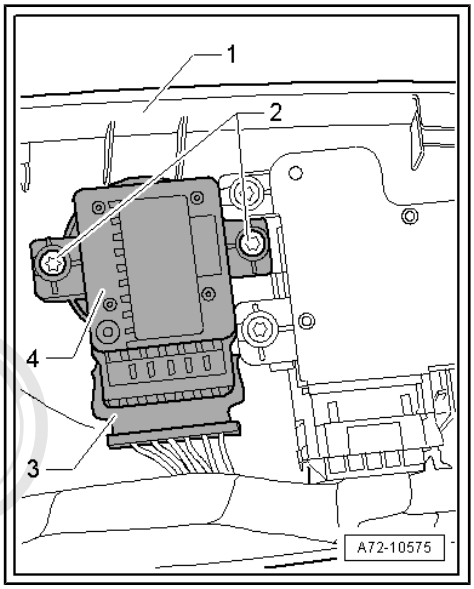
Removing

– Remove trim panels (sill side) -1- ⇒ page 462 .

– Unplug connector -3-.

– Remove bolts -2- (2x).

– Detach driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- -4- / front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E177- from trim (sill side) -1-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques ⇒ page 519

3.58 Exploded view of seat longitudinal adjustment button -E418- , rake adjustment button -E421- , seat height adjustment button -E424- and backrest adjustment button -E425-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Trim (sill side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 462

2 - Backrest adjustment actuator

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 474
- ❑ Clipped onto button

3 - Actuator for seat longitudinal, rake and height adjustment

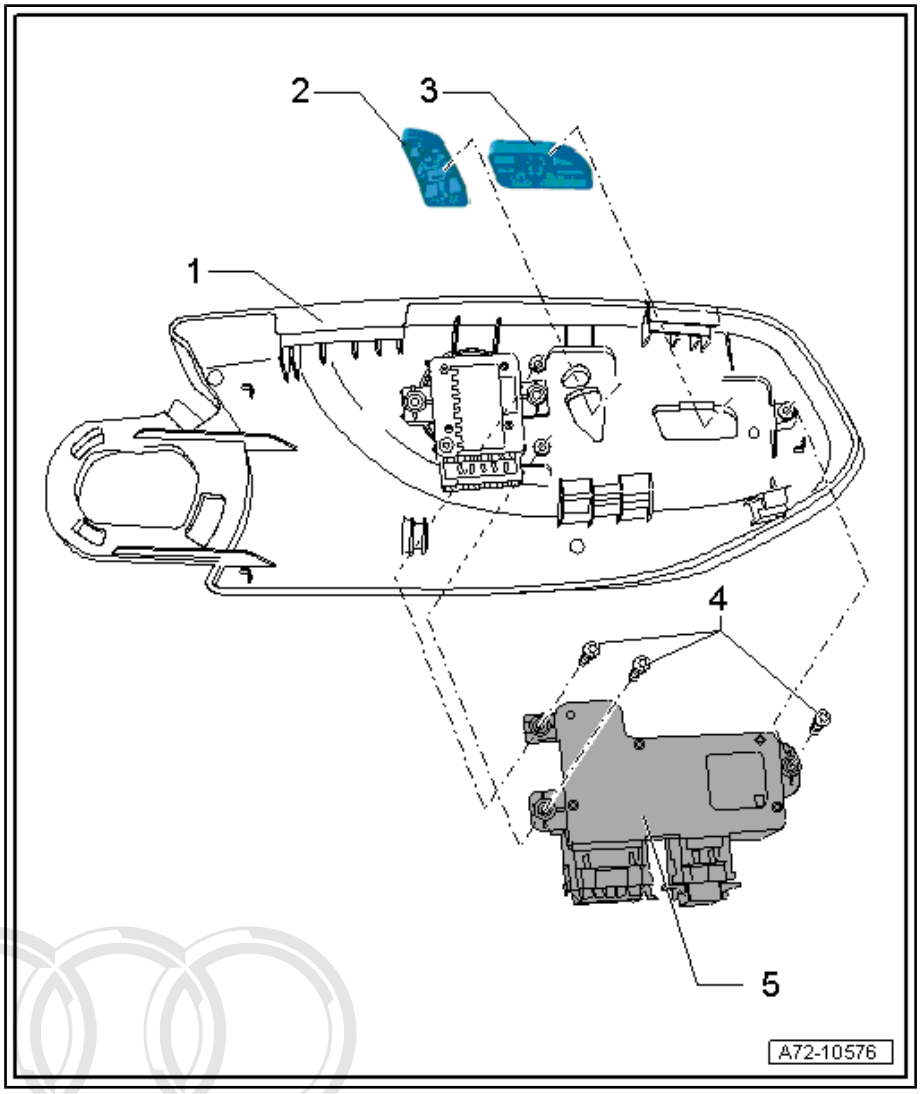
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 473
- ❑ Clipped onto button

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.5 Nm
- ❑ 3x

5 - Button

- ❑ For seat longitudinal adjustment -E418-
- ❑ For rake adjustment -E421-
- ❑ For seat height adjustment -E424-
- ❑ For backrest adjustment -E425-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 523
- ❑ Fitted in a joint housing; cannot be renewed separately



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.59 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment button -E418- rake adjustment button -E421- , seat height adjustment button -E424- and backrest adjustment button -E425-

Removing

– Remove trim (sill side) -3-.

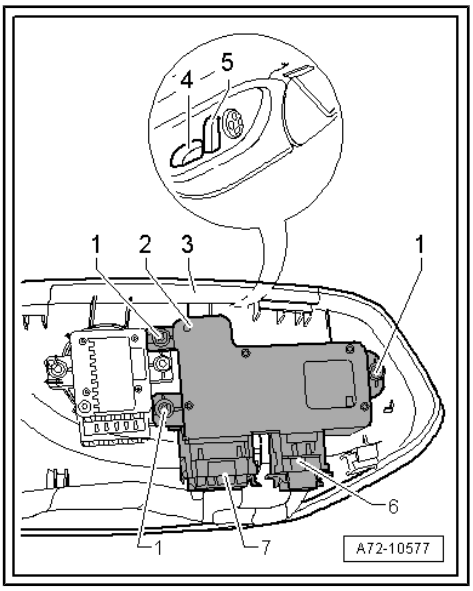
– Unplug connectors -6- and -7-.

– Remove seat and backrest adjustment actuators -4- and -5-.

– Remove bolts -1- (3x).

– Detach seat longitudinal adjustment, rake adjustment, seat height adjustment and backrest adjustment buttons -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques ⇒ page 521

3.60 Exploded view of seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory -J136- / front passenger seat adjustment control unit with memory -J521-

Note

For greater clarity, the surrounding area is not shown in the illustration.

1 - Front seat

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 446

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 3.5 Nm
- ❑ 2x

3 - Seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory -J136- / -J521-

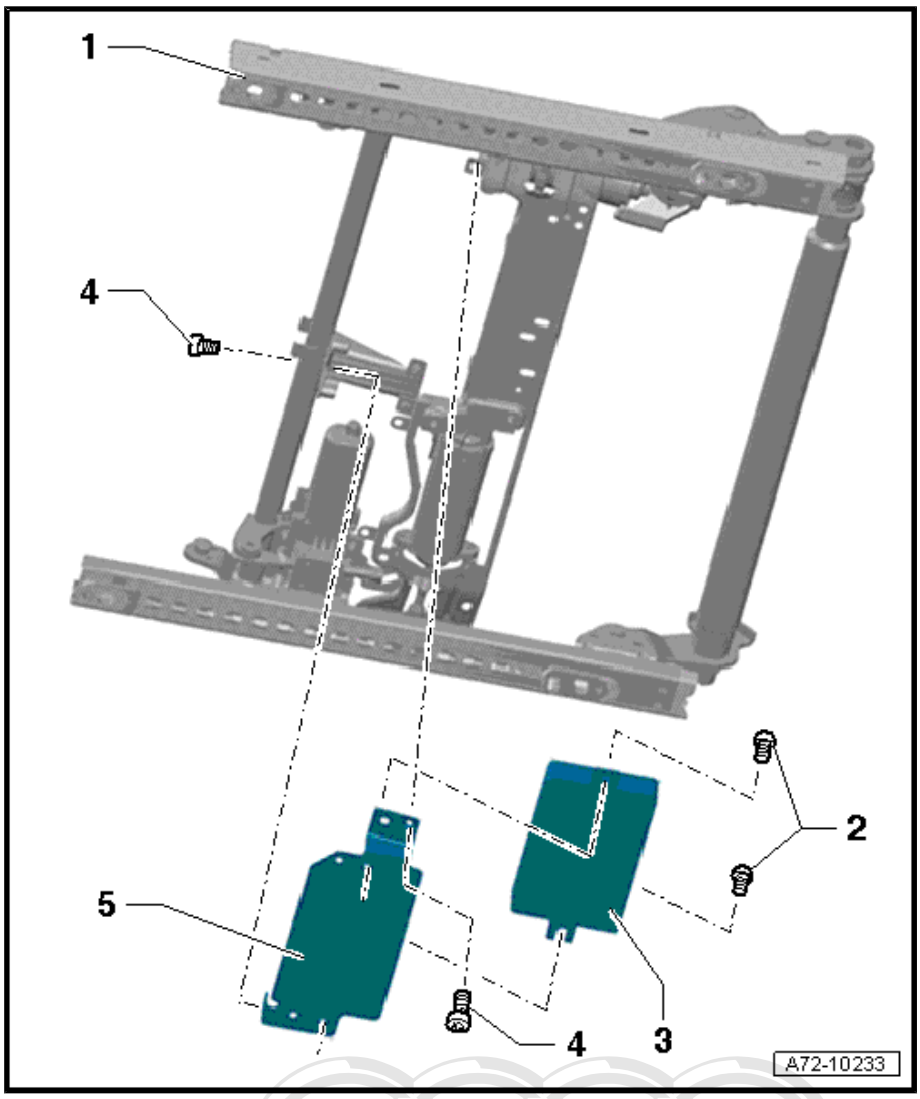
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 524

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 3.5 Nm
- ❑ 2x

5 - Retainer

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 524



3.61 Removing and installing seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory -J136- / -J521-

Note

- *The seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory -J136- / the front passenger seat adjustment control unit with memory -J521- is located beneath the front seat.*
- *If the seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory -J136- / the front passenger seat adjustment control unit with memory -J521- is defective, the upper seat pan frame must be detached ⇒ page 490 .*

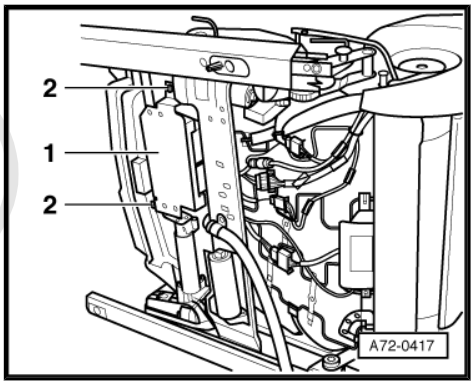
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

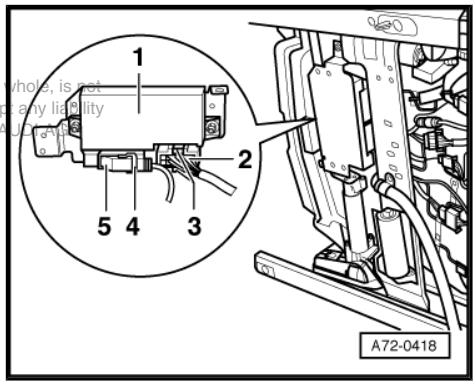
WARNING

Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 446 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 443 .
– Remove bolts -2- (2x).
– Turn seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory -1- around.



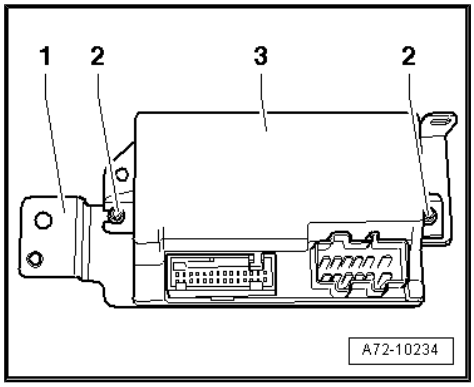
– Release retaining bracket -4- and unplug connector -5-.
– Press in retaining tabs -3- (2x) and unplug connector -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unscrew bolts -2-.

– Detach seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory -J136- / front passenger seat adjustment control unit with memory -J521- -3- from retainer -1-.



Installing

WARNING

Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– Connect the battery with the ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .

– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Tightening torques ⇒ page 523

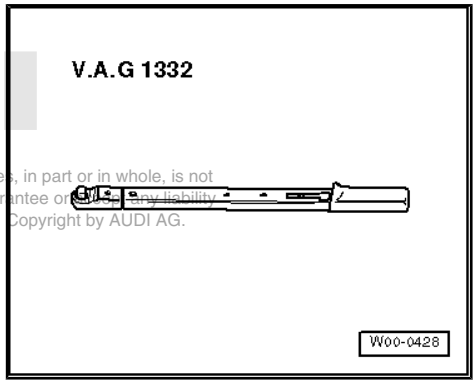
Audi
Any unauthorized use for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness and completeness of this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 Bucket seat

4.1 Removing and installing seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench -V.A.G 1332-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

- *The RS 6 bucket seat has no side airbag. Therefore, the electrical connection for the side airbag in the vehicle wiring harness must be provided with a terminating resistor.*
- *The terminating resistor is part of the wiring harness.*

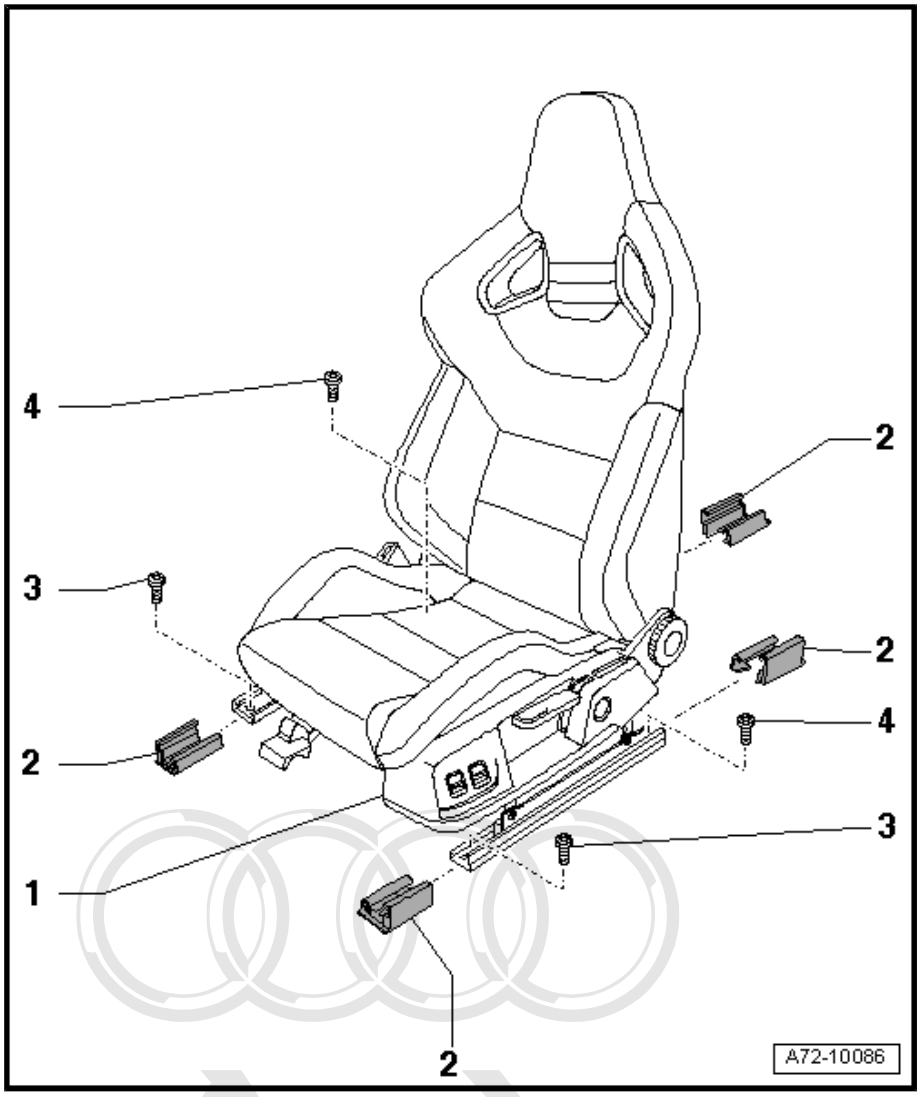
1 - Front seat

Removing

- Move front seat -1- as far upwards and to rear as possible.
- Unscrew bolts -3- (2x) at front.
- Move seat forwards.
- Remove outer side trim ⇒ page 530 .
- Remove belt end fitting ⇒ page 67 .
- Unscrew bolts -4- (2x) at rear.
- Tilt front seat -1- backwards.
- Unplug electrical connectors ⇒ page 529 .
- Take out seat.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



2 - Seat rail covers

- ❑ Front right and rear left are identical
- ❑ Front left and rear right are identical
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 528

3 - Front bolts (2x)

- ❑ 50 Nm

4 - Rear bolts (2x)

- ❑ 50 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

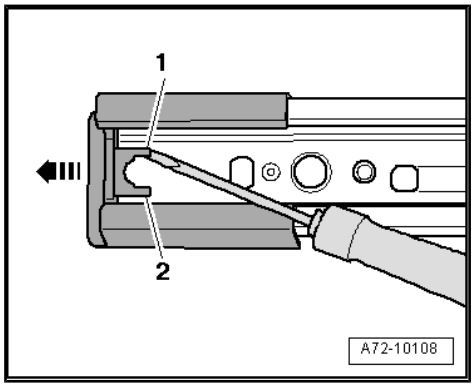
4.2 Removing and installing seat rail cover

Removing

- Remove seat ⇒ page 527 .
- Carefully release both retaining catches -1- and -2-.
- Then detach seat rail cover in direction of -arrow-.

Installing

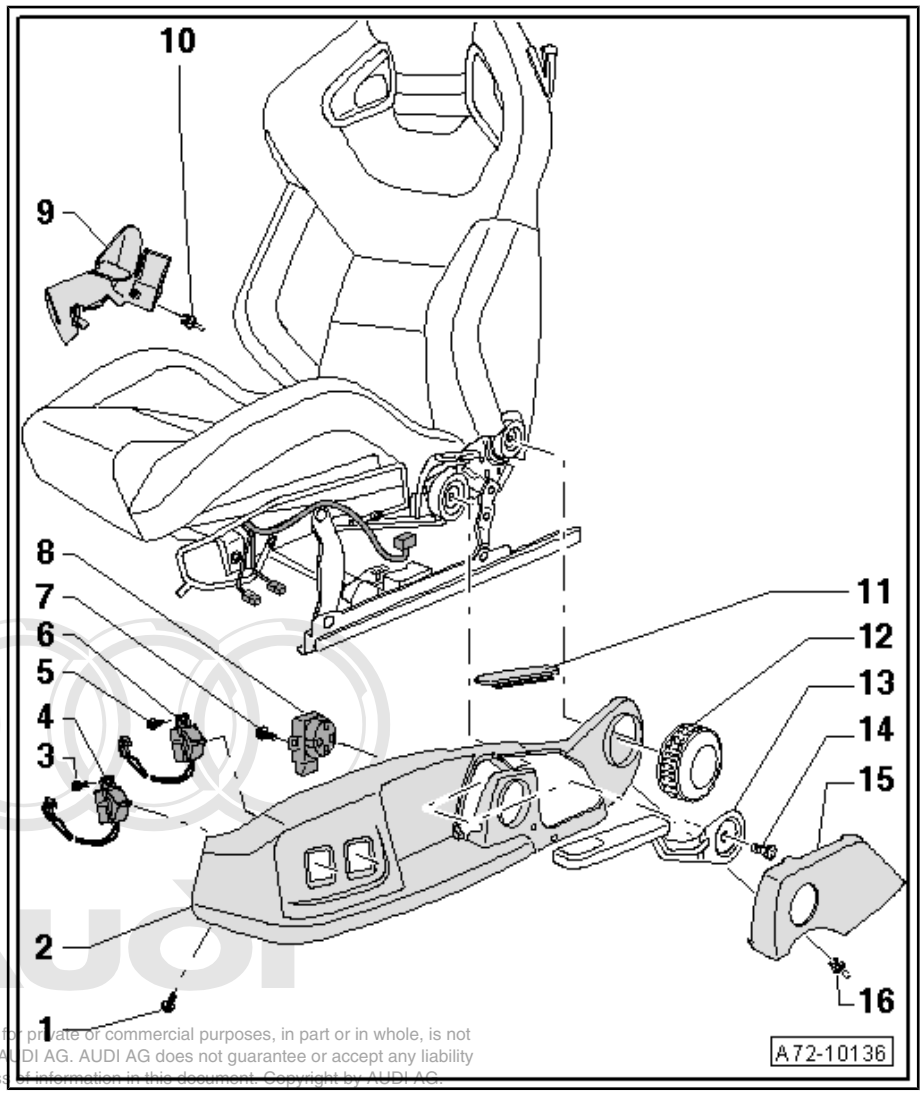
- Slide on seat rail cover until it engages audibly.



4.3 Unplugging and plugging in connectors

Unplugging and plugging in connectors is described for a seat with electric adjustment ⇒ page 452 .

4.4 Exploded view of side trim panels



1 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.2 Nm

2 - Side trim (sill side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 531

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 0.4 Nm

4 - Button for seat bolster adjustment

- ❑ Button for driver seat bolster adjustment -E587-
- ❑ Button for front passenger seat bolster adjustment -E588-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 535

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 0.4 Nm

6 - Button for backrest bolster adjustment

- ❑ Button for driver seat backrest bolster adjustment -E589-
- ❑ Button for front passenger seat backrest bolster adjustment -E590-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 535

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 0.4 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8 - Lumbar support adjustment switch

- ❑ Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E176-
- ❑ Front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E177-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 535

9 - Side trim (tunnel side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 533

10 - Fastener

11 - Not installed

12 - Backrest adjuster knob

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 530

13 - Seat height adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 531

14 - Bolt

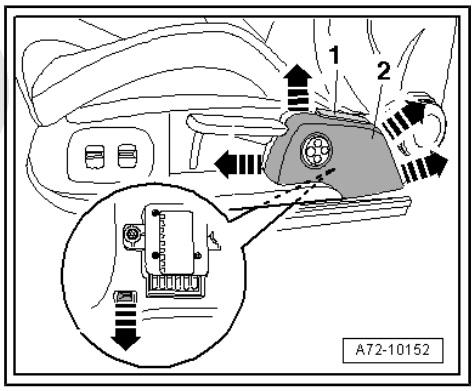
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 1 (page 544)

15 - Outer side trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 530

16 - Fastener

4.5 Removing and installing outer side trim



Removing

– Move seat forwards and up as far as possible.

– Release retaining clips -arrows- and detach side trim -2-.

Note

-Item 1- can be disregarded.

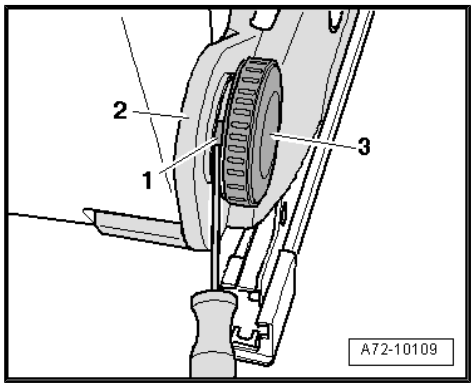
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Outer side trim must be pressed on until it engages audibly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.6 Removing and installing backrest adjuster knob



Removing

– Push side trim -2- slightly towards backrest.

– Use a screwdriver to lift retaining catch -1- up slightly and disengage.

– Turn backrest adjuster knob -3- and disengage another retaining catch.

– Remove backrest adjuster knob.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Push on adjuster knob until it engages audibly.

Note

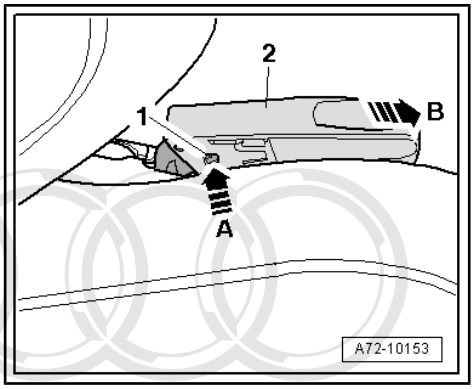
If backrest adjuster knob has come loose on adjusting shaft, backrest adjuster knob must be renewed.

4.7 Removing and installing seat height adjuster

Removing

– Pull seat height adjuster upwards and hold it.

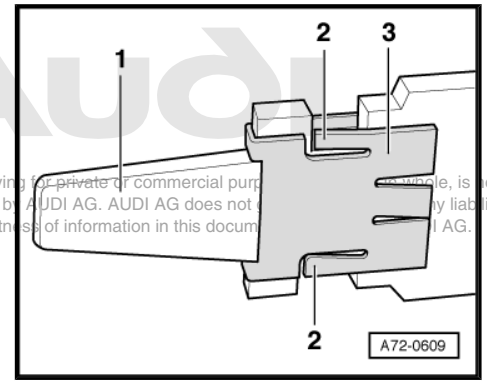
– Use a narrow-bladed screwdriver to press retaining clip -1- inwards -arrow A- and pull seat height adjuster -2- off lever -arrow B-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Make sure springs -2- (2x) of retaining clip -3- are positioned on outside of lever -1-.

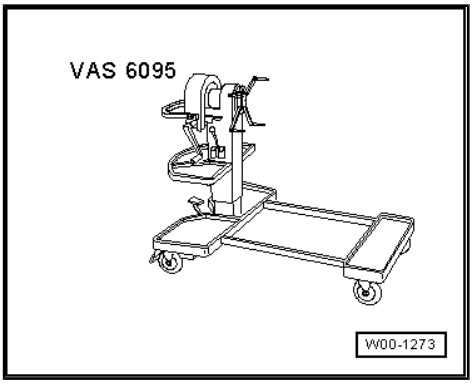


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purp... vehicle, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not ... any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this docum... AUDI AG.

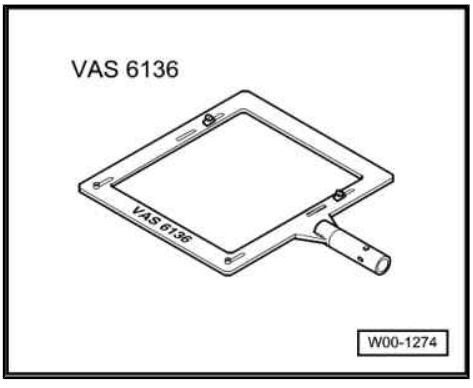
4.8 Removing and installing side trim (sill side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-

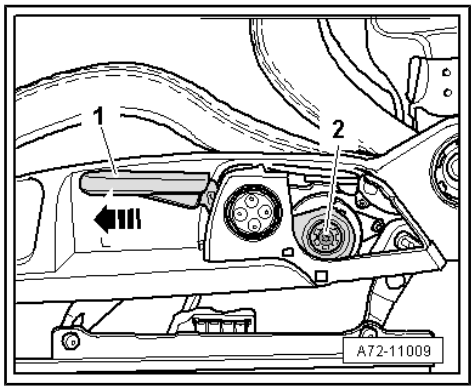


♦ Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-

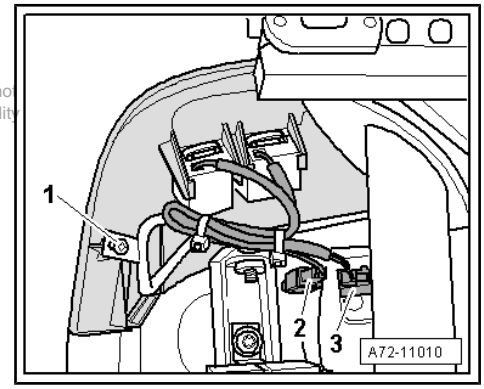


Removing

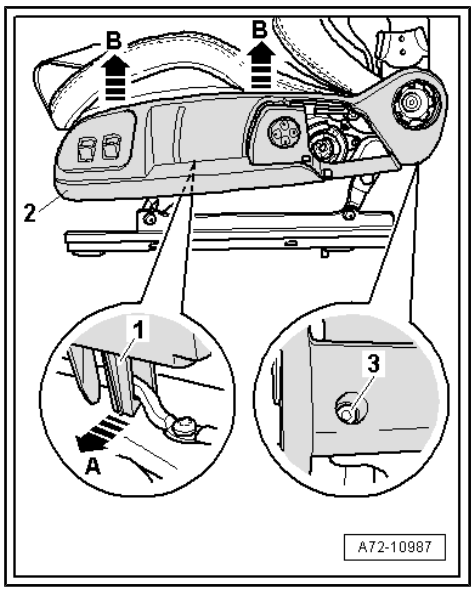
- Remove seat ⇒ page 527 .
- Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
- Remove outer side trim ⇒ page 530 .
- Remove bolt -2-.
- Detach seat height adjustment handle -1- in direction of -arrow-.
- Remove backrest adjuster knob ⇒ page 530 .
- Remove backrest cover panel (left-side) ⇒ page 547 .



- Remove bolt -1-.
- Sever cable tie.
- Release retaining tabs and take electrical connectors out of brackets.
- Mark electrical connectors -2- and -3- for re-installation and unplug.



- Push in pin to detach fastener -3-.
- Release retaining tab -1- -arrow A- and lift off side trim (sill side) -2- towards front -arrows B-.
- Unplug electrical connector for lumbar support.



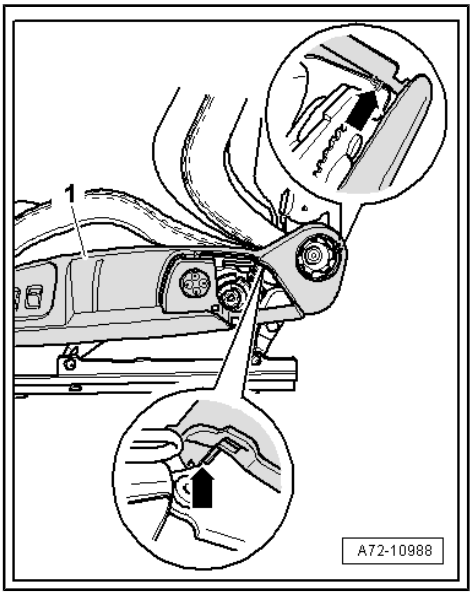
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

- Tightening torque ⇒ page 529 , ⇒ page 543

– Make sure that side trim (sill side) -1- is engaged correctly in seat pan and backrest -arrows-.

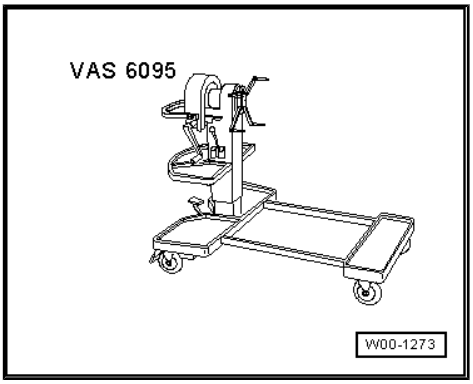


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

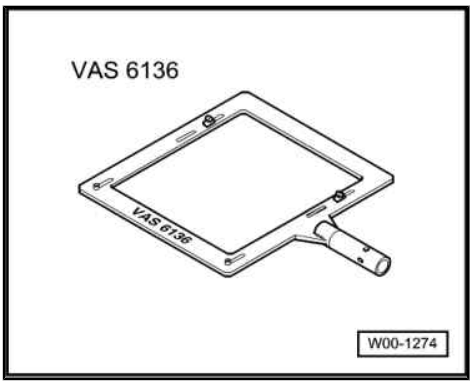
4.9 Removing and installing side trim (tunnel side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



♦ Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



Removing

– Remove seat ⇒ page 527 .

– Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .

– Remove backrest cover panel (right-side) ⇒ page 547 .

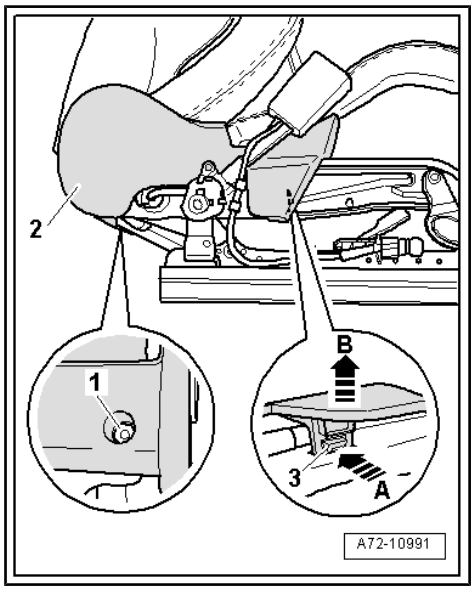
– Remove belt buckle ⇒ page 75 .

Note

Electrical connector does not have to be unplugged.

– Push in pin to detach fastener -1-.

– Release retaining clip -3- -arrow A- and lift off side trim (tunnel side) -2- towards front -arrows B-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

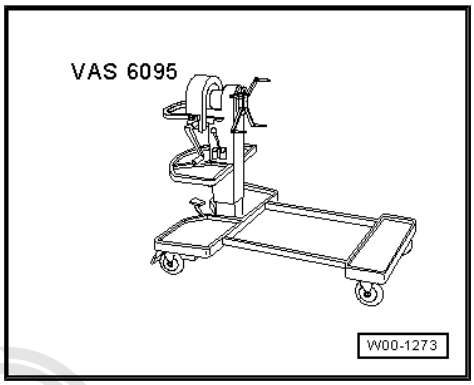
• Tightening torque ⇒ page 75

– Make sure that side trim (tunnel side) is engaged correctly in backrest.

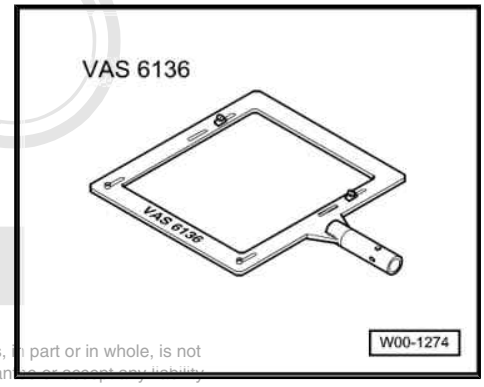
4.10 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



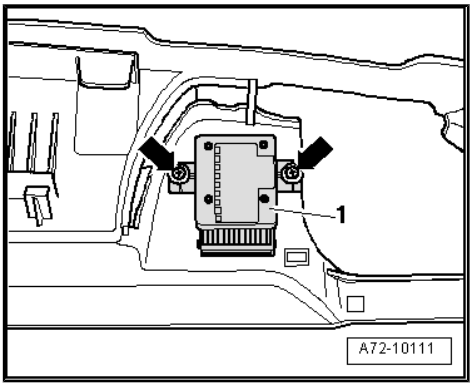
♦ Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove seat ⇒ page 527 .
– Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
– Remove side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 531 .
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Detach lumbar support adjustment switch -1-.



Installing

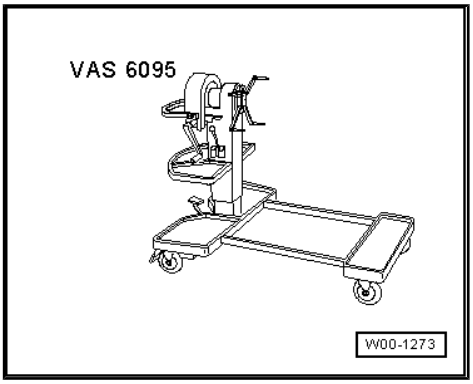
Install in reverse order of removal.

• Tightening torque ⇒ page 529

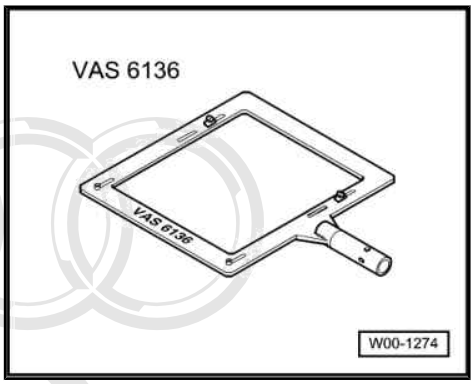
4.11 Removing and installing button for backrest bolster adjustment and button for seat bolster adjustment

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-

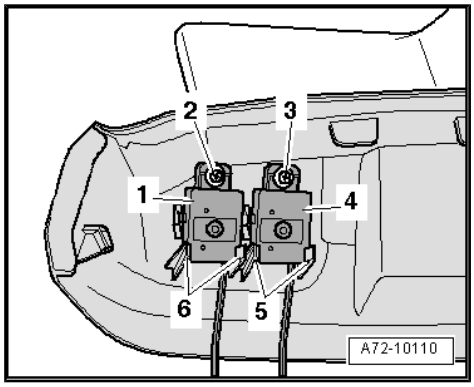


♦ Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing



- Remove seat ⇒ page 527 .
- Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
- Remove side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 531 .
- Remove bolts -2- and -3-.
- Release retaining clips -5- and -6- and remove button for seat bolster adjustment -item 1- or button for backrest bolster adjustment -item 4-.

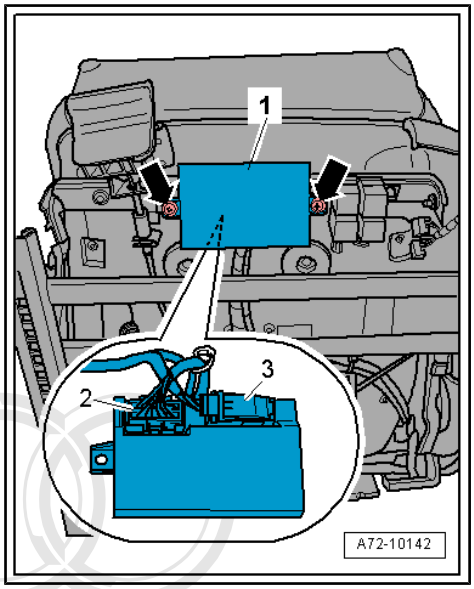
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

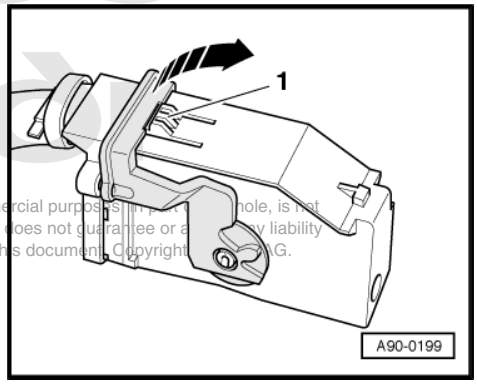
- Tightening torque ⇒ page 529

4.12 Removing and installing control unit

Removing



- Move front seat upwards and forwards as far as it will go.
- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Unplug electrical connector -2-.
- Unplug electrical connector -3-.



- To unplug electrical connector, press catch -1-, turn retaining bracket in direction of -arrow- and unplug connector.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

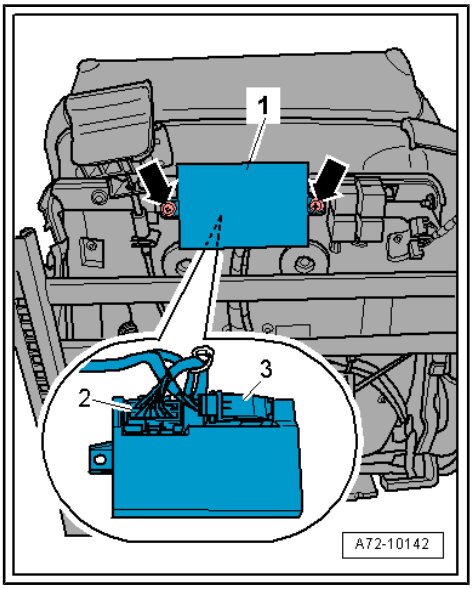
– Detach control unit -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Control unit to seat frame	1.5



4.13 Exploded view of backrest and seat pan

1 - Bolt

- ❑ 24 Nm
- ❑ Apply locking fluid when fitting
- ❑ Locking fluid; refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 4 Nm

3 - Seat longitudinal adjustment handle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “4.16 Removing and installing operating cable for seat longitudinal adjustment”, page 541

4 - Bolt

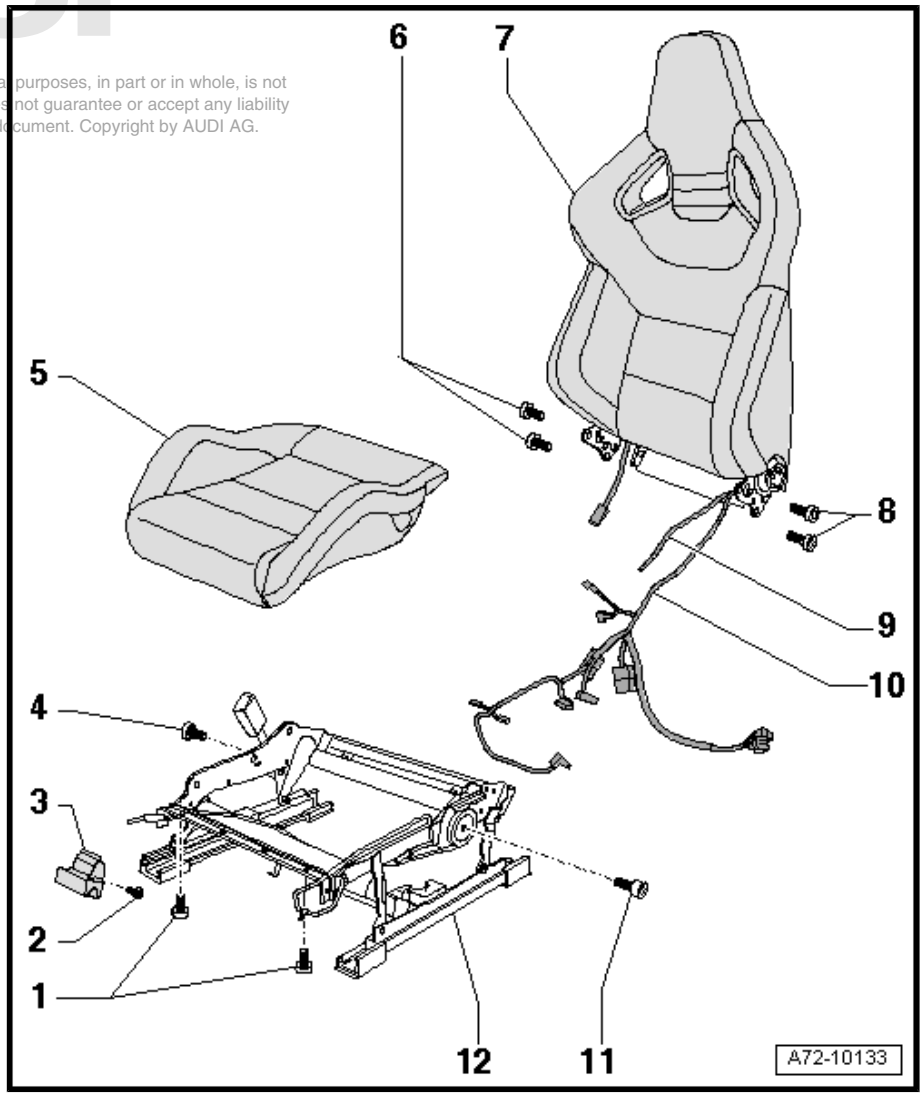
- ❑ 24 Nm
- ❑ Apply locking fluid when fitting
- ❑ Locking fluid; refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

5 - Seat pan

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 538

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 20 Nm
- ❑ Apply locking fluid when fitting
- ❑ Locking fluid; refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7 - Backrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 540

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 20 Nm
- ❑ Apply locking fluid when fitting
- ❑ Locking fluid; refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

9 - Pneumatic hose

- ❑ For flaps for backrest bolster adjustment

10 - Electrical wiring harness

11 - Bolt

- ❑ 24 Nm
- ❑ Apply locking fluid when fitting
- ❑ Locking fluid; refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

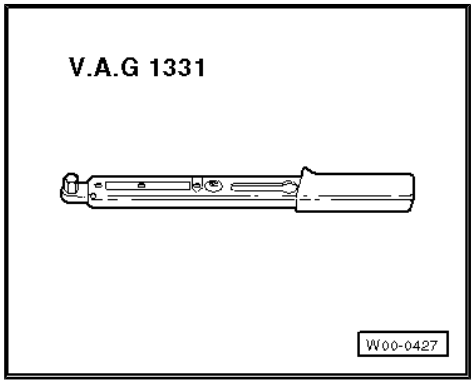
12 - Seat frame

4.14 Removing and installing seat pan

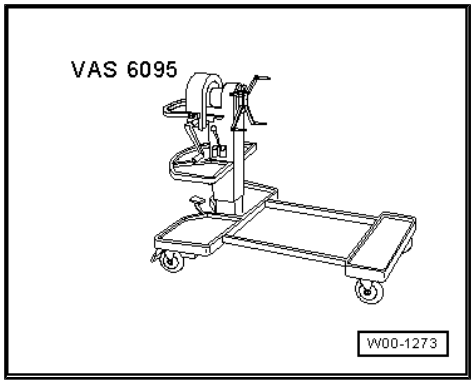
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

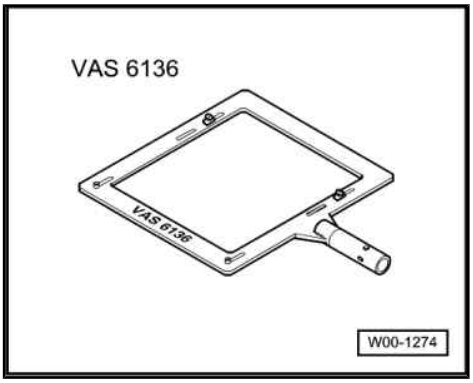
- ♦ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1331-



- ♦ Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-

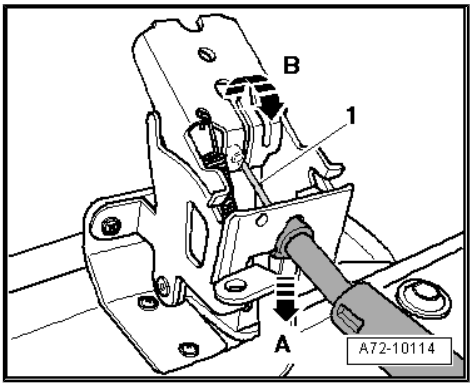


♦ Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-

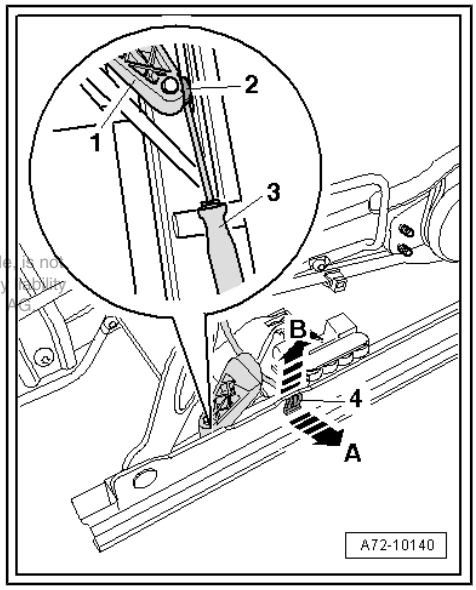


Removing

– Remove seat ⇒ page 527 .
– Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
– Remove side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 531 .
– Remove side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 533 .
– Remove handle for seat longitudinal adjustment
– Press cable sleeve out of cable support bracket in direction of -arrow A-.
– Detach operating cable -1- for seat longitudinal adjustment from release lever -arrow B-.

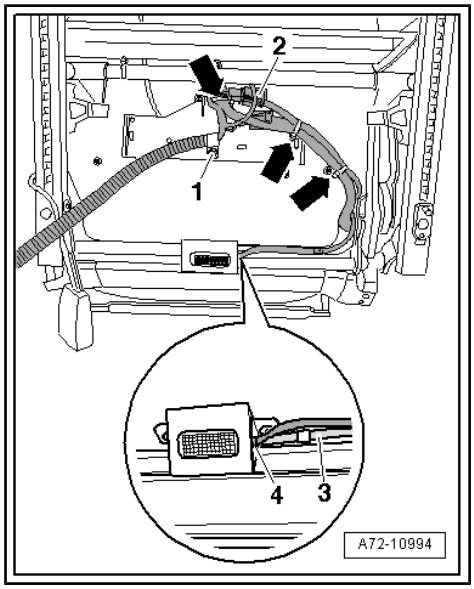


– Release securing clip -4- at operating cable in direction of -arrow A- and lift off securing clip -arrow B-.
– Release retaining spring -2- using a narrow-bladed screwdriver -3-.
– Pull seat rail release lever -1- upwards out of rotary shaft.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unscrew bolt -1- and sever cable ties -arrows-.
– Move clear electrical wiring harness at retaining plate.
– Unplug electrical connectors -2 and 4-.
– Disconnect pneumatic hose -3-.



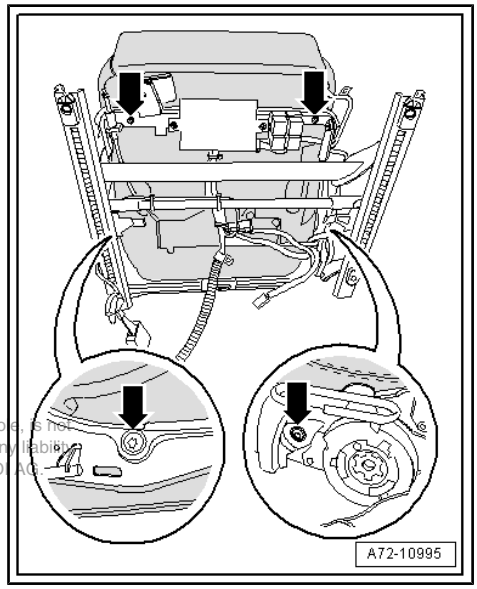
– Remove bolts -arrow-.
– Detach seat pan -2- from seat frame.

Installing

• Tightening torque ⇒ page 537

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

– Insert bolts with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

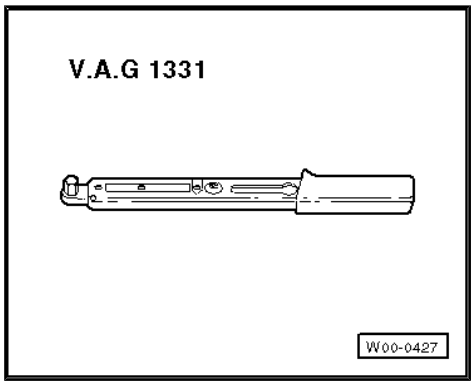


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

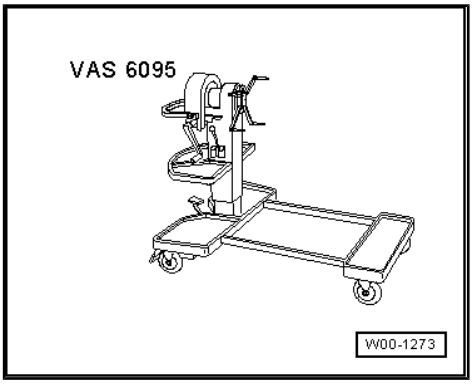
4.15 Removing and installing backrest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

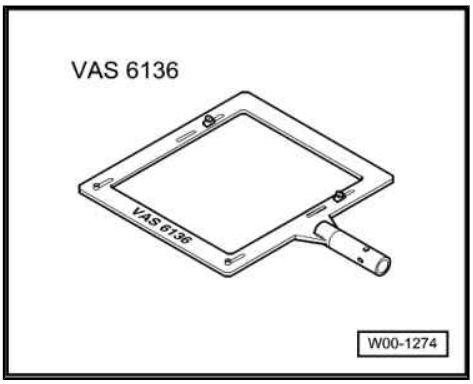
♦ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1331-



♦ Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-

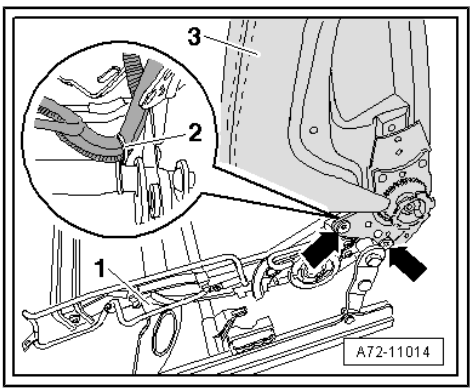


♦ Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



Removing

– Remove seat ⇒ page 527 .
– Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
– Remove seat pan ⇒ page 538 .
– Remove control unit ⇒ page 536 .
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- (left and right).
– Detach backrest -3- and sever cable tie -2- for electrical wiring harness.
– Remove backrest together with electrical wiring harness.



Installing

• Tightening torque ⇒ page 537

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

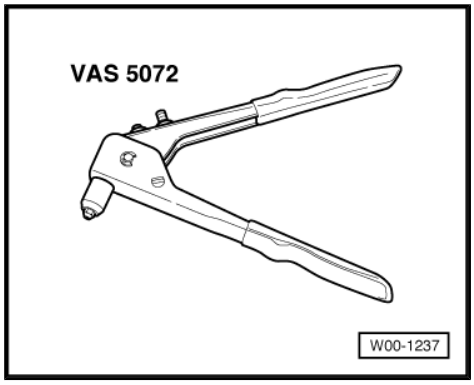
– Insert bolts with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

4.16 Removing and installing operating cable for seat longitudinal adjustment

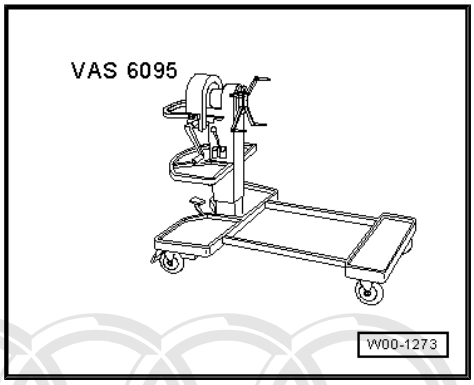
Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

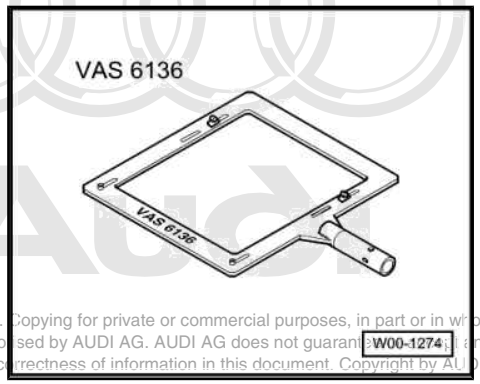
- Pop rivet pliers -VAS 5072-



- Drill
- Drill bit ∅ 4.0 mm
- Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



- Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

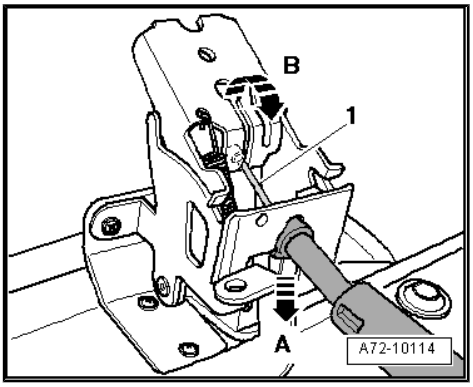
– Remove seat ⇒ page 527 .

– Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .

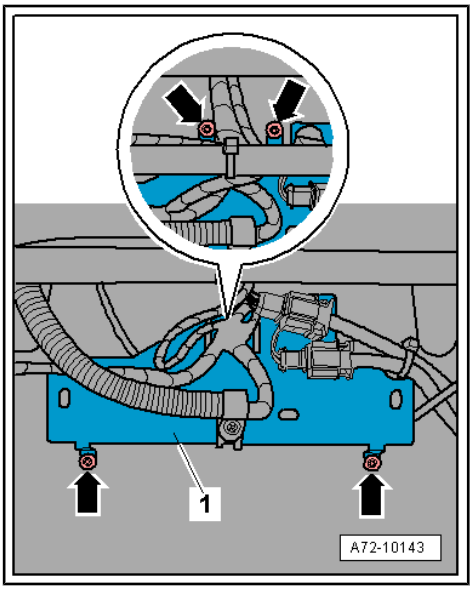
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .

– Remove side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 531 .

– Remove handle for seat longitudinal adjustment
– Press cable sleeve out of cable support bracket in direction of -arrow A-.
– Detach operating cable -1- for seat longitudinal adjustment from release lever -arrow B-.



– Drill out pop rivets -arrows- using a ∅ 4.0 mm bit and detach retaining plate -1- for relay socket and wiring harness.

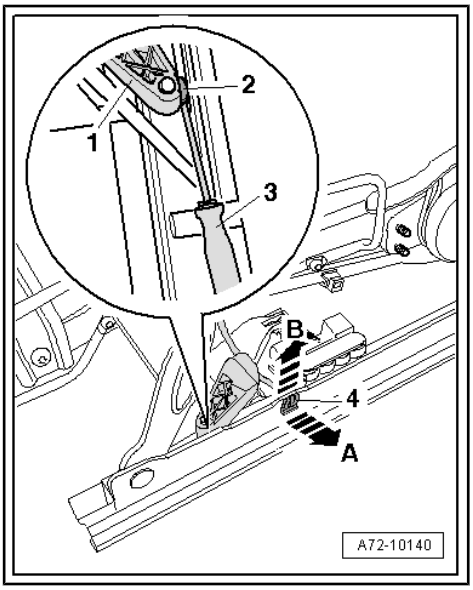


– Release securing clip -4- at operating cable in direction of -arrow A- and lift off securing clip -arrow B-.
– Release retaining spring -2- using a narrow-bladed screwdriver -3-.
– Pull seat rail release lever -1- upwards out of rotary shaft.
– Detach operating cable for seat longitudinal adjustment.

Installing

• Tightening torque ⇒ page 537

Install in reverse order of removal.



4.17 Exploded view - seat height adjustment unit

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Bolt

- ❑ 22 Nm
- ❑ Apply locking fluid when fitting
- ❑ Locking fluid; refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

2 - Retaining clip

Removing and installing ⇒ page 531

3 - Seat height adjuster lever

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 544

4 - Seat frame

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 8 Nm

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 8 Nm

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 8 Nm

8 - Retaining plate

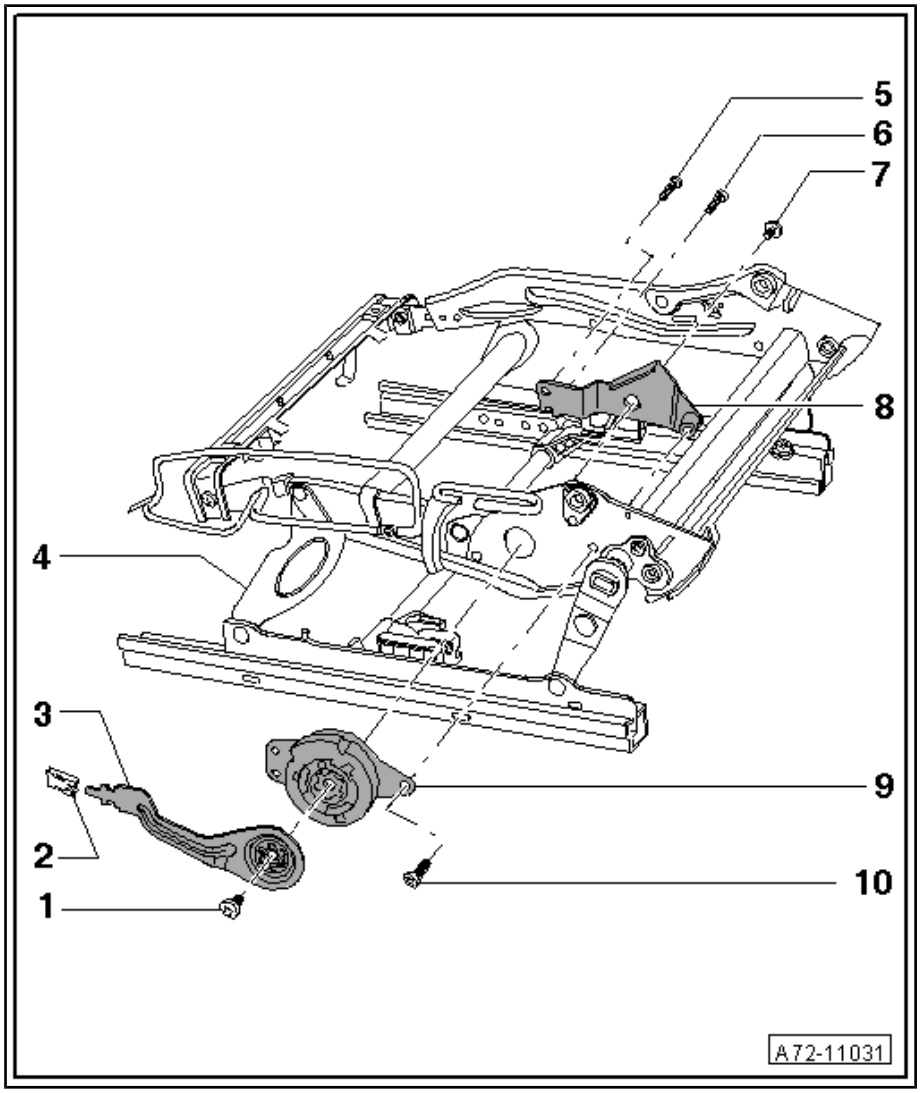
Removing and installing ⇒ “4.19 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit”, page 544

9 - Seat height adjustment unit

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 544

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 8 Nm



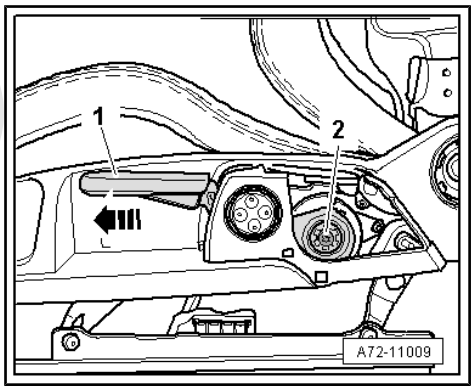
4.18 Removing and installing seat height adjuster lever

Removing

– Remove outer side trim ⇒ page 530 .

– Remove bolt -2-.

– Detach seat height adjustment handle -1- in direction of -arrow-.



Installing

• Tightening torque ⇒ page 543

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

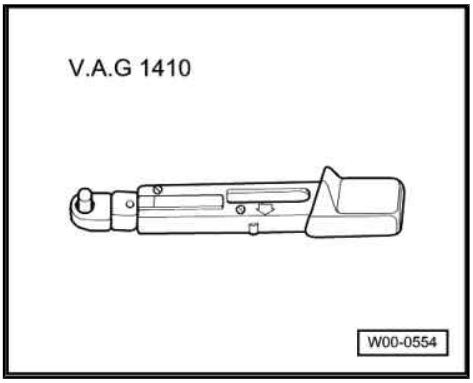
– Insert bolt with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

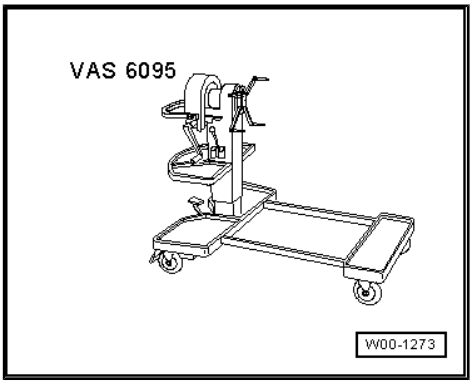
4.19 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit

Special tools and workshop equipment required

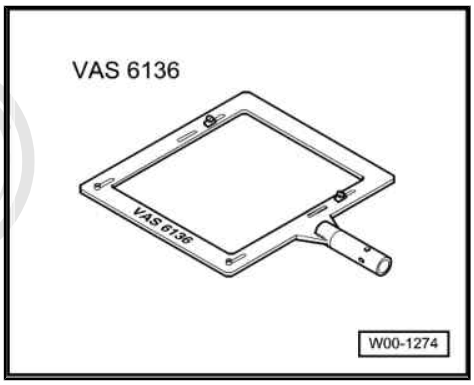
- Torque wrench -V.A.G 1410-



- Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



- Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

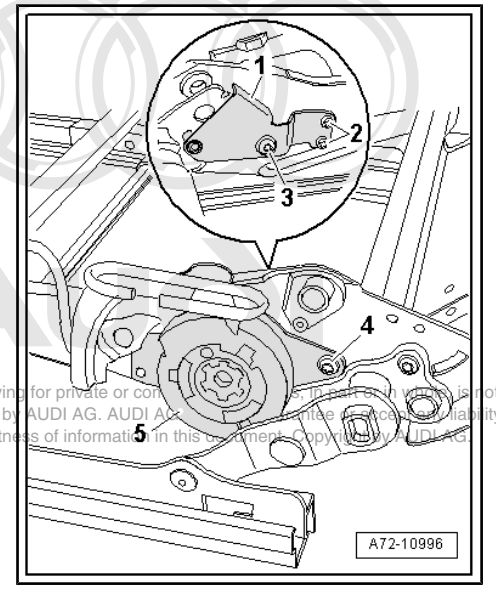
– Remove seat ⇒ page 527 .
– Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
– Remove seat pan ⇒ page 538 .
– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 540 .

– Remove bolt -3-.
– Remove bolts -2- and -4-.
– Detach seat height adjuster unit -5- and retaining plate -1-.

Installing

• Tightening torque ⇒ page 543

Install in reverse order of removal.

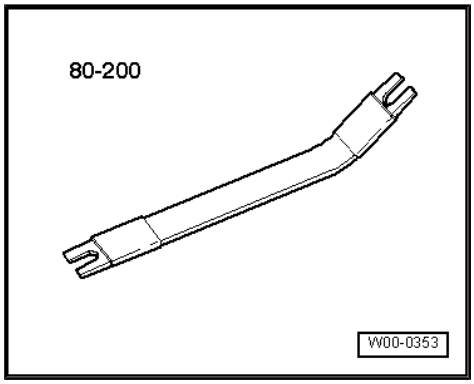


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.20 Removing and installing backrest cover panels

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever -80 - 200-



1 - Backrest cover panel (right-side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 547

2 - Backrest cover panel (left-side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 547

3 - Retaining clip

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2.5 Nm
- ❑ Apply locking fluid when fitting
- ❑ Locking fluid; refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

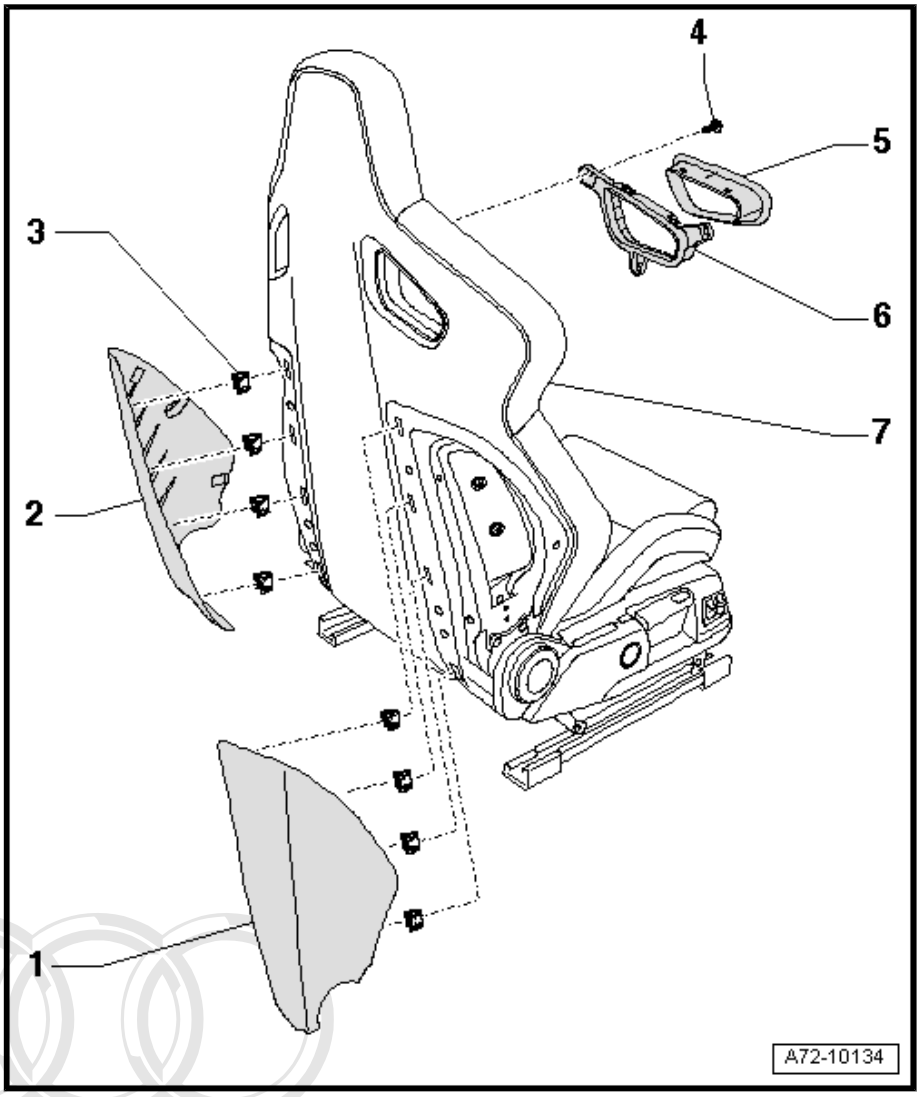
5 - Outer section of belt opening

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 548

6 - Inner section of belt opening

- ❑ Removing: Remove backrest cover first ⇒ page 609

7 - Outer backrest frame



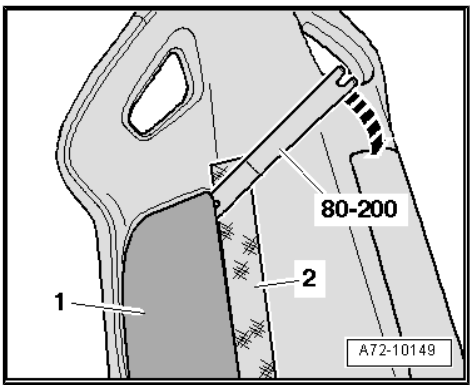
Removing and installing backrest cover panel

– Protect backrest pan in area surrounding trim -1- with adhesive tape -2-.

– Using removal lever -80-200- , prise off backrest cover panel from backrest pan starting from top (on inside).

– Using great care, detach clip at front corner of backrest cover.

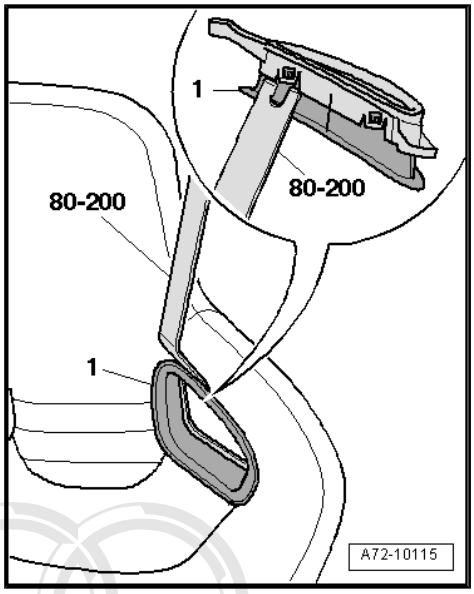
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Removing and installing outer section of belt opening

– Carefully guide removal lever -80-200- between backrest cover and outer section of belt opening.

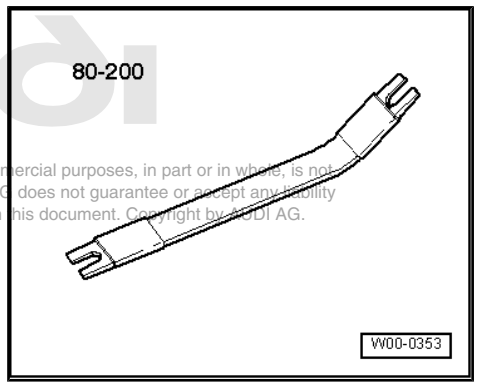
– Carefully press outer section of belt opening off inner section.



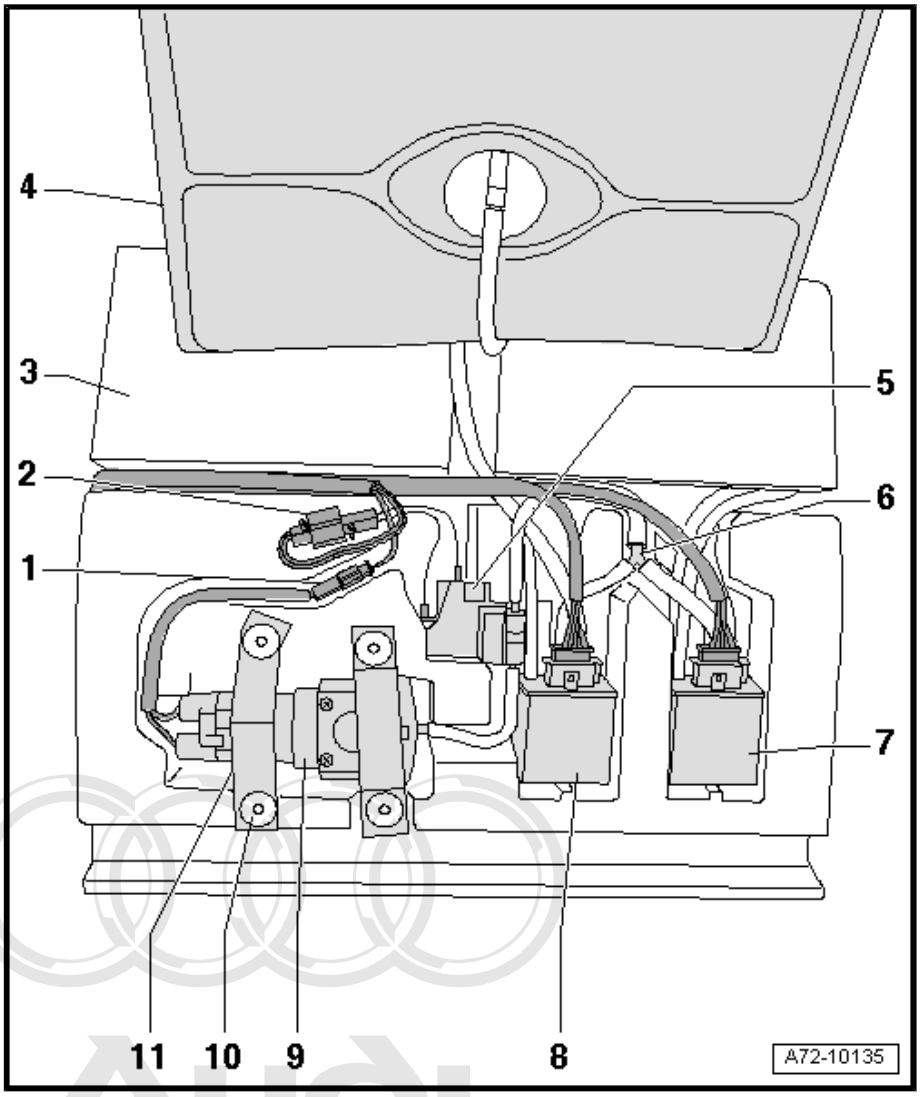
4.21 Pneumatic block - allocation of components

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever -80 - 200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Electrical connector

- For driver seat lumbar support adjustment pump -V152-
- For front passenger side lumbar support adjustment pump -V153-

2 - Electrical connector

- For driver seat lumbar support adjustment pressure switch -F224-
- For front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment pressure switch -F225-

3 - Solid foam block

- For pneumatic components
- Attached at bottom of backrest with double-sided adhesive tape
- Removing and installing ⇒ "4.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding", page 609

4 - Air cushion for four-way lumbar support adjustment

- Attached to solid foam block -3- with plastic plugs
- Remove backrest padding in order to remove ⇒ page 609
- Lever out plastic plugs using removal lever -80-200-

5 - Lumbar support adjustment switch

- Driver seat lumbar support adjustment pressure switch -F224-
- Front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment pressure switch -F225-
- Remove backrest padding in order to remove ⇒ page 609

6 - Y-piece

- For pneumatic hoses to valve blocks

7 - Valve block for lumbar support adjustment

- Lumbar support adjustment valve block on driver side -N209-
- Lumbar support adjustment valve block on front passenger side -N210-
- Remove backrest padding in order to remove ⇒ page 609

8 - Valve block for seat and backrest bolster adjustment

- Valve block for driver seat and backrest bolster adjustment -V378-
- Valve block for front passenger seat and backrest bolster adjustment -V379-
- Remove backrest padding in order to remove ⇒ page 609

9 - Lumbar support adjustment pump

- Driver seat lumbar support adjustment pump -V152-
- Front passenger side lumbar support adjustment pump -V153-
- Remove backrest padding in order to remove ⇒ page 609

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © AUDI AG.

- ❑ Secured with rubber strap -11- and plastic plugs -10-

10 - Plastic plug

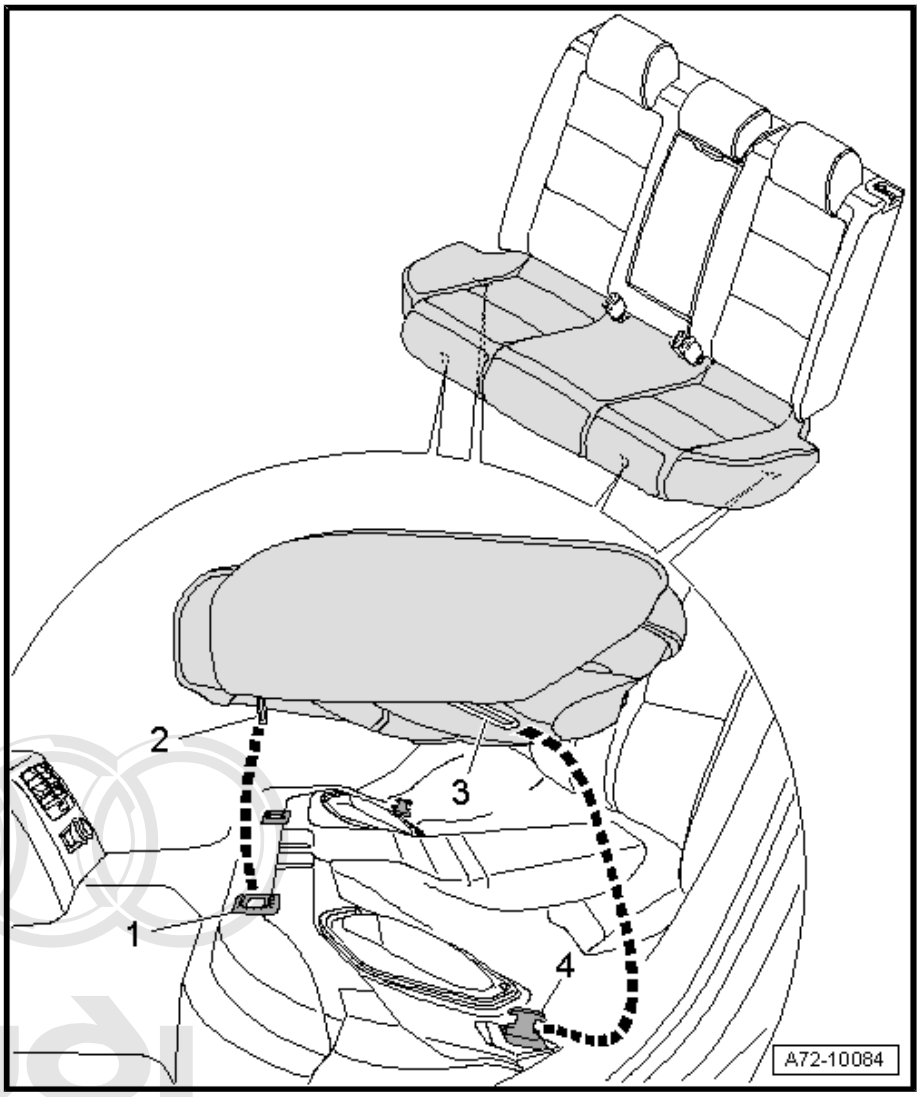
- ❑ Lever out using removal lever -80-200-

11 - Rubber strap

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 Rear seats

5.1 Removing and installing seat bench



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Pull front edge of seat bench out of retainers -1- (left and right).

– Disengage seat bench from retainers -4- (left and right) by pushing it firmly towards the rear.

– On vehicles with seat heating, raise the seat bench high enough to be able to unplug the electrical connectors.

– Take electrical connector for side airbag out of groove ⇒ page 552 .

– Take seat bench out of vehicle.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

Caution

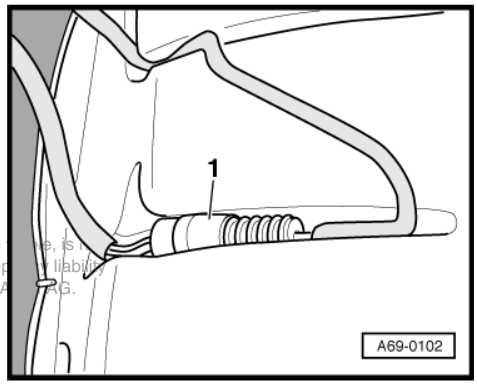
The retainers must be renewed whenever you have removed the rear seat bench ⇒ page 552 .

Connector for side airbag

WARNING

On vehicles with side airbags please observe relevant safety regulations ⇒ page 111 .

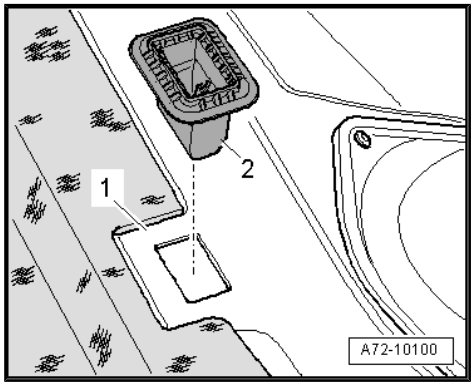
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Renewing retainers

– Remove used retainer from body cut-out.

– Fit new retainer -2- in body opening -1- and push it in until you hear it engage.



5.2 Removing and installing 1/3 section of backrest (left-side)

1 - Centre bracket

2 - Grommet

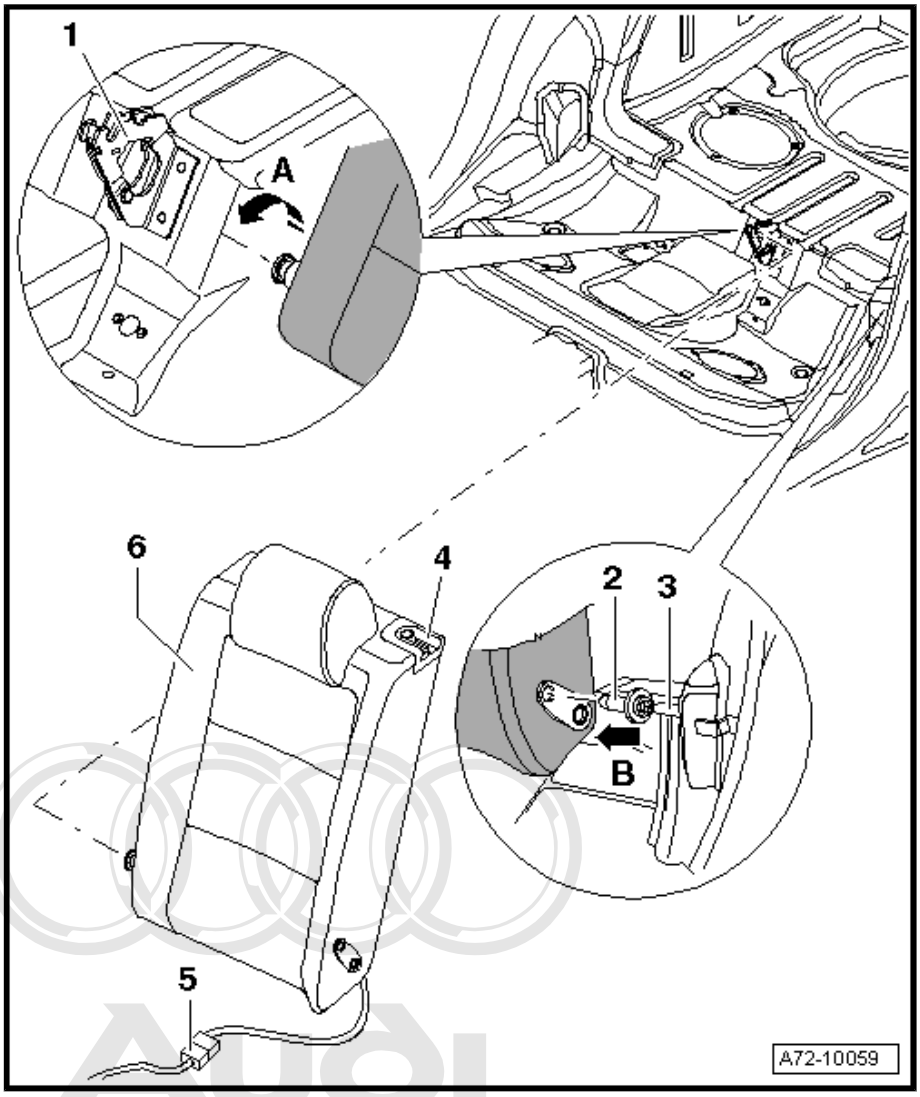
3 - Fitting

4 - Latch trim

- ❑ When backrest is locked, pin projects 1–2 mm above latch trim.
- ❑ When backrest is not locked, pin projects approx. 20 mm above latch trim and red mark is visible.

5 - Connector for backrest heating

6 - 1/3 section of backrest (left-side)



- Fold 1/3 section of backrest (left-side) and 2/3 section of backrest (right-side) down.
- Remove cover and clamp from centre bracket -1- ⇒ page 555 .
- Lift backrest -6- out of centre bracket -1- in direction of -arrow A- and detach backrest from fitting -3- in direction of -arrow B-.
- Re-fit grommet -2- if it is pulled out when removing backrest.
- On vehicles with backrest heating unplug connector for backrest heating -5-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

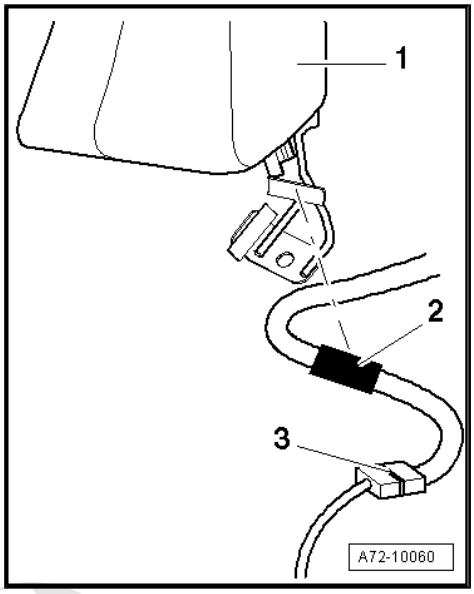
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- On vehicles with backrest heating make sure connector for backrest heating is fitted in correct installation position ⇒ page 554 .
- Make sure that backrest engages ⇒ Item 4 (page 553) .

Installation position of connector for backrest heating

– Install binding clip -2- at side padding -1-.

3 - Connector for backrest heating



5.3 Removing and installing 2/3 section of backrest (right-side)

1 - Fitting (outside)

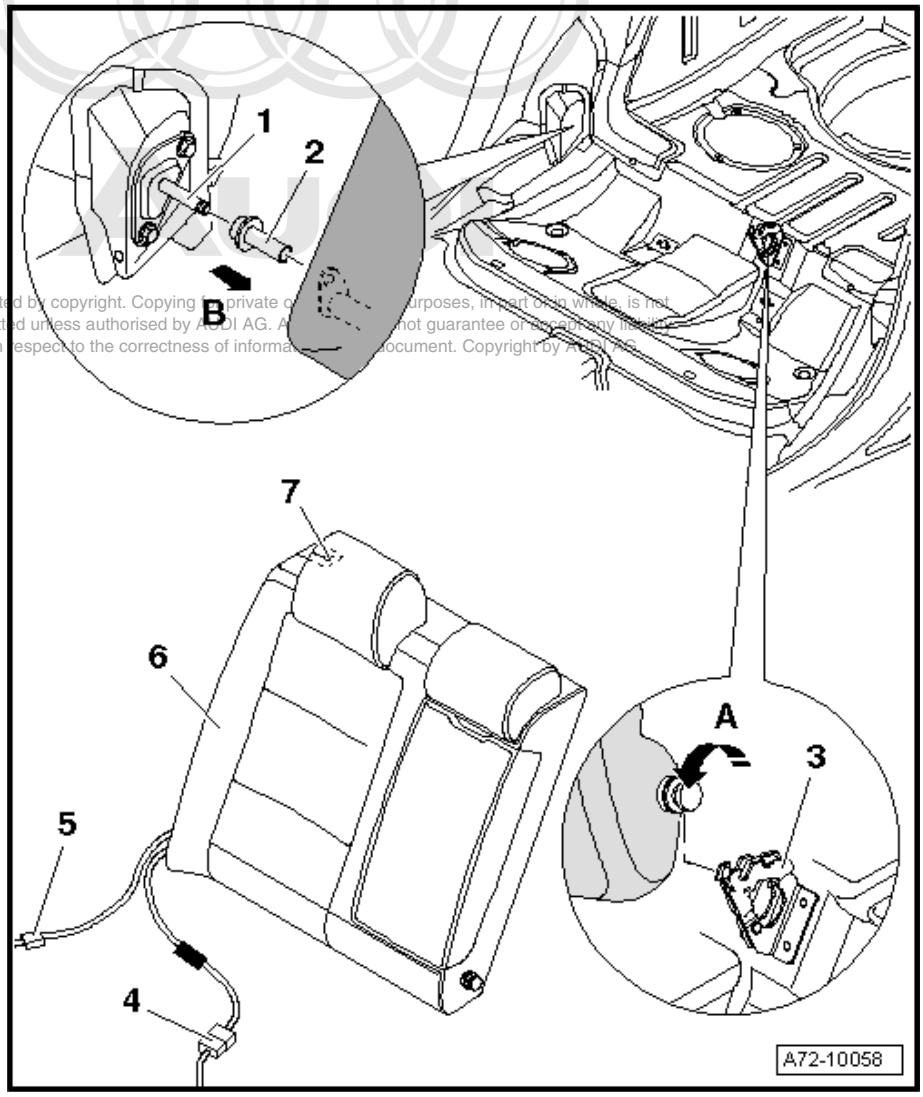
2 - Grommet

3 - Centre bracket

4 - Connector for backrest heating

5 - Connector for belt tensioner

6 - 2/3 section of backrest (right-side)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removing

– On vehicles with ski bag remove ski bag ⇒ page 622 .
– Remove centre belt end fitting ⇒ page 555 .
– Fold 1/3 section of backrest (left-side) and 2/3 section of backrest (right-side) down.
– Remove cover and clamp from centre bracket -3- ⇒ page 555 .
– Lift backrest -6- out of centre bracket -3- in direction of -arrow A- and detach backrest from fitting -1- in direction of -arrow B-.
– Re-fit grommet -2- if it is pulled out when removing backrest.
– On vehicles with backrest heating unplug connector for backrest heating -4-.
– On vehicles with belt tensioner unplug connector for belt tensioner -5-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- On vehicles with backrest heating make sure connector for backrest heating is fitted in correct installation position ⇒ page 555 .
- Make sure that backrest engages ⇒ Item 7 (page 555) .

7 - Latch trim

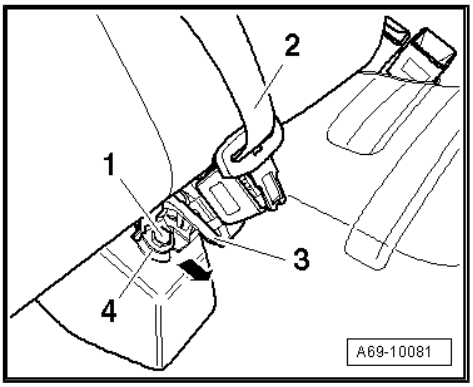
- ❑ When backrest is locked, pin projects 1–2 mm above latch trim.
- ❑ When backrest is not locked, pin projects approx. 20 mm above latch trim and red mark is visible.

Removing centre belt end fitting

- Unscrew bolt -1-.
- Push anchorage point -4- out in direction of arrow.

2 - Belt

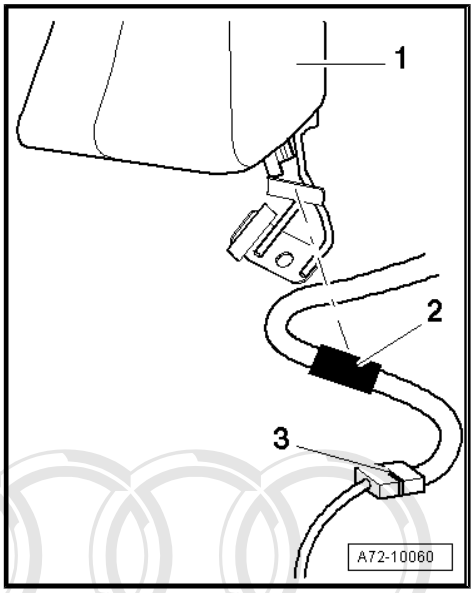
3 - Belt guide



Installation position of connector for backrest heating

- Install binding clip -2- at side padding -1-.

3 - Connector for backrest heating

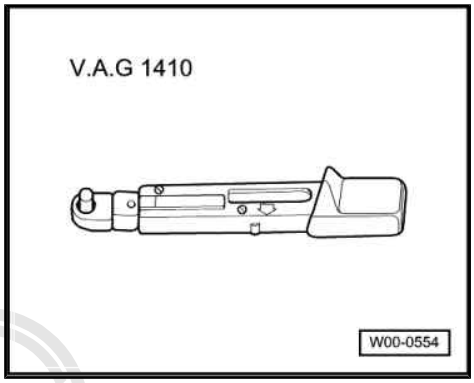


5.4 Removing cover and clamp from centre bracket

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1410-



♦ Removing

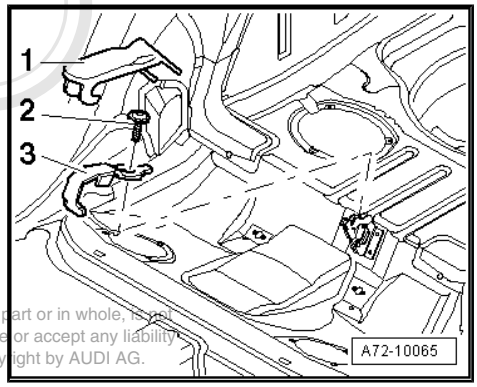
– Unclip trim -1- by moving it from rear to front.

– Unscrew bolt -2- and detach clamp -3-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

♦ Tightening torque for bolt -1-: 10 Nm

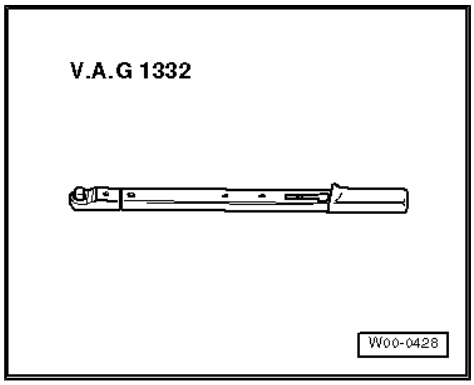


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

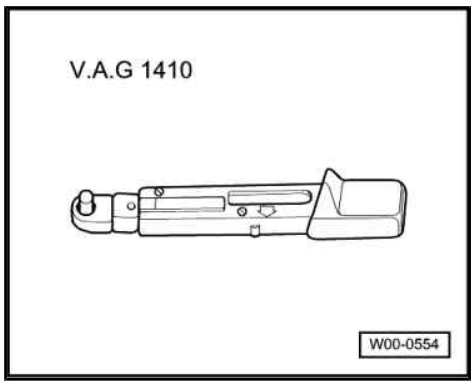
5.5 Removing and installing side padding for rear seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1332-



♦ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1410-



Caution

On vehicles with side airbags please observe relevant safety regulations ⇒ page 111 .

1 - Side padding

♦ Removing

– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .
– Unscrew bolt -6-.
– On vehicles with side airbag -8- unplug electrical connector -7- ⇒ page 557 .
– Unfasten nut -4-.
– Unscrew and remove striker pin -5- together with washer -3- and dished washer -2-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

– Adjust striker pin -5- and tighten nut -4-.

2 - Dished washer

3 - Washer

4 - Nut

❑ Tightening torque: 55 Nm

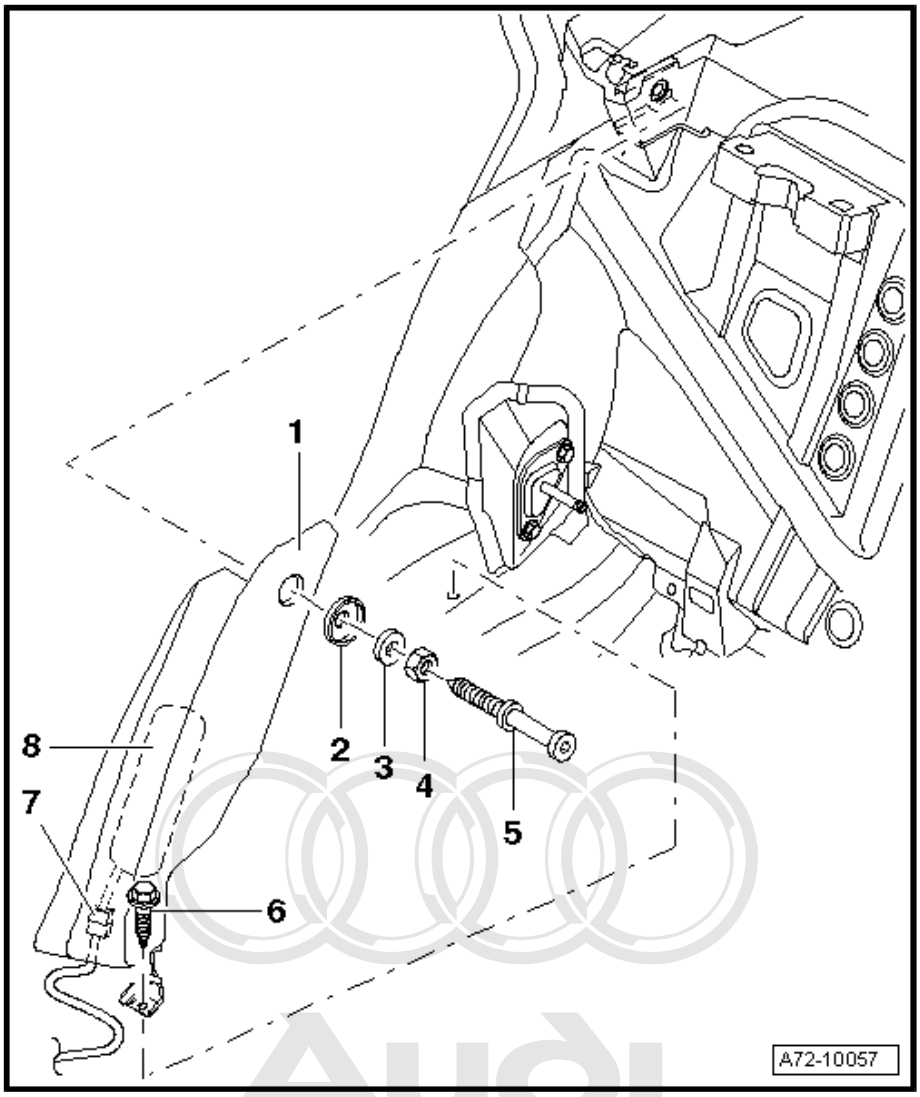
5 - Striker pin

6 - Bolt

❑ Tightening torque: 8 Nm

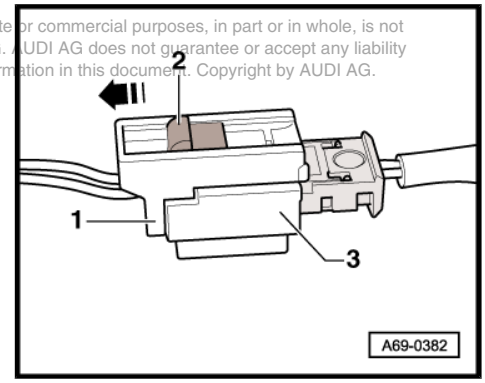
7 - Connector for side airbag

8 - Side airbag



Disconnecting connector for side airbag

– Press retaining tab -2- of connector for side airbag -1- and unplug connector from mating piece -3-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.6 Items to be checked following complete assembly of backrest

- Seat belt guide fitting and belt webbing must not make contact with or rub against foam parts or seat cover fabric.
- Guide fitting must always move with belt webbing.
- Belt webbing must move freely in all directions.

5.7 Removing and installing lock unit

- Removing

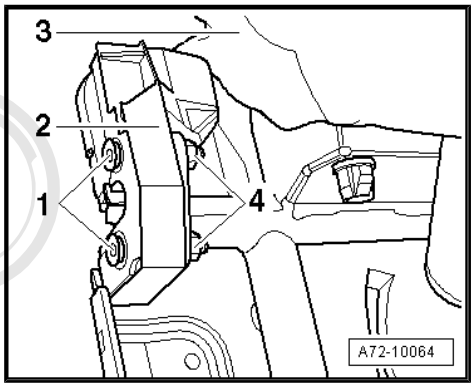
– Detach padding from backrest just far enough to gain access to nuts -4- (2x): for 2/3 section of backrest (right-side) ⇒ page 617 , for 1/3 section of backrest (left-side) ⇒ page 615 .

– Remove nuts -4- (2x).

– Remove nuts -1- (2x).

– Remove lock unit -2-.

3 - Padding



- Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness and completeness of the contents of this document.

5.8 Removing and installing centre armrest (split backrest)

1 - Centre armrest

- ♦ Removing
  - – Fold down centre armrest -1-.
  - – Pull off hinge trim (outside) -2- in direction of -arrow-.
  - – Unscrew bolts -3-.
  - – Release pin -4- from hinge arm -5-.
  - – Detach centre armrest -1-.
- ♦ Installing

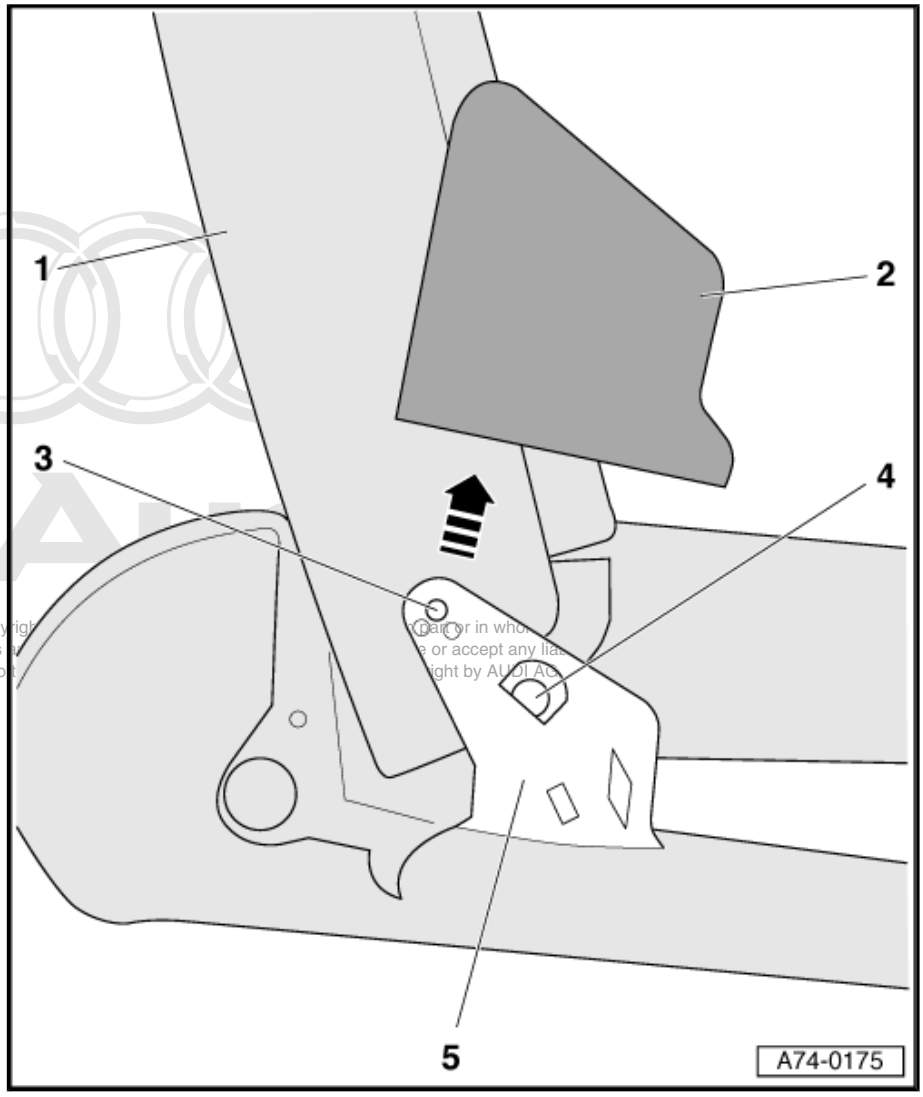
Install in reverse order of removal.

2 - Hinge trim (outside)

3 - Bolt

4 - Pin

5 - Hinge arm

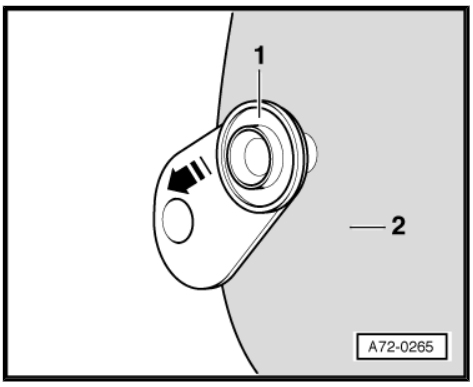


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

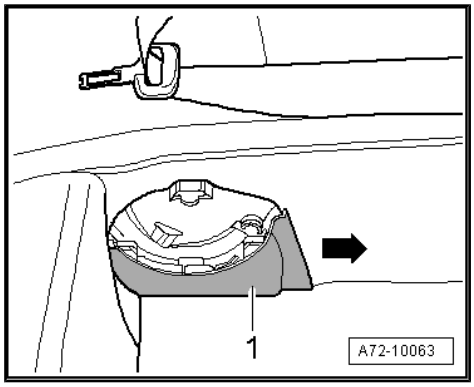
Removing mounting bush

– Use flat screwdriver to press off mounting bush -1- in direction of -arrow-.

2 - Backrest cover

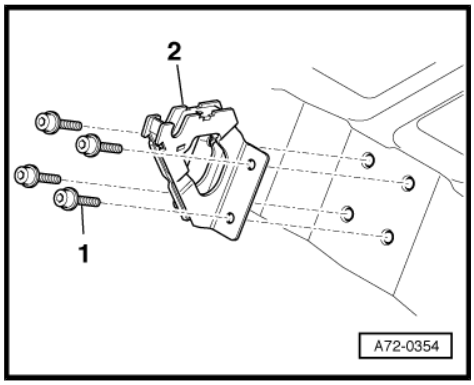


5.9 Removing and installing hinge trim (inside)



– Remove centre armrest ⇒ page 558 .
– Pull off hinge trim -1- in direction of arrow.

5.10 Removing and installing centre bracket

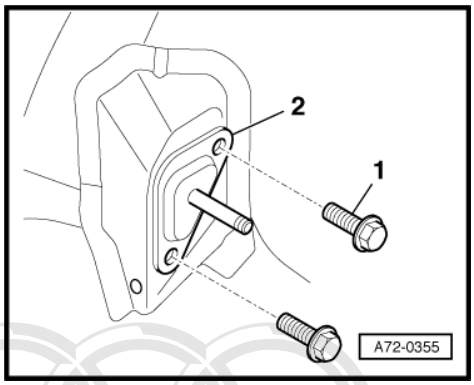


♦ Removing
– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .
– Remove 1/3 section (left-side) and 2/3 (right-side) section of rear seat backrest ⇒ page 552 .
– Unscrew bolts -1- (4x) from centre bracket -2-.
♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

♦ Tightening torque for bolts -1-: 16 Nm

5.11 Removing and installing outer fitting for rear seat backrest



♦ Removing
– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .
– Remove 1/3 section (left-side) and 2/3 (right-side) section of rear seat backrest ⇒ page 552 .
– Remove bolts -1- (2x) from outer fitting -2-.
♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

♦ Tightening torque for bolts -1-: 16 Nm

5.12 Removing head restraints

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Rear seat backrest

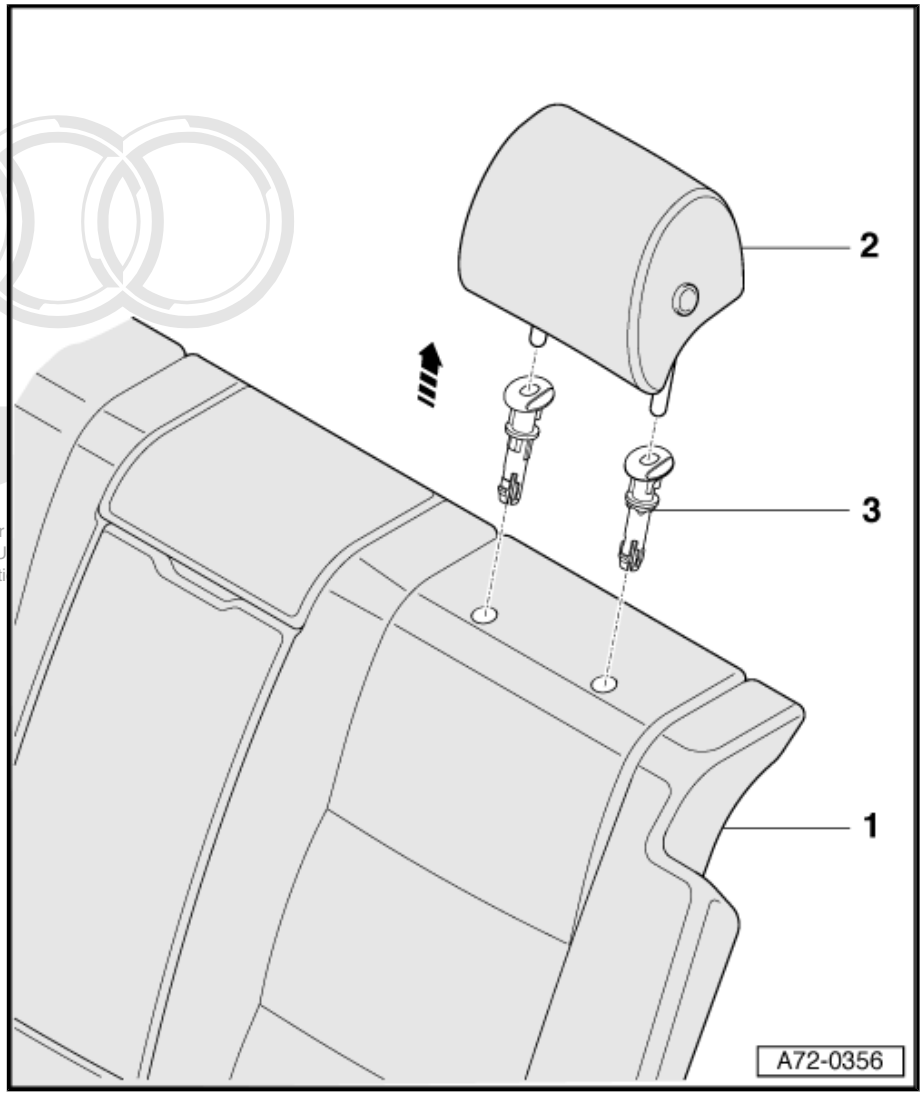
2 - Outer head restraint

- ❑ With slide-in locking mechanism: Removing and installing ⇒ page 561
- ❑ Without slide-in locking mechanism: Removing and installing ⇒ page 562

3 - Head restraint guide

- ❑ With release button
- ❑ Must always be fitted on left side

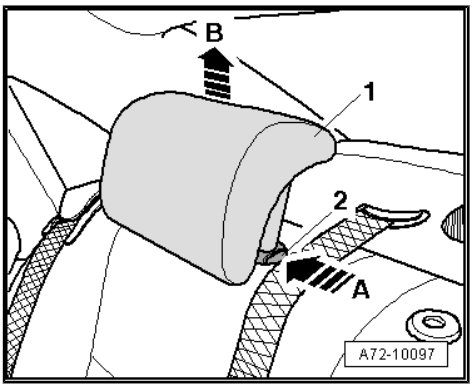
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AU
with respect to the correctness of informati



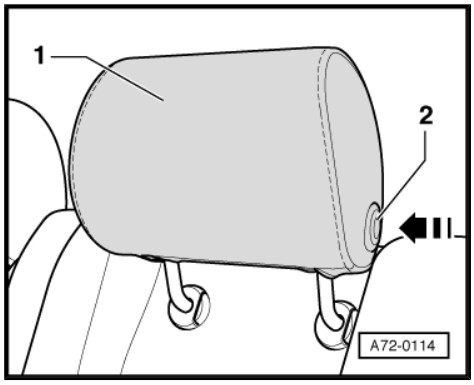
5.13 Removing and installing head restraints with slide-in locking mechanism

Removing

– Press and hold release button -2- in direction of -arrow A- and pull head restraint -1- out upwards as far as possible -arrow B-.



– Press in release button -2- on head restraint -1- as far as it will go -arrow-.
– Keep pressing the release button in and push the head restraint down as far as possible on the posts.
– Take the head restraint out of the head restraint guides.



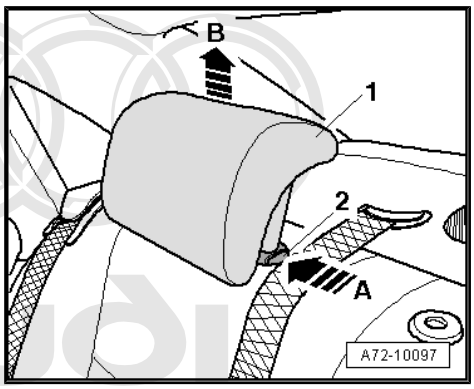
Installing

– Push head restraint into head restraint guides until you hear it click into place.

5.14 Removing and installing head restraints without slide-in locking mechanism

Removing

– Press and hold release button -2- in direction of -arrow A- and pull head restraint -1- out upwards as far as possible -arrow B-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

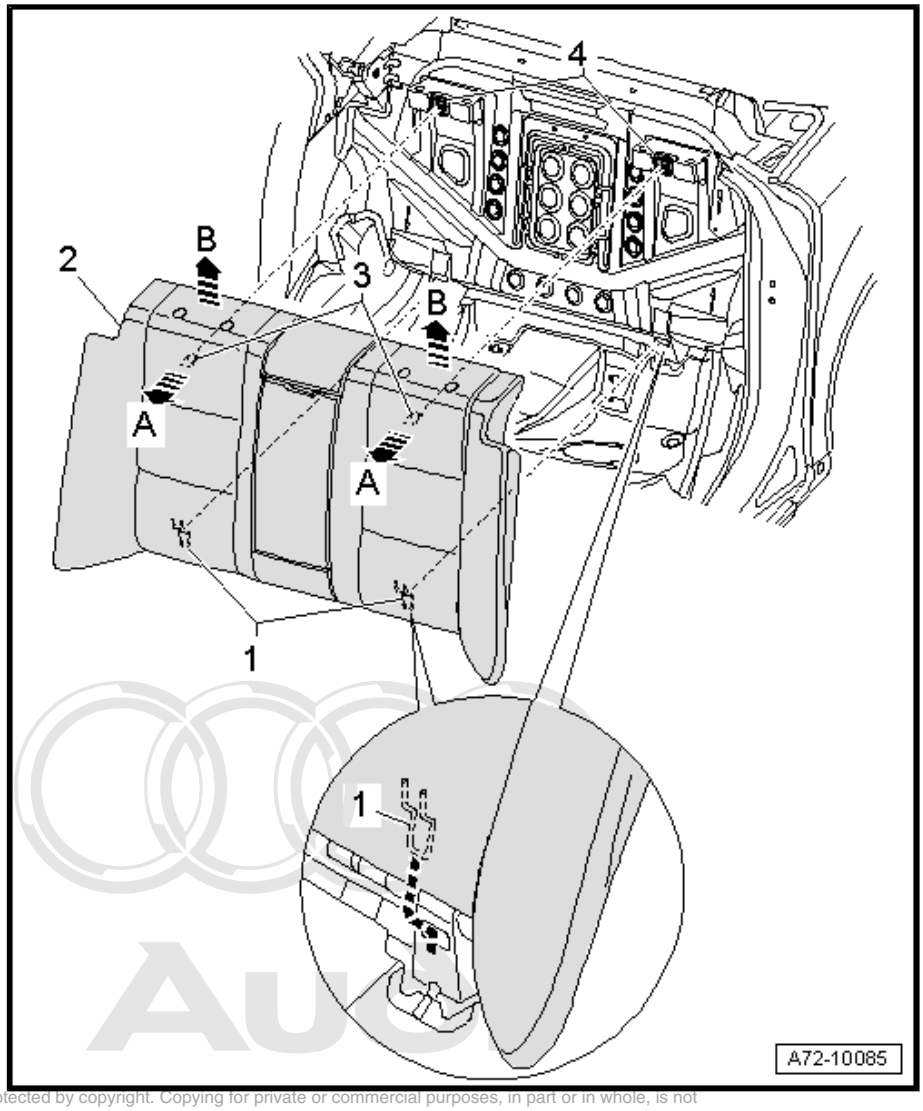
– Push head restraint into head restraint guides until you hear it click into place.

5.15 Removing and installing fixed rear seat backrest

Copyright by AUDI AG. Duplication or distribution, for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

On vehicles with side airbags please observe relevant safety regulations ⇒ page 111 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 551 .

– Remove head restraints
⇒ “5.13 Removing and installing head restraints with slide-in locking mechanism ”, page 561 or
⇒ “5.14 Removing and installing head restraints without slide-in locking mechanism”, page 562 .

– On vehicles with load-through hatch/ski bag remove frame for load-through hatch ⇒ page 621 .

– Remove head restraint guides
⇒ “5.4 Removing and installing outer head restraint guides without slide-in locking mechanism”, page 619 or
⇒ “5.5 Removing and installing inner head restraint guides without slide-in locking mechanism”, page 620 .

– On vehicles with side airbag unplug electrical connector
⇒ page 564 .

– On vehicles with backrest heating unplug electrical connectors.

– Pull backrest -2- out of retainers -4- in direction of -arrow A-.

– Pull backrest out of body cut-out in direction of -arrow B-.

– Detach rear seat backrest.

Installing

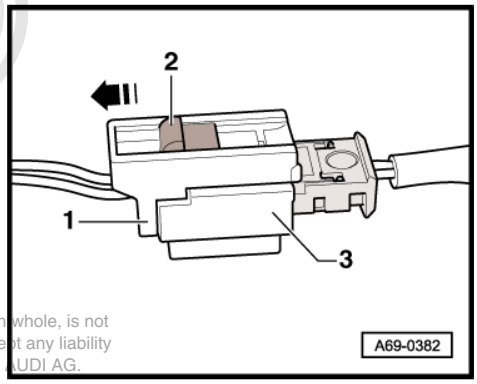
Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

> **Caution**
>
> *The retainers must be renewed whenever you have removed the rear seat backrest ⇒ page 564 .*

Unplugging electrical connector for side airbag

– Unplug electrical connector.

– To do so, pull connector locking element -2- as far as the stop -arrow-. This will release the electrical connectors -1- and -3- which can then be unplugged.

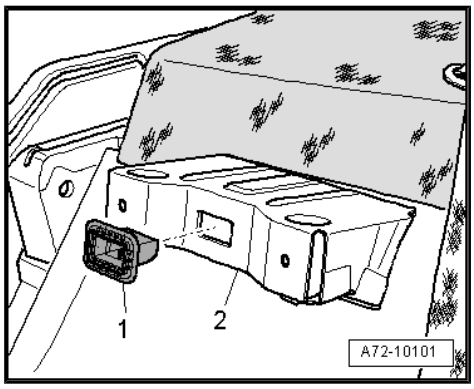


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Renewing retainers

– Remove used retainer from body cut-out.

– Fit new retainer -1- in body opening -2- and push it in until you hear it engage.



5.16 Removing and installing centre armrest (fixed rear seat backrest)

♦ Removing

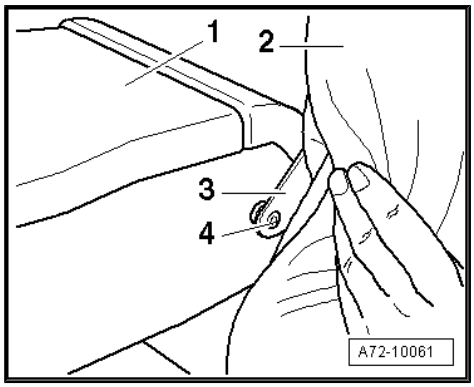
– Fold down centre armrest -1-.

– Push cover -2- aside and carefully unscrew bolt -4-.

– Lever pin of centre armrest out of hinge arm -3-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



5.17 Removing and installing cup holder

1 - Tray

2 - Lid

3 - Centre armrest

4 - Retaining tabs (6x)

5 - Trim

6 - Cup holder

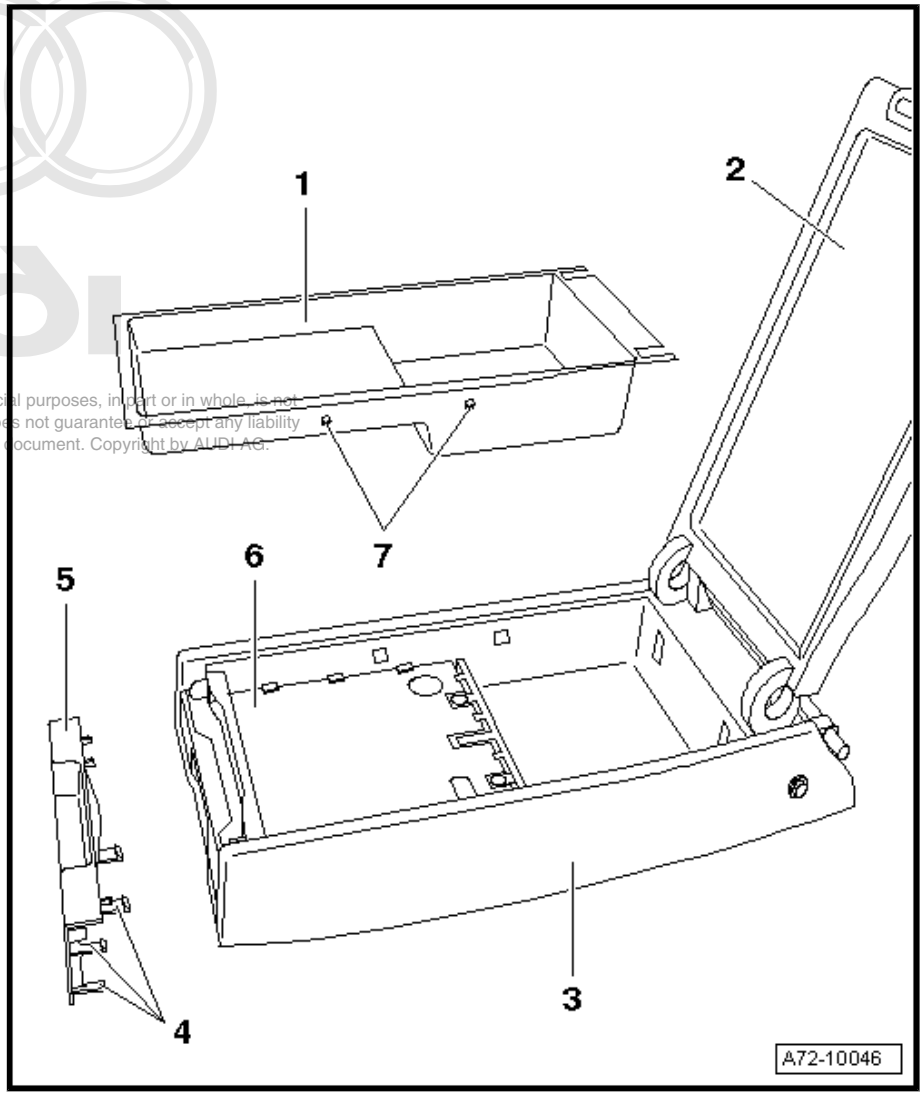
♦ Removing

– Remove centre armrest (fixed backrest ⇒ page 564 , split backrest ⇒ page 558).
– Open up cover -2-.
– Lever out trim panel -5- at retaining tabs -4- (6x).
– Lever out tray -1- (front and rear) at retaining tabs -7- (4x).
– Apply a screwdriver to rear of cup holder -6- and lever out cup holder to the front, keeping it as straight as possible.

♦ Installing

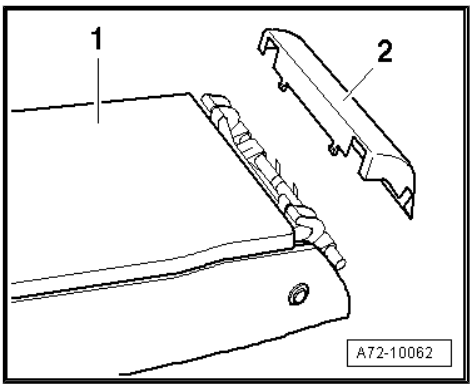
Install in reverse order of removal.

7 - Retaining tabs (4x)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.18 Removing and installing centre armrest trim panel (rear)



♦ Removing

– Remove centre armrest -1- (fixed backrest ⇒ page 564 , split backrest ⇒ page 558).
– Prise out trim panel -2- upwards.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

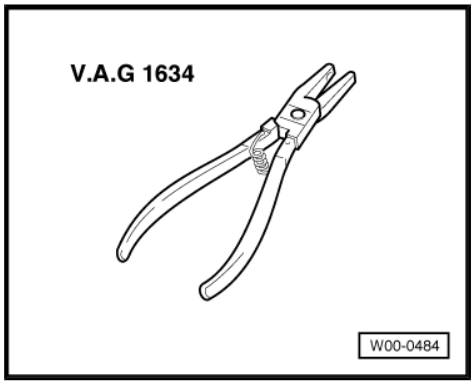
74 – Seat - padding, covers

1 Covers and padding for seat pan (front)

1.1 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding (standard seat)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-



1.1.1 Detaching cover and padding from seat pan

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Cover and padding

- ♦ Removing
  - – Remove seat ⇒ page 332 .
  - – Remove backrest ⇒ page 344 .
  - – Remove drawer ⇒ page 355 .
  - – Remove bolts -3- (2x).
  - – Detach bracket -2-.
  - – Unplug seat heating connector -5-.
  - – Prise out fastening strips -4-.
  - – Detach cover and padding -1-.
- ♦ Installing

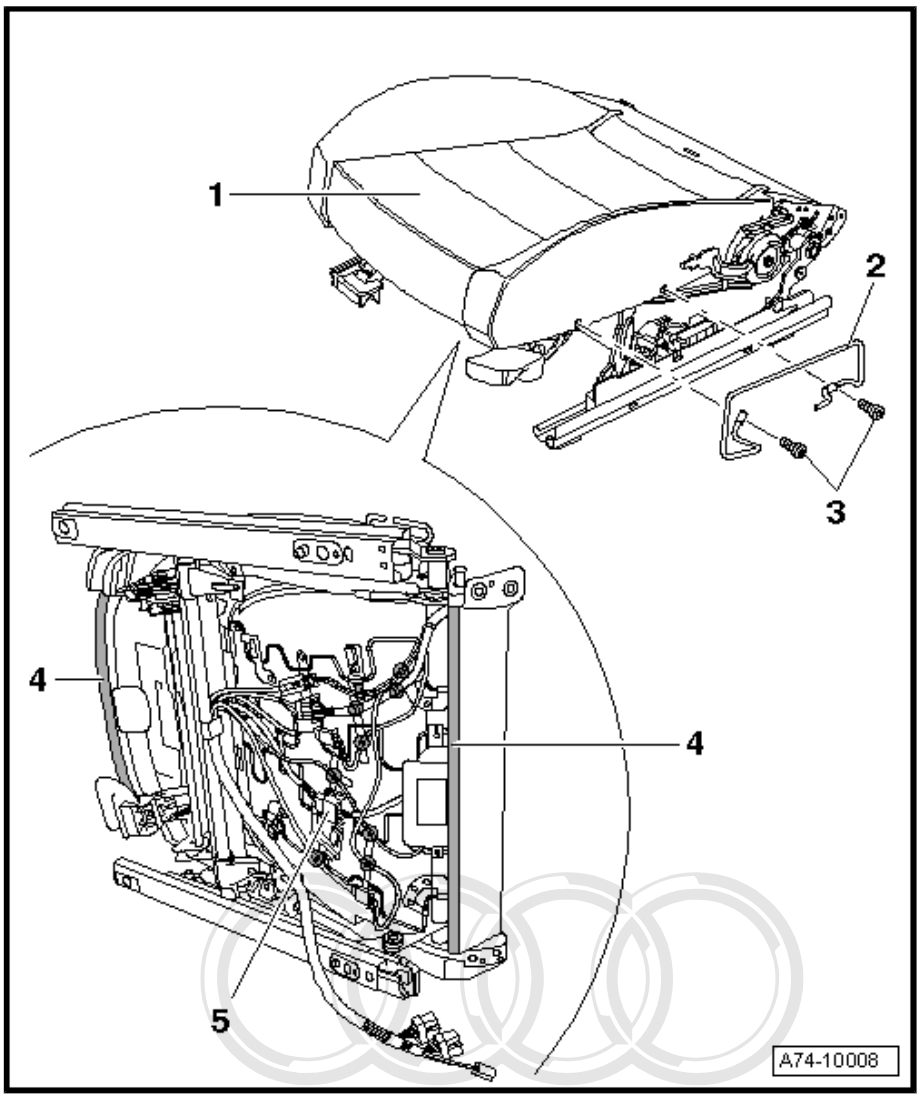
Install in reverse order of removal.

2 - Bracket

3 - Bolts (2x)

4 - Fastening strips

5 - Connector for seat heating



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.1.2 Detaching seat cover from padding

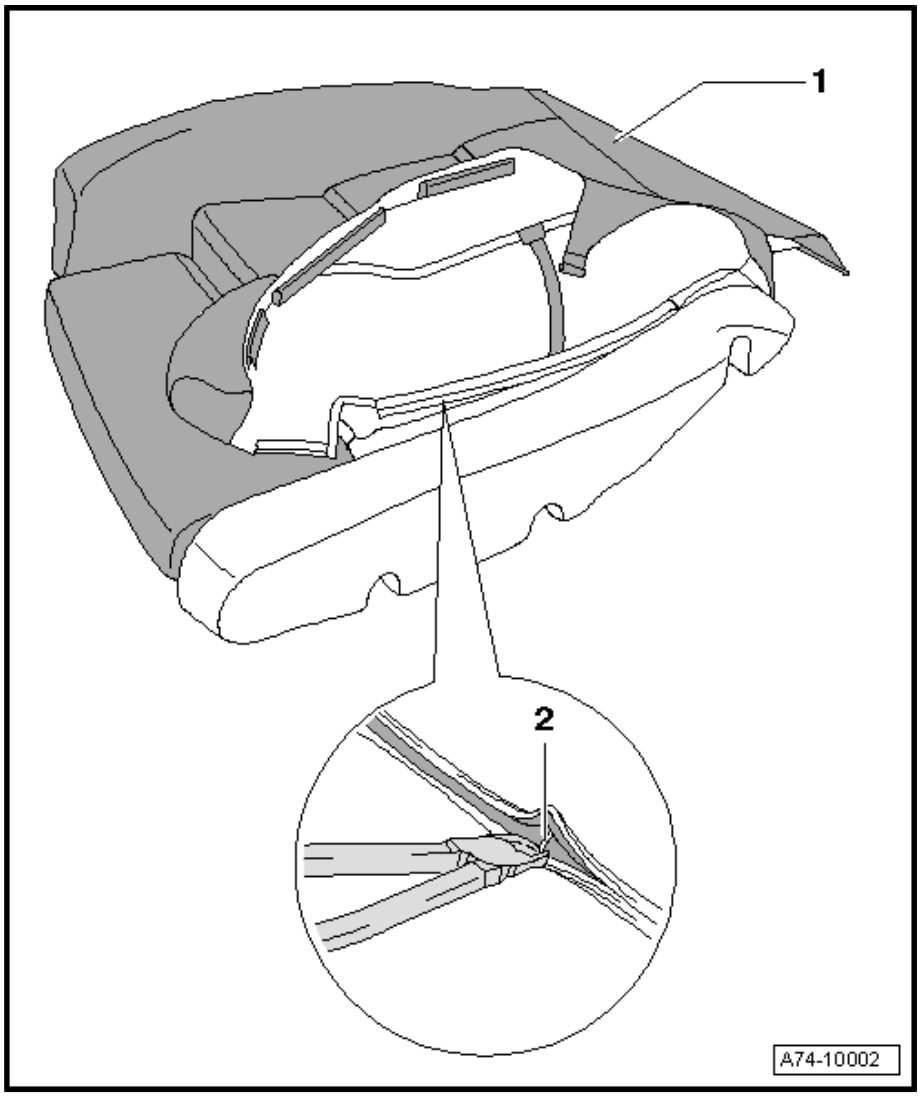
1 - Seat cover

- ♦ Removing
  - – Cut through upholstery clips -2-.
  - – Remove seat cover -1-.
- ♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- – Use upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- to install new upholstery clips.

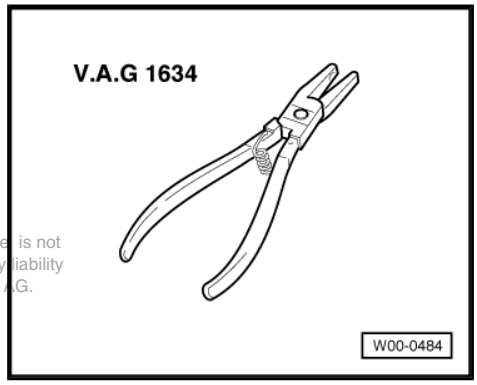
2 - Upholstery clips



1.2 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding (sports seat)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-



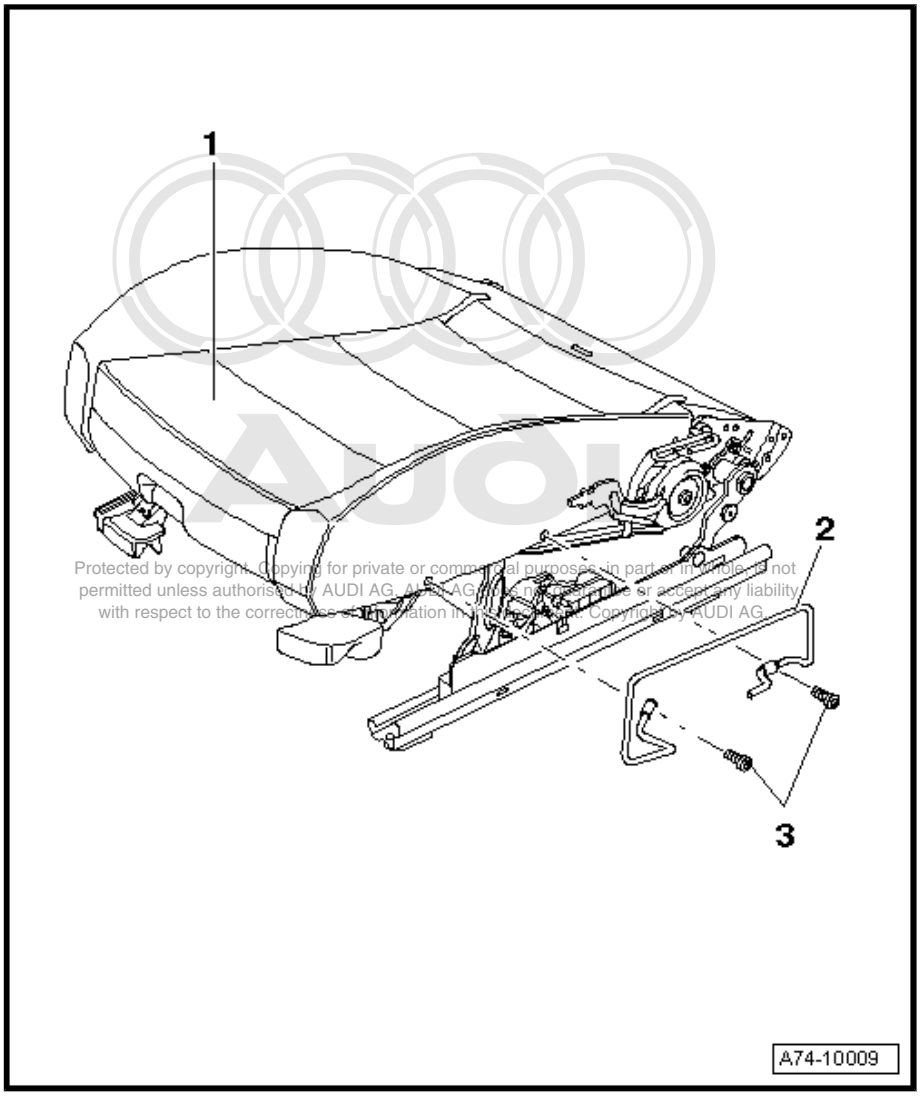
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Seat cover

- ♦ Removing
  - – Remove seat ⇒ page 332 .
  - – Remove backrest ⇒ page 344 .
  - – Remove bolts -3- (2x).
  - – Detach bracket -2-.

2 - Bracket

3 - Bolts (2x)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Seat depth adjuster

- ♦ Removing
  - – Remove drawer -6- ⇒ page 355 .
  - – Pull out seat depth adjuster -1- fully.
  - – Unscrew nuts -2- (4x).
  - – Unplug seat heating connector -5-.
  - – Disengage tabs -3- (2x).
  - – Prise out fastening strips (peripheral) -4-.
  - – Remove cover and padding.
- ♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

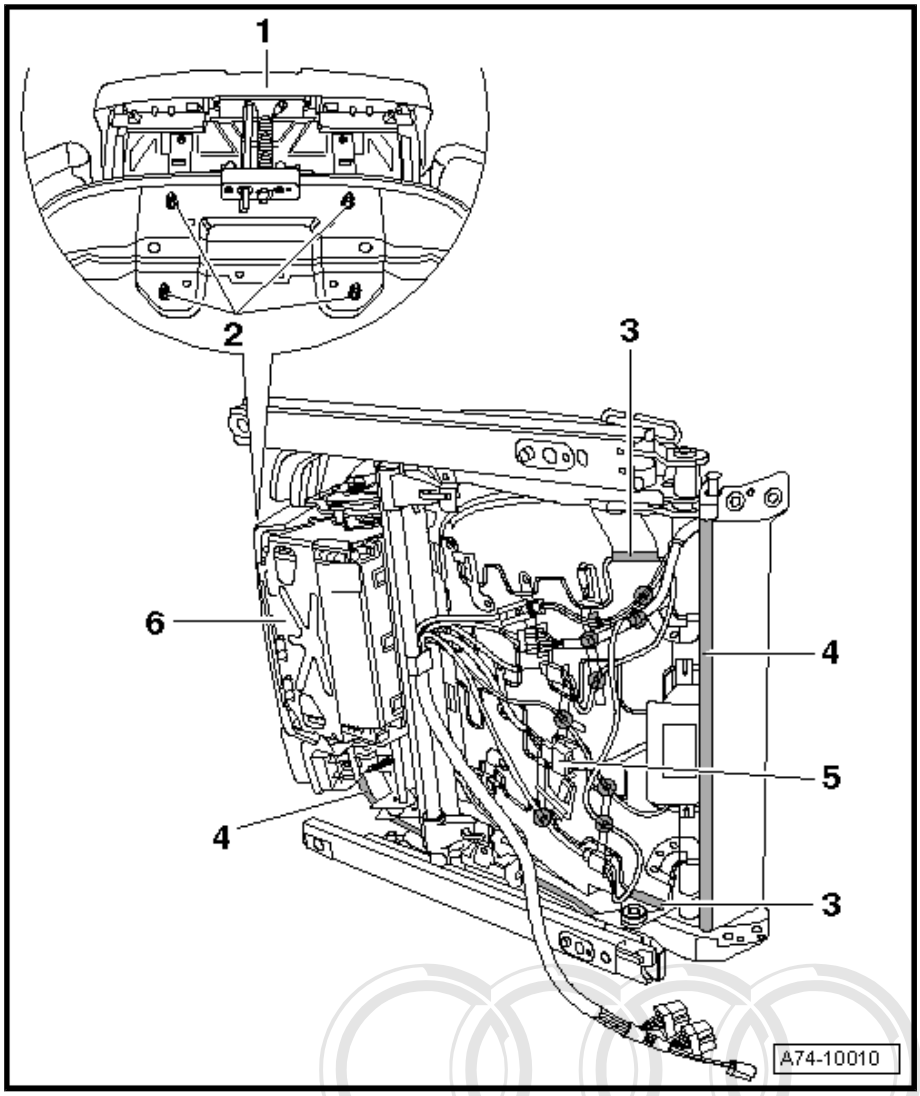
2 - Nuts (4x)

3 - Lugs (2x)

4 - Fastening strips (peripheral)

5 - Connector for seat heating

6 - Drawer



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.2.1 Detaching seat depth adjuster from seat cover and padding

1 - Clips (3x)

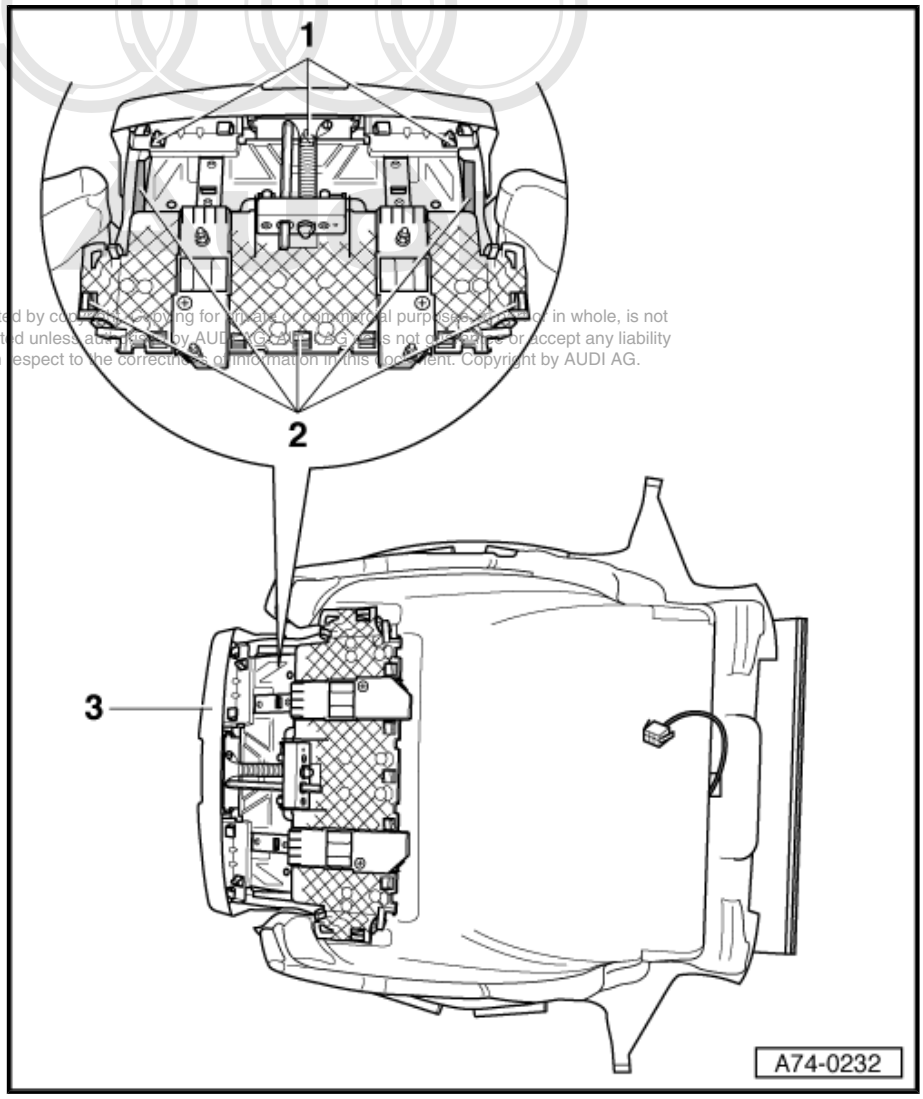
2 - Fastening strips (5x)

3 - Seat depth adjuster

– Prise out fastening strips -2- (5x).

– Prise out clips -1- (3x).

– Detach seat depth adjuster -3-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

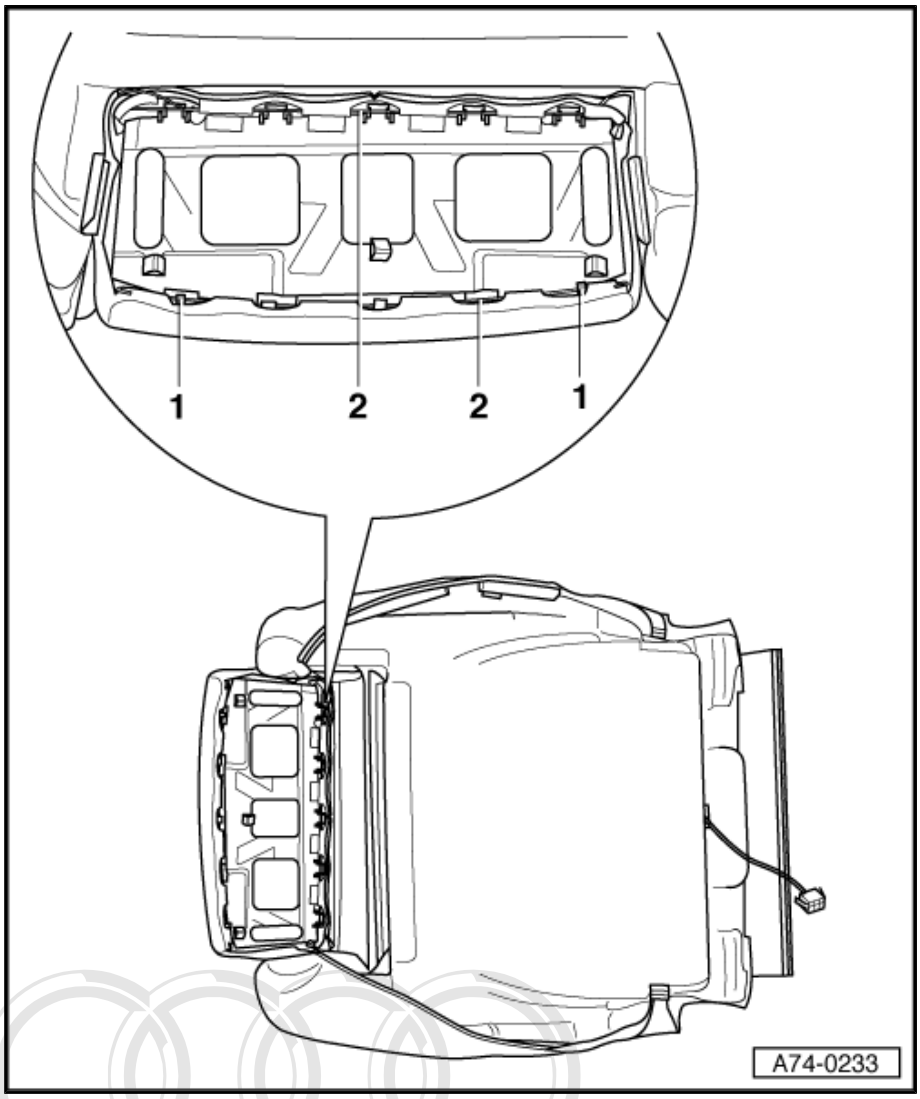
1.2.2 Detaching seat cover from padding

1 - Cable ties (2x)

2 - Rods (2x)

– Unfasten cable ties -1- (2x).

– Prise out rods -2- (2x).



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

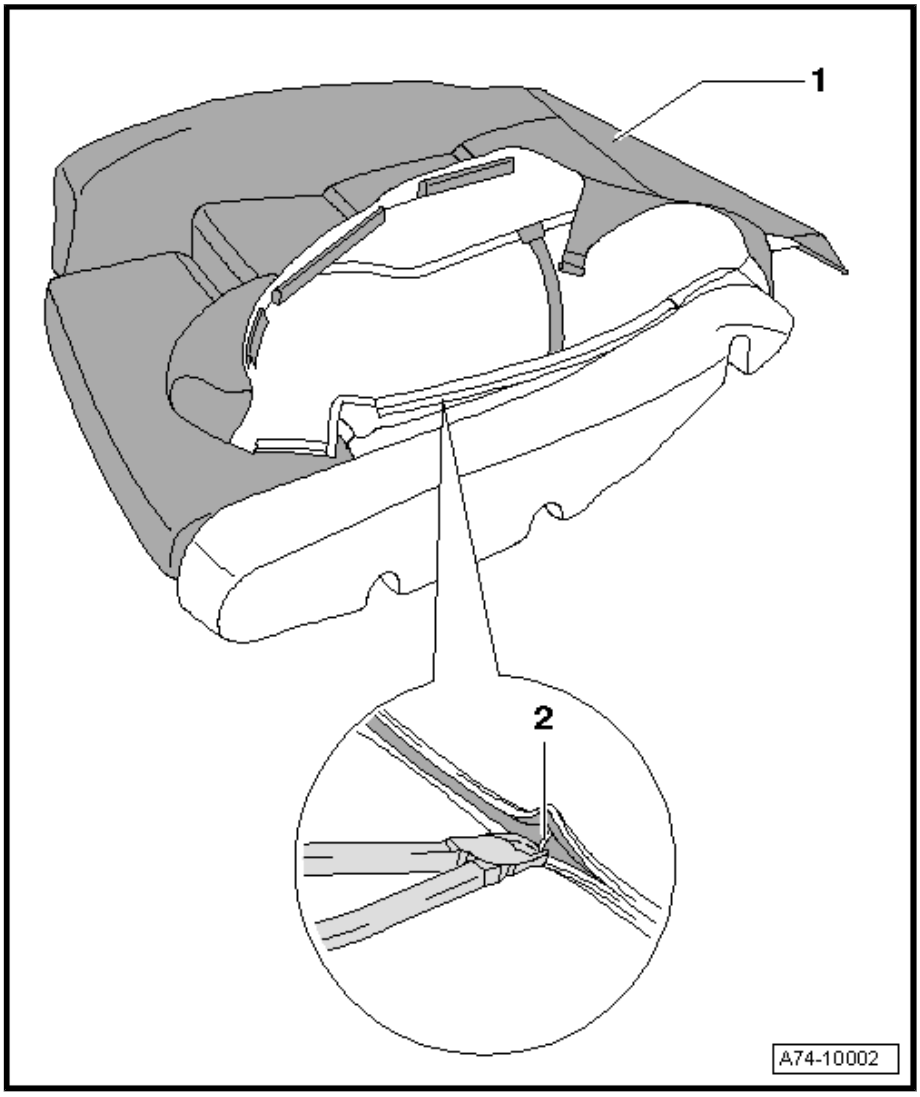
1 - Seat cover

- ♦ Removing
  - – Cut through upholstery clips -2-.
  - – Remove seat cover -1-.
- ♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- – Use upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- to install new upholstery clips.

2 - Upholstery clips



1.3 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding

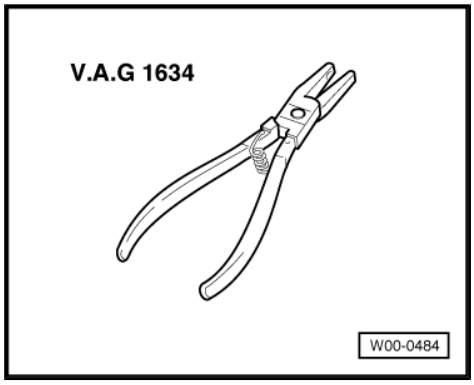
Caution

On vehicles with side airbags please observe relevant safety regulations ⇒ page 111 .

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-



- Drill
- Safety goggles
- Drill bit ∅ 12 mm

1.3.1 Detaching cover and padding from outer backrest frame

1 - Fastening strip (side)

2 - Connector for side airbag

3 - Latch

4 - Side airbag (driver side/ front passenger side)

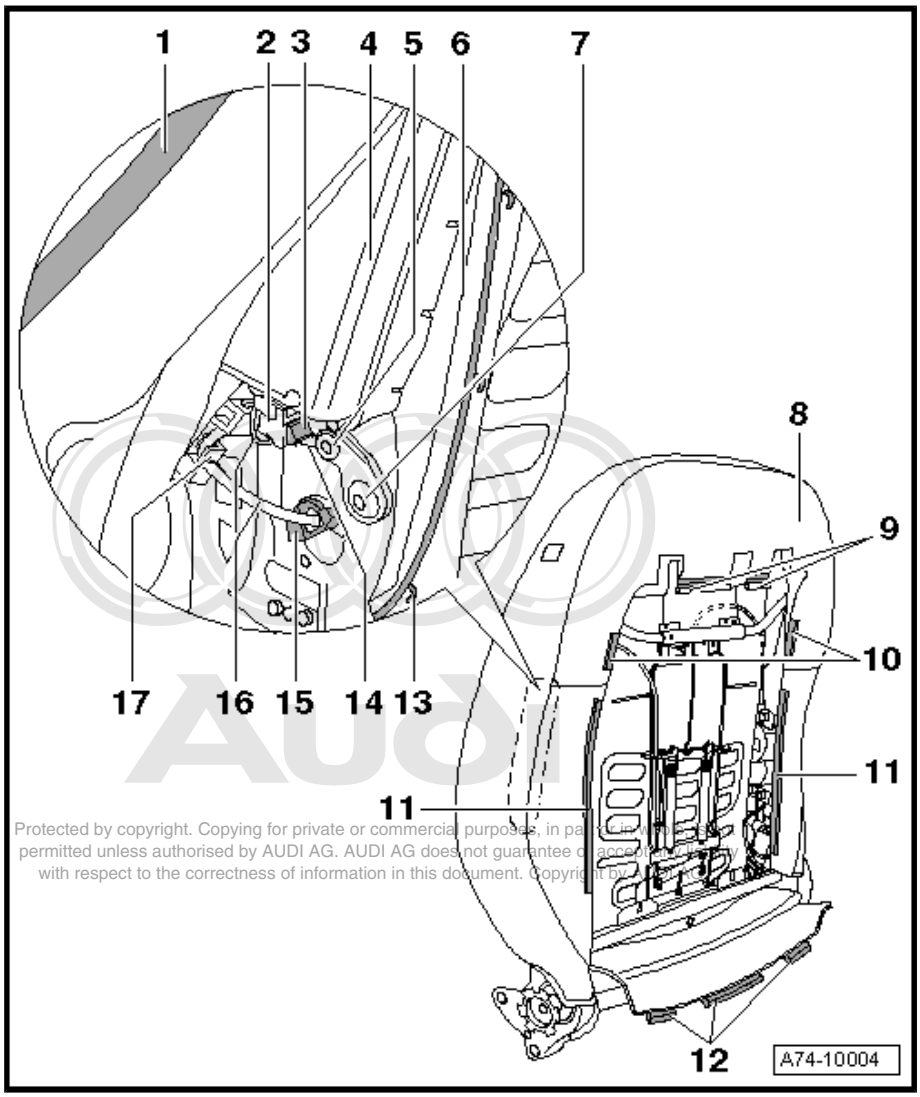
5 - Rivet

6 - Protective cover for side airbag

7 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque: 10 Nm
- ❑ Always renew after removing

8 - Cover and padding



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in pa
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

- Removing
  - – Disconnect battery earth strap ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
  - – Remove seat ⇒ page 379 .
  - – Remove guide on vehicles with DVD player ⇒ page 575 .
  - – Remove backrest ⇒ page 388 .
  - – Remove head restraints ⇒ page 426 .
  - – Remove head restraint guides ⇒ page 590 .
  - – Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 417 .
  - – Prise out fastening strips (bottom) -12- (3x).
  - – Disengage fastening strips (side) -10- (2x) and -11- (2x).
  - – Prise out fastening strips (top) -9- (2x).
  - – Remove side airbag: vehicles up to approx. 04.2007 ⇒ page 141 , vehicles from approx. 05.2007 onwards ⇒ page 144 .
  - – Pull out wiring harness upwards.

– Detach adhesive tape from wiring harness.
– Detach cable for backrest heating from outer backrest frame.
– Remove padding with cover.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

– Make sure airbag cable -16- runs through cable guide -17- and is attached to outer backrest frame using clip -15-.

– Use upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- to install new upholstery clips on protective cover for side airbag.

9 - Fastening strips (top; 2x)

10 - Fastening strips (side; 2x)

11 - Fastening strips (side; 2x)

12 - Fastening strips (bottom; 3x)

13 - Upholstery clips (4x)

14 - Earth wire

15 - Clip

16 - Airbag cable

17 - Cable guide

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

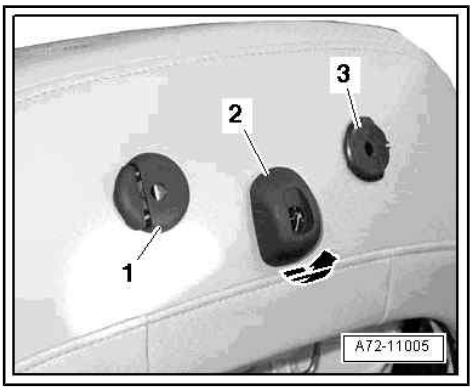
Removing and installing guide for DVD player

Removing

• DVD player removed.

– Unclip trim -2- for electrical connector -arrow-.

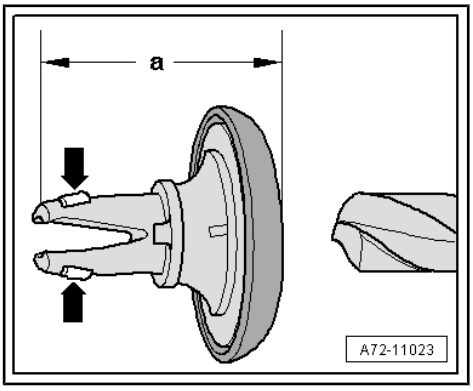
– Use ∅12 mm bit to drill out guides -1- and -3- for DVD player.



Caution

Danger of damaging backrest cover and padding irreparably.

- *Guides are only held in position in backrest frame by retaining tabs -arrows-.*
- *Therefore only drill out up to 35 mm (dimension -a-) to remove.*



Installing

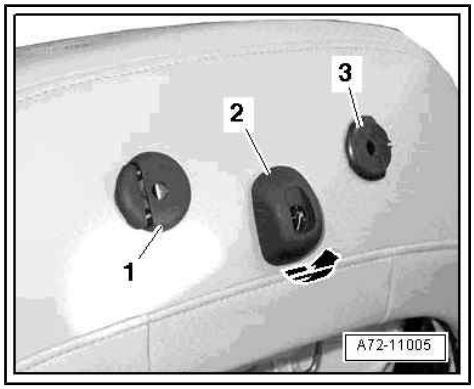
- Mountings for guides -1- and -3- on backrest must be clean.

– Align backrest cover and insert guides in mountings.

- Guides -1- and -3- can only be inserted in one position.
- Release buttons must face outwards.

– Clip on trim -2-.

- Trim can only be clipped on in one position.



Note

-Arrow- can be disregarded.

1.3.2 Detaching seat cover from padding

1 - Seat cover

♦ Removing

– Cut through upholstery clips -3-.
– Remove seat cover -1-.

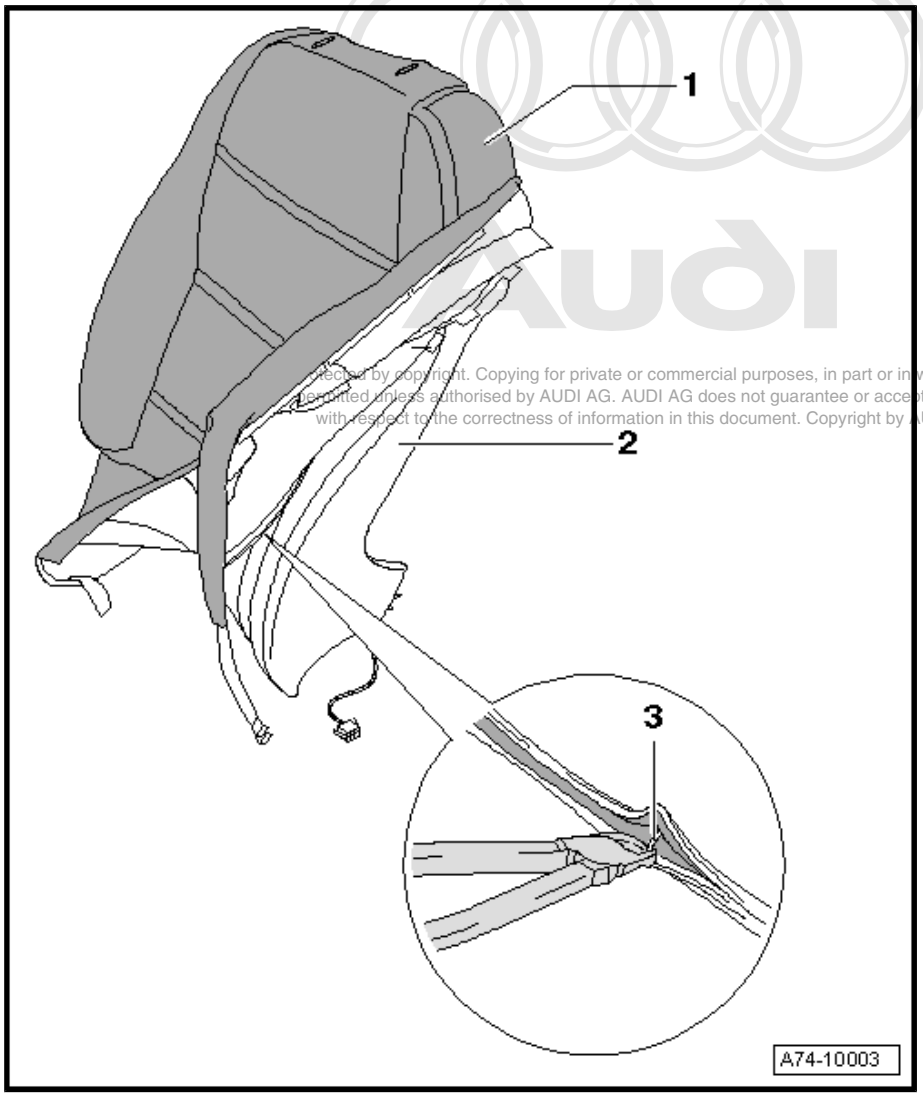
♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

– Use upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- to install new upholstery clips.

2 - Padding

3 - Upholstery clips



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4 Removing and installing seat heating element

1.4.1 Removing and installing seat heating element (glued in)

♦ Removing

– Remove seat ⇒ page 332 .

– Remove seat pan cover ⇒ page 566 .

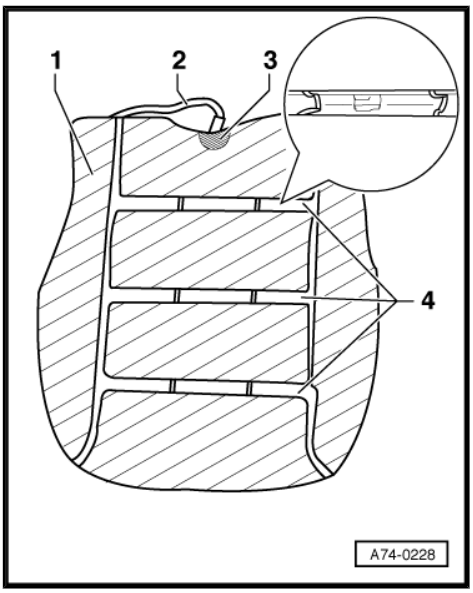
– Cut cable -2- off old heating element -1-.

♦ Installing

– Align heating elements -1- on seat cushion, pull off backing and bond heating elements firmly to surfaces of padding.

– Insert electrical wire -2- in gap -3-.

– Route connecting wires at locations -4- in bottom of gaps, avoiding crossover.



1.5 Removing and installing seat heating element (sports seat)

♦ Removing

– Remove seat ⇒ page 332 .

– Remove backrest ⇒ page 344 .

– Remove seat pan cover ⇒ page 568 .

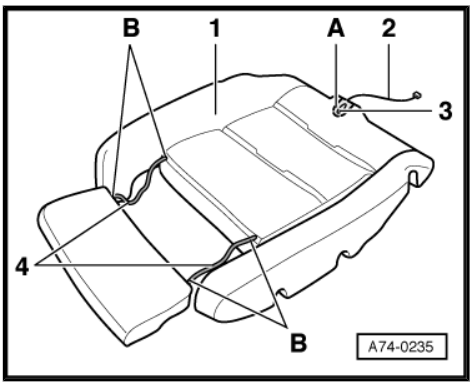
– Cut out area -A- of old heating element -1-.

– Pull out wire -2-.

– Cut off wires -4- (2x) at locations marked -B- (4x).

♦ Installing

– Align heating elements -1- on seat cushion, pull off backing and bond heating elements firmly to surfaces of padding.



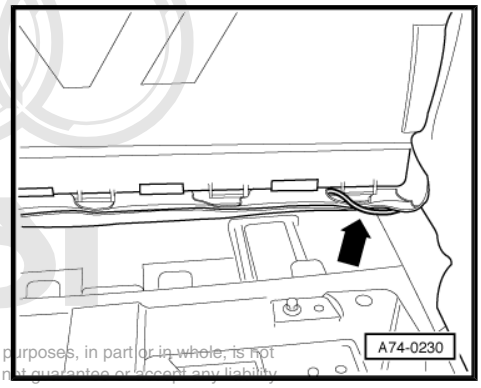
Note

Wires which have not been correctly laid may be subject to abrasion and seat depth adjuster may "catch".

– Insert wire -2- in gap -3- provided.

– Route connecting wires at locations -4- in bottom of gaps, avoiding crossover.

– Lay wires on right and left in recess -arrow-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.6 Removing and installing backrest heating element

1.6.1 Removing and installing backrest heating element (glued in)

♦ Removing

– Remove seat ⇒ page 332 .

– Remove cover ⇒ page 573 .

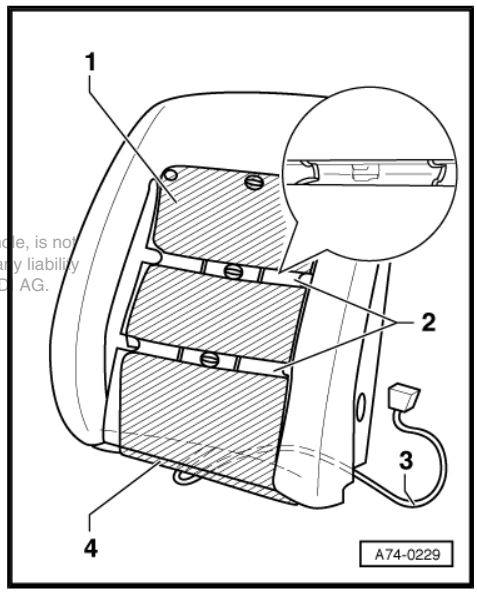
– Cut cable -3- off old heating element -1-.

♦ Installing

– Align heating elements -1- on backrest, pull off backing and bond heating elements firmly to surfaces of padding.

– Insert electrical wire -3- in gap -4-.

– Route connecting wires at locations -2- in bottom of gaps, avoiding crossover.



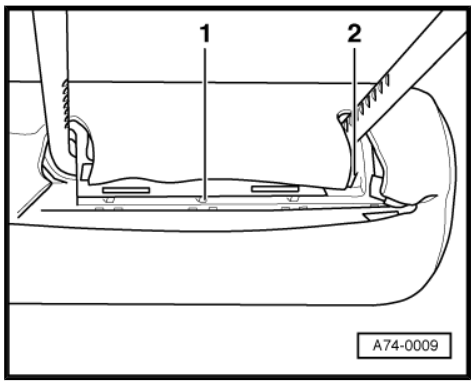
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.7 Removing and installing cover and padding for head restraint with slide-in locking mechanism

♦ Removing

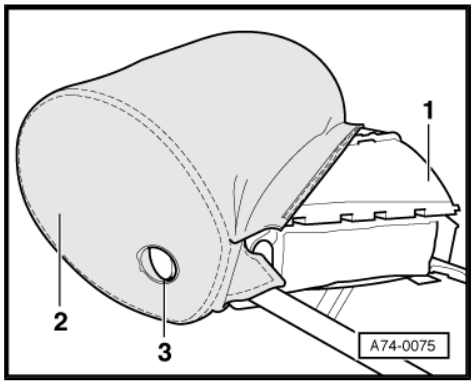
– Remove head restraint ⇒ page 376 .

– Disengage fastening strip -2- by prising out of guide slot -1- with a screwdriver.



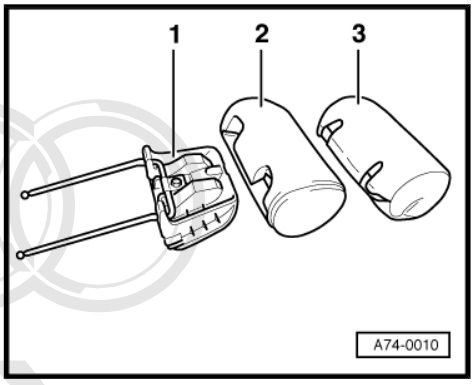
– Use a screwdriver to lift cover over trim plate for knob -3-.

– Take mounting bracket -1- for head restraint out of padding with cover -2-. Start on the side opposite the knob -3-.

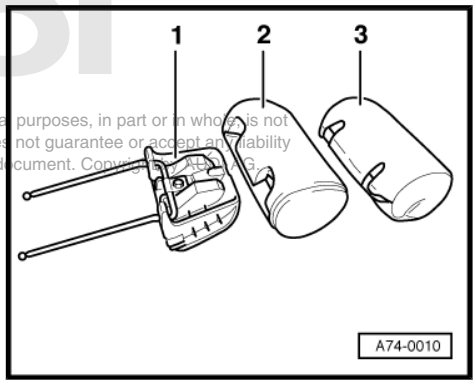


– Take padding -2- out of cover -3-.

♦ Installing



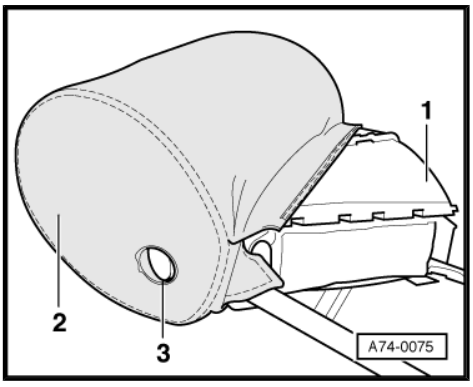
– Insert padding -2- in cover -3-, making sure that it fits correctly.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Slide mounting bracket -1- for head restraint into padding with cover -2-. Start on the side of knob -3-.

– Press fastening strips firmly into guide slot (check by pulling).

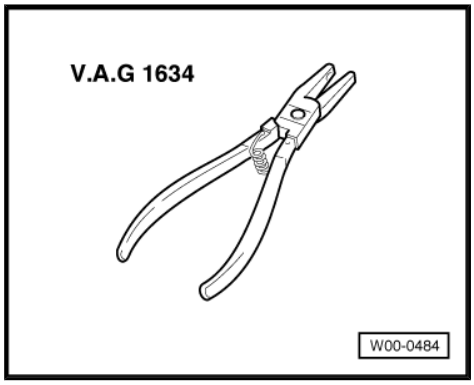


2 Covers and padding on front seats (seat with seat memory, seat with electric adjustment)

2.1 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding (standard seat)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-



2.1.1 Detaching cover and padding from seat pan

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Cover and padding

♦ Removing

– Remove seat ⇒ page 379 .
– Remove side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 392 .
– Remove side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 395 .
– Remove drawer ⇒ page 409 .
– Remove backrest ⇒ page 388 .
– Remove bolts -3- (2x).
– Detach bracket -2-.
– Unplug seat heating connector -7-.
– Unfasten clip -4-.
– Prise out fastening strips (peripheral) -5-.
– Detach cover and padding -1-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2 - Bracket

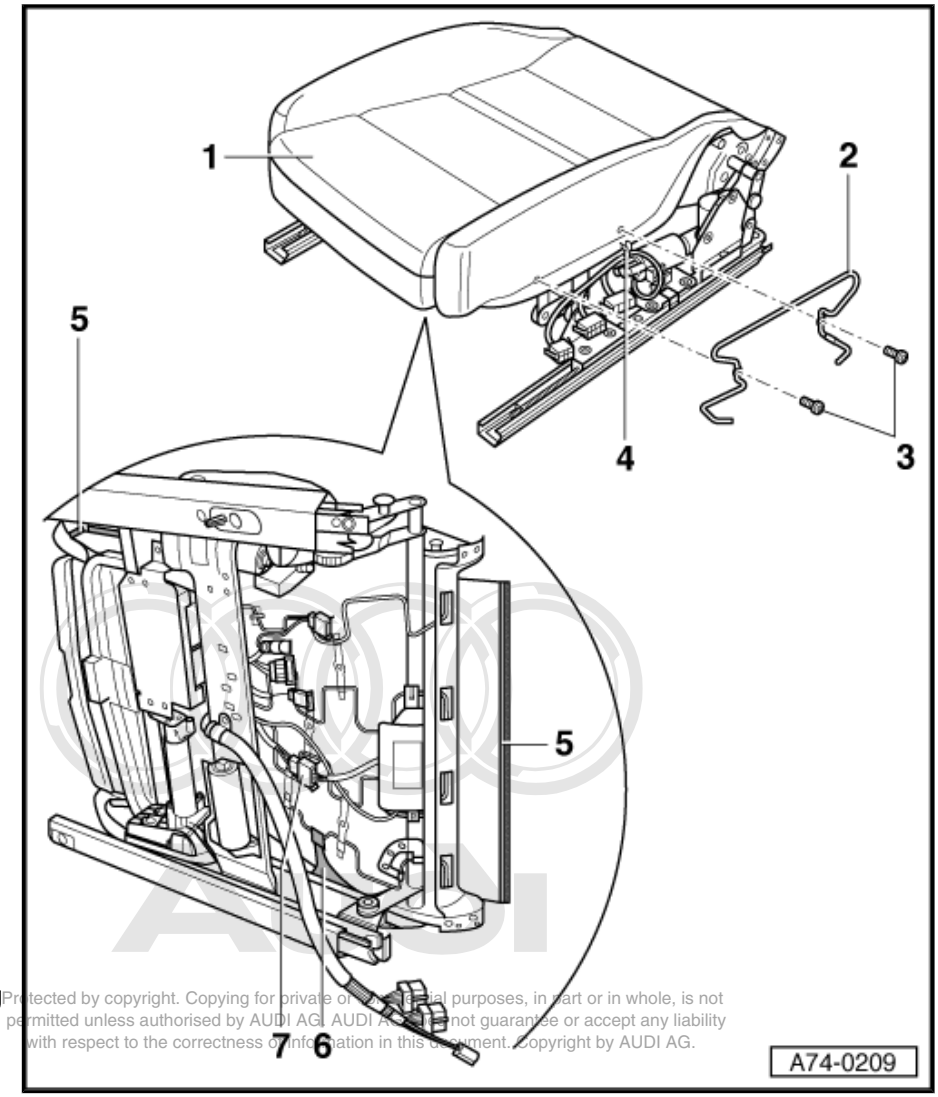
3 - Bolts (2x)

4 - Clip

5 - Fastening strips (peripheral)

6 - Lug

7 - Connector for seat heating



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1.2 Detaching seat cover from padding

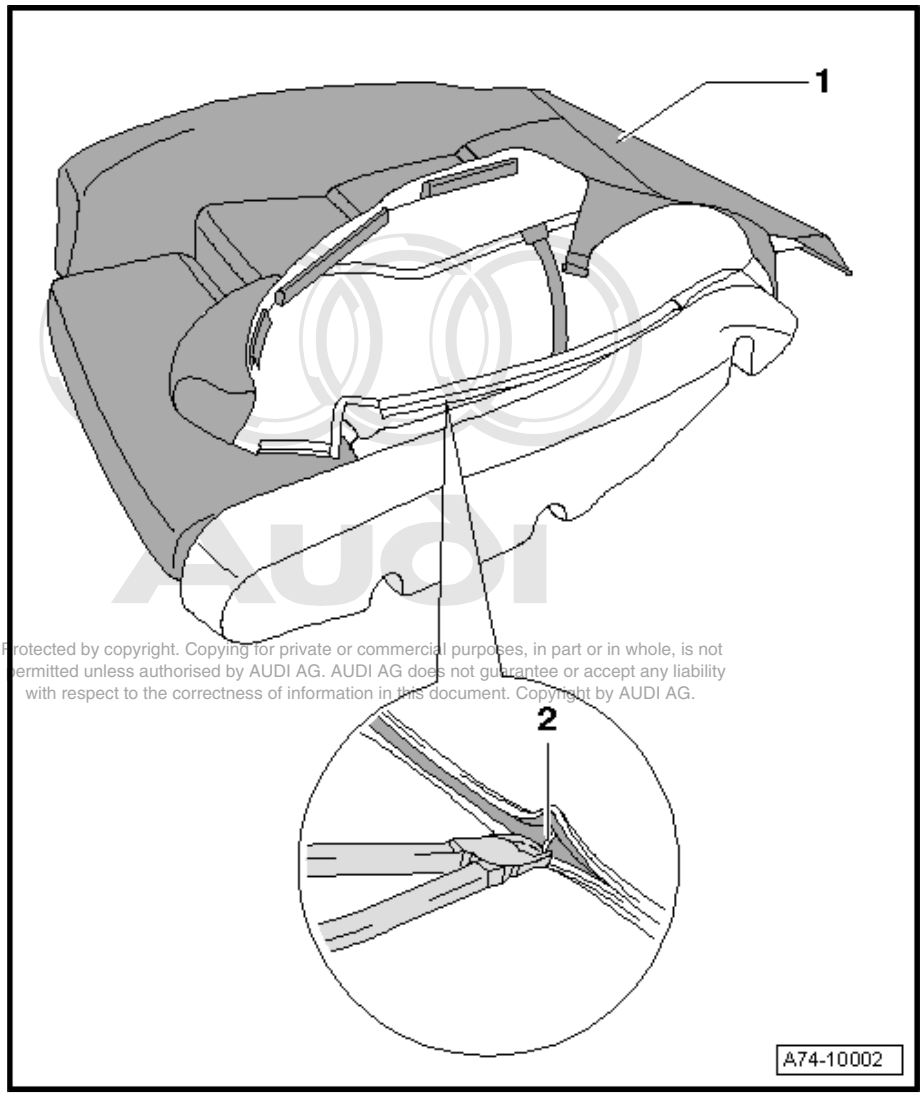
1 - Seat cover

- ♦ Removing
  - – Cut through upholstery clips -2-.
  - – Remove seat cover -1-.
- ♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- – Use upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- to install new upholstery clips.

2 - Upholstery clips

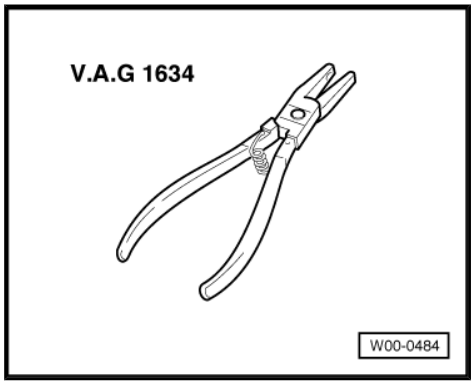


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding (sports seat)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-



2.2.1 Detaching cover and padding from seat pan

1 - Cover and padding

♦ Removing

– Remove seat ⇒ page 379 .

– Remove side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 392 .

– Remove side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 395 .

– Remove drawer ⇒ page 409 .

– Remove backrest ⇒ page 388 .

– Remove bolts -3- (2x).

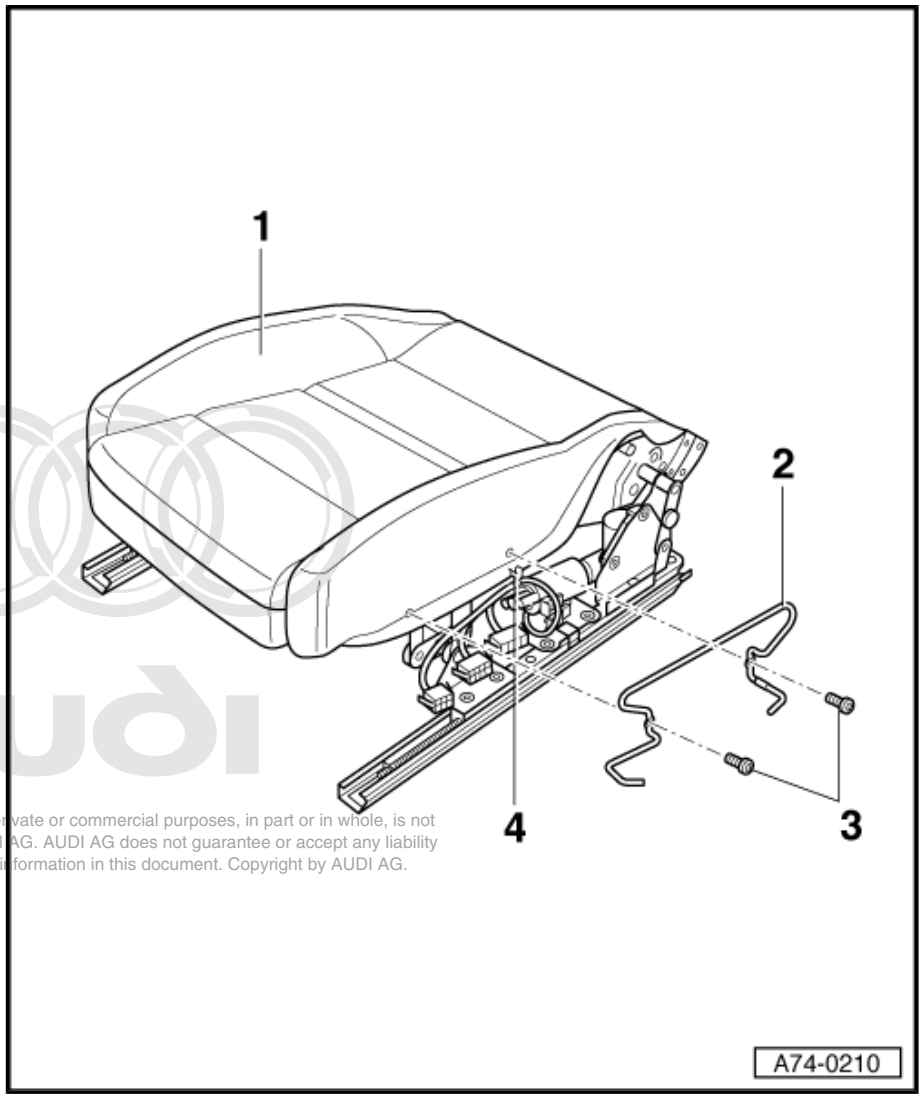
– Detach bracket -2-.

– Unfasten clip -4-.

2 - Bracket

3 - Bolts (2x)

4 - Clip



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Seat depth adjuster

- Pull out seat depth adjuster -1- fully.
- Unscrew nuts -2- (4x).
- Unplug seat heating connector -5-.
- Disengage tabs -3- (2x).
- Prise out fastening strips (peripheral) -4-.
- Remove cover and padding.

♦ Installing

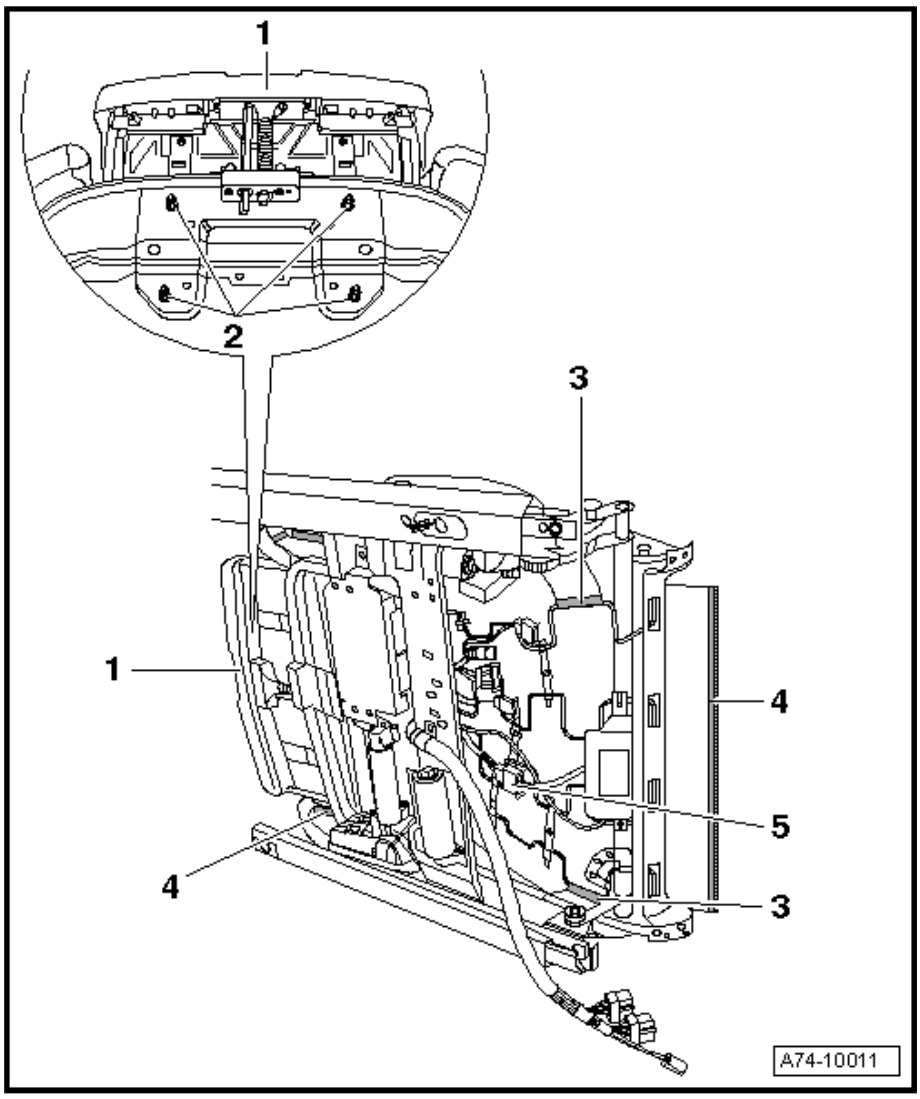
Install in reverse order of removal.

2 - Nuts (4x)

3 - Lugs (2x)

4 - Fastening strips (peripheral)

5 - Connector for seat heating



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2.2 Detaching seat depth adjuster from seat cover and padding

1 - Clips (3x)

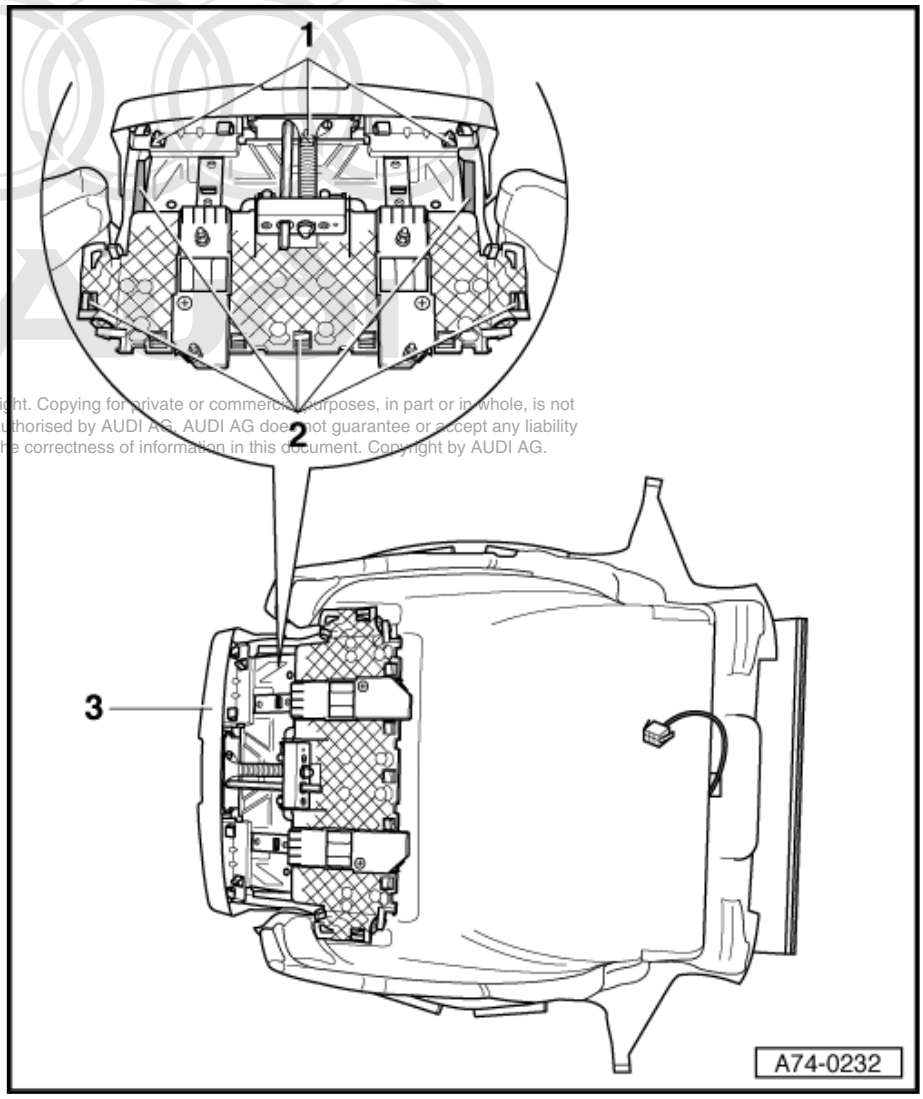
2 - Fastening strips (5x)

3 - Seat depth adjuster

– Prise out fastening strips -2- (5x).

– Prise out clips -1- (3x).

– Detach seat depth adjuster -3-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2.3 Detaching seat cover from padding

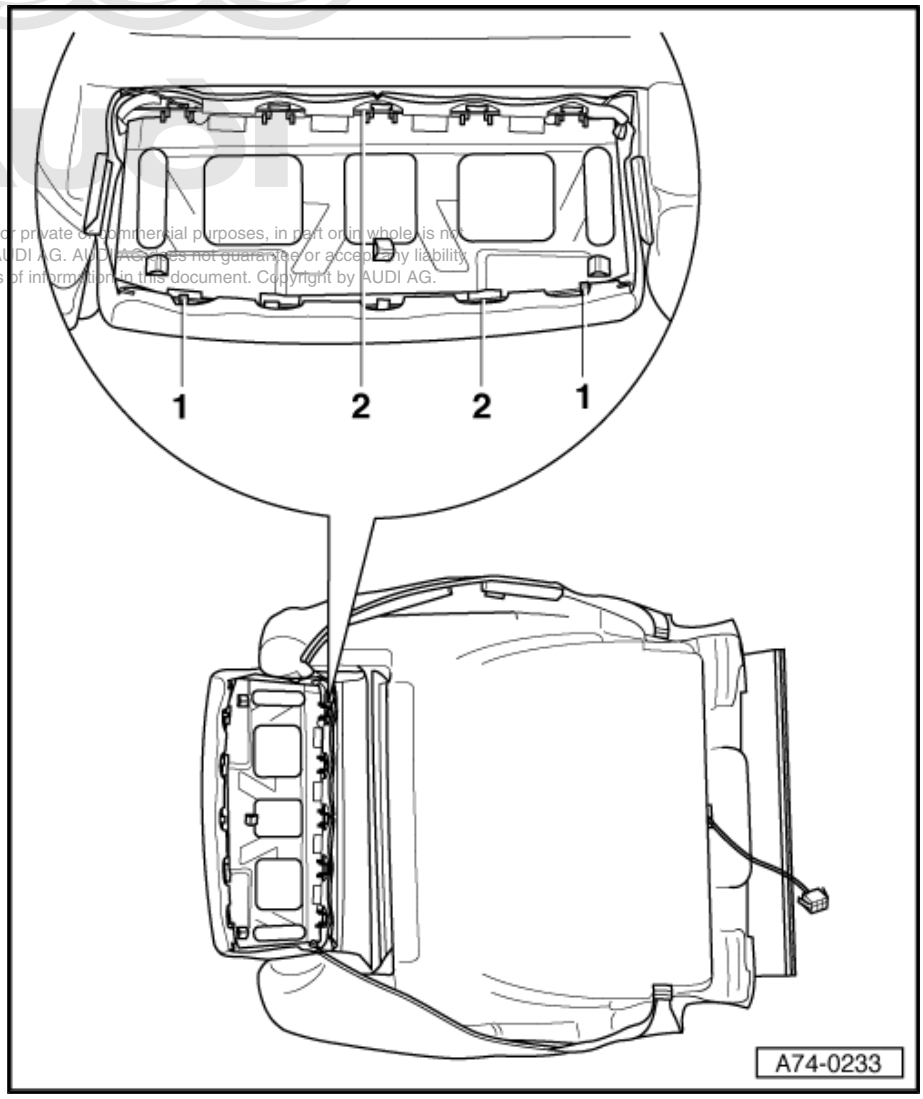
1 - Cable ties (2x)

2 - Rods (2x)

– Unfasten cable ties -1- (2x).

– Prise out rods -2- (2x).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



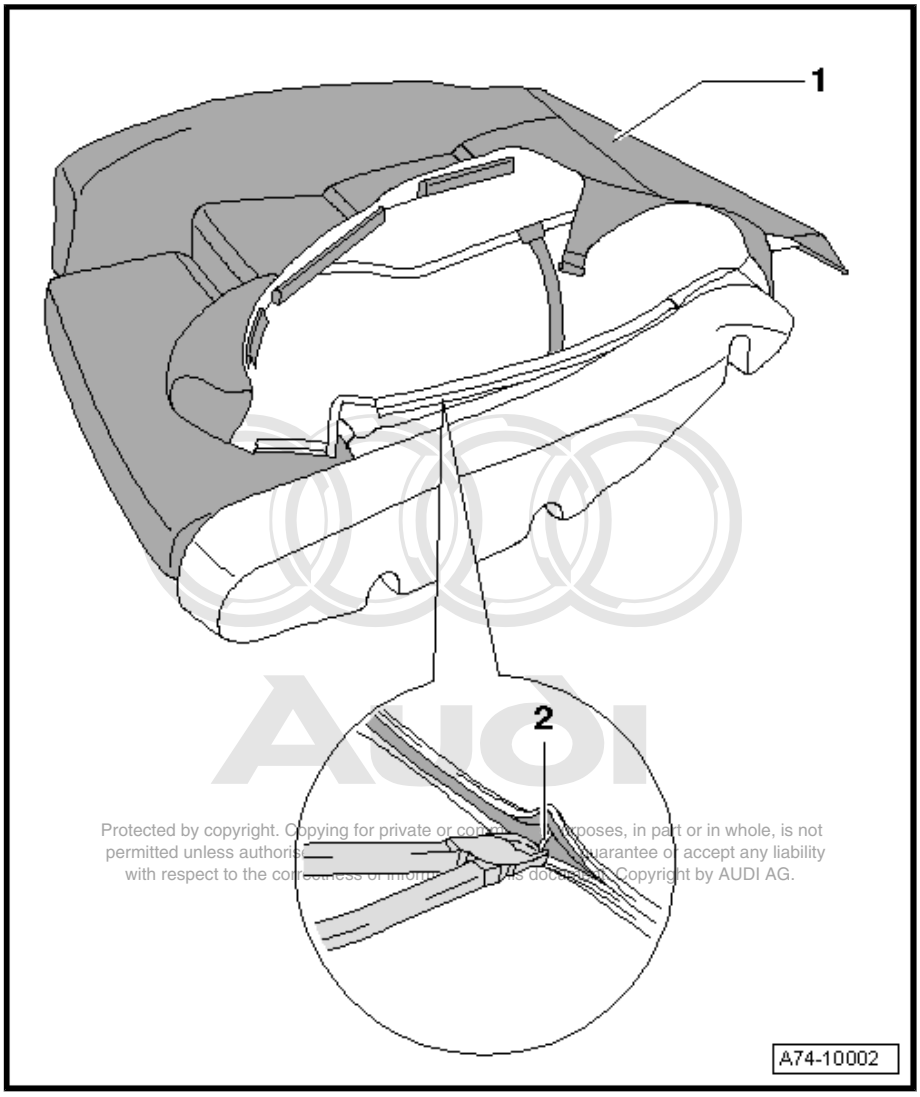
1 - Seat cover

- Removing
  - Cut through upholstery clips -2-.
  - Remove seat cover -1-.
- Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Use upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- to install new upholstery clips.

2 - Upholstery clips

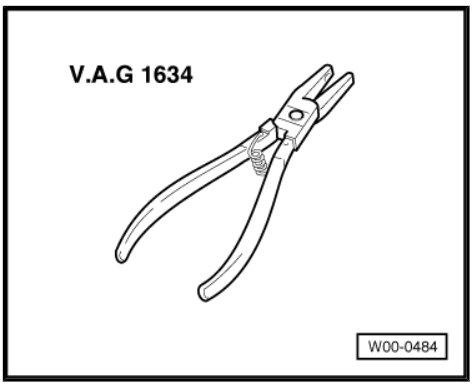


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding (sports seat, standard seat)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-



- Drill
- Safety goggles
- Drill bit ∅ 12 mm

2.3.1 Detaching cover and padding from outer backrest frame

1 - Fastening strip (side)

2 - Connector for side airbag

3 - Latch

4 - Side airbag (driver side/ front passenger side)

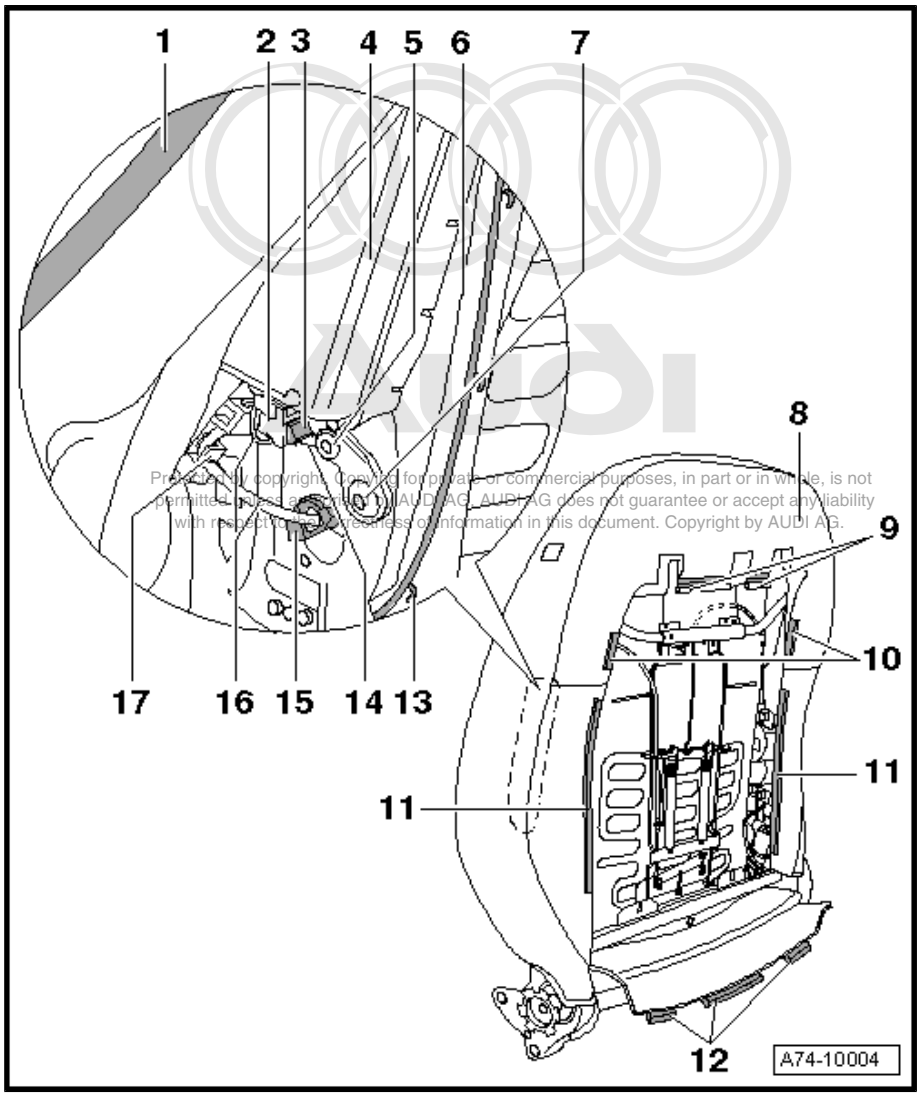
5 - Rivet

6 - Protective cover for side airbag

7 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque: 10 Nm
- ❑ Always renew after removing

8 - Cover and padding



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removing

- – Disconnect battery earth strap ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- – Remove seat ⇒ page 379 .
- – Remove guide on vehicles with DVD player ⇒ page 589 .
- – Remove backrest ⇒ page 388 .
- – Remove head restraints ⇒ page 426 .
- – Remove head restraint guides ⇒ page 590 .
- – Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 417 .
- – Prise out fastening strips (bottom) -12- (3x).
- – Disengage fastening strips (side) -10- (2x) and -11- (2x).
- – Prise out fastening strips (top) -9- (2x).
- – Remove side airbag: vehicles up to approx. 04.2007 ⇒ page 141 , vehicles from approx. 05.2007 onwards ⇒ page 144 .
- – Pull out wiring harness upwards.
- – Detach adhesive tape from wiring harness.
- – Detach cable for backrest heating from outer backrest frame.
- – Remove padding with cover.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- – Make sure airbag cable -16- runs through cable guide -17- and is attached to outer backrest frame using clip -15-.
- – Use upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- to install new upholstery clips on protective cover for side airbag.

9 - Fastening strips (top; 2x)

10 - Fastening strips (side; 2x)

11 - Fastening strips (side; 2x)

12 - Fastening strips (bottom; 3x)

13 - Upholstery clips (4x)

14 - Earth wire

15 - Clip

16 - Airbag cable

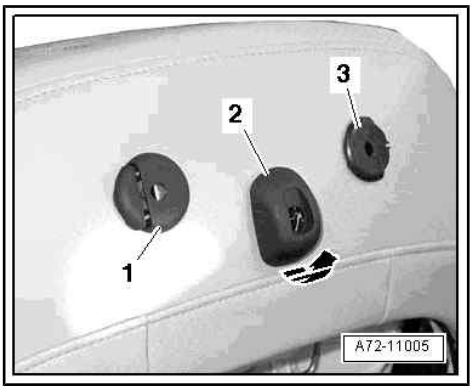
17 - Cable guide

Removing and installing guide for DVD player

Removing

- DVD player removed.

– Unclip trim -2- for electrical connector -arrow-.



WARNING

Risk of eye injuries.

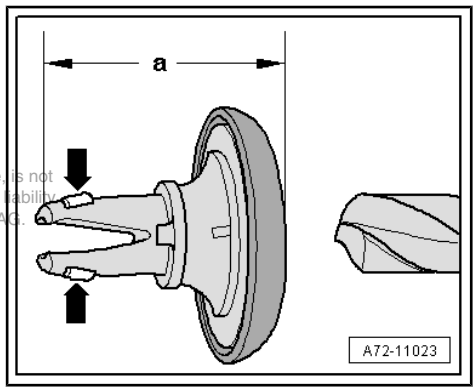
- *Wear safety goggles!*

– Use ∅12 mm bit to drill out guides -1- and -3- for DVD player.

Caution

Danger of damaging backrest cover and padding irreparably.

- *Guides are only held in position in backrest frame by retaining tabs -arrows-.*
- *Therefore only drill out up to 35 mm (dimension -a-) to remove.*



Audi
Copyright by AUDI AG. Reproduction, duplication, copying or distribution of this document, in part or in whole, is not authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

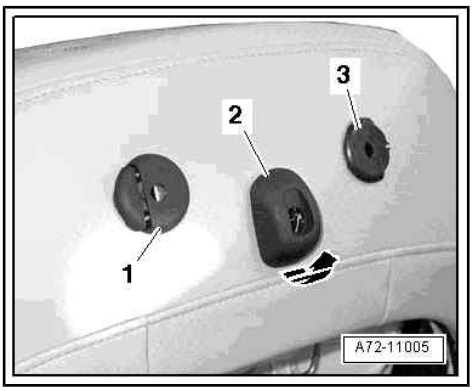
- Mountings for guides -1- and -3- on backrest must be clean.

– Align backrest cover and insert guides in mountings.

- Guides -1- and -3- can only be inserted in one position.
- Release buttons must face outwards.

– Clip on trim -2-.

- Trim can only be clipped on in one position.



Note

-Arrow- can be disregarded.

2.3.2 Detaching seat cover from padding

1 - Seat cover

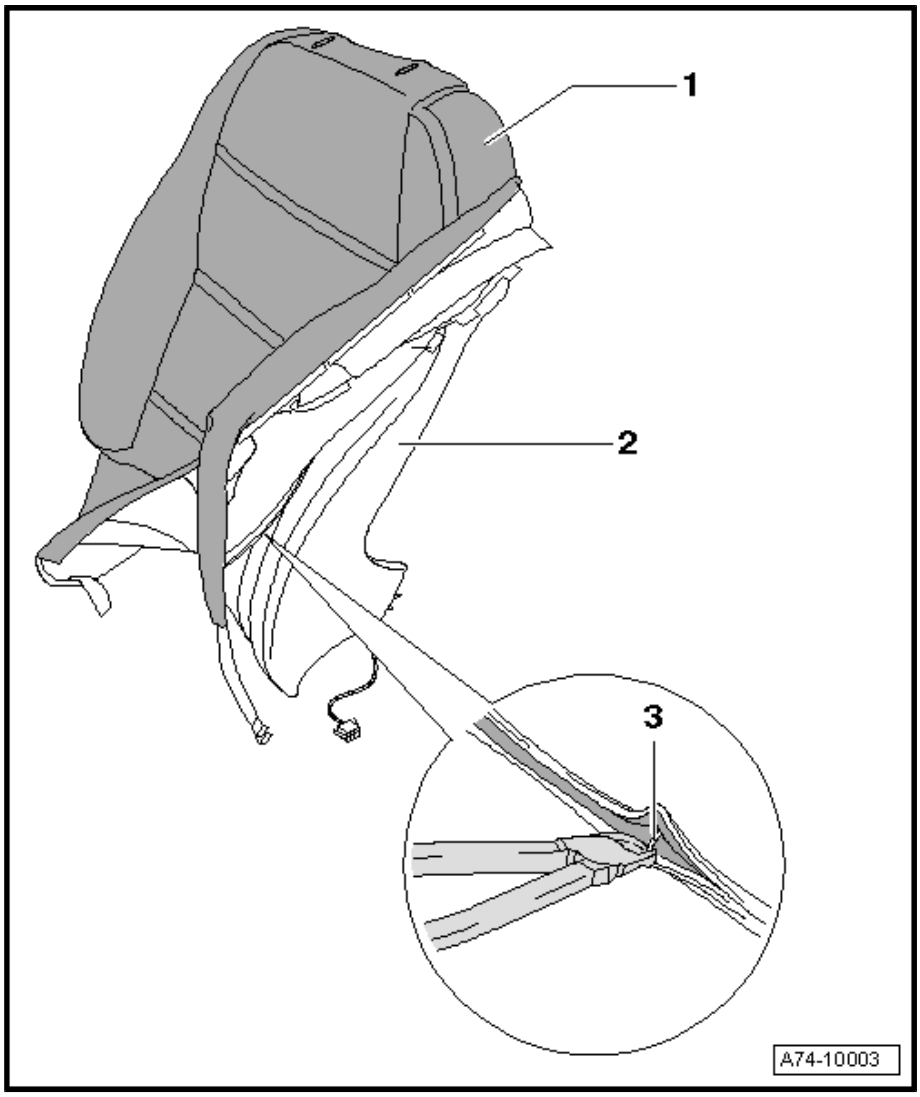
- ♦ Removing
  - – Cut through upholstery clips -3-.
  - – Remove seat cover -1-.
- ♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- – Use upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- to install new upholstery clips.

2 - Padding

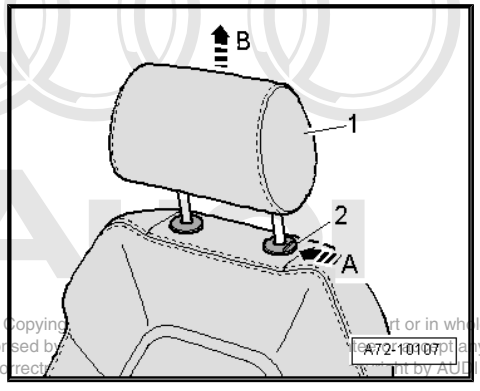
3 - Upholstery clips



2.4 Removing and installing head restraint guides

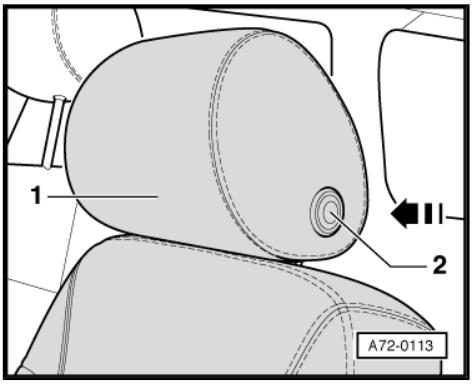
Removing

- – Press and hold release button -2- in direction of -arrow A- and pull head restraint -1- out upwards as far as possible -arrow B-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Press in release button -2- on head restraint -1- as far as it will go -arrow-.
– Keep pressing the release button in and push the head restraint down as far as possible on the posts.
– Take the head restraint out of the head restraint guides.

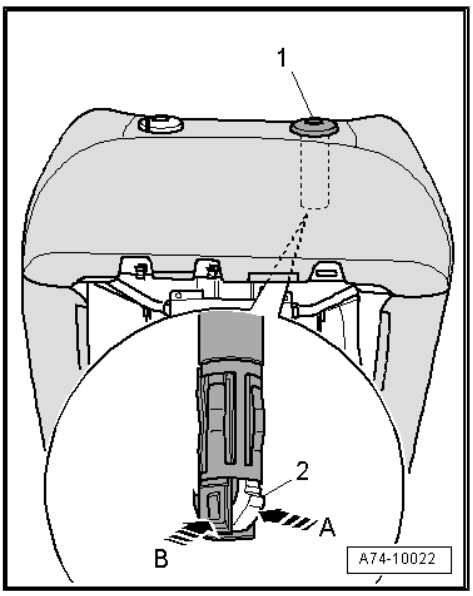


Head restraint guide without release button:

– Remove backrest cover panel: standard seat ⇒ page 368 , seat with electric adjustment ⇒ page 417 .
– Press retaining tab -2- in direction of -arrow A- and retaining claws in direction of -arrow B-.
– Pull head restraint guide -1- upwards out of mounting.

Note

The head restraint guide cannot be removed without becoming damaged.



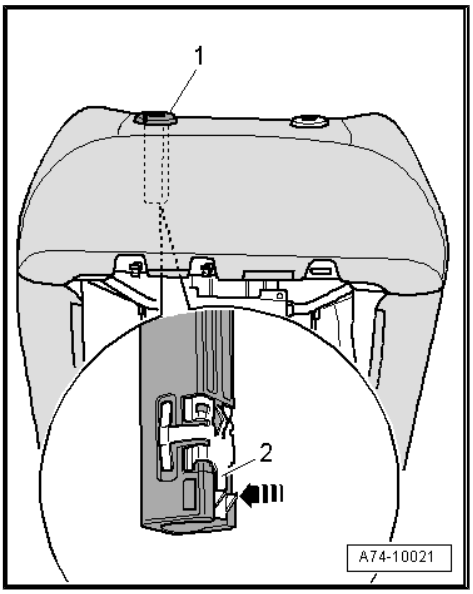
Head restraint guide with release button:

– Remove backrest cover panel: standard seat ⇒ page 368 , seat with electric adjustment ⇒ page 417 .
– Release retaining tab -2- in direction of -arrow- and pull head restraint guide -1- upwards out of mounting.

Installing

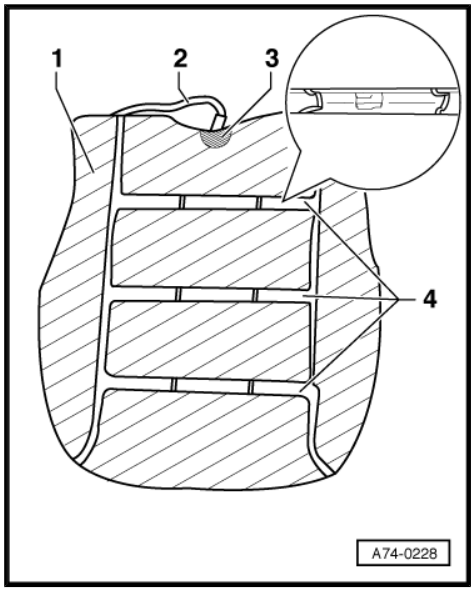
Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

- The head restraint guide can only be installed in one position.
- Guide tab of head restraint guide must engage in recess of mounting for head restraint guide.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.5 Removing and installing seat heating element (standard seat)



♦ Removing

– Remove seat ⇒ page 379 .

– Remove backrest ⇒ page 388 .

– Remove seat pan cover and padding ⇒ page 580 .

– Cut cable -2- off old heating element -1-.

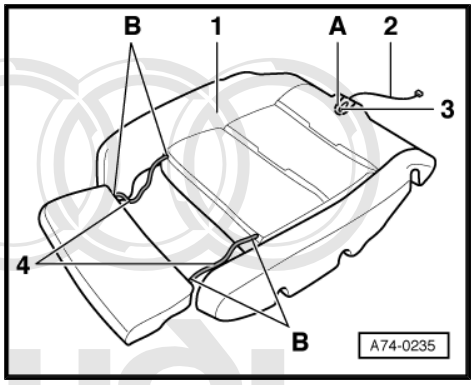
♦ Installing

– Align heating elements -1- on seat cushion, pull off backing and bond heating elements firmly to surfaces of padding.

– Insert wire -2- in gap -3-.

– Route connecting wires at locations -4- in bottom of gaps, avoiding crossover.

2.6 Removing and installing seat heating element (sports seat)



♦ Removing

– Remove seat ⇒ page 379 .

– Remove backrest ⇒ page 388 .

– Remove seat pan cover and padding ⇒ page 582 .

– Cut out area -A- of old heating element -1-.

– Pull out wire -2-.

– Cut off wires -4- (2x) at locations marked -B- (4x).

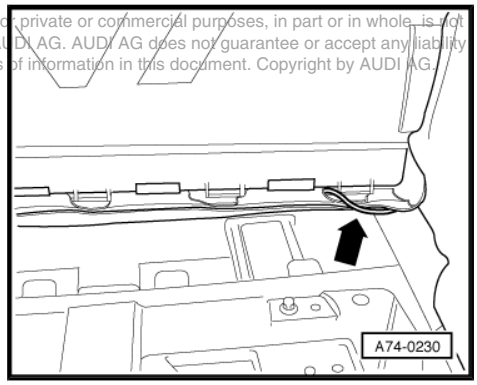
♦ Installing

– Align heating elements -1- on seat cushion, pull off backing and bond heating elements firmly to surfaces of padding.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

Wires which have not been correctly laid may be subject to abrasion and seat depth adjuster may "catch".



– Insert electrical wire -2- in gap -3- provided.

– Route connecting wires at locations -4- in bottom of gaps, avoiding crossover.

– Lay wires on right and left in recess -arrow-.

2.7 Removing and installing backrest heating element

2.7.1 Removing and installing backrest heating element (glued in)

♦ Removing

– Remove seat ⇒ page 379 .

– Remove backrest ⇒ page 388 .

– Remove backrest cover and padding ⇒ page 587 .

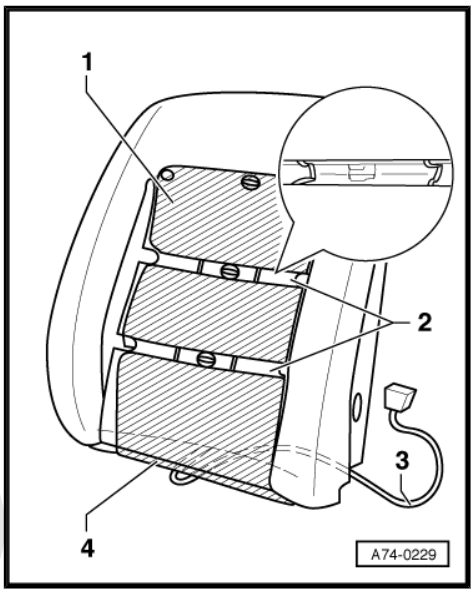
– Cut cable -3- off old heating element -1-.

♦ Installing

– Align heating elements -1- on backrest, pull off backing and bond heating elements firmly to surfaces of padding.

– Insert electrical wire -3- in gap -4-.

– Route connecting wires at locations -2- in bottom of gaps, avoiding crossover.



2.8 Removing and installing cover and padding for head restraint with slide-in locking mechanism

♦ Removing

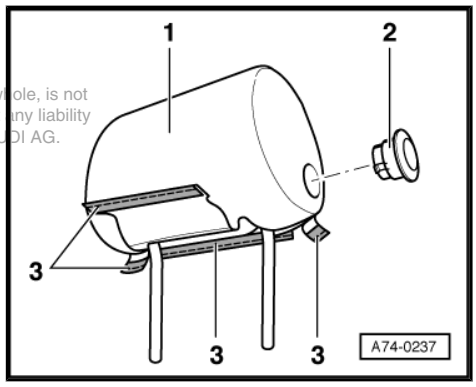
– Remove head restraint with slide-in locking mechanism ⇒ page 426 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Use screwdriver to prise out fastening strips -3- (4x).

– Detach button -2-.

– Detach cover and padding -1-.



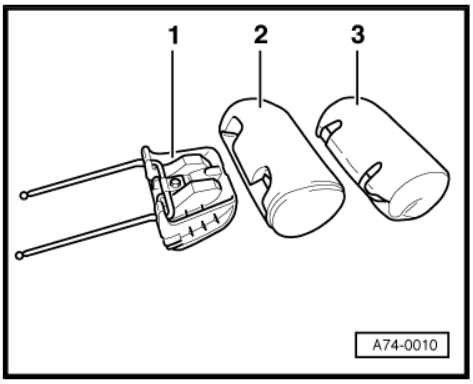
– Take padding -2- out of cover -3-.

♦ Installing

– Insert padding -2- in cover -3-, making sure that it fits correctly.

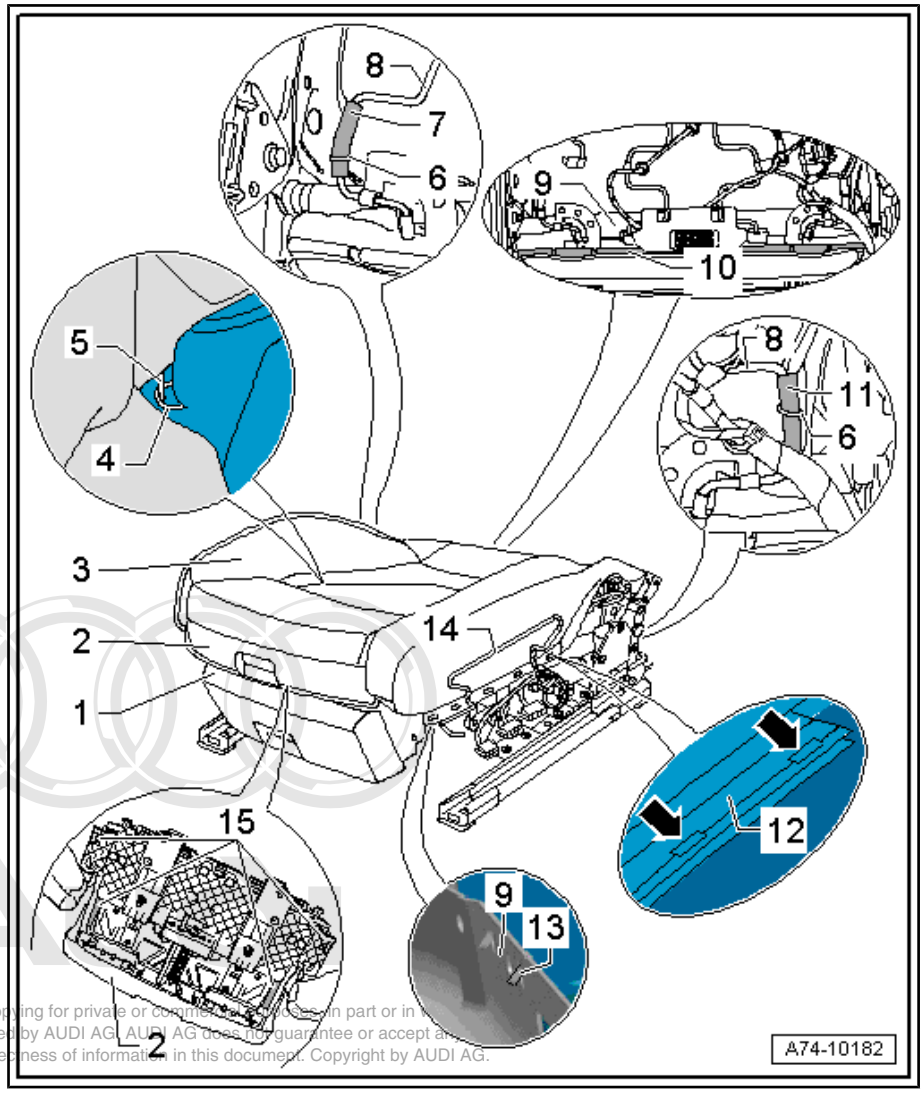
– Slide mounting bracket for head restraint -1- into padding with cover.

– Press fastening strips firmly into guide slot (check by pulling).



3 Covers and padding on S6 front seats (seat with seat memory, seat with electric adjustment)

3.1 Exploded view of seat pan cover and padding



1 - Drawer / storage compartment

- ❑ Removing and installing drawer ⇒ page 355
- ❑ Removing and installing storage compartment (hinged compartment) ⇒ page 358

2 - Seat depth adjuster

3 - Cover with padding

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 595

4 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For attaching cover to padding
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Re-attach at same location

5 - Retaining wire

- ❑ Foam-fitted in padding

6 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For attaching cover tab to spring of seat pan
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Re-attach at same location

7 - Cover tab (right-side)

8 - Spring

9 - Upper seat pan frame

10 - Fastening strip

- ❑ 6x
- ❑ Engaged in upper seat pan frame

11 - Cover tab (left-side)

12 - Fastening strip

- ❑ Recesses -arrows- engaged on side in clips ⇒ Item 13 (page 594) of upper seat pan frame

13 - Clip on upper seat pan frame

14 - Retaining bracket (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 469

15 - Fastening strip

- ❑ 5x

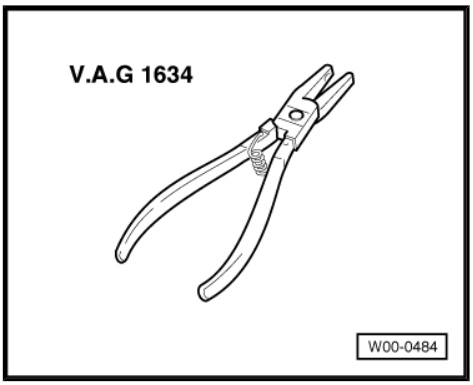
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

❑ For attaching cover to seat depth adjuster

3.2 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 476 .

– Remove retaining bracket (front) ⇒ page 469 .

– Remove drawer / storage compartment (hinged compartment):

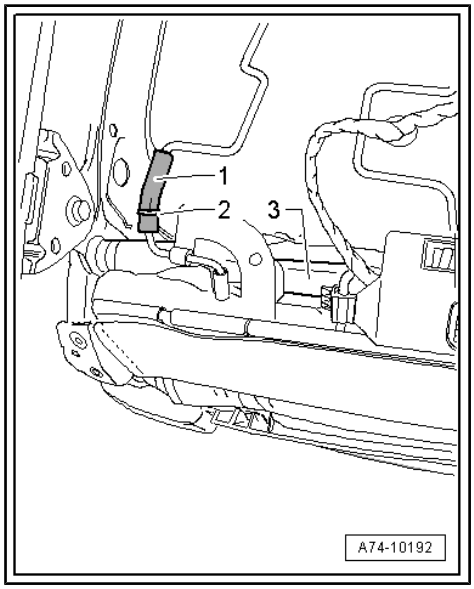
♦ Removing and installing drawer ⇒ page 355

♦ Removing and installing storage compartment (hinged compartment) ⇒ page 358

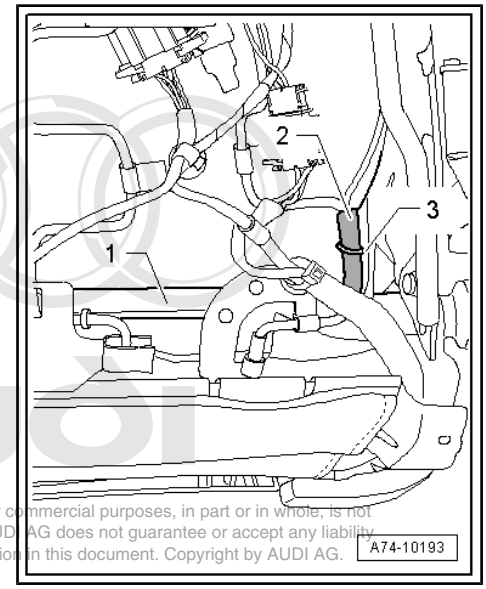
– Disengage fastening strips from catches in the area of front retaining bracket (both sides).

– Take care not to damage slots in fastening strips.

– Remove upholstery clip -2-.
– Disengage cover tab (right-side) -1- at spring of upper seat pan frame -3-.

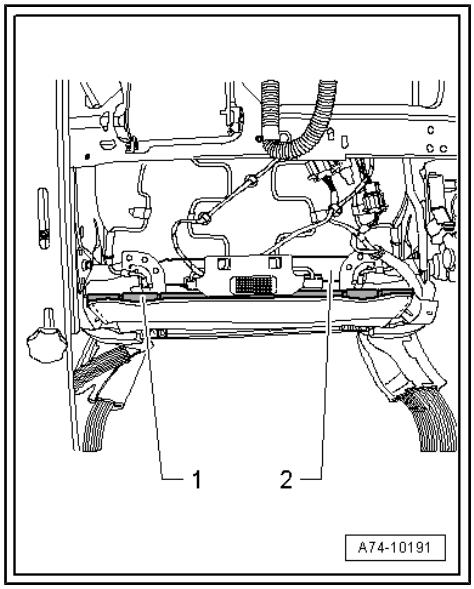


– Remove upholstery clip -3-.
– Disengage cover tab (right-side) -2- at spring of upper seat pan frame -1-.

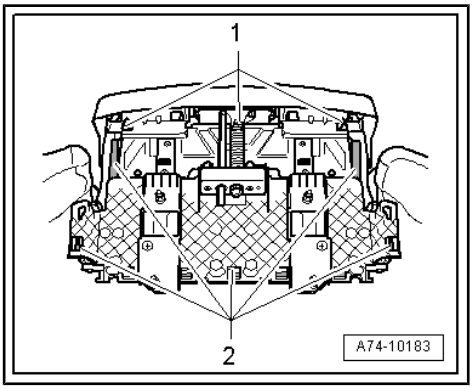


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Disengage fastening strips (rear) -1- (5x) from upper seat pan frame -2-.



– Prise out fastening strips -2-.
– Prise out clips -1-.
– Detach seat depth adjuster.
– Detach cover with padding from seat pan.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Use new upholstery clips when installing and insert these at the same location as before removal.
– Make sure fastening strips engage properly and that there are no creases in cover.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

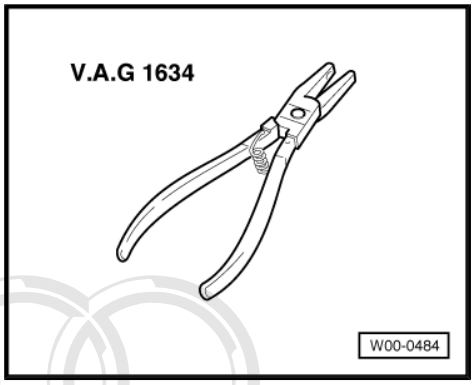
– Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .
– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.3 Detaching cover from padding and assembling (seat pan)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

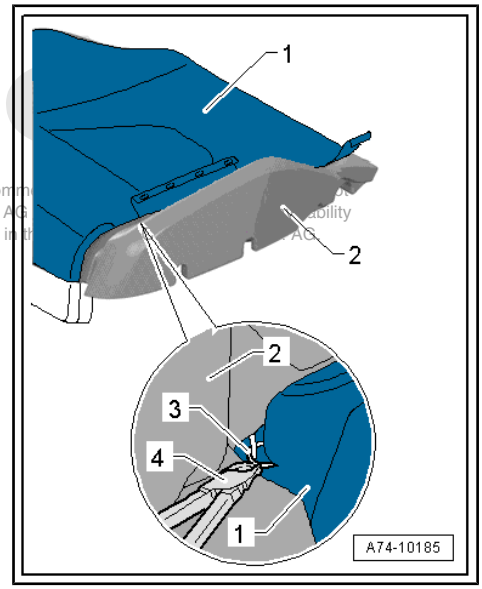
- Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-



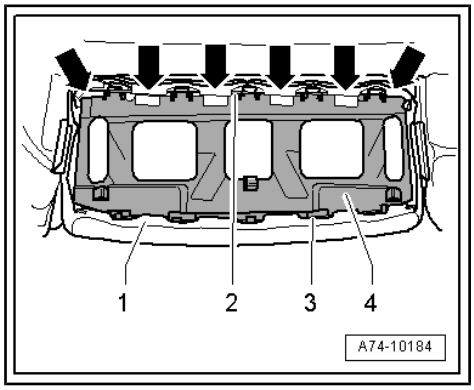
Removing

– Detach cover and padding from seat pan ⇒ page 595 .
– Detach cover -1- as far as possible from padding -2-.
– Use pliers -4- to pinch off upholstery clips -3-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG
with respect to the correctness of information in



– Use a screwdriver to prise wire -2- and -3- out of guides of padding holder -4-.
– Disengage cover at rear -arrows- at padding holder -4-.
– Detach cover from padding.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

– Use new upholstery clips.
– Use upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- to fasten upholstery clips.
– Fit upholstery clips in their original positions.

3.4 Exploded view of cover and padding/head restraint for backrest

Note

- *The head restraint is permanently attached to the backrest padding and can only be removed together with the backrest padding.*
- *The head restraint cannot be separated from the backrest padding.*

1 - Fastening strip

2 - Side airbag

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 141

3 - Pouch for side airbag

- ❑ Stitched to cover

4 - Wire

- ❑ For side airbag

5 - Cover with padding

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 599

6 - Backrest cover panel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 478

7 - Fastening strip

- ❑ 3x

8 - Seat cover

- ❑ Detaching cover from padding ⇒ page 603

9 - Belt

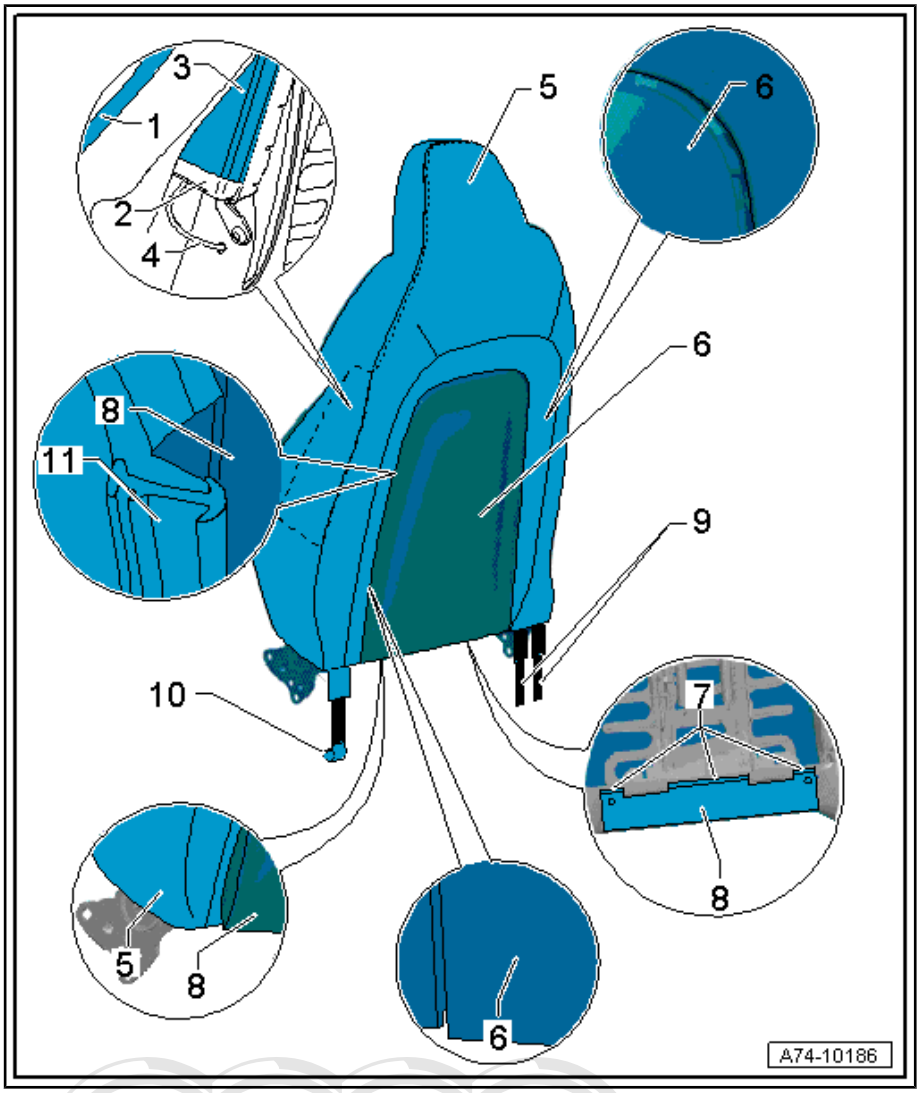
- ❑ For engaging cover at upper seat pan frame

10 - Belt

- ❑ For engaging cover at upper seat pan frame

11 - Fastening strip

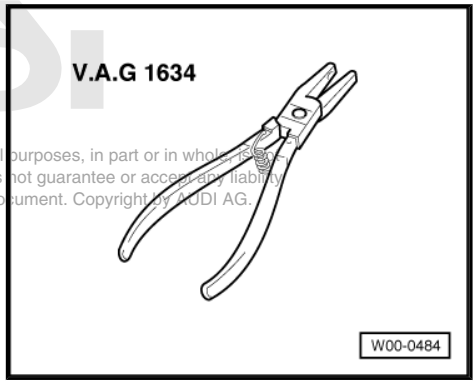
- ❑ All-round
- ❑ For attaching backrest cover to backrest cover panel



3.5 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

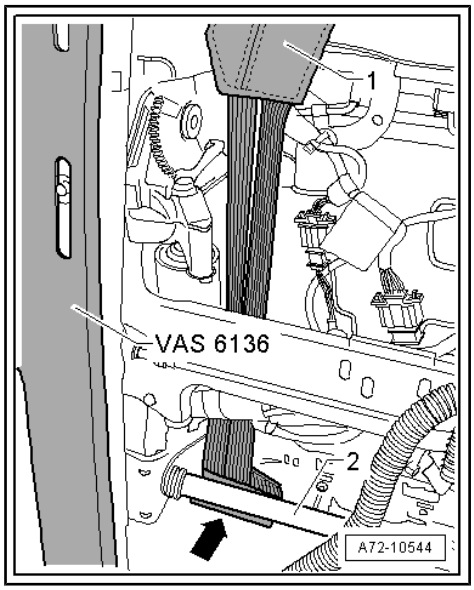
Removing

WARNING

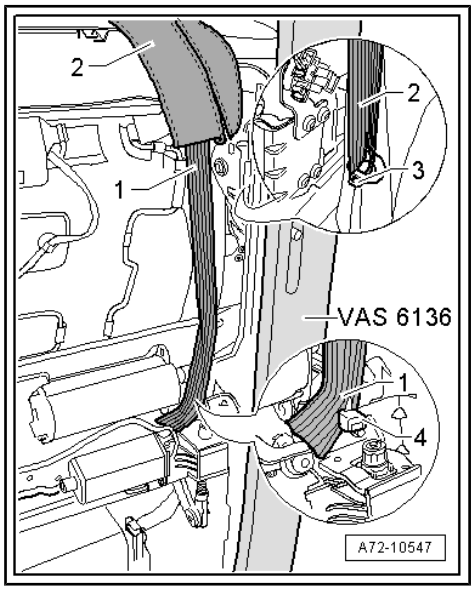
- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

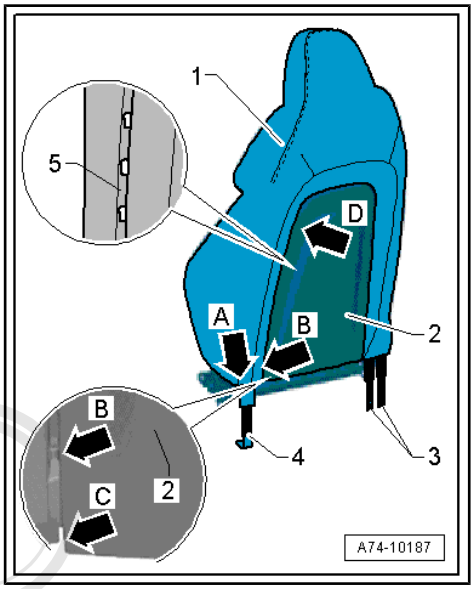
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 446 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 443 .
– Open corrugated tube and take out wires leading into the backrest (e.g. side airbag wire, backrest heating wire) ⇒ page 458 .
– Disengage tab -arrow- on cover -1- at upper seat pan frame -2-.



– Unfasten clip -4- on belt -1-.
– Unfasten clip -3- on belt -2-.
– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 476 .



– Fold out bottom edge of cover -1- in area of -arrow A-.
– Disengage cover -1- at bottom from slots -arrow C- of backrest cover panel.
– Unclip fastening strip of cover -1- from all-round groove -arrow D- of backrest cover panel -2-.
– Use removal wedge -3409- to unclip.
– Start unclipping in area around -arrow B- of backrest cover panel -2-.



Note

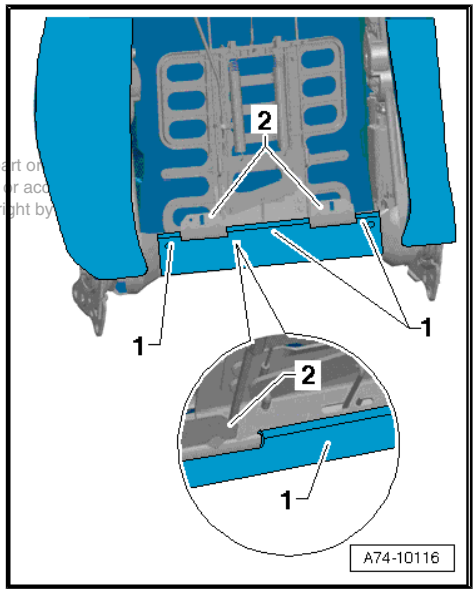
Considerable force is required to unclip fastening strip of cover from groove of backrest cover panel -5-.

3 - Belt for engaging in upper seat pan frame

4 - Belt for engaging in upper seat pan frame

– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 478 .

– Disengage lower fastening strips -1- at outer backrest frame -2-.



WARNING

Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or
during unless allowed by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or acc
Copyright by

– In area of side airbag, pull cover as far forwards as possible so that side airbag can be removed.

Vehicles up to approx. 04.2007:

– Remove side airbag ⇒ page 141 .
– Take airbag out of the pouch sewn into cover and re-engage airbag in outer backrest frame.

Vehicles from approx. 05.2007 onwards:

– Remove side airbag ⇒ page 144 .
– Pull fastening strip of fabric strip for side airbag out of outer backrest frame and hook side airbag back into outer backrest frame.

All vehicles (continued):

– Working from rear of backrest, reach beneath padding and locate release button -4-.

– Press release button -4- towards centre of seat in direction of -arrow-.

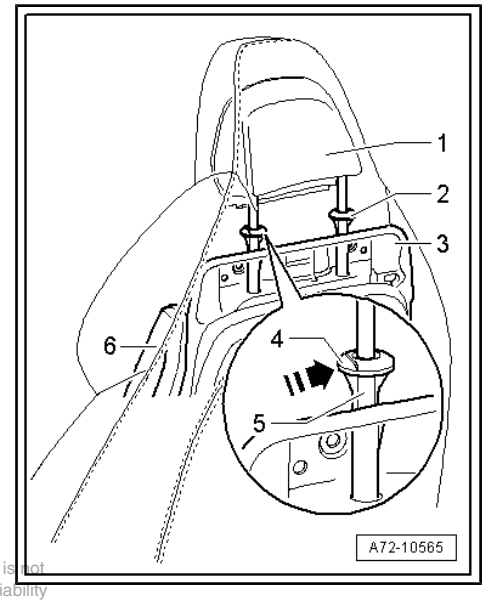
– Keep release button -4- pressed in this position.

– Lift padding with head restraint -1- off outer backrest frame -3-.

2 - Head restraint guide without release button

5 - Head restraint guide with release button

6 - Side airbag



Note

A second mechanic is required for detaching padding with head restraint from outer backrest frame.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe the safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ page 110 .*
- *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– After attaching padding to outer backrest frame, make sure that head restraint is properly locked in head restraint guides.

– Make sure fastening strips engage properly and that there are no creases in cover.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

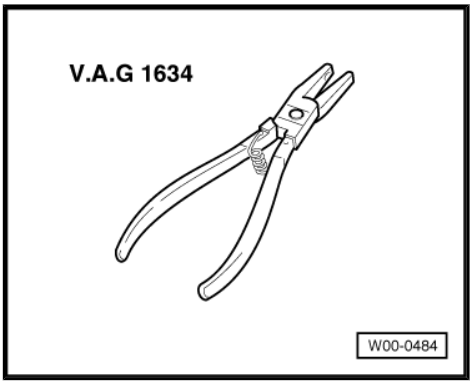
– Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Rep. gr. 27 .

– If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

3.6 Detaching seat cover from padding (backrest)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-



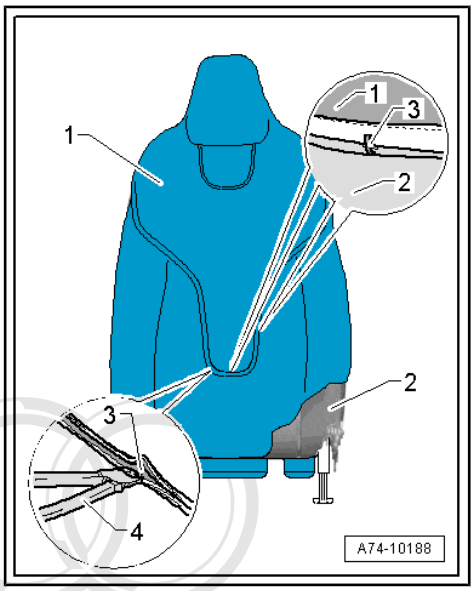
Removing

– Detach cover and padding from backrest ⇒ page 599 .
– Detach cover -1- as far as possible from padding -2-.
– Use pliers -4- to pinch off upholstery clips -3-.
– Detach cover -1- from padding -2-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

– Use upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- to install new upholstery clips.



3.7 Overview - seat heating element

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Padding

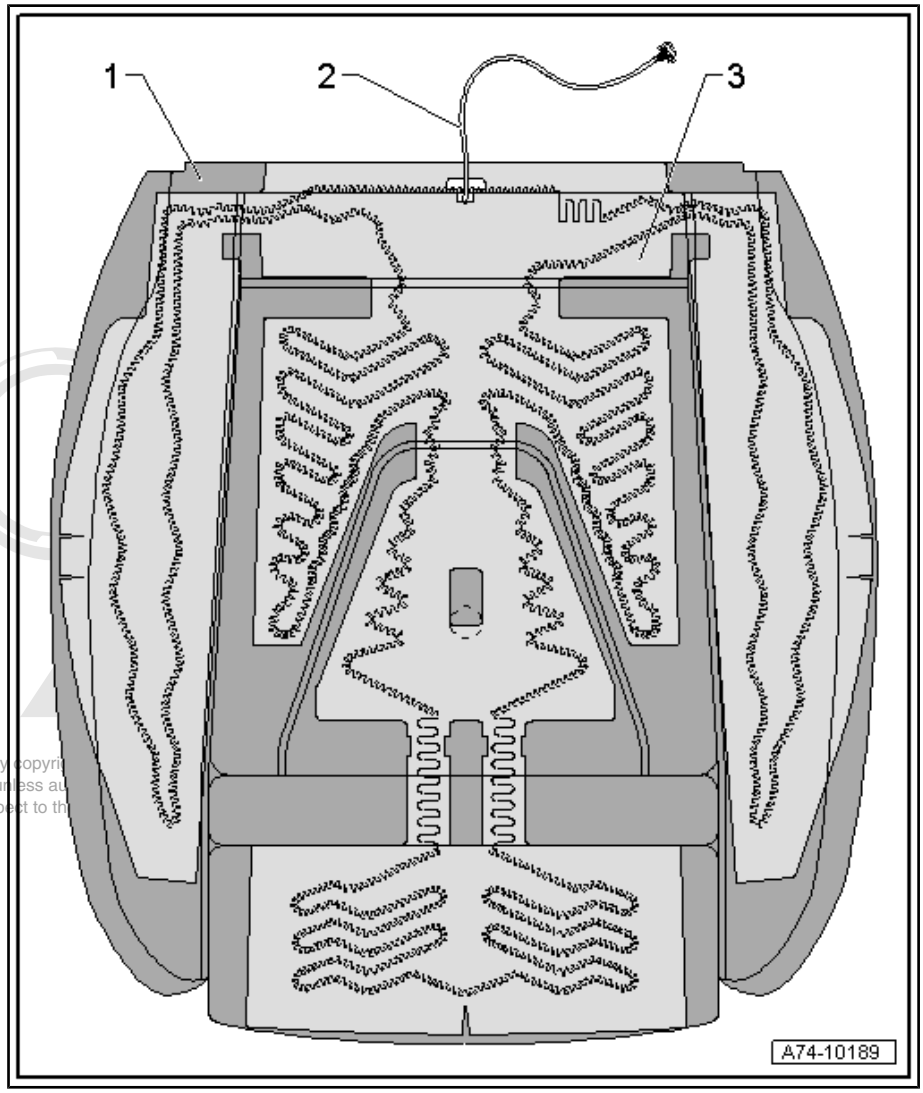
- ❑ For seat pan

2 - Wire

- ❑ Permanently connected to seat heating element

3 - Seat heating element

- ❑ Bonded to padding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 604



Protected by copyri
permitted unless au
with respect to th

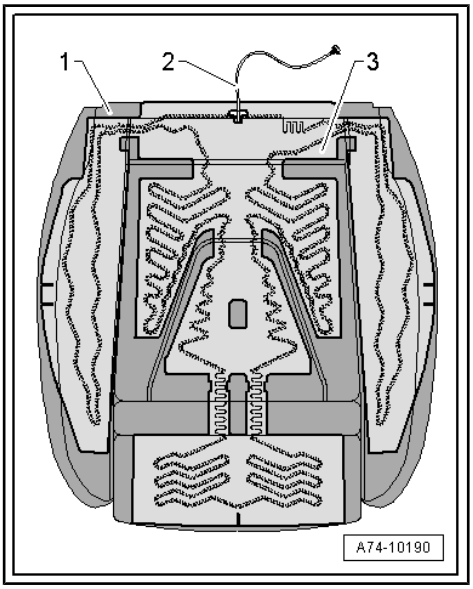
3.8 Removing and installing seat heating element

Removing

– Remove seat pan cover and padding ⇒ page 595 .

– Detach cover from padding ⇒ page 597 .

– Cut wire -2- off old seat heating element -3-.



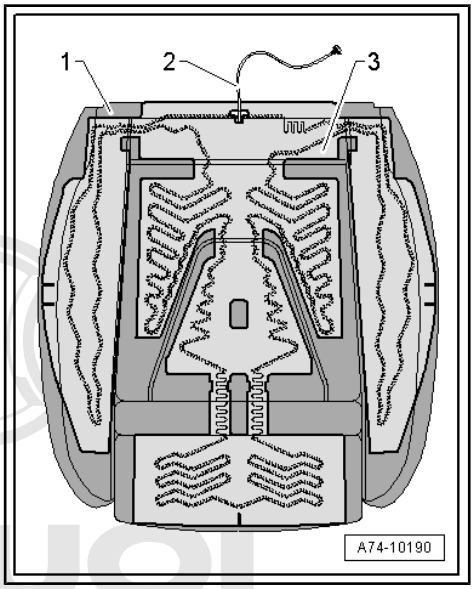
Note

Leave old seat heating element on padding -1- and cover it with new seat heating element.

Installing

– Align new seat heating element -3- on padding -1-.
– Pull off protective film and attach new seat heating element -3- onto padding -1- and old seat heating element.
– Lay wire -2- of new seat heating element in bottom of recess in padding.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.



3.9 Overview - backrest heating element

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Padding

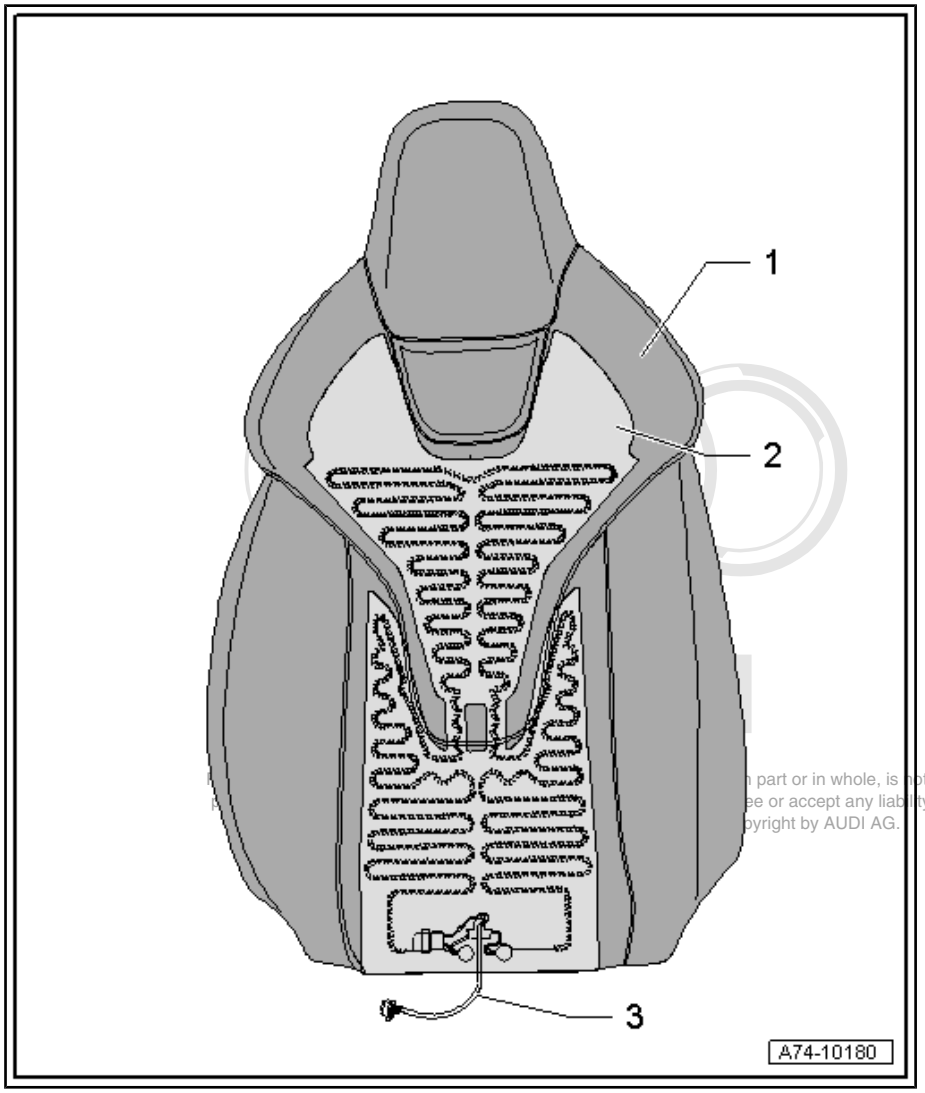
- ❑ For backrest

2 - Backrest heating element

- ❑ Bonded to padding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 606

3 - Wire

- ❑ Permanently connected to seat heating element



part or in whole, is not
ee or accept any liability
pyright by AUDI AG.

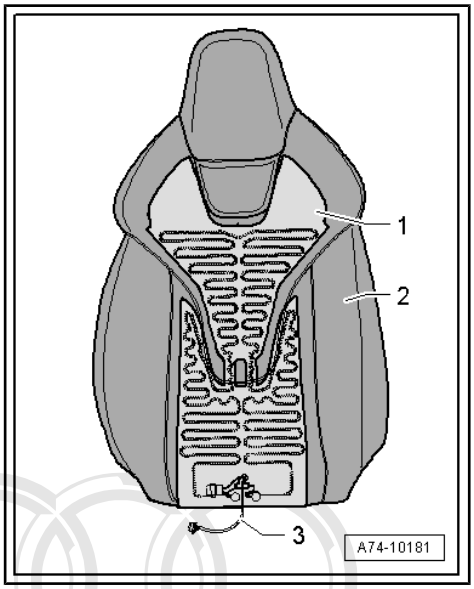
3.10 Removing and installing backrest heating element

Removing

– Remove backrest cover and padding ⇒ page 599 .

– Detach cover from padding ⇒ page 603 .

– Cut wire -3- off old backrest heating element -1-.



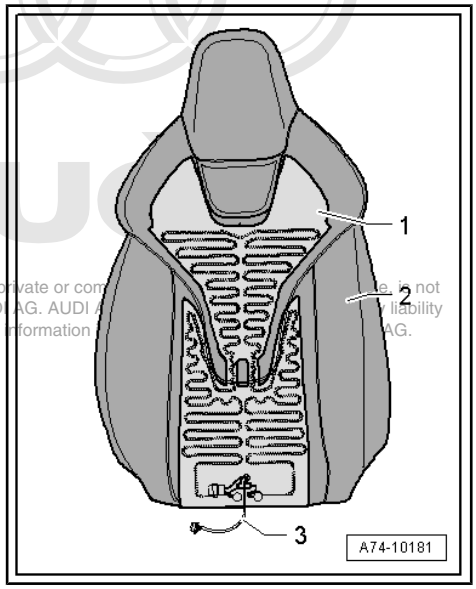
Note

Leave old backrest heating element on padding -2- and cover it with new backrest heating element.

Installing

– Align new backrest heating element -1- on padding -2-.
– Pull off protective film and attach new backrest heating element -1- to padding -2- and old backrest heating element.
– Lay wire -3- of new backrest heating element in bottom of recess in padding.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

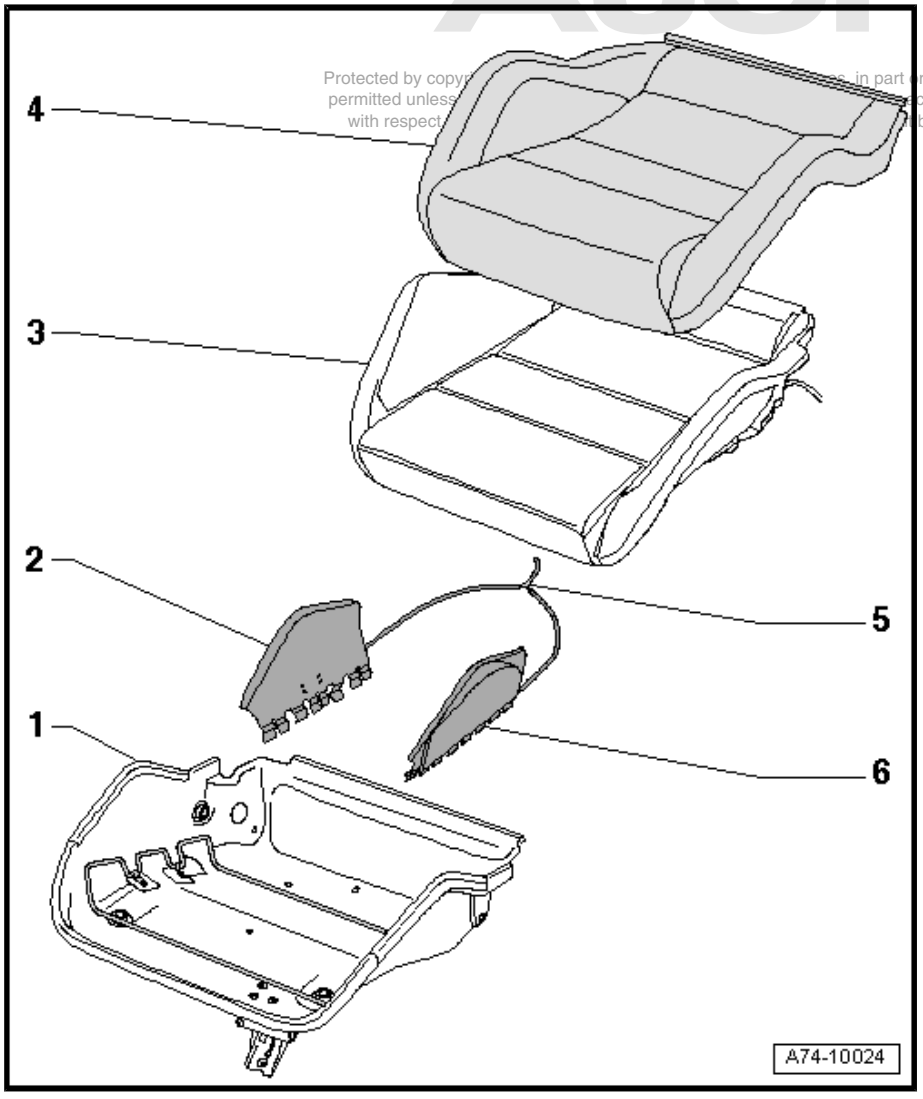


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com... is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A... liability with respect to the correctness of information ... AG.

4 Seat covers and padding for bucket seats

4.1 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Seat pan

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 538

2 - Flap with air cushion for seat bolster adjustment (right-side)

- ❑ Disengaging ⇒ page 609

3 - Seat pan padding

4 - Seat pan cover

Removing

- Remove seat ⇒ page 527 .
- Remove seat pan ⇒ page 538 .
- Detach Velcro joints (left and right) at rear of seat cover.
- Prise fastening strip out of guide on seat pan -1- all around edge of seat cover -4-.
- Carefully detach seams of seat pan cover from Velcro joint on seat pan padding -3-.
- Remove seat cover.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

5 - Y-piece

- ❑ Connects the two pneumatic hoses for seat bolster adjustment

6 - Flap with air cushion for seat bolster adjustment (left-side)

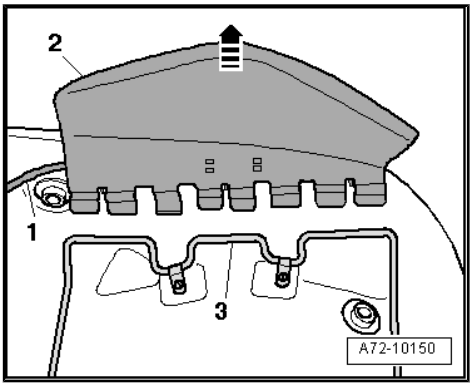
- ❑ Disengaging ⇒ page 609

Disengaging flap with air cushion for seat bolster adjustment

– Pull flap -2- with air cushion for seat bolster adjustment off retaining bracket -3- on seat pan -arrow-.

– Disconnect pneumatic hose -1- for seat bolster adjustment at Y-piece.

– Remove flap with air cushion for seat bolster adjustment.



4.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding

1 - Backrest cover

Removing

– Remove seat ⇒ page 527 .

– Remove backrest ⇒ page 540 .

– Remove outer parts of both seat belt guides ⇒ page 548 .

– Prise fastening strip off guide on backrest -6- all around edge of backrest cover -1- ⇒ page 610 .

– In bended sections, fastening strip is additionally secured with retaining clips -3-; carefully remove retaining clips.

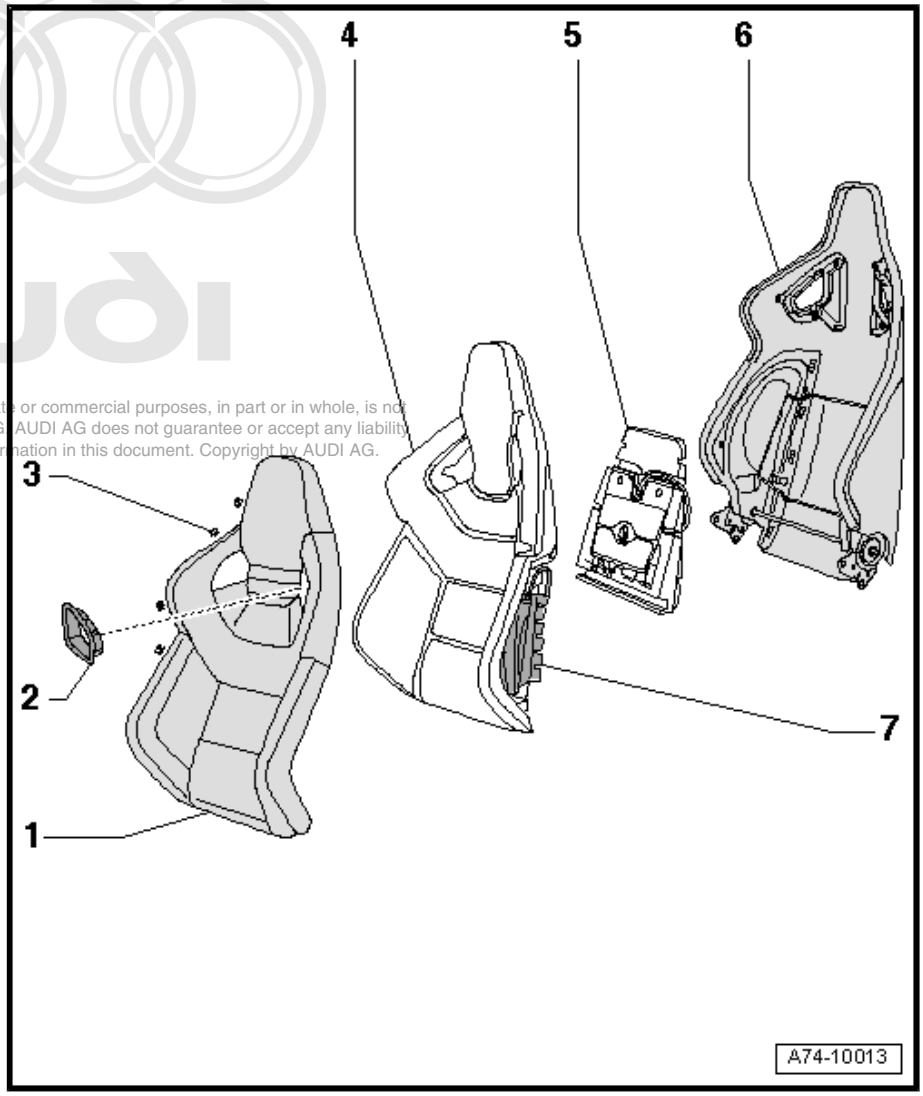
– Carefully detach seams of backrest cover from Velcro joint on backrest padding -4-.

– Disengage retaining strip at bottom of pneumatic block -5-.

– Remove backrest cover.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 - Outer section of seat belt guide

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 548

3 - Retaining clips (8x)

❑ For fastening strip on backrest cover

❑ Install in bended area of backrest

4 - Backrest padding

Removing

- Remove backrest cover -1-.
- Disengage flaps for backrest bolster adjustment -7- from retaining bracket on backrest ⇒ page 611 .
- Disconnect pneumatic hose for backrest bolster adjustment
- Detach backrest padding from backrest.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

5 - Pneumatic block

Removing

- Remove backrest cover -1-.
- Remove backrest padding -4-.
- Carefully detach pneumatic block from backrest (glued together).
- Swivel pneumatic block forwards at upper edge.
- Move wiring harness clear.
- Remove pneumatic block.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

- If necessary, renew double-sided adhesive tape ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

❑ Pneumatic block: assignment ⇒ page 548

6 - Backrest

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 540

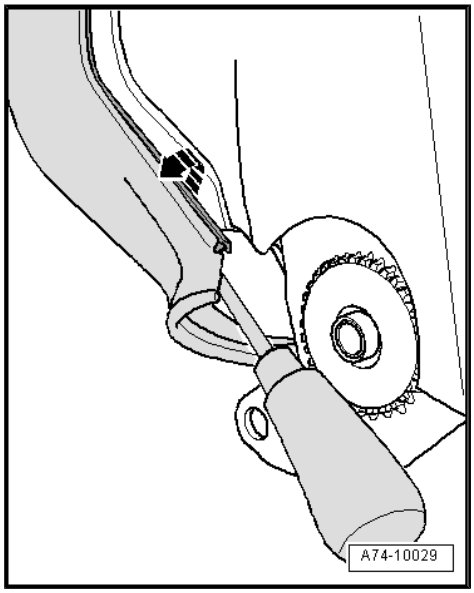
7 - Flap for backrest bolster adjustment

❑ Disengaging ⇒ page 611

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

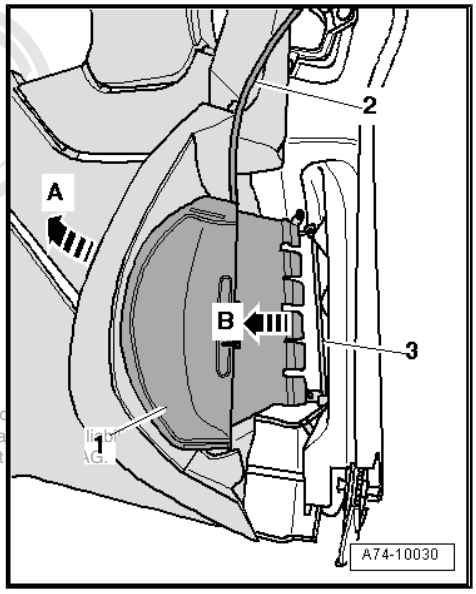
Prising fastening strip out of guide

- Starting at the bottom, prise fastening strip for backrest cover out of guide on backrest -arrow- (using e.g. an awl). To do so, squeeze backrest padding slightly to slacken backrest cover.



Detaching flap for backrest bolster adjustment

- Fold bolsters inwards -arrow A- and detach flaps -1- for backrest bolster adjustment from retaining bracket -3- on backrest -arrrow B-.
- Disconnect pneumatic hose -2- for backrest bolster adjustment.
- Detach backrest padding from backrest.

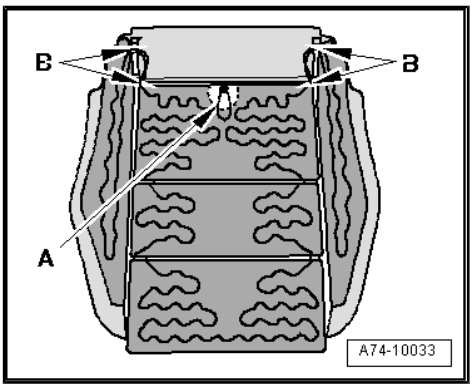


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part o
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright

4.3 Removing and installing seat heating element

Removing

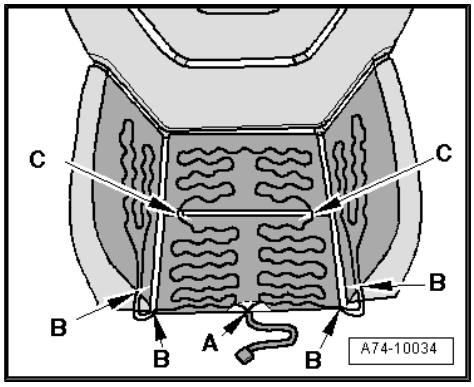
- Remove seat ⇒ page 527 .
- Remove seat pan ⇒ page 538 .
- Remove seat pan cover and padding ⇒ page 608 .
- Cut out area -A- from old heating element together with electrical connection wire.
- Remove old connection wire.
- Cut electrical connection wires leading to heating elements at seat bolsters at positions -B-.



Installing

- Align new heating elements on seat surface, pull off protective cover and bond new heating elements firmly onto padded surfaces (in same position as old heating elements).
- Route connection wires to seat bolsters through slots in seat padding (avoid crossing wires).
- Guide connection wires downwards through opening provided in seat padding.

4.4 Removing and installing backrest heating element



Removing

– Remove seat ⇒ page 527 .

– Remove backrest ⇒ page 538 .

Note

- *Electrical wiring harness does not need to be detached from seat pan.*
- *Move backrest to rear and place on soft surface.*

– Remove backrest cover and padding ⇒ page 609 .

– Cut out area -A- from old heating element together with electrical connection wire.

– Remove old connection wire.

– Cut electrical connection wires leading to heating elements at backrest bolsters at positions -B-.

– Cut electrical connection wires leading to upper backrest heating element at positions -C-.

Installing

– Align new heating elements on backrest surface, pull off protective cover and bond new heating elements firmly onto padded surfaces (in same position as old heating elements).

– Route connection wires to backrest bolsters through slots in seat padding (avoid crossing wires).

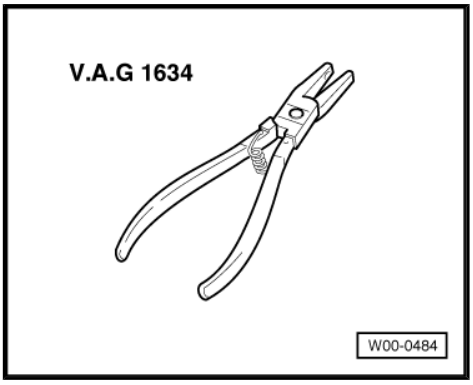
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 Covers and padding on rear seats

5.1 Removing and installing seat bench cover and padding

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-



1 - Seat cover

- Removing
  - Remove seat bench ⇒ page 551 .
  - Cut through upholstery clips on reverse side of rear seat bench.
  - Use screwdriver to prise out fastening strips (peripheral).
  - Lift off cover -1- and cut through upholstery clips -4-.
- Installing

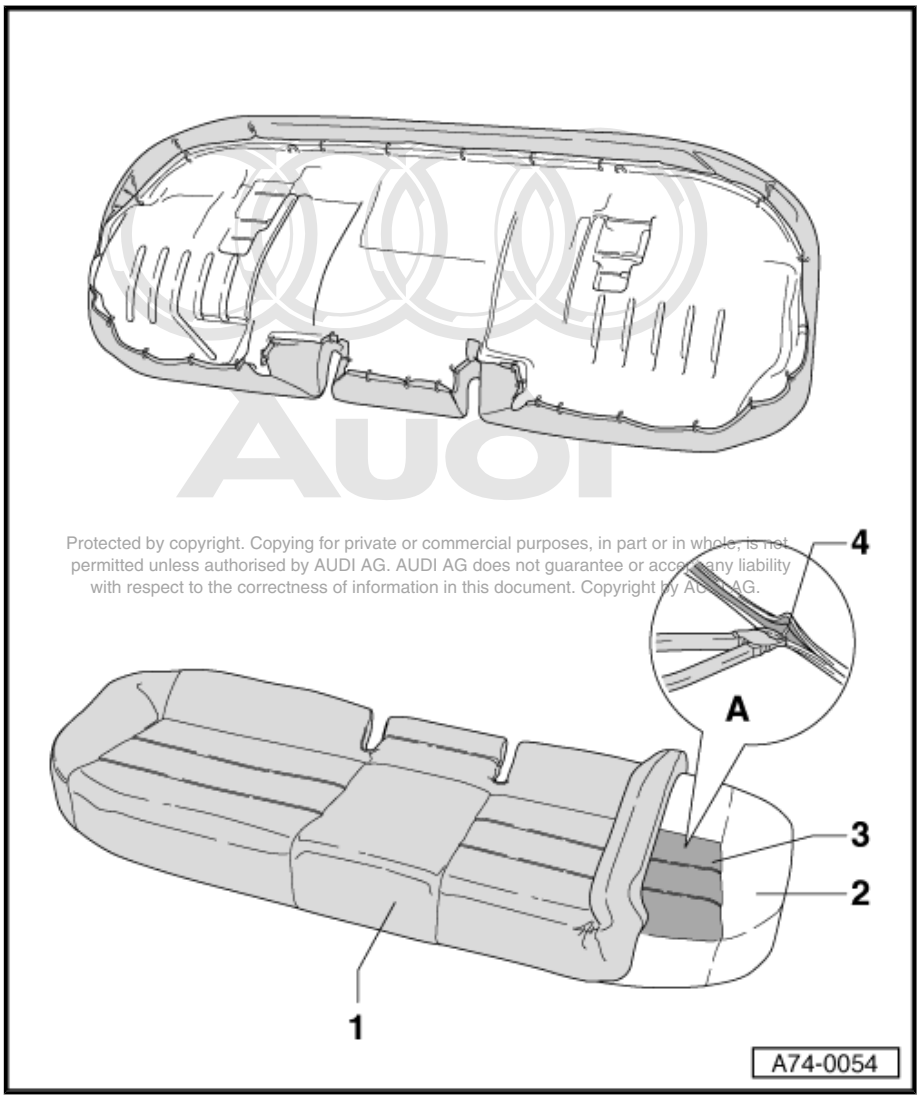
Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

  - Use upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- to install new upholstery clips.

2 - Padding

3 - Seat heating

4 - Upholstery clips

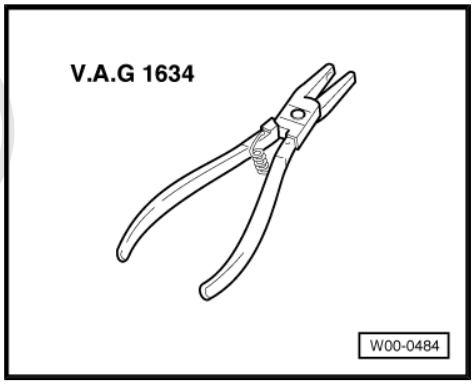


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.2 Removing and installing cover and padding - fixed rear seat backrest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Seat cover

- Removing

  – Remove seat bench ⇒ page 551 .
  – Remove backrest ⇒ page 562 .
  – Remove centre armrest ⇒ page 564 .
  – Cut through upholstery clips -2-.

Vehicles with side airbag:

  – Use screwdriver to prise out fastening strip -4-.
  – Remove bolts -7- (2x).
  – Pull side airbag -6- downwards out of protective cover -5-.
  – Remove side airbag on opposite side in the same way.

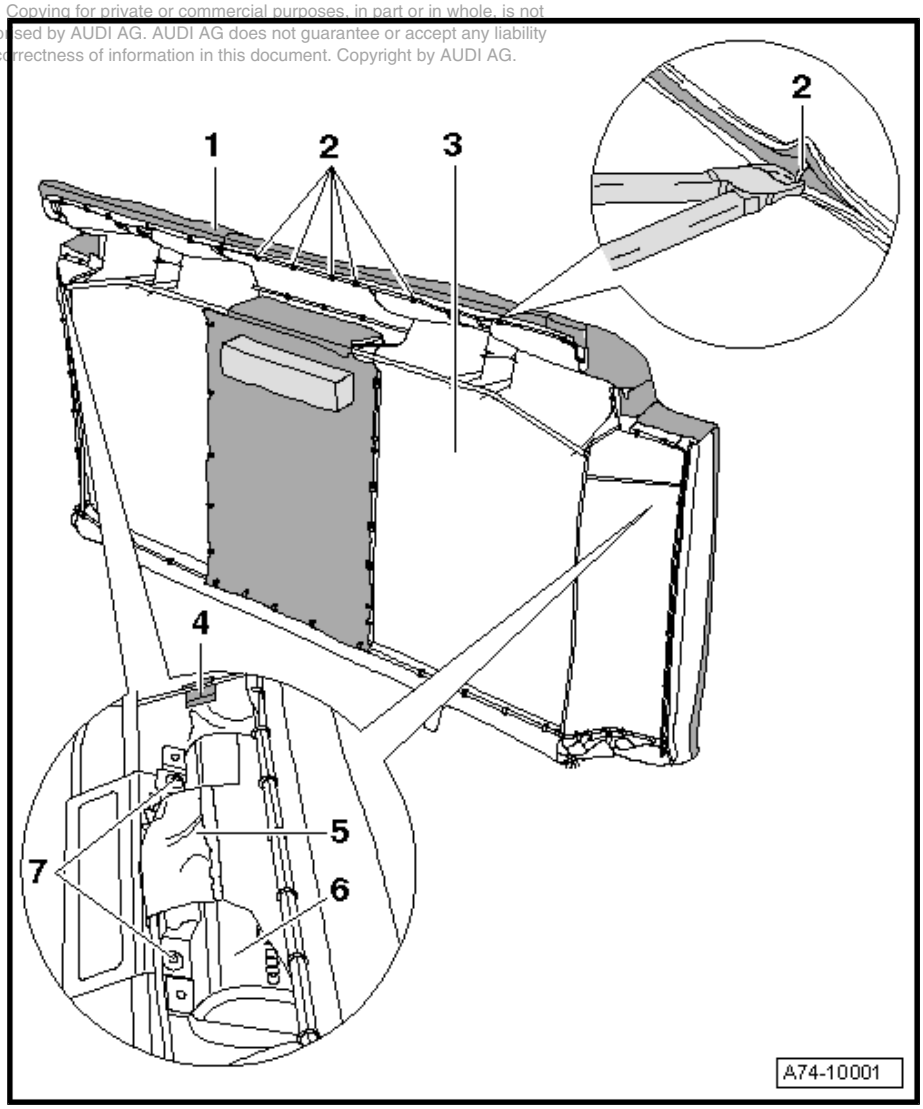
All vehicles:

  – Remove cover and padding from outer backrest frame.
  – Fold back cover -1-.
  – Cut through upholstery clips -2-.
  – Remove seat cover -1-.

- Installing

Fit cover and padding in reverse order to removal. Note the following:

  – Use upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- to install new upholstery clips.



2 - Upholstery clips

3 - Padding

4 - Fastening strip

5 - Protective cover for side airbag

6 - Side airbag

7 - Bolts (2x)

- ❑ Tightening torque: 8 Nm

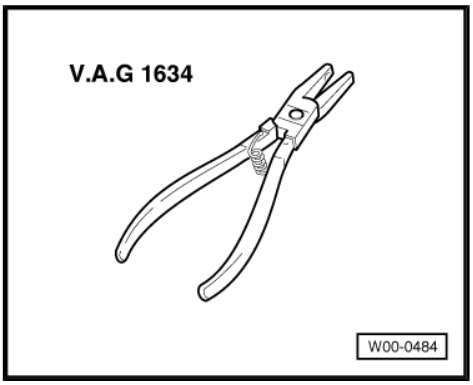
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.3 Removing and installing cover and padding for split rear seat backrest

5.3.1 Removing and installing cover and padding for 1/3 section of rear seat backrest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-



1 - Bolt

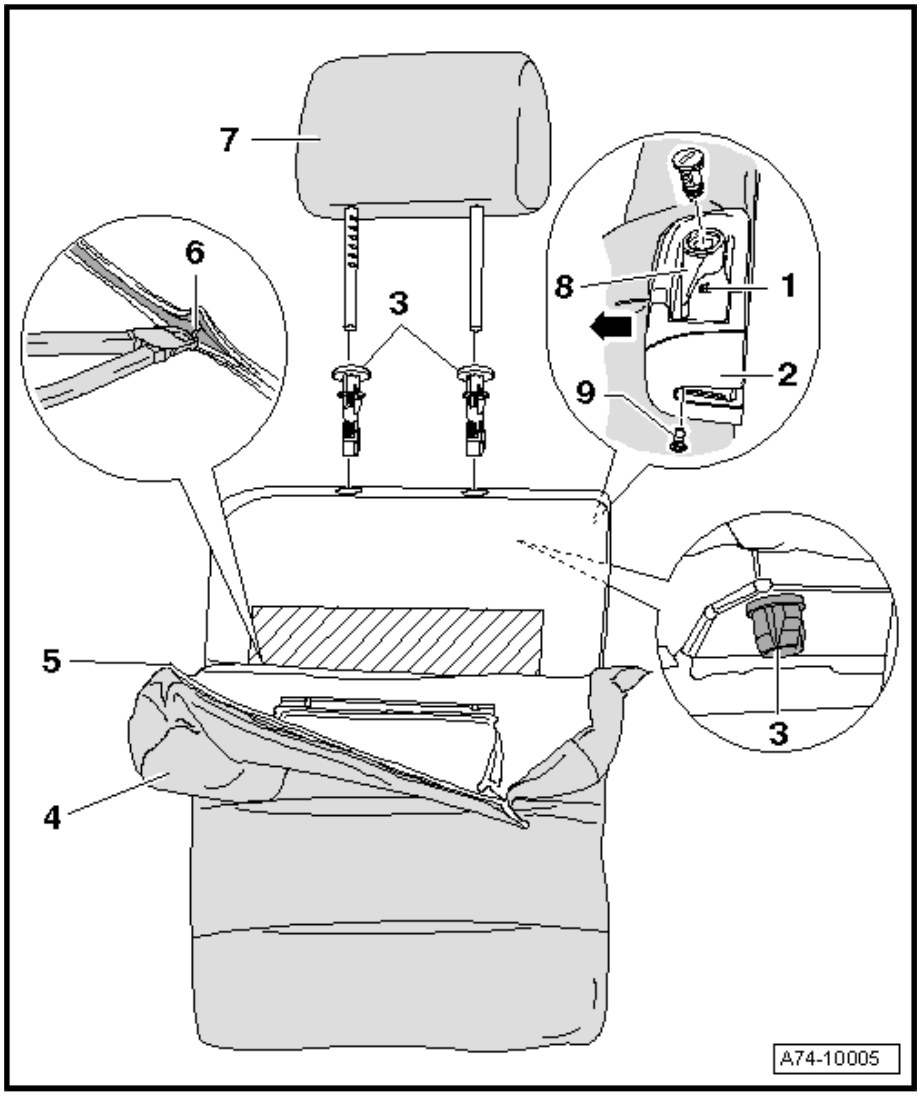
2 - Latch trim

3 - Head restraint guides (2x)

- ❑ Install head restraint guide with button on left.

4 - Seat cover

- ♦ Removing
  - – Remove seat bench ⇒ page 551 .
  - – Remove 1/3 section of backrest (left-side) ⇒ page 552 .
  - – To remove head restraint -7-: press button on head restraint guide (left-side) -3- and lift out head restraint.
  - – Remove bolt -9- on latch trim -2-.
  - – Press latch lever -8- in direction of arrow.
  - – Unscrew bolt -1- beneath latch lever -8-.
  - – Lift off latch trim -2-.
  - – Use screwdriver to prise out fastening strip (peripheral) -5- at rear.
  - – Fold back cover and padding.
  - – Squeeze head restraint guides -3- (2x) together at bottom and lift them out.
  - – Remove cover and padding from backrest pan.
  - – Fold back cover -4-.
  - – Cut through upholstery clips -6-.
- ♦ Installing



Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- – Use upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634/- to install new upholstery clips.

5 - Fastening strips (rear, peripheral)

6 - Upholstery clips

7 - Head restraint

Note

Rear outer head restraints are not identical to front head restraints. If all head restraints are removed together mark them accordingly with adhesive tape.

8 - Latch lever

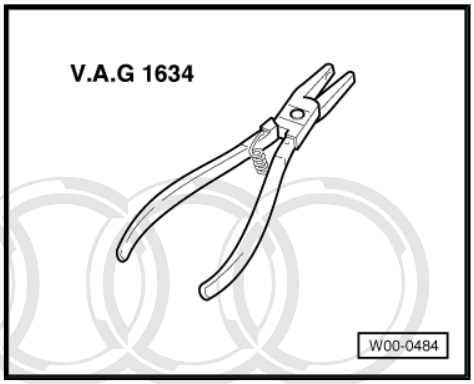
9 - Bolt

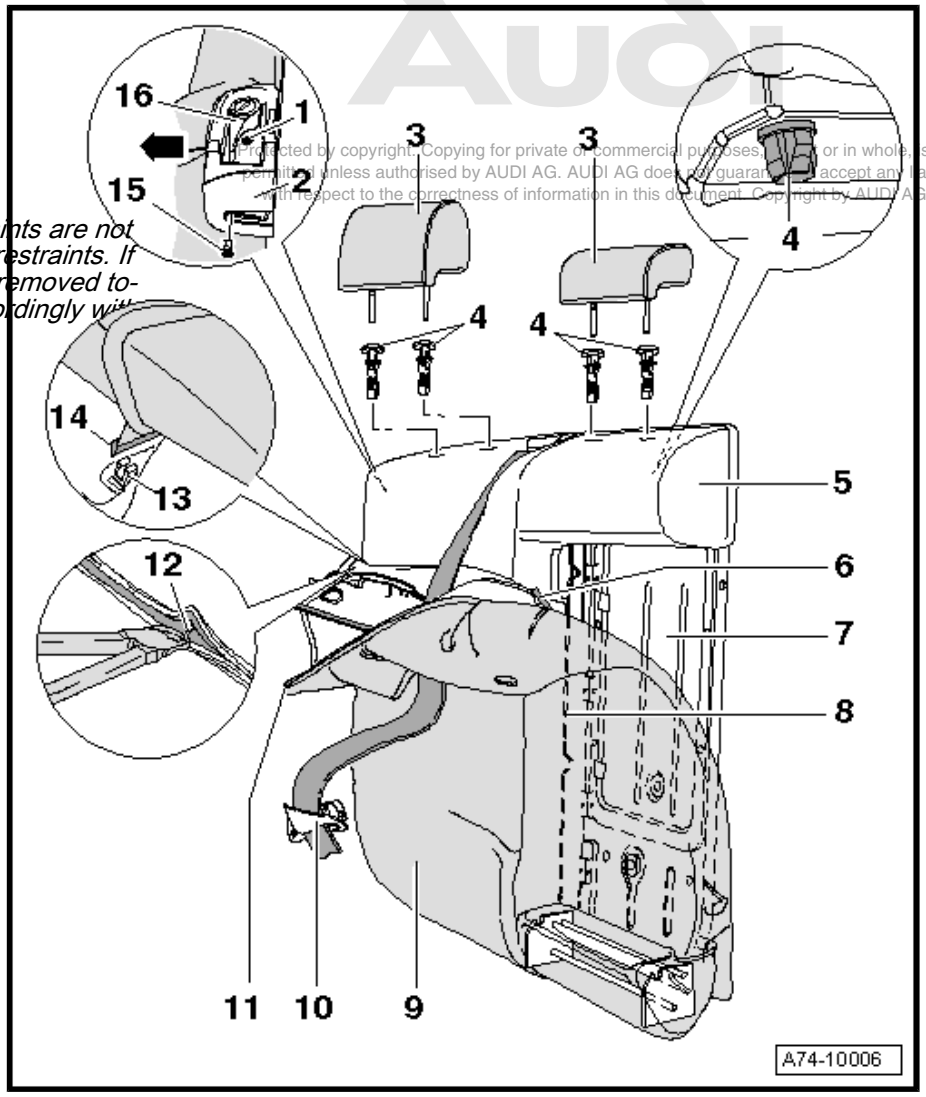
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.3.2 Removing and installing cover and padding for 2/3 section of rear seat backrest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-





1 - Bolt

2 - Latch trim

3 - Head restraints (2x)

Note

Rear outer head restraints are not identical to front head restraints. If all head restraints are removed together mark them accordingly with adhesive tape.

4 - Head restraint guides (4x)

❑ Install head restraint guide with button on left.

5 - Padding

6 - Fastening strip

7 - Backrest pan

8 - Bracket

9 - Seat cover

♦ Removing

- Remove seat bench ⇒ page 551 .
- Remove 2/3 section of backrest (right-side) ⇒ page 554 .
- Remove centre armrest ⇒ page 558 .
- Remove hinge trim (inner) ⇒ page 560 .
- On vehicles with ski bag remove ski bag -11- ⇒ page 622 .
- To remove head restraints -3- (2x): press button on head restraint guide (left-side) -4- and lift out head restraint.
- Remove bolt -15- on latch trim -2-.
- Press latch lever -16- in direction of arrow and unscrew bolt -1-.
- Lift off latch trim -2-.
- Use screwdriver to prise out fastening strips (rear, peripheral) -11-.
- Fold up cover and padding.
- Use screwdriver to prise fastening strips -6- out of support -8-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Squeeze guide trim for three-point seat belt -10- together at bottom and lift it out.
– Squeeze head restraint guides -4- (4x) together at bottom and lift them out.
– Remove cover and padding from backrest pan -7-.
– Fold back cover -9-.
– Use screwdriver to prise fastening strips -14- out of plastic clips -13-.
– Cut through upholstery clips -12-.
– Remove seat cover -9-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

– Use upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- to install new upholstery clips.

10 - Belt guide

11 - Fastening strip (rear, peripheral)

12 - Upholstery clips

13 - Plastic clips

❑ Renew plastic clips if damaged

14 - Fastening strip

15 - Bolt

16 - Latch lever

5.3.3 Items to be checked following complete assembly of backrest

♦ Seat belt guide fitting and webbing must not make contact with or rub against foam parts or seat cover fabric.

♦ Guide fitting must always move with belt webbing.

♦ Belt webbing must move freely in all directions.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.3.4 Removing and installing latch lever and lock cylinder

1 - Latch lever

♦ Removing

– Press latch lever -1- in direction of arrow and unscrew bolts -2- (2x).
– Lift off latch trim -3-.
– Use a screwdriver to disengage retaining hooks (2x) of latch lever on inside of latch trim.
– Prise out latch lever on outside.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2 - Bolts (2x)

3 - Latch trim

4 - Release pin

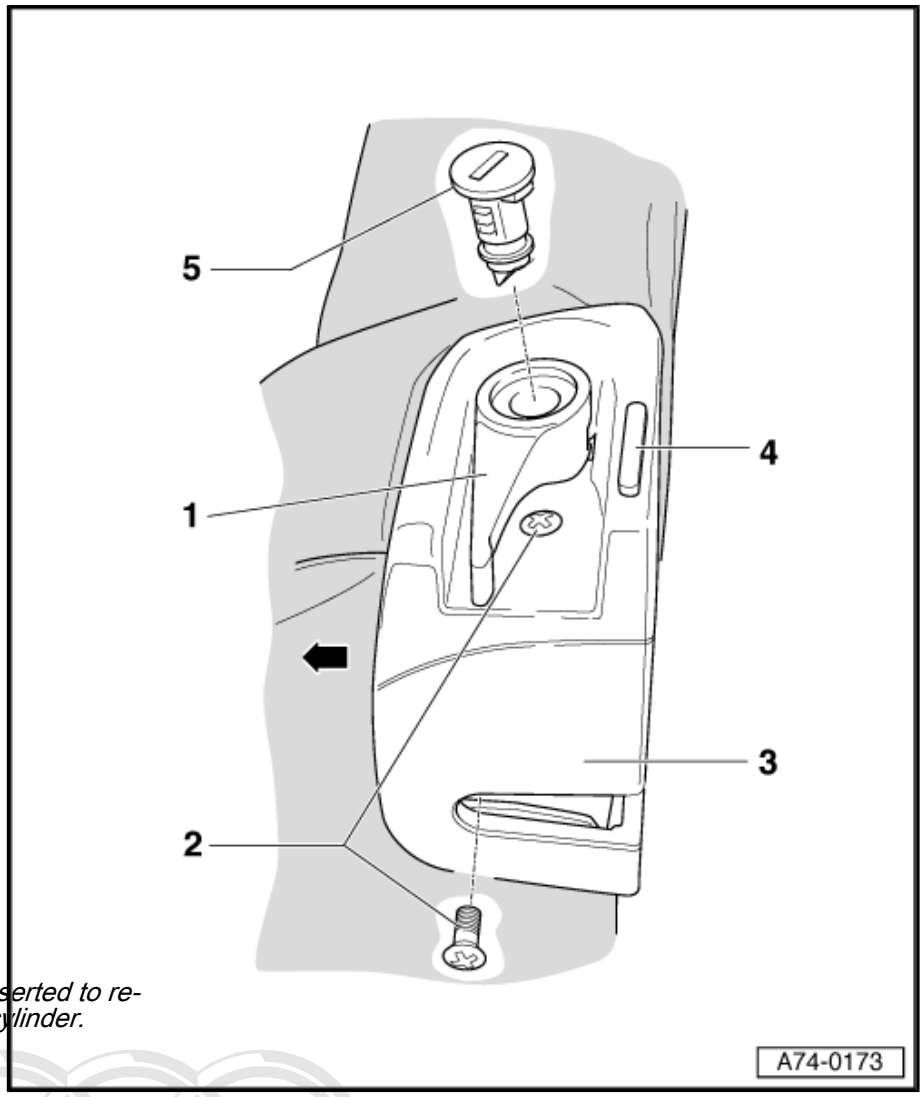
❑ When backrest is locked, pin projects 1–2 mm above latch trim.

❑ When backrest is not locked, pin projects approx. 20 mm above latch trim and red mark is visible.

5 - Lock cylinder

Note

Ignition key must be inserted to remove and install lock cylinder.



♦ Removing

– Insert ignition key and break out the lock cylinder -5-.

♦ Installing

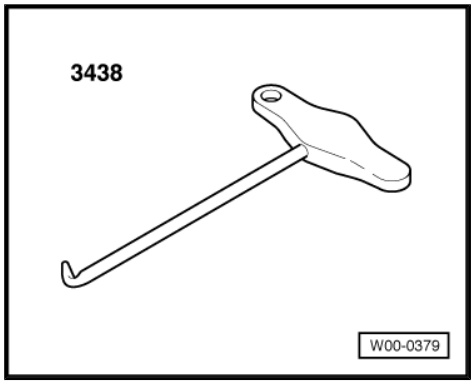
Install in reverse order of removal.

5.4 Removing and installing outer head restraint guides without slide-in locking mechanism

Special tools and workshop equipment required

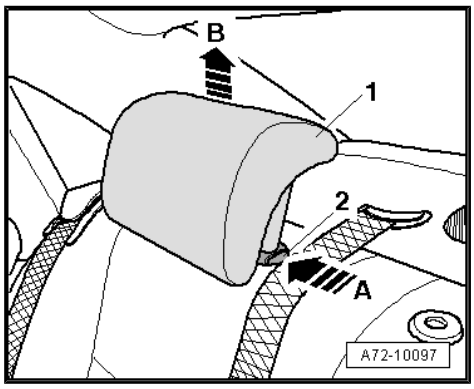
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Hook -3438-



Removing

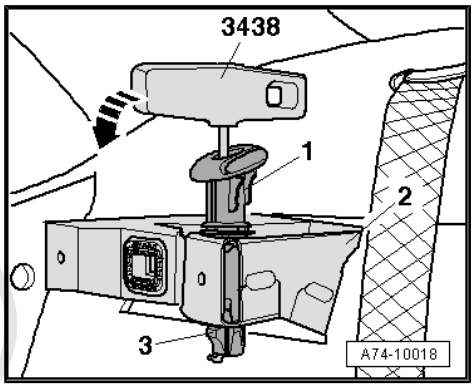
– Press and hold release button -2- in direction of -arrow A- and pull head restraint -1- out upwards as far as possible -arrow B-.



– Insert hook -3438- into hole for head restraint in guide -1- and engage hook at retaining tab -3-.

• The hook must point in direction of travel.

– Tilt hook -3438- forwards -arrow- and simultaneously pull head restraint guide up out of mounting -2-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

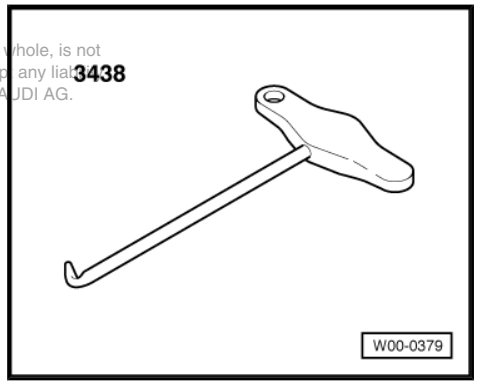
• The head restraint guide can only be installed in one position.

5.5 Removing and installing inner head restraint guides without slide-in locking mechanism

Special tools and workshop equipment required

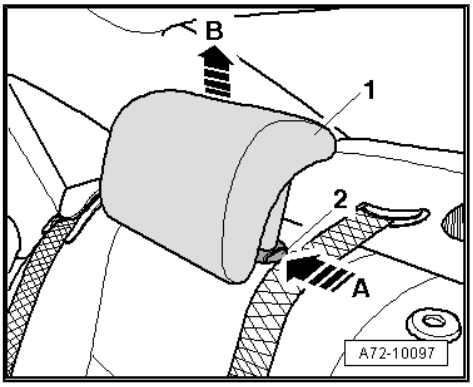
♦ Hook -3438-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Removing

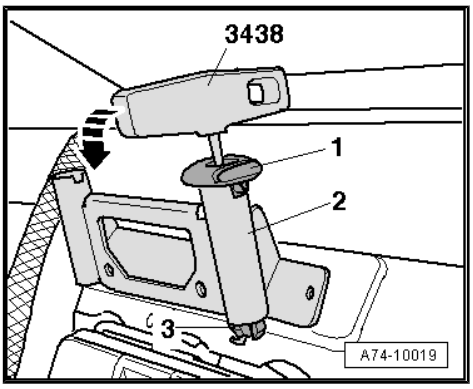
– Press and hold release button -2- in direction of -arrow A- and pull head restraint -1- out upwards as far as possible -arrow B-.



– Insert hook -3438- into hole for head restraint in guide -1- and engage hook at retaining tab -3-.

• The hook must point in direction of travel.

– Tilt hook -3438- forwards -arrow- and simultaneously pull head restraint guide up out of mounting -2-.



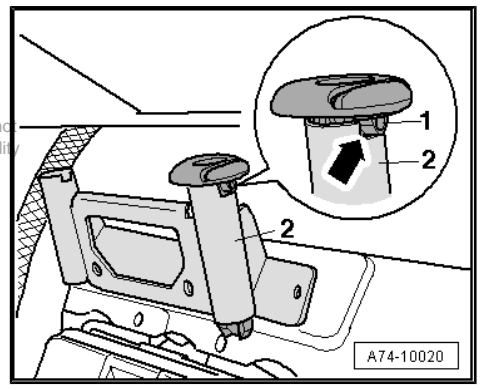
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

• The head restraint guide can only be installed in one position.

• Guide tab -1- of head restraint guide must engage in recess -arrow- of mounting -2- for head restraint guide.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



5.6 Removing and installing frame for load-through hatch (folding rear seat backrest)

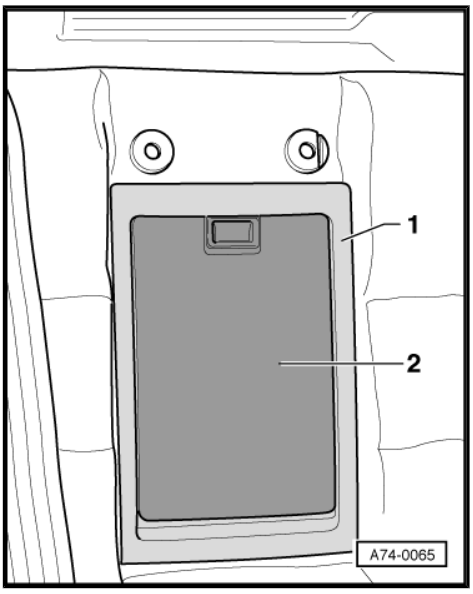
♦ Removing

– Fold down centre armrest.

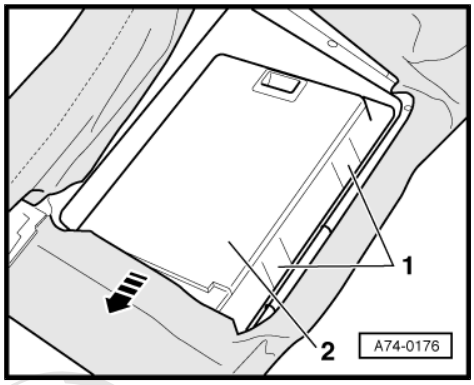
– Prise out frame -1- for load-through hatch -2-.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



5.7 Removing and installing load-through hatch (folding rear seat backrest)



♦ Removing

– Remove frame for load-through hatch ⇒ page 621 .

– Press in lugs -1- (4x) and take out load-through hatch -2- in direction of arrow.

♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

5.8 Making cut-out for load-through hatch in seat cover (folding rear seat backrest)

– Remove load-through hatch ⇒ page 622 .

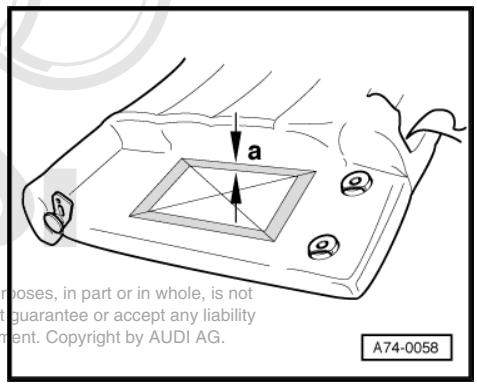
– Make cut-out in seat cover, working from centre to corners.

– Cut out triangular sections, leaving about 30 mm around edges (distance -a-).

– Install load-through hatch ⇒ page 622 .

– Insert 30 mm of cover fabric between load-through hatch and outer backrest frame.

– Clip in frame for load-through hatch.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.9 Removing and installing load-through hatch and frame for load-through hatch (fixed rear seat backrest)

1 - Load-through hatch (for ski bag)

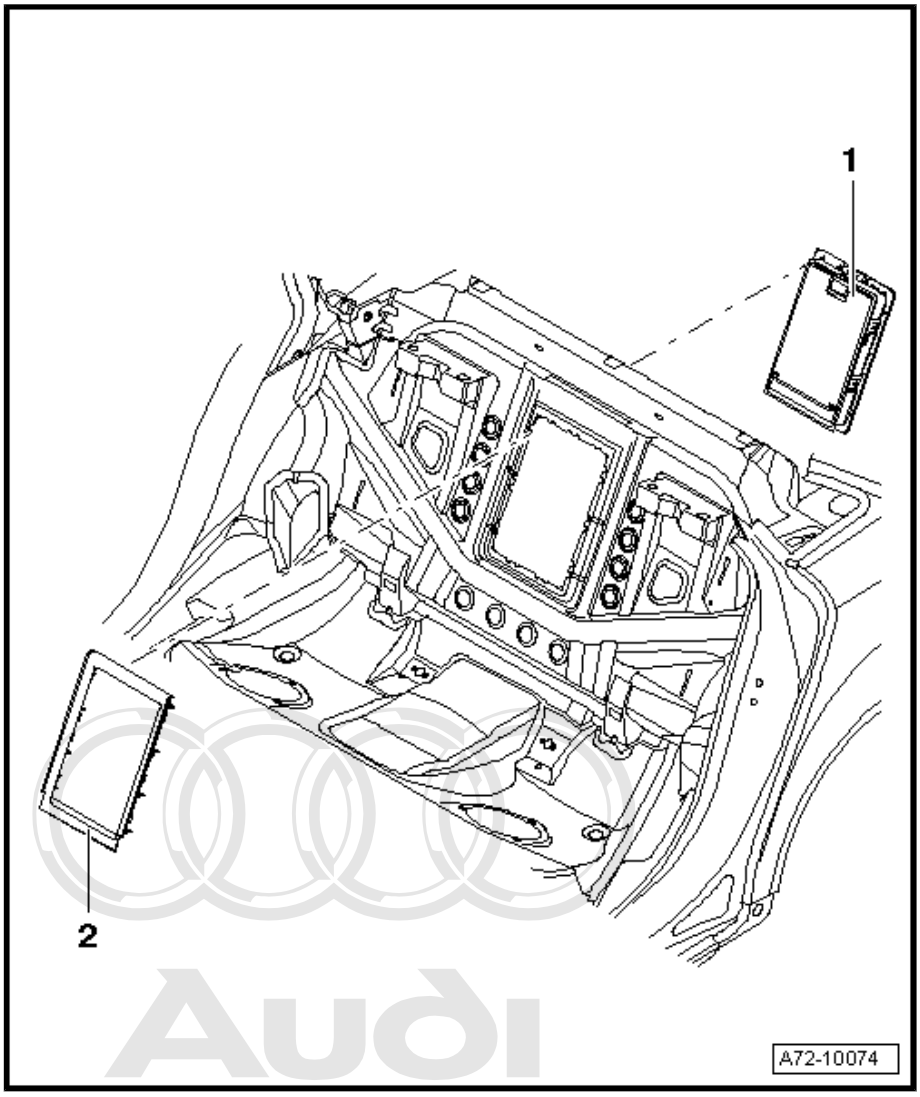
- ♦ Removing
  - – Remove frame for load-through hatch ⇒ Item 2 (page 623) .
  - – Lever out load-through hatch -1- (access from luggage compartment).
- ♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2 - Frame for load-through hatch

- ♦ Removing
  - – Remove seat bench ⇒ page 551 .
  - – Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 562 .
  - – Lever out frame -2-.
- ♦ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.10 Retrofitting load-through hatch (fixed rear seat backrest)

- – Remove seat bench ⇒ page 551 .
- – Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 562 .
- – Remove back panel trim ⇒ page 289 .
- – Use pneumatic sabre saw -V.A.G 1523/A- to cut plate -1- out of back panel at cutting locations -3-.
- – File down sawn edges.
- – Replace original back panel trim with back panel trim incorporating cut-out for load-through hatch.
- – Remove cover from back of rear seat backrest.

